

NEW!

Python 3 | Raspberry Pi | Linux

FREE Code
Download

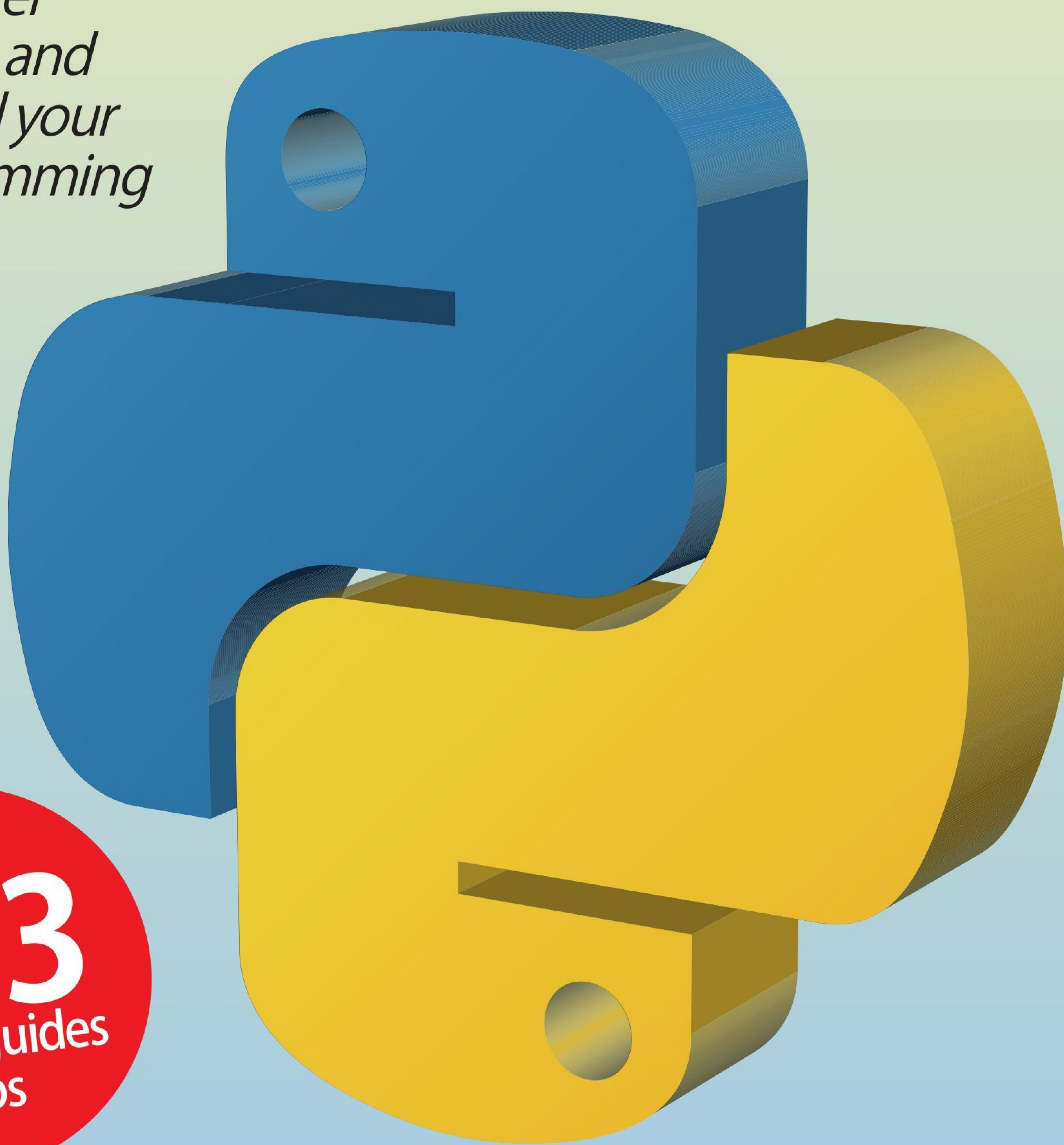
Black Dog
i-Tech Series



The Python Manual

The pythonTM Manual

*Learn how
to master
Python and
expand your
programming
skills*



Over
873
Python guides
& tips

£9.99

Volume 35

US\$19.99

Can\$24.50

Aus\$19.99

NZ\$19.99

100% INDEPENDENT



Inside...



Packed with top
tips and tutorials

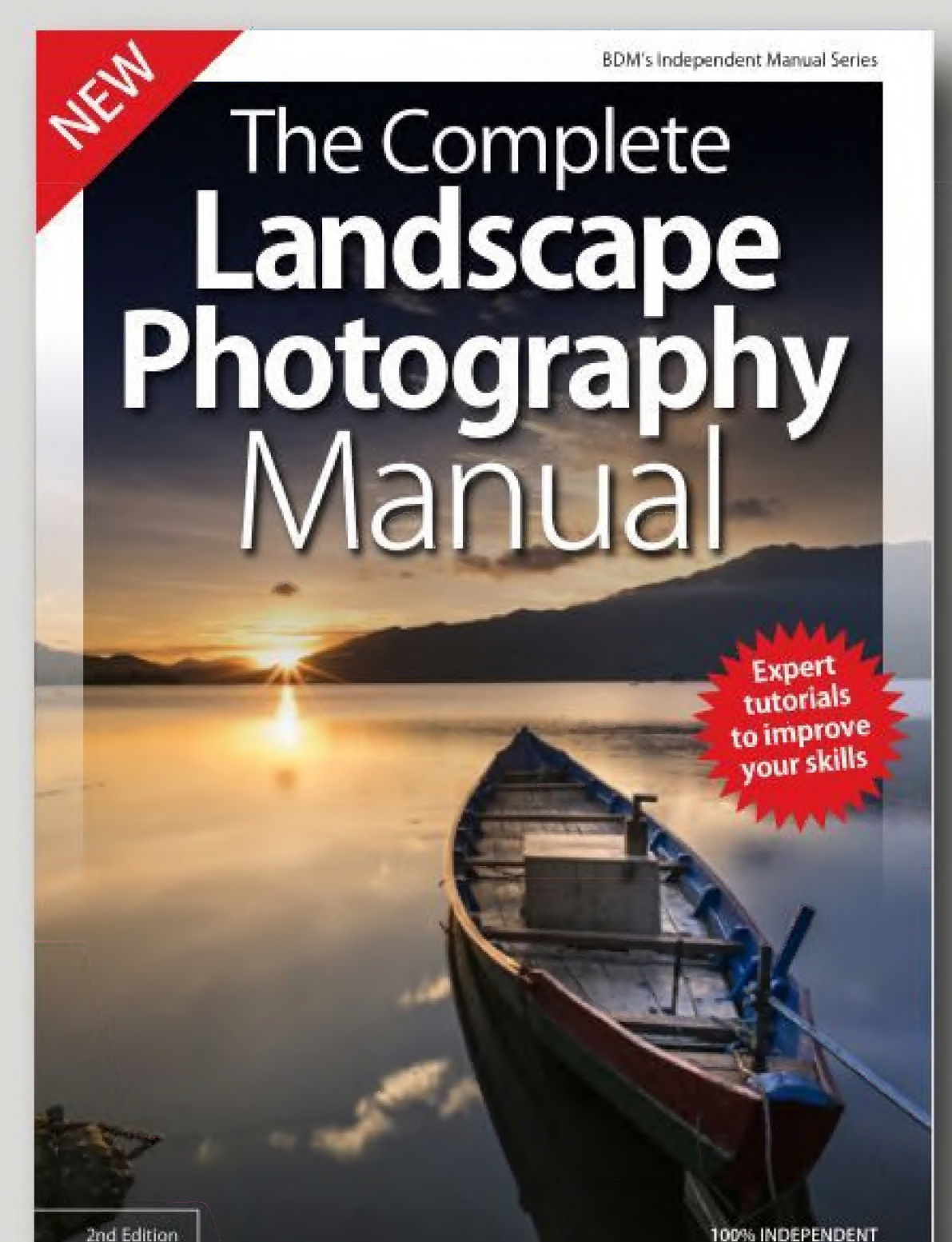
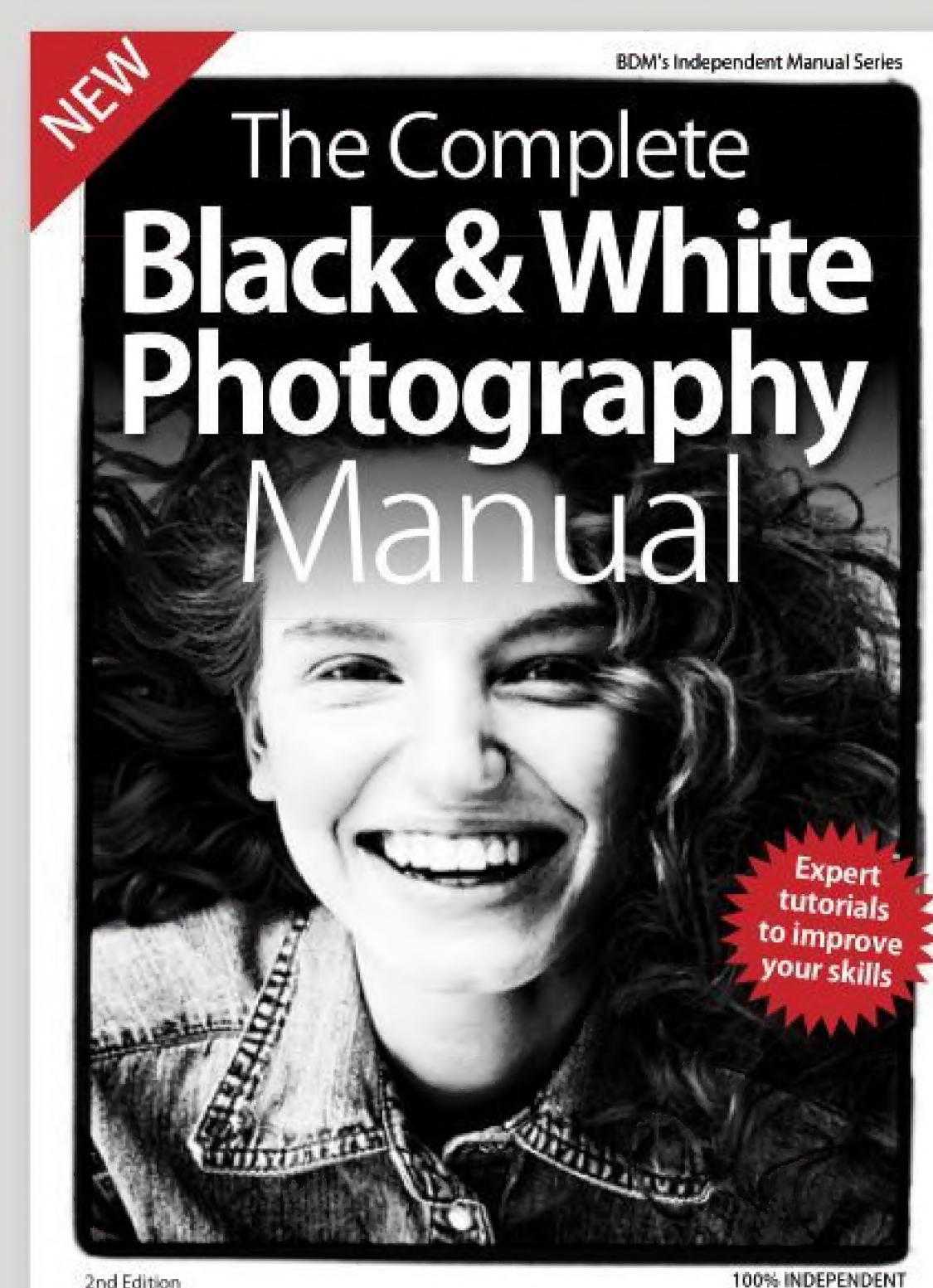
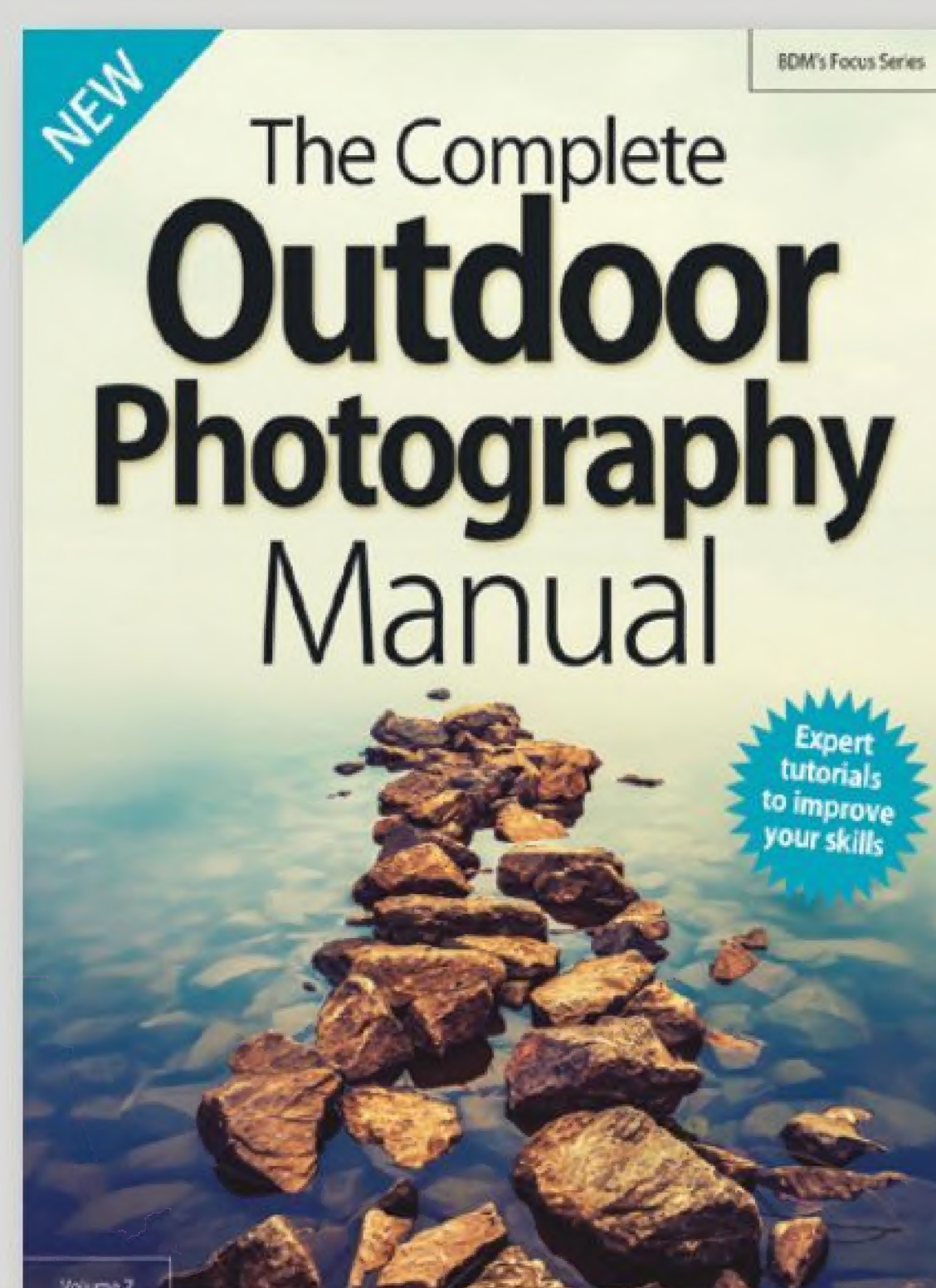
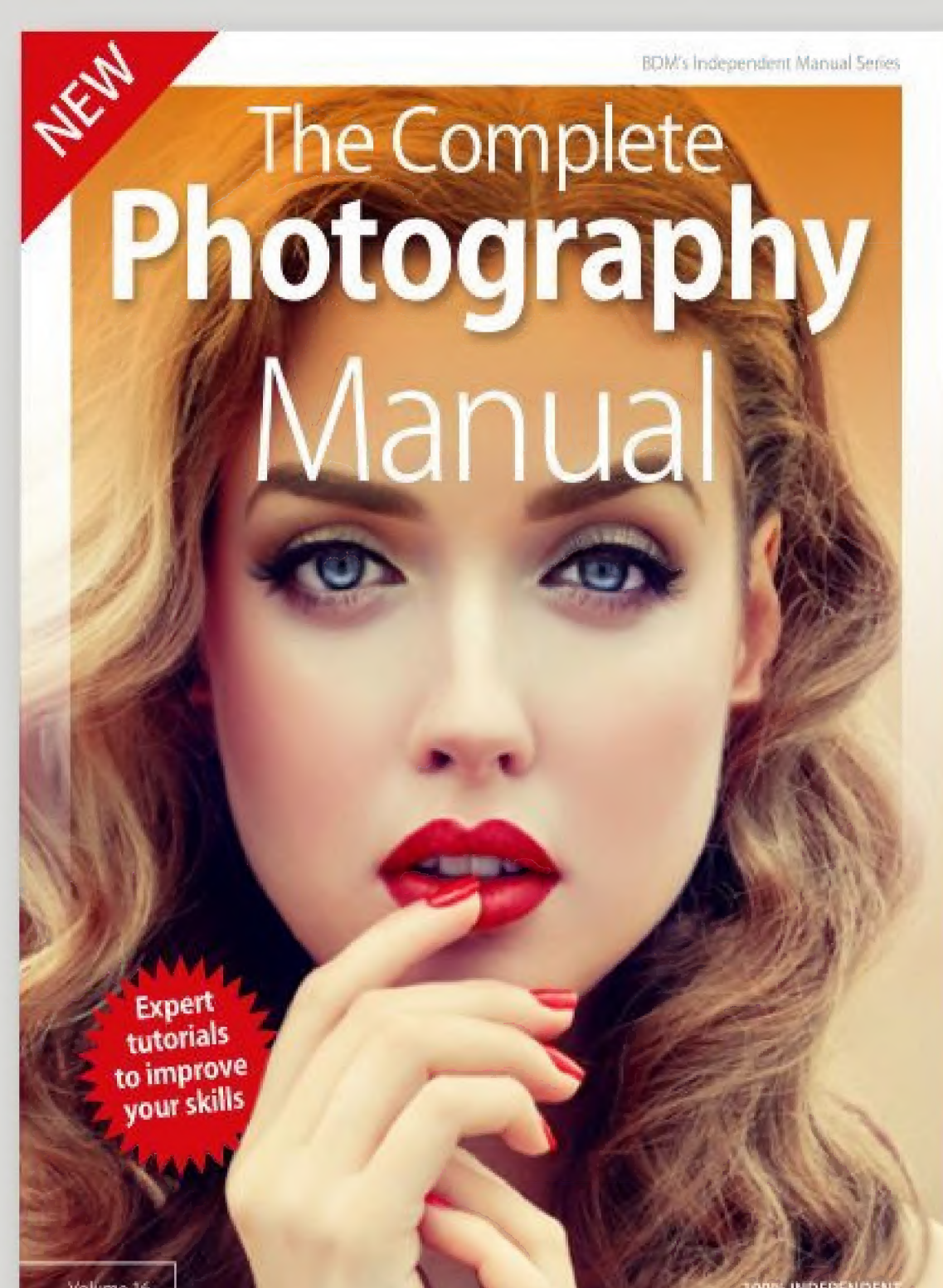
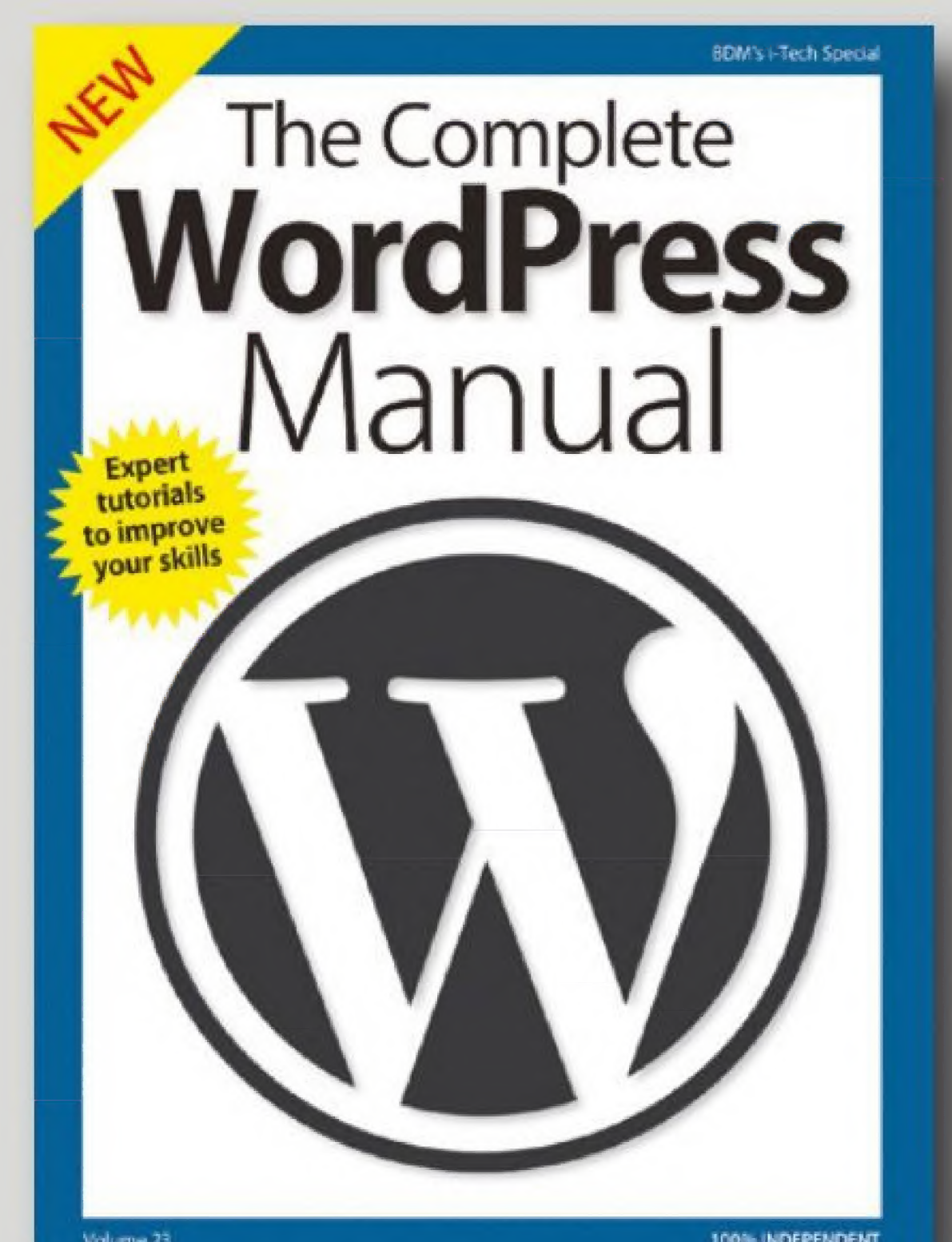
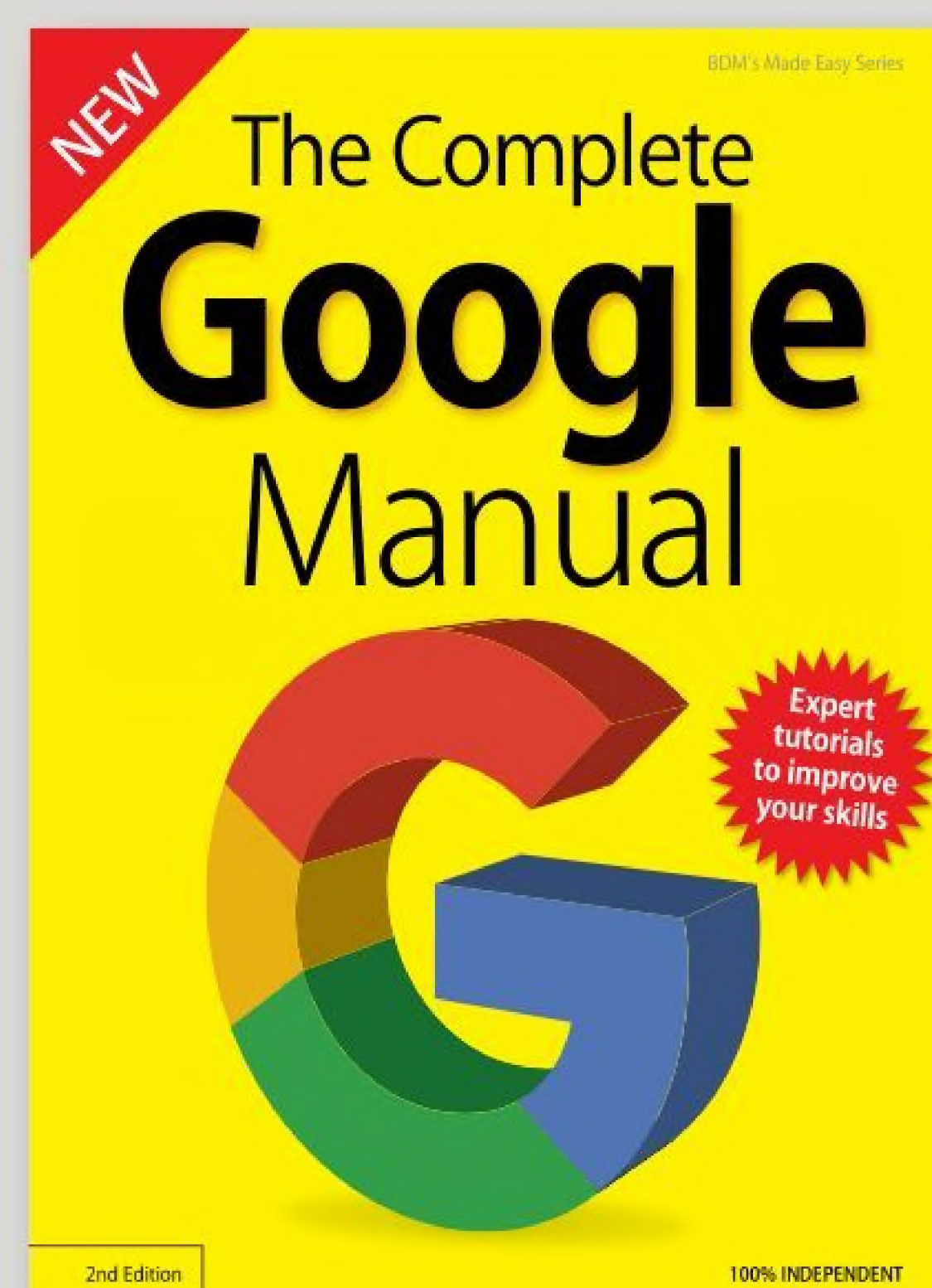
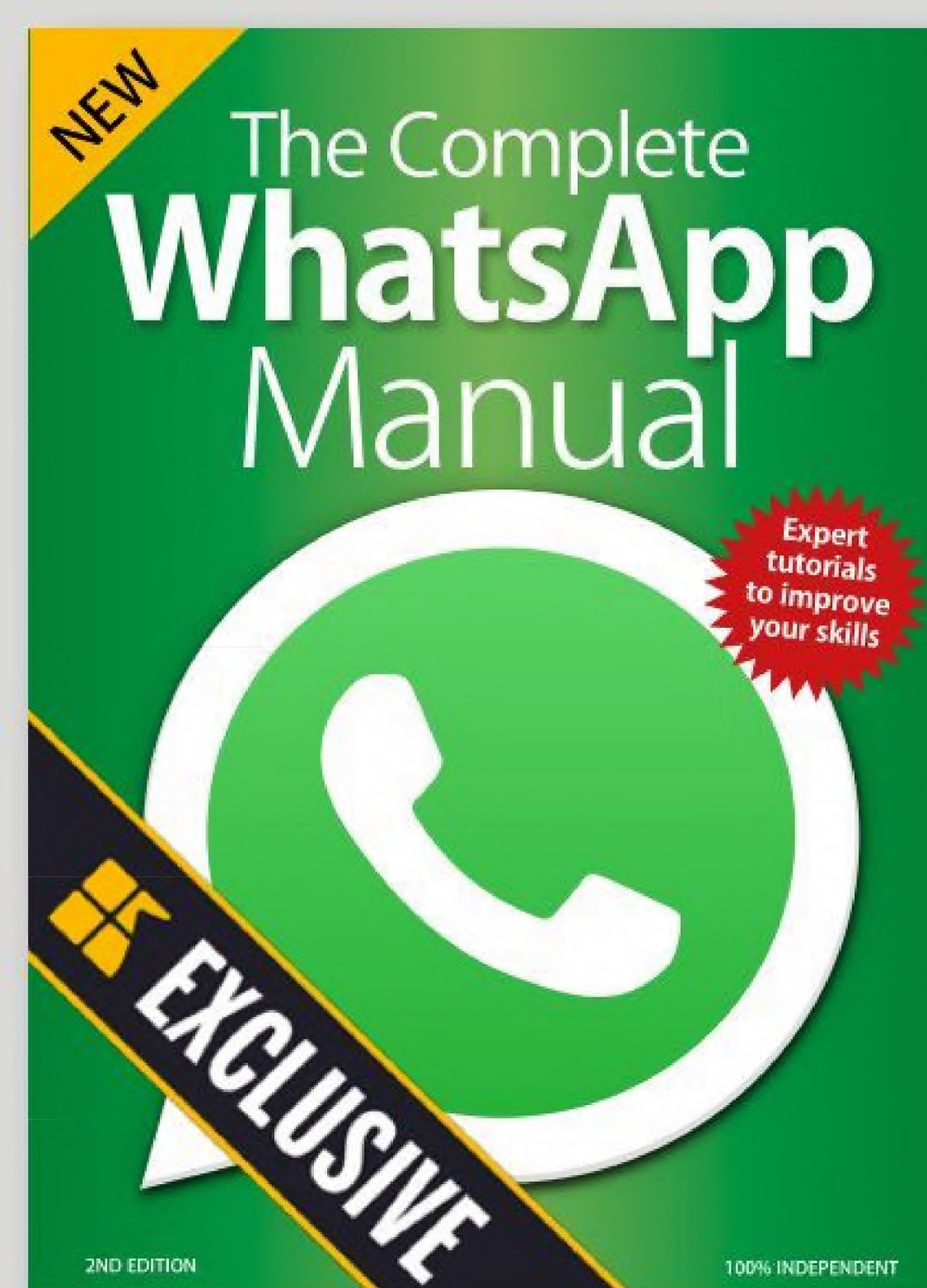
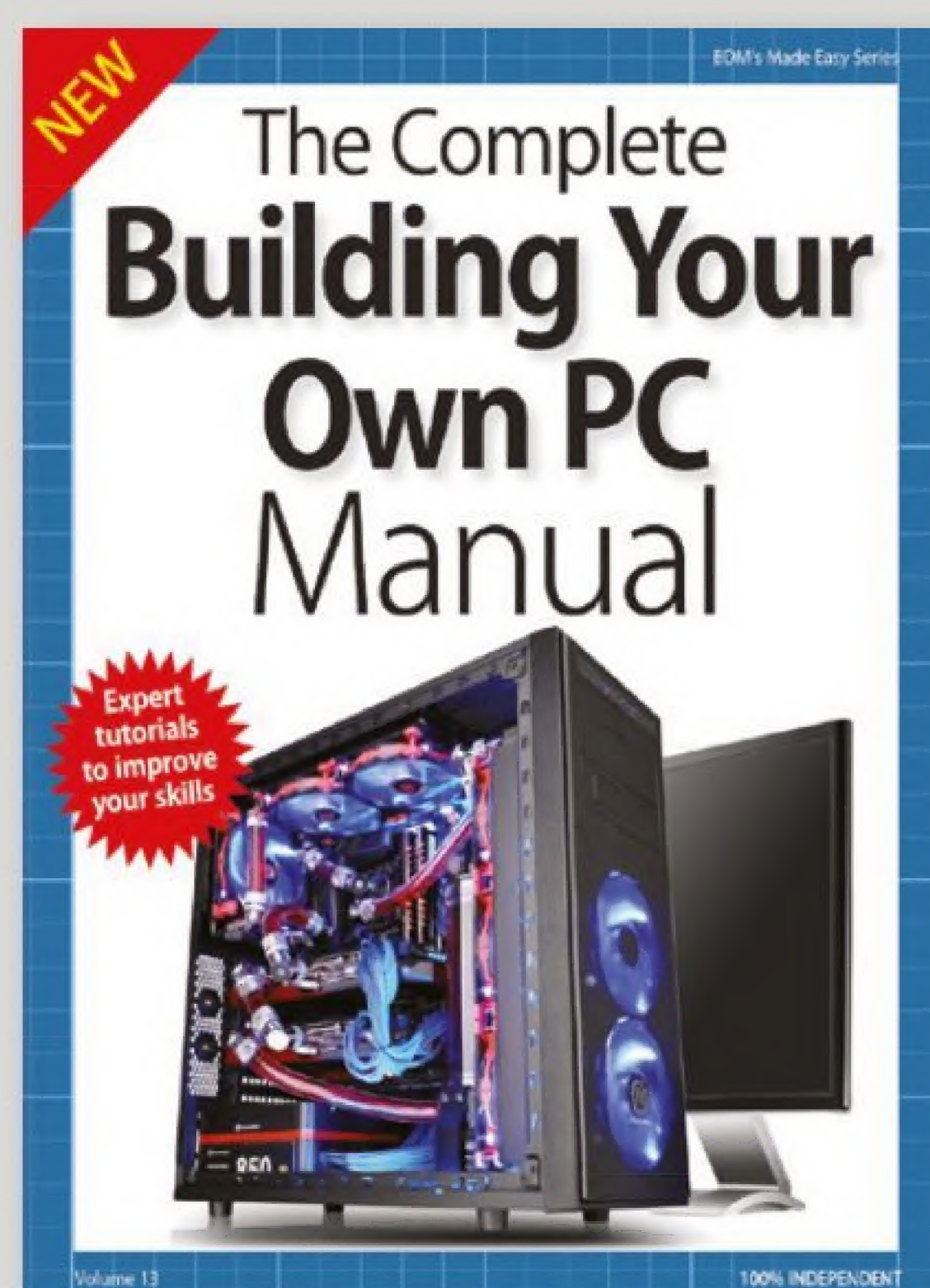
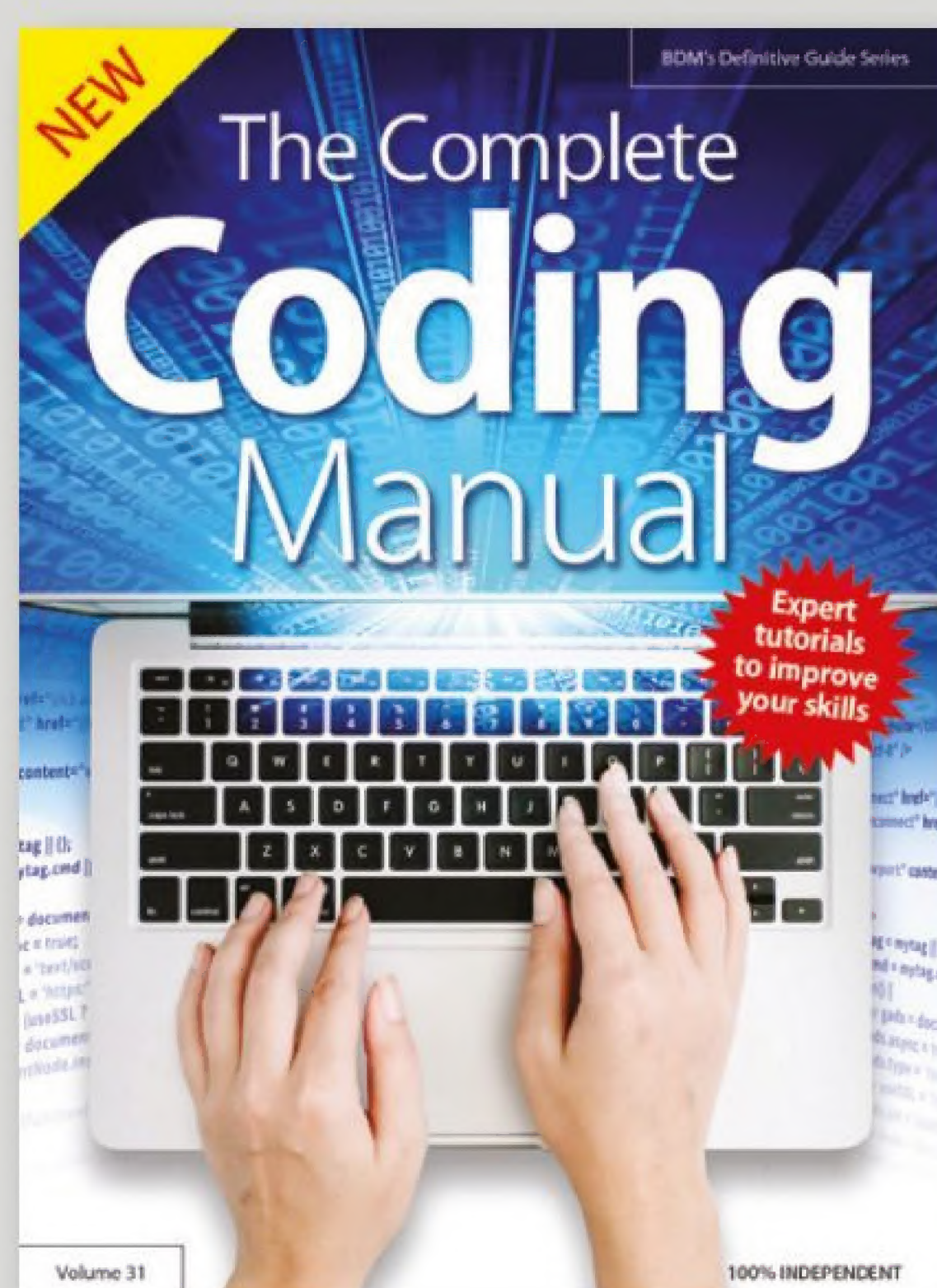
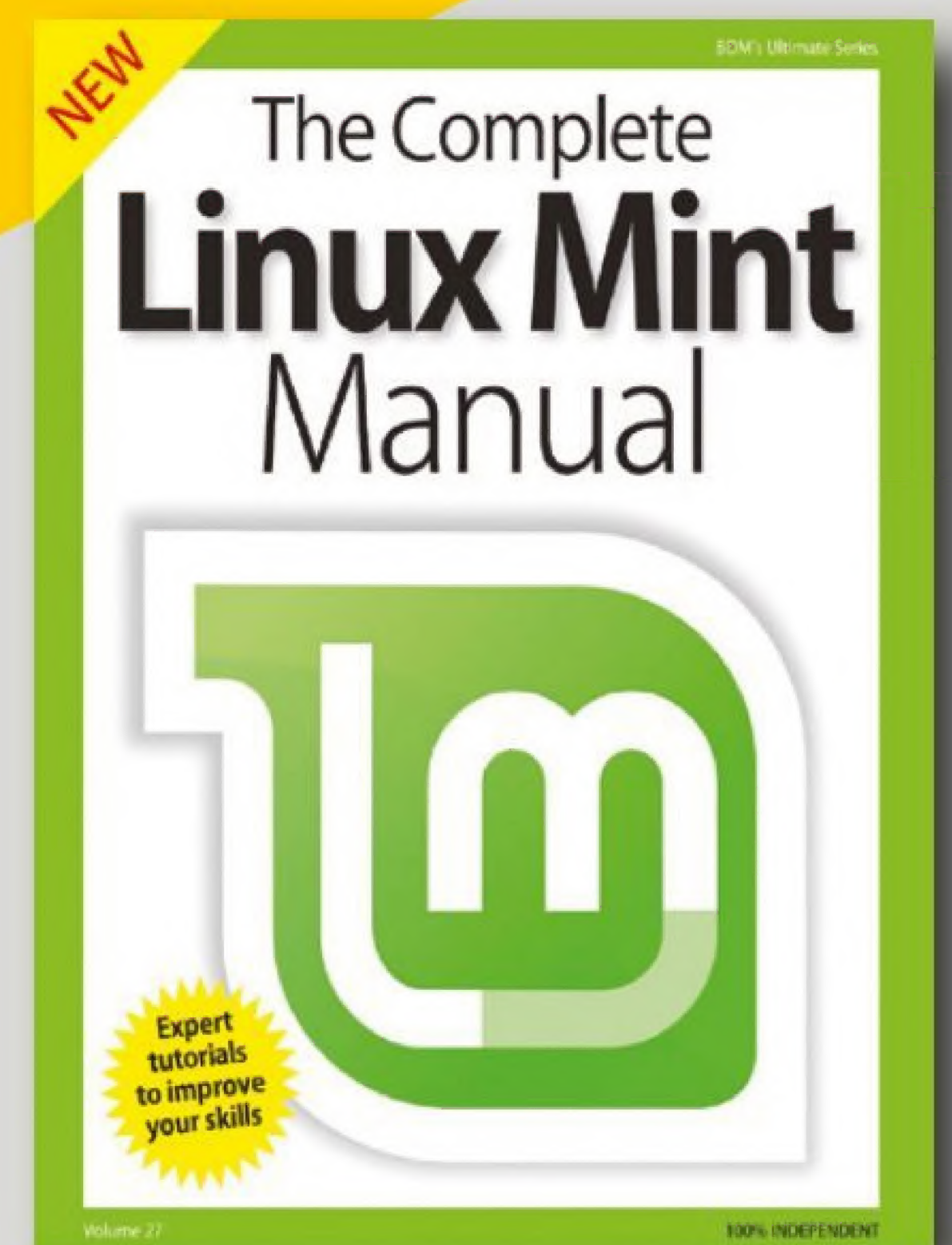
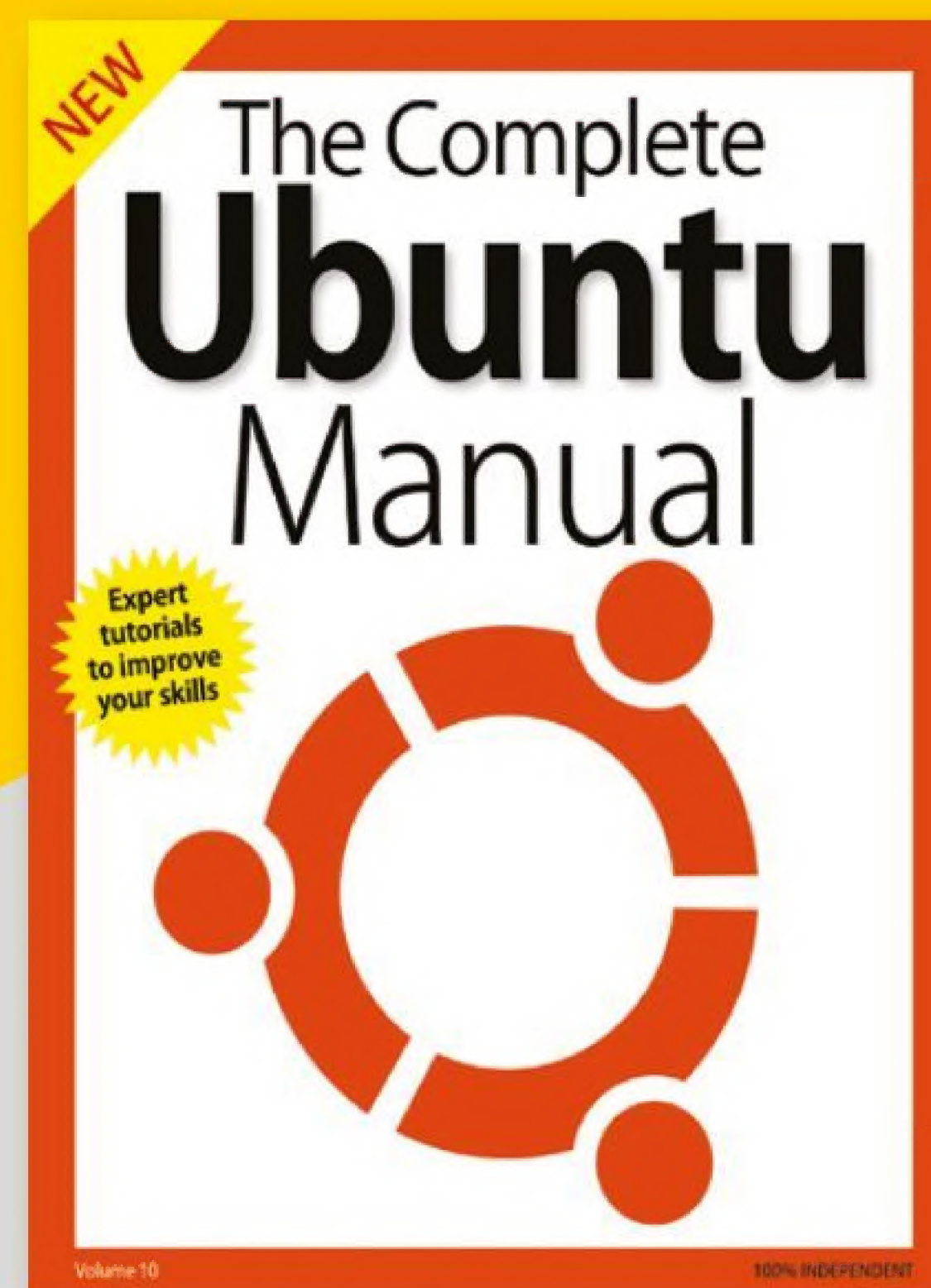
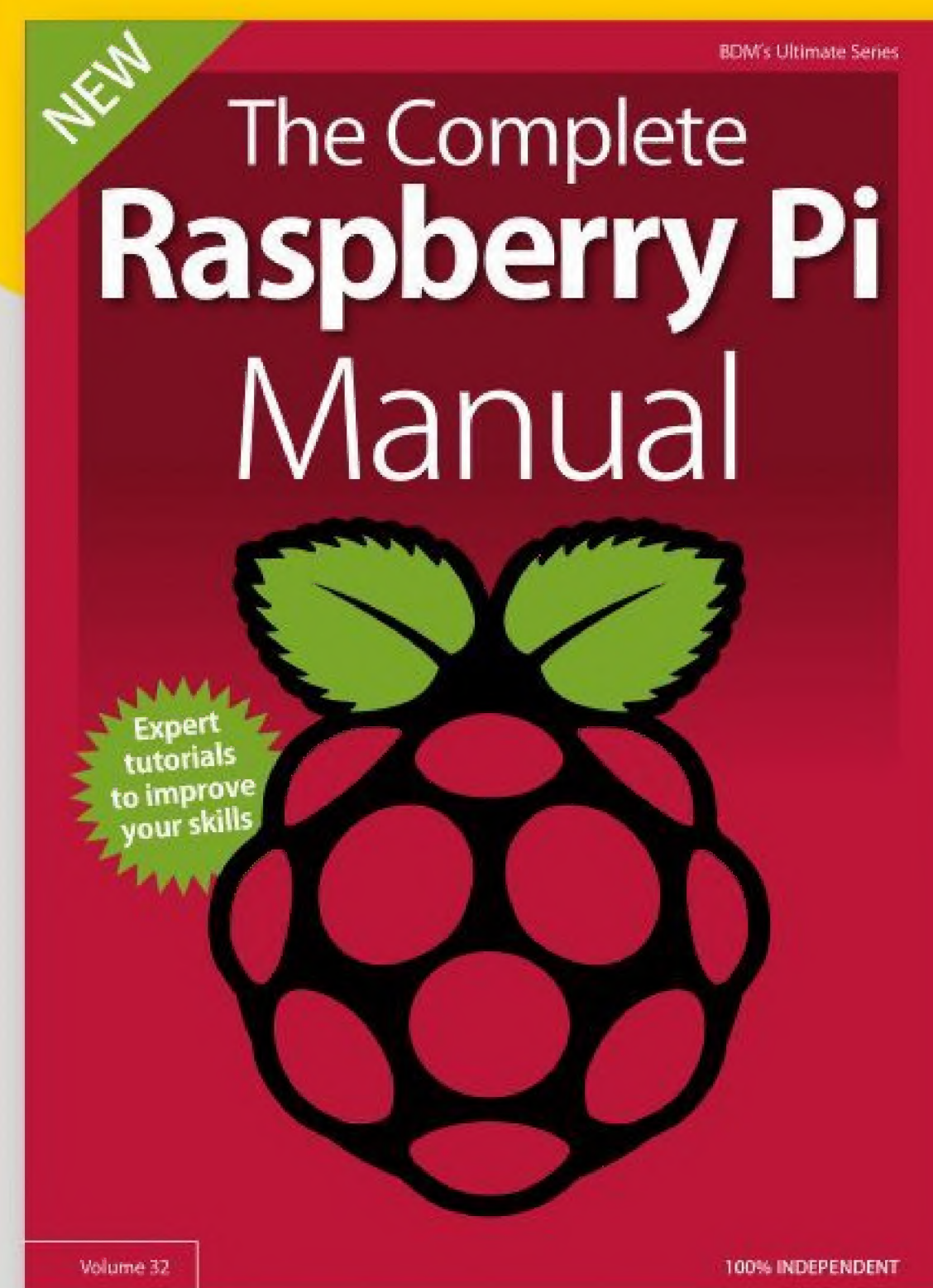
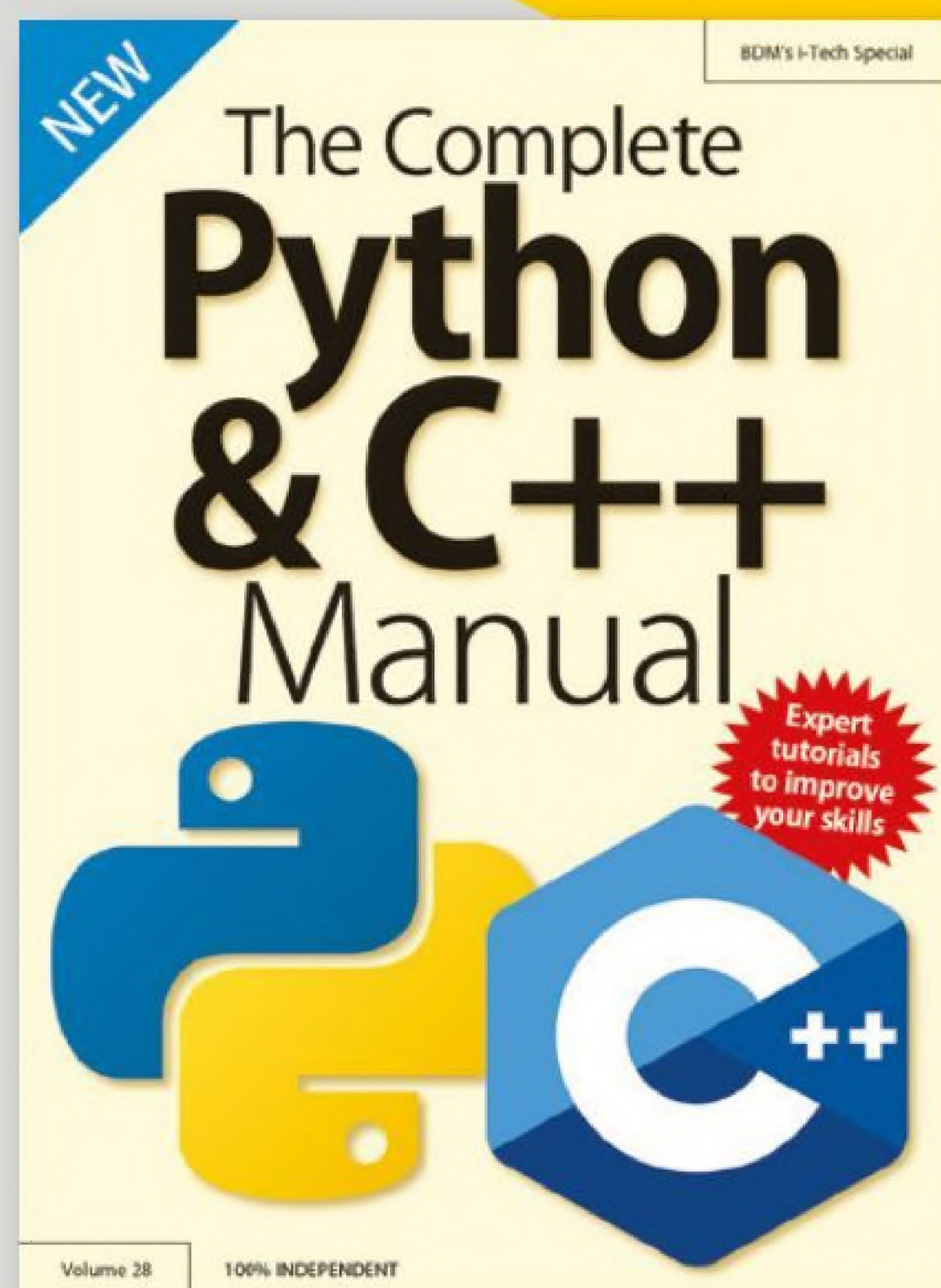


Learn Python 3 and apply
it to real world programs



Code games, utilities
and much more

Discover more of our complete manuals on **Readly** today...





Black Dog i-Tech Series

The pythonTM Manual

Welcome to Python, the world's best programming language

Python is one of the most successful programming languages in the world. It's easy to use, free to download and install and can create spectacular games and handy utilities that help make your computing life easier. It's available on all the major operating systems and can be used on the most powerful Windows 10 PC to the latest version of the Raspberry Pi, in the home and at work. You can even find Python code being run in outer space on board the International Space Station. If it's good enough for NASA, then it's good enough for the rest of us!

Within the pages of The Python Manual, you can find expert tutorials on how to get started, what you will need and how to download and install Python. Just take your first steps into Python programming and before long you will be able to create a character and move it around the screen.

There's a lot you can achieve with Python and it's great fun to learn and create something amazing that everyone can use; so what are you waiting for?

Let's get Python programming!



@bdmpubs



BDM Publications



www.bdmpublications.com



Contents

The Python Manual



6 Say Hello to Python



- 8 Why Python?
- 10 Equipment You Will Need
- 12 Getting to Know Python
- 14 How to Set Up Python in Windows
- 16 How to Set Up Python on a Mac
- 18 How to Set Up Python in Linux
- 20 Installing a Text Editor

22 Getting Started with Python



- 24 Starting Python for the First Time
- 26 Your First Code
- 28 Saving and Executing Your Code
- 30 Executing Code from the Command Line
- 32 Numbers and Expressions
- 34 Using Comments
- 36 Working with Variables
- 38 User Input
- 40 Creating Functions
- 42 Conditions and Loops
- 44 Python Modules
- 46 Python Errors
- 48 Combining What You Know So Far

50 Working with Data



- 52 Lists
- 54 Tuples
- 56 Dictionaries
- 58 Splitting and Joining Strings

- 60 Formatting Strings
- 62 Date and Time
- 64 Opening Files
- 66 Writing to Files
- 68 Exceptions
- 70 Python Graphics
- 72 Combining What You Know So Far

74 Using Modules

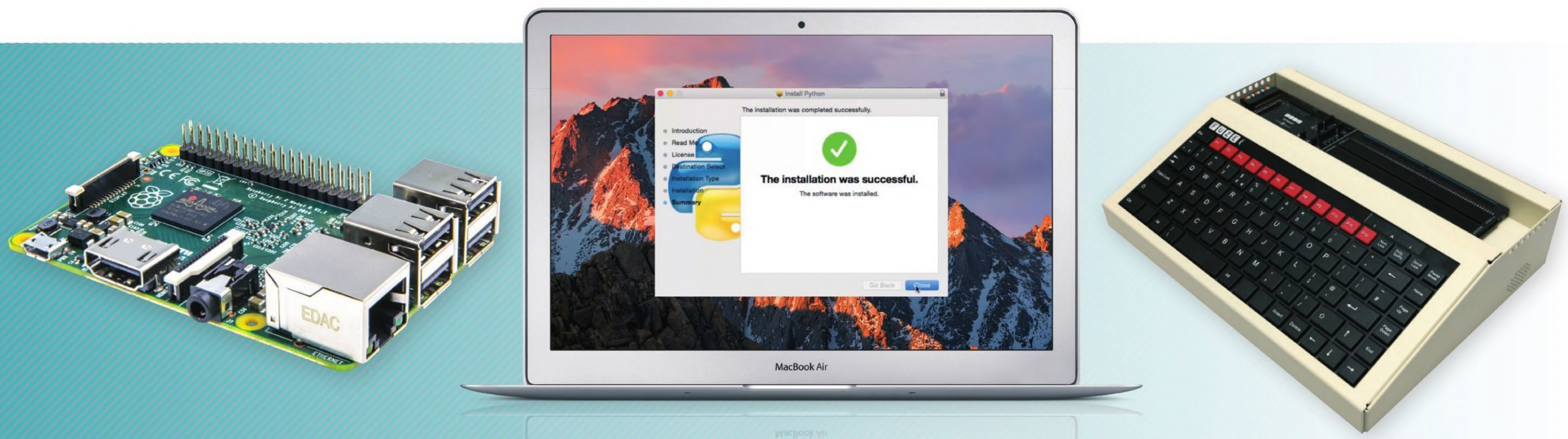


- 76 Calendar Module
- 78 OS Module
- 80 Random Module
- 82 Tkinter Module
- 84 Pygame Module
- 88 Using the Math Module
- 90 Create Your Own Modules

92 Code Repository



- 94 Python File Manager
- 96 Number Guessing Game
- 98 Polygon Circles
- 99 Random Number Generator
- 100 Random Password Generator
- 101 Keyboard Drawing Script
- 102 Pygame Text Examples
- 103 Google Search Script
- 104 Text to Binary Convertor
- 106 Basic GUI File Browser
- 108 Mouse Controlled Turtle



- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>109 Python Alarm Clock</p> <p>110 Vertically Scrolling Text</p> <p>112 Python Digital Clock</p> <p>114 Pygame Music Player</p> <p>115 Python Image Slideshow Script</p> | <p>116 Playing Music with the Winsound Module</p> <p>118 Text Adventure Script</p> <p>120 Python Scrolling Ticker Script</p> <p>121 Simple Python Calculator</p> <p>122 Hangman Game Script</p> |
|---|--|

124 Learn Object Orientated Programming with Scratch and Python



- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>126 Getting Started with Scratch</p> <p>128 Creating Scripts in Scratch</p> <p>130 Interaction in Scratch</p> <p>132 Using Sprites in Scratch</p> | <p>134 Sensing and Broadcast</p> <p>136 Objects and Local Variables</p> <p>138 Global Variables and a Dice Game</p> <p>140 Classes and Objects</p> |
|--|--|

142 Robots, Drones and Cool Python Projects



- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>144 Using GitHub</p> <p>146 Build a CamJam EduKit Robot</p> <p>148 Controlling Your Robot</p> <p>150 Add Sensors to the Robot</p> <p>152 Amazing Robotics Projects to Try</p> | <p>154 Arcade Machine Projects</p> <p>156 Security Projects</p> <p>158 Becoming a Coder</p> <p>160 Glossary of Terms</p> |
|---|--|

Black Dog i-Tech Series – The Python Manual Volume 35 – ISSN 2044-4060

Published by: Black Dog Media Limited (BDM)
Editor: James Gale
Art Director & Production: ... Mark Ayshford
Production Manager: Karl Linstead
Design: Robin Drew, Lena Whitaker
Editorial: David Hayward
Sub Editor: Paul Beard

Printed and bound in Great Britain by: Wyndeham Press Group Limited
Newsstand distribution by: Seymour Distribution Limited
 2, East Poultry Avenue, London EC1A 9PT
International distribution by: Pineapple Media Limited www.pineapple-media.com

For all advertising and promotional opportunities contact:
enquiries@bdmpublications.com

Copyright © 2018 Black Dog Media. All rights reserved.

INTERNATIONAL LICENSING – Black Dog Media has many great publications and all are available for licensing worldwide. For more information go to: www.brucesawfordlicensing.com; email: bruce@brucesawfordlicensing.com; telephone: 0044 7831 567372

Editorial and design are the copyright © Papercut Limited and is reproduced under licence to Black Dog Media. No part of this publication may be reproduced in any form, stored in a retrieval system or integrated into any other publication, database or commercial programs without the express written permission of the publisher. Under no circumstances should this publication and its contents be resold, loaned out or used in any form by way of trade without the publisher's written permission. While we pride ourselves on the quality of the information we provide, Black Dog Media Limited reserves the right not to be held responsible for any mistakes or inaccuracies found within the text of this publication. Due to the nature of the software industry, the publisher cannot guarantee that all tutorials will work on every version of Raspbian OS. It remains the purchaser's sole responsibility to determine the suitability of this book and its content for whatever purpose. Images reproduced on the front and back cover are solely for design purposes and are not representative of content. We advise all potential buyers to check listing prior to purchase for confirmation of actual content. All editorial opinion herein is that of the reviewer as an individual and is not representative of the publisher or any of its affiliates. Therefore the publisher holds no responsibility in regard to editorial opinion and content.

Black Dog i-Tech Series Volume 35 – The Python Manual is an independent publication and as such does not necessarily reflect the views or opinions of the producers contained within. This publication is not endorsed or associated in any way with The Linux Foundation, The Raspberry Pi Foundation, ARM Holding, Canonical Ltd, Python, Debian Project, Lenovo, Dell, Hewlett-Packard, Apple or any associate or affiliate company. All copyrights, trademarks and registered trademarks for the respective companies are acknowledged. Relevant graphic imagery reproduced with courtesy of Lenovo, Raspberry Pi, Hewlett-Packard, Dell, Python, Scratch, Samsung, Canonical and Apple.

Additional images contained within this publication are reproduced under licence from Shutterstock.com.

Prices, international availability, ratings, titles and content are subject to change. All information was correct at time of print. Some content may have been previously published in other volumes or BDM titles. We advise potential buyers to check the suitability of contents prior to purchase.



Black Dog Media Limited (BDM)
 Registered in England & Wales No: 5311511



Say Hello to Python





There are many different programming languages available to learn and use. Some are vastly complex and incredibly powerful and some are extremely basic and used as minor utilities for the operating system. Python sits somewhere in the middle, combining ease of use with a generous helping of power to allow the user to create a range of minor utilities, some excellent games and performance heavy computational tasks too.

However, there’s more to Python than simply being another programming language. It has a vibrant and lively community behind it that shares knowledge, code and project ideas, as well as bug fixes for future releases. It’s thanks to this community that the language has grown and thrived. Now it’s your turn to take the plunge and learn how to program in Python.

Read on and let’s see how to start you off on your Python Adventure.

.....

8	Why Python?
10	Equipment You Will Need
12	Getting to Know Python
14	How to Set Up Python in Windows
16	How to Set Up Python on a Mac
18	How to Set Up Python in Linux
20	Installing a Text Editor



Why Python?

There are many different programming languages available for the modern computer, and some still available for older 8 and 16-bit computers too. Some of these languages are designed for scientific work, others for mobile platforms and such. So why choose Python out of all the rest?

PYTHON POWER

Ever since the earliest home computers were available, enthusiasts, users and professionals have toiled away until the wee hours, slaving over an overheating heap of circuitry to create something akin to magic.

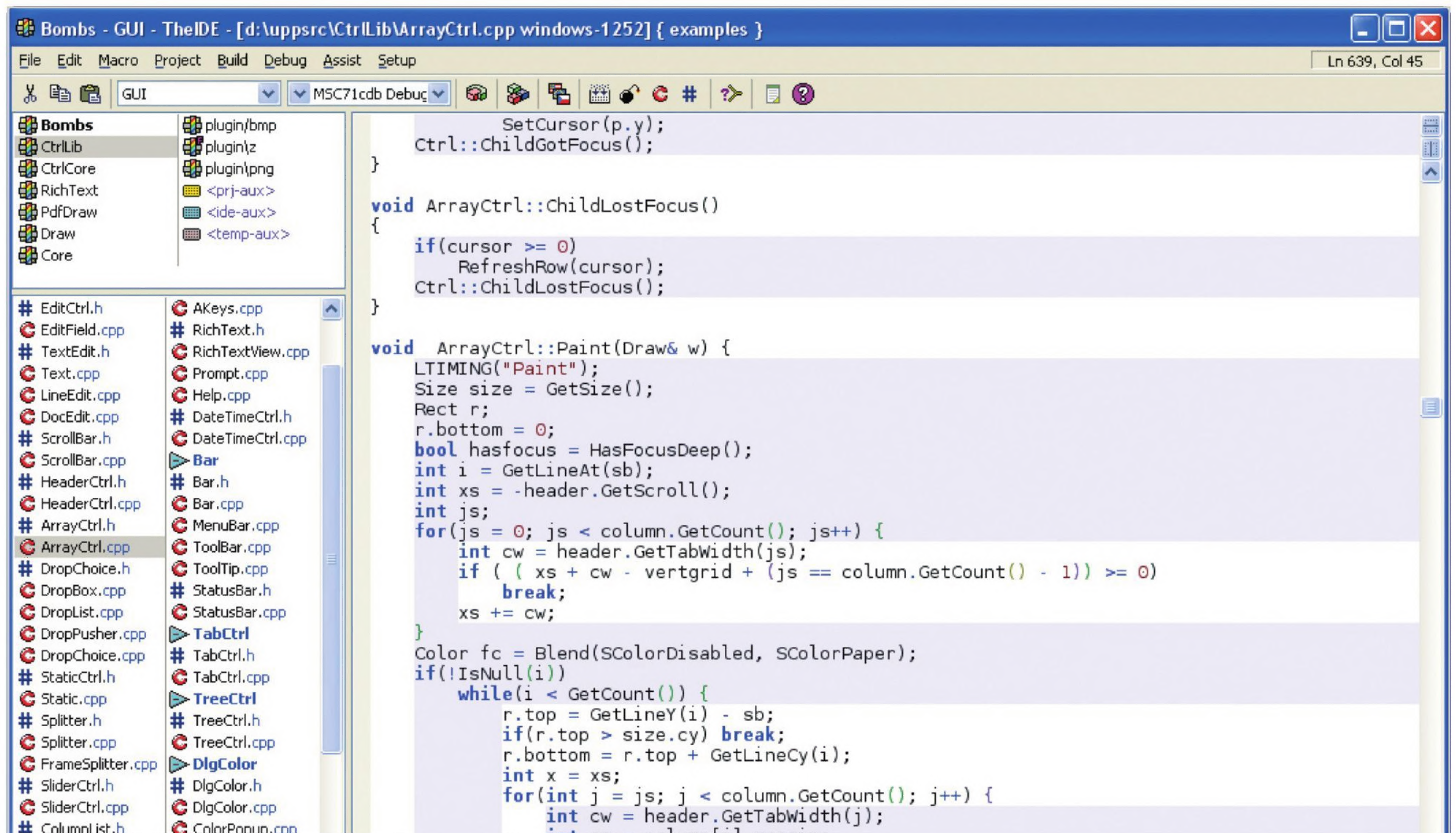
These pioneers of programming carved their way into a new frontier, forging small routines that enabled the letter 'A' to scroll across the screen. It may not sound terribly exciting to a generation that's used to ultra high-definition graphics and open world, multi-player online gaming. However, forty-something years ago it was blindingly brilliant.

Naturally these bedroom coders helped form the foundations for every piece of digital technology we use today. Some went on to become chief developers for top software companies, whereas others pushed the available hardware to its limits and founded the billion pound gaming empire that continually amazes us.

Regardless of whether you use an Android device, iOS device, PC, Mac, Linux, Smart TV, games console, MP3 player, GPS device built-in to a car, set-top box or a thousand other connected and 'smart' appliances, behind them all is programming.

All those aforementioned digital devices need instructions to tell them what to do, and allow them to be interacted with. These instructions form the programming core of the device and that core can be built using a variety of programming languages.

The languages in use today differ depending on the situation, the platform, the device's use and how the device will interact with its



C++ is usually reserved for more complex programs, operating systems, games and so on.




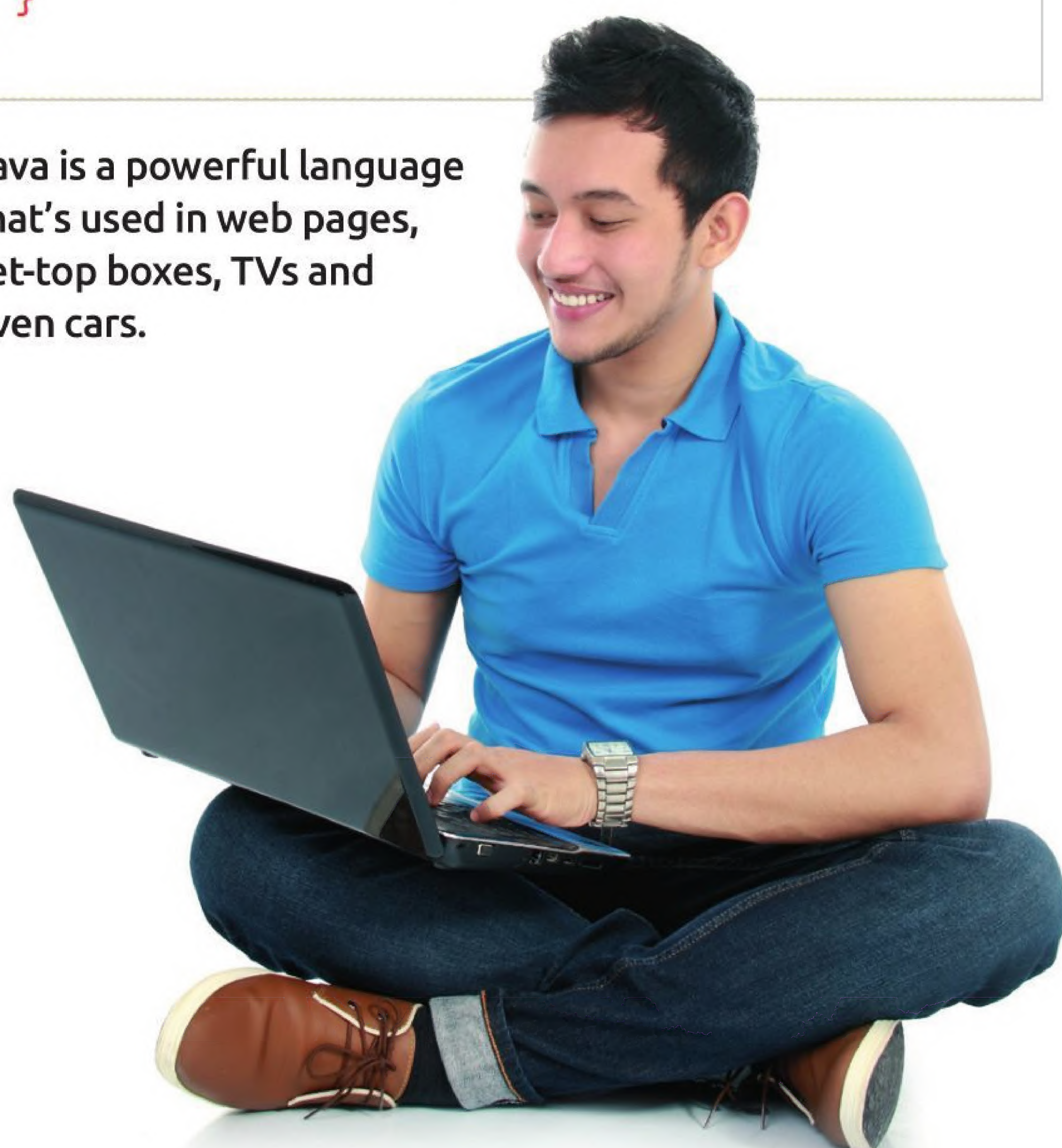
environment or users. Operating systems, such as Windows, macOS and such are usually a combination of C++, C#, assembly and some form of visual-based language. Games generally use C++ whilst web pages can use a plethora of available languages such as HTML, Java, Python and so on.

More general-purpose programming is used to create programs, apps, software or whatever else you want to call them. They're widely used across all hardware platforms and suit virtually every conceivable application. Some operate faster than others and some are easier to learn and use than others. Python is one such general-purpose language.

Python is what's known as a High-Level Language, in that it 'talks' to the hardware and operating system using a variety of arrays, variables, objects, arithmetic, subroutines, loops and countless more interactions. Whilst it's not as streamlined as a Low-Level Language, which can deal directly with memory addresses, call stacks and registers, its benefit is that it's universally accessible and easy to learn.

```
1 //file: Invoke.java
2 import java.lang.reflect.*;
3
4 class Invoke {
5     public static void main( String [] args ) {
6         try {
7             Class c = Class.forName( args[0] );
8             Method m = c.getMethod( args[1], new Class
9                 [] { } );
10            Object ret = m.invoke( null, null );
11            System.out.println(
12                "Invoked static method: " + args[1]
13                + " of class: " + args[0]
14                + " with no args\nResults: " + ret );
15        } catch ( ClassNotFoundException e ) {
16            // Class.forName( ) can't find the class
17        } catch ( NoSuchMethodException e2 ) {
18            // that method doesn't exist
19        } catch ( IllegalAccessException e3 ) {
20            // we don't have permission to invoke that
21            // method
22        } catch ( InvocationTargetException e4 ) {
23            // an exception occurred while invoking that
24            // method
25            System.out.println(
26                "Method threw an: " + e4.
27                getTargetException( ) );
28        }
29    }
30 }
```

 Java is a powerful language that's used in web pages, set-top boxes, TVs and even cars.



Python was created over twenty six years ago and has evolved to become an ideal beginner's language for learning how to program a computer. It's perfect for the hobbyist, enthusiast, student, teacher and those who simply need to create their own unique interaction between either themselves or a piece of external hardware and the computer itself.

Python is free to download, install and use and is available for Linux, Windows, macOS, MS-DOS, OS/2, BeOS, IBM i-series machines, and even RISC OS. It has been voted one of the top five programming languages in the world and is continually evolving ahead of the hardware and Internet development curve.

So to answer the question: why python? Simply put, it's free, easy to learn, exceptionally powerful, universally accepted, effective and a superb learning and educational tool.

```
40 LET PY=15
70 FOR W=1 TO 10
71 CLS
75 LET BY=INT (RND*28)
80 LET BX=0
90 FOR D=1 TO 20
100 PRINT AT PX, PY; " U "
110 PRINT AT BX, BY; " o "
120 IF INKEY$="P" THEN LET PY=PY
130 IF INKEY$="O" THEN LET PY=PY
140 IF PY<2 THEN LET PY=2
150 IF PY>27 THEN LET PY=27
160 LET BX=BX+1
170 PRINT AT BX-1, BY; " "
180 NEXT D
190 IF (BY-1)=PY THEN LET S=S+1
200 PRINT AT 10, 10; "score="; S
210 FOR V=1 TO 1000: NEXT V
300 NEXT W

0 OK, 0:1
```

 BASIC was once the starter language that early 8-bit home computer users learned.

```
print(HANGMAN[0])
attempts = len(HANGMAN) - 1

while (attempts != 0 and "-" in word_guessed):
    print("\nYou have {} attempts remaining".format(attempts))
    joined_word = "".join(word_guessed)
    print(joined_word)

    try:
        player_guess = str(input("\nPlease select a letter between A-Z" + "\n> ")).
    except: # check valid input
        print("That is not valid input. Please try again.")
        continue
    else:
        if not player_guess.isalpha(): # check the input is a letter. Also checks a
            print("That is not a letter. Please try again.")
            continue
        elif len(player_guess) > 1: # check the input is only one letter
            print("That is more than one letter. Please try again.")
            continue
        elif player_guess in guessed_letters: # check if letter hasn't been guessed
            print("You have already guessed that letter. Please try again.")
            continue
        else:
            pass

        guessed_letters.append(player_guess)

    for letter in range(len(chosen_word)):
        if player_guess == chosen_word[letter]:
            word_guessed[letter] = player_guess # replace all letters in the chosen

    if player_guess not in chosen_word:
```

 Python is a more modern take on BASIC, it's easy to learn and makes for an ideal beginner's programming language.



Equipment You Will Need

You can learn Python with very little hardware or initial financial investment. You don't need an incredibly powerful computer and any software that's required is freely available.

WHAT WE'RE USING

Thankfully, Python is a multi-platform programming language available for Windows, macOS, Linux, Raspberry Pi and more. If you have one of those systems, then you can easily start using Python.



☐ COMPUTER

Obviously you're going to need a computer in order to learn how to program in Python and to test your code. You can use Windows (from XP onward) on either a 32 or 64-bit processor, an Apple Mac or Linux installed PC.

☐ AN IDE

An IDE (Integrated Developer Environment) is used to enter and execute Python code. It enables you to inspect your program code and the values within the code, as well as offering advanced features. There are many different IDEs available, so find the one that works for you and gives the best results.

☐ PYTHON SOFTWARE

macOS and Linux already come with Python preinstalled as part of the operating system, as does the Raspberry Pi. However, you need to ensure that you're running the latest version of Python. Windows users need to download and install Python, which we'll cover shortly.

☐ TEXT EDITOR

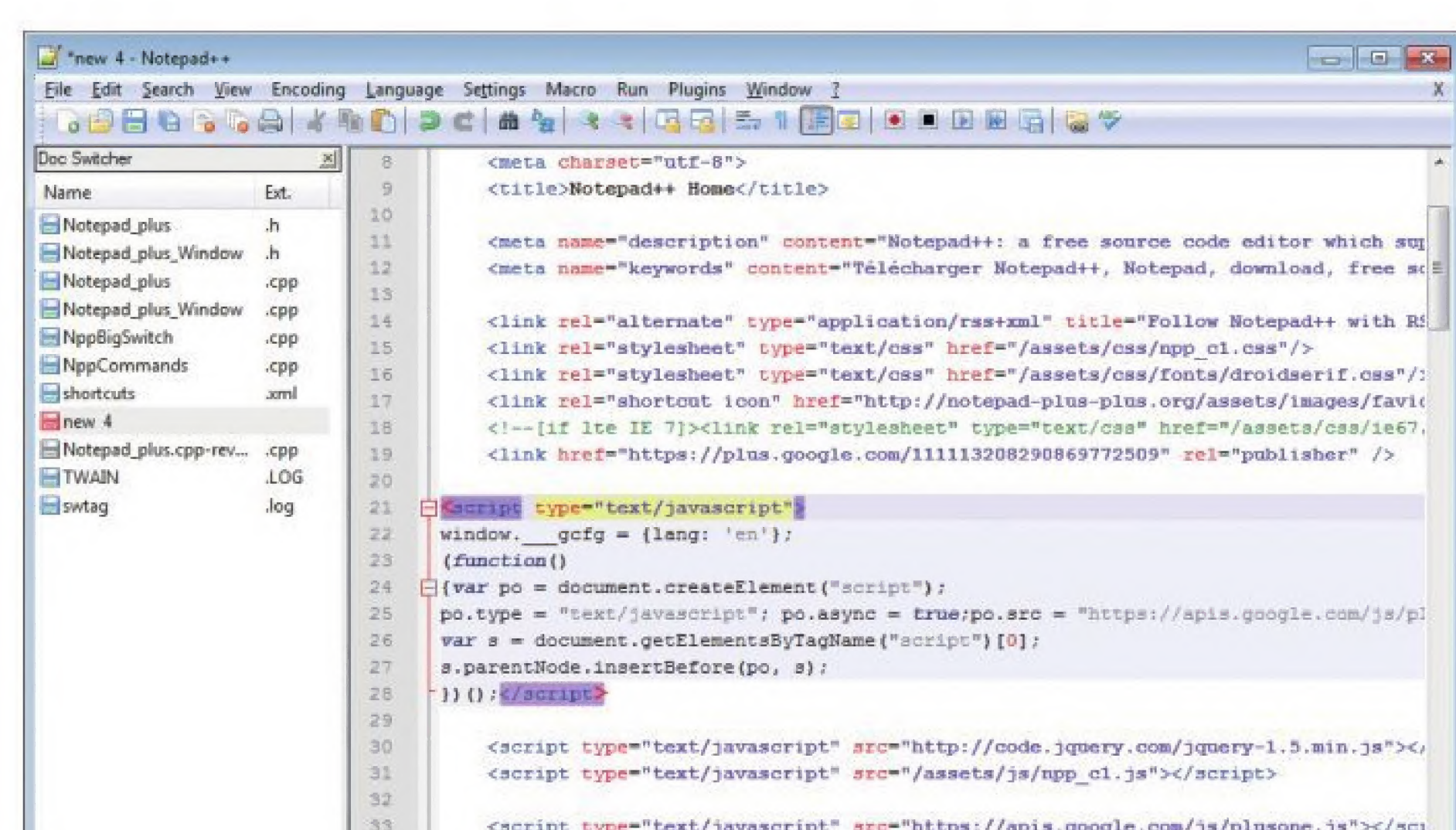
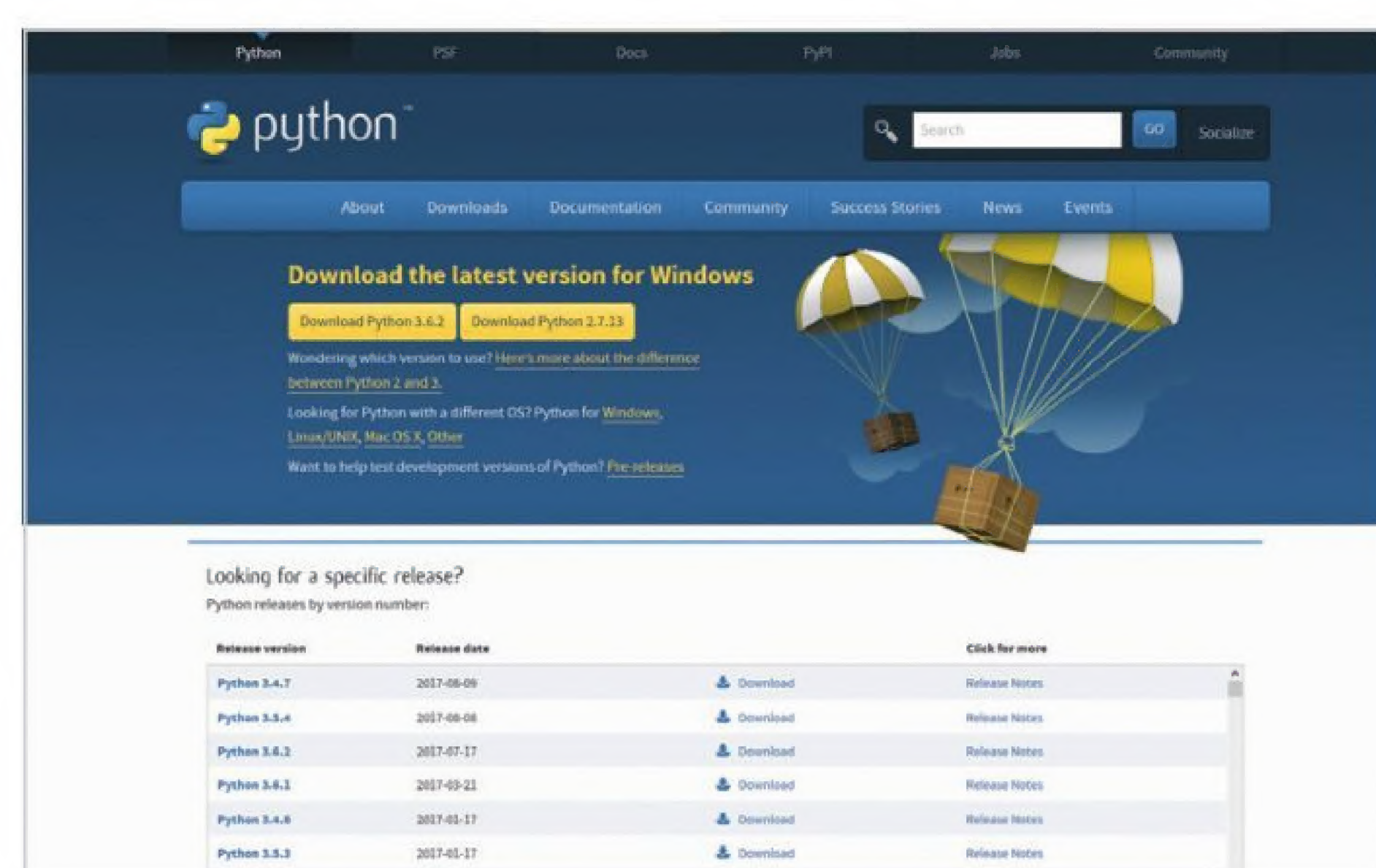
Whilst a text editor is an ideal environment to enter code into, it's not an absolute necessity. You can enter and execute code directly from the IDLE but a text editor, such as Sublime Text or Notepad++, offers more advanced features and colour coding when entering code.

☐ INTERNET ACCESS

Python is an ever evolving environment and as such new versions often introduce new concepts or change existing commands and code structure to make it a more efficient language. Having access to the Internet will keep you up-to-date, help you out when you get stuck and give access to Python's immense number of modules.

☐ TIME AND PATIENCE

Despite what other books may lead you to believe, you won't become a programmer in 24-hours. Learning to code in Python takes time, and patience. You may become stuck at times and other times the code will flow like water. Understand you're learning something entirely new, and you will get there.





THE RASPBERRY PI

Why use a Raspberry Pi? The Raspberry Pi is a tiny computer that's very cheap to purchase but offers the user a fantastic learning platform. It's main operating system, Raspbian, comes preinstalled with the latest Python along with many Modules and extras.

RASPBERRY PI

The Raspberry Pi 3 is the latest version, incorporating a more powerful CPU, more memory, Wi-Fi and Bluetooth support. You can pick up a Pi for around £32 or as a part of kit for £50+, depending on the kit you're interested in.



FUZE PROJECT

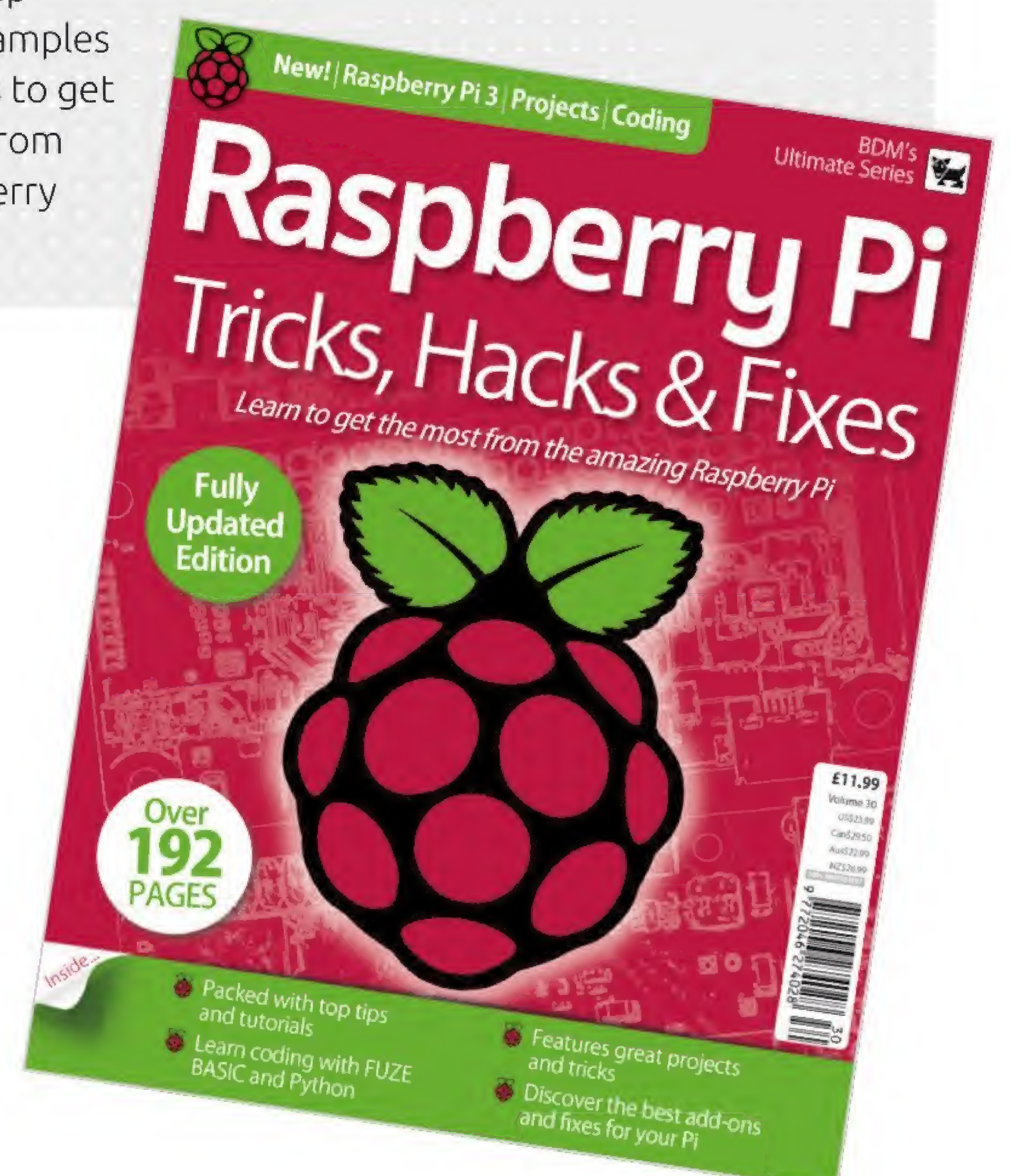
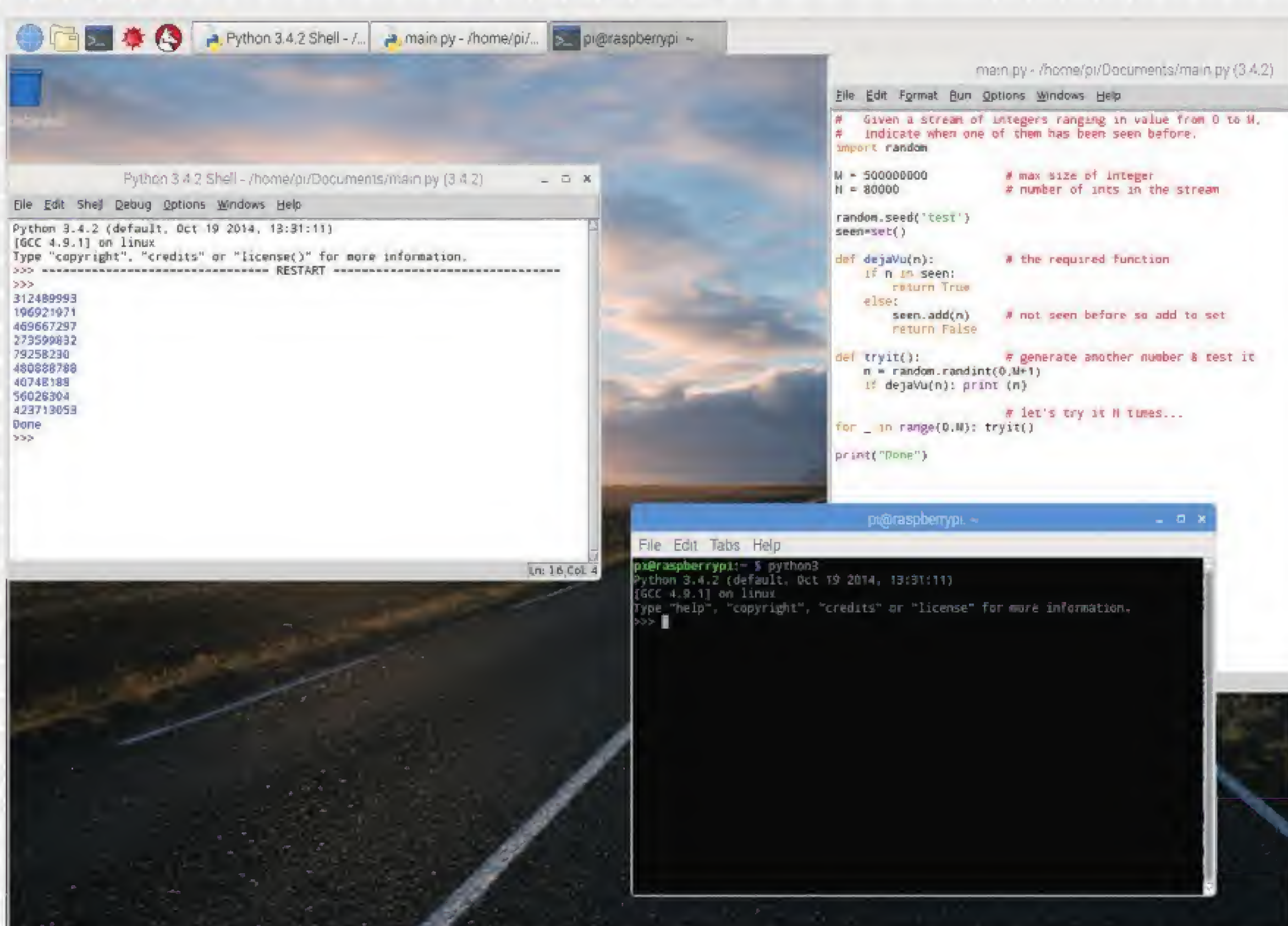
The FUZE is a learning environment built on the latest model of the Raspberry Pi. You can purchase the workstations that come with an electronics kit and even a robot arm for you to build and program. You can find more information on the FUZE at www.fuze.co.uk.

BOOKS

We have several great Raspberry Pi titles available via www.bdmpublications.com. Our Pi books cover how to buy your first Raspberry Pi, set it up and use it; there are some great step-by-step project examples and guides to get the most from the Raspberry Pi too.

RASPIAN

The Raspberry Pi's main operating system is a Debian-based Linux distribution that comes with everything you need in a simple to use package. It's streamlined for the Pi and is an ideal platform for hardware and software projects, Python programming and even as a desktop computer.





Getting to Know Python

Python is the greatest computer programming language ever created. It enables you to fully harness the power of a computer, in a language that's clean and easy to understand.

WHAT IS PROGRAMMING?

It helps to understand what a programming language is before you try to learn one, and Python is no different. Let's take a look at how Python came about and how it relates to other languages.

PYTHON

A programming language is a list of instructions that a computer follows. These instructions can be as simple as displaying your name or playing a music file, or as complex as building a whole virtual world. Python is a programming language conceived in the late 1980s by Guido van Rossum at Centrum Wiskunde & Informatica (CWI) in the Netherlands as a successor to the ABC language.

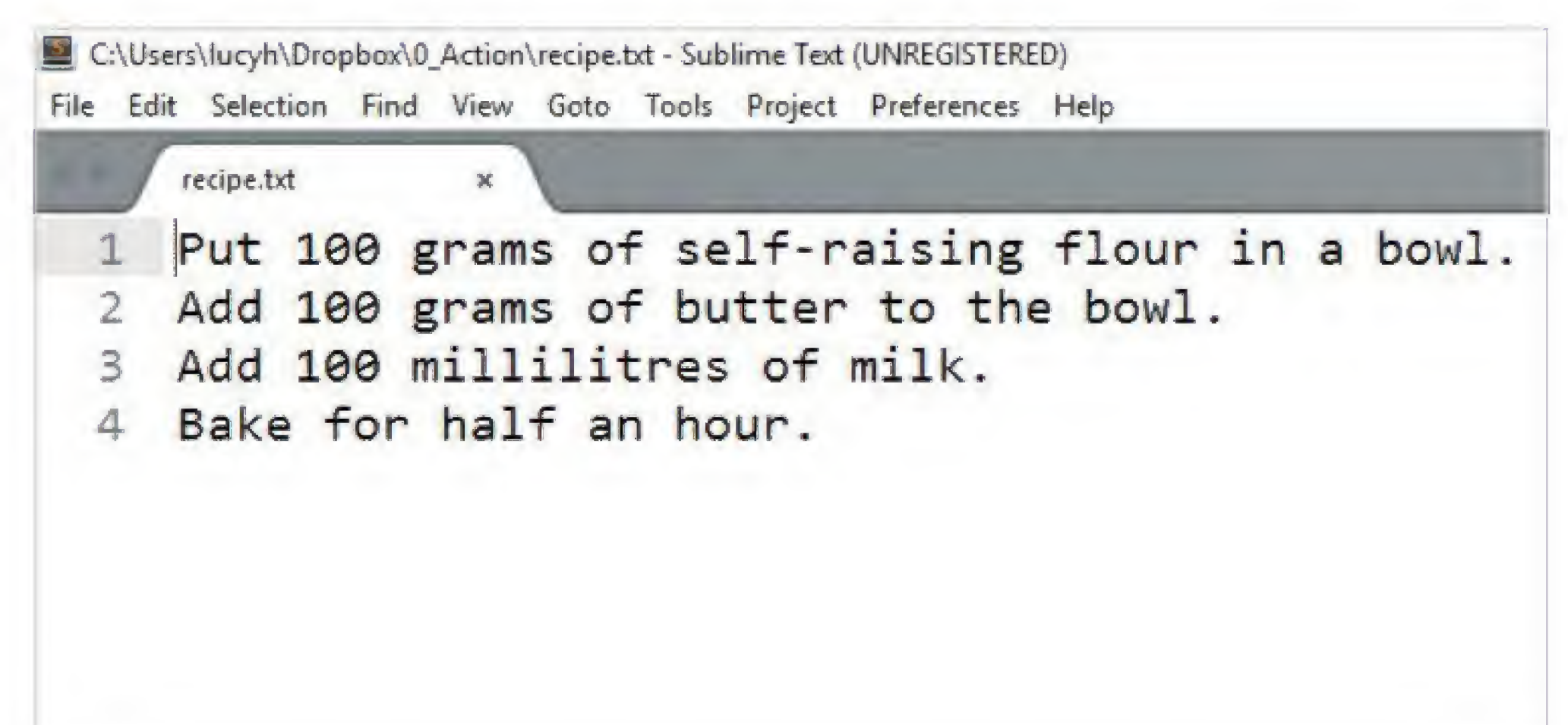
Guido van Rossum, the father of Python.



PROGRAMMING RECIPES

Programs are like recipes for computers. A recipe to bake a cake could go like this:

Put 100 grams of self-raising flour in a bowl.
Add 100 grams of butter to the bowl.
Add 100 millilitres of milk.
Bake for half an hour.



CODE

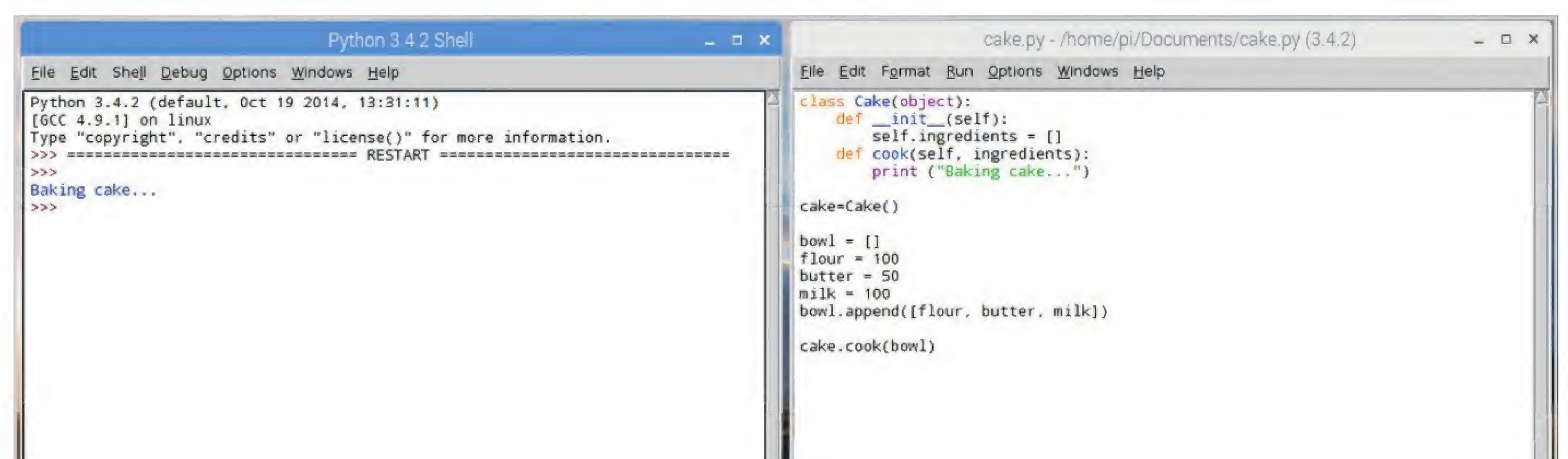
Just like a recipe, a program consists of instructions that you follow in order. A program that describes a cake might run like this:

```
bowl = []
flour = 100
butter = 50
milk = 100
bowl.append([flour, butter, milk])
cake.cook(bowl)
```



PROGRAM COMMANDS

You might not understand some of the Python commands, like `bowl.append` and `cake.cook(bowl)`. The first is a list, the second an object; we'll look at both in this book. The main thing to know is that it's easy to read commands in Python. Once you learn what the commands do, it's easy to figure out how a program works.





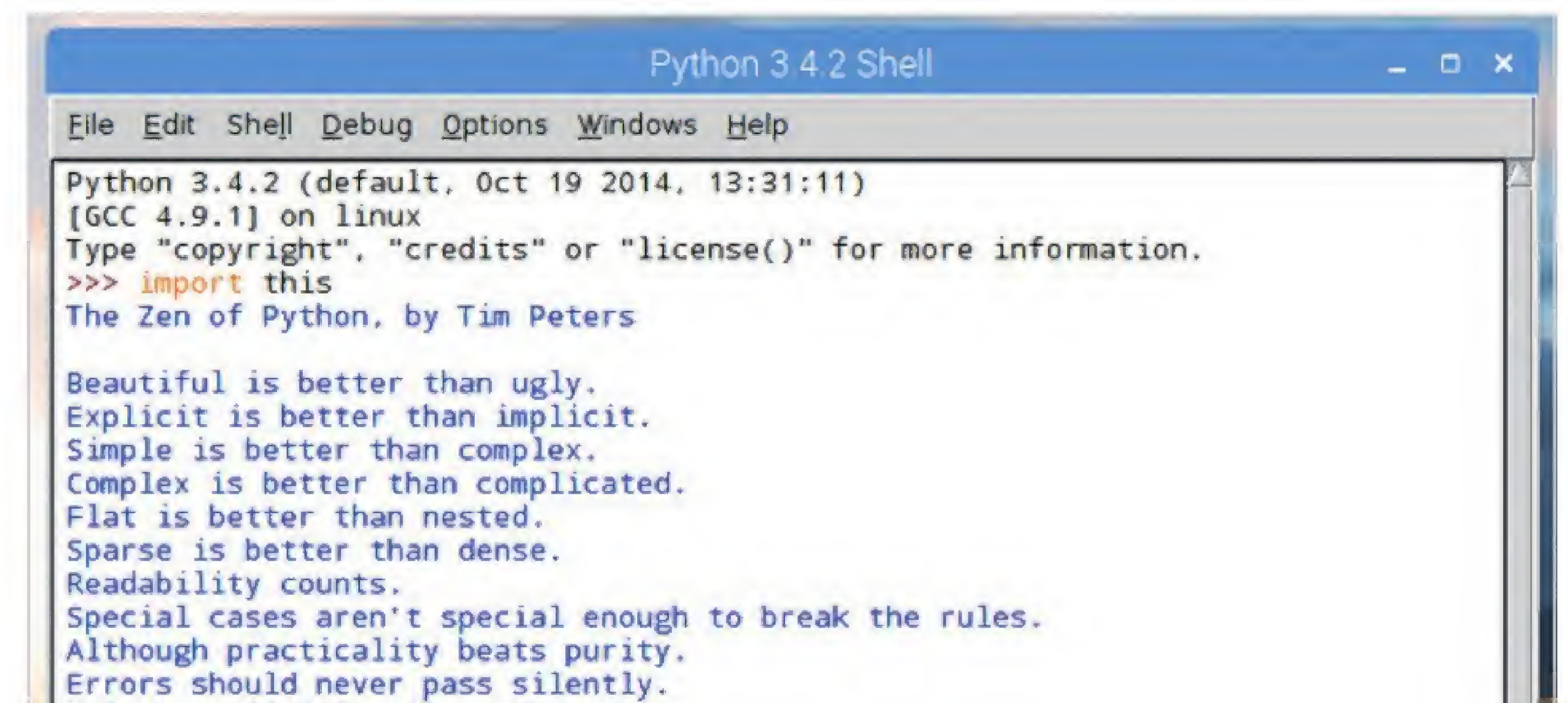
HIGH-LEVEL LANGUAGES

Computer languages that are easy to read are known as “high-level”. This is because they fly high above the hardware (also referred to as “the metal”). Languages that “fly close to the metal,” like Assembly, are known as “low-level”. Low-level languages commands read a bit like this: `msg db ,0xa len equ $ - msg`.



ZEN OF PYTHON

Python lets you access all the power of a computer in a language that humans can understand. Behind all this is an ethos called “The Zen of Python.” This is a collection of 20 software principles that influences the design of the language. Principles include “Beautiful is better than ugly” and “Simple is better than complex.” Type `import this` into Python and it will display all the principles.



PYTHON 3 VS PYTHON 2

In a typical computing scenario, Python is complicated somewhat by the existence of two active versions of the language: Python 2 and Python 3.

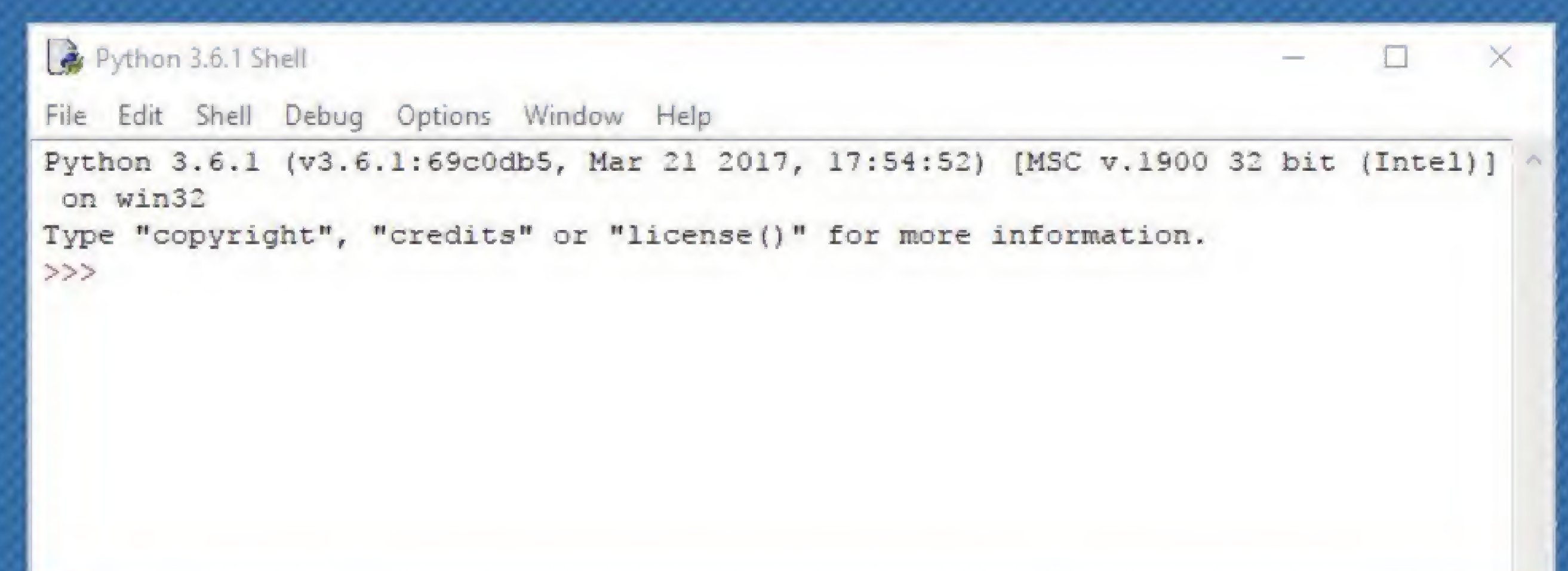
WORLD OF PYTHON

When you visit the Python Download page you’ll notice that there are two buttons available: one for Python 3.6.2 and the other for Python 2.7.13; correct at the time of writing (remember Python is frequently updated so you may see different version numbers).



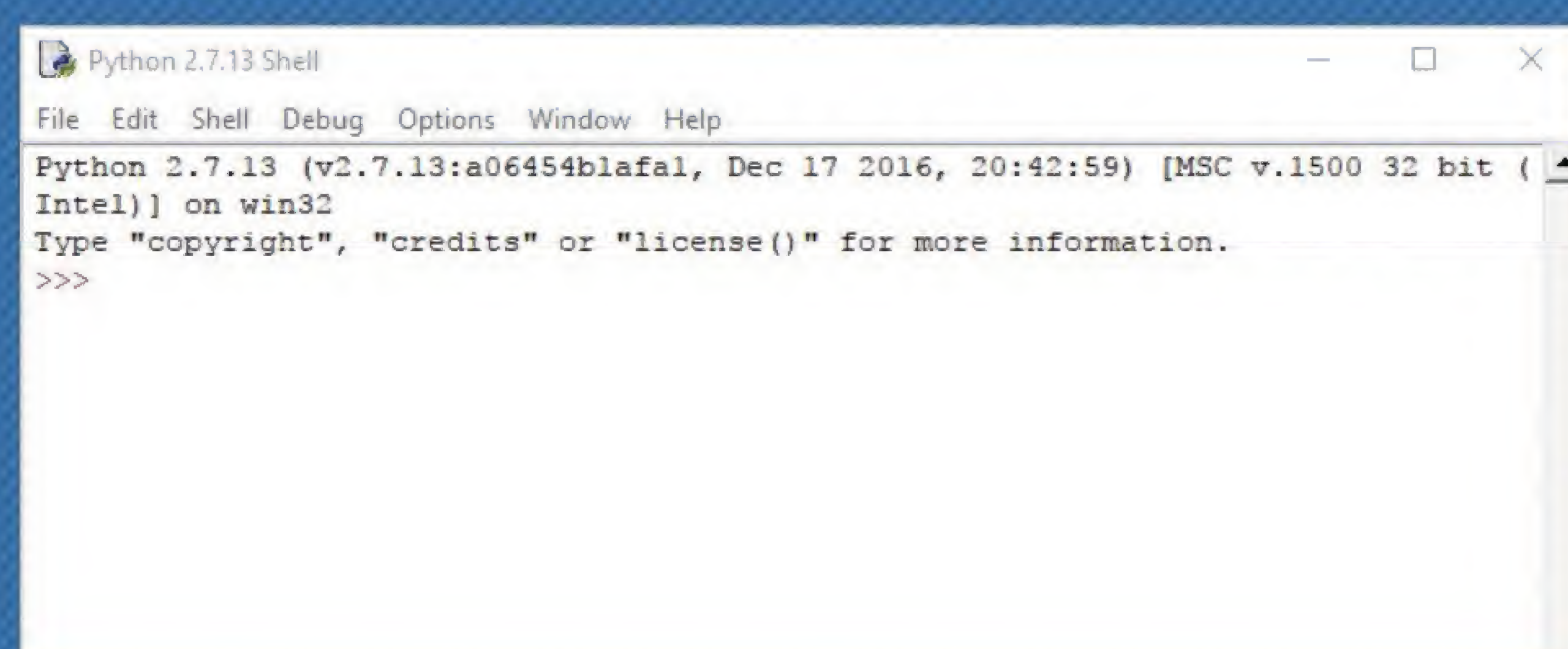
PYTHON 3.X

In 2008 Python 3 arrived with several new and enhanced features. These features provide a more stable, effective and efficient programming environment but sadly, most (if not all) of these new features are not compatible with Python 2 scripts, modules and tutorials. Whilst not popular at first, Python 3 has since become the cutting edge of Python programming.



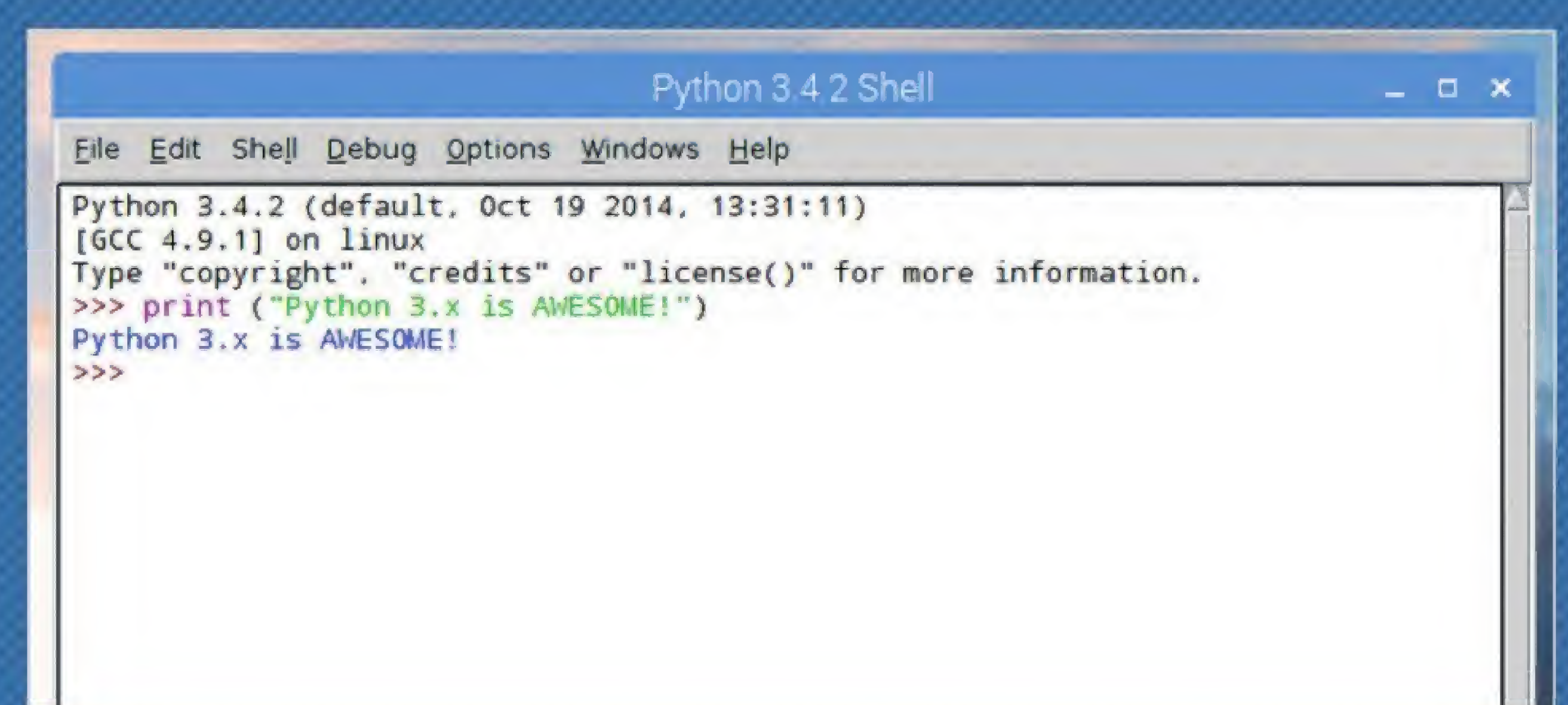
PYTHON 2.X

So why two? Well, Python 2 was originally launched in 2000 and has since then adopted quite a large collection of modules, scripts, users, tutorials and so on. Over the years Python 2 has fast become one of the first go to programming languages for beginners and experts to code in, which makes it an extremely valuable resource.



3.X WINS

Python 3’s growing popularity has meant that it’s now prudent to start learning to develop with the new features and begin to phase out the previous version. Many development companies, such as SpaceX and NASA use Python 3 for snippets of important code.





How to Set Up Python in Windows

Windows users can easily install the latest version of Python via the main Python Downloads page. Whilst most seasoned Python developers may shun Windows as the platform of choice for building their code, it's still an ideal starting point for beginners.

INSTALLING PYTHON 3.X

Microsoft Windows doesn't come with Python preinstalled as standard, so you're going to have to install it yourself manually. Thankfully, it's an easy process to follow.

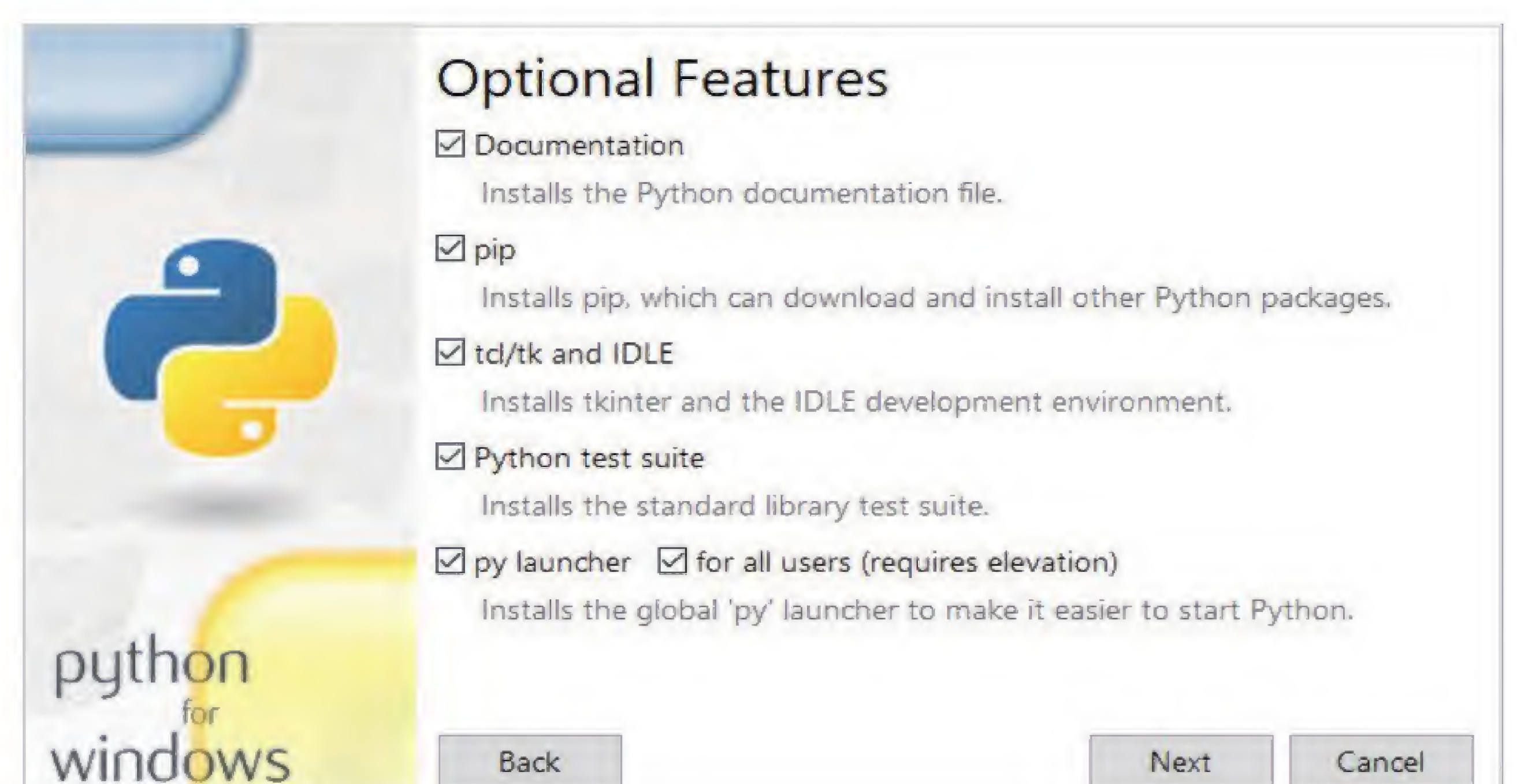
STEP 1 Start by opening your web browser to www.python.org/downloads/. Look for the button detailing the download link for Python 3.x.x (in our case this is Python 3.6.2 but as mentioned you may see later versions of 3).



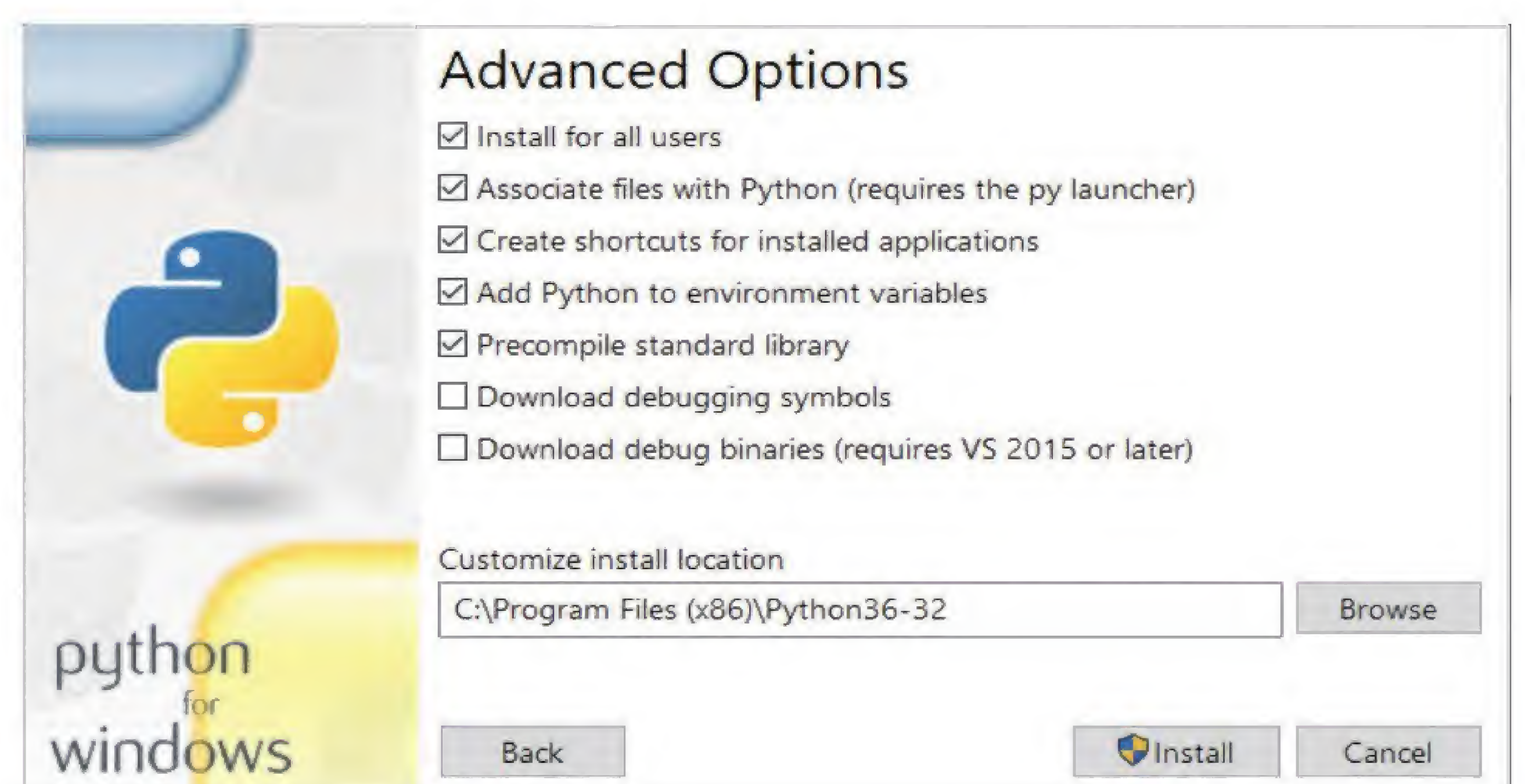
STEP 2 Click the download button for version 3.x, and save the file to your Downloads folder. When the file is downloaded, double-click the executable and the Python installation wizard will launch. From here you have two choices: Install Now and Customise Installation. We recommend opting for the Customise Installation link.



STEP 3 Choosing the Customise option allows you to specify certain parameters, and whilst you may stay with the defaults, it's a good habit to adopt as sometimes (not with Python, thankfully) installers can include unwanted additional features. On the first screen available, ensure all boxes are ticked and click the Next button.

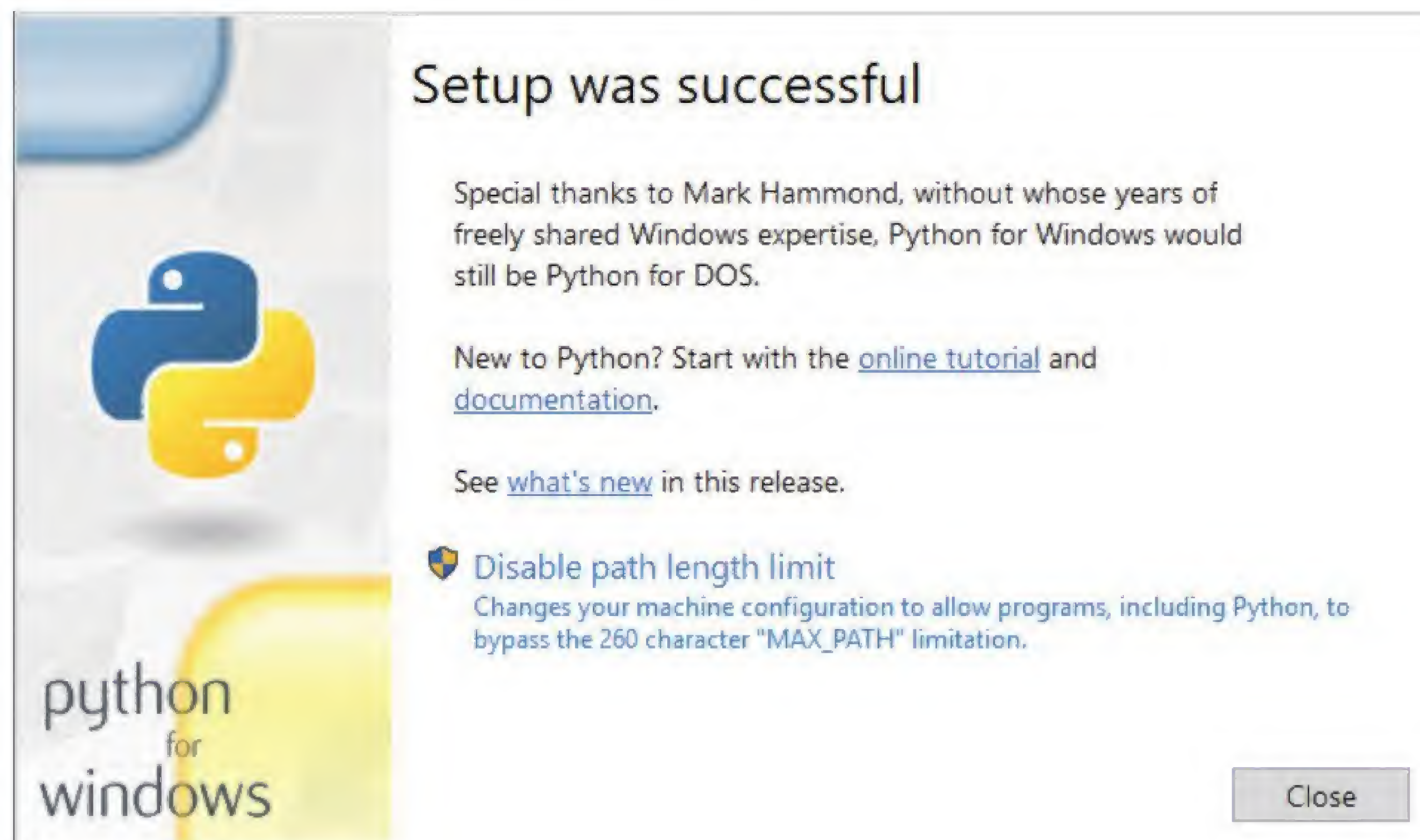


STEP 4 The next page of options include some interesting additions to Python. Ensure the Associate file with Python, Create Shortcuts, Add Python to Environment Variables, Precompile Standard Library and Install for All Users options are ticked. These make using Python later much easier. Click Install when you're ready to continue.

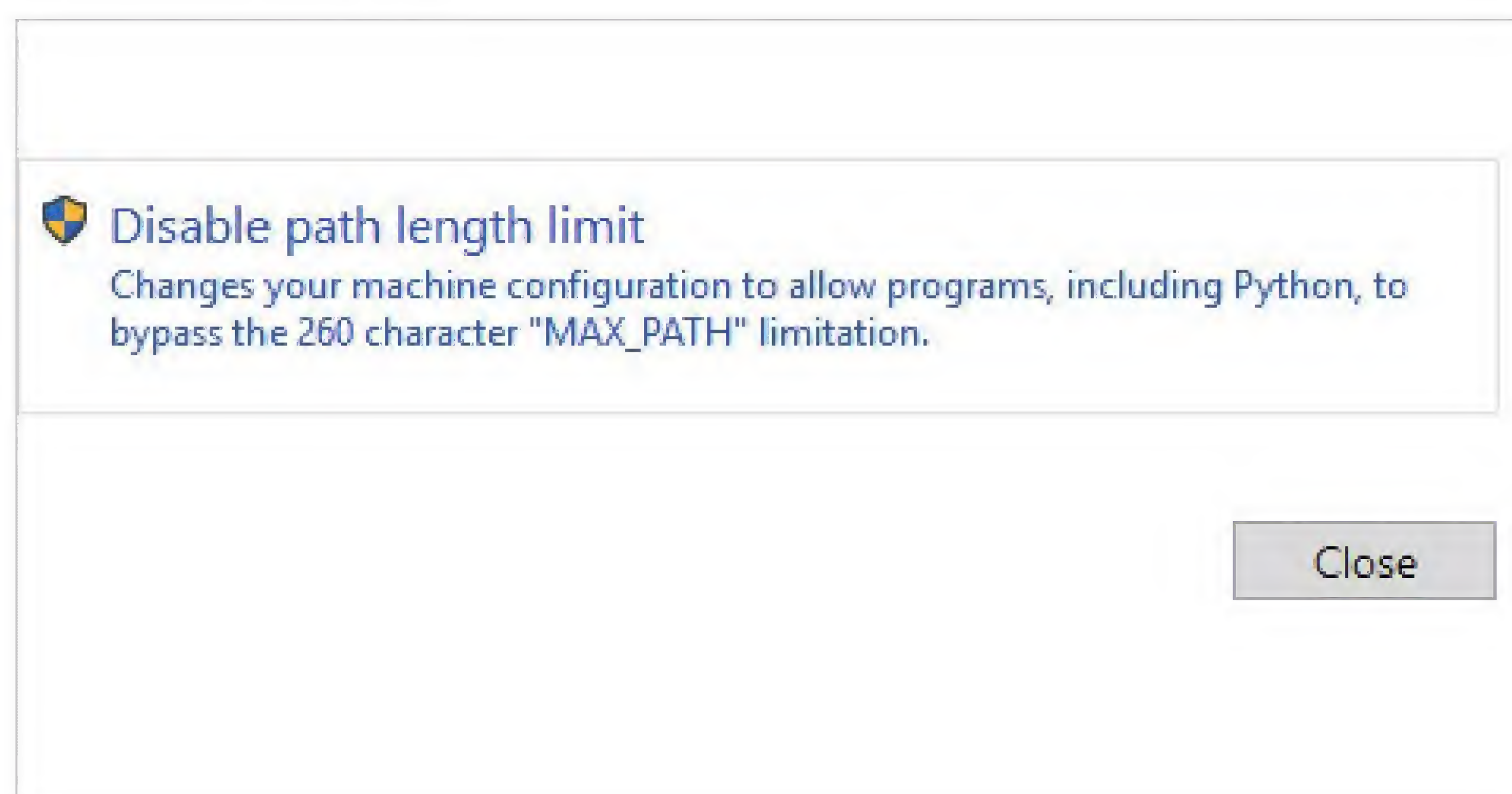


**STEP 5**

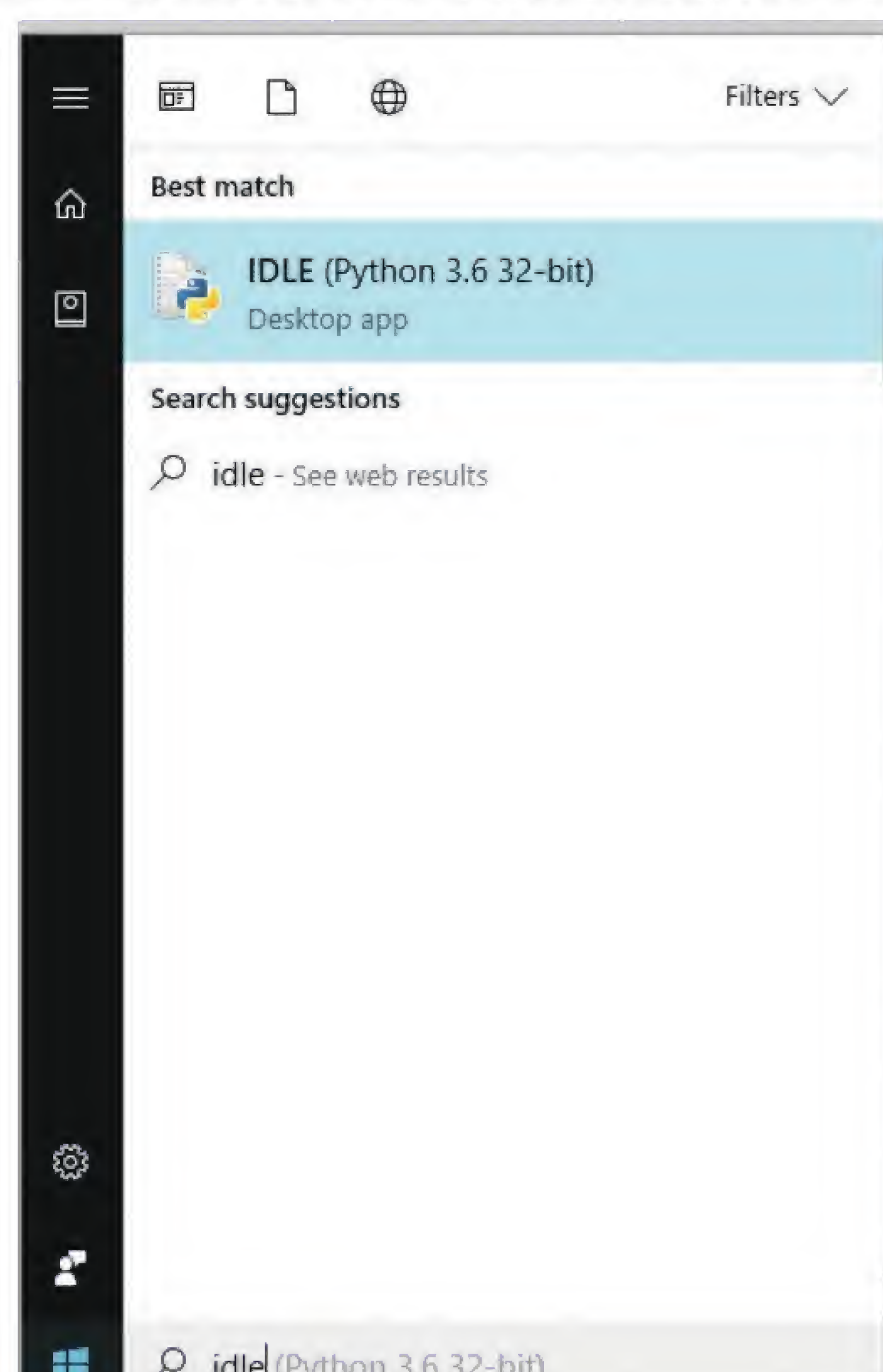
You may need to confirm the installation with the Windows authentication notification. Simply click Yes and Python will begin to install. Once the installation is complete the final Python wizard page will allow you to view the latest release notes, and follow some online tutorials.

**STEP 6**

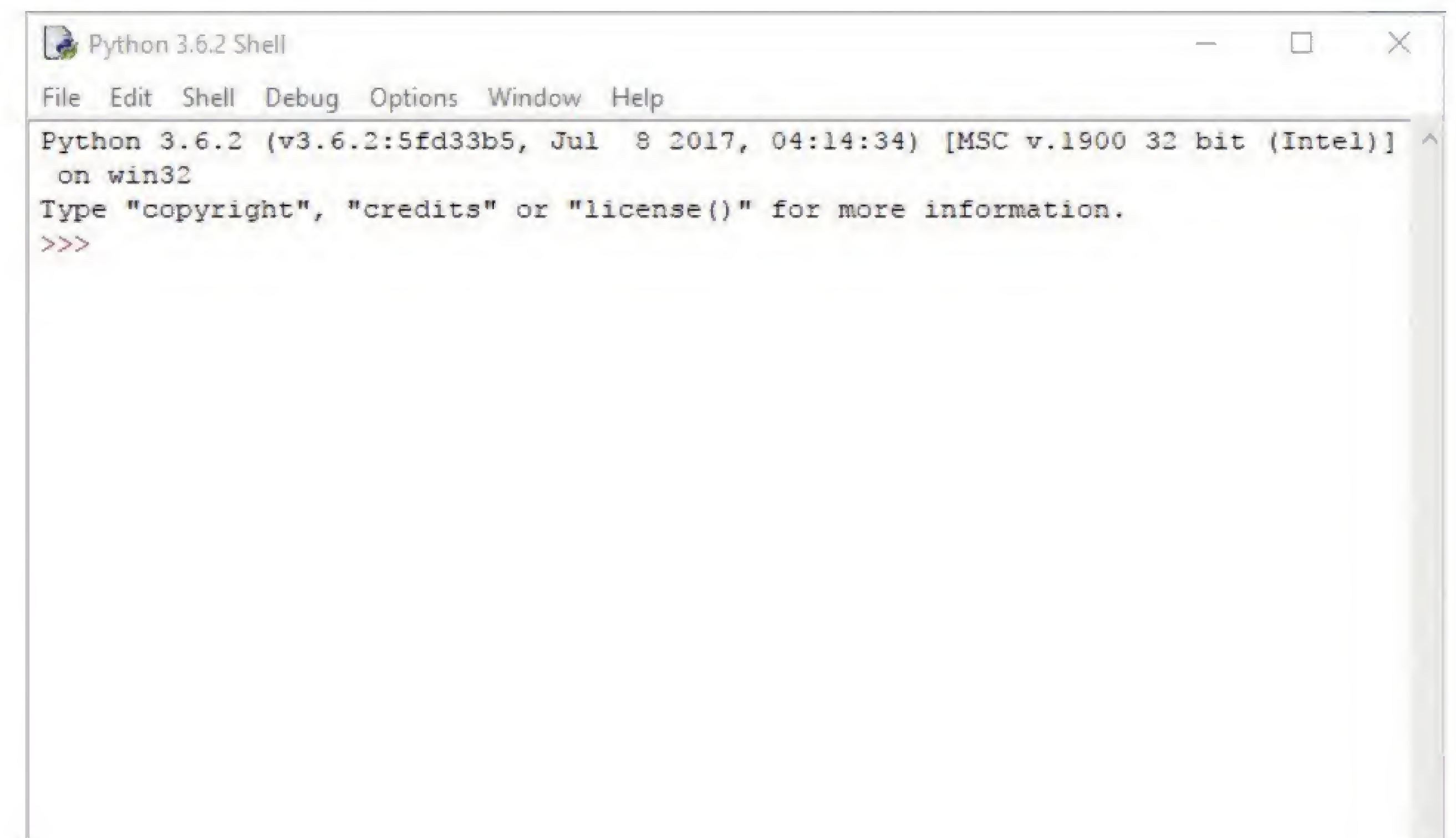
Before you close the install wizard window, however, it's best to click on the link next to the shield detailed Disable Path Length Limit. This will allow Python to bypass the Windows 260 character limitation, enabling you to execute Python programs stored in deep folders arrangements. Again, click Yes to authenticate the process; then you can Close the installation window.

**STEP 7**

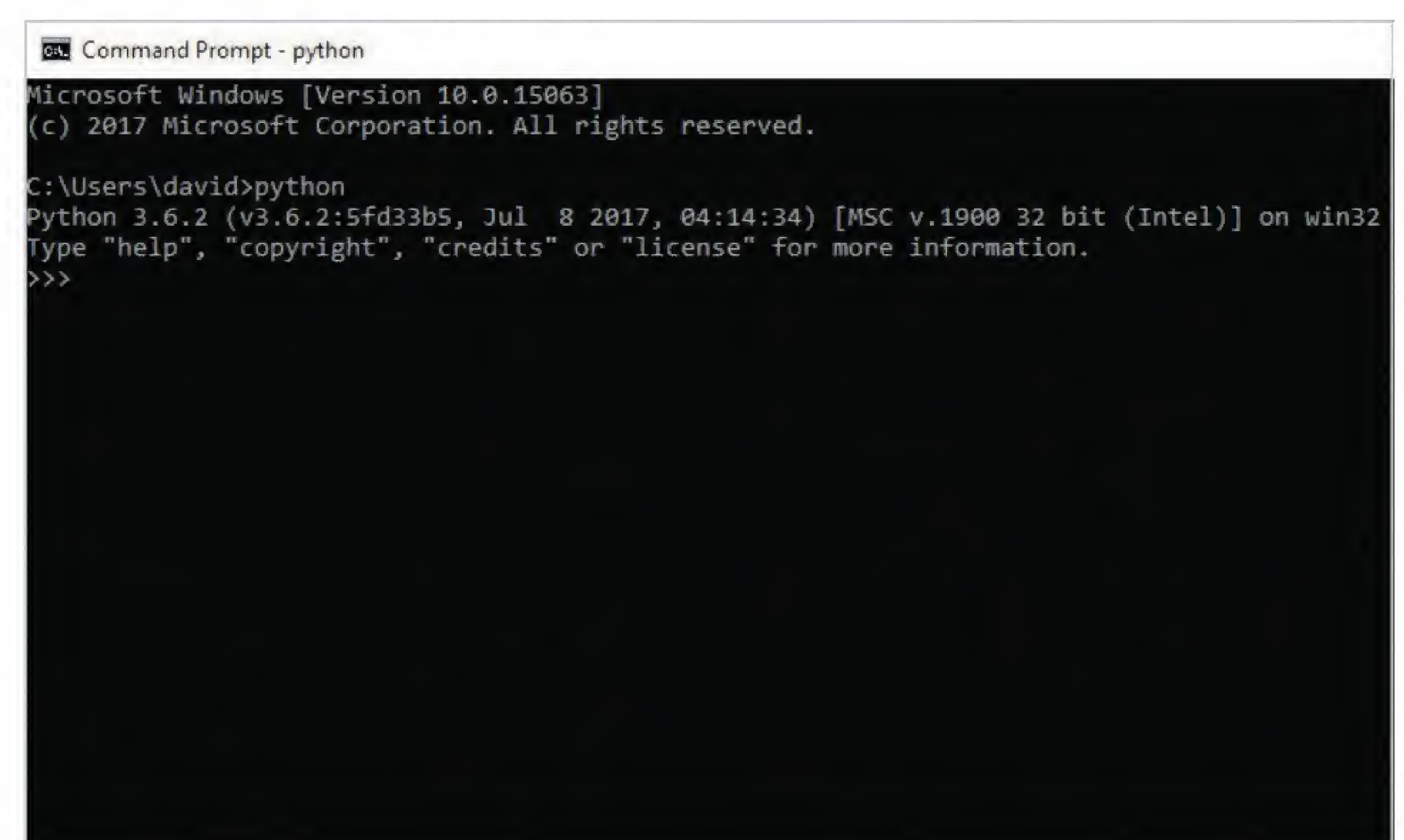
Windows 10 users will now find the installed Python 3.x within the Start button Recently Added section. The first link, Python 3.6 (32-bit) will launch the command line version of Python when clicked (more on that in a moment). To open the IDLE, type IDLE into Windows start.

**STEP 8**

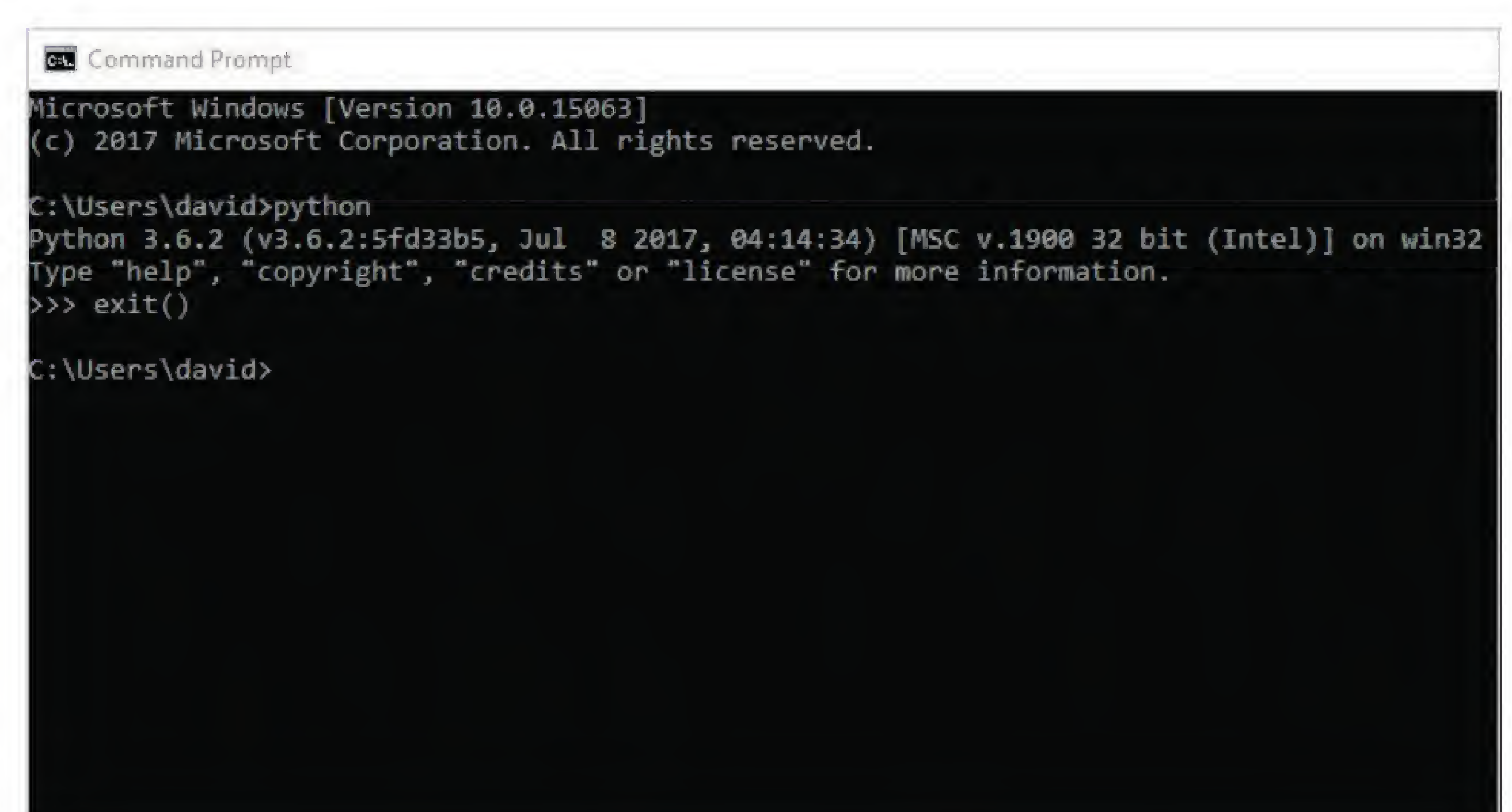
Clicking on the IDLE (Python 3.6 32-bit) link will launch the Python Shell, where you can begin your Python programming journey. Don't worry if your version is newer, as long as it's Python 3.x our code will work inside your Python 3 interface.

**STEP 9**

If you now click on the Windows Start button again, and this time type: **CMD**, you'll be presented with the Command Prompt link. Click it to get to the Windows command line environment. To enter Python within the command line, you need to type: **python** and press Enter.

**STEP 10**

The command line version of Python works in much the same way as the Shell you opened in Step 8; note the three left-facing arrows (**>>>**). Whilst it's a perfectly fine environment, it's not too user-friendly, so leave the command line for now. Enter: **exit()** to leave and close the Command Prompt window.





How to Set Up Python on a Mac

If you're running an Apple Mac, then setting up Python is incredibly easy. In fact a version of Python is already installed. However, you should make sure you're running the latest version.

INSTALLING PYTHON

Apple's operating system comes with Python installed, so you don't need to install it separately. However, Apple doesn't update Python very often and you're probably running an older version. So it makes sense to check and update first.

STEP 1 Open a new Terminal window by clicking Go > Utilities, then double-click the Terminal icon. Now enter: `python --version`. You should see "Python 2.5.1" and even later, if Apple has updated the OS and Python installation. Either way, it's best to check for the latest version.



STEP 3 Click on the latest version of Python 3.x, in our case this is the download button for Python 3.6.2. This will automatically download the latest version of Python and depending on how you've got your Mac configured, it automatically starts the installation wizard.



STEP 2 Open Safari and head over to www.python.org/downloads. Just as with the Windows set up procedure on the previous pages, you can see two yellow download buttons: one for Python 3.6.2, and the other for Python 2.7.13. Note, that version numbers may be different due to the frequent releases of Python.

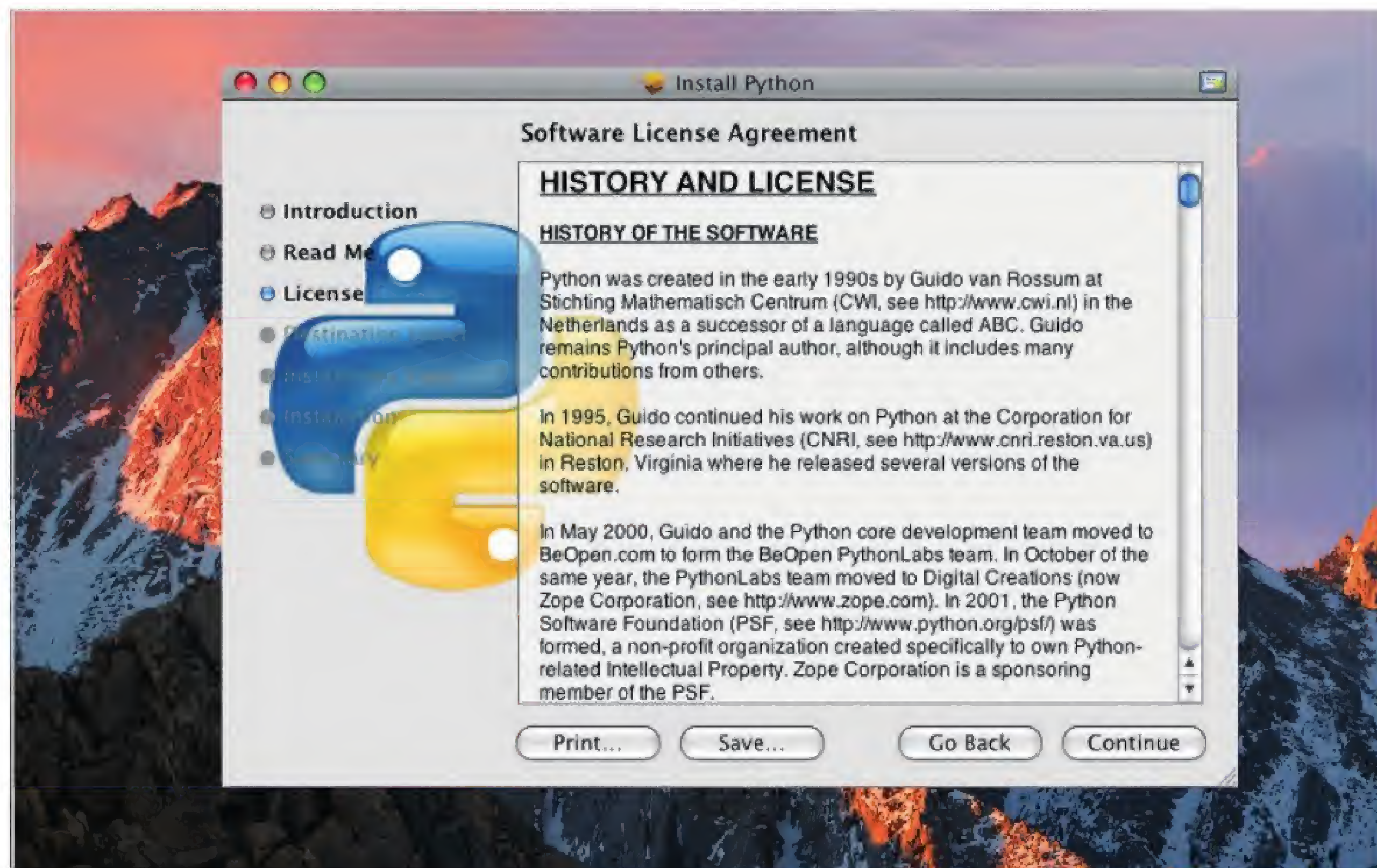


STEP 4 With the Python installation wizard open, click on the Continue button to begin the installation. It's worth taking a moment to read through the Important Information section, in case it references something that applies to your version of macOS. When ready, click Continue again.



**STEP 5**

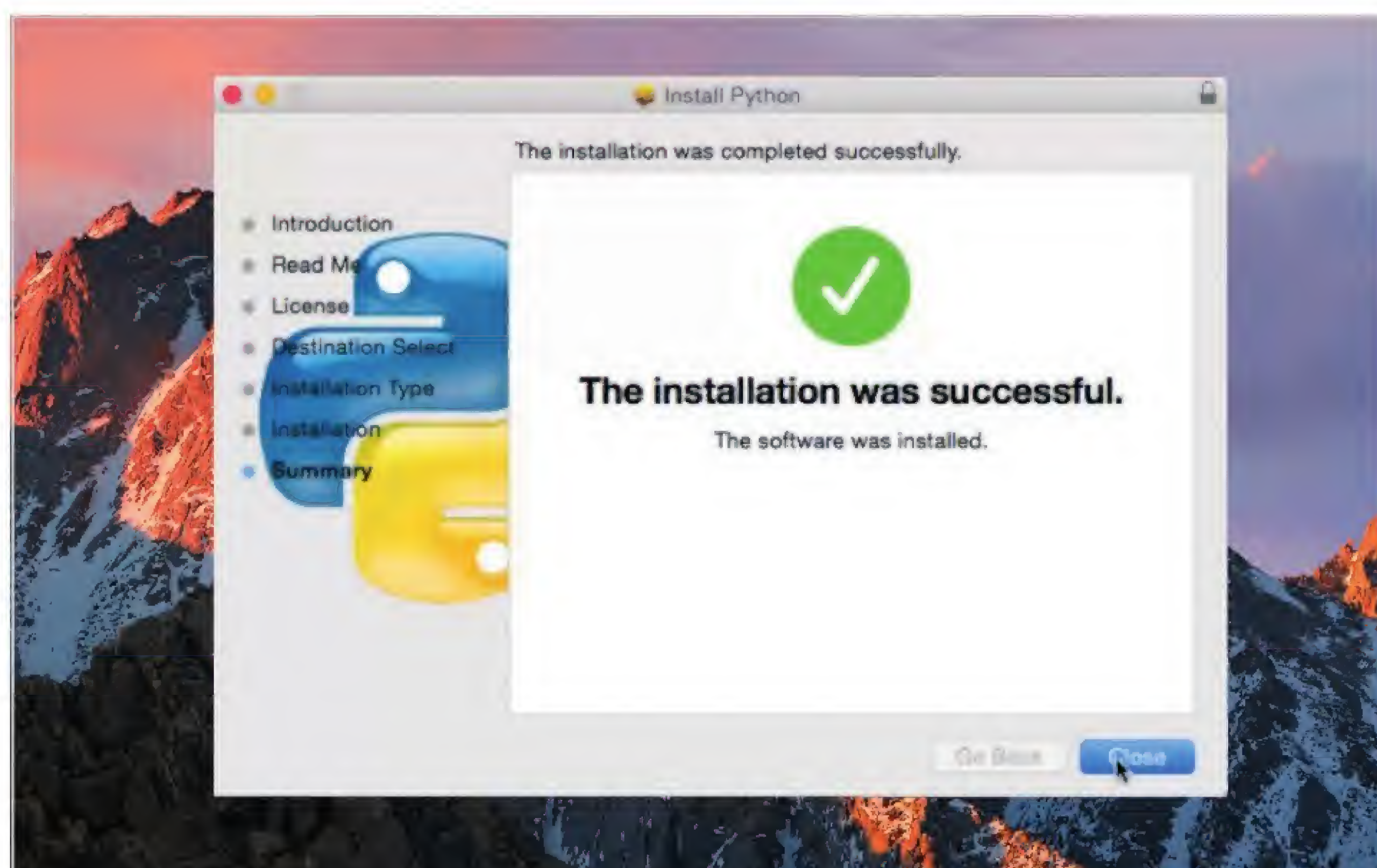
The next section details the Software License Agreement, and whilst not particularly interesting to most folks, it's probably worth a read. When you're ready, click on the Continue button once again.

**STEP 6**

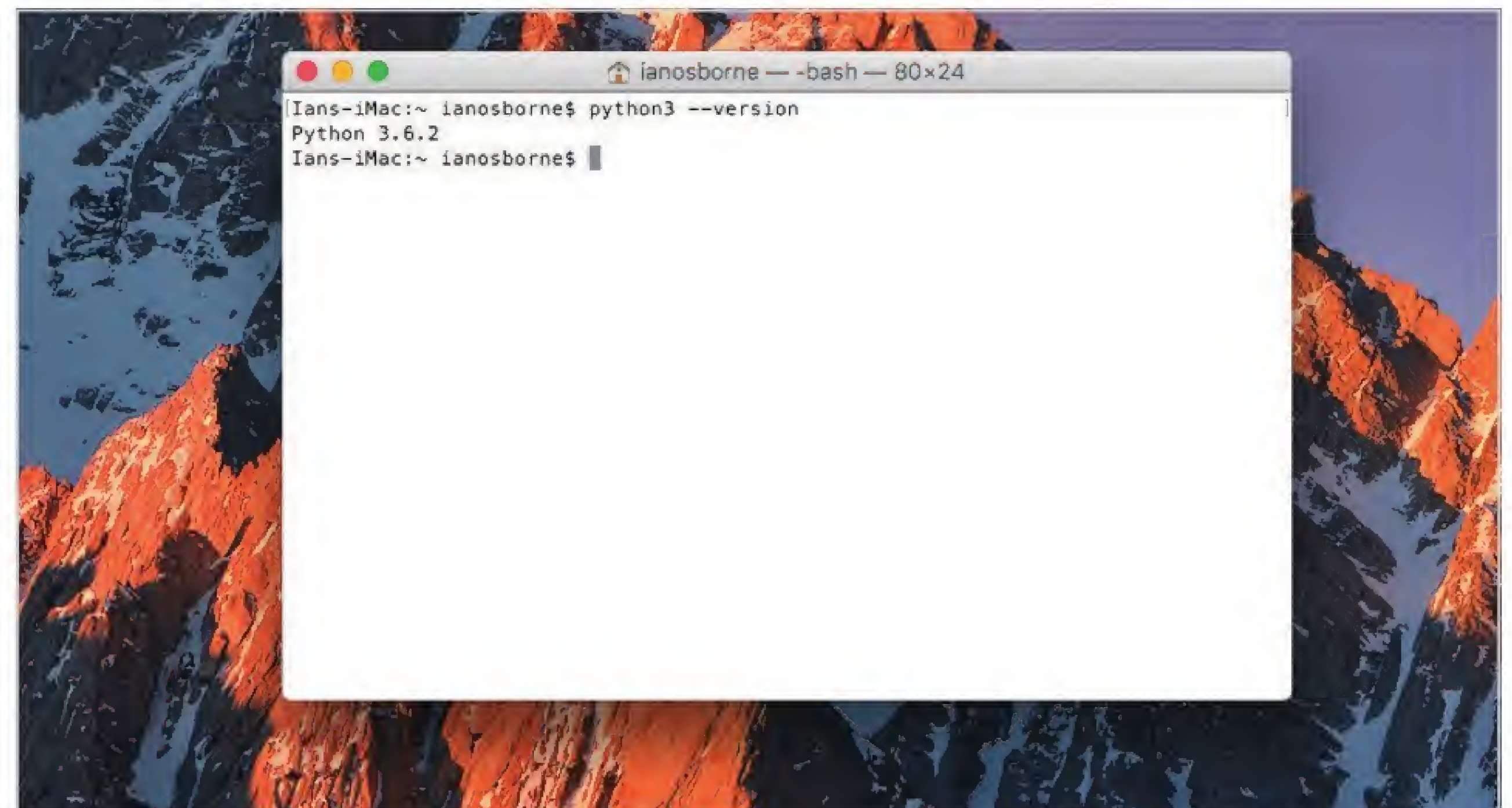
Finally you're be presented with the amount of space Python will take up on your system and an Install button, which you need to click to start the actual installation of Python 3.x on to your Mac. You may need to enter your password to authenticate the installation process.

**STEP 7**

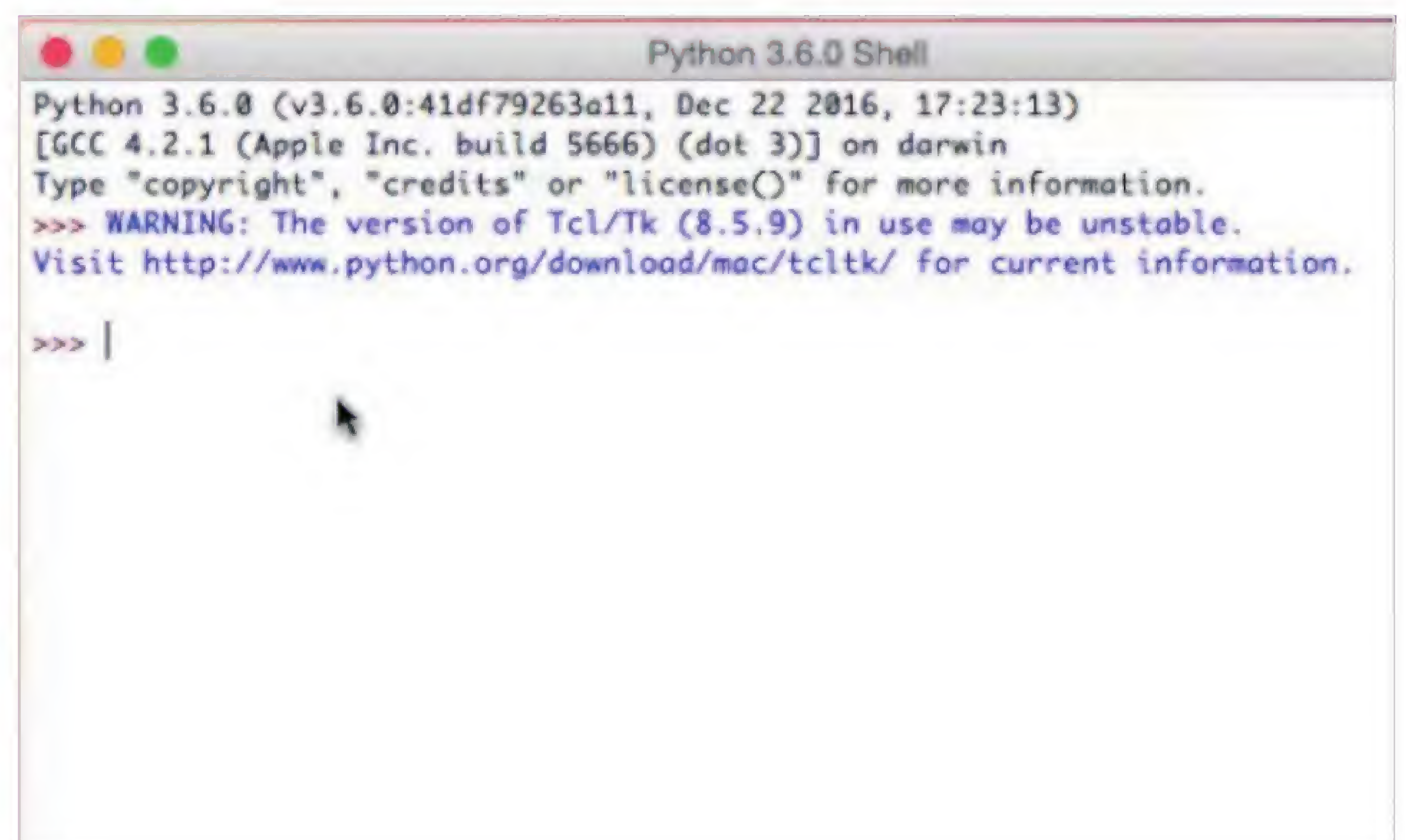
The installation shouldn't take too long; the older Mac Mini we used in this section is a little slower than more modern Mac machines and it only took around thirty seconds for the Installation Successful prompt to be displayed.

**STEP 8**

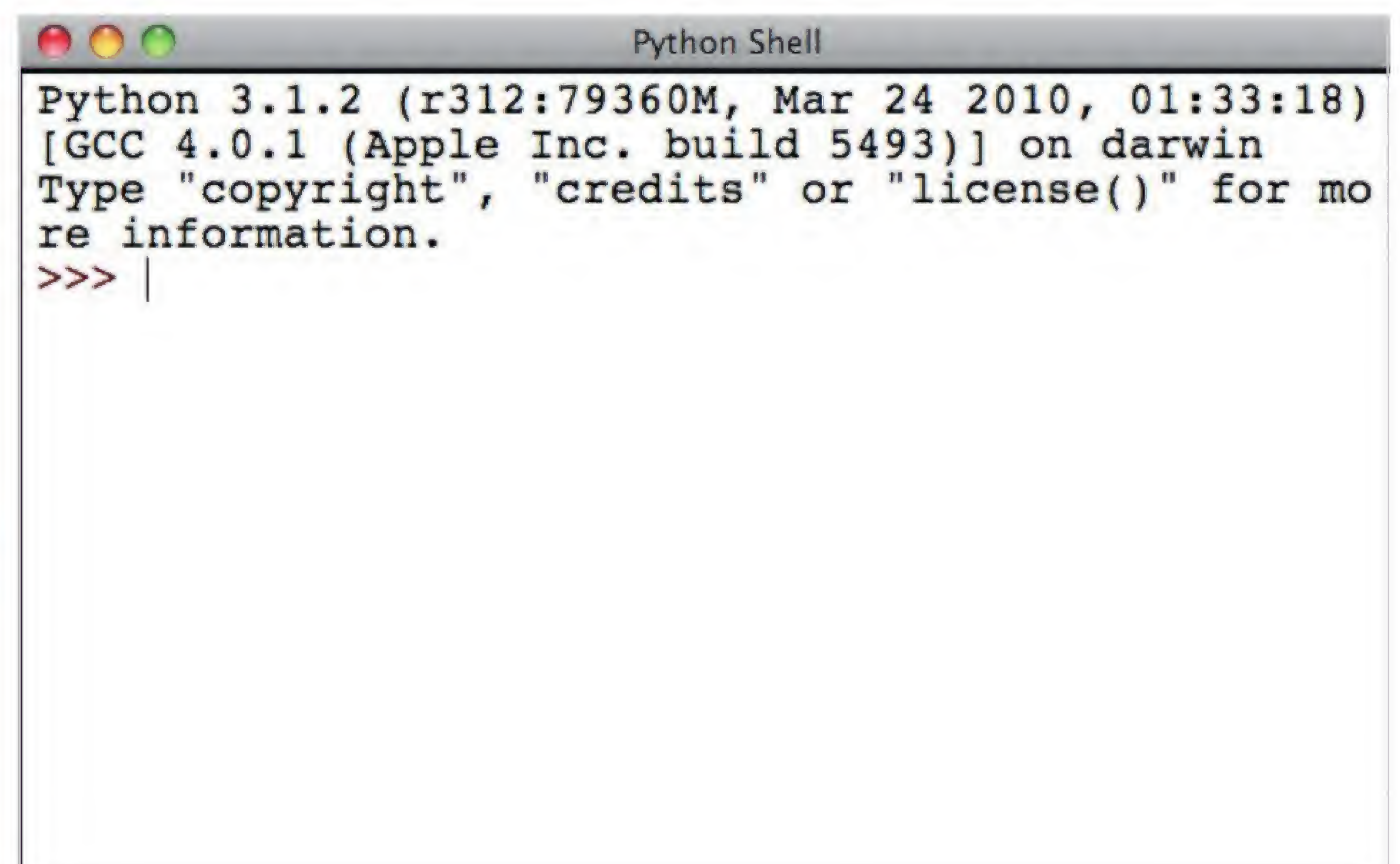
There's nothing much else left to do in the Python installation wizard so you can click the Close button. If you now drop back into a Terminal session and re-enter the command: `python3 --version`, you can see the new version is now listed. To enter the command line version of Python, you need to enter: `python3`. To exit, it's: `exit()`.

**STEP 9**

You need to search in Finder for the Python IDLE; when you've found it, click it to launch and it should look similar to that of the Windows IDLE version shown on the previous page. The only difference being the Mac detected hardware platform it's running on.

**STEP 10**

Older Mac versions may have trouble with the newer versions of Python, in which case you will need to revert to a previous Python 3.x build; as long as you're using Python 3.x, the code in this book will work for you.





How to Set Up Python in Linux

Python version 2.x is already installed in most Linux distributions but as we're going to be using Python 3.x, there's a little work we need to do first to get hold of it. Thankfully, it's not too difficult.

PYTHON PENGUIN

Linux is such a versatile operating system that it's often difficult to nail down just one way of doing something. Different distributions go about installing software in different ways, so we will stick to Linux Mint 18.1 for this particular tutorial.

STEP 1 First you need to ascertain which version of Python is currently installed in your Linux system; as we mentioned, we're going to be using Linux Mint 18.1 for this section. As with macOS, drop into a Terminal by pressing Ctrl+Alt+T.

```
david@david-mint ~
File Edit View Search Terminal Help
david@david-mint ~ $
```

STEP 2 Next enter: `python --version` into the Terminal screen. You should have the output relating to version 2.x of Python in the display. Ours in this case is Python 2.7.12.

```
david@david-mint ~
File Edit View Search Terminal Help
david@david-mint ~ $ python --version
Python 2.7.12
david@david-mint ~ $
```

STEP 3 Some Linux distros will automatically update the installation of Python to the latest versions whenever the system is updated. To check, first do a system update and upgrade with:

```
sudo apt-get update && sudo apt-get upgrade
```

Enter your password and let the system do any updates.

```
david@david-mint ~
File Edit View Search Terminal Help
david@david-mint ~ $ python --version
Python 2.7.12
david@david-mint ~ $ sudo apt-get update && sudo apt-get upgrade
[sudo] password for david:
```

STEP 4 Once the update and upgrade is complete, you may need to answer 'Y' to authorise any upgrades, enter: `python3 --version` to see if Python 3.x is updated or even installed. In the case of Linux Mint, the version we have is Python 3.5.2, which is fine for our purposes.

```
File Edit View Search Terminal Help
Setting up libgd3:amd64 (2.1.1-4ubuntu0.16.04.7) ...
Setting up libjavascriptcoregtk-4.0-18:amd64 (2.16.6-0ubuntu0.16.04.1) ...
Setting up libwebkit2gtk-4.0-37:amd64 (2.16.6-0ubuntu0.16.04.1) ...
Setting up libmagick++-6.q16-5v5:amd64 (8:6.8.9-7ubuntu5.9) ...
Setting up libmspack0:amd64 (0.5-1ubuntu0.16.04.1) ...
Setting up libwacom-common (0.22-1-ubuntu16.04.1) ...
Setting up libwacom2:amd64 (0.22-1-ubuntu16.04.1) ...
Setting up linux-libc-dev:amd64 (4.4.0-92.115) ...
Setting up mint-upgrade-info (1.0.9) ...
Setting up module-init-tools (22-1ubuntu5) ...
Setting up xfonts-utils (1:7.7+3ubuntu0.16.04.2) ...
Setting up intel-microcode (3.20170707.1-ubuntu16.04.0) ...
update-initramfs: deferring update (trigger activated)
intel-microcode: microcode will be updated at next boot
Setting up libruby2.3:amd64 (2.3.1-2-16.04.2) ...
Setting up ruby2.3 (2.3.1-2-16.04.2) ...
Processing triggers for initramfs-tools (0.122ubuntu8.8) ...
update-initramfs: Generating /boot/initrd.img-4.4.0-53-generic
Warning: No support for locale: en_GB.utf8
Processing triggers for libc-bin (2.23-0ubuntu9) ...
Processing triggers for vlc-nox (2.2.2-Subuntu0.16.04.4) ...
david@david-mint ~ $ python3 --version
Python 3.5.2
david@david-mint ~ $
```


**STEP 5**

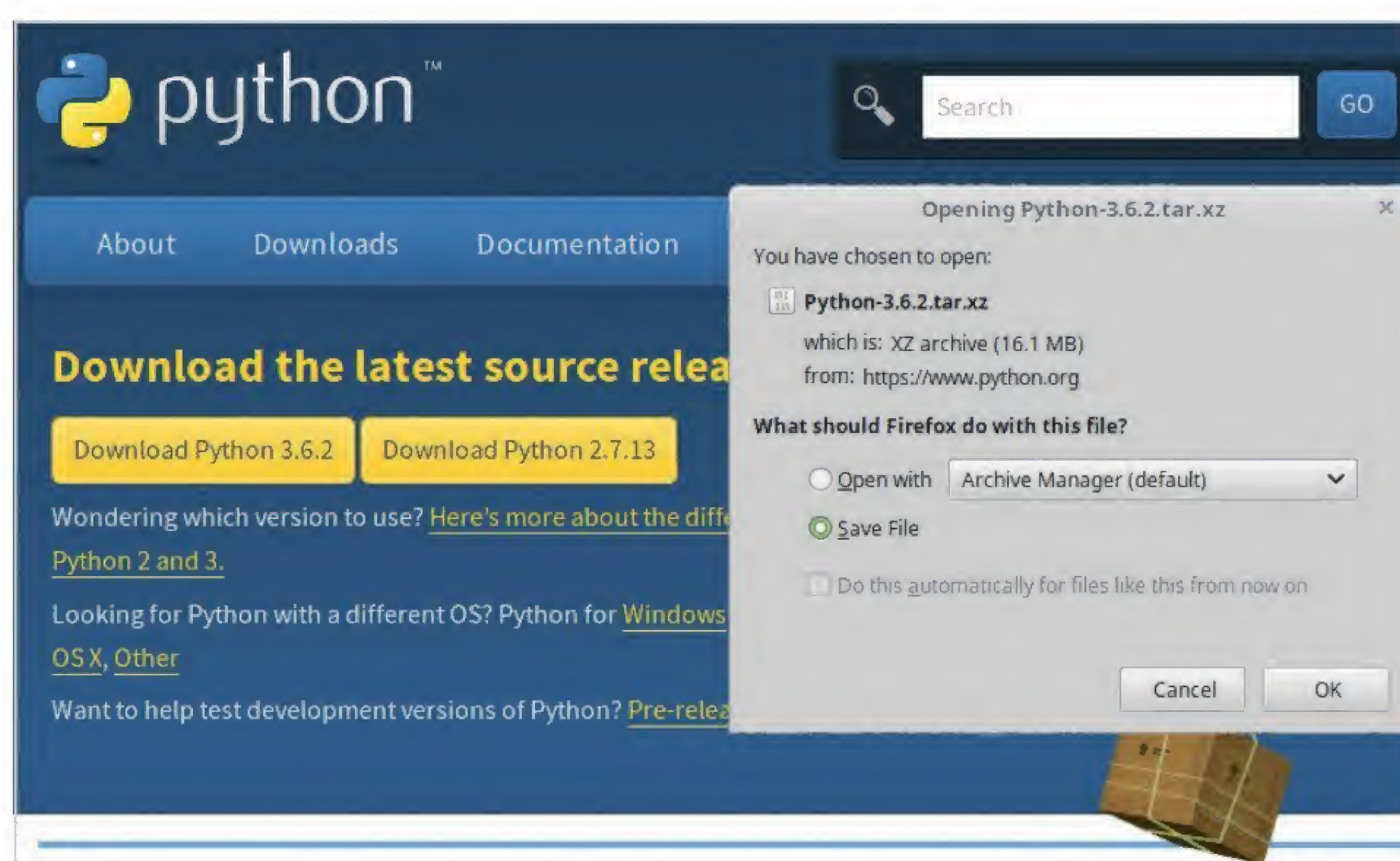
However, if you want the latest version, 3.6.2 as per the Python website at the time of writing, you need to build Python from source. Start by entering these commands into the Terminal:

```
sudo apt-get install build-essential checkinstall
sudo apt-get install libreadline-gplv2-dev
libncursesw5-dev libssl-dev libsqlite3-dev tk-dev
libgdbm-dev libc6-dev libbz2-dev
```

```
david@david-mint ~
File Edit View Search Terminal Help
david@david-mint ~ $ sudo apt-get install build-essential checkinstall
Reading package lists... Done
Building dependency tree
Reading state information... Done
build-essential is already the newest version (12.1ubuntu2).
build-essential set to manually installed.
The following NEW packages will be installed
  checkinstall
0 to upgrade, 1 to newly install, 0 to remove and 15 not to upgrade.
Need to get 121 kB of archives.
After this operation, 516 kB of additional disk space will be used.
Do you want to continue? [Y/n]
```

STEP 6

Open up your Linux web browser and go to the Python download page: www.python.org/downloads. Click on the Download Python 3.6.2 (or whichever version it's on when you look) to download the source Python-3.6.2.tar.xz file.

**STEP 7**

In the Terminal, go the Downloads folder by entering: `cd Downloads/`. Then unzip the contents of the downloaded Python source code with: `tar -xvf Python-3.6.2.tar.xz`. Now enter the newly unzipped folder with `cd Python-3.6.2/`.

```
File Edit View Search Terminal Help
Python-3.6.2/Objects/accu.c
Python-3.6.2/Objects/structseq.c
Python-3.6.2/Objects/namespaceobject.c
Python-3.6.2/Objects/typeslots.py
Python-3.6.2/Objects/floatobject.c
Python-3.6.2/Objects/clinic/
Python-3.6.2/Objects/clinic/unicodeobject.c.h
Python-3.6.2/Objects/clinic/bytearrayobject.c.h
Python-3.6.2/Objects/clinic/bytesobject.c.h
Python-3.6.2/Objects/clinic/dictobject.c.h
Python-3.6.2/Objects/bytearrayobject.c
Python-3.6.2/Objects/typeobject.c
Python-3.6.2/Objects/lnotab_notes.txt
Python-3.6.2/Objects/methodobject.c
Python-3.6.2/Objects/tupleobject.c
Python-3.6.2/Objects/obmalloc.c
Python-3.6.2/Objects/object.c
Python-3.6.2/Objects/abstract.c
Python-3.6.2/Objects/listobject.c
Python-3.6.2/Objects/bytes_methods.c
Python-3.6.2/Objects/dictnotes.txt
Python-3.6.2/Objects/typeslots.inc
david@david-mint ~/Downloads $ cd Python-3.6.2/
david@david-mint ~/Downloads/Python-3.6.2 $
```

STEP 8

Within the Python folder, enter:

```
./configure
sudo make altinstall
```

This could a little while depending on the speed of your computer. Once finished, enter: `python3.6 --version` to check the installed latest version.

```
david@david-mint ~/Downloads/Python-3.6.2
File Edit View Search Terminal Help
david@david-mint ~/Downloads/Python-3.6.2 $ python3.6 --version
Python 3.6.2
david@david-mint ~/Downloads/Python-3.6.2 $
```

STEP 9

For the GUI IDLE, you need to enter the following command into the Terminal:

```
sudo apt-get install idle3
```

The IDLE can then be started with the command: `idle3`. Note, that IDLE runs a different version from the one you installed from source.

```
david@david-mint ~/Downloads/Python-3.6.2
File Edit View Search Terminal Help
david@david-mint ~/Downloads/Python-3.6.2 $ sudo apt-get install idle3
Reading package lists... Done
Building dependency tree
Reading state information... Done
The following additional packages will be installed:
  idle-python3.5 python3-tk
Suggested packages:
  tix python3-tk-dbg
The following NEW packages will be installed
  idle-python3.5 idle3 python3-tk
0 to upgrade, 3 to newly install, 0 to remove and 15 not to upgrade.
Need to get 68.4 kB of archives.
After this operation, 317 kB of additional disk space will be used.
Do you want to continue? [Y/n]
```

STEP 10

You also need PIP (Pip Installs Packages) which is a tool to help you install more modules and extras.

Enter: `sudo apt-get install python3-pip`

PIP is then installed; check for the latest update with:

```
pip3 install --upgrade pip
```

When complete, close the Terminal and Python 3.x will be available via the Programming section in your distro's menu.

```
david@david-mint ~/Downloads/Python-3.6.2
File Edit View Search Terminal Help
david@david-mint ~/Downloads/Python-3.6.2 $ sudo apt-get install python3-pip
Reading package lists... Done
Building dependency tree
Reading state information... Done
The following additional packages will be installed:
  python-pip-whl
Recommended packages:
  python3-dev python3-setuptools python3-wheel
The following NEW packages will be installed
  python-pip-whl python3-pip
0 to upgrade, 2 to newly install, 0 to remove and 15 not to upgrade.
Need to get 1,219 kB of archives.
After this operation, 1,789 kB of additional disk space will be used.
Do you want to continue? [Y/n]
```




Installing a Text Editor

It's not entirely necessary (as you can use the IDLE) but a text editor will help you immensely when you're entering code. A normal word processor inserts its own unique characters, paragraph settings and much more, so it's not a good platform for Python code.

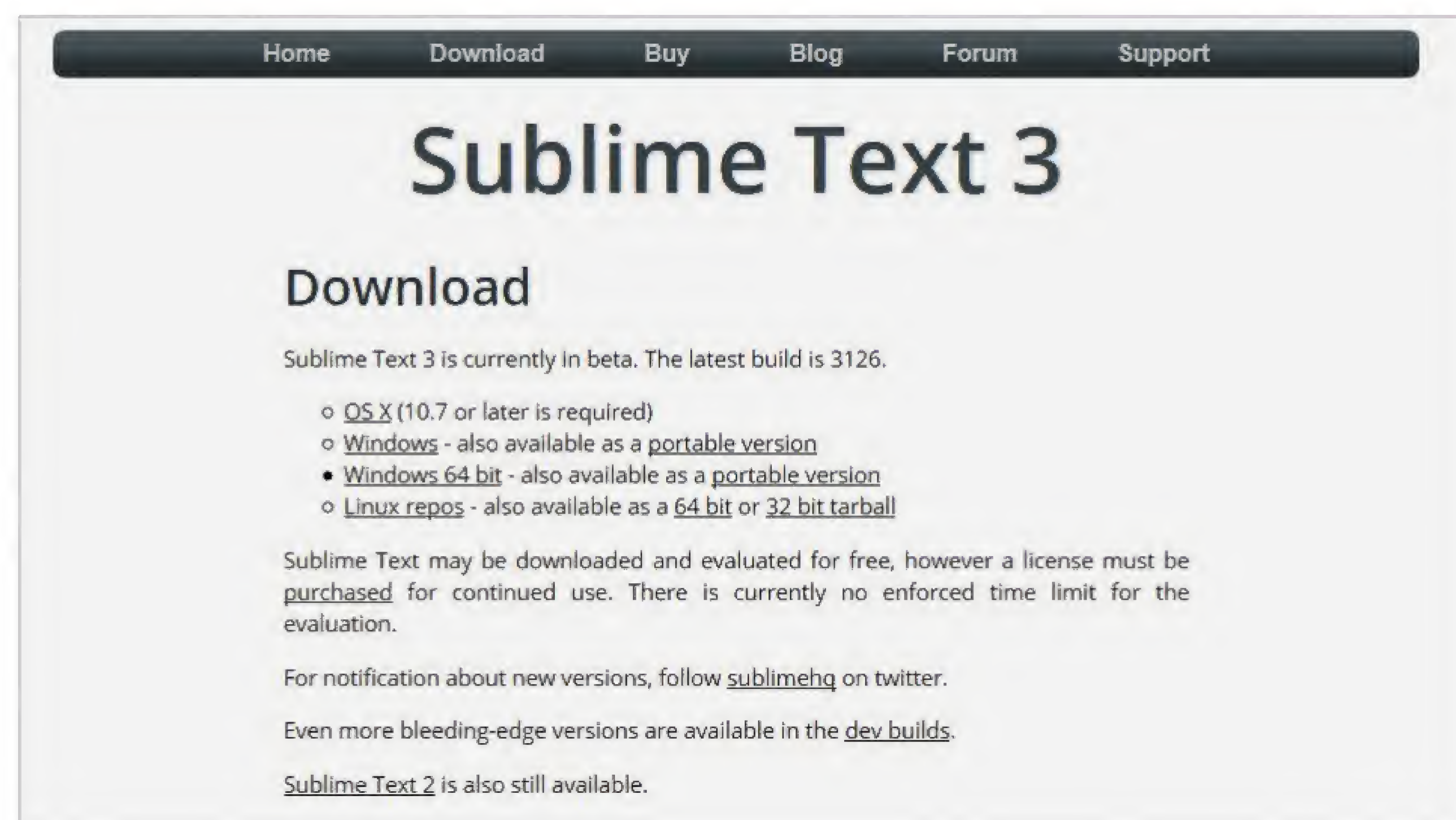
SUBLIME CODE

Sublime Text is an excellent, cross-platform text editor that's designed for entering code. It has a slick interface, many features and performs magnificently. In short, it's an ideal starting point.

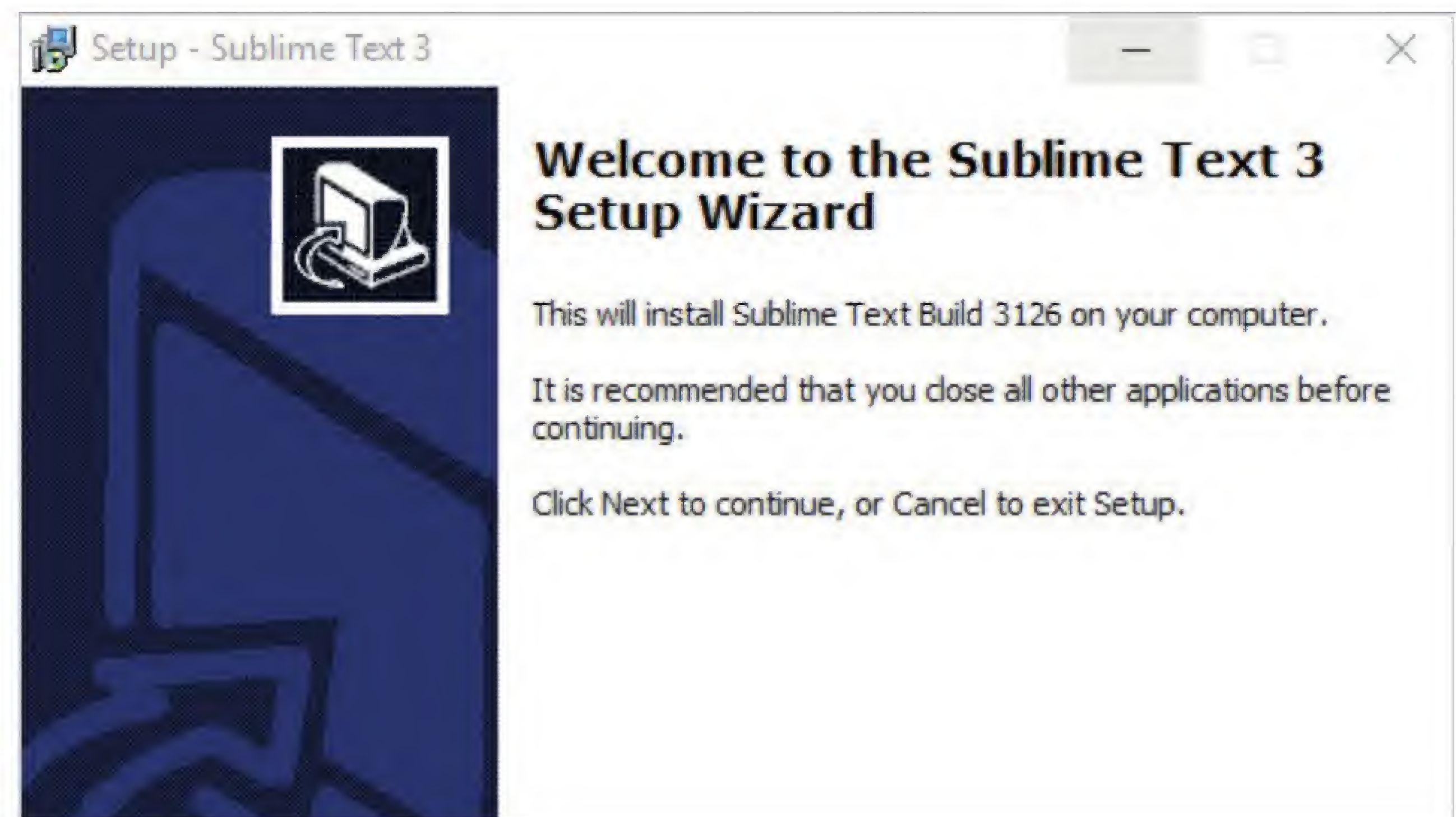
STEP 1 Let's begin by navigating to the Sublime Text webpage, to download the latest version for whatever operating system you're currently running. You can find the website at www.sublimetext.com, together with a download button for the detected OS that you're using.



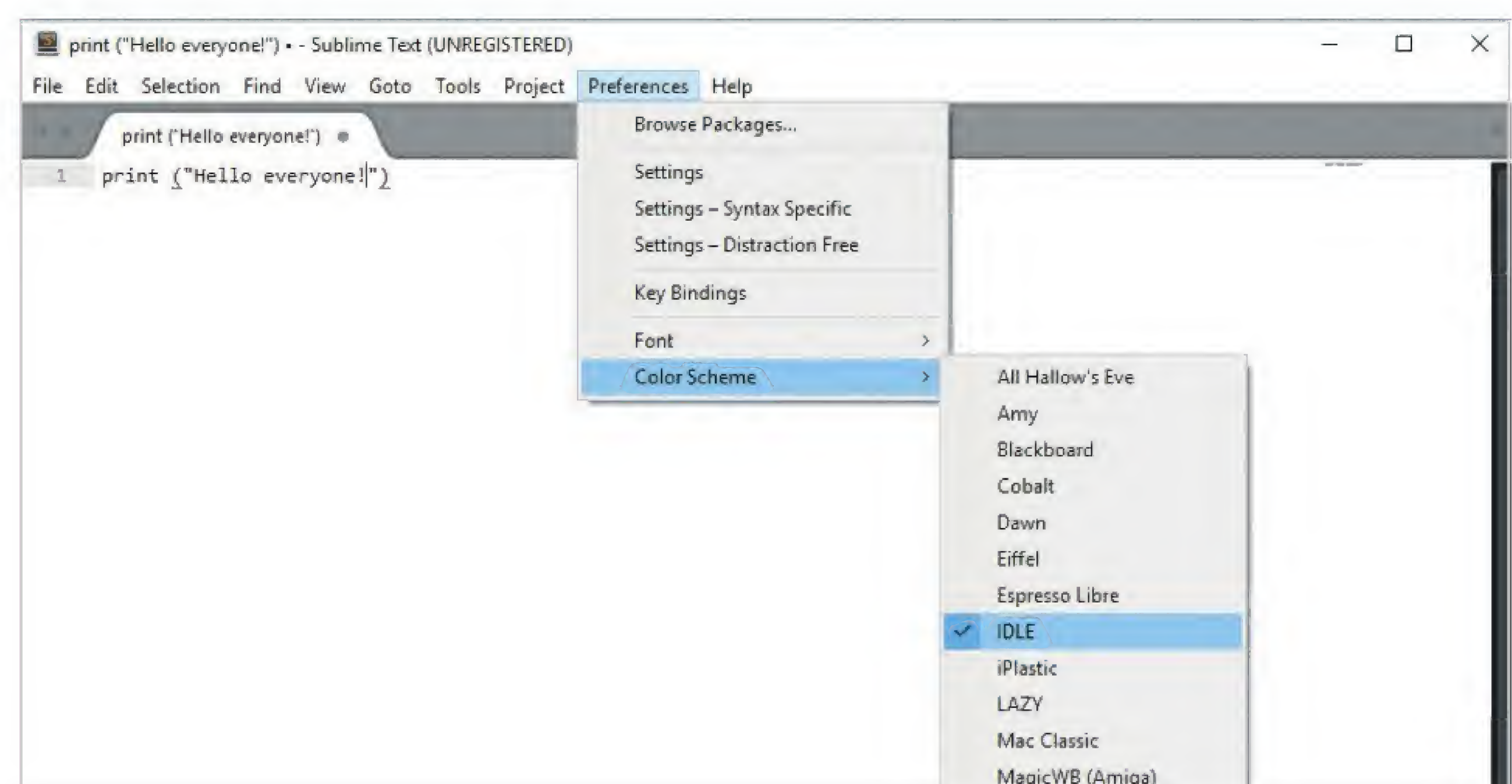
STEP 2 However, if you want to specify a particular operating system version, then click on the Download link found in the top menu bar on the site. This will open a page with links for the latest version for OS X, Windows, Windows 64-bit and Linux machines.



STEP 3 Whichever version you choose, download the setup files and double-click them to begin the set up process. If you're using Windows, which we are in this instance, then you see the standard installation wizard. The defaults will suffice, so go ahead and install the program.



STEP 4 When installed, Sublime defaults to a black background and white text; whilst this is perfectly fine for most users, it's not always the most comfortable viewing setup. Thankfully, there are countless themes you can apply by clicking Preferences > Colour Scheme. We've opted for IDLE in this screenshot.

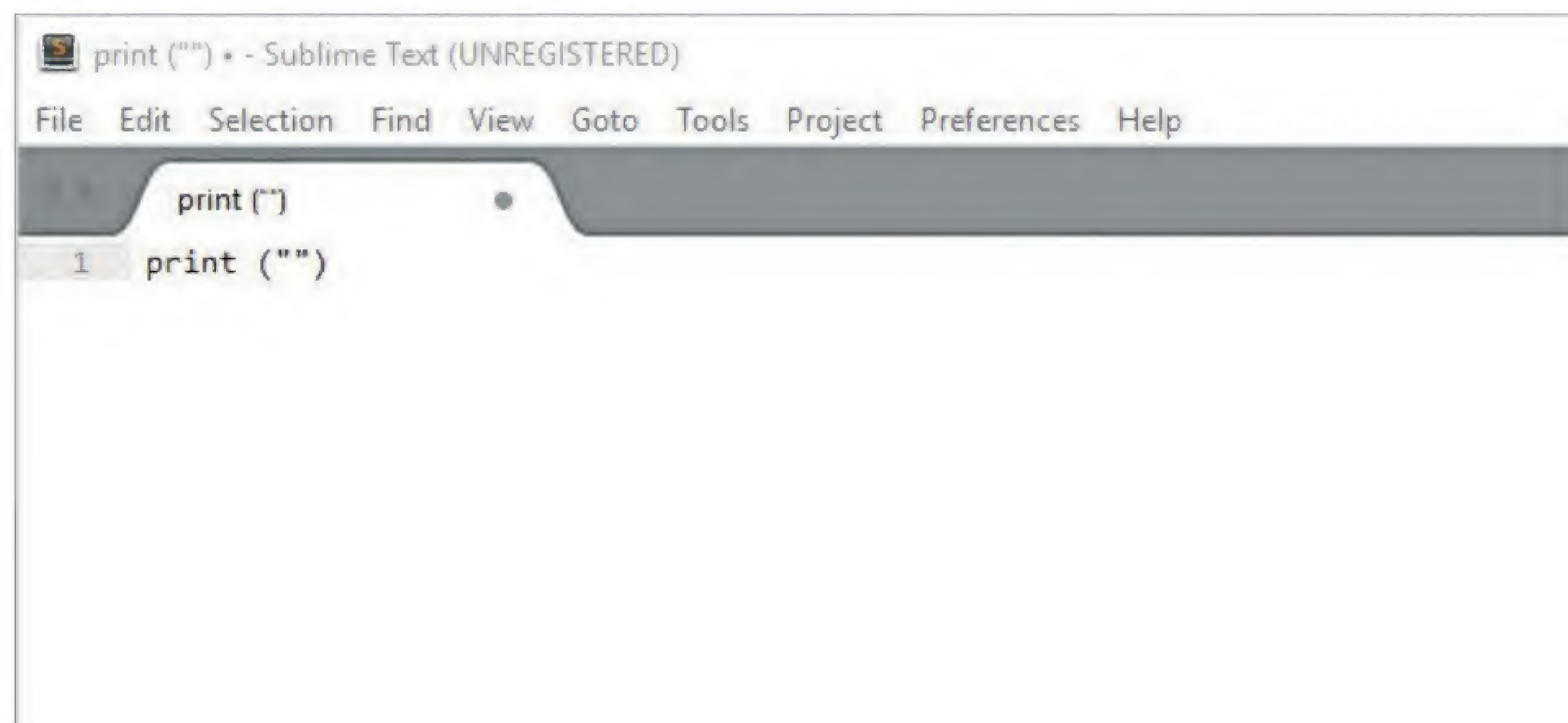


**STEP 5**

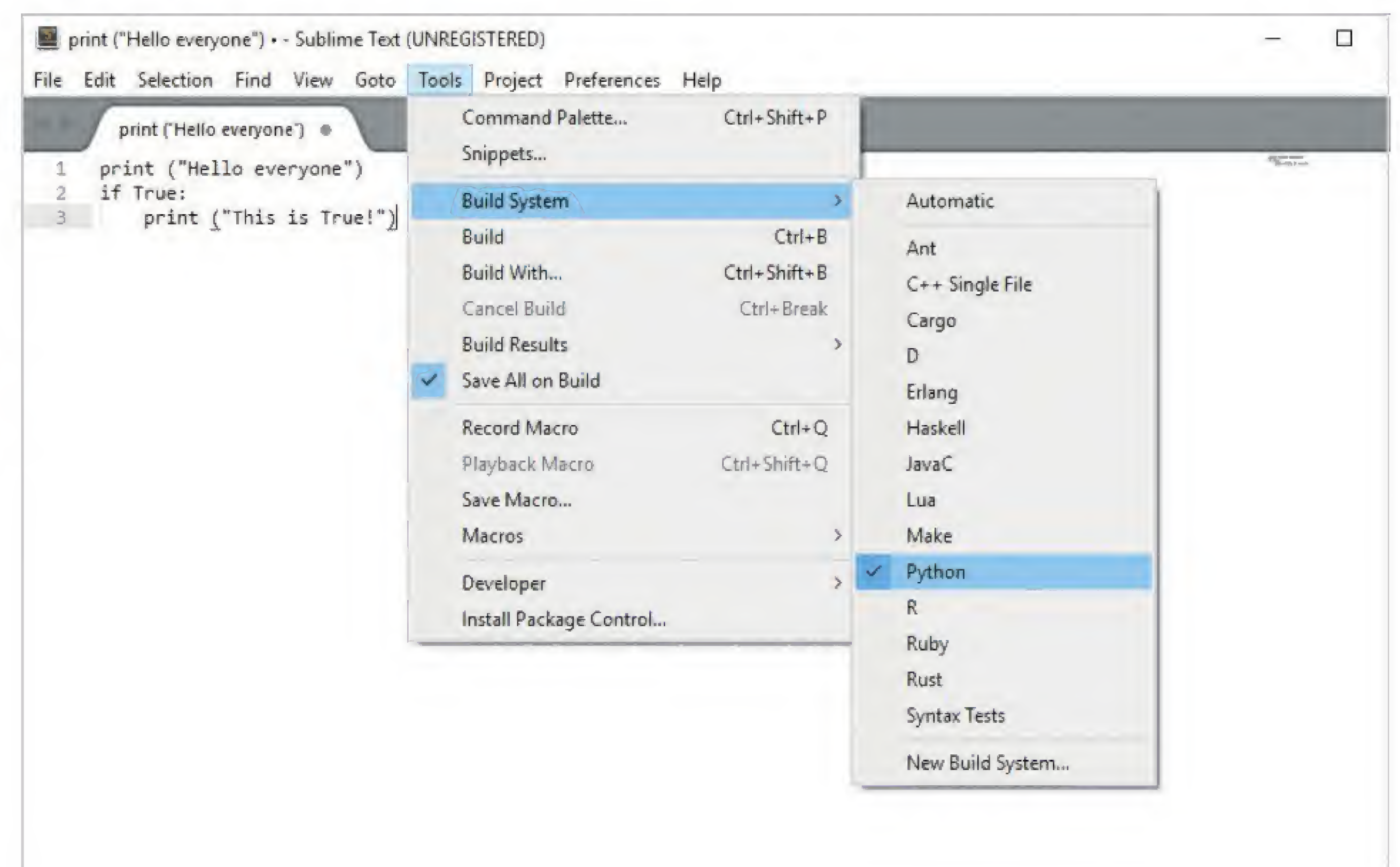
Sublime Text offers some excellent features over that of the standard Python IDLE. For example, enter the following:

```
print ("Hello everyone!")
```

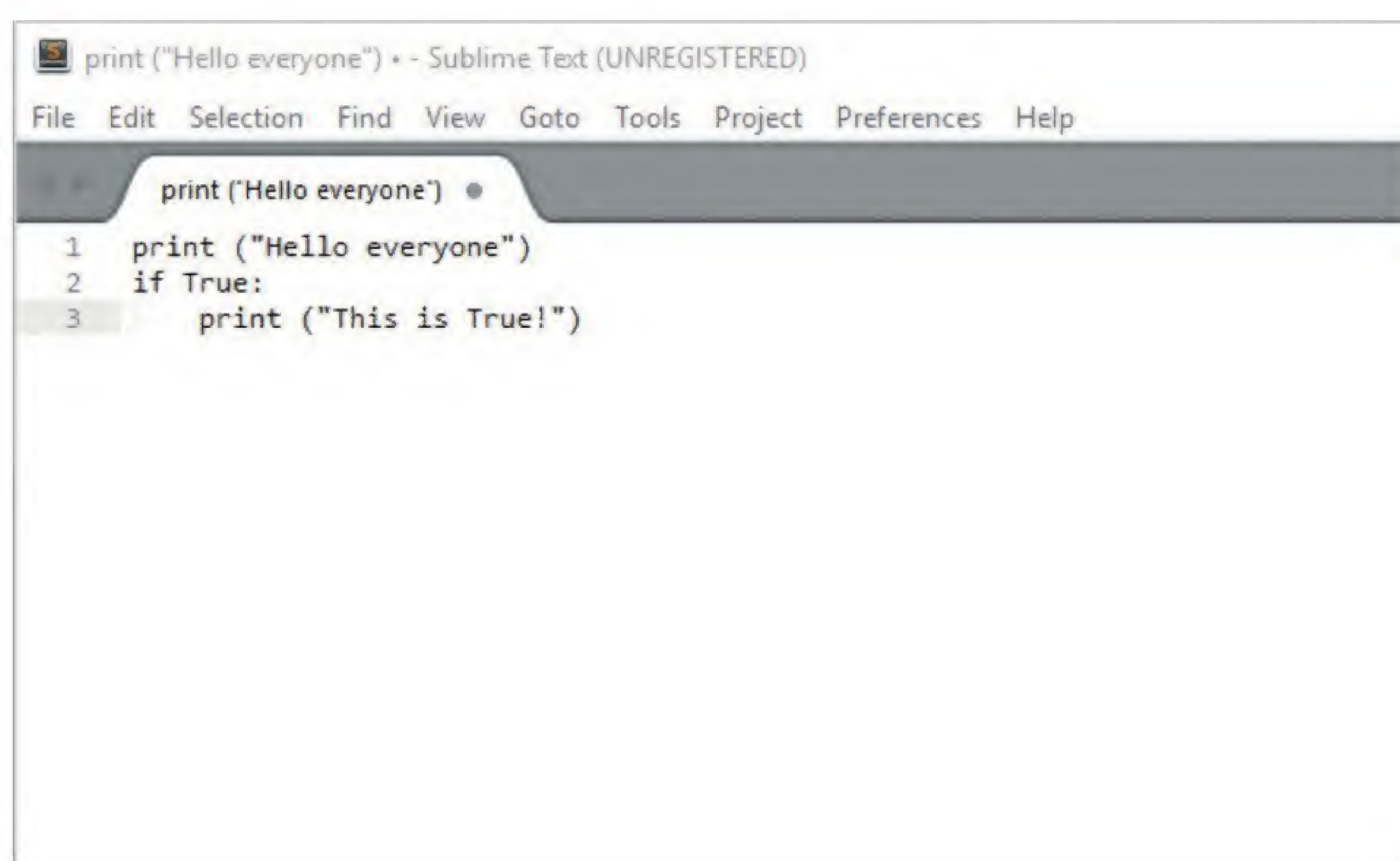
This is an actual Python command, which will print the words Hello everyone! on the screen. Notice how Sublime automatically recognises this as code and places the quotes and parentheses.

**STEP 8**

Sublime isn't just for Python either. With it you can build code for a number of programming languages. Click on Tools > Build System to see which languages you're able to build with in Sublime.

**STEP 6**

Soon, as you become more Python-savvy, you'll find that the standard IDLE isn't quite up to the task of keeping up with your code, alterations and injections of code mid-way through a long program. However, Sublime will keep you updated and you can even utilise indents easily.

**STEP 9**

Sublime comes with a number of preinstalled plugins for Python code, allowing you to experiment with your code in real-time. They're probably a little bewildering at this point in time but you will likely find them useful as your Python skills increase.

API Reference**Sublime API**

- View
- RegionSet
- Region
- Edit
- Window
- Settings

Base Classes

- EventListener
- ApplicationCommand
- WindowCommand
- TextCommand

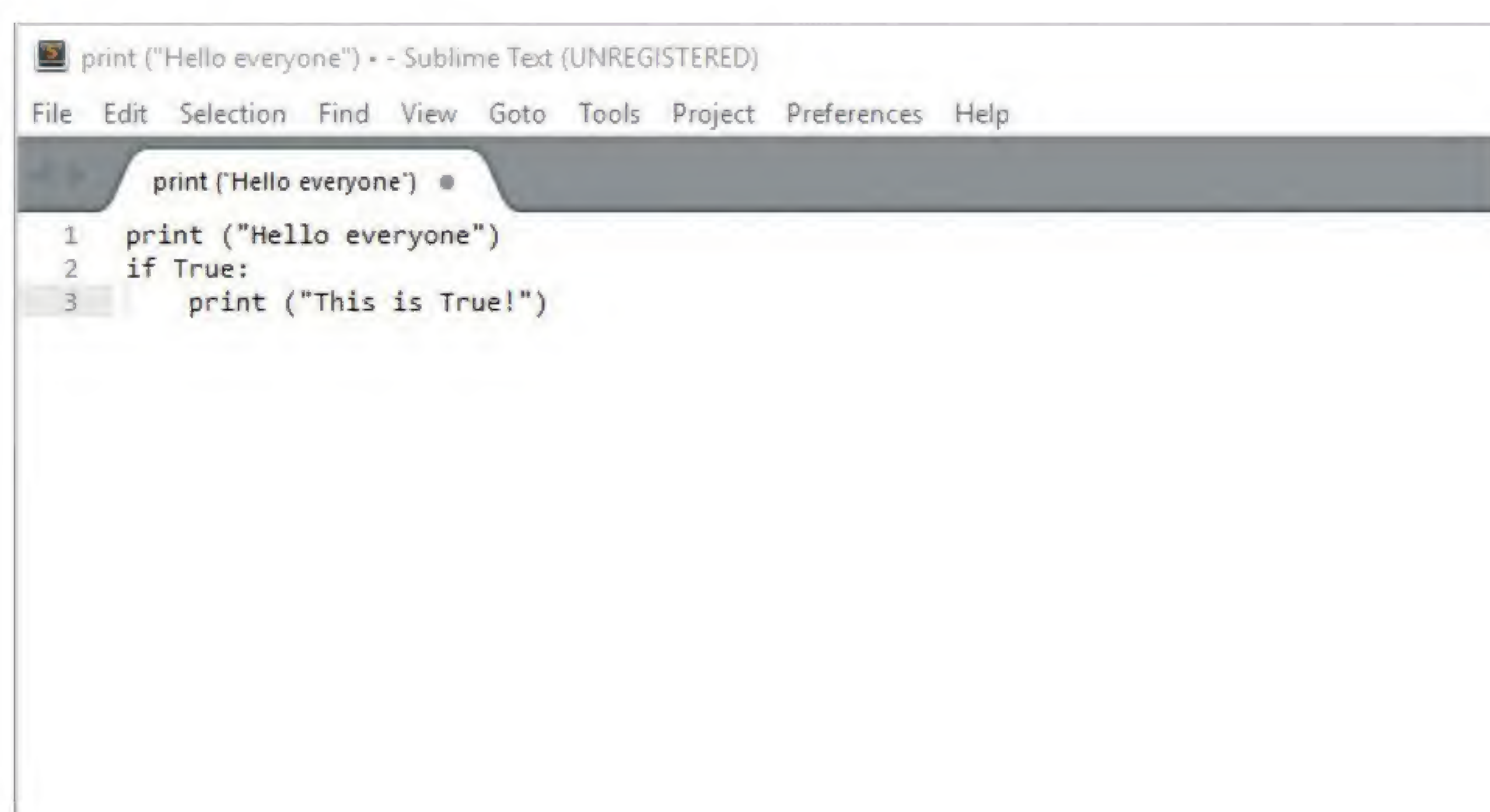
Example Plugins

Several pre-made plugins come with Sublime Text 2, you can find them in the Packages/Default directory:

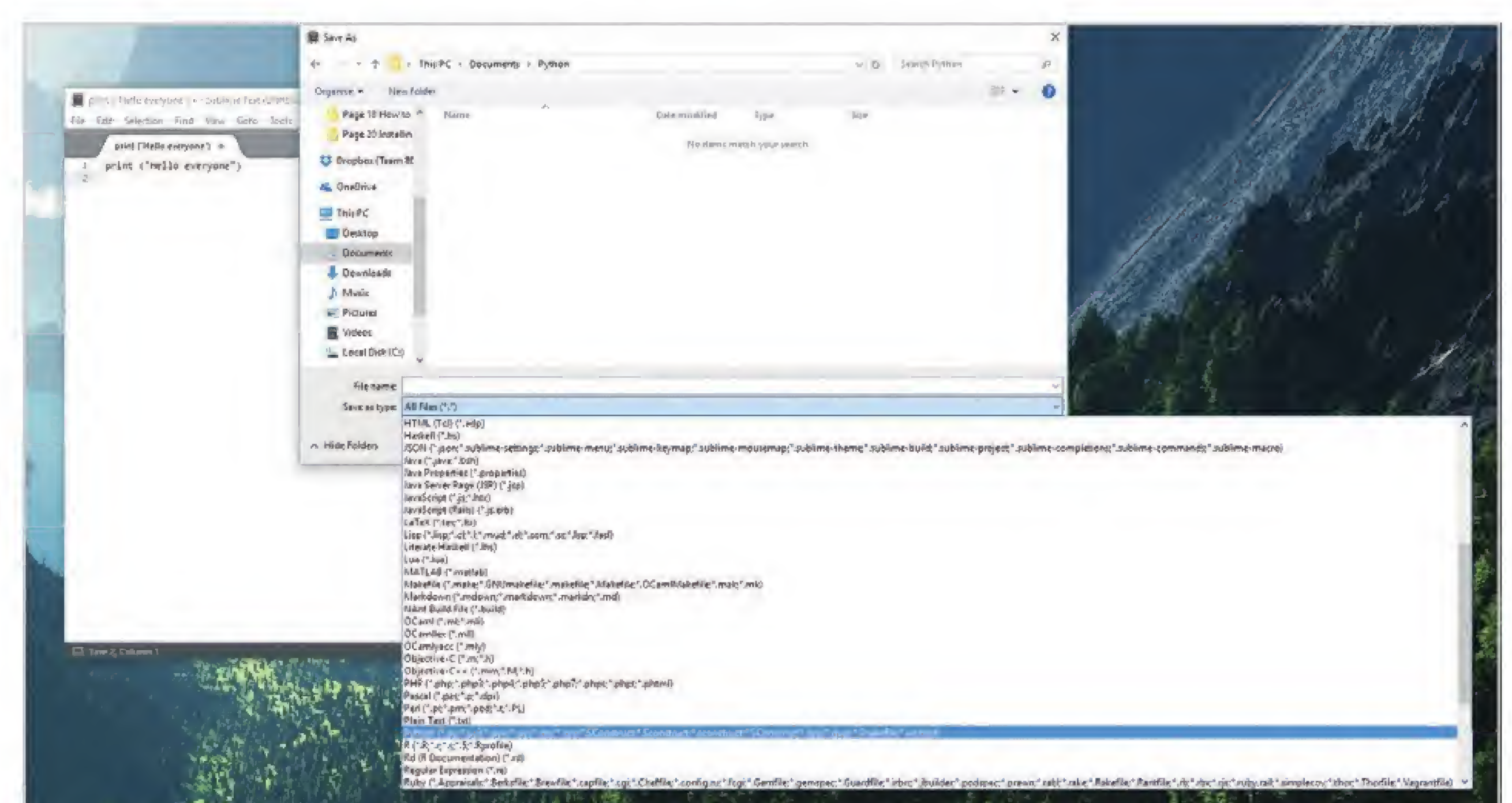
- Packages/Default/delete_word.py Deletes a word to the left or right of the cursor
- Packages/Default/duplicate_line.py Duplicates the current line
- Packages/Default/goto_line.py Prompts the user for input, then updates the selection
- Packages/Default/font.py Shows how to work with settings
- Packages/Default/mask.py Uses add_regions() to add an icon to the gutter
- Packages/Default/trim_trailing_whitespace.py Modifies a buffer just before its saved

STEP 7

We're not going to get too heavily into the code right now but an indent is part of Python programming, where a statement indicates that the following indented commands must be run until a particular event has happened; after which the indents stop. Pressing Ctrl+] will indent a line of code in Python.

**STEP 10**

However, we recommend you use the IDLE for this book. The Python IDLE isn't as advanced as Sublime but it's a perfect base on which to build your skills; and you don't have to worry about any extra features (as this is a Python book, not a Sublime book). Python code can be saved though, in its appropriate format within Sublime.





Getting Started with Python



Getting started with Python may seem a little daunting at first but the language has been designed with simplicity in mind. Like most things, you need to start slow, learn how to get a result and see how you can get what you want from the code.

In this section we cover variables, number and expressions, user input, conditions and loops and the types of errors you will undoubtedly come across in your time with Python. Let's start and see how to get coding.

.....

24	Starting Python for the First Time
26	Your First Code
28	Saving and Executing Your Code
30	Executing Code from the Command Line
32	Numbers and Expressions
34	Using Comments
36	Working with Variables
38	User Input
40	Creating Functions
42	Conditions and Loops
44	Python Modules
46	Python Errors
48	Combining What You Know So Far



Starting Python for the First Time

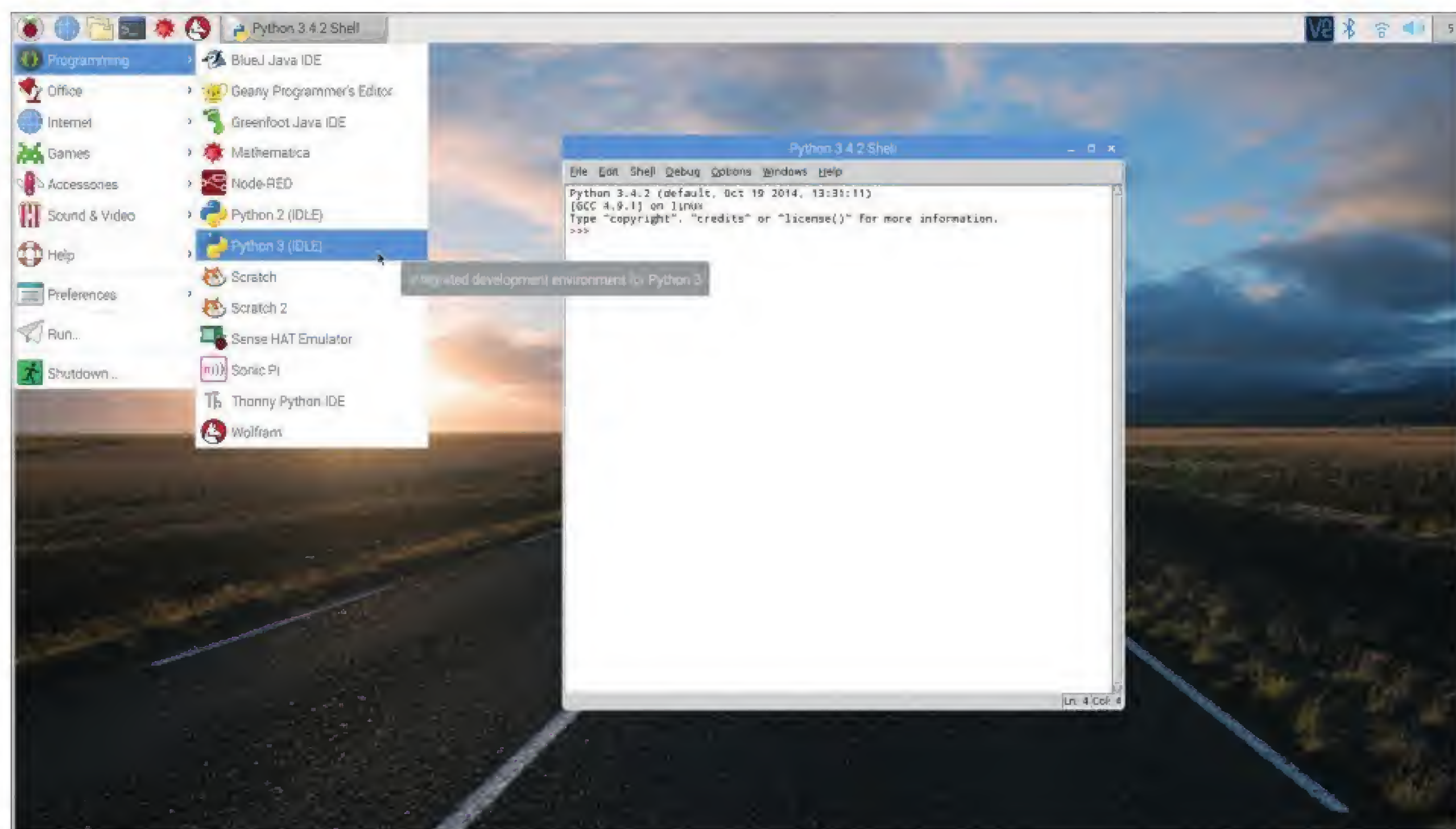
As previously mentioned we're using the Raspberry Pi as our Python hardware platform. The latest version of Raspbian comes preinstalled with Python 3 (version 3.4.2); so as long as you have a version 3 Shell, all our code will work.

STARTING PYTHON

We won't go into the details of getting the Raspberry Pi up and running, there's plenty of material already available on that subject. However once you're ready, fire up your Pi and get ready for coding.

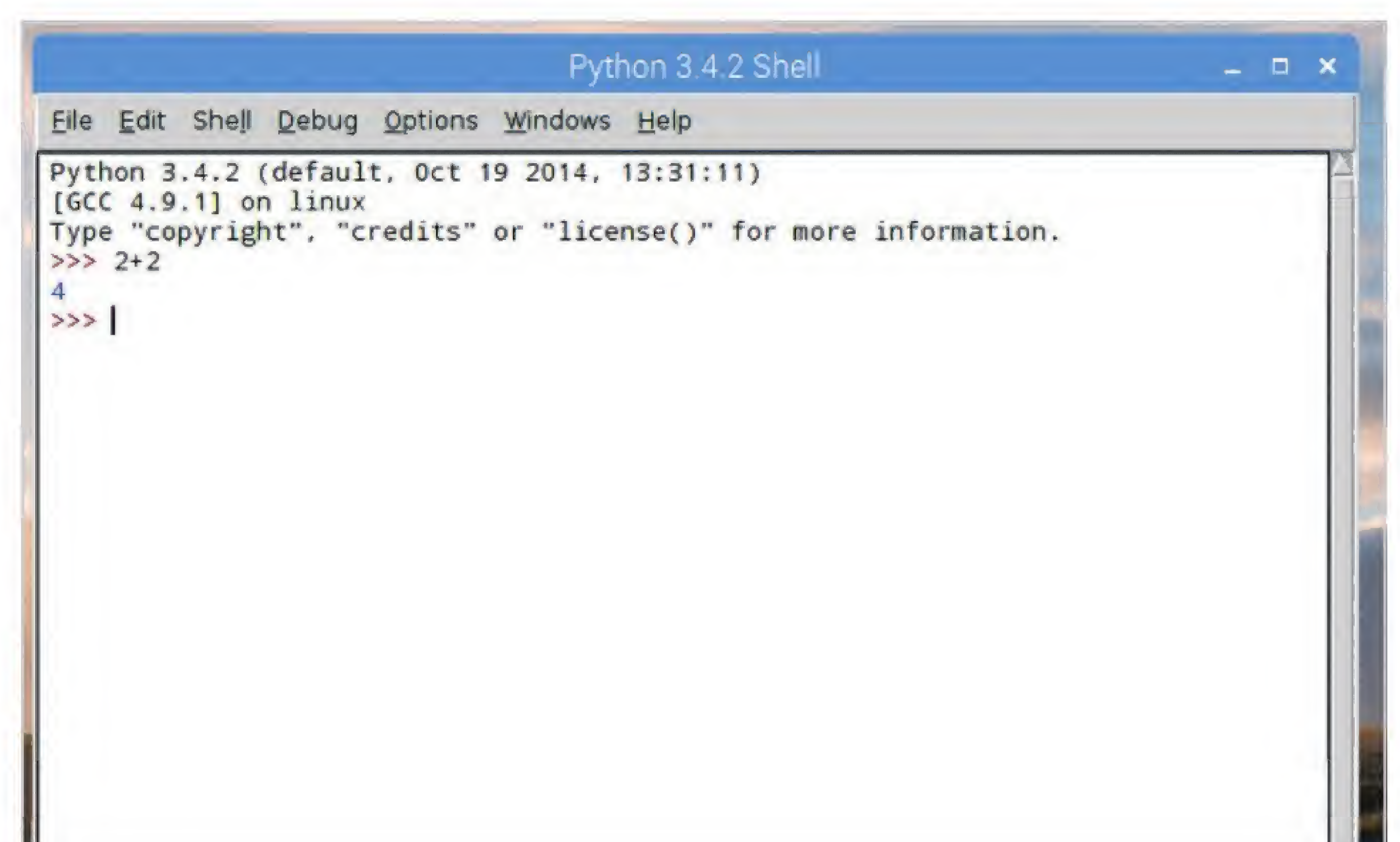
STEP 1

With the Raspbian desktop loaded, click on the Menu button followed by Programming > Python 3 (IDLE). This will open the Python 3 Shell. Windows and Mac users can find the Python 3 IDLE Shell from within the Windows Start button menu and via Finder.



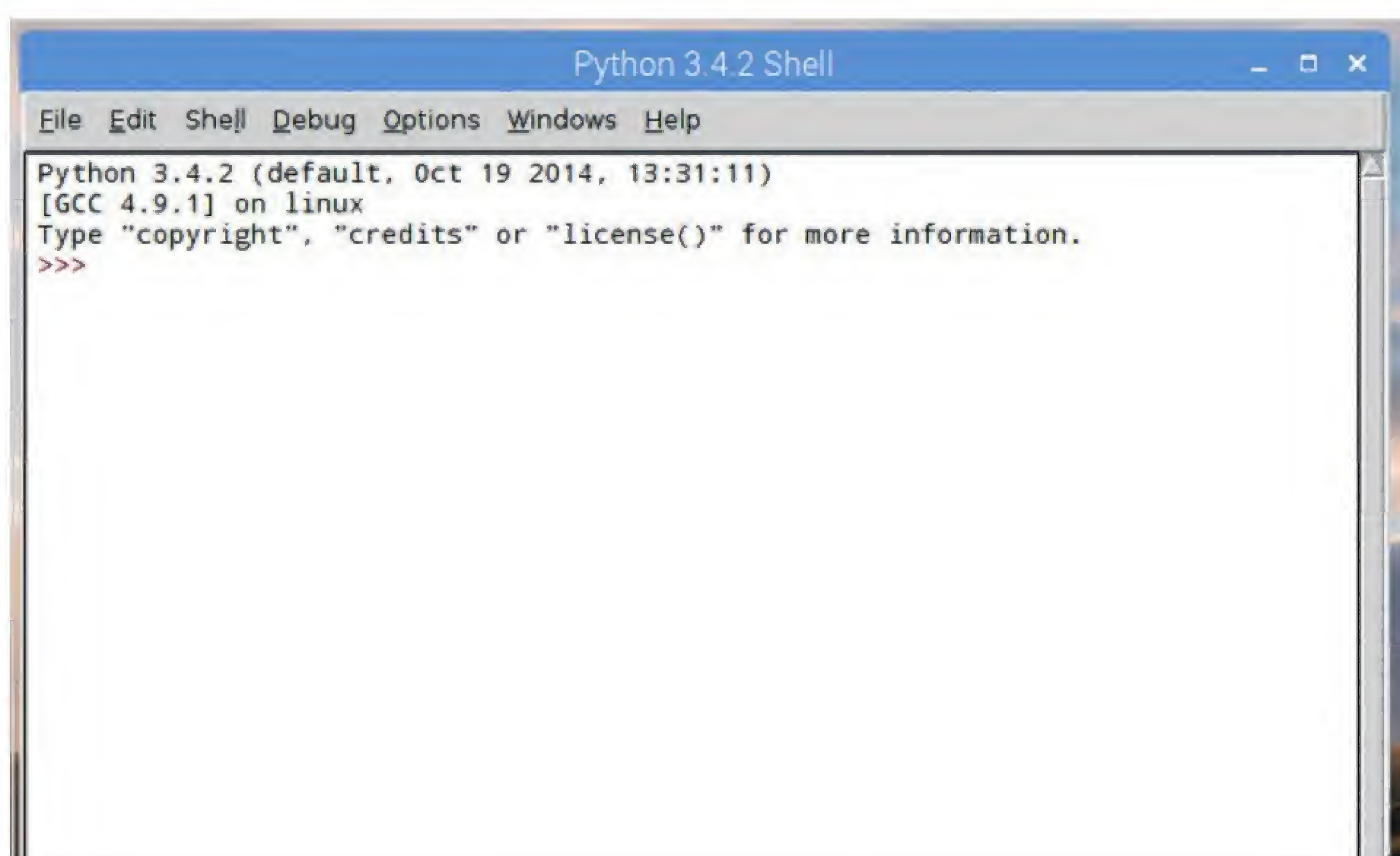
STEP 3

For example, in the Shell enter: `2+2`
After pressing Enter, the next line will display the answer: 4. Basically, Python has taken the 'code' and produced the relevant output.



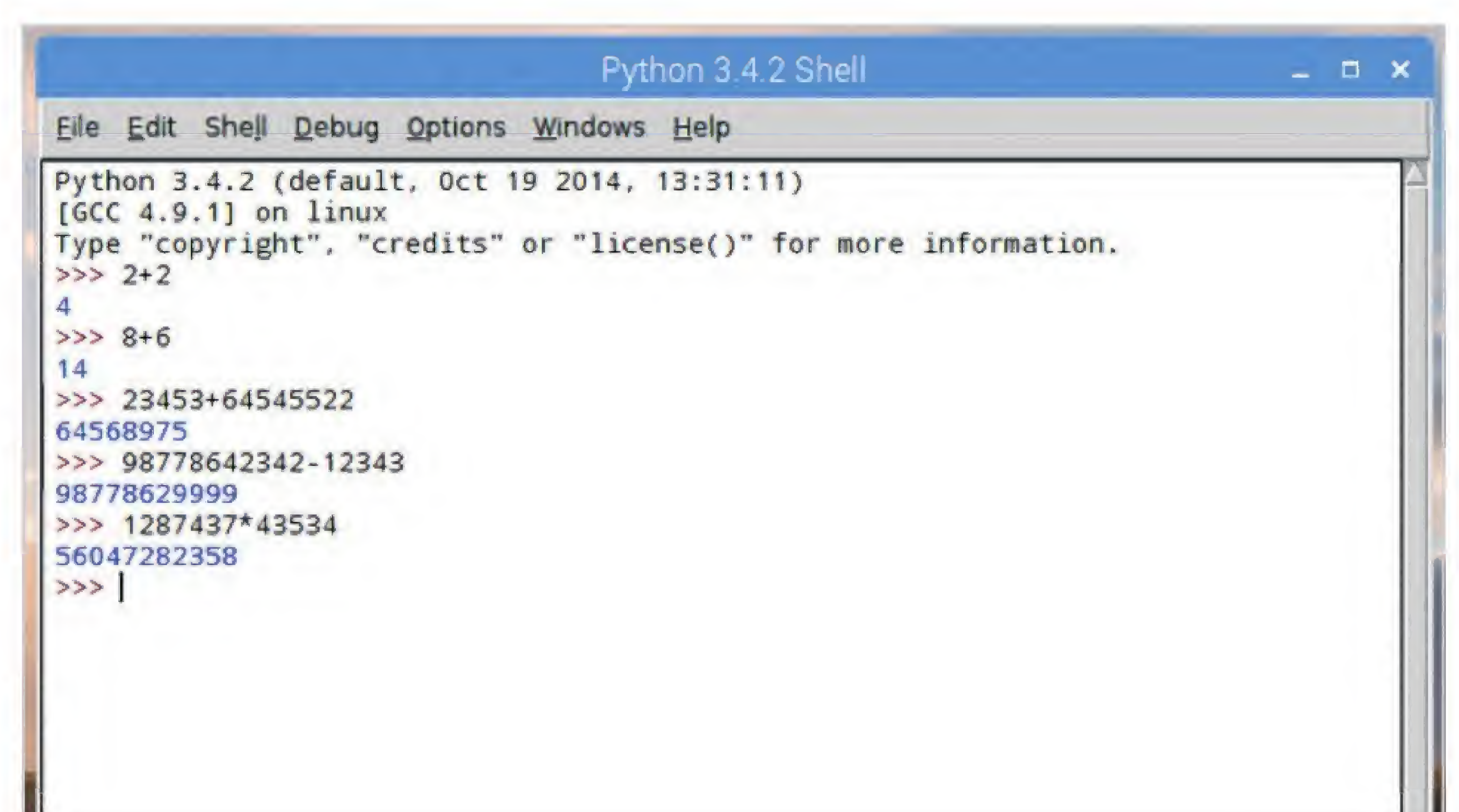
STEP 2

The Shell is where you can enter code and see the responses and output of code you've programmed into Python. This is a kind of sandbox, where you're able to try out some simple code and processes.



STEP 4

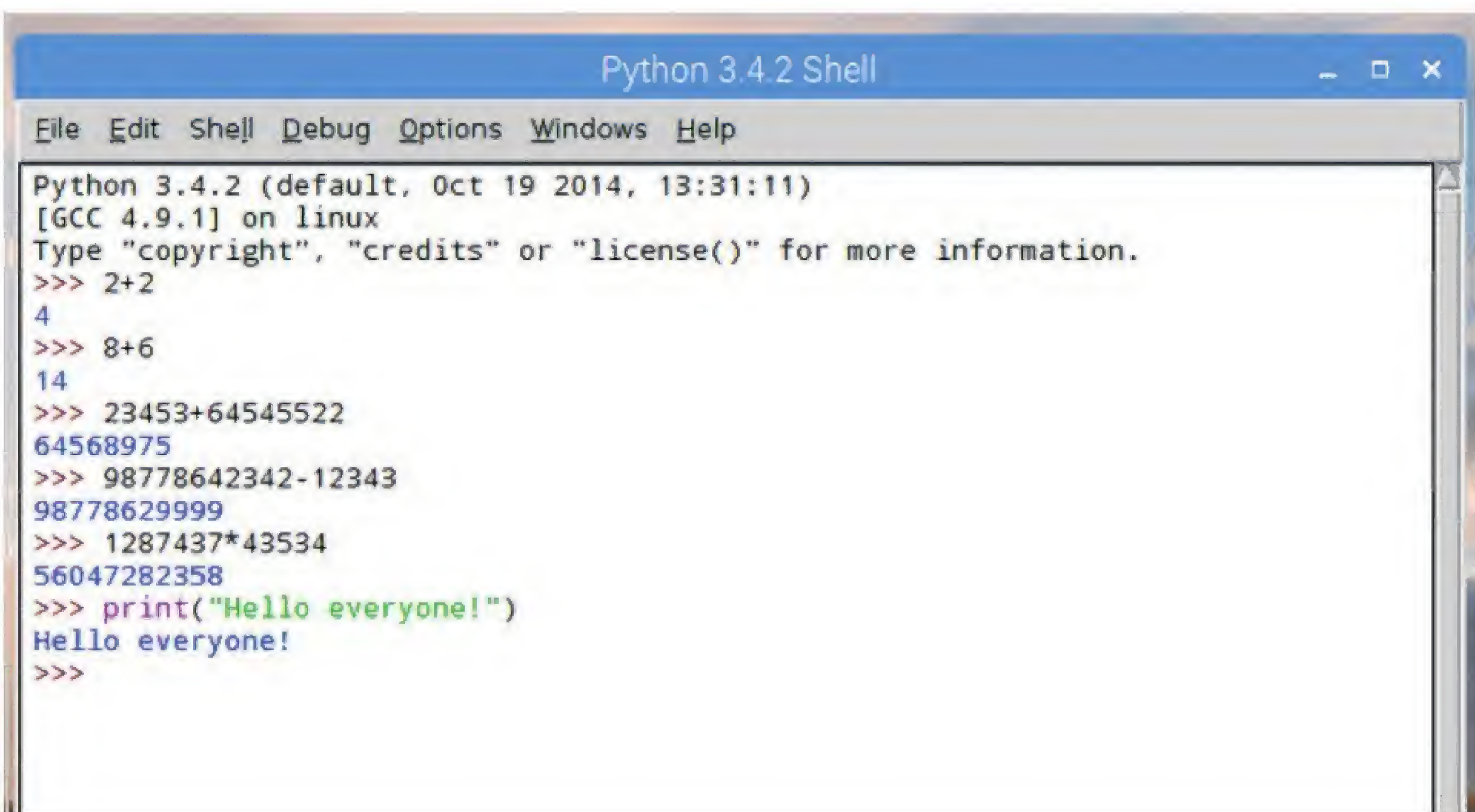
The Python Shell acts very much like a calculator, since code is basically a series of mathematical interactions with the system. Integers, which are the infinite sequence of whole numbers can easily be added, subtracted, multiplied and so on.



STEP 5 Whilst that’s very interesting, it’s not particularly exciting. Instead, try this:

```
print("Hello everyone!")
```

As per the code we entered in Sublime in the Installing a Text Editor section of this book.



STEP 6 This is a little more like it, since you’ve just produced your first bit of code. The Print command is fairly self-explanatory, it prints things. Python 3 requires the brackets as well as quote marks in order to output content to the screen, in this case the Hello everyone! bit.

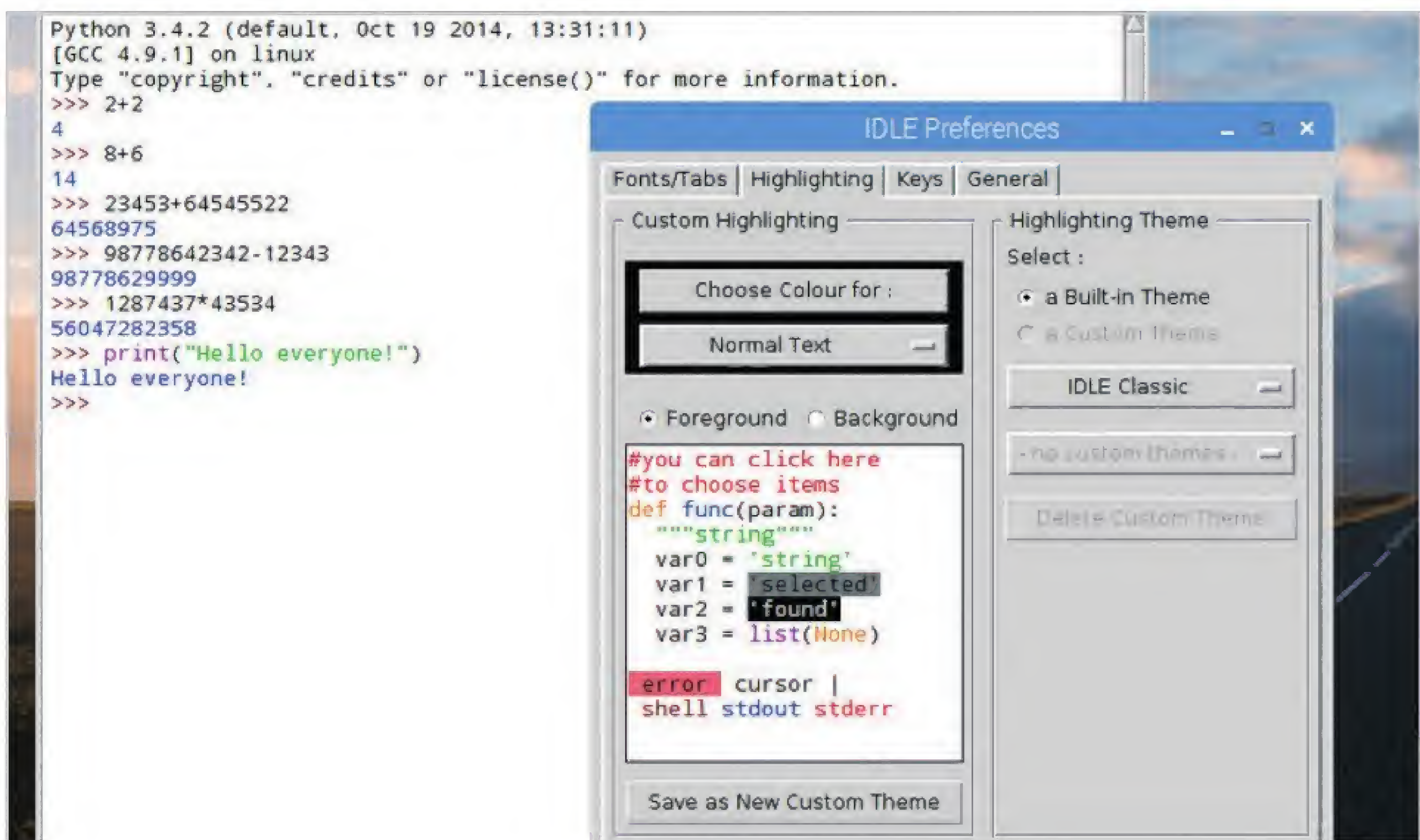


STEP 7 You may have noticed the colour coding within the Python IDLE. The colours represent different elements of Python code. They are:

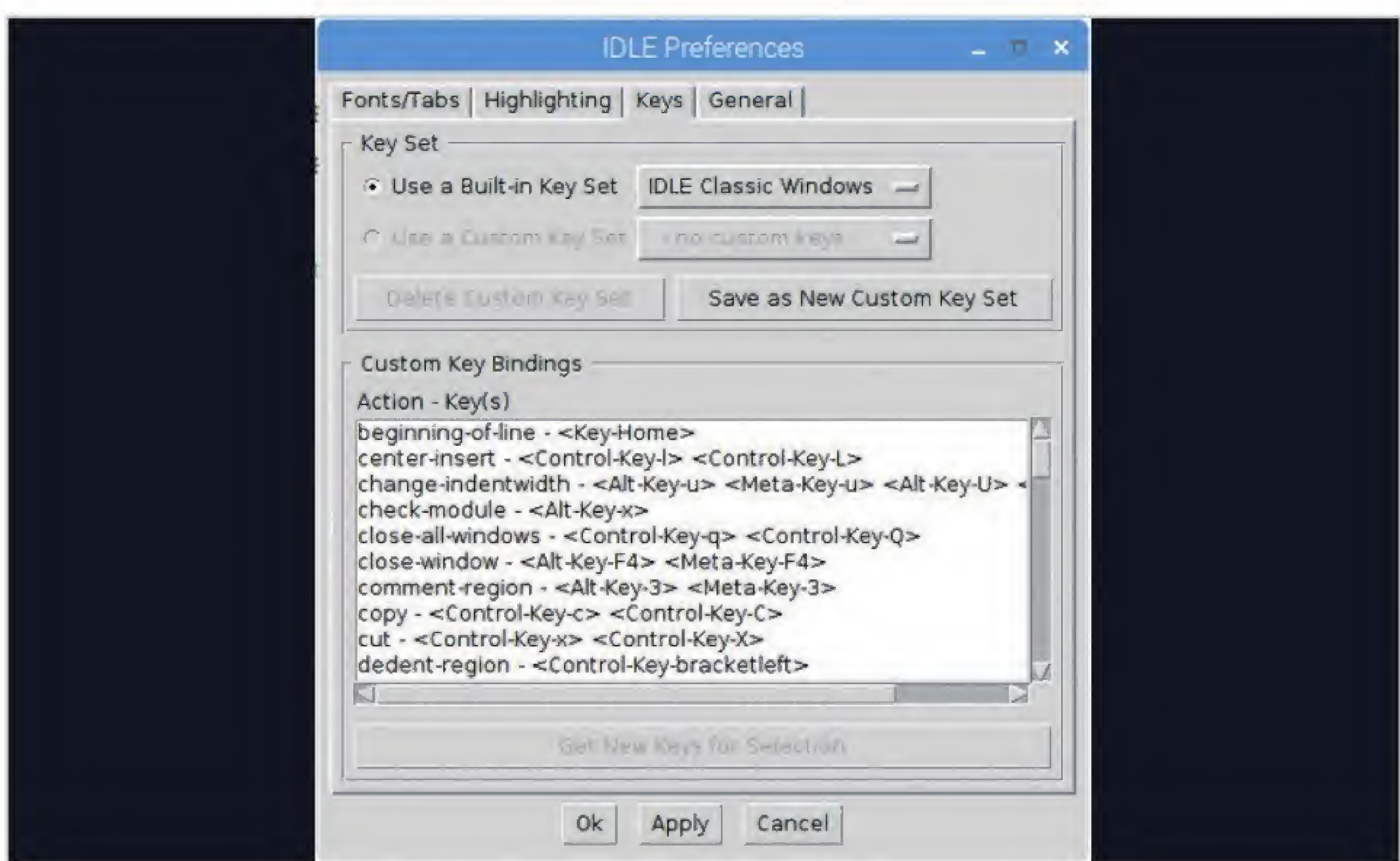
- Black – Data and Variables
- Green – Strings
- Purple – Functions
- Orange – Commands
- Blue – User Functions
- Dark Red – Comments
- Light Red – Error Messages

IDLE Colour Coding		
Colour	Use for	Examples
Black	Data & variables	23.6 area
Green	Strings	"Hello World"
Purple	Functions	len() print()
Orange	Commands	if for else
Blue	User functions	get_area()
Dark red	Comments	#Remember VAT
Light red	Error messages	SyntaxError:

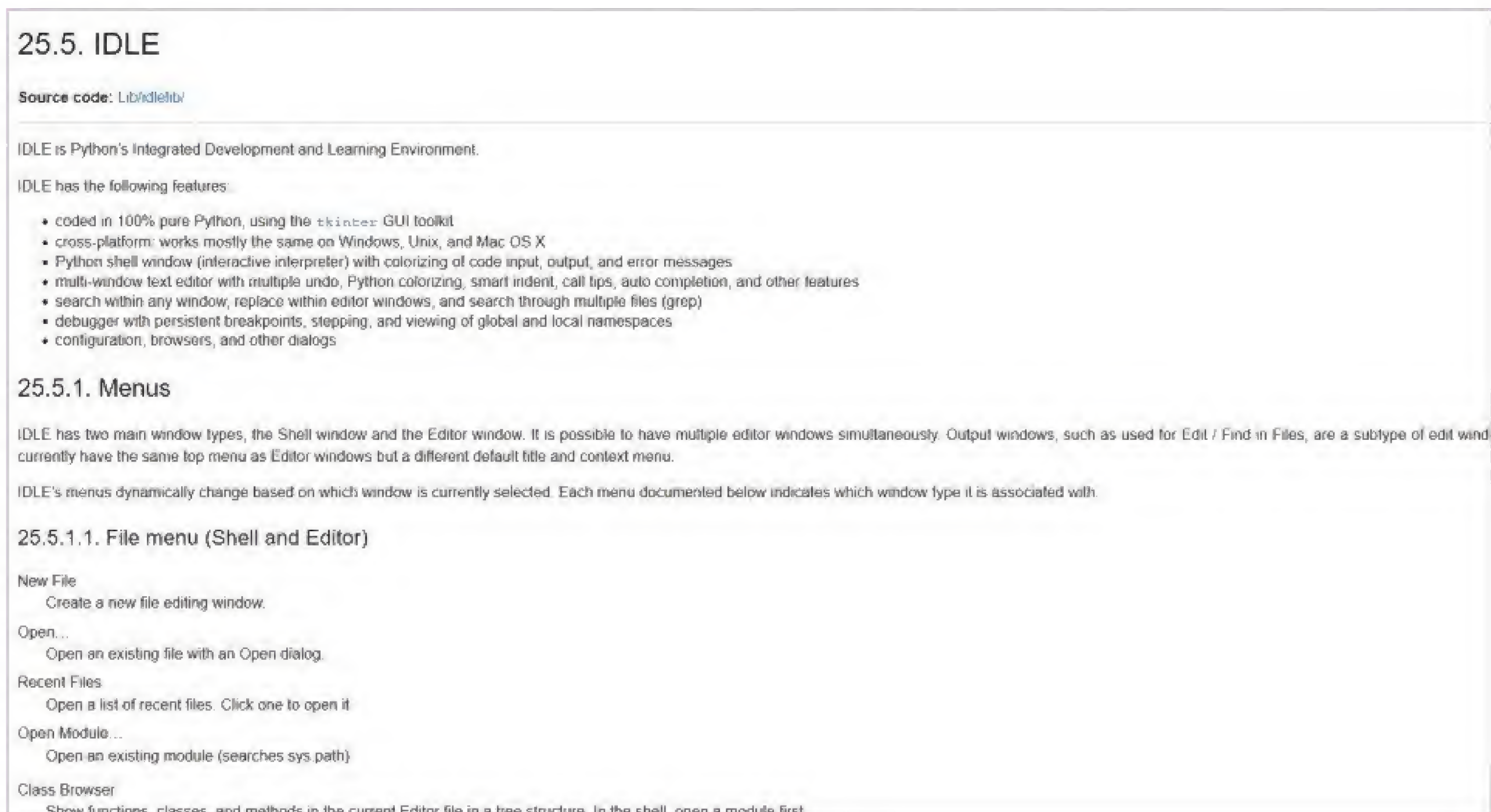
STEP 8 The Python IDLE is a configurable environment. If you don’t like the way the colours are represented, then you can always change them via Options > Configure IDLE and clicking on the Highlighting tab. However, we don’t recommend that as you won’t be seeing the same as our screenshots.



STEP 9 Just like most programs available, regardless of the operating system, there are numerous shortcut keys available. We don’t have room for them all here but within the Options > Configure IDLE and under the Keys tab, you can see a list of the current bindings.



STEP 10 The Python IDLE is a power interface, and one that’s actually been written in Python using one of the available GUI toolkits. If you want to know the many ins and outs for the Shell, we recommend you take a few moments to view www.docs.python.org/3/library/idle.html, which details many of the IDLE’s features.





Your First Code

Essentially, you've already written your first piece of code with the 'print("Hello everyone!")' function from the previous tutorial. However, let's expand that and look at entering your code and playing around with some other Python examples.

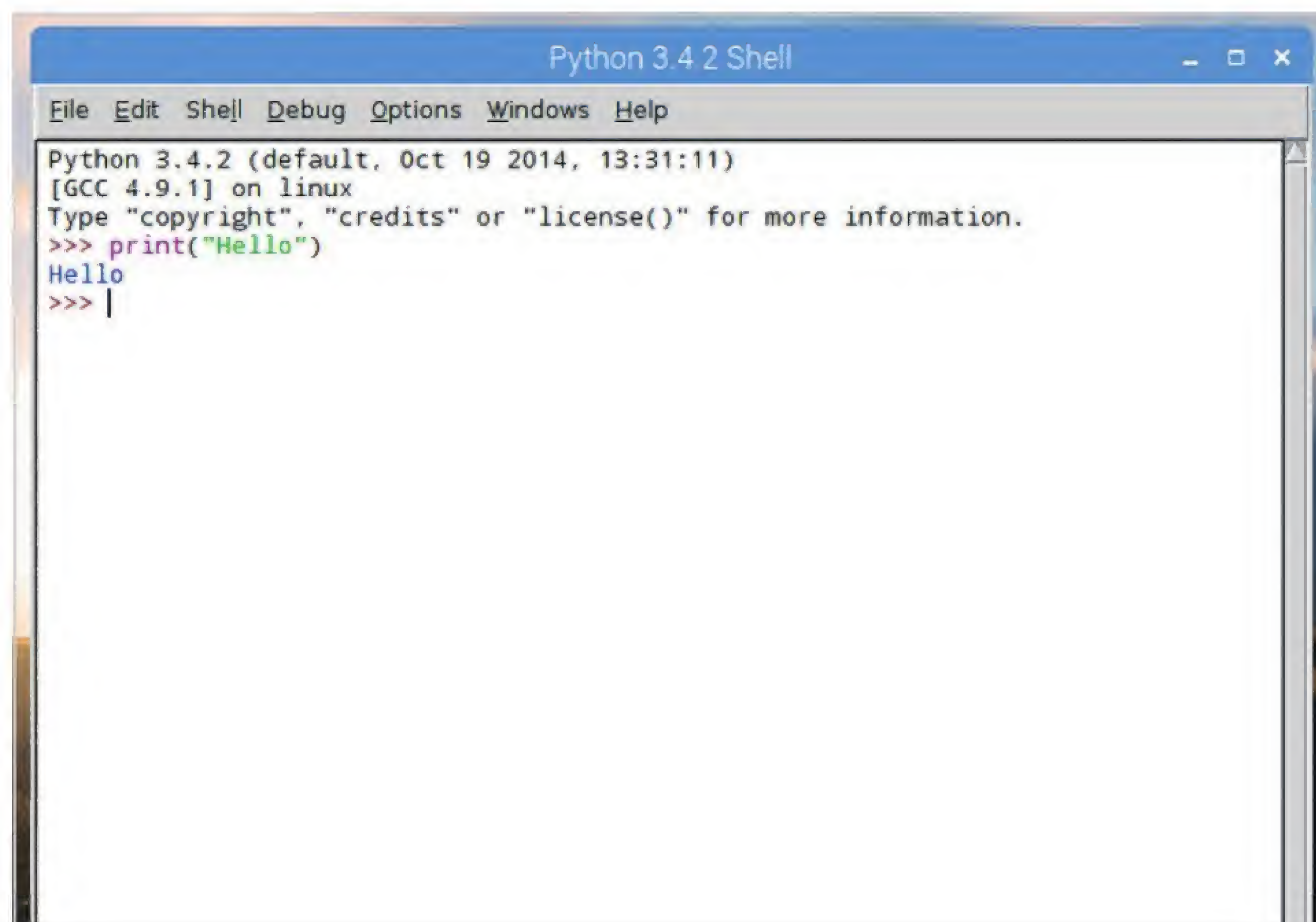
PLAYING WITH PYTHON

With most languages, computer or human, it's all about remembering and applying the right words to the right situation. You're not born knowing these words, so you need to learn them.

STEP 1

If you've closed Python 3 IDLE, reopen it in whichever operating system version you prefer. In the Shell, enter the familiar following:

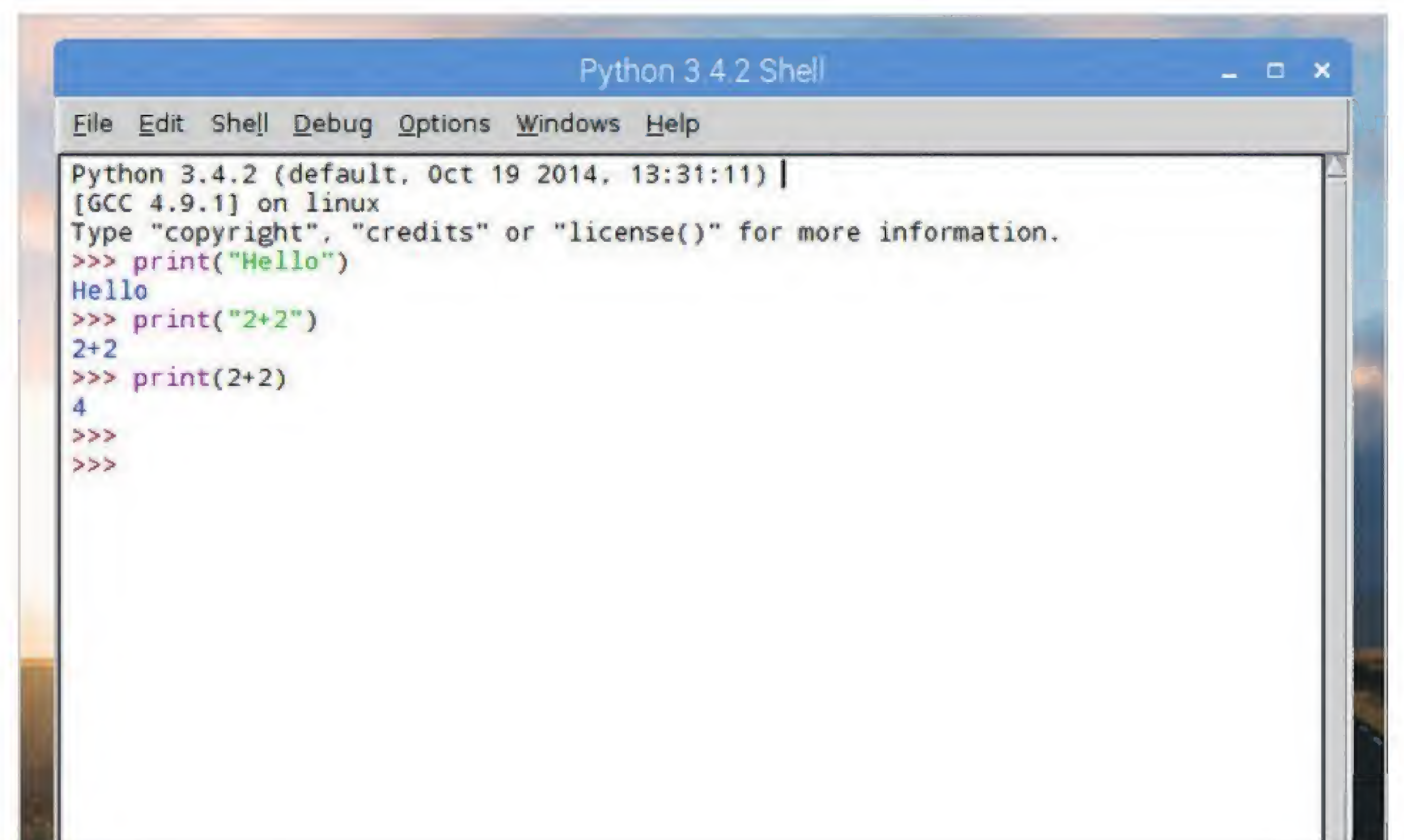
```
print("Hello")
```



STEP 3

You can see that instead of the number 4, the output is the 2+2 you asked to be printed to the screen. The quotation marks are defining what's being outputted to the IDLE Shell; to print the total of 2+2 you need to remove the quotes:

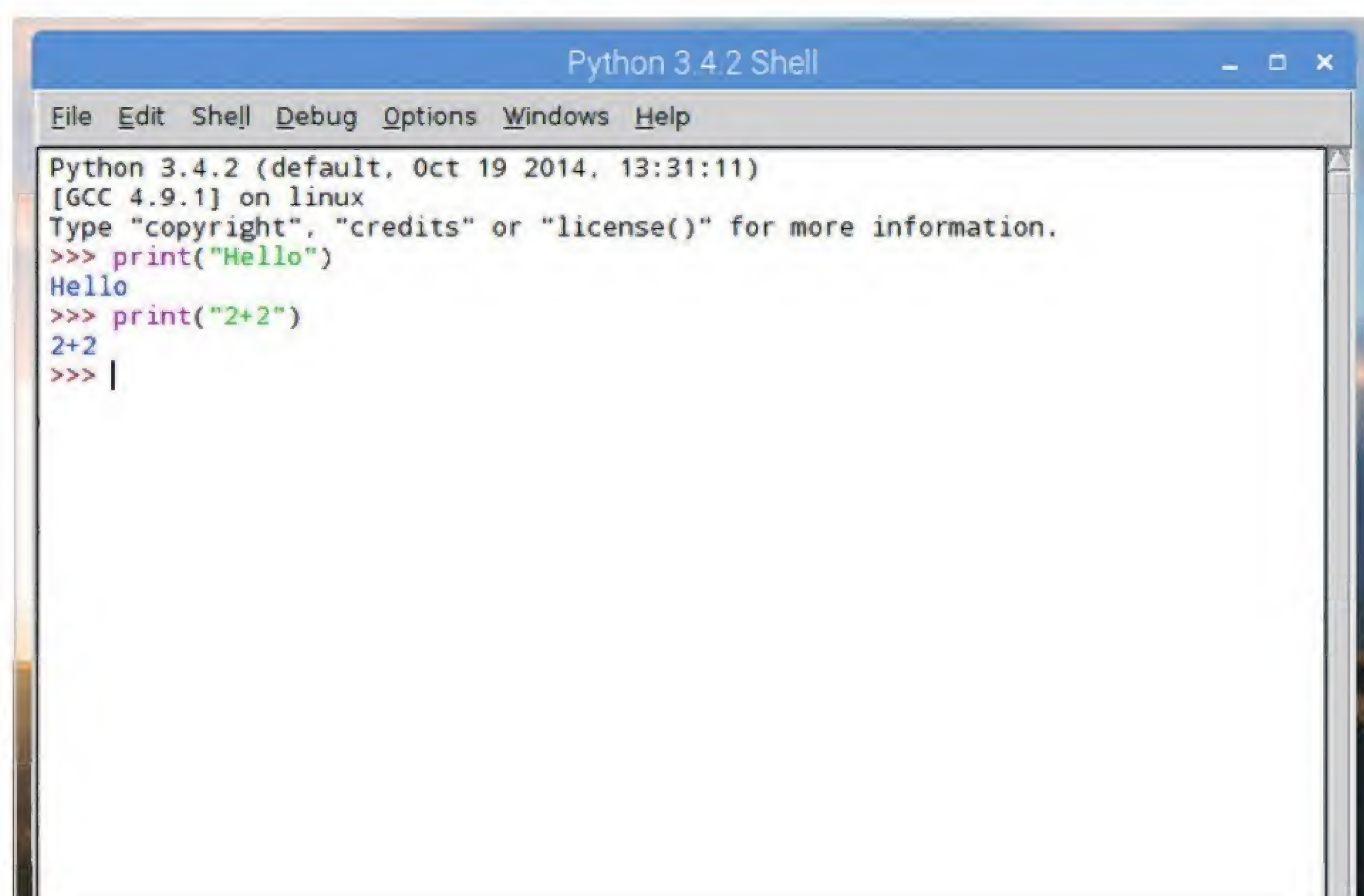
```
print(2+2)
```



STEP 2

Just as predicted, the word Hello appears in the Shell as blue text, indicating output from a string. It's fairly straightforward and doesn't require too much explanation. Now try:

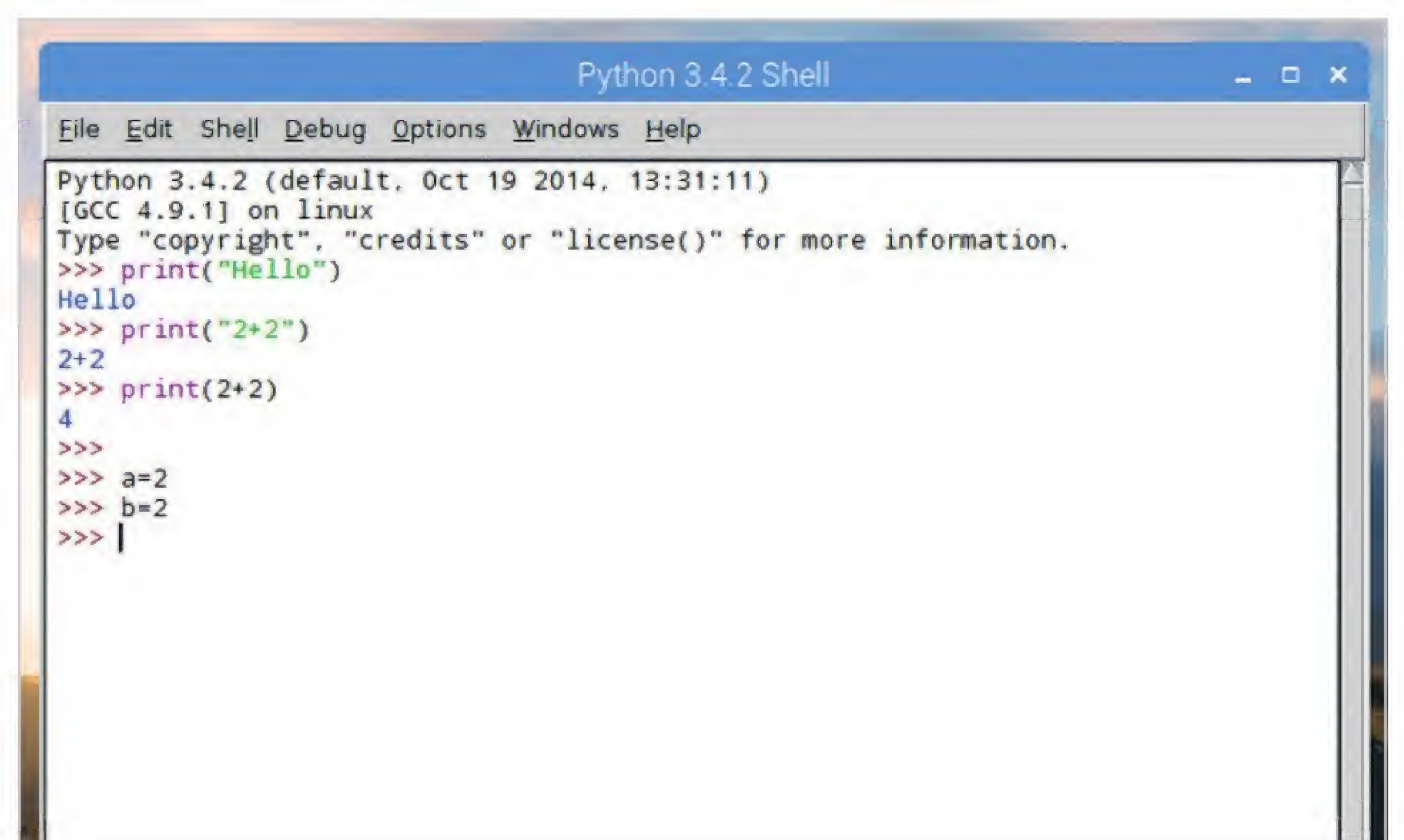
```
print("2+2")
```



STEP 4

You can continue as such, printing 2+2, 464+2343 and so on to the Shell. An easier way is to use a variable, which is something we will cover in more depth later. For now, enter:

```
a=2  
b=2
```



**STEP 5**

What you have done here is assign the letters a and b two values: 2 and 2. These are now variables, which can be called upon by Python to output, add, subtract, divide and so on for as long as their numbers stay the same. Try this:

```
print(a)
print(b)
```

```
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> print("Hello")
Hello
>>> print("2+2")
2+2
>>> print(2+2)
4
>>>
>>> a=2
>>> b=2
>>> print(a)
2
>>> print(b)
2
>>> |
```

STEP 6

The output of the last step displays the current values of both a and b individually, as you've asked them to be printed separately. If you want to add them up, you can use the following:

```
print(a+b)
```

This code simply takes the values of a and b, adds them together and outputs the result.

```
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> print("Hello")
Hello
>>> print("2+2")
2+2
>>> print(2+2)
4
>>>
>>> a=2
>>> b=2
>>> print(a)
2
>>> print(b)
2
>>> print(a+b)
4
>>> |
```

STEP 7

You can play around with different kinds of variables and the Print function. For example, you could assign variables for someone's name:

```
name="David"
print(name)
```

```
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> print("Hello")
Hello
>>> print("2+2")
2+2
>>> print(2+2)
4
>>>
>>> a=2
>>> b=2
>>> print(a)
2
>>> print(b)
2
>>> print(a+b)
4
>>> name="David"
>>> print(name)
David
>>> |
```

STEP 8

Now let's add a surname:

```
surname="Hayward"
print(surname)
```

You now have two variables containing a first name and a surname and you can print them independently.

```
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> name="David"
>>> print(name)
David
>>> surname="Hayward"
>>> print(surname)
Hayward
>>> |
```

STEP 9

If we were to apply the same routine as before, using the + symbol, the name wouldn't appear correctly in the output in the Shell. Try it:

```
print(name+surname)
```

You need a space between the two, defining them as two separate values and not something you mathematically play around with.

```
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> name="David"
>>> print(name)
David
>>> surname="Hayward"
>>> print(surname)
Hayward
>>> print(name+surname)
DavidHayward
>>> |
```

STEP 10

In Python 3 you can separate the two variables with a space using a comma:

```
print(name, surname)
```

Alternatively, you can add the space ourselves:

```
print(name+" "+surname)
```

The use of the comma is much neater, as you can see. Congratulations, you've just taken your first steps into the wide world of Python.

```
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> name="David"
>>> print(name)
David
>>> surname="Hayward"
>>> print(surname)
Hayward
>>> print(name+surname)
DavidHayward
>>> print(name, surname)
David Hayward
>>> print(name+" "+surname)
David Hayward
>>> |
```



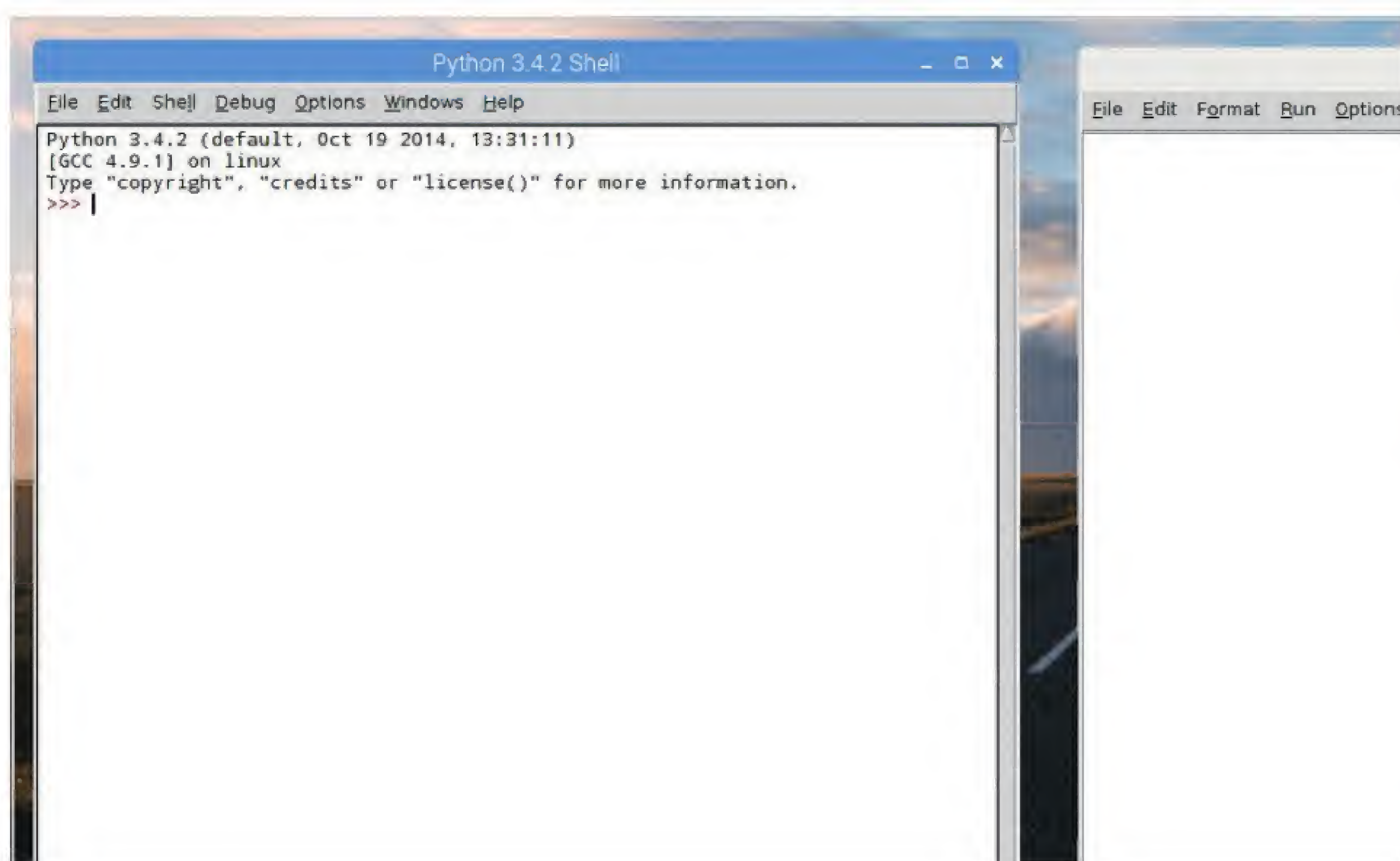

Saving and Executing Your Code

Whilst working in the IDLE Shell is perfectly fine for small code snippets, it's not designed for entering longer program listings. In this section you're going to be introduced to the IDLE Editor, where you will be working from now on.

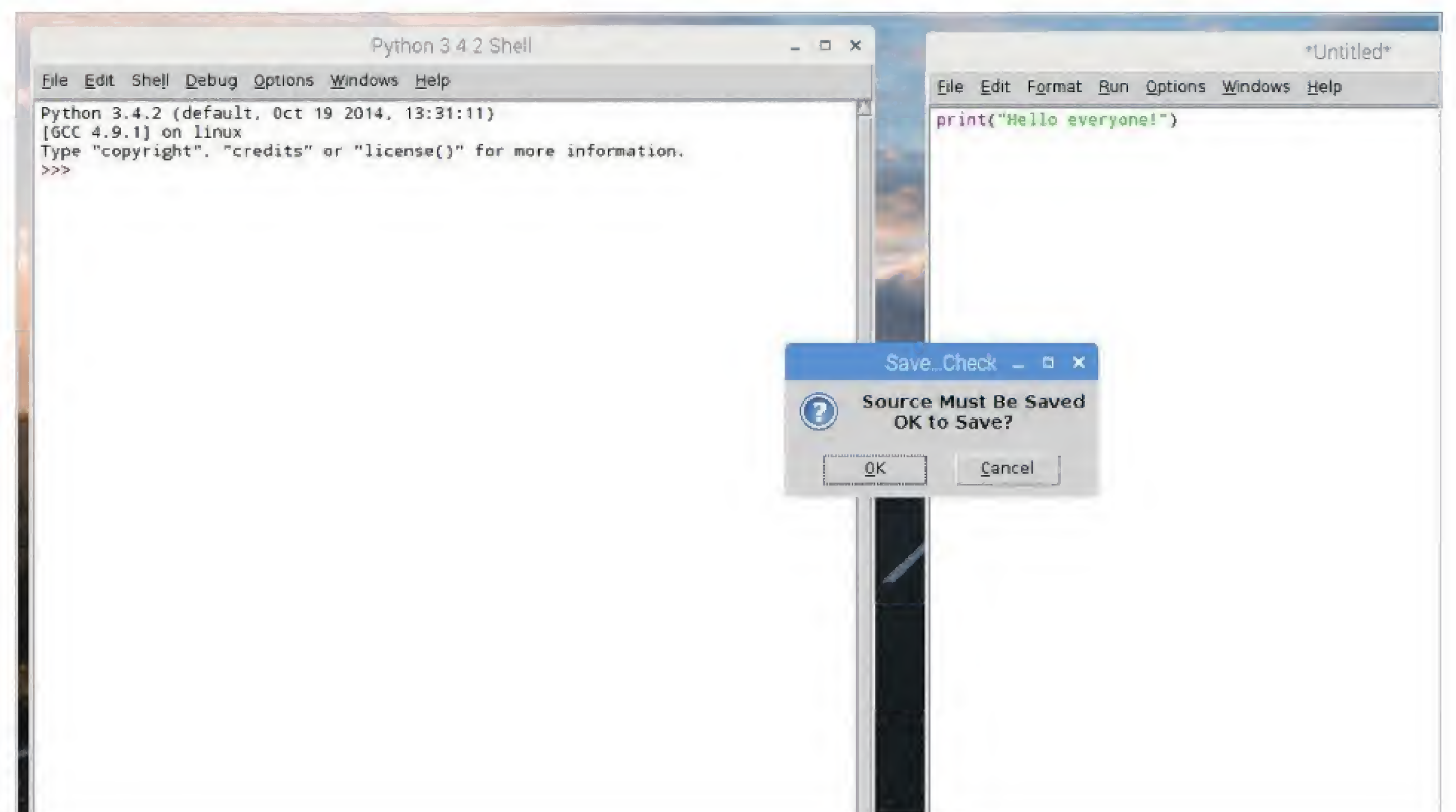
EDITING CODE

You will eventually reach a point where you have to move on from inputting single lines of code into the Shell. Instead, the IDLE Editor will allow you to save and execute your Python code.

STEP 1 First, open the Python IDLE Shell and when it's up, click on File > New File. This will open a new window with Untitled as its name. This is the Python IDLE Editor and within it you can enter the code needed to create your future programs.

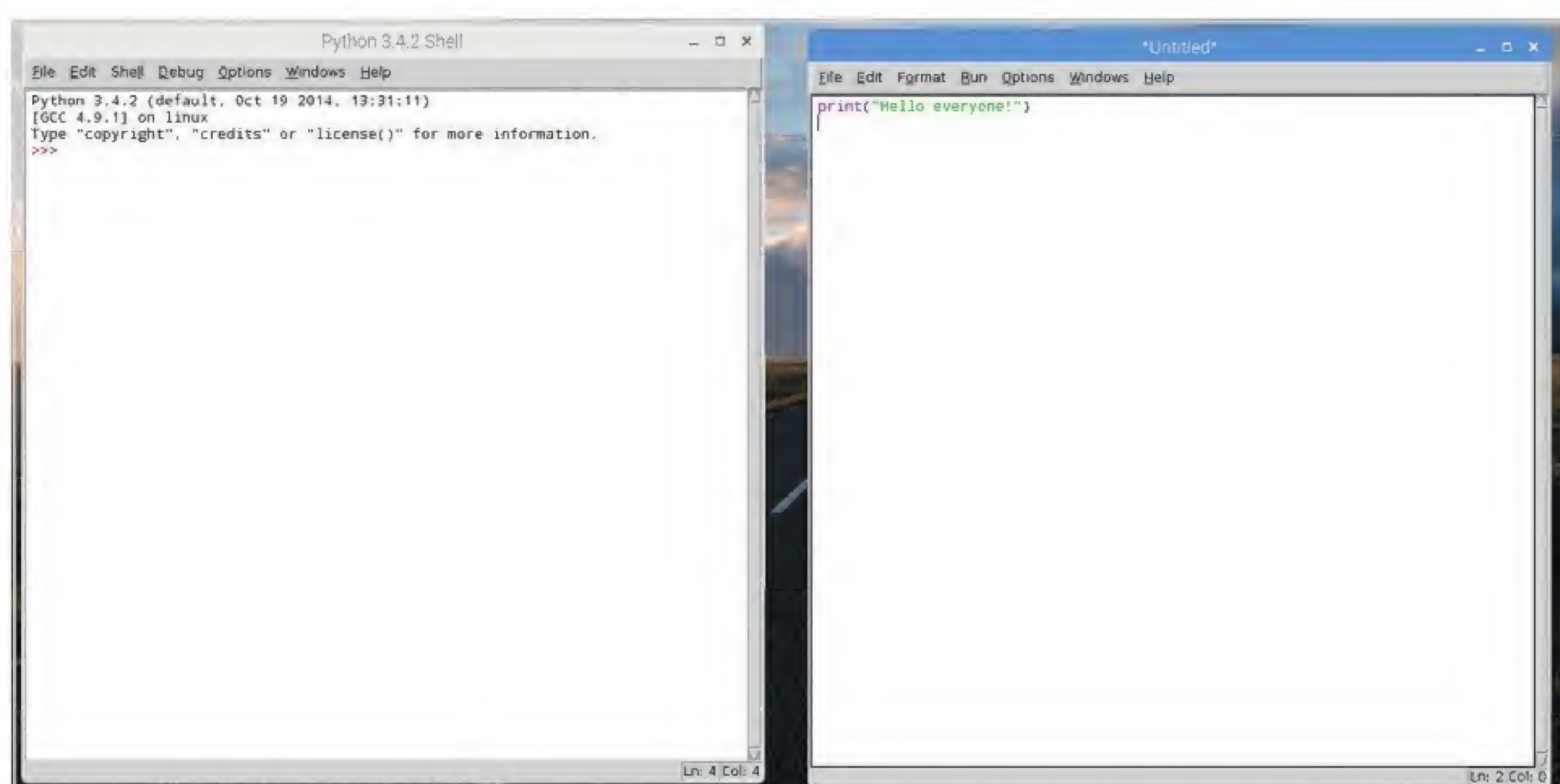


STEP 3 You can see that the same colour coding is in place in the IDLE Editor as it is in the Shell, enabling you to better understand what's going on with your code. However, to execute the code you need to first save it. Press F5 and you get a Save...Check box open.

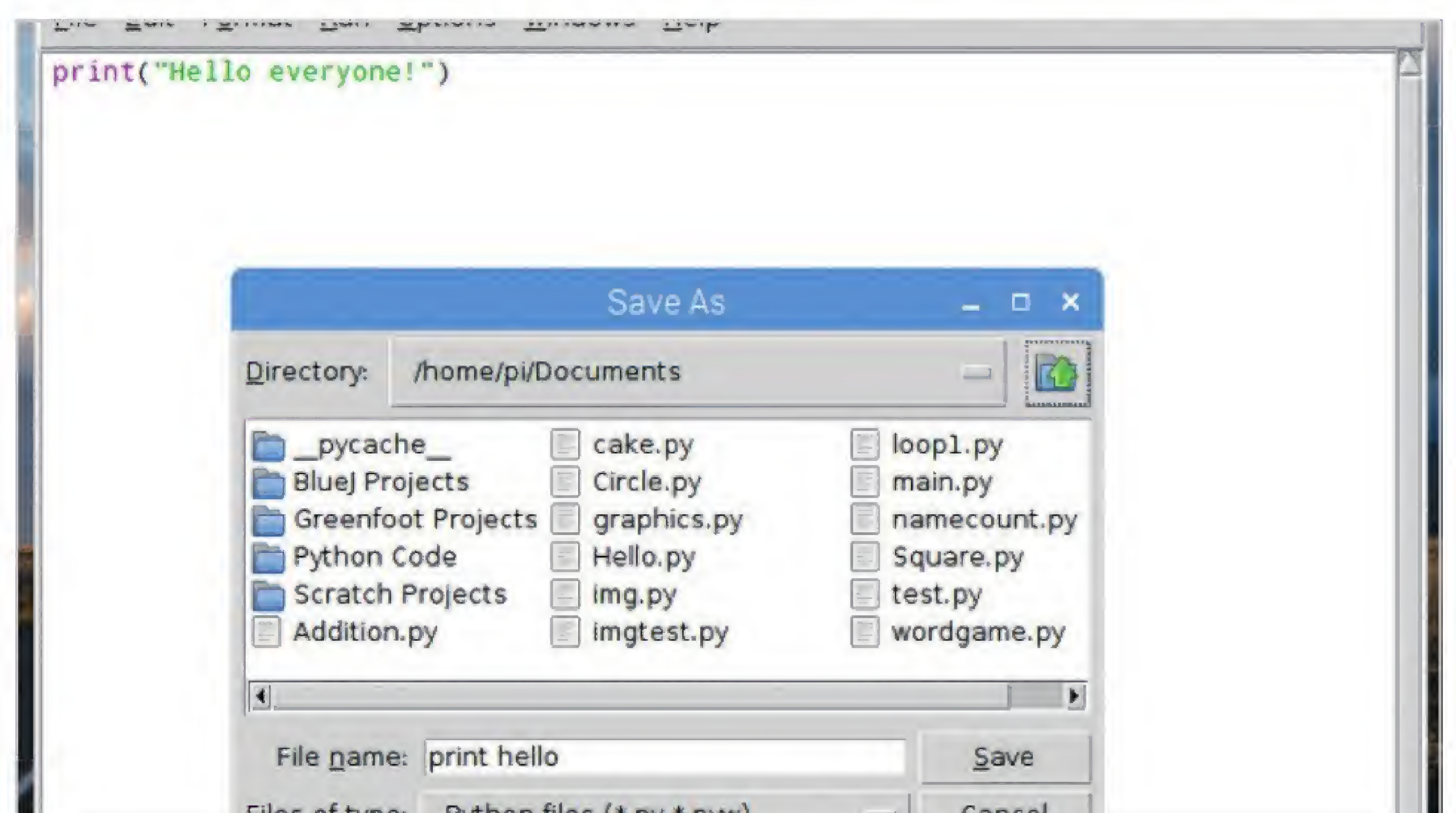


STEP 2 The IDLE Editor is, for all intents and purposes, a simple text editor with Python features, colour coding and so on; much in the same vein as Sublime. You enter code as you would within the Shell, so taking an example from the previous tutorial, enter:

```
print("Hello everyone!")
```



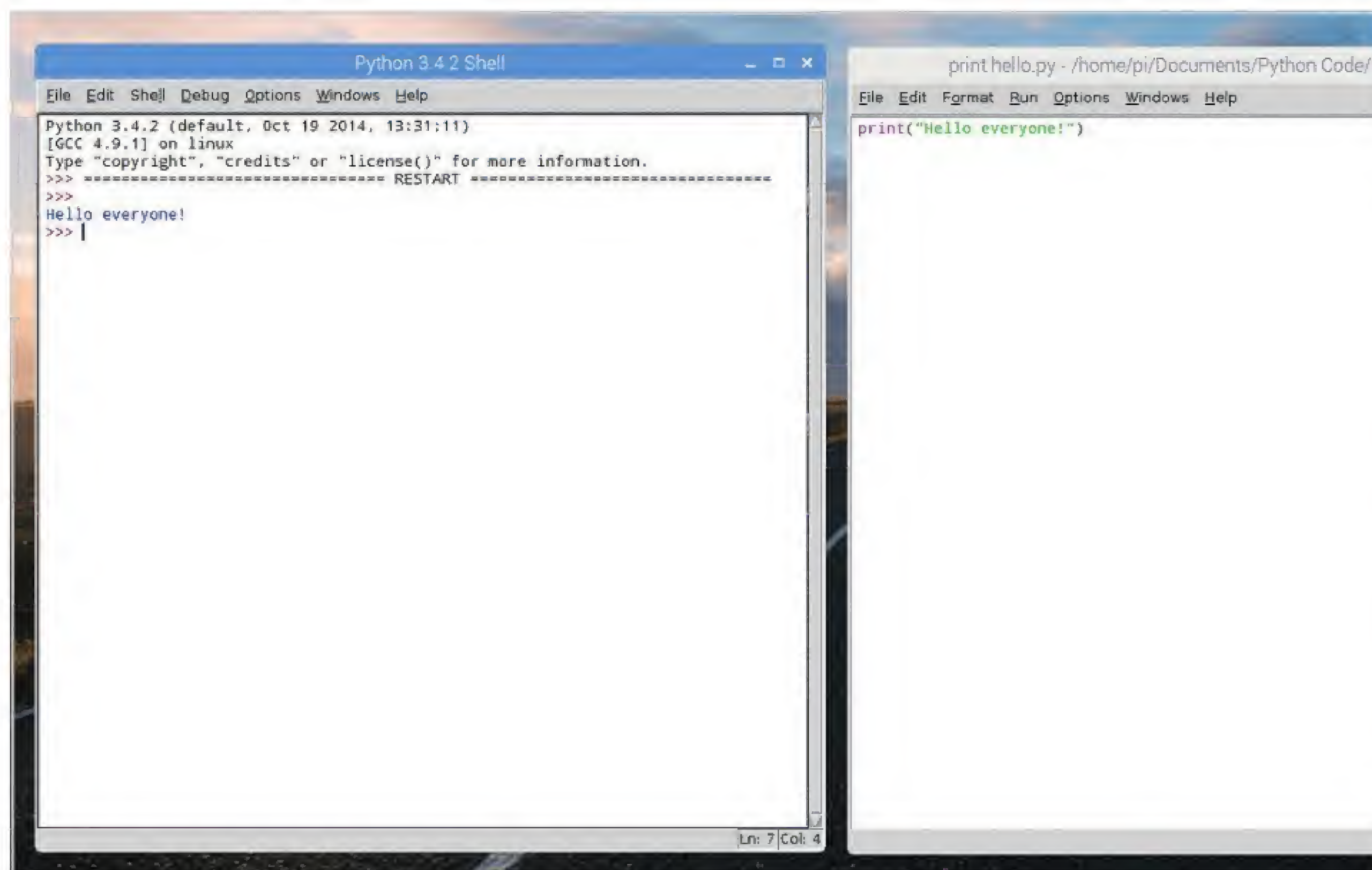
STEP 4 Click on the OK button in the Save box and select a destination where you'll save all your Python code. The destination can be a dedicated folder called Python or you can just dump it wherever you like. Remember to keep a tidy drive though, to help you out in the future.





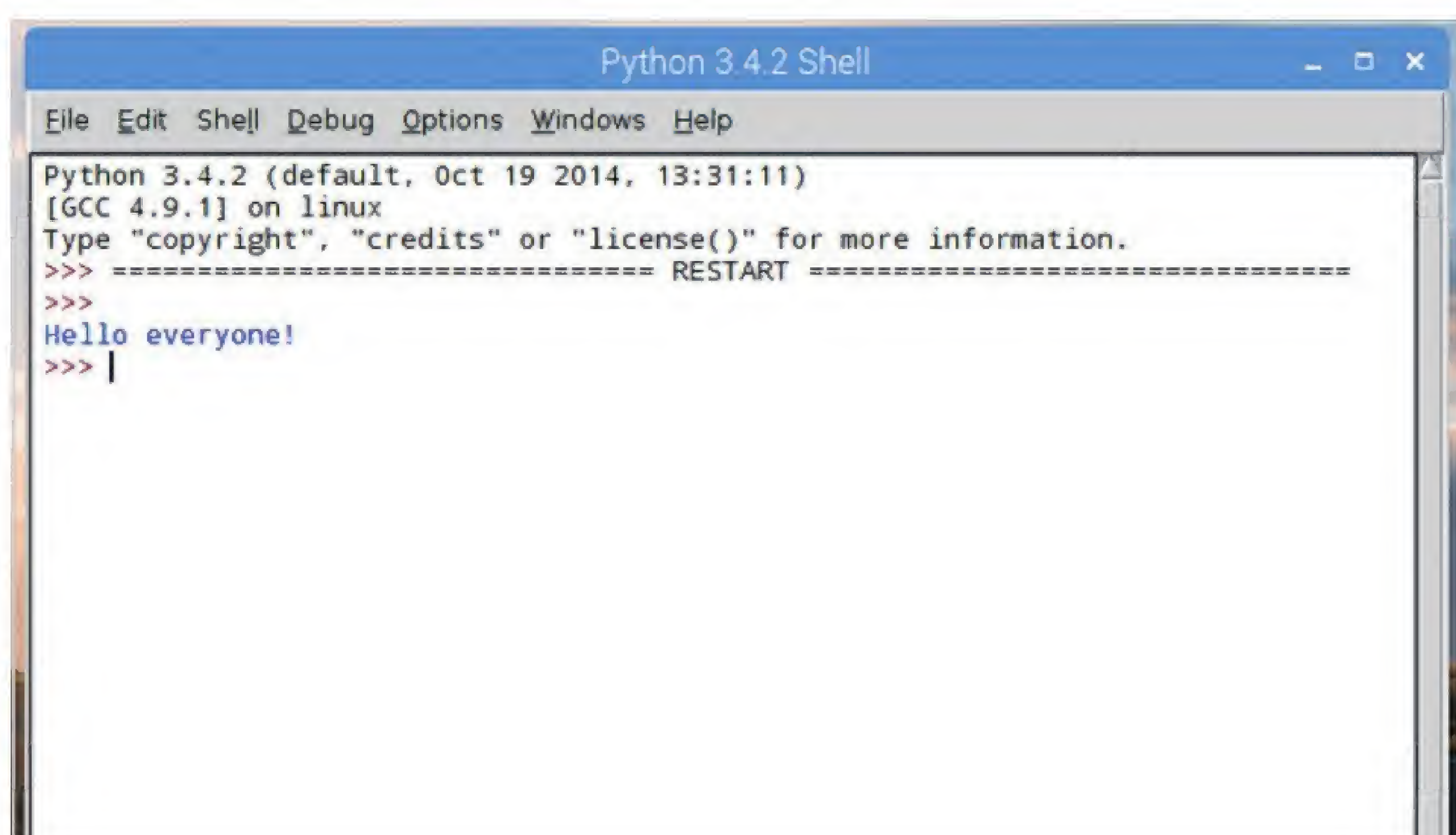
STEP 5

Enter a name for your code, 'print hello' for example, and click on the Save button. Once the Python code is saved it's executed and the output will be detailed in the IDLE Shell. In this case, the words 'Hello everyone!'.



STEP 6

This is how the vast majority of your Python code will be conducted. Enter it into the Editor, hit F5, save the code and look at the output in the Shell. Sometimes things will differ, depending on whether you've requested a separate window, but essentially that's the process. It's the process we will use throughout this book, unless otherwise stated.



STEP 8

Let's extend the code and enter a few examples from the previous tutorial:

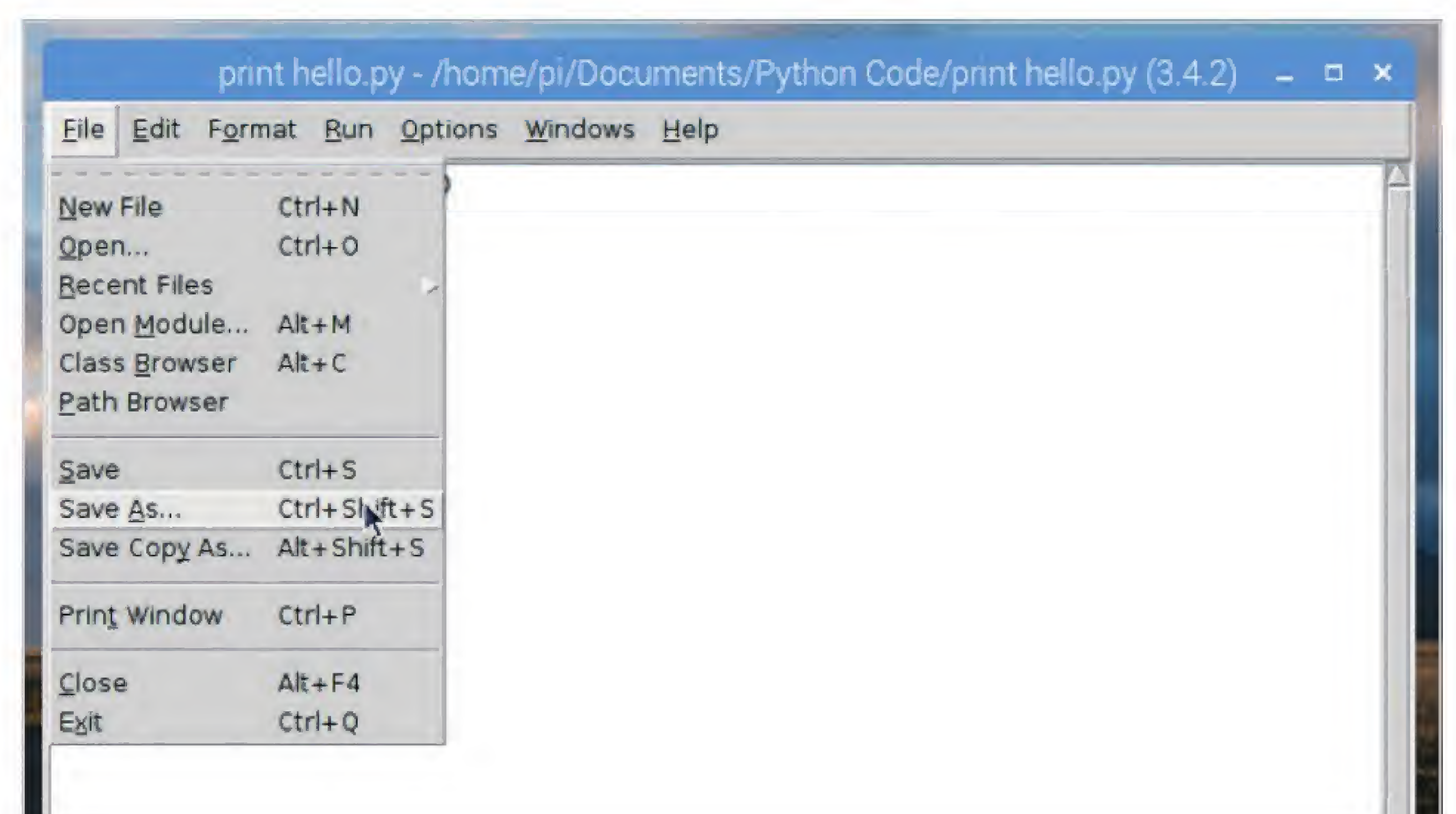
```
a=2
b=2
name="David"
surname="Hayward"
print(name, surname)
print(a+b)
```

If you press F5 now you'll be asked to save the file, again, as it's been modified from before.



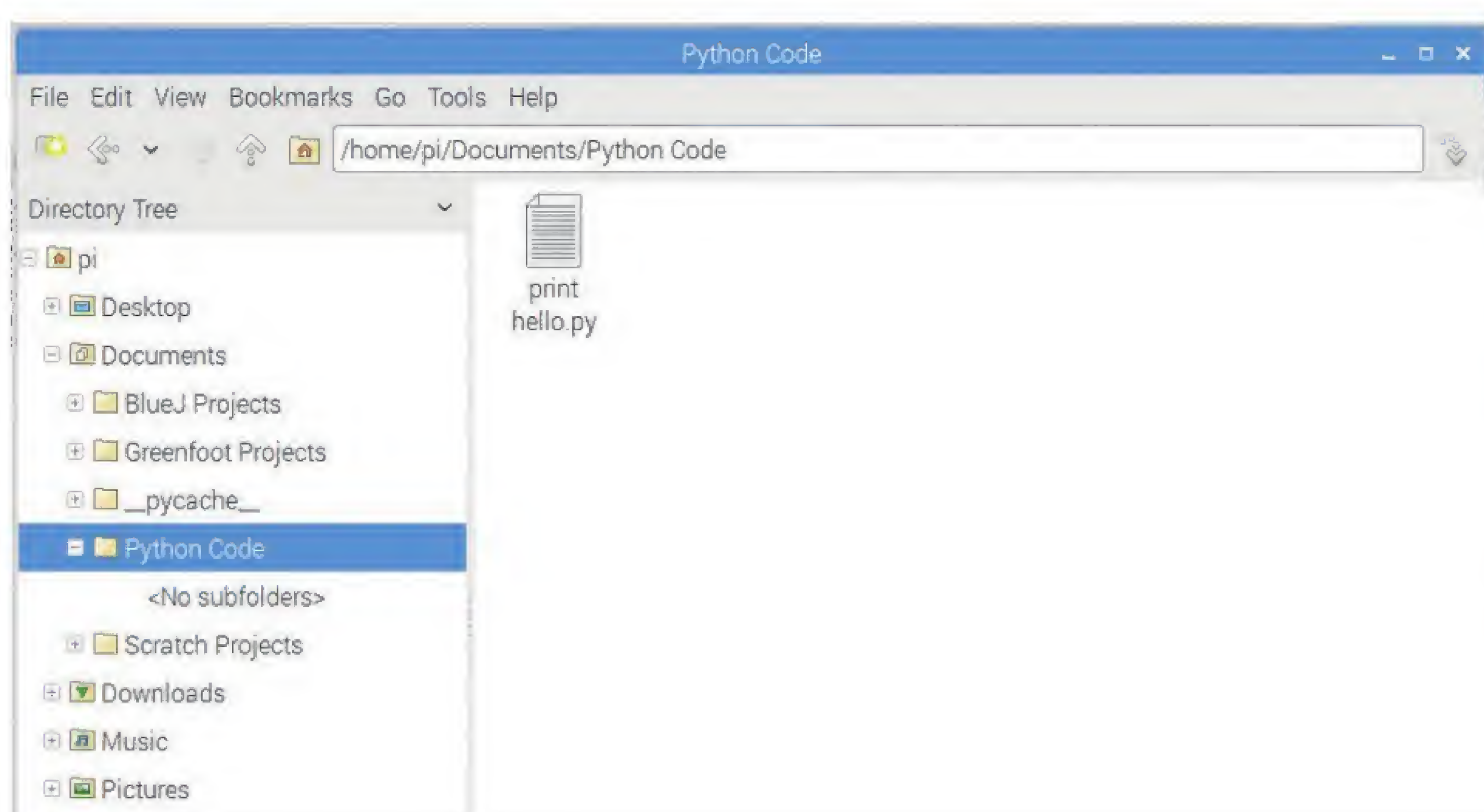
STEP 9

If you click the OK button, the file will be overwritten with the new code entries, and executed, with the output in the Shell. It's not a problem with just these few lines but if you were to edit a larger file, overwriting can become an issue. Instead, use File > Save As from within the Editor to create a backup.



STEP 7

If you open the file location of the saved Python code, you can see that it ends in a .py extension. This is the default Python file name. Any code you create will be whatever.py and any code downloaded from the many internet Python resource sites will be .py. Just ensure that the code is written for Python 3.

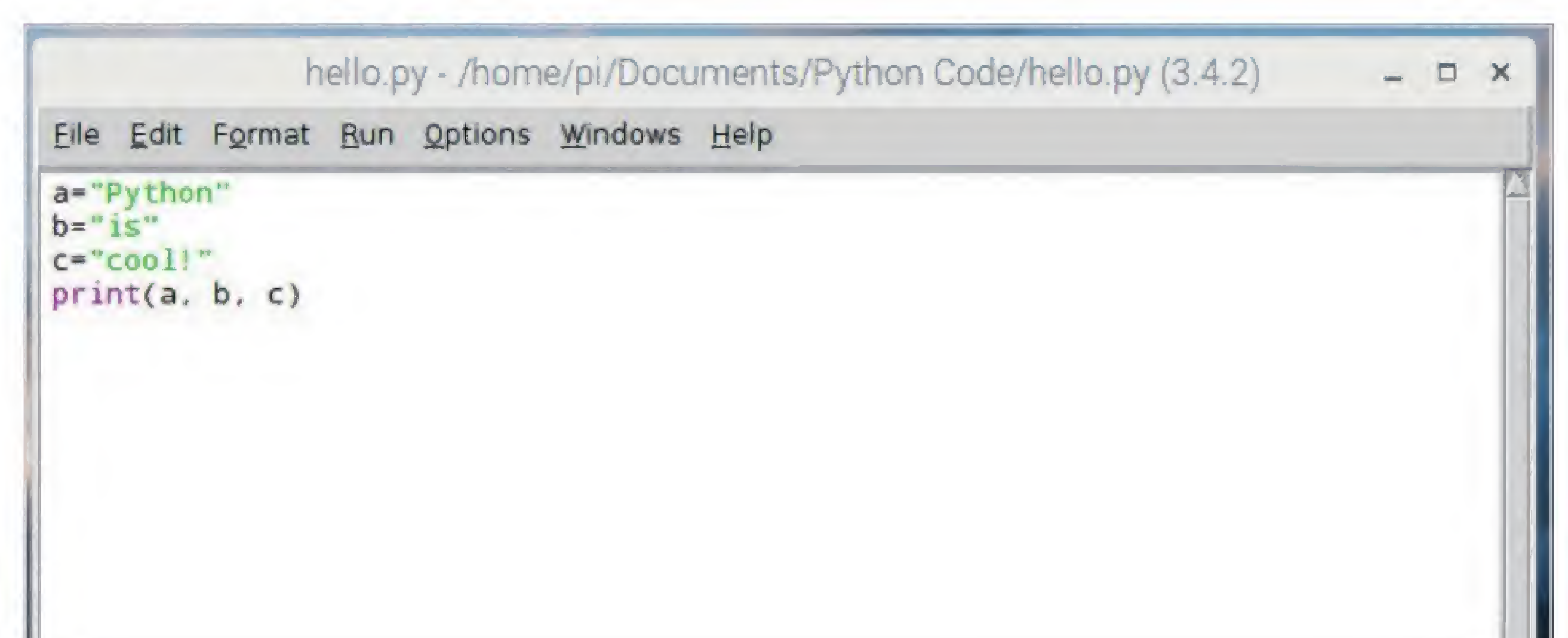


STEP 10

Now create a new file. Close the Editor, and open a new instance (File > New File from the Shell). Enter the following and save it as hello.py:

```
a="Python"
b="is"
c="cool!"
print(a, b, c)
```

You will use this code in the next tutorial.





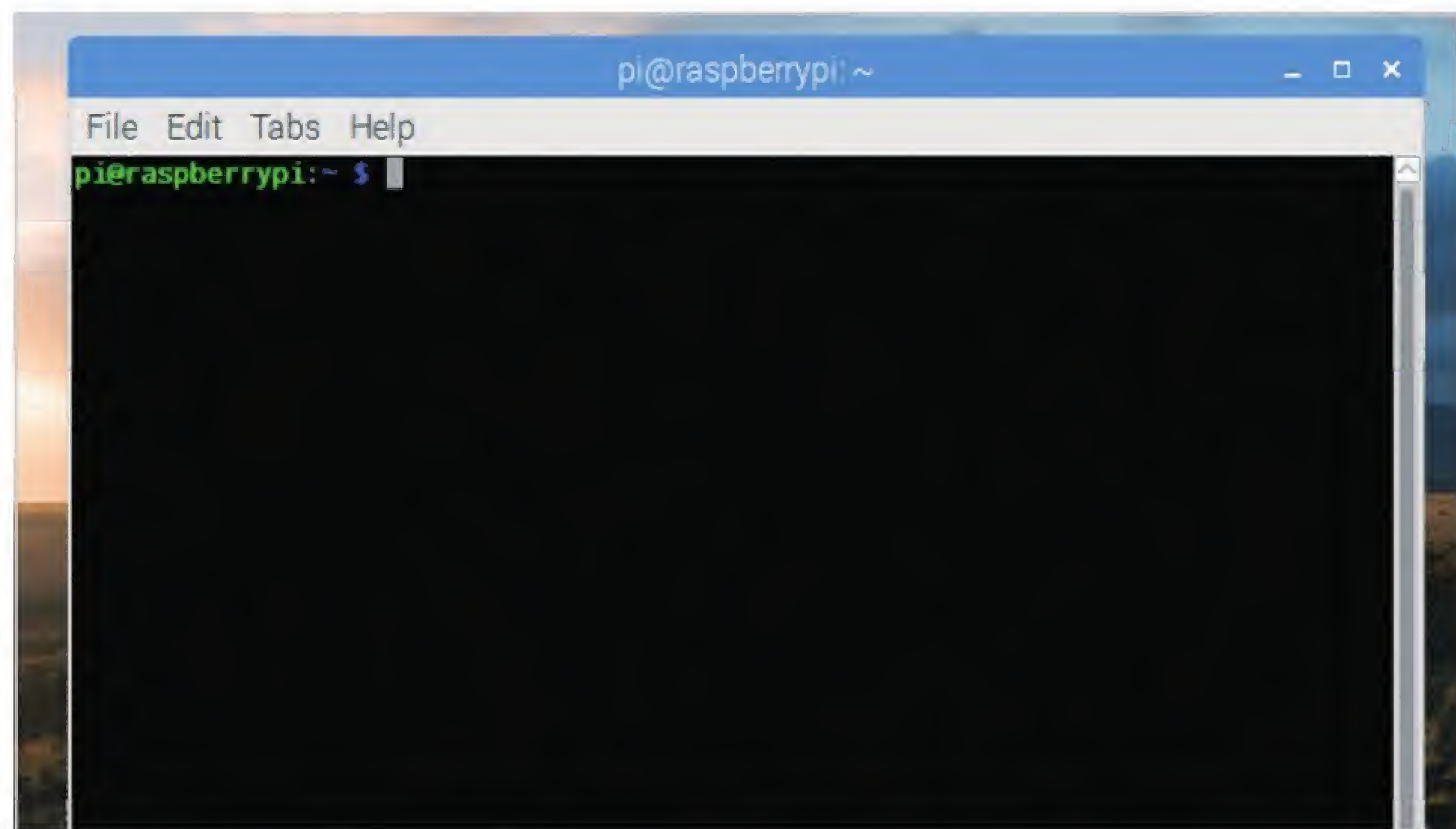
Executing Code from the Command Line

Although we're working from the GUI IDLE throughout this book, it's worth taking a look at Python's command line handling. We already know there's a command line version of Python but it's also used to execute code.

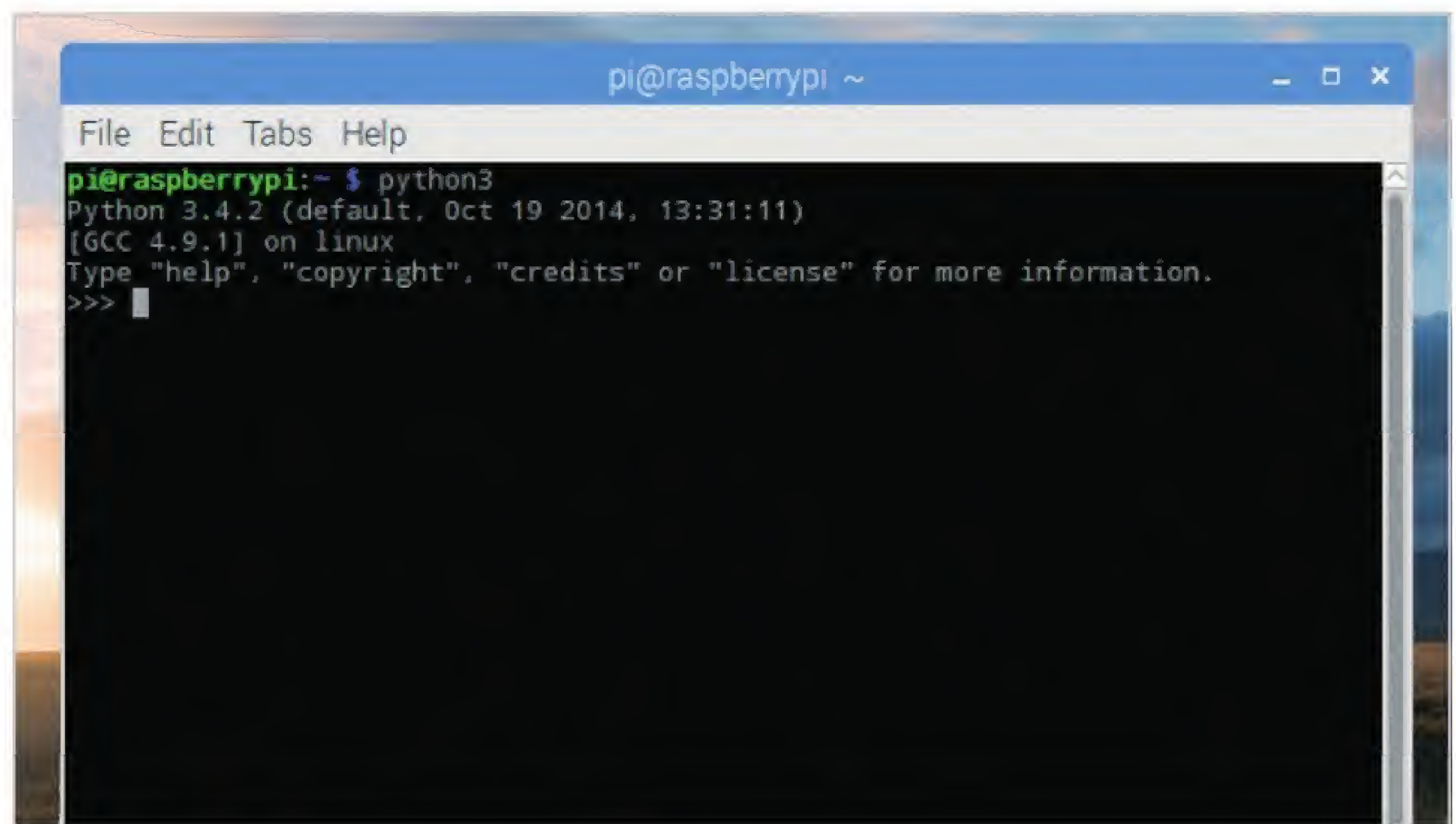
COMMAND THE CODE

Using the code we created in the previous tutorial, the one we named `hello.py`, let's see how you can run code that was made in the GUI at the command line level.

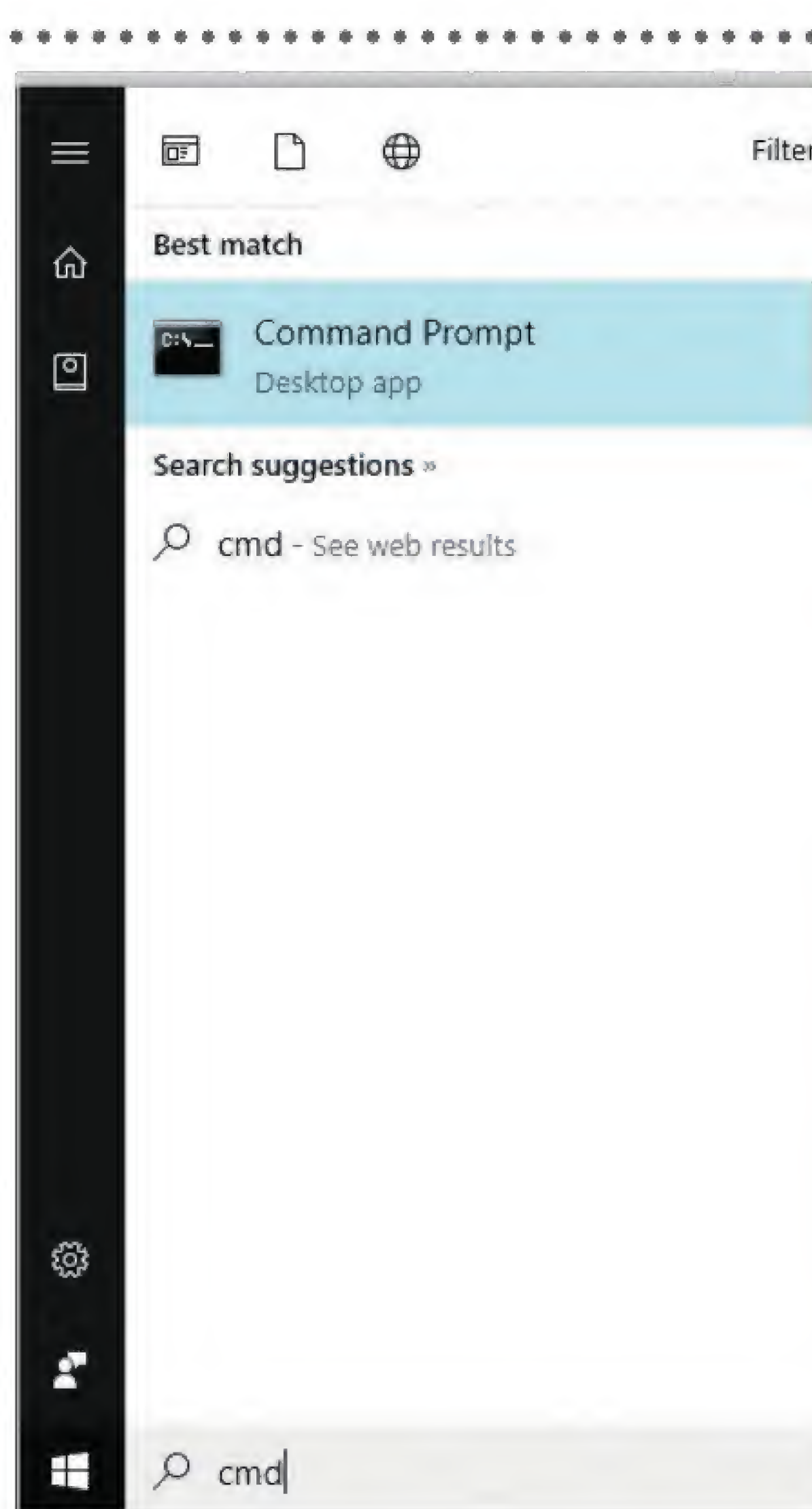
STEP 1 Python, in Linux, comes with two possible ways of executing code via the command line. One of the ways is with Python 2, whilst the other uses the Python 3 libraries and so on. First though, drop into the command line or Terminal on your operating system.



STEP 3 Now you're at the command line we can start Python. For Python 3 you need to enter the command `python3` and press Enter. This will put you into the command line version of the Shell, with the familiar three right-facing arrows as the cursor (`>>>`).



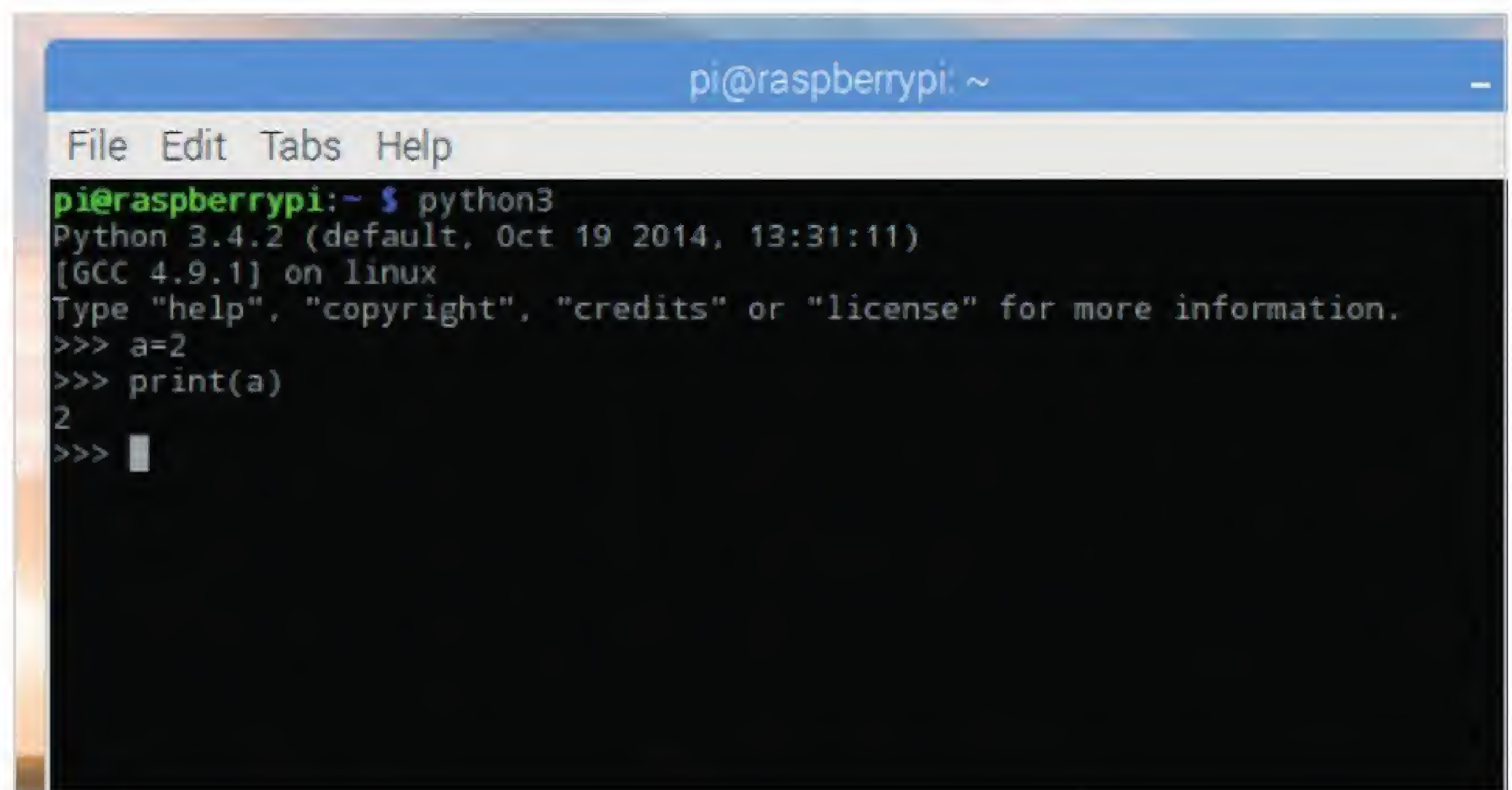
STEP 2 Just as before, we're using a Raspberry Pi: Windows users will need to click the Start button and search for CMD, then click the Command Line returned search; and macOS users can get access to their command line by clicking Go > Utilities > Terminal.



STEP 4 From here you're able to enter the code you've looked at previously, such as:

```
a=2
print(a)
```

You can see that it works exactly the same.





STEP 5

Now enter: **exit()** to leave the command line Python session and return you back to the command prompt. Enter the folder where you saved the code from the previous tutorial and list the available files within; hopefully you should see the `hello.py` file.

```
pi@raspberrypi: ~/Documents/Python Code
File Edit Tabs Help
pi@raspberrypi:~$ python3
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "help", "copyright", "credits" or "license" for more information.
>>> a=2
>>> print(a)
2
>>> exit()
pi@raspberrypi:~$ cd Documents/
pi@raspberrypi:~/Documents$ cd Python\ Code/
pi@raspberrypi:~/Documents/Python Code$ ls
hello.py print hello.py
pi@raspberrypi:~/Documents/Python Code$
```

STEP 8

The result of running Python 3 code from the Python 2 command line is quite obvious. Whilst it doesn't error out in any way, due to the differences between the way Python 3 handles the Print command over Python 2, the result isn't as we expected. Using Sublime for the moment, open the `hello.py` file.

```
C:\Users\david\Documents\Python\hello.py - Sublime Text (UNREGISTERED)
File Edit Selection Find View Goto Tools Project Preferences Help

hello.py
1 a="Python"
2 b="is"
3 c="cool!"
4 print(a, b, c)
5
```

STEP 6

From within the same folder as the code you're going to run, enter the following into the command line:

```
python3 hello.py
```

This will execute the code we created, which to remind you is:

```
a="Python"
b="is"
c="cool!"
print(a, b, c)
```

```
pi@raspberrypi:~$ python3
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "help", "copyright", "credits" or "license" for more information.
>>> a=2
>>> print(a)
2
>>> exit()
pi@raspberrypi:~$ cd Documents/
pi@raspberrypi:~/Documents$ cd Python\ Code/
pi@raspberrypi:~/Documents/Python Code$ ls
hello.py print hello.py
pi@raspberrypi:~/Documents/Python Code$ python3 hello.py
Python is cool!
pi@raspberrypi:~/Documents/Python Code$
```

STEP 9

Since Sublime Text isn't available for the Raspberry Pi, you're going to temporarily leave the Pi for the moment and use Sublime as an example that you don't necessarily need to use the Python IDLE. With the `hello.py` file open, alter it to include the following:

```
name=input("What is your name? ")
print("Hello,", name)
```

```
C:\Users\david\Documents\Python\hello.py - Sublime Text (UNREGISTERED)
File Edit Selection Find View Goto Tools Project Preferences Help

hello.py
1 a="Python"
2 b="is"
3 c="cool!"
4 print(a, b, c)
5 name=input("What is your name? ")
6 print("Hello,", name)
7
```

STEP 7

Naturally, since this is Python 3 code, using the syntax and layout that's unique to Python 3, it only works when you use the `python3` command. If you like, try the same with Python 2 by entering:

```
python hello.py
```

```
pi@raspberrypi: ~/Documents/Python Code
File Edit Tabs Help
pi@raspberrypi:~$ python3
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "help", "copyright", "credits" or "license" for more information.
>>> a=2
>>> print(a)
2
>>> exit()
pi@raspberrypi:~$ cd Documents/
pi@raspberrypi:~/Documents$ cd Python\ Code/
pi@raspberrypi:~/Documents/Python Code$ ls
hello.py print hello.py
pi@raspberrypi:~/Documents/Python Code$ python3 hello.py
Python is cool!
pi@raspberrypi:~/Documents/Python Code$ python hello.py
('Python', 'is', 'cool!')
```

STEP 10

Save the `hello.py` file and drop back to the command line. Now execute the newly saved code with:

```
python3 hello.py
```

The result will be the original Python is cool! statement, together with the added input command asking you for your name, and displaying it in the command window.

```
pi@raspberrypi: ~/Documents/Python Code
File Edit Tabs Help
pi@raspberrypi:~/Documents/Python Code$ python3 hello.py
Python is cool!
What is your name? David
Hello, David
pi@raspberrypi:~/Documents/Python Code$
```




Numbers and Expressions

We've seen some basic mathematical expressions with Python, simple addition and the like. Let's expand on that now and see just how powerful Python is as a calculator. You can work within the IDLE Shell or in the Editor, whichever you like.

IT'S ALL MATHS, MAN

You can get some really impressive results with the mathematical powers of Python; as with most, if not all, programming languages, Maths is the driving force behind the code.

STEP 1 Open up the GUI version of Python 3, as mentioned you can use either the Shell or the Editor. For the time being, you're going to use the Shell just to warm our Maths muscle, which we believe is a small gland located at the back of the brain (or not).

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>>
```

STEP 3 You can use all the usual Mathematical operations: divide, multiply, brackets and so on. Practise with a few, for example:

```
1/2
6/2
2+2*3
(1+2)+(3*4)
```

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> 2+2
4
>>> 54356+34553245
34607601
>>> 99867344*27344484221
2730821012201179024
>>> 1/2
0.5
>>> 6/2
3.0
>>> 2+2*3
8
>>> (1+2)+(3*4)
15
>>> |
```

STEP 2 In the Shell enter the following:

```
2+2
54356+34553245
99867344*27344484221
```

You can see that Python can handle some quite large numbers.

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> 2+2
4
>>> 54356+34553245
34607601
>>> 99867344*27344484221
2730821012201179024
>>>
```

STEP 4 You've no doubt noticed, division produces a decimal number. In Python these are called floats, or floating point arithmetic. However, if you need an integer as opposed to a decimal answer, then you can use a double slash:

```
1//2
6//2
```

And so on.

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> 2+2
4
>>> 54356+34553245
34607601
>>> 99867344*27344484221
2730821012201179024
>>> 1/2
0.5
>>> 6/2
3.0
>>> 2+2*3
8
>>> (1+2)+(3*4)
15
>>> 1//2
0
>>> 6//2
3
>>> |
```


**STEP 5**

You can also use an operation to see the remainder left over from division. For example:

`10/3`

Will display 3.33333333, which is of course 3.3-recurring. If you now enter:

`10%3`

This will display 1, which is the remainder left over from dividing 10 into 3.

```
>>> 1/2
0.5
>>> 6/2
3.0
>>> 2+2*3
8
>>> (1+2)+(3*4)
15
>>> 1//2
0
>>> 6//2
3
>>> 10/3
3.3333333333333335
>>> 10%3
1
```

STEP 6

Next up we have the power operator, or exponentiation if you want to be technical. To work out the power of something you can use a double multiplication symbol or double-star on the keyboard:

`2**3`

`10**10`

Essentially, it's 2x2x2 but we're sure you already know the basics behind Maths operators. This is how you would work it out in Python.

```
>>> 6/2
3.0
>>> 2+2*3
8
>>> (1+2)+(3*4)
15
>>> 1//2
0
>>> 6//2
3
>>> 10/3
3.3333333333333335
>>> 10%3
1
>>> 2**3
8
>>> 10**10
10000000000
>>>
```

STEP 7

Numbers and expressions don't stop there. Python has numerous built-in functions to work out sets of numbers, absolute values, complex numbers and a host of mathematical expressions and Pythagorean tongue-twisters. For example, to convert a number to binary, use:

`bin(3)`

```
>>> 1/2
0.5
>>> 6/2
3.0
>>> 2+2*3
8
>>> (1+2)+(3*4)
15
>>> 1//2
0
>>> 6//2
3
>>> 10/3
3.3333333333333335
>>> 10%3
1
>>> 2**3
8
>>> 10**10
10000000000
>>> bin(3)
'0b11'
>>>
```

STEP 8

This will be displayed as '0b11', converting the integer into binary and adding the prefix 0b to the front. If you want to remove the 0b prefix, then you can use:

`format(3, 'b')`

The Format command converts a value, the number 3, to a formatted representation as controlled by the format specification, the 'b' part.

```
>>> 2+2*3
8
>>> (1+2)+(3*4)
15
>>> 1//2
0
>>> 6//2
3
>>> 10/3
3.3333333333333335
>>> 10%3
1
>>> 2**3
8
>>> 10**10
10000000000
>>> bin(3)
'0b11'
>>> format(3, 'b')
'11'
>>>
```

STEP 9

A Boolean Expression is a logical statement that will either be true or false. We can use these to compare data and test to see if it's equal to, less than or greater than. Try this in a New File:

```
a = 6
b = 7
print(1, a == 6)
print(2, a == 7)
print(3, a == 6 and b == 7)
print(4, a == 7 and b == 7)
print(5, not a == 7 and b == 7)
print(6, a == 7 or b == 7)
print(7, a == 7 or b == 6)
print(8, not (a == 7 and b == 6))
print(9, not a == 7 and b == 6)
```

```
Booleantest.py - /home/pi/D/
File Edit Format Run Options Window
a = 6
b = 7
print(1, a == 6)
print(2, a == 7)
print(3, a == 6 and b == 7)
print(4, a == 7 and b == 7)
print(5, not a == 7 and b == 7)
print(6, a == 7 or b == 7)
print(7, a == 7 or b == 6)
print(8, not (a == 7 and b == 6))
print(9, not a == 7 and b == 6)
```

STEP 10

Execute the code from Step 9, and you can see a series of True or False statements, depending on the result of the two defining values: 6 and 7. It's an extension of what you've looked at, and an important part of programming.

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> ===== RESTART =====
>>>
1 True
2 False
3 True
4 False
5 True
6 True
7 False
8 True
9 False
>>> |
```




Using Comments

When writing your code, the flow of it, what each variable does, how the overall program will operate and so on is all inside your head. Another programmer could follow the code line by line but over time, it can become difficult to read.

#COMMENTS!

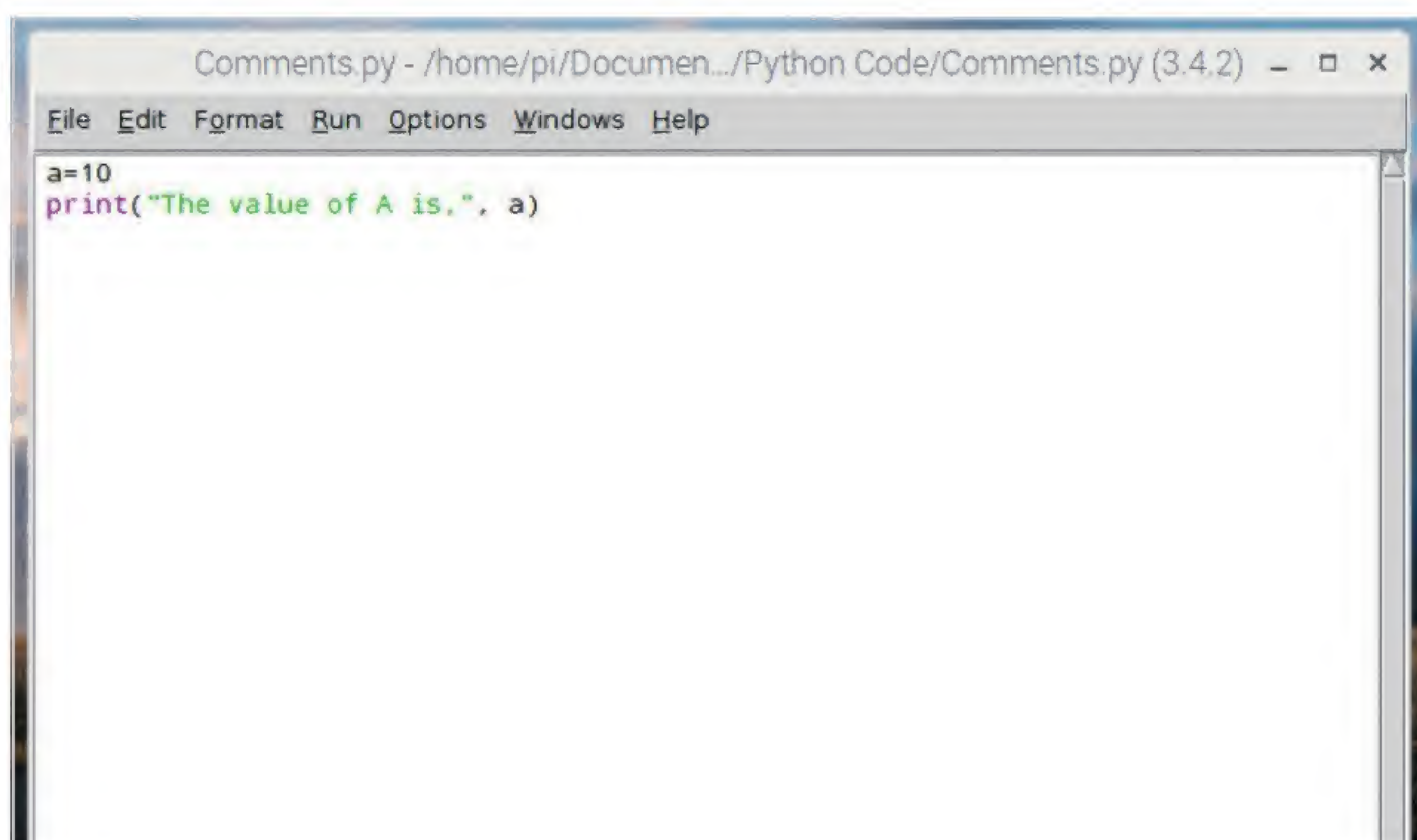
Programmers use a method of keeping their code readable by commenting on certain sections. If a variable is used, the programmer comments on what it's supposed to do, for example. It's just good practise.

STEP 1

Start by creating a new instance of the IDLE Editor (File > New File) and create a simple variable and print command:

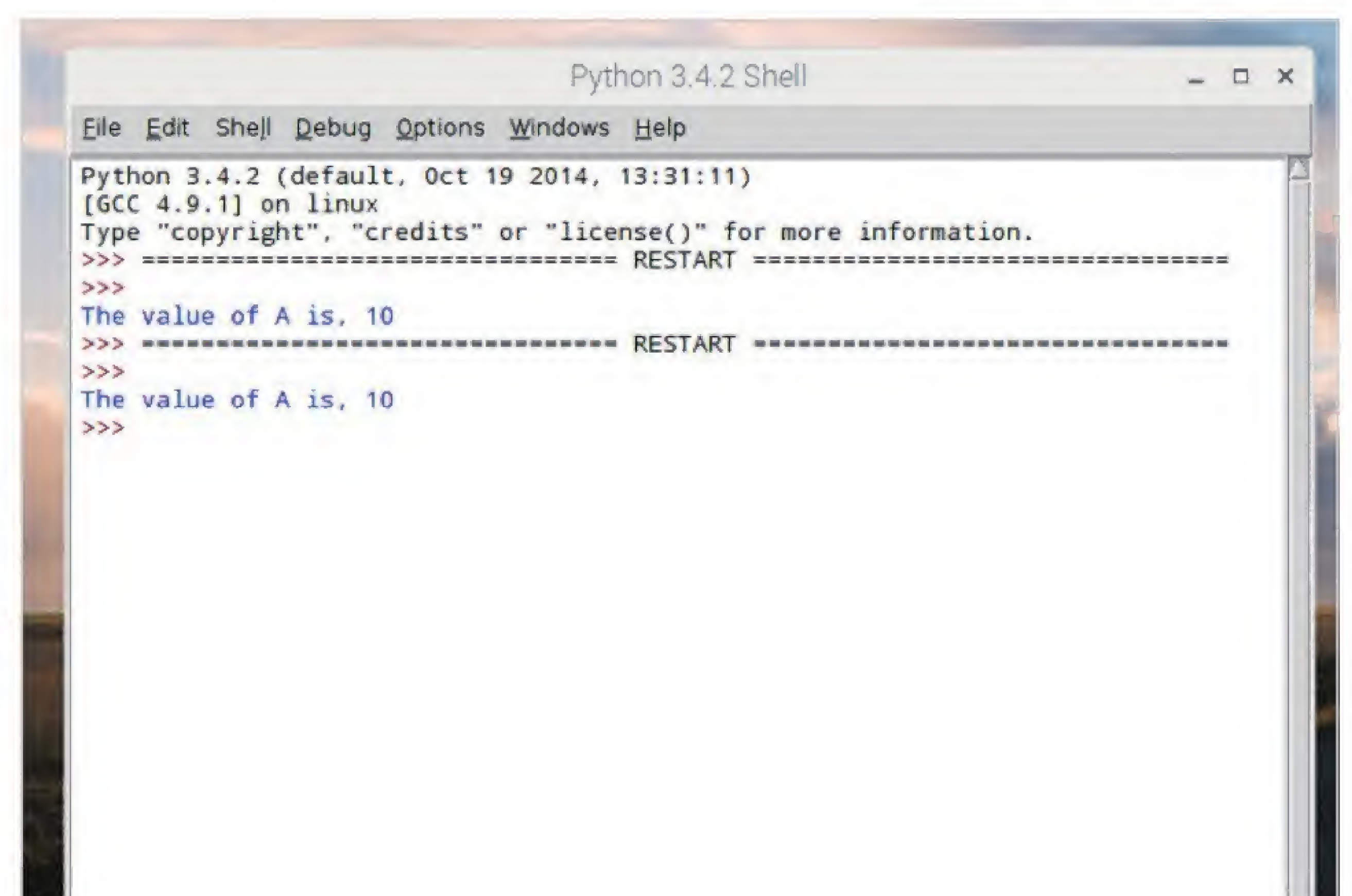
```
a=10
print("The value of A is,", a)
```

Save the file and execute the code.



STEP 3

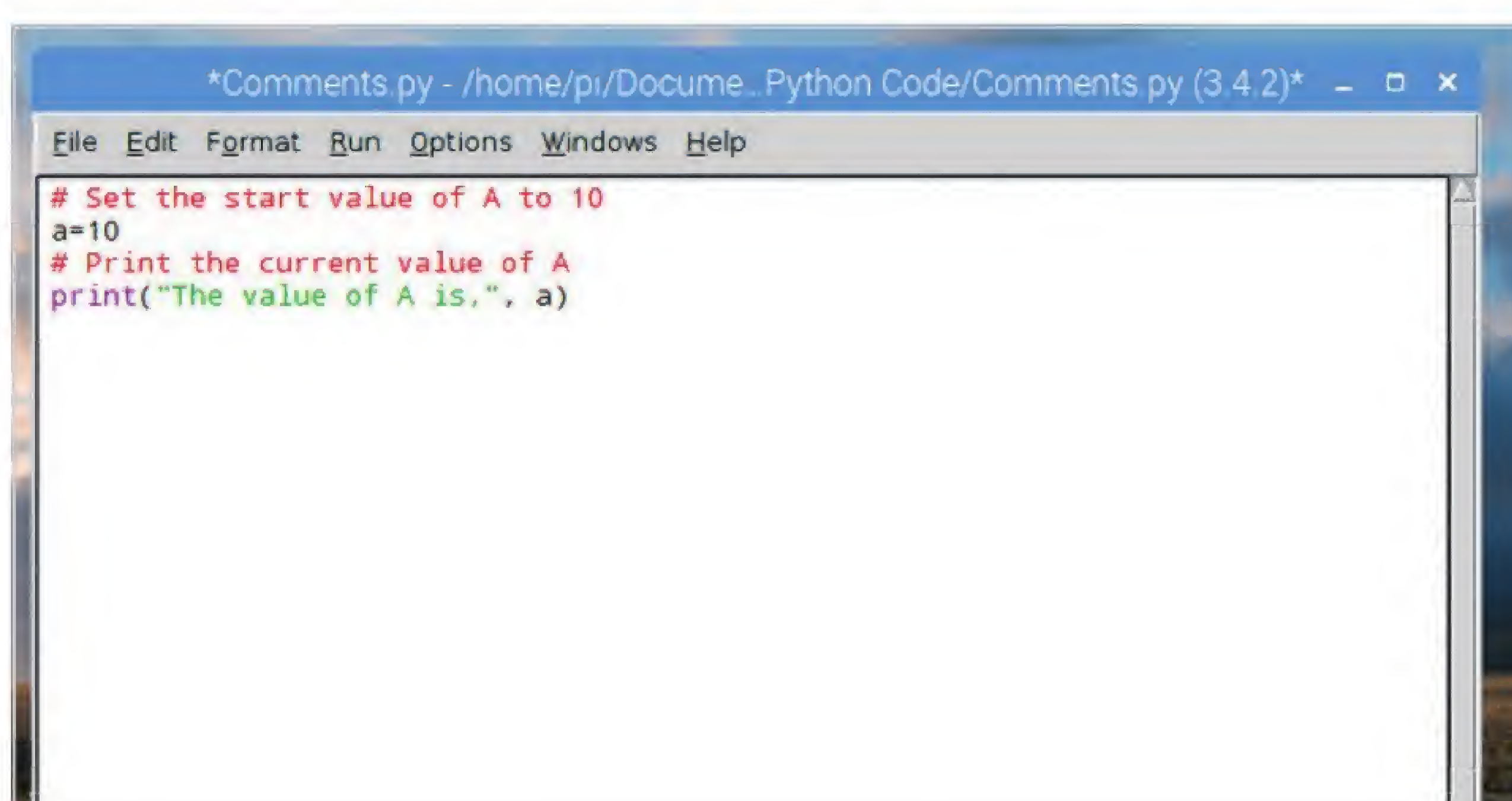
Resave the code and execute it. You can see that the output in the IDLE Shell is still the same as before, despite the extra lines being added. Simply put, the hash symbol (#) denotes a line of text the programmer can insert to inform them, and others, of what's going on without the user being aware.



STEP 2

Running the code will return the line: The value of A is, 10 into the IDLE Shell window, which is what we expected. Now, add some of the types of comments you'd normally see within code:

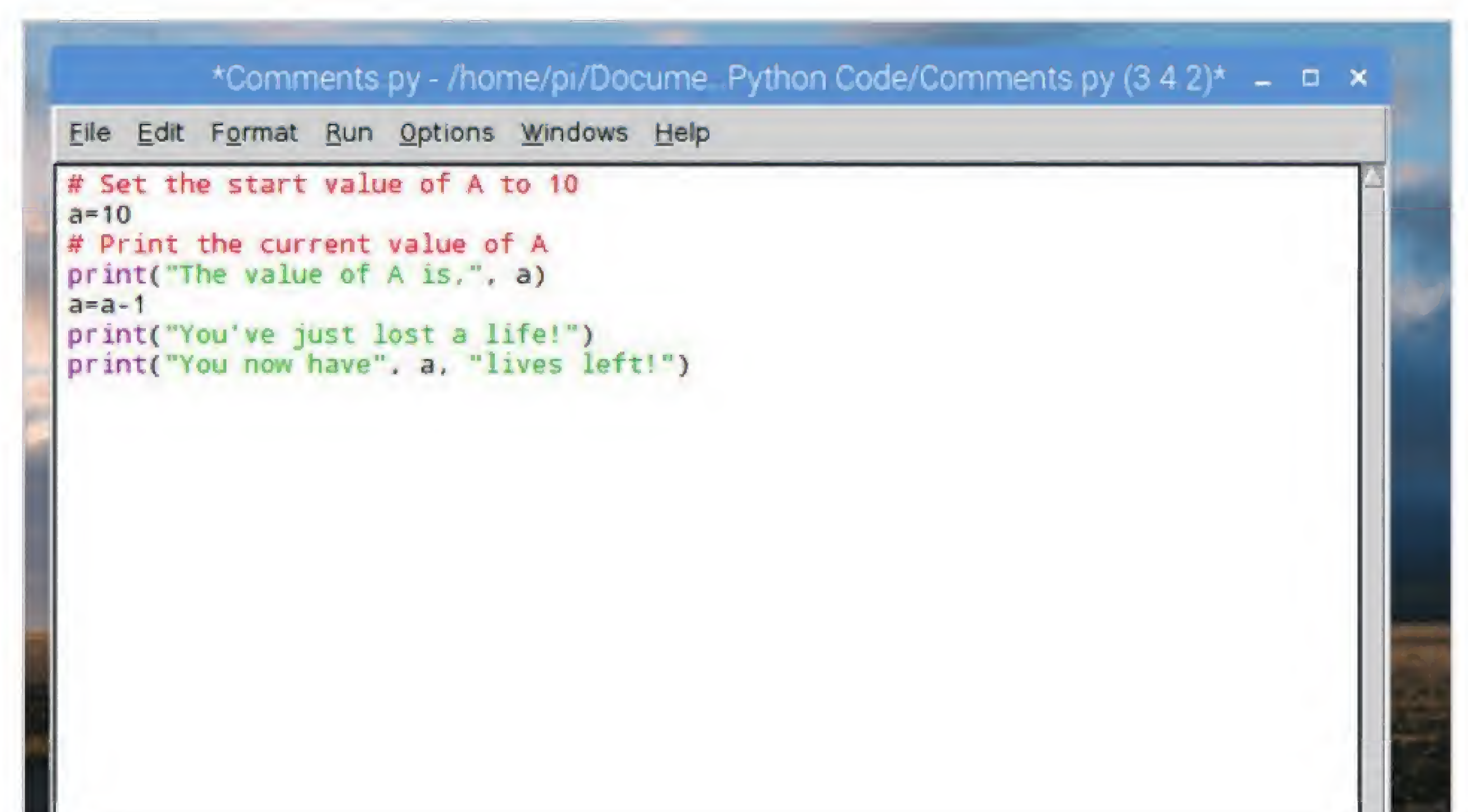
```
# Set the start value of A to 10
a=10
# Print the current value of A
print("The value of A is,", a)
```



STEP 4

Let's assume that the variable A that we've created is the number of lives in a game. Every time the player dies, the value is decreased by 1. The programmer could insert a routine along the lines of:

```
a=a-1
print("You've just lost a life!")
print("You now have", a, "lives left!")
```



**STEP 5**

Whilst we know that the variable A is lives, and that the player has just lost one, a casual viewer or someone checking the code may not know. Imagine for a moment that the code is twenty thousand lines long, instead of just our seven. You can see how handy comments are.

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> ===== RESTART =====
>>>
The value of A is, 10
>>> ===== RESTART =====
>>>
The value of A is, 10
>>> ===== RESTART =====
>>>
The value of A is, 10
You've just lost a life!
You now have 9 lives left!
>>>
```

STEP 6

Essentially, the new code together with comments could look like:

```
# Set the start value of A to 10
a=10
# Print the current value of A
print("The value of A is,", a)
# Player lost a life!
a=a-1
# Inform player, and display current value of A (lives)
print("You've just lost a life!")
print("You now have", a, "lives left!")
```

```
File Edit Format Run Options Windows Help
# Set the start value of A to 10
a=10
# Print the current value of A
print("The value of A is,", a)
# Player lost a life!
a=a-1
# Inform player, and display current value of A (lives)
print("You've just lost a life!")
print("You now have", a, "lives left!")
```

STEP 7

You can use comments in different ways. For example, Block Comments are a large section of text that details what's going on in the code, such as telling the code reader what variables you're planning on using:

```
# This is the best game ever, and has been
developed by a crack squad of Python experts
# who haven't slept or washed in weeks. Despite
being very smelly, the code at least
# works really well.
```

```
*Comments.py - /home/pi/Documents/Python Code/Comments.py (3.4.2)*
File Edit Format Run Options Windows Help
# This is the best game ever, and has been developed by a crack squad of Python experts
# who haven't slept or washed in weeks. Despite being very smelly, the code at least
# works really well.
# Set the start value of A to 10
a=10
# Print the current value of A
print("The value of A is,", a)
# Player lost a life!
a=a-1
# Inform player, and display current value of A (lives)
print("You've just lost a life!")
print("You now have", a, "lives left!")
```

STEP 8

Inline comments are comments that follow a section of code. Take our examples from above, instead of inserting the code on a separate line, we could use:

```
a=10 # Set the start value of A to 10
print("The value of A is,", a) # Print the current
value of A
a=a-1 # Player lost a life!
print("You've just lost a life!")
print("You now have", a, "lives left!") # Inform
player, and display current value of A (lives)
```

```
Comments.py - /home/pi/Documents/Python Code/Comments.py (3.4.2)
File Edit Format Run Options Windows Help
a=10 # Set the start value of A to 10
print("The value of A is,", a) # Print the current value of A
a=a-1 # Player lost a life!
print("You've just lost a life!")
print("You now have", a, "lives left!") # Inform player, and display current value of A (lives)
```

STEP 9

The comment, the hash symbol, can also be used to comment out sections of code you don't want to be executed in your program. For instance, if you wanted to remove the first print statement, you would use:

```
# print("The value of A is,", a)
```

```
*Comments.py - /home/pi/Documents/Python
File Edit Format Run Options Windows Help
# Set the start value of A to 10
a=10
# Print the current value of A
# print("The value of A is,", a)
# Player lost a life!
a=a-1
# Inform player, and display current value of A (lives)
print("You've just lost a life!")
print("You now have", a, "lives left!")
```

STEP 10

You also use three single quotes to comment out a Block Comment or multi-line section of comments. Place them before and after the areas you want to comment for them to work:

```
'''
This is the best game ever, and has been developed
by a crack squad of Python experts who haven't
slept or washed in weeks. Despite being very
smelly, the code at least works really well.
'''
```

```
Comments.py - /home/pi/Documents/Python Code/Comments.py (3.4.2)
File Edit Format Run Options Windows Help
'''
This is the best game ever, and has been developed by a crack squad of Python experts
who haven't slept or washed in weeks. Despite being very smelly, the code at least
works really well.
'''
# Set the start value of A to 10
a=10
# Print the current value of A
# print("The value of A is,", a)
# Player lost a life!
a=a-1
# Inform player, and display current value of A (lives)
print("You've just lost a life!")
print("You now have", a, "lives left!")
```




Working with Variables

We've seen some examples of variables in our Python code already but it's always worth going through the way they operate and how Python creates and assigns certain values to a variable.

VARIOUS VARIABLES

You'll be working with the Python 3 IDLE Shell in this tutorial. If you haven't already, open Python 3 or close down the previous IDLE Shell to clear up any old code.

STEP 1 In some programming languages you're required to use a dollar sign to denote a string, which is a variable made up of multiple characters, such as a name of a person. In Python this isn't necessary. For example, in the Shell enter: `name="David Hayward"` (or use your own name, unless you're also called David Hayward).

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> name="David Hayward"
>>> print (name)
David Hayward
>>>
```

STEP 3 You've seen previously that variables can be concatenated using the plus symbol between the variable names. In our example we can use: `print (name + ":`

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> name="David Hayward"
>>> print (name)
David Hayward
>>> type (name)
<class 'str'>
>>> title="Descended from Vikings"
>>> print (name + ": " + title)
David Hayward: Descended from Vikings
>>> |
```

STEP 2 You can check the type of variable in use by issuing the `type ()` command, placing the name of the variable inside the brackets. In our example, this would be: `type (name)`. Add a new string variable: `title="Descended from Vikings"`.

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> name="David Hayward"
>>> print (name)
David Hayward
>>> type (name)
<class 'str'>
>>> title="Descended from Vikings"
>>> |
```

STEP 4 You can also combine variables within another variable. For example, to combine both name and title variables into a new variable we use:

`character=name + ": " + title`

Then output the content of the new variable as:

`print (character)`

Numbers are stored as different variables:

`age=44`
`Type (age)`

Which are integers, as we know.

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> name="David Hayward"
>>> print (name)
David Hayward
>>> type (name)
<class 'str'>
>>> title="Descended from Vikings"
>>> print (name + ": " + title)
David Hayward: Descended from Vikings
>>> character=name + ": " + title
>>> print (character)
David Hayward: Descended from Vikings
>>> age=44
>>> type (age)
<class 'int'>
>>>
```


**STEP 5**

However, you can't combine both strings and integer type variables in the same command, as you would a set of similar variables. You need to either turn one into the other or vice versa. When you do try to combine both, you get an error message:

```
print (name + age)
```

```
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> name="David Hayward"
>>> print (name)
David Hayward
>>> type (name)
<class 'str'>
>>> title="Descended from Vikings"
>>> print (name + ": " + title)
David Hayward: Descended from Vikings
>>> character=name + ": " + title
>>> print (character)
David Hayward: Descended from Vikings
>>> age=44
>>> type (age)
<class 'int'>
>>> print (name+age)
Traceback (most recent call last):
  File "<pyshell#9>", line 1, in <module>
    print (name+age)
TypeError: Can't convert 'int' object to str implicitly
>>> |
```

STEP 6

This is a process known as TypeCasting. The Python code is:

```
print (character + " is " + str(age) + " years old.")
```

or you can use:

```
print (character, "is", age, "years old.")
```

Notice again that in the last example, you don't need the spaces between the words in quotes as the commas treat each argument to print separately.

```
>>> print (name + age)
Traceback (most recent call last):
  File "<pyshell#18>", line 1, in <module>
    print (name + age)
TypeError: Can't convert 'int' object to str implicitly
>>> print (character + " is " + str(age) + " years old.")
David Hayward: Descended from Vikings is 44 years old.
>>> print (character, "is", age, "years old.")
David Hayward: Descended from Vikings is 44 years old.
>>>
>>> |
```

STEP 7

Another example of TypeCasting is when you ask for input from the user, such as a name. for example, enter:

```
age= input ("How old are you? ")
```

All data stored from the Input command is stored as a string variable.

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> age= input ("How old are you? ")
How old are you? 44
>>> type(age)
<class 'str'>
>>> |
```

STEP 8

This presents a bit of a problem when you want to work with a number that's been inputted by the user, as `age + 10` won't work due to being a string variable and an integer. Instead, you need to enter:

```
int(age) + 10
```

This will TypeCast the age string into an integer that can be worked with.

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> age= input ("How old are you? ")
How old are you? 44
>>> type(age)
<class 'str'>
>>> age + 10
Traceback (most recent call last):
  File "<pyshell#2>", line 1, in <module>
    age + 10
TypeError: Can't convert 'str' object to int implicitly
>>> int(age) + 10
54
>>> |
```

STEP 9

The use of TypeCasting is also important when dealing with floating point arithmetic; remember: numbers that have a decimal point in them. For example, enter:

```
shirt=19.99
```

Now enter `type(shirt)` and you'll see that Python has allocated the number as a 'float', because the value contains a decimal point.

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> shirt=19.99
>>> type(shirt)
<class 'float'>
>>> |
```

STEP 10

When combining integers and floats Python usually converts the integer to a float, but should the reverse ever be applied it's worth remembering that Python doesn't return the exact value. When converting a float to an integer, Python will always round down to the nearest integer, called truncating; in our case instead of 19.99 it becomes 19.

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> shirt=19.99
>>> type(shirt)
<class 'float'>
>>> int(shirt)
19
>>> |
```




User Input

We've seen some basic user interaction with the code from a few of the examples earlier, so now would be a good time to focus solely on how you would get information from the user then store and present it.

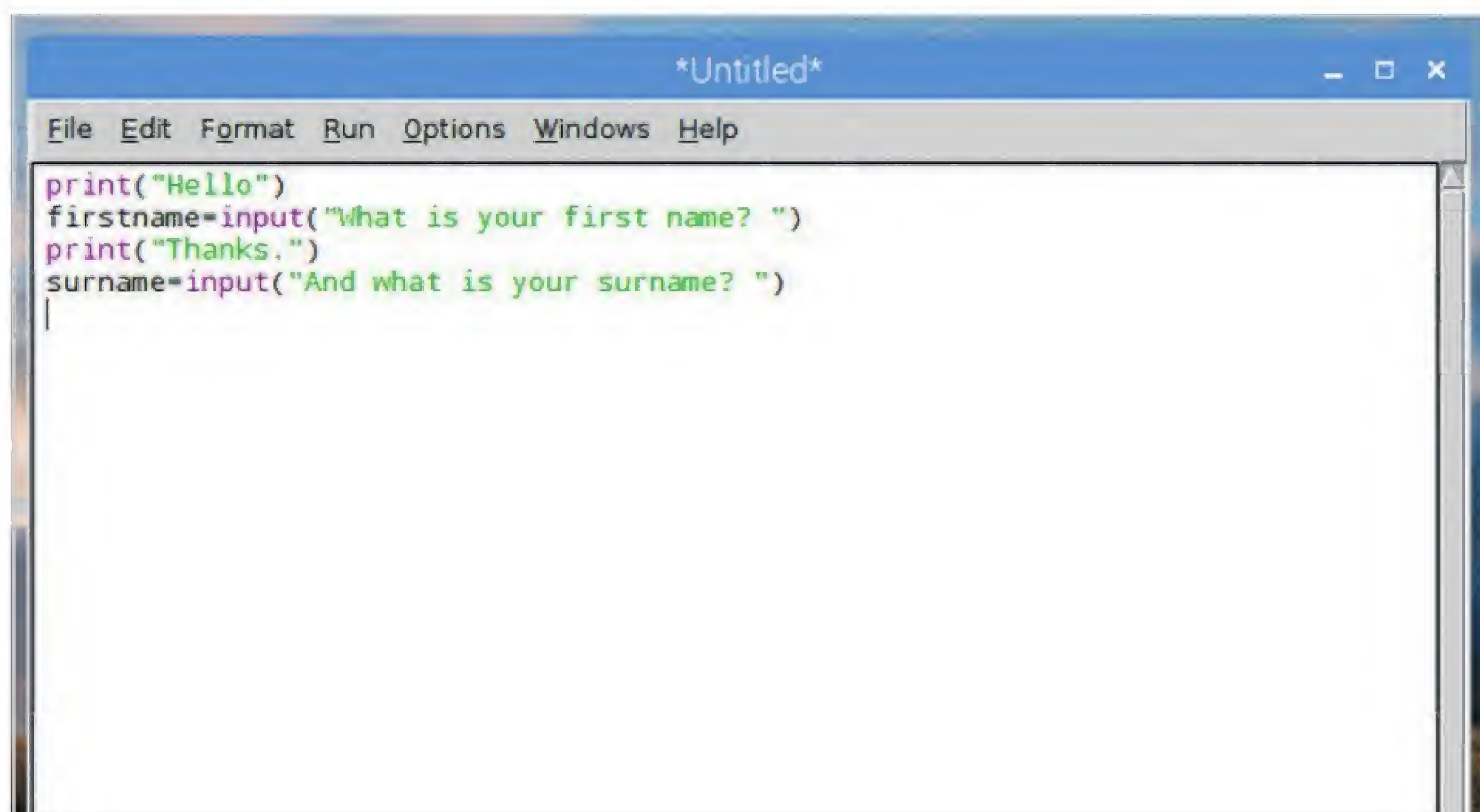
USER FRIENDLY

The type of input you want from the user will depend greatly on the type of program you're coding. For example, a game may ask for a character's name, whereas a database can ask for personal details.

STEP 1

If it's not already, open the Python 3 IDLE Shell, and start a New File in the Editor. Let's begin with something really simple, enter:

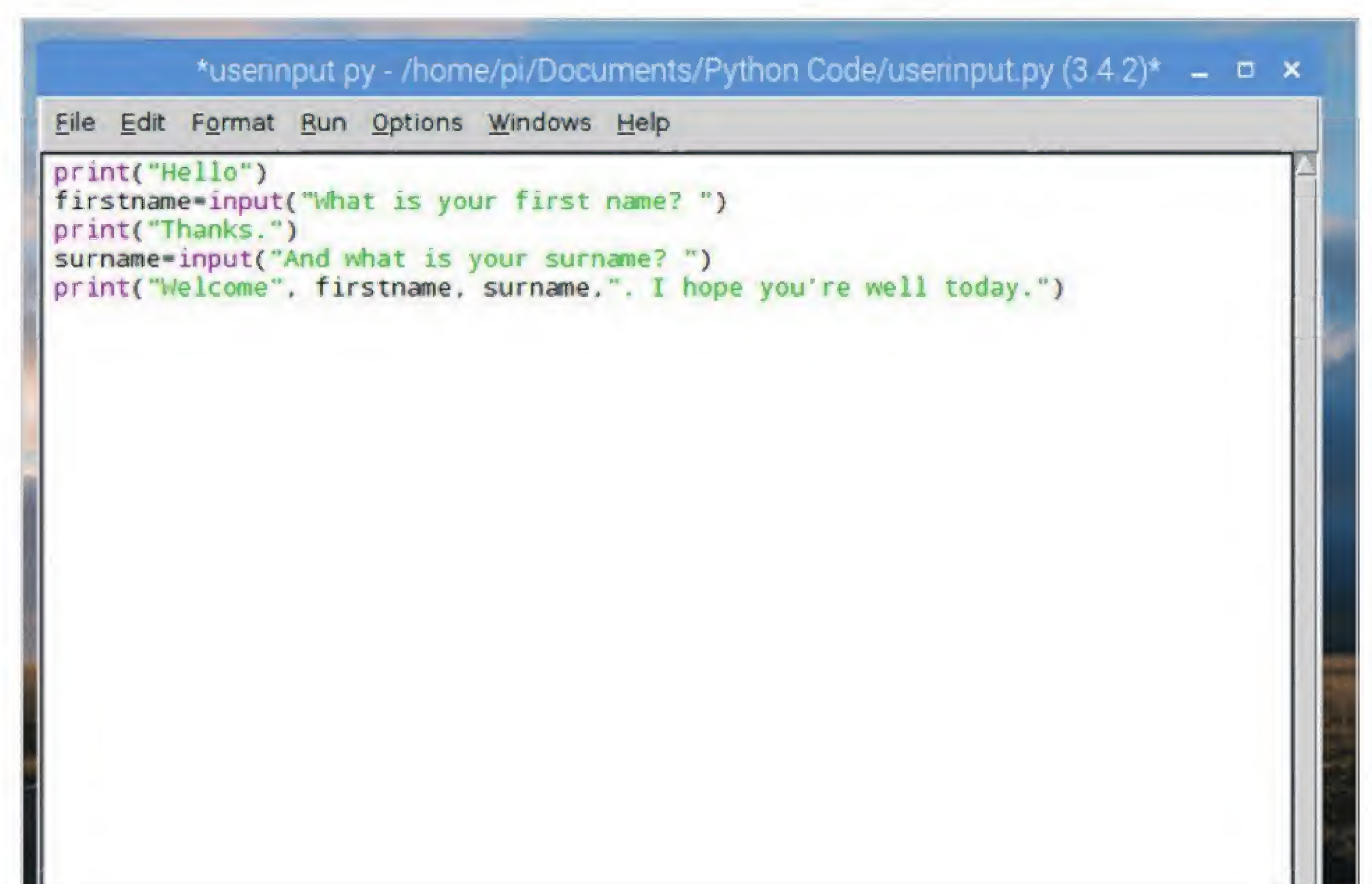
```
print("Hello")
firstname=input("What is your first name? ")
print("Thanks.")
surname=input("And what is your surname? ")
```



STEP 3

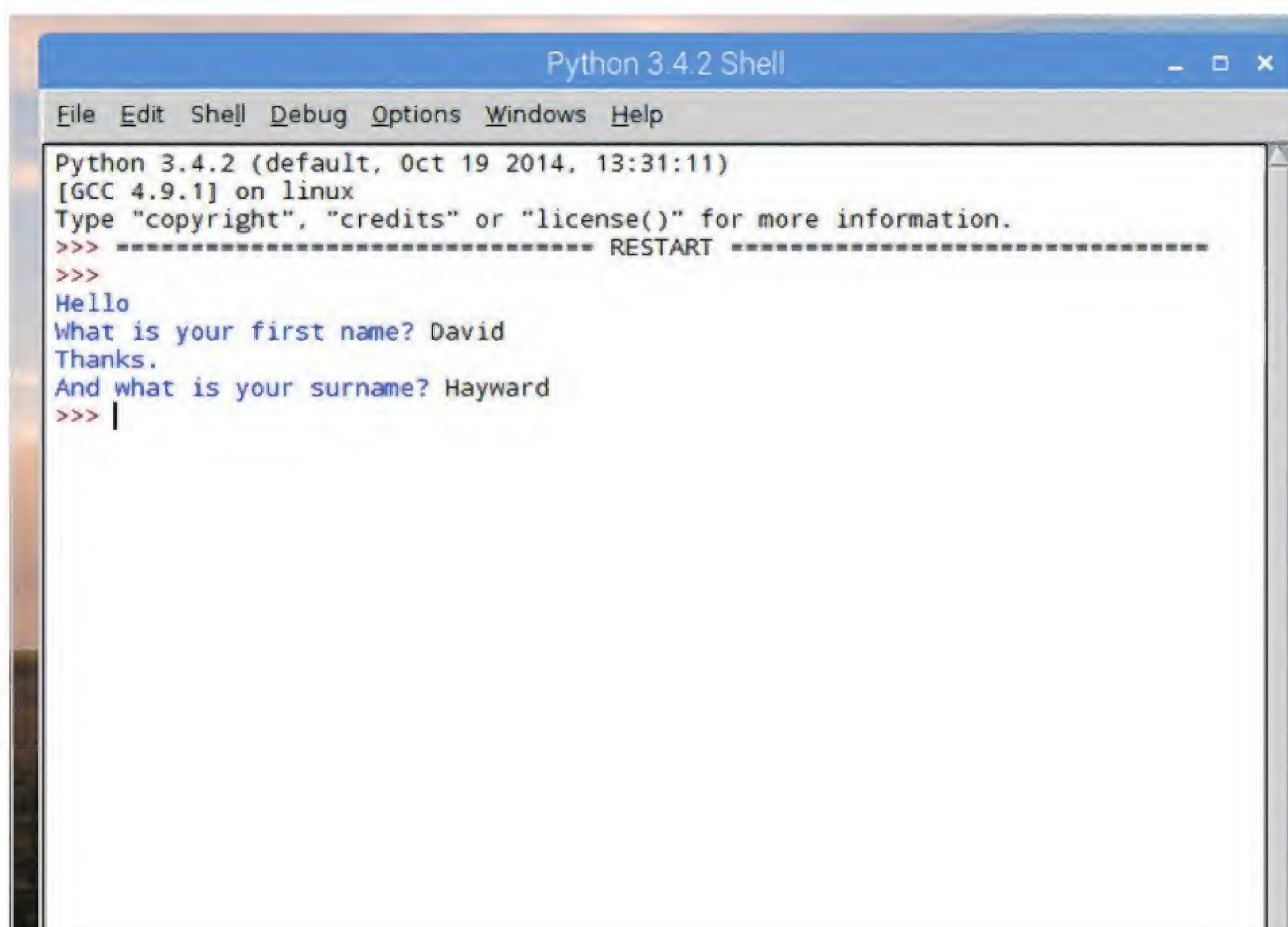
Now that we have the user's name stored in a couple of variables we can call them up whenever we want:

```
print("Welcome", firstname, surname, ". I hope you're well today.")
```



STEP 2

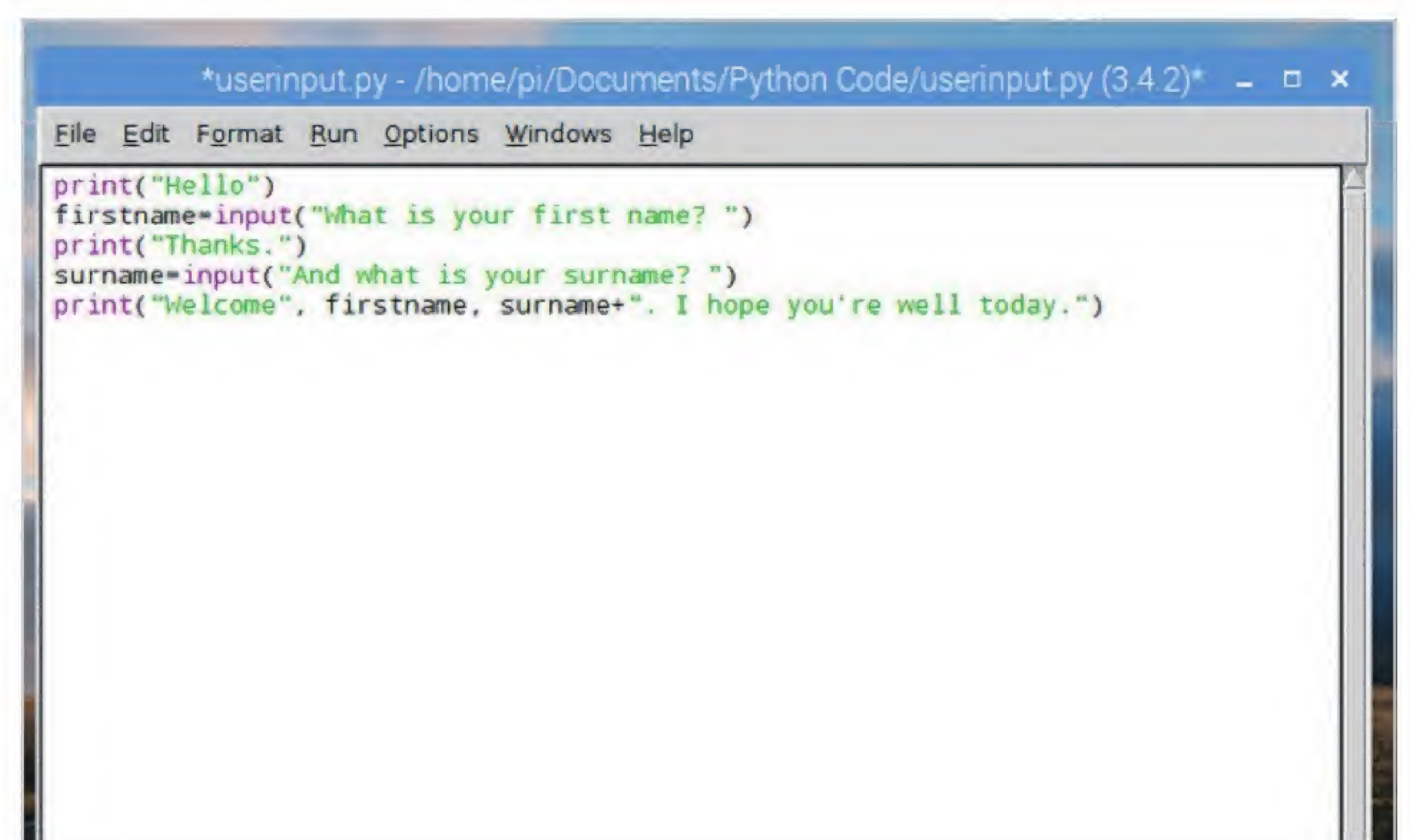
Save and execute the code, and as you already no doubt suspected, in the IDLE Shell the program will ask for your first name, storing it as the variable `firstname`, followed by your surname; also stored in its own variable (`surname`).



STEP 4

Run the code and you can see a slight issue, the full stop after the surname follows a blank space. To eliminate that we can add a plus sign instead of the comma in the code:

```
print("Welcome", firstname, surname+". I hope you're well today.")
```



**STEP 5**

You don't always have to include quoted text within the input command. For example, you can ask the user their name, and have the input in the line below:

```
print("Hello. What's your name?")
name=input()
```

```
userinput.py - /home/pi/Documents/Python Code/us
File Edit Format Run Options Windows Help
print("Hello. What's your name?")
name=input()
```

STEP 8

What you've created here is a condition, which we will cover soon. In short, we're using the input from the user and measuring it against a condition. So, if the user enters David as their name, the guard will allow them to pass unhindered. Else, if they enter a name other than David, the guard challenges them to a fight.

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> ===== RESTART =====
>>>
Halt! Who goes there?
David
Welcome, good sir. You may pass.
>>> ===== RESTART =====
>>>
Halt! Who goes there?
Conan
I know you not. Prepare for battle!
>>> |

userinput.py - /home/pi/Documents/Python C
File Edit Format Run Options Windows Help
print("Halt! Who goes there?")
name=input()
if name=="David":
    print("Welcome, good sir. You may pass.")
else:
    print("I know you not. Prepare for battle!")
```

STEP 6

The code from the previous step is often regarded as being a little neater than having a lengthy amount of text in the input command, but it's not a rule that's set in stone, so do as you like in these situations. Expanding on the code, try this:

```
print("Halt! Who goes there?")
name=input()
```

```
*userinput.py - /home/pi/Documents/Python Code/userinput.py (3.4.2)*
File Edit Format Run Options Windows Help
print("Halt! Who goes there?")
name=input()
|
```

STEP 9

Just as you learned previously, any input from a user is automatically a string, so you need to apply a TypeCast in order to turn it into something else. This creates some interesting additions to the input command. For example:

```
# Code to calculate rate and distance
print("Input a rate and a distance")
rate = float(input("Rate: "))
```

```
*userinput.py - /home/pi/Documents/Python Code/userinput.py (3.4.2)*
File Edit Format Run Options Windows Help
# Code to calculate rate and distance
print("Input a rate and a distance")
rate = float(input("Rate: "))
|
```

STEP 7

It's a good start to a text adventure game, perhaps? Now you can expand on it and use the raw input from the user to flesh out the game a little:

```
if name=="David":
    print("Welcome, good sir. You may pass.")
else:
    print("I know you not. Prepare for battle!")
```

```
userinput.py - /home/pi/Documents/Python Code/userinput.py (3.4.2)
File Edit Format Run Options Windows Help
print("Halt! Who goes there?")
name=input()
if name=="David":
    print("Welcome, good sir. You may pass.")
else:
    print("I know you not. Prepare for battle!")
```

STEP 10

To finalise the rate and distance code, we can add:

```
distance = float(input("Distance: "))
print("Time:", (distance / rate))
```

Save and execute the code and enter some numbers. Using the float(input element, we've told Python that anything entered is a floating point number rather than a string.

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> ===== RESTART =====
>>>
Halt! Who goes there?
David
Welcome, good sir. You may pass.
>>> ===== RESTART =====
>>>
Halt! Who goes there?
Conan
I know you not. Prepare for battle!
>>> ===== RESTART =====
>>>
Input a rate and a distance
Rate: 12
Distance: 24
Time: 2.0
>>> |

userinput.py - /home/pi/Documents/Python Cod
File Edit Format Run Options Windows Help
# Code to calculate rate and distance
print("Input a rate and a distance")
rate = float(input("Rate: "))
distance = float(input("Distance: "))
print("Time:", (distance / rate))
```




Creating Functions

Now that you've mastered the use of variables and user input, the next step is to tackle functions. You've already used a few functions, such as the print command but Python enables you to define your own functions.

FUNKY FUNCTIONS

A function is a command that you enter into Python to do something. It's a little piece of self-contained code that takes data, works on it and then returns the result.

STEP 1 It's not just data that a function works on. They can do all manner of useful things in Python, such as sort data, change items from one format to another and check the length or type of items. Basically, a function is a short word that's followed by brackets. For example, `len()`, `list()` or `type()`.

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> len()
```

STEP 2 A function takes data, usually a variable, works on it depending on what the function is programmed to do and returns the end value. The data being worked on goes inside the brackets, so if you wanted to know how many letters are in the word `antidisestablishmentarianism`, then you'd enter: `len("antidisestablishmentarianism")` and the number 28 would return.

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> len("antidisestablishmentarianism")
28
>>> |
```

STEP 3 You can pass variables through functions in much the same manner. Let's assume you want the number of letters in a person's surname, you could use the following code (enter the text editor for this example):

```
name=input("Enter your surname: ")
count=len(name)
print("Your surname has", count, "letters in it.")
```

Press F5 and save the code to execute it.

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> len("antidisestablishmentarianism")
28
>>> ===== RESTART =====
Enter your surname: Hayward
Your name has 7 letters in it.
>>> |
```

STEP 4 Python has tens of functions built into it, far too many to get into in the limited space available here. However, to view the list of built-in functions available to Python 3, navigate to www.docs.python.org/3/library/functions.html. These are the predefined functions, but since users have created many more, they're not the only ones available.

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> len("antidisestablishmentarianism")
28
>>> ===== RESTART =====
Enter your surname: Hayward
Your name has 7 letters in it.
>>> import math
>>> |
```


**STEP 5**

Additional functions can be added to Python through modules. Python has a vast range of modules available that can cover numerous programming duties. They add functions and can be imported as and when required. For example, to use advanced Mathematics functions enter:

```
import math
```

Once entered, you have access to all the Math module functions.

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> len("antidisestablishmentarianism")
28
>>> ----- RESTART -----
>>>
Enter your surname: Hayward
Your name has 7 letters in it.
>>> import math
>>>
```

STEP 6

To use a function from a module enter the name of the module followed by a full stop, then the name of the function. For instance, using the math module, since you've just imported it into Python, you can utilise the square root function. To do so, enter:

```
math.sqrt(16)
```

You can see that the code is presented as module.function(data).

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> len("antidisestablishmentarianism")
28
>>> ----- RESTART -----
>>>
Enter your surname: Hayward
Your name has 7 letters in it.
>>> import math
>>> math.sqrt(16)
4.0
>>> |
```

FORGING FUNCTIONS

There are many different functions you can import created by other Python programmers and you will undoubtedly come across some excellent examples in the future; you can also create your own with the def command.

STEP 1

Choose File > New File to enter the editor, let's create a function called Hello, that greets a user.

Enter:

```
def Hello():
    print ("Hello")
```

```
Hello()
```

Press F5 to save and run the script. You can see Hello in the Shell, type in Hello() and it returns the new function.

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> ----- RESTART -----
>>>
Hello
>>> Hello()
Hello
>>> |

Hello.py - /home/pi/Documents/Hello.py (3.4)
File Edit Format Run Options Windows Help
def Hello():
    print ("Hello")
Hello()
```

STEP 3

To modify it further, delete the Hello("David") line, the last line in the script and press Ctrl+S to save the new script. Close the Editor and create a new file (File > New File). Enter the following:

```
from Hello import Hello
```

```
Hello("David")
```

Press F5 to save and execute the code.

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> ----- RESTART -----
>>>
Hello David
>>> |

test.py - /home/pi/Documents/test.py
File Edit Format Run Options Windows Help
from Hello import Hello
Hello("David")
```

STEP 2

Let's now expand the function to accept a variable, the user's name for example. Edit your script to read:

```
def Hello(name):
    print ("Hello", name)
```

```
Hello("David")
```

This will now accept the variable name, otherwise it prints Hello David. In the Shell, enter: name=("Bob"), then: Hello(name). Your function can now pass variables through it.

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> ----- RESTART -----
>>>
Hello David
>>> name=("Bob")
>>> Hello(name)
Hello Bob
>>> |

Hello.py - /home/pi/Documents/Hello.py (3.4)
File Edit Format Run Options Windows Help
def Hello(name):
    print ("Hello", name)
Hello("David")
```

STEP 4

What you've just done is import the Hello function from the saved Hello.py program and then used it to say hello to David. This is how modules and functions work: you import the module then use the function. Try this one, and modify it for extra credit:

```
def add(a, b):
    result = a + b
    return result
```

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> ----- RESTART -----
>>>
Hello David
>>> name=("Bob")
>>> Hello(name)
Hello Bob
>>> add(144,12.2)
156.2
>>>
>>> add(215, 33.33)
246.32999999999998
>>> |

Addition.py - /home/pi/Documents/Addition.py (3.4.2)
File Edit Format Run Options Windows Help
def add(a, b):
    result = a + b
    return result
```




Conditions and Loops

Conditions and loops are what makes a program interesting; they can be simple or rather complex. How you use them depends greatly on what the program is trying to achieve; they could be the number of lives left in a game or just displaying a countdown.

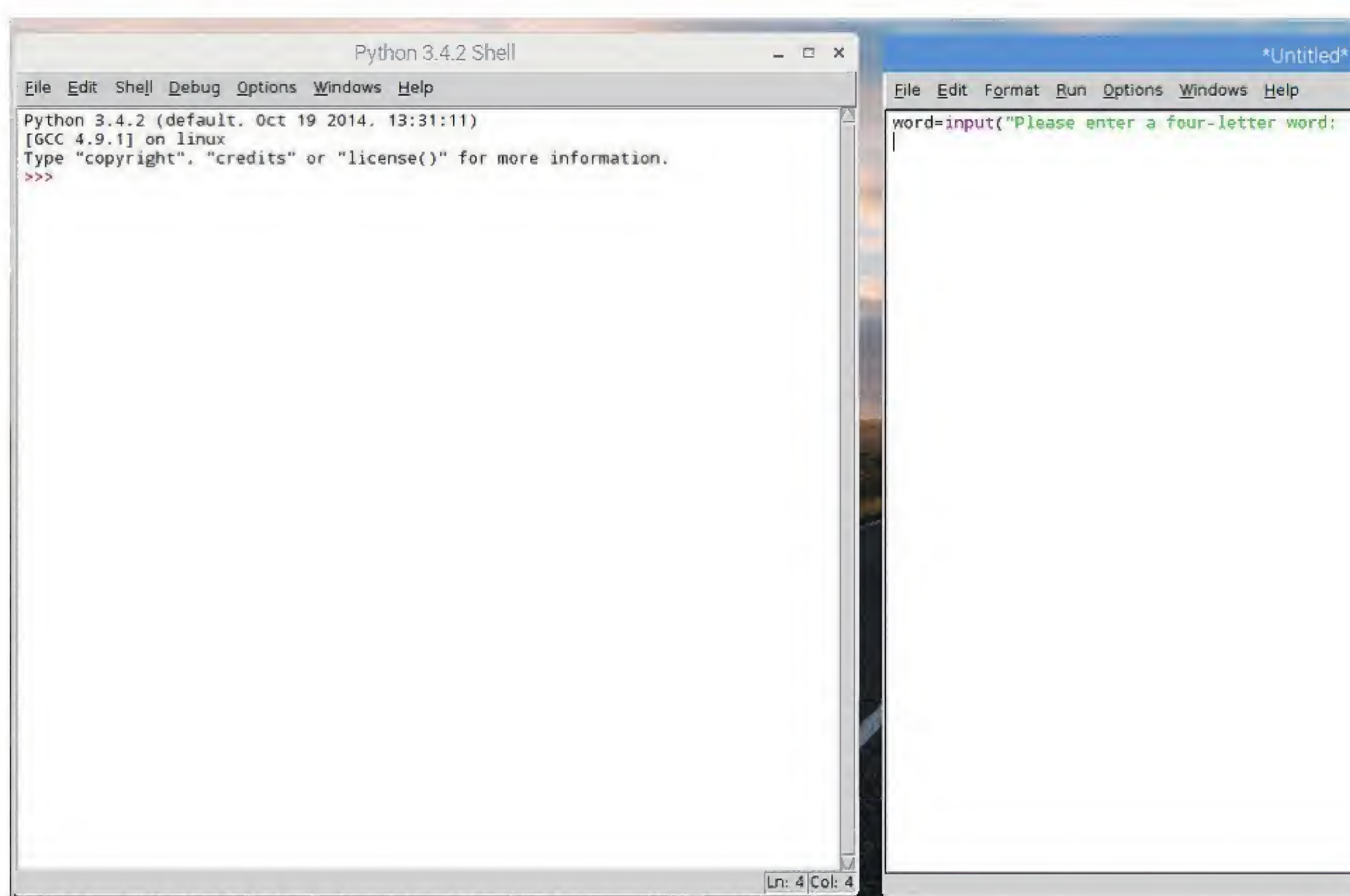
TRUE CONDITIONS

Keeping conditions simple to begin with makes learning to program a more enjoyable experience. Let's start then by checking if something is TRUE, then doing something else if it isn't.

STEP 1

Let's create a new Python program that will ask the user to input a word, then check it to see if it's a four-letter word or not. Start with File > New File, and begin with the input variable:

```
word=input("Please enter a four-letter word: ")
```

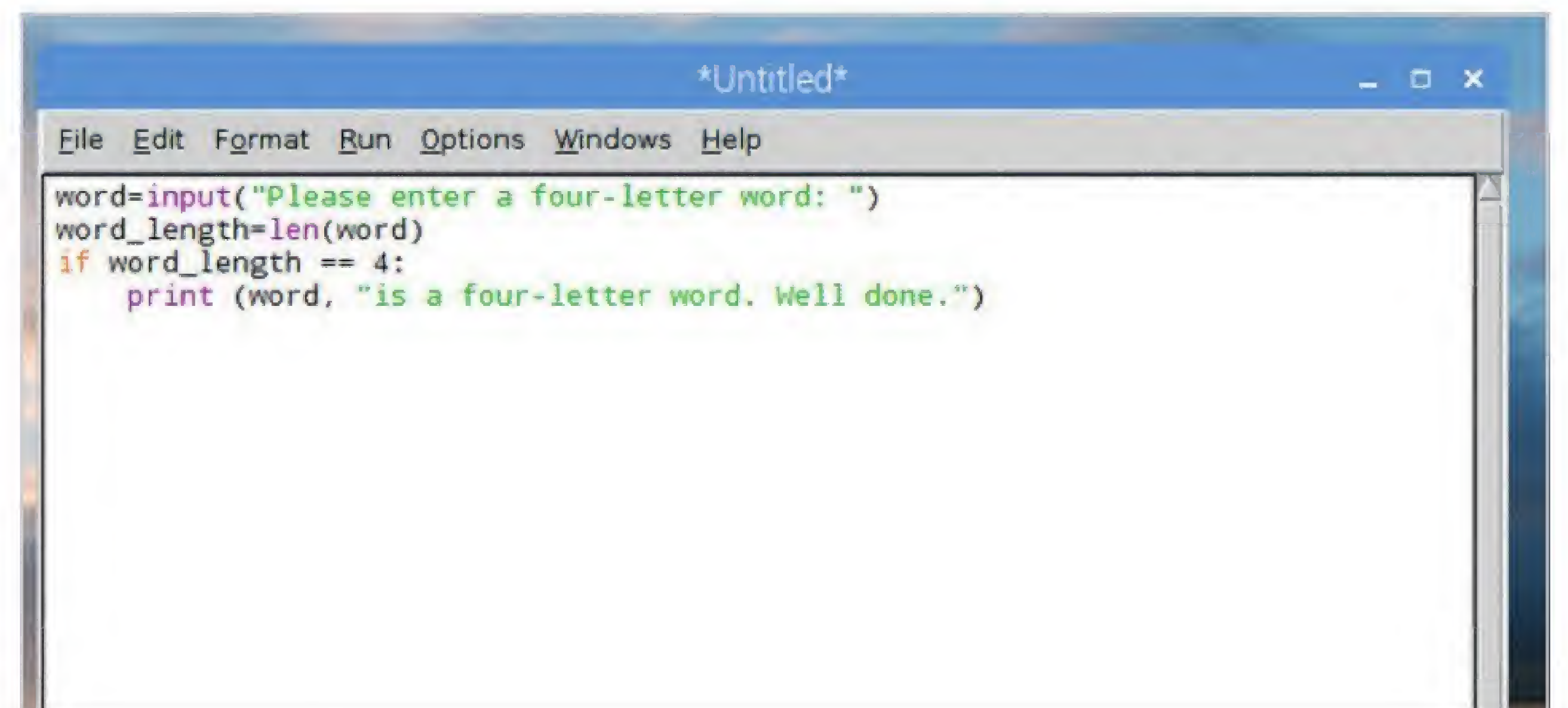


STEP 3

Now you can use an if statement to check if the word_length variable is equal to four and print a friendly conformation if it applies to the rule:

```
word=input("Please enter a four-letter word: ")
word_length=len(word)
if word_length == 4:
    print (word, "is a four-letter word. Well done.")
```

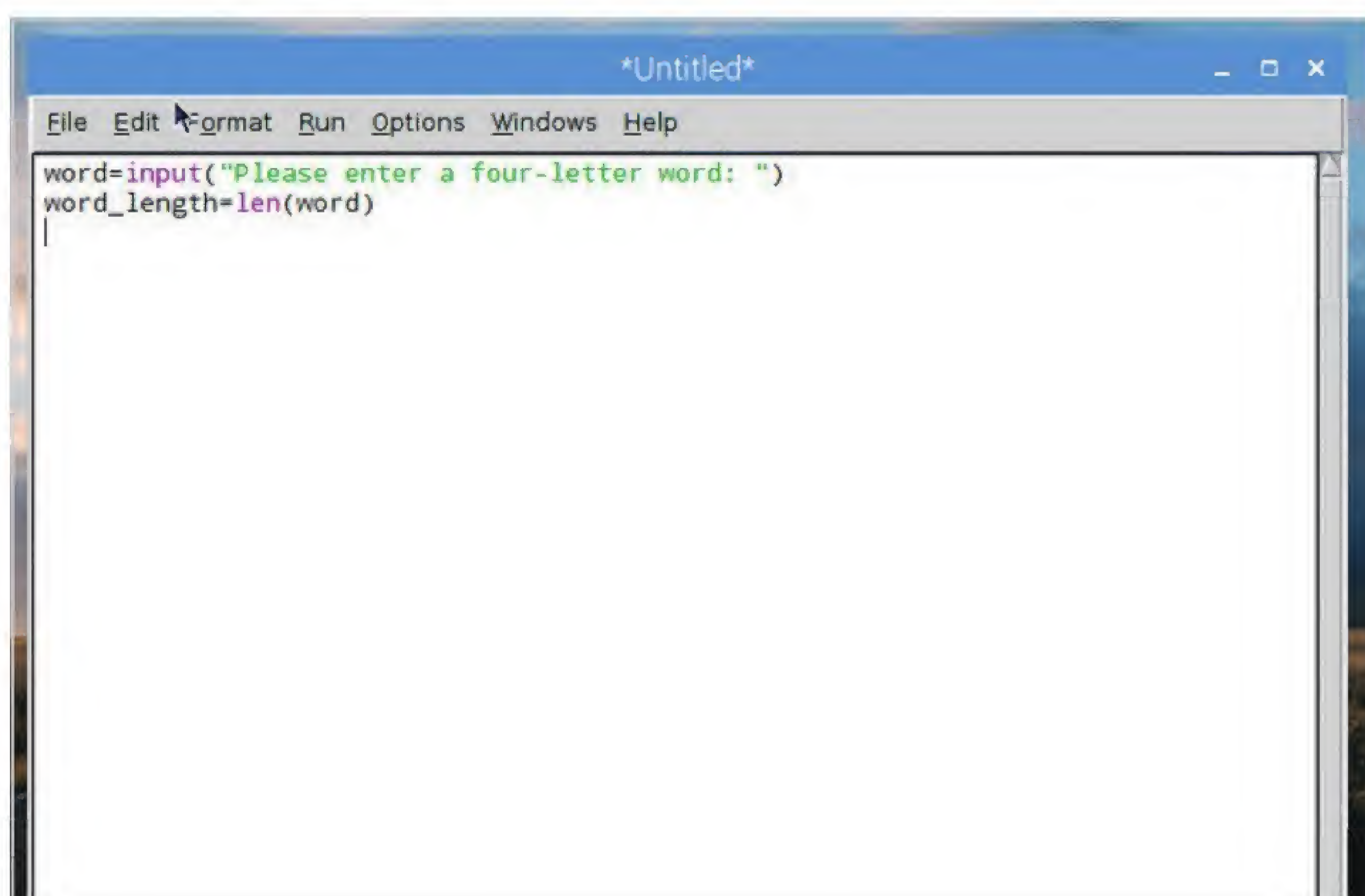
The double equal sign (==) means check if something is equal to something else.



STEP 2

Now we can create a new variable, then use the len function and pass the word variable through it to get the total number of letters the user has just entered:

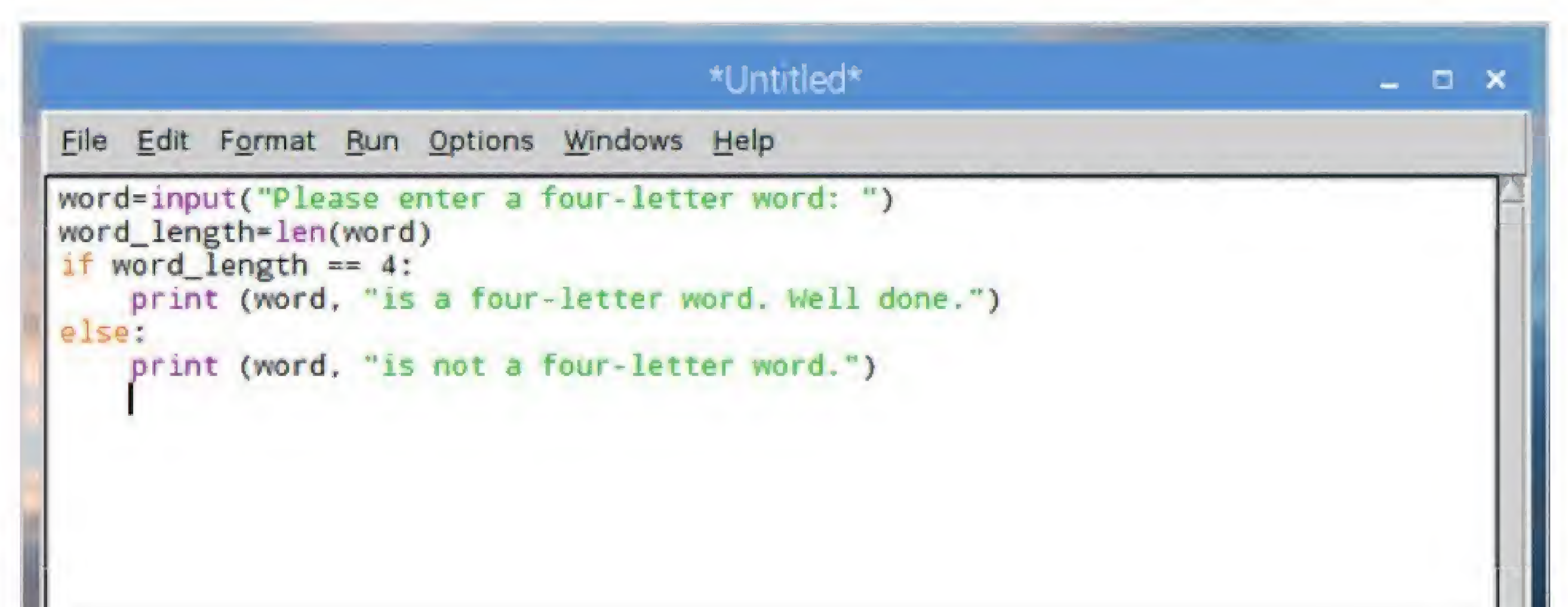
```
word=input("Please enter a four-letter word: ")
word_length=len(word)
```



STEP 4

The colon at the end of IF tells Python that if this statement is true do everything after the colon that's indented. Next, move the cursor back to the beginning of the Editor:

```
word=input("Please enter a four-letter word: ")
word_length=len(word)
if word_length == 4:
    print (word, "is a four-letter word. Well done.")
else:
    print (word, "is not a four-letter word.")
```





STEP 5

Press F5 and save the code to execute it. Enter a four-letter word in the Shell to begin with, you should have the returned message that it's the word is four letters. Now press F5 again and rerun the program but this time enter a five-letter word. The Shell will display that it's not a four-letter word.

STEP 6

Now expand the code to include another conditions. Eventually, it could become quite complex. We've added a condition for three-letter words:

```
word=input("Please enter a four-letter word: ")
word_length=len(word)
if word_length == 4:
    print (word, "is a four-letter word. Well done.")
elif word_length == 3:
    print (word, "is a three-letter word. Try again.")
else:
    print (word, "is not a four-letter word.")
```

LOOPS

A loop looks quite similar to a condition but they are somewhat different in their operation. A loop will run through the same block of code a number of times, usually with the support of a condition.

STEP 1

Let's start with a simple While statement. Like IF, this will check to see if something is TRUE, then run the indented code:

```
x = 1
while x < 10:
    print (x)
    x = x + 1
```

STEP 3

The For loop is another example. For is used to loop over a range of data, usually a list stored as variables inside square brackets. For example:

```
words=["Cat", "Dog", "Unicorn"]
for word in words:
    print (word)
```

STEP 2

The difference between if and while is when while gets to the end of the indented code, it goes back and checks the statement is still true. In our example x is less than 10. With each loop it prints the current value of x, then adds one to that value. When x does eventually equal 10 it stops.

STEP 4

The For loop can also be used in the countdown example by using the range function:

```
for x in range (1, 10):
    print (x)
```

The x=x+1 part isn't needed here because the range function creates a list between the first and last numbers used.



Python Modules

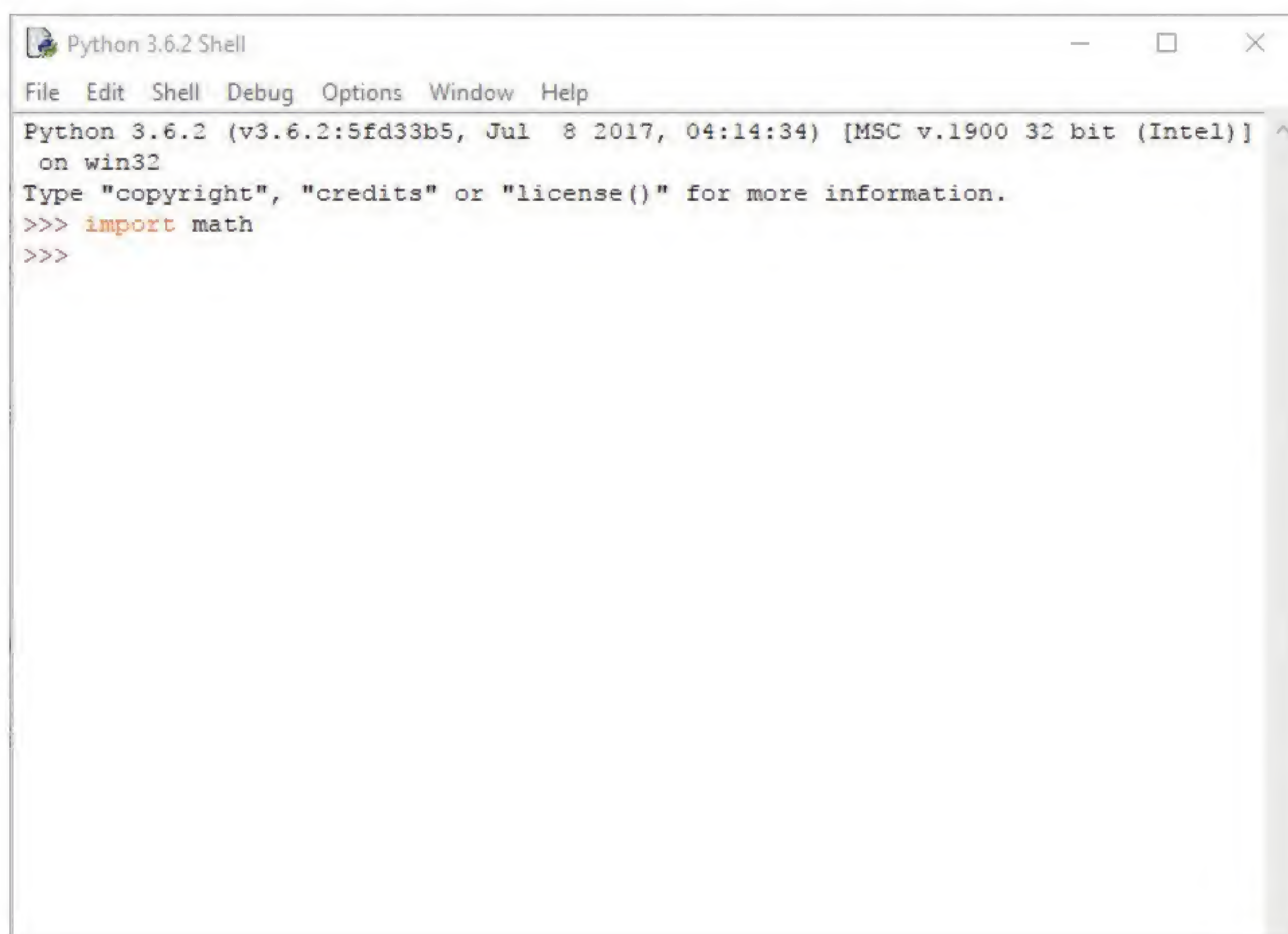
We've mentioned modules previously, (the Math module) but as modules are such a large part of getting the most from Python, it's worth dedicating a little more time to them. In this instance we're using the Windows version of Python 3.

MASTERING MODULES

Think of modules as an extension that's imported into your Python code to enhance and extend its capabilities. There are countless modules available and as we've seen, you can even make your own.

STEP 1

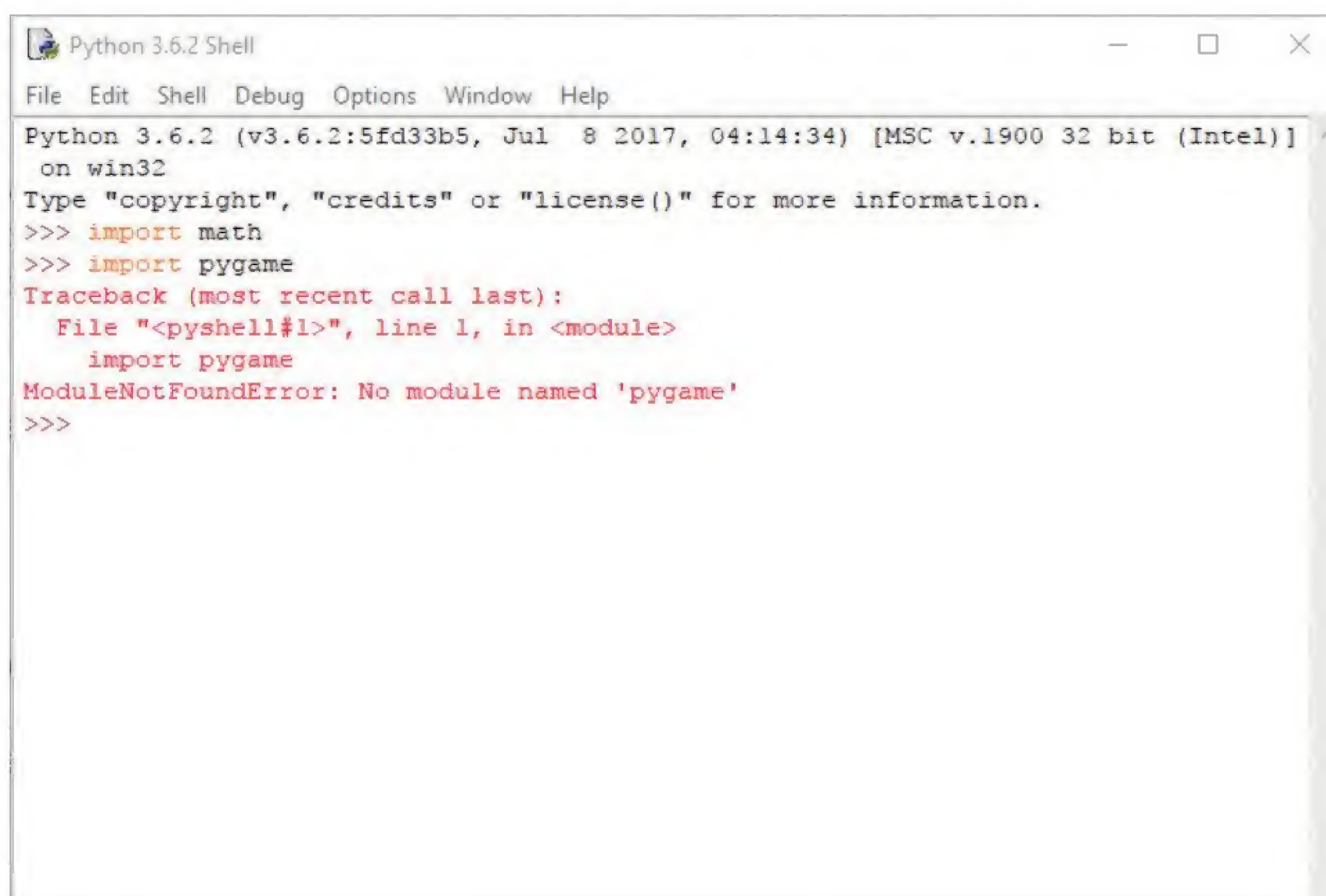
Although good, the built-in functions within Python are limited. The use of modules, however, allows us to make more sophisticated programs. As you are aware, modules are Python scripts that are imported, such as `import math`.



```
Python 3.6.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Window Help
Python 3.6.2 (v3.6.2:5fd33b5, Jul 8 2017, 04:14:34) [MSC v.1900 32 bit (Intel)]
on win32
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> import math
>>>
```

STEP 2

Some modules, especially on the Raspberry Pi, are included by default, the math module being a prime example. Sadly, other modules aren't always available. A good example on non-Pi platforms is the pygame module, which contains many functions to help create games. Try: `import pygame`.

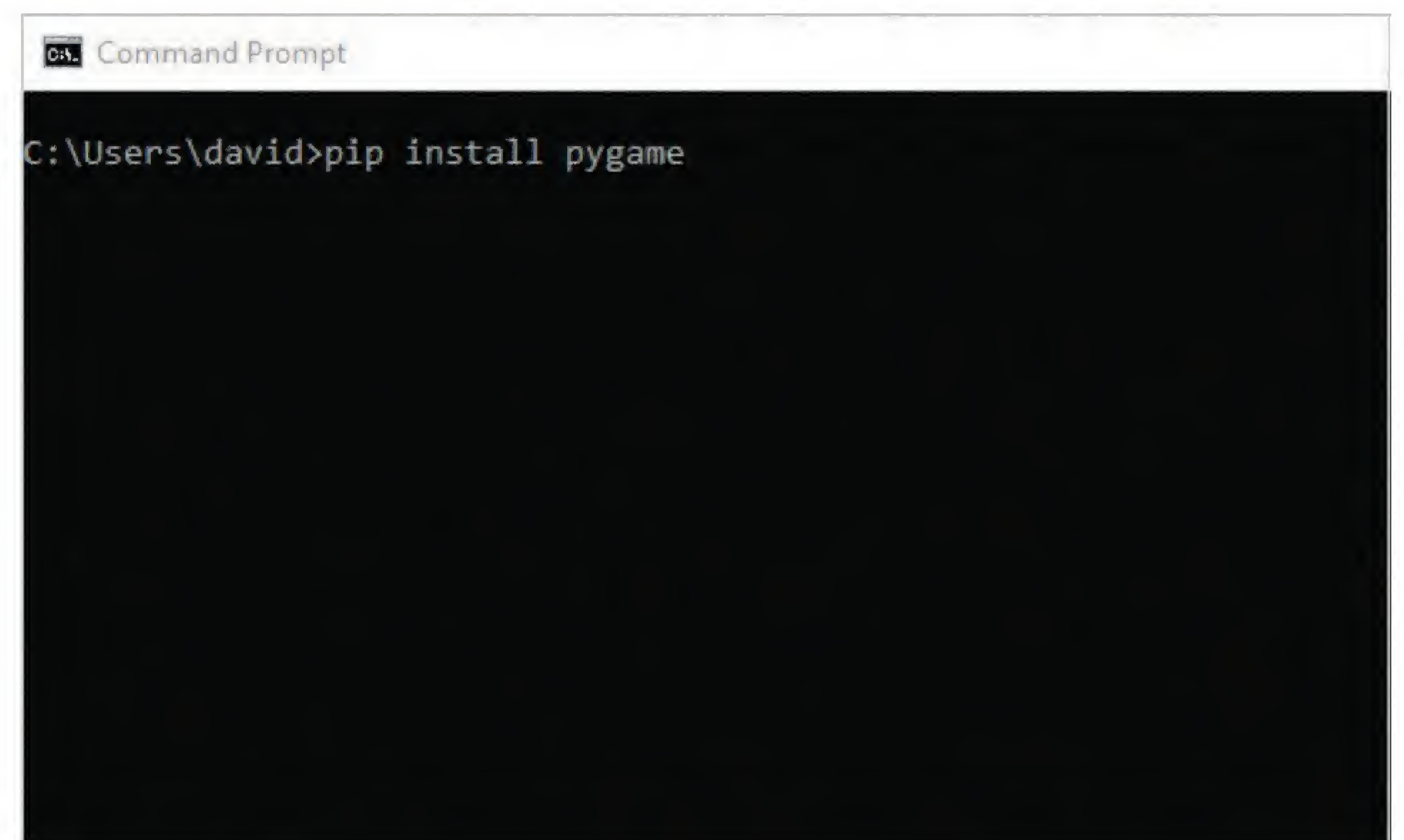


```
Python 3.6.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Window Help
Python 3.6.2 (v3.6.2:5fd33b5, Jul 8 2017, 04:14:34) [MSC v.1900 32 bit (Intel)]
on win32
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> import math
>>> import pygame
Traceback (most recent call last):
  File "<pyshell#1>", line 1, in <module>
    import pygame
ModuleNotFoundError: No module named 'pygame'
>>>
```

STEP 3

The result is an error in the IDLE Shell, as the pygame module isn't recognised or installed in Python. To install a module we can use PIP (Pip Installs Packages). Close down the IDLE Shell and drop into a command prompt or Terminal session. At an elevated admin command prompt, enter:

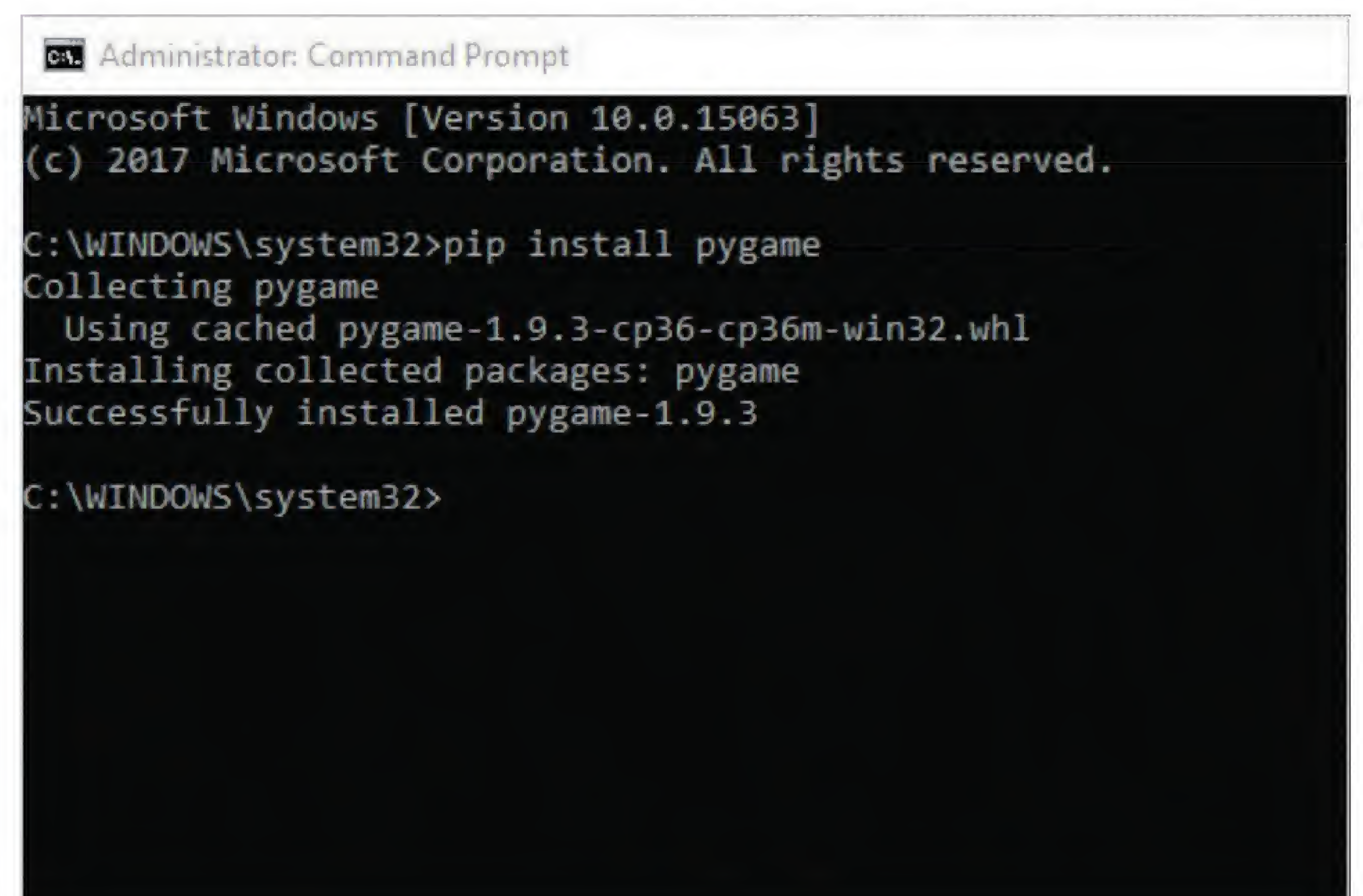
`pip install pygame`



```
Command Prompt
C:\Users\david>pip install pygame
```

STEP 4

The PIP installation requires an elevated status due it installing components at different locations. Windows users can search for CMD via the Start button and right-click the result then click Run as Administrator. Linux and Mac users can use the Sudo command, with `sudo pip install package`.



```
Administrator: Command Prompt
Microsoft Windows [Version 10.0.15063]
(c) 2017 Microsoft Corporation. All rights reserved.

C:\WINDOWS\system32>pip install pygame
Collecting pygame
  Using cached pygame-1.9.3-cp36-cp36m-win32.whl
Installing collected packages: pygame
Successfully installed pygame-1.9.3

C:\WINDOWS\system32>
```


**STEP 5**

Close the command prompt or Terminal and relaunch the IDLE Shell. When you now enter: `import pygame`, the module will be imported into the code without any problems. You'll find that most code downloaded or copied from the internet will contain a module, mainstream of unique, these are usually the source of errors in execution due to them being missing.

```
Python 3.6.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Window Help
Python 3.6.2 (v3.6.2:5fd33b5, Jul 8 2017, 04:14:34) [MSC v.1900 32 bit (Intel)]
on win32
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> import pygame
>>>
```

STEP 8

Multiple modules can be imported within your code. To extend our example, use:

```
import random
import math

for i in range(5):
    print(random.randint(1, 25))

print(math.pi)
```

```
Rnd Number.py - C:/Users/david/Documents/Python/Rnd Number.py (3.6.2)
File Edit Format Run Options Window Help

import random
import math

for i in range(5):
    print(random.randint(1, 25))

print(math.pi)
```

STEP 6

The modules contain the extra code needed to achieve a certain result within your own code, as we've previously experimented with. For example:

```
import random
```

Brings in the code from the random number generator module. You can then use this module to create something like:

```
for i in range(10):
    print(random.randint(1, 25))
```

```
"Untitled"
File Edit Format Run Options Window Help

import random

for i in range(10):
    print(random.randint(1, 25))
```

STEP 9

The result is a string of random numbers followed by the value of Pi as pulled from the math module using the `print(math.pi)` function. You can also pull in certain functions from a module by using the `from` and `import` commands, such as:

```
from random import randint

for i in range(5):
    print(randint(1, 25))
```

```
Rnd Number.py - C:/Users/david/Documents/Python/Rnd Number.py (3.6.2)
File Edit Format Run Options Window Help

from random import randint

for i in range(5):
    print(randint(1, 25))
```

STEP 7

This code, when saved and executed, will display ten random numbers from 1 to 25. You can play around with the code to display more or less, and from a great or lesser range. For example:

```
import random

for i in range(25):
    print(random.randint(1, 100))
```

```
Python 3.6.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Window Help

>>> ----- RESTART: C:/Users/david/Documents/Python/Rnd Number.py -----
14
21
9
17
22
4
8
3
10
13
>>> ----- RESTART: C:/Users/david/Documents/Python/Rnd Number.py -----
26
11
17
65
37
52
37
38
89
54
42
40
96
28
```

STEP 10

This helps create a more streamlined approach to programming. You can also use `import module*`, which will import everything defined within the named module. However, it's often regarded as a waste of resources but it works nonetheless. Finally, modules can be imported as aliases:

```
import math as m

print(m.pi)
```

Of course, adding comments helps to tell others what's going on.

```
*Rnd Number.py - C:/Users/david/Documents/Python/Rnd Number.py (3.6.2)*
File Edit Format Run Options Window Help

import math as m

print(m.pi)
```




Python Errors

It goes without saying that you'll eventually come across an error in your code, where Python declares it's not able to continue due to something being missed out, wrong or simply unknown. Being able to identify these errors makes for a good programmer.

DEBUGGING

Errors in code are called bugs and are perfectly normal. They can often be easily rectified with a little patience. The important thing is to keep looking, experimenting and testing. Eventually your code will be bug free.

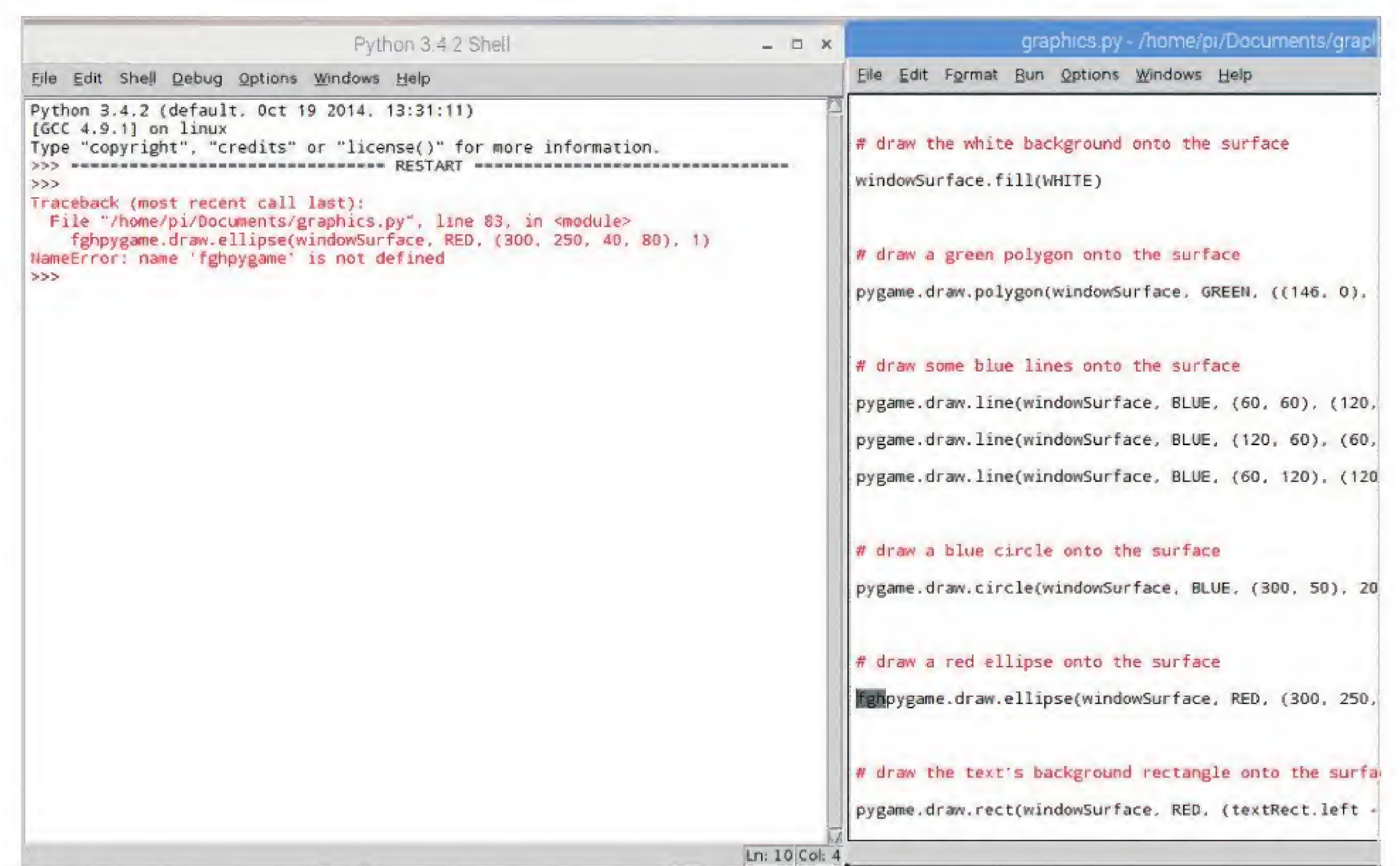
STEP 1

Code isn't as fluid as the written word, no matter how good the programming language is. Python is certainly easier than most languages but even it is prone to some annoying bugs. The most common are typos by the user and whilst easy to find in simple dozen-line code, imagine having to debug multi-thousand line code.



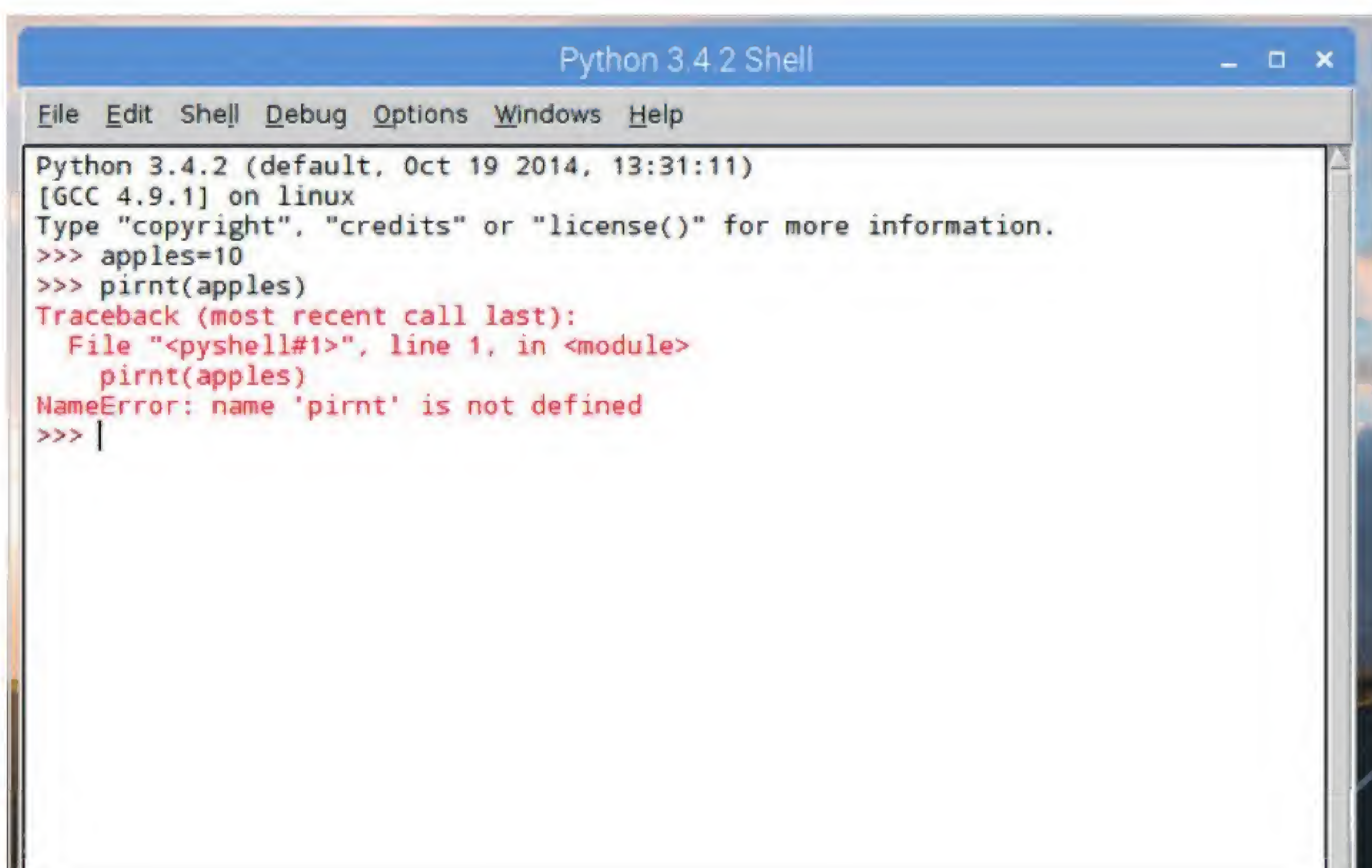
STEP 3

Thankfully Python is helpful when it comes to displaying error messages. When you receive an error, in red text from the IDLE Shell, it will define the error itself along with the line number where the error has occurred. Whilst in the IDLE Editor this is a little daunting for lots of code; text editors help by including line numbering.



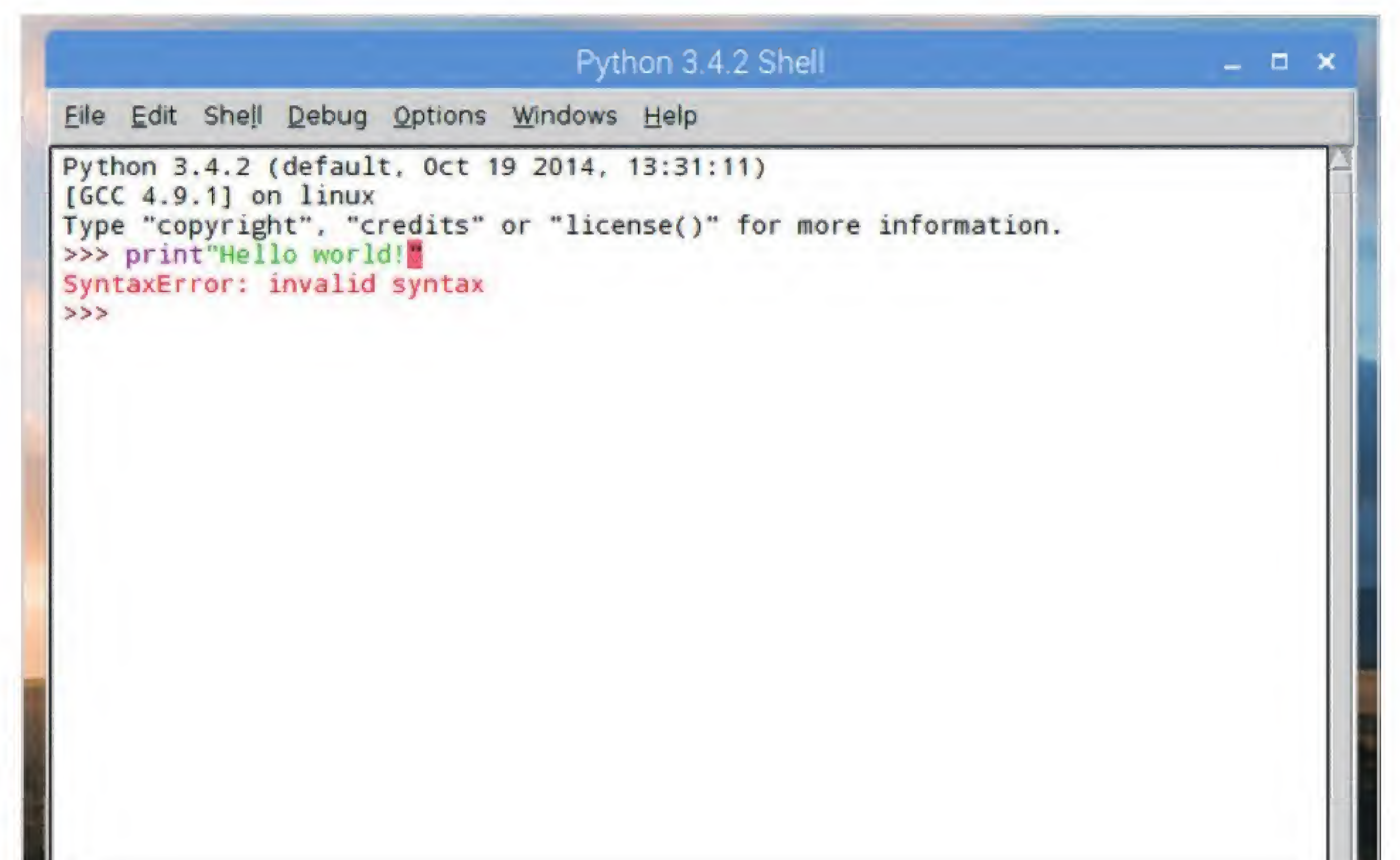
STEP 2

The most common of errors is the typo, as we've mentioned. The typos are often at the command level: mistyping the print command for example. However, they also occur when you have numerous variables, all of which have lengthy names. The best advice is to simply go through the code and check your spelling.



STEP 4

Syntax errors are probably the second most common errors you'll come across as a programmer. Even if the spelling is correct, the actual command itself is wrong. In Python 3 this often occurs when Python 2 syntaxes are applied. The most annoying of these is the print function. In Python 3 we use `print("words")`, whereas Python2 uses `print "words"`.



**STEP 5**

Pesky brackets are also a nuisance in programming errors, especially when you have something like:

```
print(balanced_check(input()))
```

Remember that for every '(' there must be an equal number of ')'.

```
1 import sys
2
3 def balanced_check(data):
4     stack = []
5     characters = list(data)
6
7     for character in characters:
8         reference = {
9             '(': ')',
10            '[': ']',
11            '{': '}'
12        }
13        if character in reference.keys():
14            stack.append(character)
15
16        elif character in reference.values() and len(stack) > 0:
17            char = stack.pop()
18            if reference.get(char) != character:
19                return "NO"
20        else:
21            return "NO"
```

STEP 6

There are thousands of online Python resources, code snippets and lengthy discussions across forums on how best to achieve something. Whilst 99 per cent of it is good code, don't always be lured into copying and pasting random code into your editor. More often than not, it won't work and the worst part is that you haven't learnt anything.

You have a bare except clause, i.e.,

```
8 try:
9     some_code()
10 except:
11     clean_up()
```

The problem with a bare except is that it will catch *all* exceptions, including ones you really don't want to be ignoring (like KeyboardInterrupt and SystemExit). It would be much better if your except block only caught the specific exception you expect, and let all others bubble up as normal.

A few other general comments on your code:

- In line 200, you have this construction:

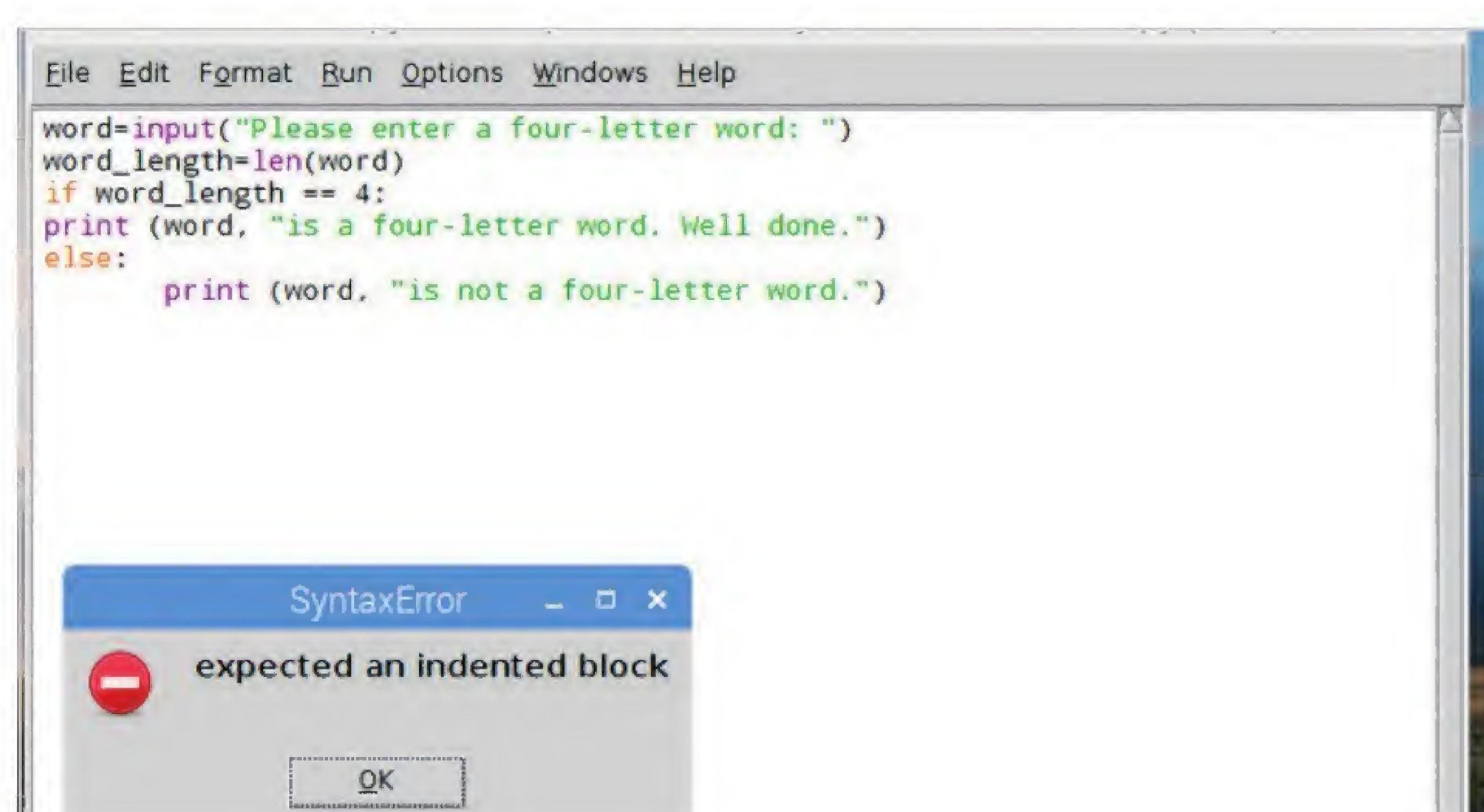
```
for letter in range(len(chosen_word)):
    if player_guess == chosen_word[letter]:
        word_guessed[letter] = player_guess
```

You're looping over the index variable, but also using the list element. It would be better to write:

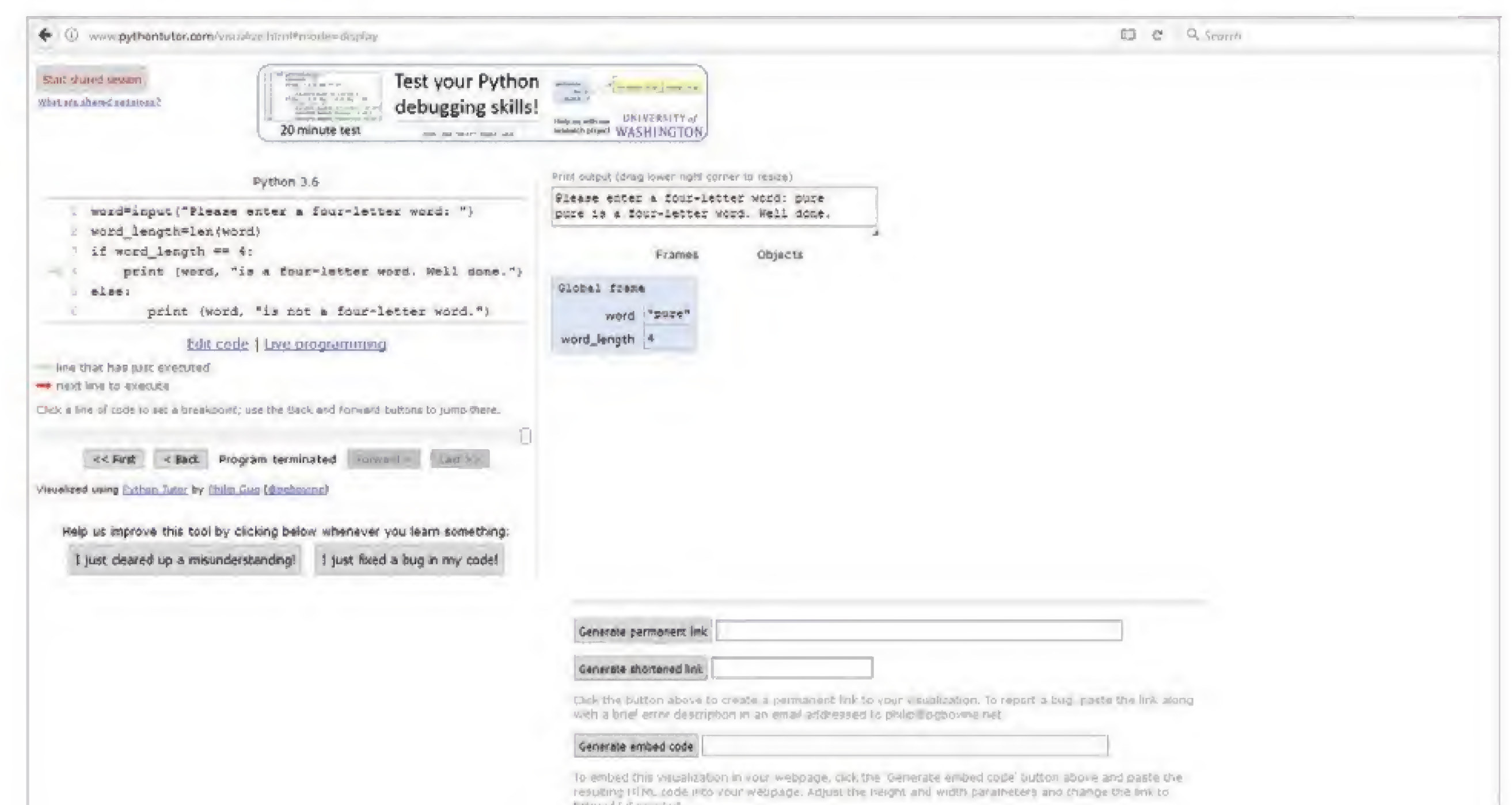
```
for idx, letter in enumerate(chosen_word):
    if player_guess == letter:
```

STEP 7

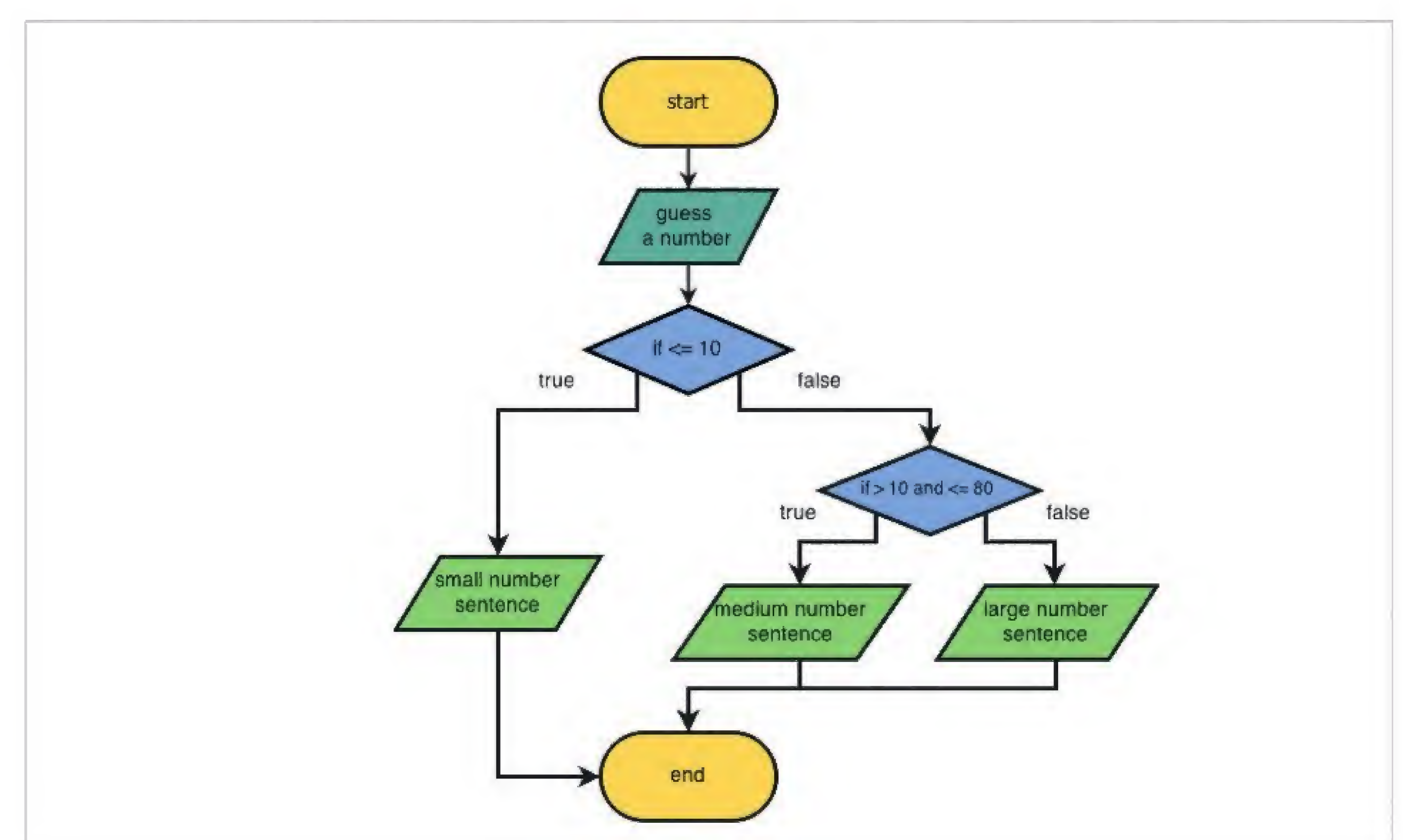
Indents are a nasty part of Python programming that a lot of beginners fall foul of. Recall the If loop from the Conditions and Loops section, where the colon means everything indented following the statement is to be executed as long as it's true? Missing the indent, or having too much of indent, will come back with an error.

**STEP 8**

An excellent way to check your code step-by-step is to use Python Tutor's Visualise web page, found at www.pythontutor.com/visualize.html#mode=edit. Simply paste your code into the editor and click the Visualise Execution button to run the code line-by-line. This helps to clear bugs and any misunderstandings.

**STEP 9**

Planning makes for good code. Whilst a little old school, it's a good habit to plan what your code will do before sitting down to type it out. List the variables that will be used and the modules too; then write out a script for any user interaction or outputs.

**STEP 10**

Purely out of interest, the word debugging in computing terms comes from Admiral Grace Hopper, who back in the '40s was working on a monolithic Harvard Mark II electromechanical computer. According to legend Hopper found a moth stuck in a relay, thus stopping the system from working. Removal of the moth was hence called debugging.





Combining What You Know So Far

We've reached the end of this section so let's take a moment to combine everything we've looked at so far, and apply it to writing a piece of code. This code can then be used and inserted into your own programs in future, either part of it or as a whole.

PLAYING WITH PI

For this example we're going to create a program that will calculate the value of Pi to a set number of decimal places, as described by the user. It combines much of what we've learnt, and a little more.

STEP 1 Start by opening Python and creating a New File in the Editor. First we need to get hold of an equation that can accurately calculate Pi without rendering the computer's CPU useless for several minutes. The recommended calculation used in such circumstances is the Chudnovsky Algorithm, you can find more information about it at en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Chudnovsky_algorithm.

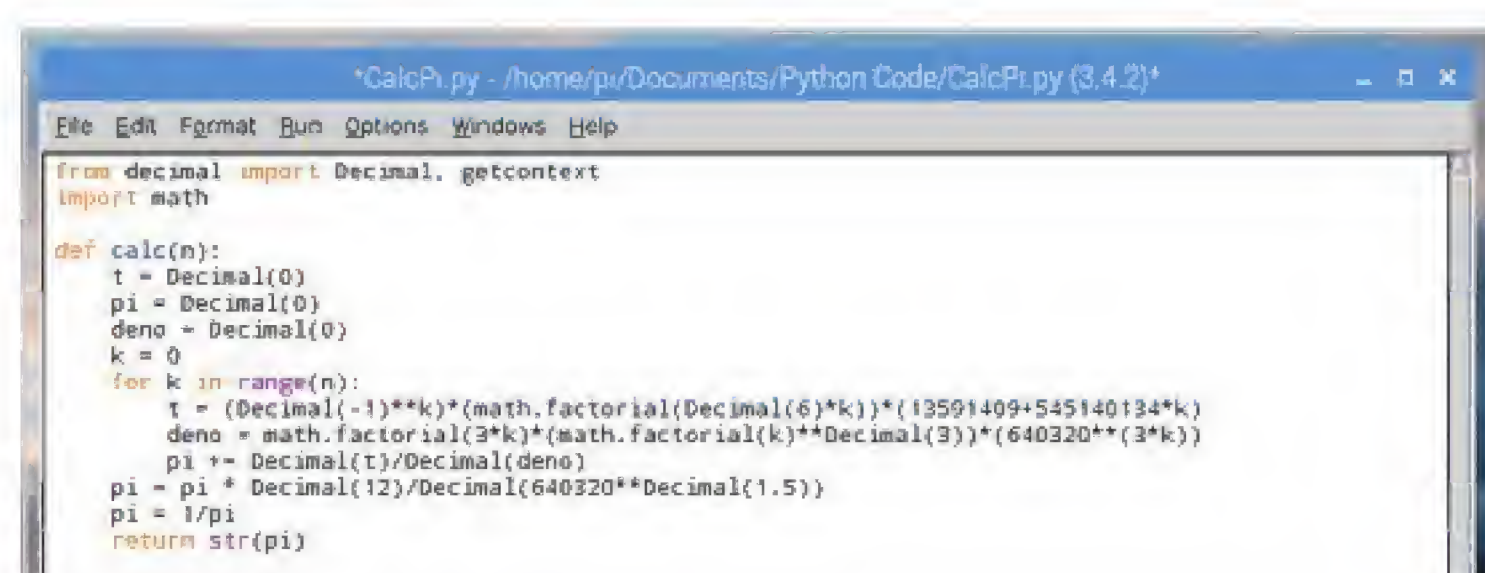
STEP 2 You can utilise the Chudnovsky Algorithm to create your own Python script based on the calculation. Begin by importing some important modules and functions within the modules:

```
from decimal import Decimal, getcontext
import math
```

This uses the decimal and getcontext functions from the decimal module, both of which deal with large decimal place numbers and naturally the math module.

STEP 3 Now you can insert the Pi calculation algorithm part of the code. This is a version of the Chudnovsky Algorithm:

```
def calc(n):
    t = Decimal(0)
    pi = Decimal(0)
    deno = Decimal(0)
    k = 0
    for k in range(n):
        t = (Decimal(-1)**k)*(math.factorial(
            Decimal(6)*k))*(13591409 + 545140134*k)
        deno = math.factorial(3*k)*(math.
            factorial(k)**Decimal(3))*(640320**(3*k))
        pi += Decimal(t)/Decimal(deno)
    pi = pi * Decimal(12)/Decimal(640320**Decimal(1.5))
    pi = 1/pi
    return str(pi)
```



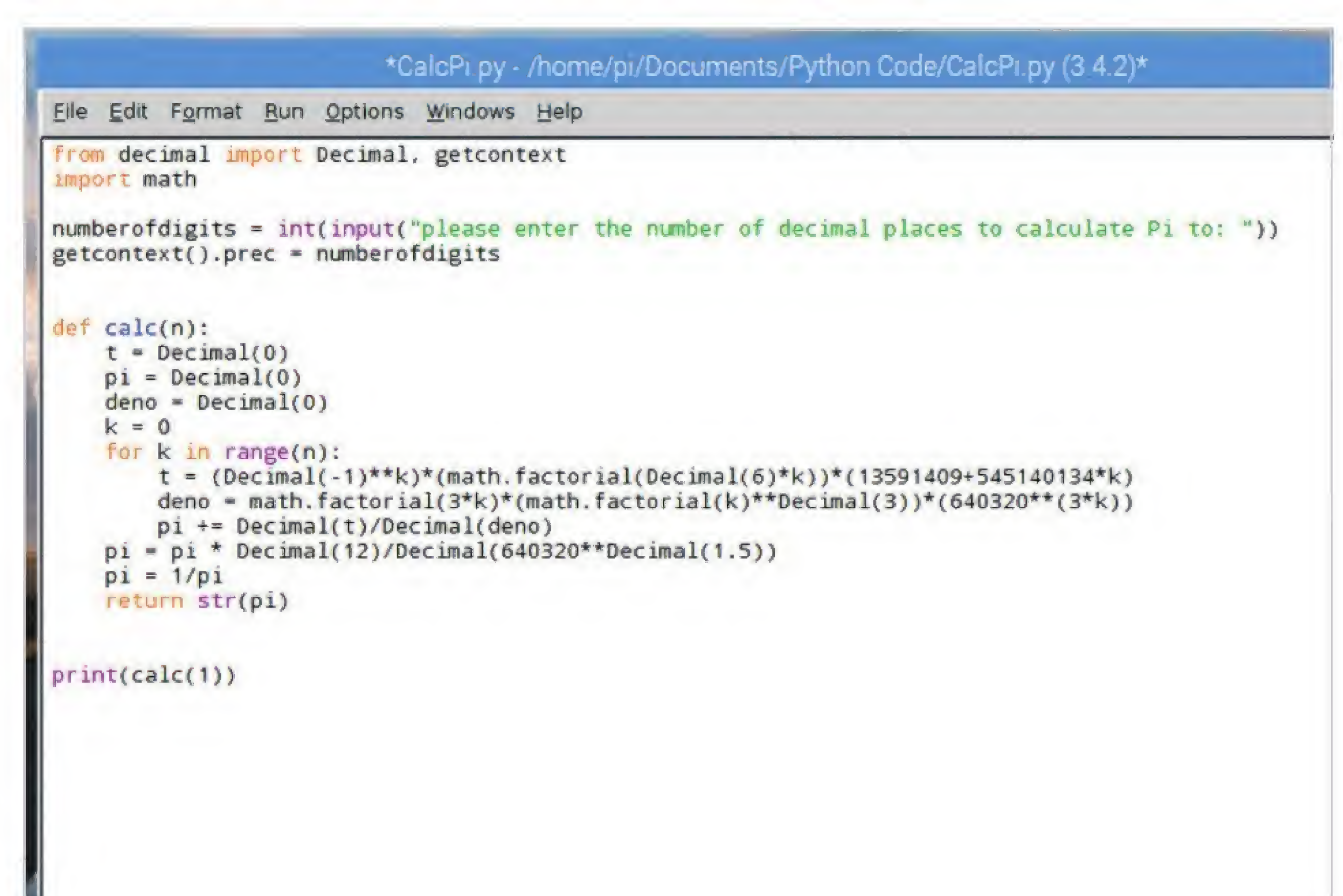
STEP 4 The previous step defines the rules that make up the algorithm and creates the string that will eventually display the value of Pi, according the Chudnovsky brothers' algorithm. You have no doubt already surmised that it would be handy to actually output the value of Pi to the screen. To rectify that you can add:

```
print(calc(1))
```

STEP 5 You can save and execute the code at this point if you like. The output will print the value of Pi to 27 decimal places: **3.141592653589734207668453591**. Whilst pretty impressive on its own, you want some user interaction, to ask the user as to how many places Pi should be calculated.

STEP 6 You can insert an input line before the Pi calculation Def command. It needs to be an integer, as it will otherwise default to a string. We can call it numberofdigits and use the getcontext function:

```
numberofdigits = int(input("please enter the
number of decimal place to calculate Pi to: "))
getcontext().prec = numberofdigits
```



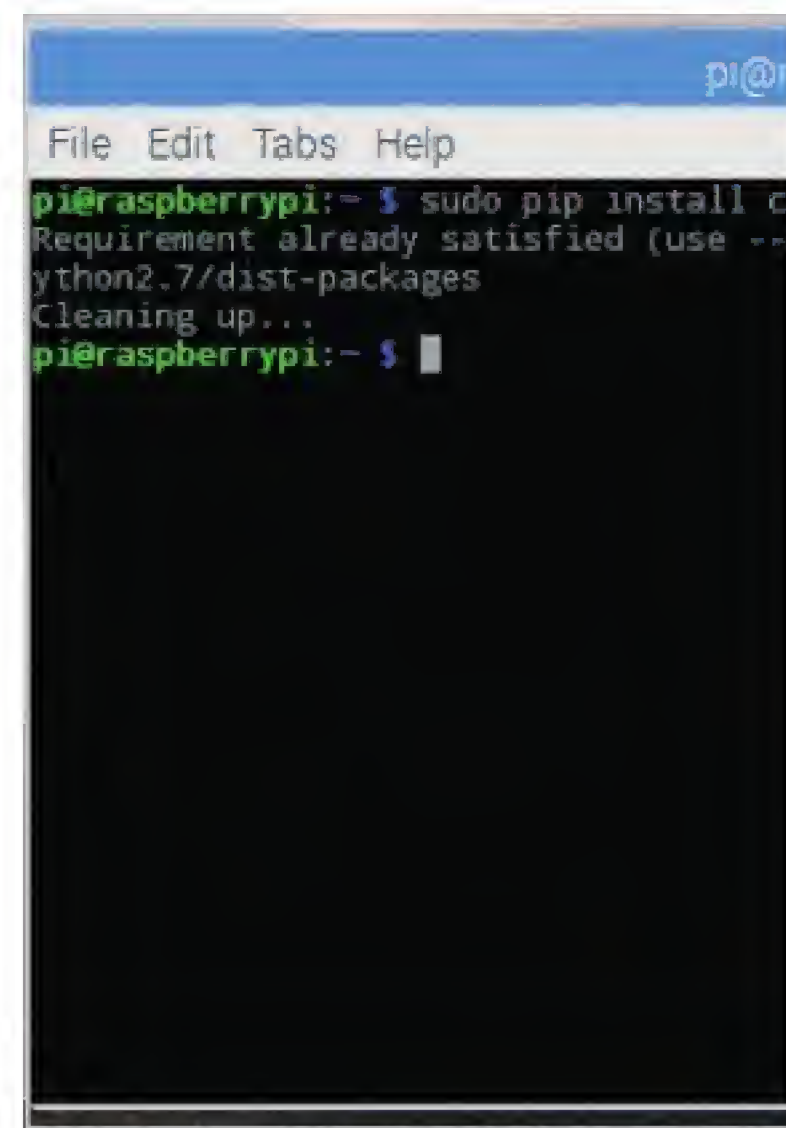
**STEP 7**

You can execute the code now and it asks the user how many decimal places they want to calculate Pi to, outputting the result in the IDLE Shell. Try it with 1000 places but don't go too high or else your computer will be locked up in calculating Pi.

STEP 8

Part of programming is being able to modify code, making it more presentable. Let's include an element that times how long it takes our computer to calculate the Pi decimal places and present the information in a different colour. For this, drop into the command line and import the colorama module (RPI users already have it installed):

```
pip install colorama
```

**STEP 10**

To finish our code, we need to initialise the colorama module and start the time function at the point where the calculation starts, and when it finishes. The end result is a coloured ink displaying how long the process took (in the Terminal or command line):

```
from decimal import Decimal, getcontext
import math
import time
import colorama
from colorama import Fore
colorama.init()
```

```
numberofdigits = int(input("please enter the number
of decimal places to calculate Pi to: "))
getcontext().prec = numberofdigits
```

```
start_time = time.time()
def calc(n):
```

STEP 9

Now we need to import the colorama module (which will output text in different colours) along with the Fore function (which dictates the foreground, ink, colour) and the time module to start a virtual stopwatch to see how long our calculations take:

```
import time
import colorama
from colorama import Fore
```

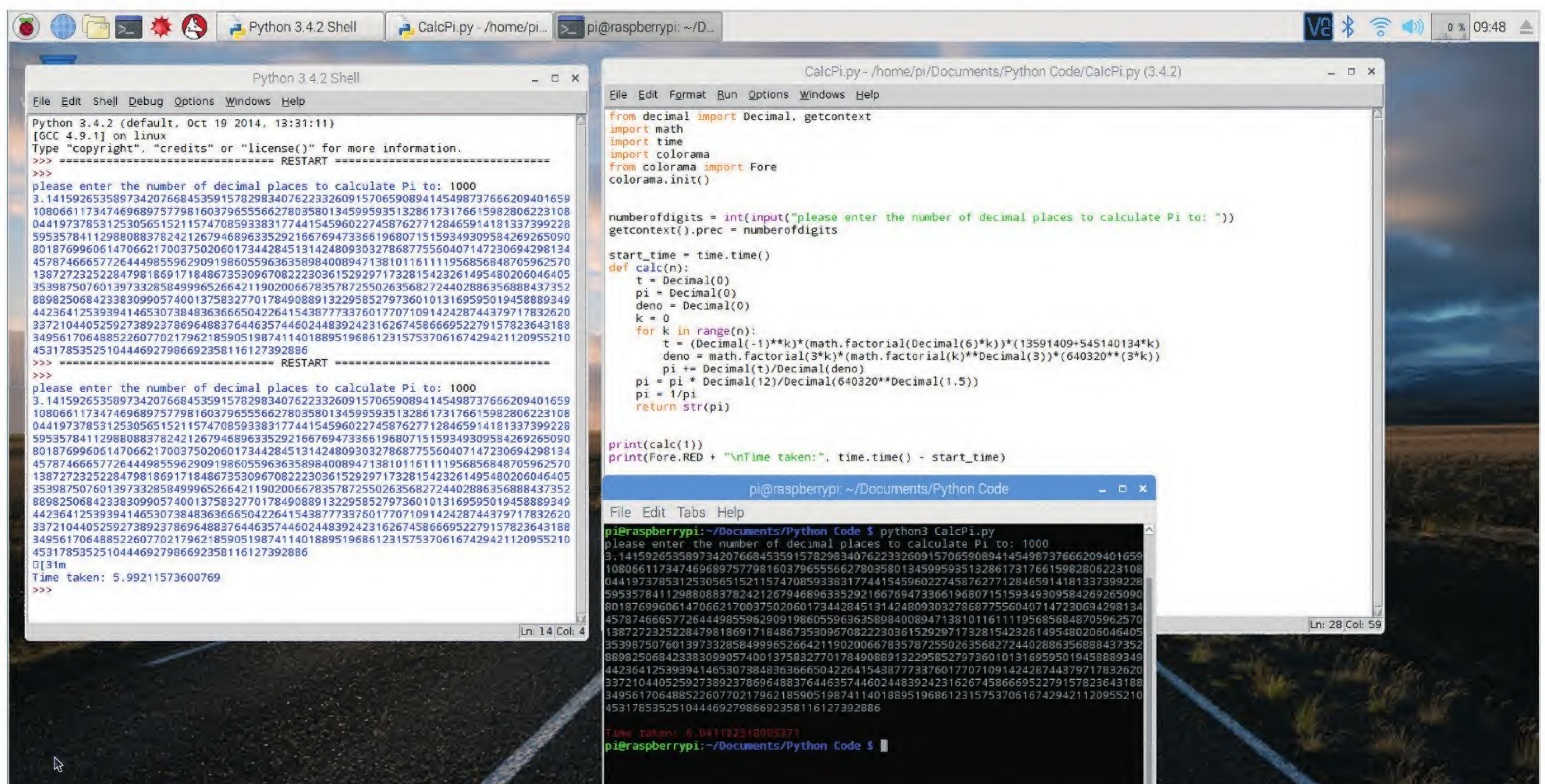
```
numberofdigits = int(input("please enter the number of decimal places to calculate Pi to: "))
getcontext().prec = numberofdigits

def calc(n):
    t = Decimal(0)
    pi = Decimal(0)
    deno = Decimal(0)
    k = 0
    for k in range(n):
        t = (Decimal(-1)**k)*(math.factorial(Decimal(6)*k))*((13591409+545140134*k)
        deno = math.factorial(3*k)*(math.factorial(k)**Decimal(3))*(640320**(3*k))
        pi += Decimal(t)/Decimal(deno)
    pi = pi * Decimal(12)/Decimal(640320**Decimal(1.5))
    pi = 1/pi
    return str(pi)

print(calc(1))
```

```
t = Decimal(0)
pi = Decimal(0)
deno = Decimal(0)
k = 0
for k in range(n):
    t = (Decimal(-1)**k)*(math.
factorial(Decimal(6)*k))*((13591409+545140134*k)
    deno = math.factorial(3*k)*(math.
factorial(k)**Decimal(3))*(640320**(3*k))
    pi += Decimal(t)/Decimal(deno)
    pi = pi * Decimal(12)/
Decimal(640320**Decimal(1.5))
    pi = 1/pi
    return str(pi)
```

```
print(calc(1))
print(Fore.RED + "\nTime taken:", time.time() -
start_time)
```





Working with Data





Data is everything. With it you can display, control, add, remove, create and manipulate Python to your every demand. Over these coming pages we look at how you can create lists, tuples, dictionaries, multi-dimensional lists and how you can use them to forge exciting and useful programs.

You can also learn how to use date and time functions, write to files in your system and even create graphical user interfaces that will take your coding skills to new levels and into new project ideas.

.....

52	Lists
54	Tuples
56	Dictionaries
58	Splitting and Joining Strings
60	Formatting Strings
62	Date and Time
64	Opening Files
66	Writing to Files
68	Exceptions
70	Python Graphics
72	Combining What You Know So Far



Lists

Lists are one of the most common types of data structures you will come across in Python. A list is simply a collection of items, or data if you prefer, that can be accessed as a whole, or individually if wanted.

WORKING WITH LISTS

Lists are extremely handy in Python. A list can be strings, integers and also variables. You can even include functions in lists, and lists within lists.

STEP 1

A list is a sequence of data values called items. You create the name of your list followed by an equals sign, then square brackets and the items separated by commas; note that strings use quotes:

```
numbers = [1, 4, 7, 21, 98, 156]
mythical_creatures = ["Unicorn", "Balrog", "Vampire", "Dragon", "Minotaur"]
```

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> numbers = [1, 4, 7, 21, 98, 156]
>>> mythical_creatures = ["Unicorn", "Balrog", "Vampire", "Dragon", "Minotaur"]
>>>
```

STEP 2

Once you've defined your list you can call each by referencing its name, followed by a number. Lists start the first item entry as 0, followed by 1, 2, 3 and so on. For example:

```
numbers
```

To call up the entire contents of the list.

```
numbers[3]
```

To call the third from zero item in the list (21 in this case).

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> numbers = [1, 4, 7, 21, 98, 156]
>>> mythical_creatures = ["Unicorn", "Balrog", "Vampire", "Dragon", "Minotaur"]
>>> numbers
[1, 4, 7, 21, 98, 156]
>>> numbers[3]
21
>>> mythical_creatures
['Unicorn', 'Balrog', 'Vampire', 'Dragon', 'Minotaur']
>>> mythical_creatures[3]
'Dragon'
>>>
```

STEP 3

You can also access, or index, the last item in a list by using the minus sign before the item number [-1], or the second to last item with [-2] and so on. Trying to reference an item that isn't in the list, such as [10] will return an error:

```
numbers[-1]
mythical_creatures[-4]
```

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> numbers = [1, 4, 7, 21, 98, 156]
>>> mythical_creatures = ["Unicorn", "Balrog", "Vampire", "Dragon", "Minotaur"]
>>> numbers
[1, 4, 7, 21, 98, 156]
>>> numbers[3]
21
>>> mythical_creatures
['Unicorn', 'Balrog', 'Vampire', 'Dragon', 'Minotaur']
>>> mythical_creatures[3]
'Dragon'
>>> numbers[-1]
156
>>> numbers[-2]
98
>>> mythical_creatures[-1]
'Minotaur'
>>> mythical_creatures[-4]
'Balrog'
>>>
```

STEP 4

Slicing is similar to indexing but you can retrieve multiple items in a list by separating item numbers with a colon. For example:

```
numbers[1:3]
```

Will output the 4 and 7, being item numbers 1 and 2. Note that the returned values don't include the second index position (as you would numbers[1:3] to return 4, 7 and 21).

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> numbers = [1, 4, 7, 21, 98, 156]
>>> mythical_creatures = ["Unicorn", "Balrog", "Vampire", "Dragon", "Minotaur"]
>>> numbers
[1, 4, 7, 21, 98, 156]
>>> numbers[3]
21
>>> mythical_creatures
['Unicorn', 'Balrog', 'Vampire', 'Dragon', 'Minotaur']
>>> mythical_creatures[3]
'Dragon'
>>> numbers[-1]
156
>>> numbers[-2]
98
>>> mythical_creatures[-1]
'Minotaur'
>>> mythical_creatures[-4]
'Balrog'
>>> numbers[1:3]
[4, 7]
>>> numbers[0:4]
[1, 4, 7, 21]
>>> numbers[3:5]
[21, 98]
>>> numbers[1:]
[4, 7, 21, 98, 156]
>>>
```




STEP 5

You can update items within an existing list, remove items and even join lists together. For example, to join two lists you can use:

```
everything = numbers + mythical_creatures
```

Then view the combined list with:

```
everything
```

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> numbers = [1, 4, 7, 21, 98, 156]
>>> mythical_creatures = ["Unicorn", "Balrog", "Vampire", "Dragon", "Minotaur"]
>>> everything = numbers + mythical_creatures
>>> everything
[1, 4, 7, 21, 98, 156, 'Unicorn', 'Balrog', 'Vampire', 'Dragon', 'Minotaur']
>>>
```

STEP 6

Items can be added to a list by entering:

```
numbers=numbers+[201]
```

Or for strings:

```
mythical_creatres=mythical_creatures+["Griffin"]
```

Or by using the append function:

```
mythical_creatures.append("Nessie")
```

```
numbers.append(278)
```

```
>>> numbers = [1, 4, 7, 21, 98, 156]
>>> mythical_creatures = ["Unicorn", "Balrog", "Vampire", "Dragon", "Minotaur"]
>>> numbers
[1, 4, 7, 21, 98, 156]
>>> mythical_creatures
['Unicorn', 'Balrog', 'Vampire', 'Dragon', 'Minotaur']
>>> numbers=numbers+[201]
>>> numbers
[1, 4, 7, 21, 98, 156, 201]
>>> mythical_creatres=mythical_creatures+["Griffin"]
>>> mythical_creatures
['Unicorn', 'Balrog', 'Vampire', 'Dragon', 'Minotaur', 'Griffin']
>>> mythical_creatures.append("Nessie")
>>> mythical_creatures
['Unicorn', 'Balrog', 'Vampire', 'Dragon', 'Minotaur', 'Griffin', 'Nessie']
>>> numbers.append(278)
>>> numbers
[1, 4, 7, 21, 98, 156, 201, 278]
>>>
```

STEP 7

Removal of items can be done in two ways. The first is by the item number:

```
del numbers[7]
```

Alternatively, by item name:

```
mythical_creatures.remove("Nessie")
```

```
>>> mythical_creatures = ["Unicorn", "Balrog", "Vampire", "Dragon", "Minotaur"]
>>> numbers
[1, 4, 7, 21, 98, 156]
>>> mythical_creatures
['Unicorn', 'Balrog', 'Vampire', 'Dragon', 'Minotaur']
>>> numbers=numbers+[201]
>>> numbers
[1, 4, 7, 21, 98, 156, 201]
>>> mythical_creatres=mythical_creatures+["Griffin"]
>>> mythical_creatures
['Unicorn', 'Balrog', 'Vampire', 'Dragon', 'Minotaur', 'Griffin']
>>> mythical_creatures.append("Nessie")
>>> mythical_creatures
['Unicorn', 'Balrog', 'Vampire', 'Dragon', 'Minotaur', 'Griffin', 'Nessie']
>>> numbers.append(278)
>>> numbers
[1, 4, 7, 21, 98, 156, 201, 278]
>>> del numbers[7]
>>> numbers
[1, 4, 7, 21, 98, 156, 201]
>>> mythical_creatures.remove("Nessie")
>>> mythical_creatures
['Unicorn', 'Balrog', 'Vampire', 'Dragon', 'Minotaur', 'Griffin']
>>>
```

STEP 8

You can view what can be done with lists by entering `dir(list)` into the Shell. The output is the available functions, for example, `insert` and `pop` are used to add and remove items at certain positions. To insert the number 62 at item index 4:

```
numbers.insert(4, 62)
```

To remove it:

```
numbers.pop(4)
```

```
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> dir(list)
['_add_', '_class_', '_contains_', '_delattr_', '_delitem_', '_dir_',
'_doc_', '_eq_', '_format_', '_ge_', '_getattr_', '_getitem_',
'_gt_', '_hash_', '_iadd_', '_imul_', '_init_', '_iter_', '_le_',
'_len_', '_lt_', '_mul_', '_ne_', '_new_', '_reduce_', '_reduce_e',
'_x_', '_repr_', '_reversed_', '_rmul_', '_setattr_', '_setitem_', '_s',
'_sizeof_', '_str_', '_subclasshook_', '_append_', '_clear_', '_copy_', '_count_', '_ex',
'_tend_', '_index_', '_insert_', '_pop_', '_remove_', '_reverse_', '_sort_']
>>> numbers = [1, 4, 7, 21, 98, 156]
>>> numbers
[1, 4, 7, 21, 98, 156]
>>> numbers.insert(4, 62)
>>> numbers
[1, 4, 7, 21, 62, 98, 156]
>>> numbers.pop(4)
62
>>> numbers
[1, 4, 7, 21, 98, 156]
>>>
```

STEP 9

You also use the list function to break a string down into its components. For example:

```
list("David")
```

Breaks the name David into 'D', 'a', 'v', 'i', 'd'. This can then be passed to a new list:

```
name=list("David Hayward")
```

```
name
```

```
age=[44]
```

```
user = name + age
```

```
user
```

```
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> list("David")
['D', 'a', 'v', 'i', 'd']
>>> name=list("David Hayward")
>>> name
['D', 'a', 'v', 'i', 'd', ' ', 'H', 'a', 'y', 'w', 'a', 'r', 'd']
>>> age=[44]
>>> user = name + age
>>> user
['D', 'a', 'v', 'i', 'd', ' ', 'H', 'a', 'y', 'w', 'a', 'r', 'd', 44]
>>>
```

STEP 10

Based on that, you can create a program to store someone's name and age as a list:

```
name=input("What's your name? ")
```

```
lname=list(name)
```

```
age=int(input("How old are you: "))
```

```
lage=[age]
```

```
user = lname + lage
```

The combined name and age list is called `user`, which can be called by entering `user` into the Shell. Experiment and see what you can do.

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> name=input("What's your name? ")
What's your name? Conan of Cimmeria
>>> lname=list(name)
>>> age=int(input("How old are you: "))
How old are you: 44
>>> lage=[age]
>>> user = lname + lage
>>> user
['C', 'o', 'n', 'a', 'n', ' ', 'o', 'f', ' ', 'C', 'i', 'm', 'm', 'e', 'r', 'i', 'a', 44]
>>>
```

```
namelist.py - /home/pi/Docu
File Edit Format Run Options Windows
name=input("What's your name? ")
lname=list(name)
age=int(input("How old are you: "))
lage=[age]
user = lname + lage
```




Tuples

Tuples are very much identical to lists. However, where lists can be updated, deleted or changed in some way, a tuple remains a constant. This is called immutable and they're perfect for storing fixed data items.

THE IMMUTABLE TUPLE

Reasons for having tuples vary depending on what the program is intended to do. Normally, a tuple is reserved for something special but they're also used for example, in an adventure game, where non-playing character names are stored.

STEP 1

A tuple is created the same way as a list but in this instance you use curved brackets instead of square brackets. For example:

```
months=("January", "February", "March", "April",  
"May", "June")  
months
```

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> months=("January", "February", "March", "April", "May", "June")
>>> months
('January', 'February', 'March', 'April', 'May', 'June')
>>>
```

STEP 3

You can create grouped tuples into lists that contain multiple sets of data. For instance, here is a tuple called NPC (Non-Playable Characters) containing the character name and their combat rating for an adventure game:

```
NPC=[("Conan", 100), ("Belit", 80), ("Valeria",  
95)]
```

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> NPC=[("Conan", 100), ("Belit", 80), ("Valeria", 95)]
>>>
```

STEP 2

Just as with lists, the items within a named tuple can be indexed according to their position in the data range, i.e.:

```
months[0]  
months[5]
```

However, any attempt at deleting or adding to the tuple will result in an error in the Shell.

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> months=("January", "February", "March", "April", "May", "June")
>>> months
('January', 'February', 'March', 'April', 'May', 'June')
>>> months[0]
'January'
>>> months[5]
'June'
>>> months.append("July")
Traceback (most recent call last):
  File "<pyshell#4>", line 1, in <module>
    months.append("July")
AttributeError: 'tuple' object has no attribute 'append'
>>>
```

STEP 4

Each of these data items can be accessed as a whole by entering NPC into the Shell; or they can be indexed according to their position NPC[0]. You can also index the individual tuples within the NPC list:

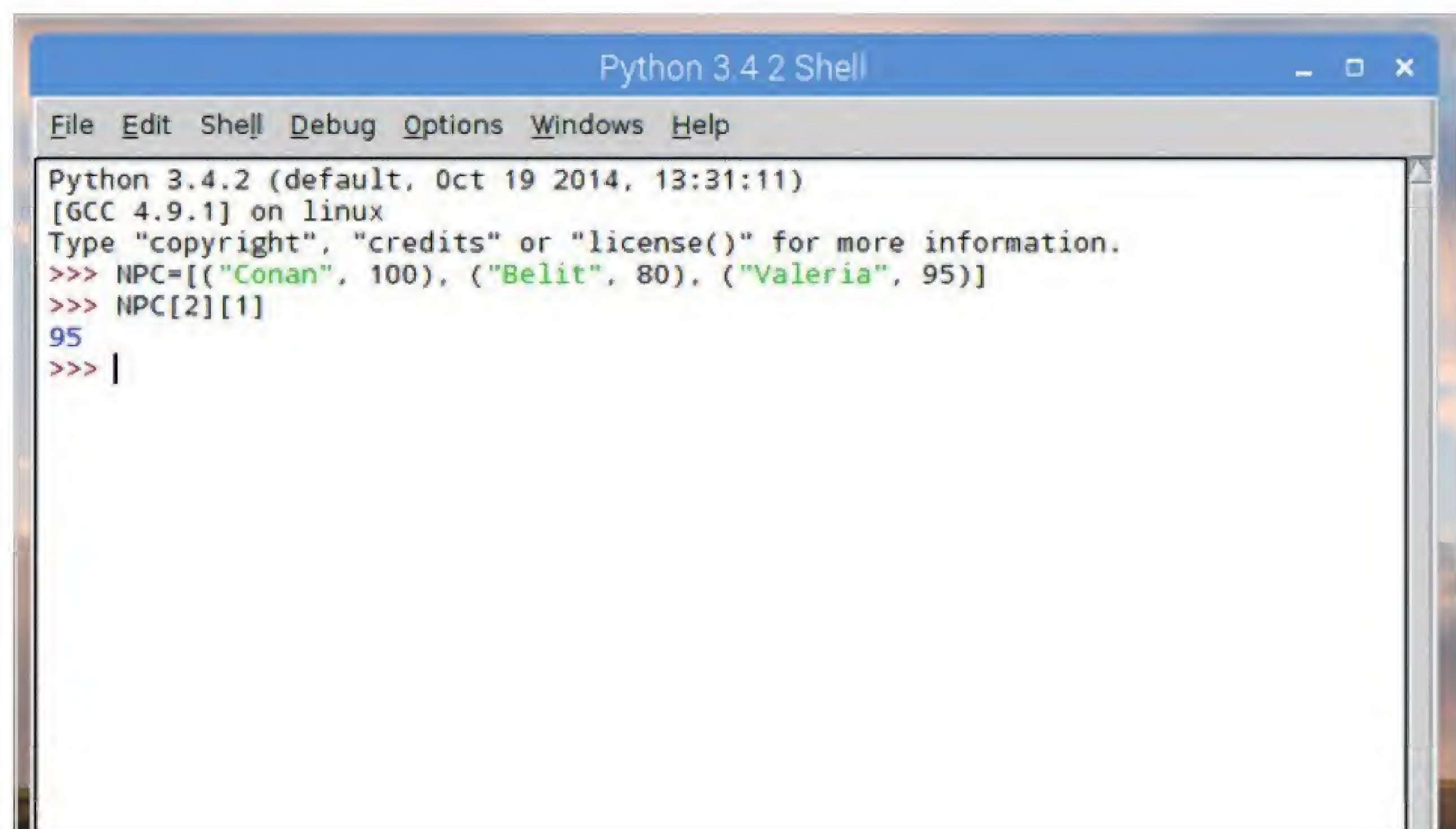
```
NPC[0][1]
```

Will display 100.

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> NPC=[("Conan", 100), ("Belit", 80), ("Valeria", 95)]
>>> NPC
[('Conan', 100), ('Belit', 80), ('Valeria', 95)]
>>> NPC[0]
('Conan', 100)
>>> NPC[0][1]
100
>>>
```


STEP 5 It's worth noting that when referencing multiple tuples within a list, the indexing is slightly different from the norm. You would expect the 95 combat rating of the character Valeria to be `NPC[4][5]`, but it's not. It's actually:

```
NPC[2][1]
```

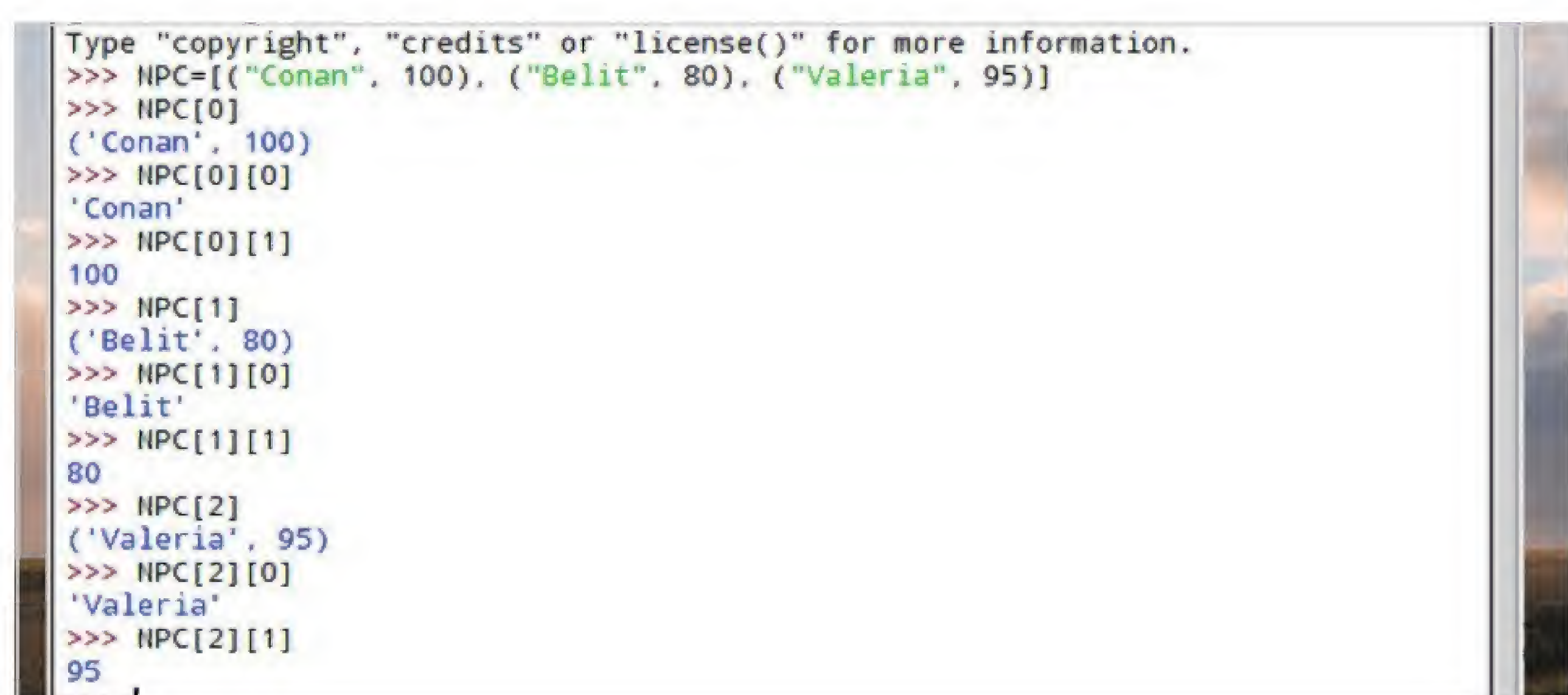


```
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> NPC=[("Conan", 100), ("Belit", 80), ("Valeria", 95)]
>>> NPC[2][1]
95
>>> |
```

STEP 6 This means of course that the indexing follows thus:

0	1, 1
0, 0	2
0, 1	2, 0
1	2, 1
1, 0	

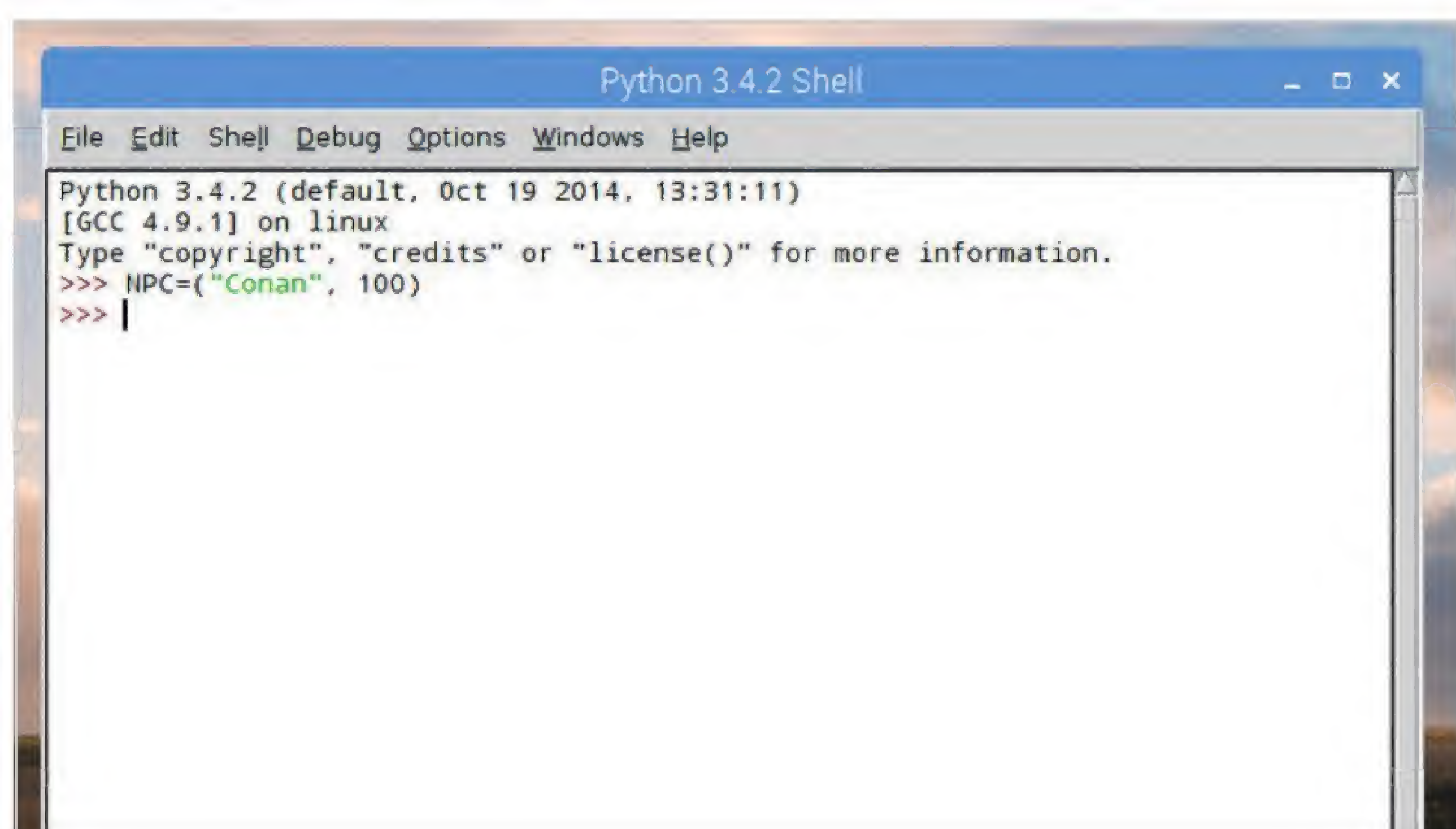
Which as you can imagine, gets a little confusing when you've got a lot of tuple data to deal with.



```
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> NPC=[("Conan", 100), ("Belit", 80), ("Valeria", 95)]
>>> NPC[0]
('Conan', 100)
>>> NPC[0][0]
'Conan'
>>> NPC[0][1]
100
>>> NPC[1]
('Belit', 80)
>>> NPC[1][0]
'Belit'
>>> NPC[1][1]
80
>>> NPC[2]
('Valeria', 95)
>>> NPC[2][0]
'Valeria'
>>> NPC[2][1]
95
>>> |
```

STEP 7 Tuples though utilise a feature called unpacking, where the data items stored within a tuple are assigned variables. First create the tuple with two items (name and combat rating):

```
NPC=("Conan", 100)
```

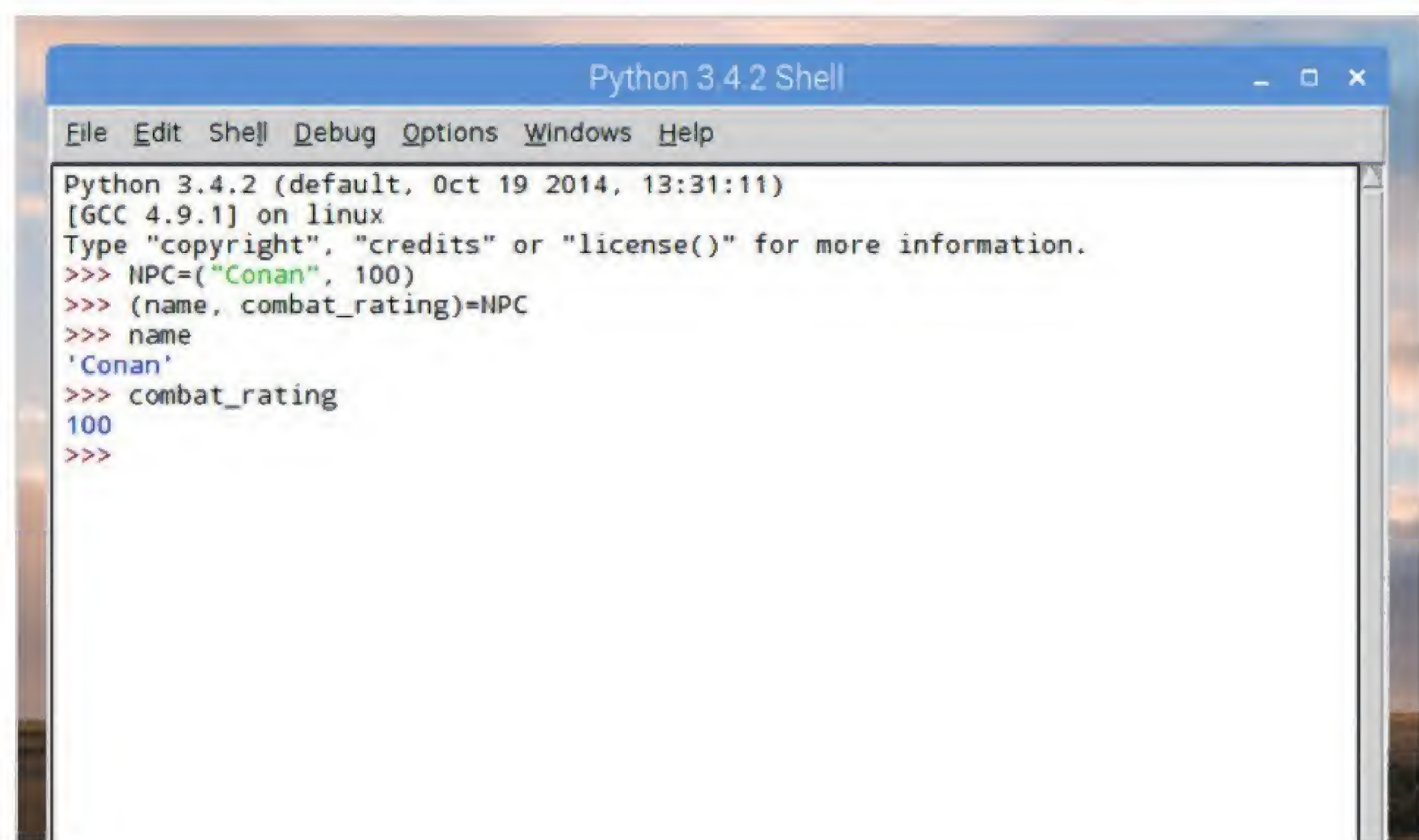


```
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> NPC=("Conan", 100)
>>> |
```

STEP 8 Now unpack the tuple into two corresponding variables:

```
(name, combat_rating)=NPC
```

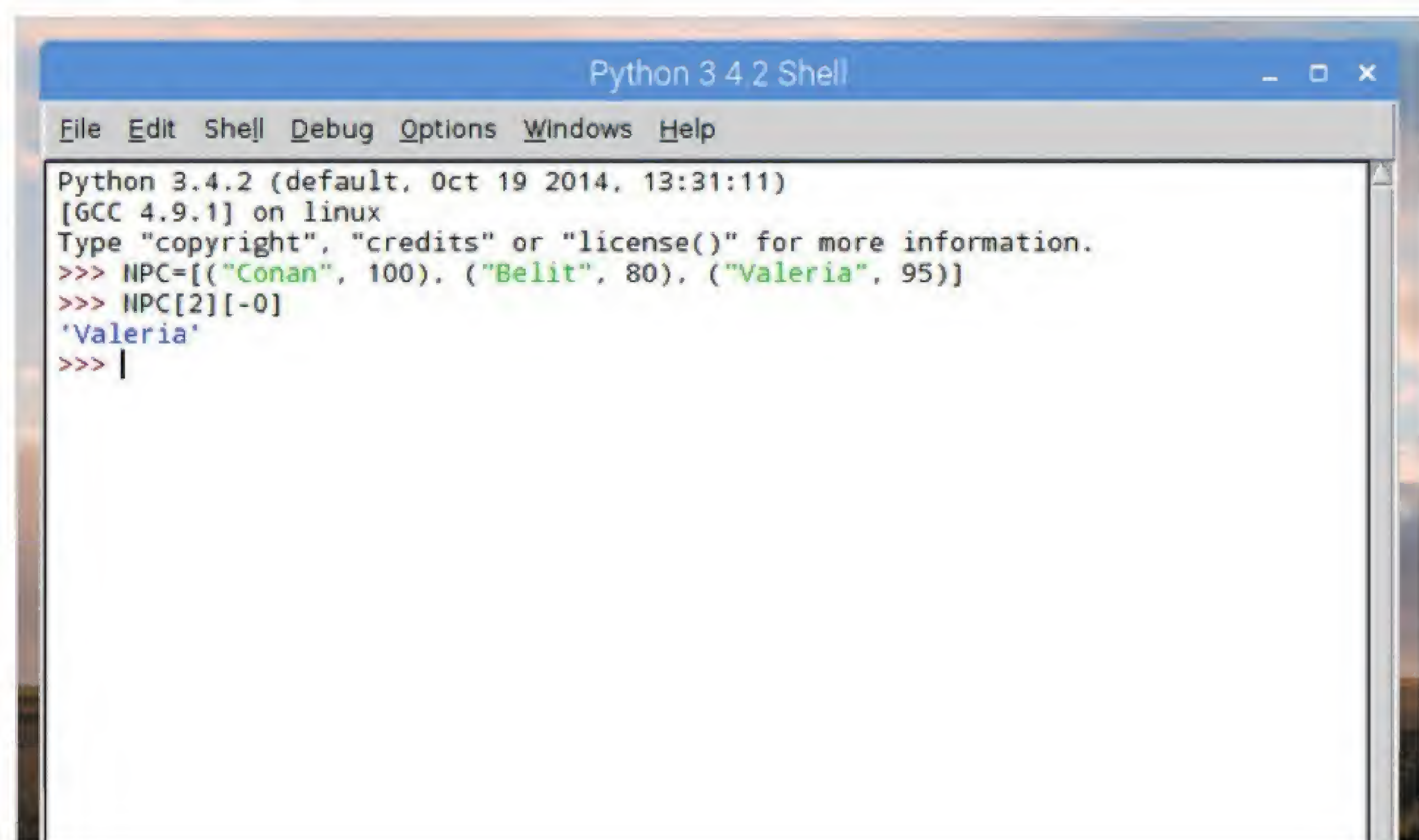
You can now check the values by entering name and combat_rating.



```
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> NPC=("Conan", 100)
>>> (name, combat_rating)=NPC
>>> name
'Conan'
>>> combat_rating
100
>>> |
```

STEP 9 Remember, as with lists, you can also index tuples using negative numbers which count backwards from the end of the data list. For our example, using the tuple with multiple data items, you would reference the Valeria character with:

```
NPC[2][-0]
```



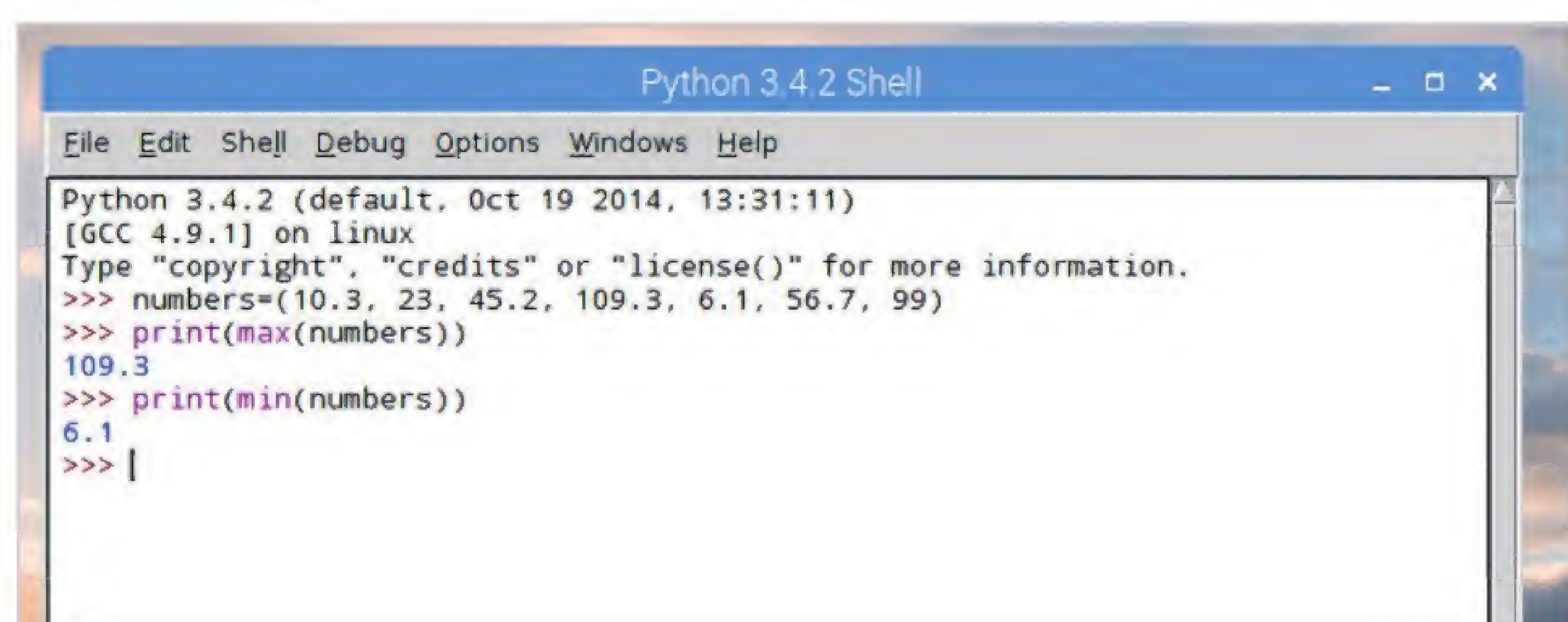
```
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> NPC=[("Conan", 100), ("Belit", 80), ("Valeria", 95)]
>>> NPC[2][-0]
'Valeria'
>>> |
```

STEP 10 You can use the max and min functions to find the highest and lowest values of a tuple composed of numbers. For example:

```
numbers=(10.3, 23, 45.2, 109.3, 6.1, 56.7, 99)
```

The numbers can be integers and floats. To output the highest and lowest, use:

```
print(max(numbers))
print(min(numbers))
```



```
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> numbers=(10.3, 23, 45.2, 109.3, 6.1, 56.7, 99)
>>> print(max(numbers))
109.3
>>> print(min(numbers))
6.1
>>> |
```




Dictionaries

Lists are extremely useful but dictionaries in Python are by far the more technical way of dealing with data items. They can be tricky to get to grips with at first but you'll soon be able to apply them to your own code.

KEY PAIRS

A dictionary is like a list but instead each data item comes as a pair, these are known as Key and Value. The Key part must be unique and can either be a number or string whereas the Value can be any data item you like.

STEP 1

Let's say you want to create a phonebook in Python. You would create the dictionary name and enter the data in curly brackets, separating the key and value by a colon **Key:Value**. For example:

```
phonebook={"Emma": 1234, "Daniel": 3456, "Hannah": 6789}
```

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> phonebook={"Emma": 1234, "Daniel": 3456, "Hannah": 6789}
>>>
```

STEP 3

As with lists and tuples, you can check the contents of a dictionary by giving the dictionary a name: `phonebook`, in this example. This will display the data items you've entered in a similar fashion to a list, which you're no doubt familiar with by now.

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> phonebook={"Emma": 1234, "Daniel": 3456, "Hannah": 6789}
>>> phonebook2={"David": "0987 654 321"}
>>> phonebook
{'Hannah': 6789, 'Emma': 1234, 'Daniel': 3456}
>>>
```

STEP 2

Just as with most lists, tuples and so on, strings need be enclosed in quotes (single or double), whilst integers can be left open. Remember that the value can be either a string or an integer, you just need to enclose the relevant one in quotes:

```
phonebook2={"David": "0987 654 321"}
```

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> phonebook={"Emma": 1234, "Daniel": 3456, "Hannah": 6789}
>>> phonebook2={"David": "0987 654 321"}
>>>
```

STEP 4

The benefit of using a dictionary is that you can enter the key to index the value. Using the `phonebook` example from the previous steps, you can enter:

```
phonebook["Emma"]
phonebook["Hannah"]
```

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> phonebook={"Emma": 1234, "Daniel": 3456, "Hannah": 6789}
>>> phonebook2={"David": "0987 654 321"}
>>> phonebook
{'Hannah': 6789, 'Emma': 1234, 'Daniel': 3456}
>>> phonebook["Emma"]
1234
>>> phonebook["Hannah"]
6789
>>>
```


**STEP 5**

Adding to a dictionary is easy too. You can include a new data item entry by adding the new key and value items like:

```
phonebook["David"] = "0987 654 321"
phonebook
```

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> phonebook={"Emma": 1234, "Daniel": 3456, "Hannah": 6789}
>>> phonebook2={"David": "0987 654 321"}
>>> phonebook
{'Hannah': 6789, 'Emma': 1234, 'Daniel': 3456}
>>> phonebook["Emma"]
1234
>>> phonebook["Hannah"]
6789
>>> phonebook["David"] = "0987 654 321"
>>> phonebook
{'Hannah': 6789, 'Emma': 1234, 'David': '0987 654 321', 'Daniel': 3456}
>>> |
```

STEP 8

Next, you need to define the user inputs and variables: one for the person's name, the other for their phone number (let's keep it simple to avoid lengthy Python code):

```
name=input("Enter name: ")
number=int(input("Enter phone number: "))
```

```
*DictIn.py - /home/pi/Documents/Python Code/DictIn.py (3.4.2)*
File Edit Format Run Options Windows Help
phonebook={}

name=input("Enter name: ")
number=int(input("Enter phone number: "))

|
```

STEP 6

You can also remove items from a dictionary by issuing the del command followed by the item's key; the value will be removed as well, since both work as a pair of data items:

```
del phonebook["David"]
```

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> phonebook={"Emma": 1234, "Daniel": 3456, "Hannah": 6789}
>>> phonebook2={"David": "0987 654 321"}
>>> phonebook
{'Hannah': 6789, 'Emma': 1234, 'Daniel': 3456}
>>> phonebook["Emma"]
1234
>>> phonebook["Hannah"]
6789
>>> phonebook["David"] = "0987 654 321"
>>> phonebook
{'Hannah': 6789, 'Emma': 1234, 'David': '0987 654 321', 'Daniel': 3456}
>>> del phonebook["David"]
>>> phonebook
{'Hannah': 6789, 'Emma': 1234, 'Daniel': 3456}
>>> |
```

STEP 9

Note we've kept the number as an integer instead of a string, even though the value can be both an integer or a string. Now you need to add the user's inputted variables to the newly created blank dictionary. Using the same process as in Step 5, you can enter:

```
phonebook[name] = number
```

```
*DictIn.py - /home/pi/Documents/Python Code/DictIn.py (3.4.2)*
File Edit Format Run Options Windows Help
phonebook={}

name=input("Enter name: ")
number=int(input("Enter phone number: "))

phonebook[name] = number
```

STEP 7

Taking this a step further, how about creating a piece of code that will ask the user for the dictionary key and value items? Create a new Editor instance and start by coding in a new, blank dictionary:

```
phonebook={}

```

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> |
```

STEP 10

Now when you save and execute the code, Python will ask for a name and a number. It will then insert those entries into the phonebook dictionary, which you can test by entering into the Shell:

```
phonebook
phonebook["David"]
```

If the number needs to contain spaces you need to make it a string, so remove the int part of the input.

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> ===== RESTART =====
>>> Enter name: David
>>> Enter phone number: 09876
>>> phonebook
{'David': 9876}
>>> phonebook["David"]
9876
>>> ===== RESTART =====
>>> Enter name:
>>> Enter phone number:
>>> ===== RESTART =====
>>> Enter name: Bob
>>> Enter phone number: 0987 654 3321 3344
>>> phonebook
{'Bob': ['0987 654 3321 3344']}
>>> |
```




Splitting and Joining Strings

When dealing with data in Python, especially from a user's input, you will undoubtedly come across long sets of strings. A useful skill to learn in Python programming is being able to split those long strings for better readability.

STRING THEORIES

You've already looked at some list functions, using `.insert`, `.remove`, and `.pop` but there are also functions that can be applied to strings.

STEP 1 The main tool in the string function arsenal is `.split()`. With it you're able to split apart a string of data, based on the argument within the brackets. For example, here's a string with three items, each separated by a space:

```
text="Daniel Hannah Emma"
```

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> text="Daniel Hannah Emma"
>>>
```

STEP 2 Now let's turn the string into a list and split the content accordingly:

```
names=text.split(" ")
```

Then enter the name of the new list, `names`, to see the three items.

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> text="Daniel Hannah Emma"
>>> names=text.split(" ")
>>> names
['Daniel', 'Hannah', 'Emma']
>>>
```

STEP 3 Note that the `text.split` part has the brackets, quotes, then a space followed by closing quotes and brackets. The space is the separator, indicating that each list item entry is separated by a space. Likewise, CSV (Comma Separated Value) content has a comma, so you'd use:

```
text="January,February,March,April,May,June"
months=text.split(",")
months
```

```
*Python 3.4.2 Shell*
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> text="January,February,March,April,May,June"
>>> months=text.split(",")
>>> months
['January', 'February', 'March', 'April', 'May', 'June']
>>> |
>>>
```

STEP 4 You've previously seen how you can split a string into individual letters as a list, using a name:

```
name=list("David")
name
```

The returned value is `'D', 'a', 'v', 'i', 'd'`. Whilst it may seem a little useless under ordinary circumstances, it could be handy for creating a spelling game for example.

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> name=list("David")
>>> name
['D', 'a', 'v', 'i', 'd']
>>> |
```


**STEP 5**

The opposite of the `.split` function is `.join`, where you will have separate items in a string and can join them all together to form a word or just a combination of items, depending on the program you're writing. For instance:

```
alphabet="".join(["a","b","c","d","e"])
alphabet
```

This will display 'abcde' in the Shell.

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> alphabet="".join(["a","b","c","d","e"])
>>> alphabet
'abcde'
>>>
```

STEP 8

As with the `.split` function, the separator doesn't have to be a space, it can also be a comma, a full stop, a hyphen or whatever you like:

```
colours=["Red", "Green", "Blue"]
col=",".join(colours)
col
```

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> list=["Conan", "raised", "his", "mighty", "sword", "and", "struck", "the", "demon"]
>>> text=" ".join(list)
>>> text
'Conan raised his mighty sword and struck the demon'
>>> colours=["Red", "Green", "Blue"]
>>> col=",".join(colours)
>>> col
'Red,Green,Blue'
>>>
```

STEP 6

You can therefore apply `.join` to the separated name you made in Step 4, combining the letters again to form the name:

```
name="".join(name)
name
```

We've joined the string back together, and retained the list called `name`, passing it through the `.join` function.

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> name=list("David")
>>> name
['D', 'a', 'v', 'i', 'd']
>>> name="".join(name)
>>> name
'David'
>>>
```

STEP 9

There's some interesting functions you apply to a string, such as `.capitalize` and `.title`. For example:

```
title="conan the cimmerian"
title.capitalize()
title.title()
```

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> title="conan the cimmerian"
>>> title.capitalize()
'Conan the cimmerian'
>>> title.title()
'Conan The Cimmerian'
>>>
```

STEP 7

A good example of using the `.join` function is when you have a list of words you want to combine into a sentence:

```
list=["Conan", "raised", "his", "mighty", "sword",
      "and", "struck", "the", "demon"]
text=" ".join(list)
text
```

Note the space between the quotes before the `.join` function (where there were no quotes in Step 6's `.join`).

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> list=["Conan", "raised", "his", "mighty", "sword", "and", "struck", "the", "demon"]
>>> text=" ".join(list)
>>> text
'Conan raised his mighty sword and struck the demon'
>>>
```

STEP 10

You can also use logic operators on strings, with the `'in'` and `'not in'` functions. These enable you to check if a string contains (or does not contain) a sequence of characters:

```
message="Have a nice day"
"nice" in message
"bad" not in message
"day" not in message
"night" in message
```

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> message="Have a nice day"
>>> "nice" in message
True
>>> "bad" not in message
True
>>> "day" not in message
False
>>> "night" in message
False
>>>
```




Formatting Strings

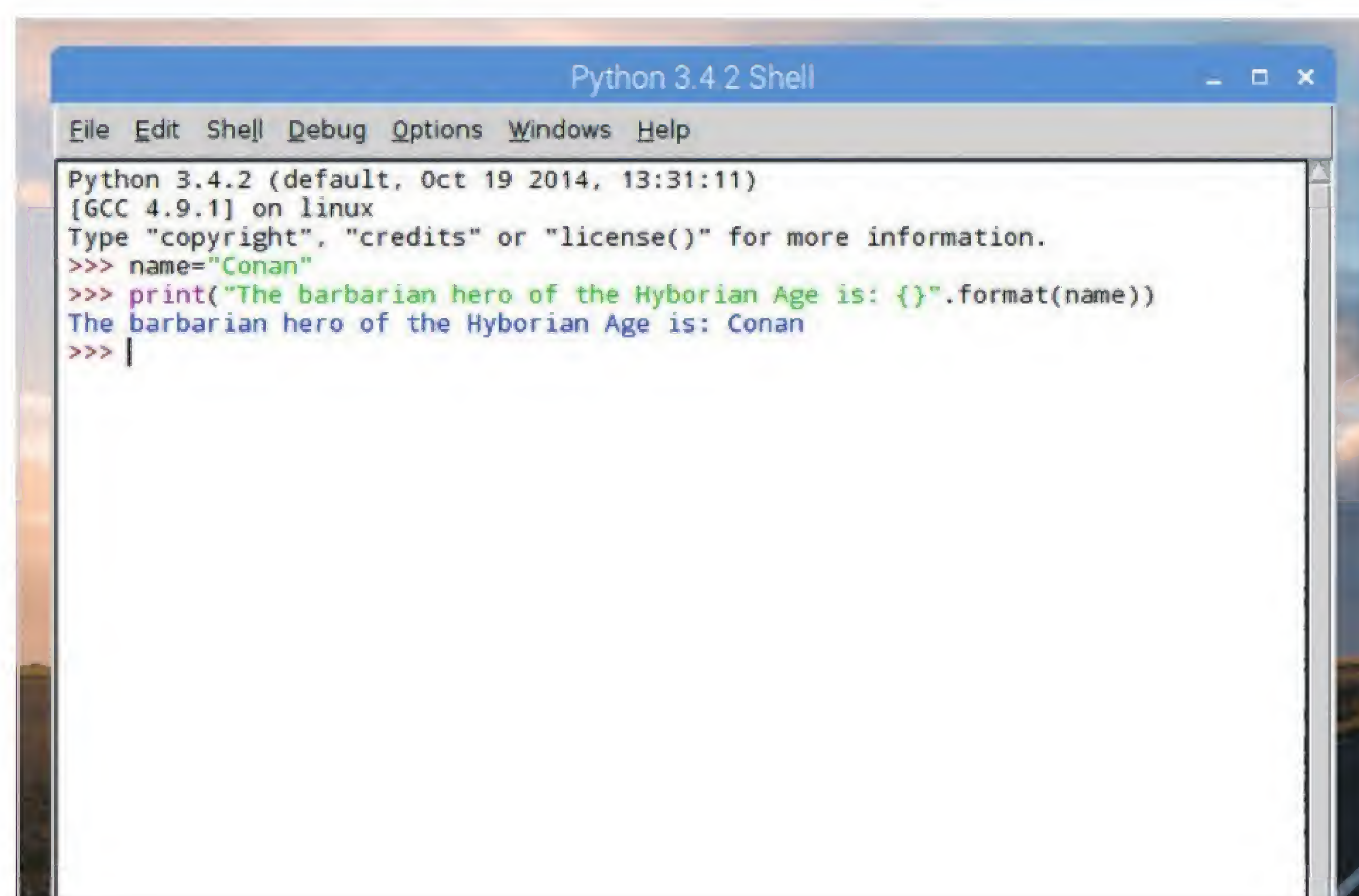
When you work with data, creating lists, dictionaries and objects you may often want to print out the results. Merging strings with data is easy especially with Python 3, as earlier versions of Python tended to complicate matters.

STRING FORMATTING

Since Python 3, string formatting has become a much neater process, using the `.format` function combined with curly brackets. It's a more logical and better formed approach than previous versions.

STEP 1 The basic formatting in Python is to call each variable into the string using the curly brackets:

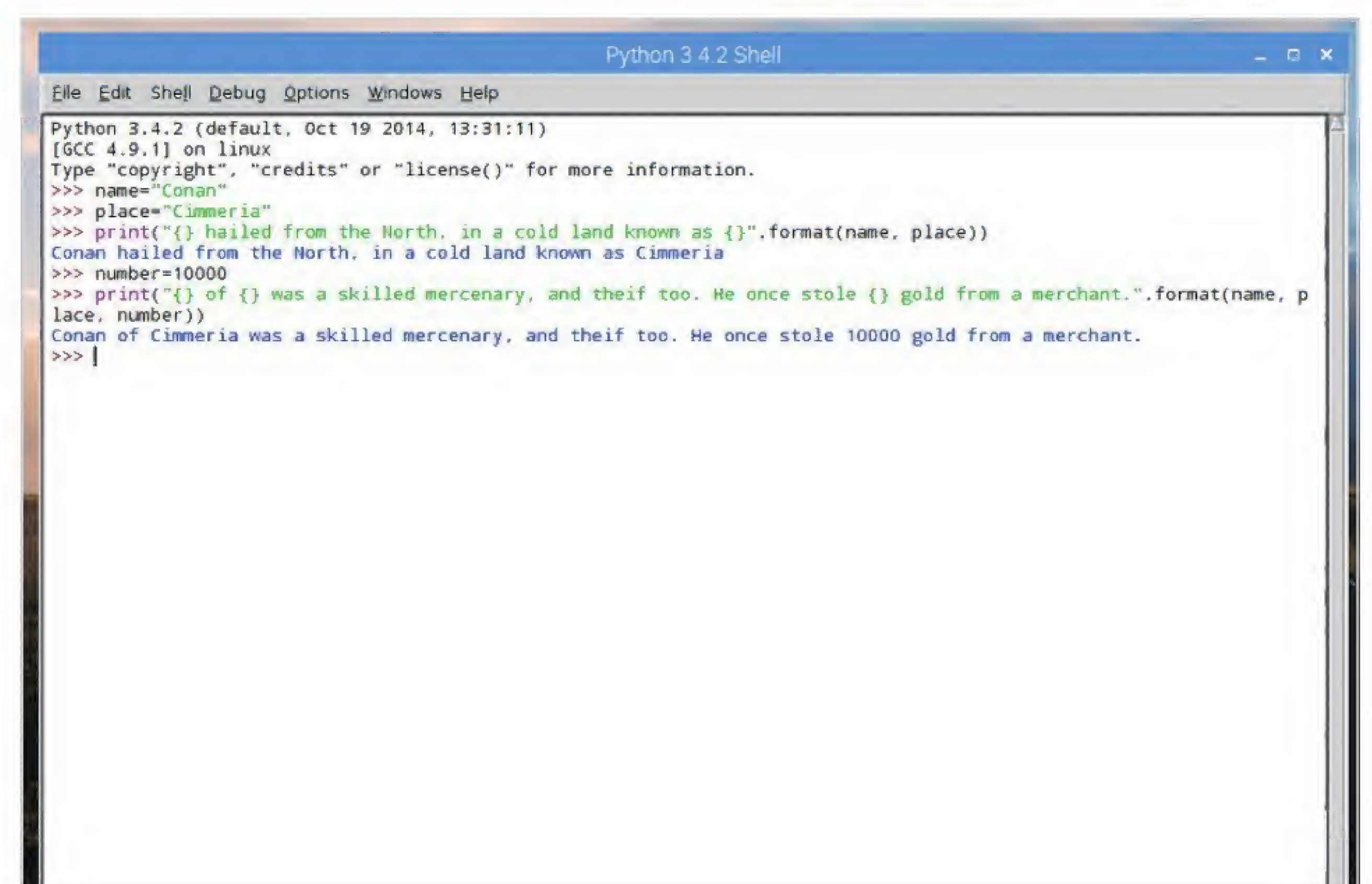
```
name="Conan"
print("The barbarian hero of the Hyborian Age is: {}".format(name))
```



```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> name="Conan"
>>> print("The barbarian hero of the Hyborian Age is: {}".format(name))
The barbarian hero of the Hyborian Age is: Conan
>>> |
```

STEP 3 You can of course also include integers into the mix:

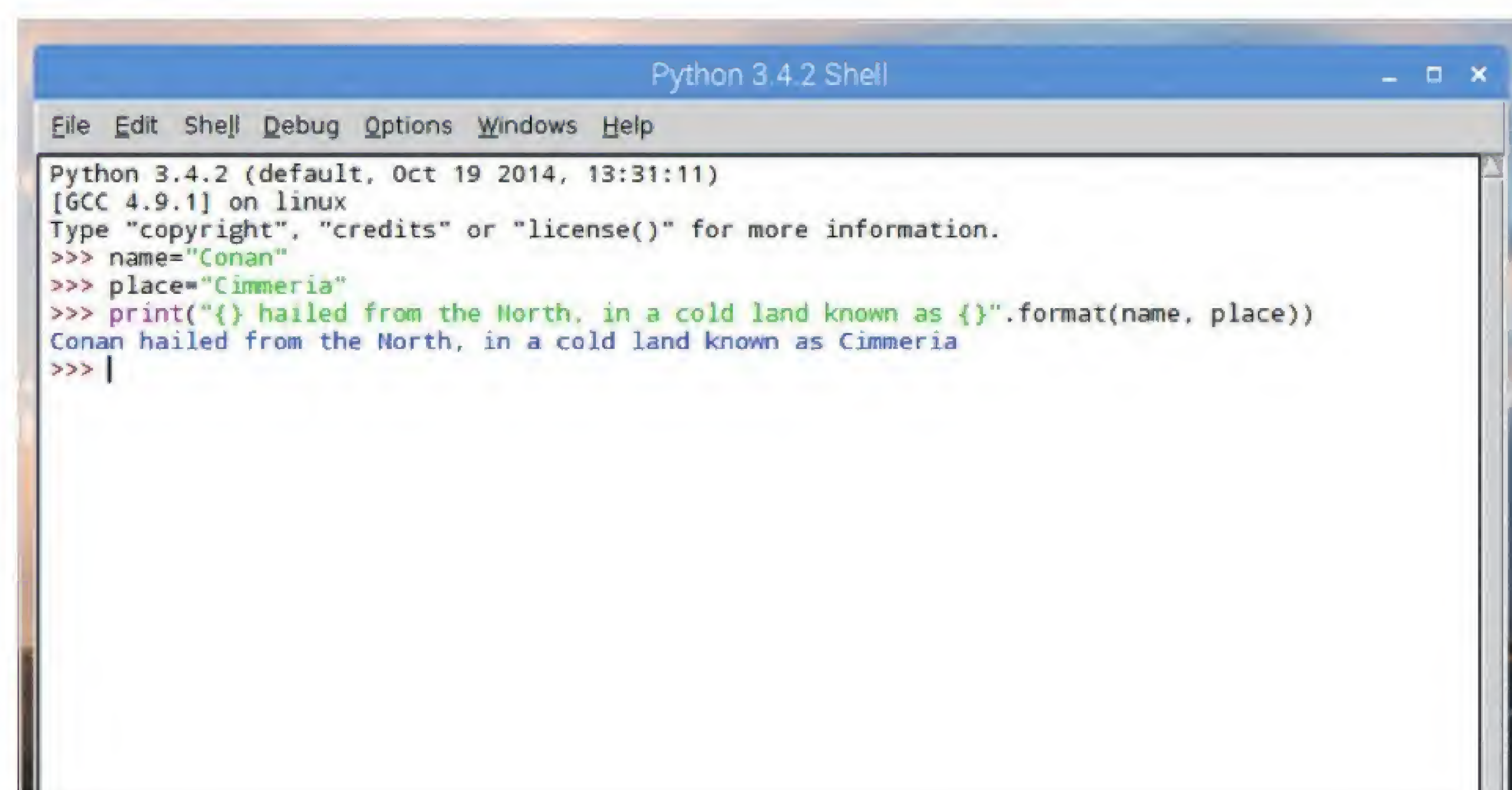
```
number=10000
print("{} of {} was a skilled mercenary,
and thief too. He once stole {} gold from a
merchant.".format(name, place, number))
```



```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> name="Conan"
>>> place="Cimmeria"
>>> print("{} hailed from the North, in a cold land known as {}".format(name, place))
Conan hailed from the North, in a cold land known as Cimmeria
>>> number=10000
>>> print("{} of {} was a skilled mercenary, and thief too. He once stole {} gold from a merchant.".format(name, place, number))
Conan of Cimmeria was a skilled mercenary, and thief too. He once stole 10000 gold from a merchant.
>>> |
```

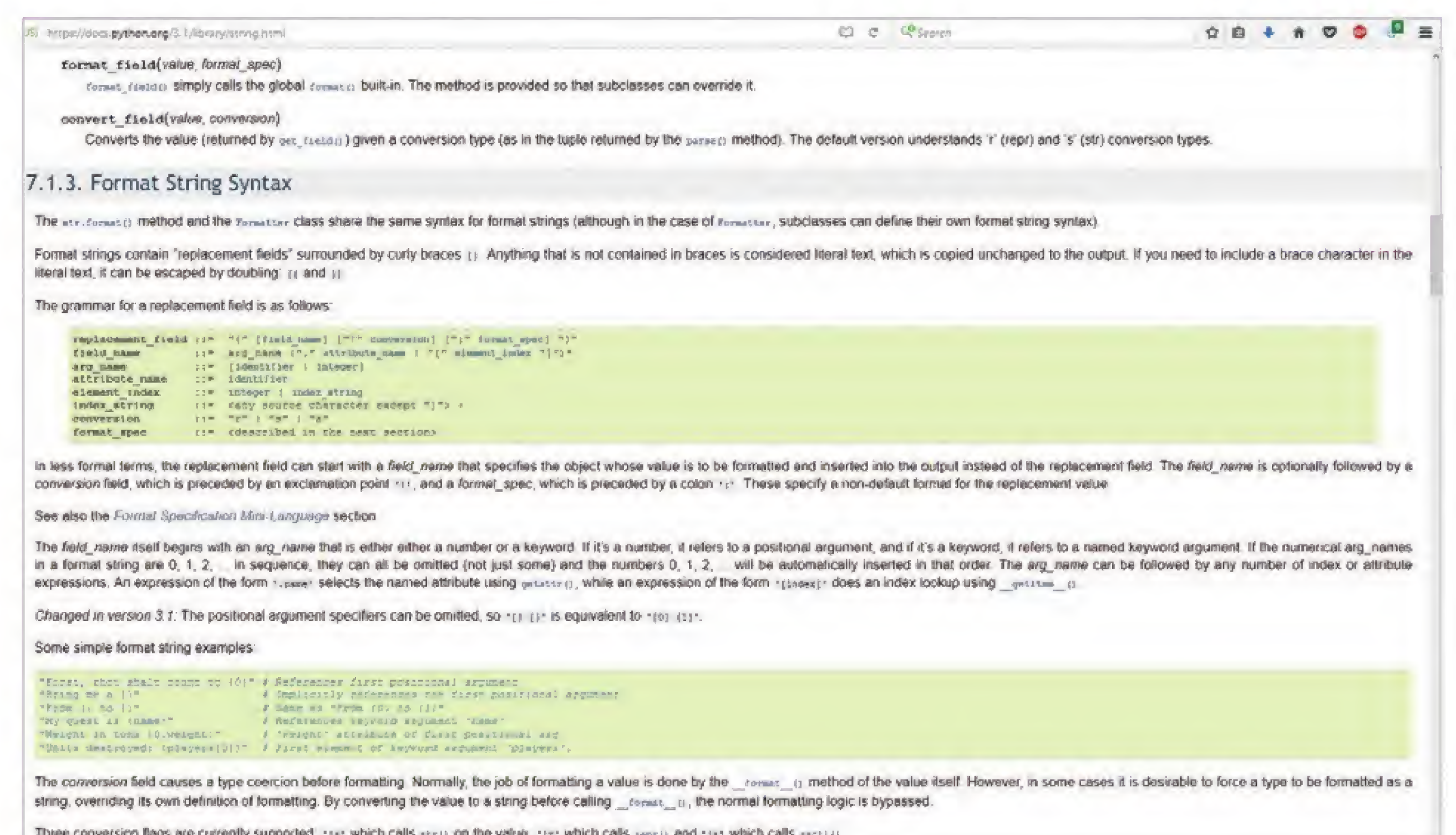
STEP 2 Remember to close the print function with two sets of brackets, as you've encased the variable in one, and the print function in another. You can include multiple cases of string formatting in a single print function:

```
name="Conan"
place="Cimmeria"
print("{} hailed from the North, in a cold land known as {}".format(name, place))
```



```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> name="Conan"
>>> place="Cimmeria"
>>> print("{} hailed from the North, in a cold land known as {}".format(name, place))
Conan hailed from the North, in a cold land known as Cimmeria
>>> |
```

STEP 4 There are many different ways to apply string formatting, some are quite simple, as we've shown you here; others can be significantly more complex. It all depends on what you want from your program. A good place to reference frequently regarding string formatting is the Python Docs webpage, found at www.docs.python.org/3.1/library/string.html. Here, you will find tons of help.



```
Format String Syntax
The str.format() method and the Formatter class share the same syntax (although in the case of Formatter, subclasses can define their own format string syntax).
Format strings contain 'replacement fields' surrounded by curly braces {}. Anything that is not contained in braces is considered literal text, which is copied unchanged to the output. If you need to include a brace character in the literal text, it can be escaped by doubling it.
The grammar for a replacement field is as follows:
replacement_field ::= "{" [field_name] ["!" conversion] [":" format_spec] "}"
field_name ::= [arg_name] [":" attribute_name]
arg_name ::= [0 | 1 | 2 | ...] | {arg_name}
attribute_name ::= [dot] [a-zA-Z_]+
conversion ::= "r" | "s" | "a"
format_spec ::= [":" [0 | 1 | 2 | ...] | [":" [0 | 1 | 2 | ...] ["," [0 | 1 | 2 | ...]] [":" [0 | 1 | 2 | ...]]
In less formal terms, the replacement field can start with a field_name that specifies the object whose value is to be formatted and inserted into the output instead of the replacement field. The field_name is optionally followed by a conversion flag, which is preceded by an exclamation point "!", and a format_spec, which is preceded by a colon ":". These specify a non-default format for the replacement value.
See also the Format Specification Mini-Language section.
The field_name itself begins with an arg_name that is either a number or a keyword. If it's a number, it refers to a positional argument, and if it's a keyword, it refers to a named keyword argument. If the numerical arg_name is in a format string as 0, 1, 2, ... in sequence, they can all be omitted (not just some) and the numbers 0, 1, 2, ... will be automatically inserted in that order. The arg_name can be followed by any number of index or attribute expressions. An expression of the form [dot] [a-zA-Z_]+ selects the named attribute using getattr(), while an expression of the form [0 | 1 | 2 | ...] does an index lookup using __getitem__().
Changed in version 3.1: The positional argument specifiers can be omitted, so "{0}" is equivalent to "{0:0}".
Some simple format string examples:
"First, thou shalt count to {}" # Reference first positional argument
"Sum of {} and {} is {}".format(1,1) # Automatically references two first positional arguments
"Sum of {} and {} is {}".format(1,1) # Same as "Sum of 1 and 1 is 2"
"Hi {}! {} {}!".format("Guido", "Python", "rocks!") # Reference keyword arguments "name" and "language"
"Hello {}! Welcome to {}!".format("Guido", "Python") # Reference attribute of first positional arg
"Hello {}! Welcome to {}!".format("Guido", "Python") # Reference attribute of first positional arg
The conversion flag causes a type coercion before formatting. Normally, the job of formatting a value is done by the __format__() method of the value itself. However, in some cases it is desirable to force a type to be formatted as a string, overriding its own definition of formatting. By converting the value to a string before calling __format__(), the normal formatting logic is bypassed.
Three conversion flags are currently supported: "r" which calls repr() on the value, "s" which calls str() and "a" which calls ascii().
```




STEP 5

Interestingly you can reference a list using the string formatting function. You need to place an asterisk in front of the list name:

```
numbers=1, 3, 45, 567546, 3425346345
print("Some numbers: {}, {}, {}, {}, {}".format(*numbers))
```

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> numbers=1, 3, 45, 567546, 3425346345
>>> print("Some numbers: {}, {}, {}, {}, {}".format(*numbers))
Some numbers: 1, 3, 45, 567546, 3425346345
>>>
```

STEP 8

You can also print out the content of a user's input in the same fashion:

```
name=input("What's your name? ")
print("Hello {}".format(name))
```

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> name=input("What's your name? ")
What's your name? David
Hello David.
>>>
```

```
testnames.py - /home/pi/testnames.py (3.4.2)
File Edit Format Run Options Windows Help
name=input("What's your name? ")
print("Hello {}".format(name))
```

STEP 6

With indexing in lists, the same applies to calling a list using string formatting. You can index each item according to its position (from 0 to however many are present):

```
numbers=1, 4, 7, 9
print("More numbers: {3}, {0}, {2}, {1}.".format(*numbers))
```

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> numbers=1, 4, 7, 9
>>> print("More numbers: {3}, {0}, {2}, {1}.".format(*numbers))
More numbers: 9, 1, 7, 4.
>>>
```

STEP 9

You can extend this simple code example to display the first letter in a person's entered name:

```
name=input("What's your name? ")
print("Hello {}".format(name))
lname=list(name)
print("The first letter of your name is a {}".format(*lname))
```

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> name=input("What's your name? ")
What's your name? David
Hello David.
>>> lname=list(name)
The first letter of your name is a D
>>>
```

```
testnames.py - /home/pi/testnames.py (3.4.2)
File Edit Format Run Options Windows Help
name=input("What's your name? ")
print("Hello {}".format(name))
lname=list(name)
print("The first letter of your name is a {}".format(*lname))
```

STEP 7

And as you probably suspect, you can mix strings and integers in a single list to be called in the .format function:

```
characters=["Conan", "Belit", "Valeria", 19, 27, 20]
print("{0} is {3} years old. Whereas {1} is {4} years old.".format(*characters))
```

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> characters=["Conan", "Belit", "Valeria", 19, 27, 20]
>>> print("{0} is {3} years old. Whereas {1} is {4} years old.".format(*characters))
Conan is 19 years old. Whereas Belit is 27 years old.
>>>
```

STEP 10

You can also call upon a pair of lists and reference them individually within the same print function. Looking back the code from Step 7, you can alter it with:

```
names=["Conan", "Belit", "Valeria"]
ages=[25, 21, 22]
```

Creating two lists. Now you can call each list, and individual items:

```
print("{0[0]} is {1[0]} years old. Whereas {0[1]} is {1[1]} years old.".format(names, ages))
```

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> names=["Conan", "Belit", "Valeria"]
>>> ages=[25, 21, 22]
>>> print("{0[0]} is {1[0]} years old. Whereas {0[1]} is {1[1]} years old.".format(names, ages))
Conan is 25 years old. Whereas Belit is 21 years old.
>>>
```




Date and Time

When working with data it’s often handy to have access to the time. For example, you may want to time-stamp an entry or see at what time a user logged into the system and for how long. Luckily acquiring the date and time is easy, thanks to the Time module.

TIME LORDS

The time module contains functions that help you retrieve the current system time, reads the date from strings, formats the time and date and much more.

STEP 1 First you need to import the time module. It’s one that’s built-in to Python 3 so you shouldn’t need to drop into a command prompt and pip install it. Once it’s imported, you can call the current time and date with a simple command:

```
import time
time.asctime()
```



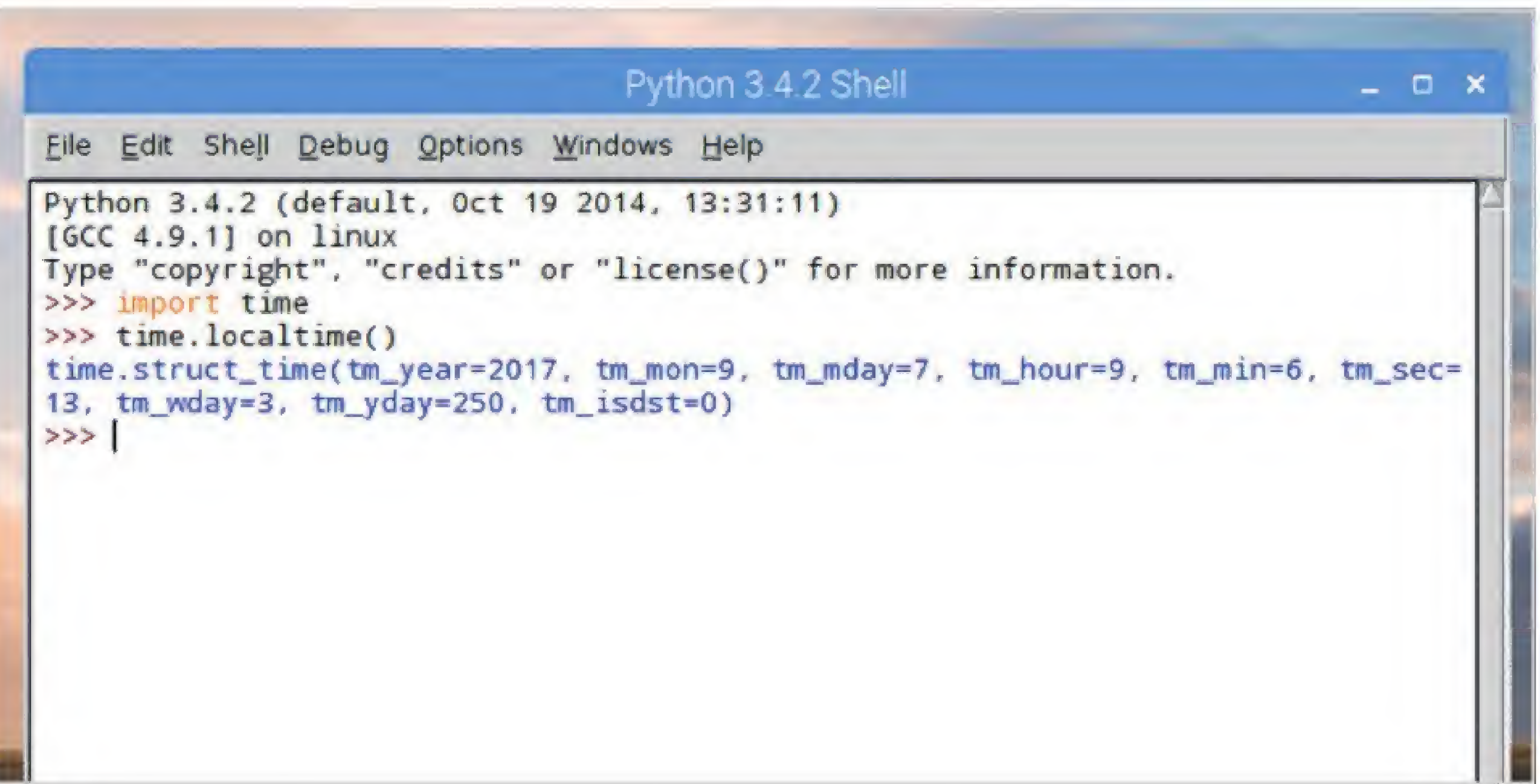
STEP 2 The time function is split into nine tuples, these are divided up into indexed items, as with any other tuple, and shown in the screen shot below.

Index	Field	Values
0	4-digit year	2016
1	Month	1 to 12
2	Day	1 to 31
3	Hour	0 to 23
4	Minute	0 to 59
5	Second	0 to 61 (60 or 61 are leap-seconds)
6	Day of Week	0 to 6 (0 is Monday)
7	Day of year	1 to 366 (Julian day)
8	Daylight savings	-1, 0, 1, -1 means library determines DST

STEP 3 You can see the structure of how time is presented by entering:

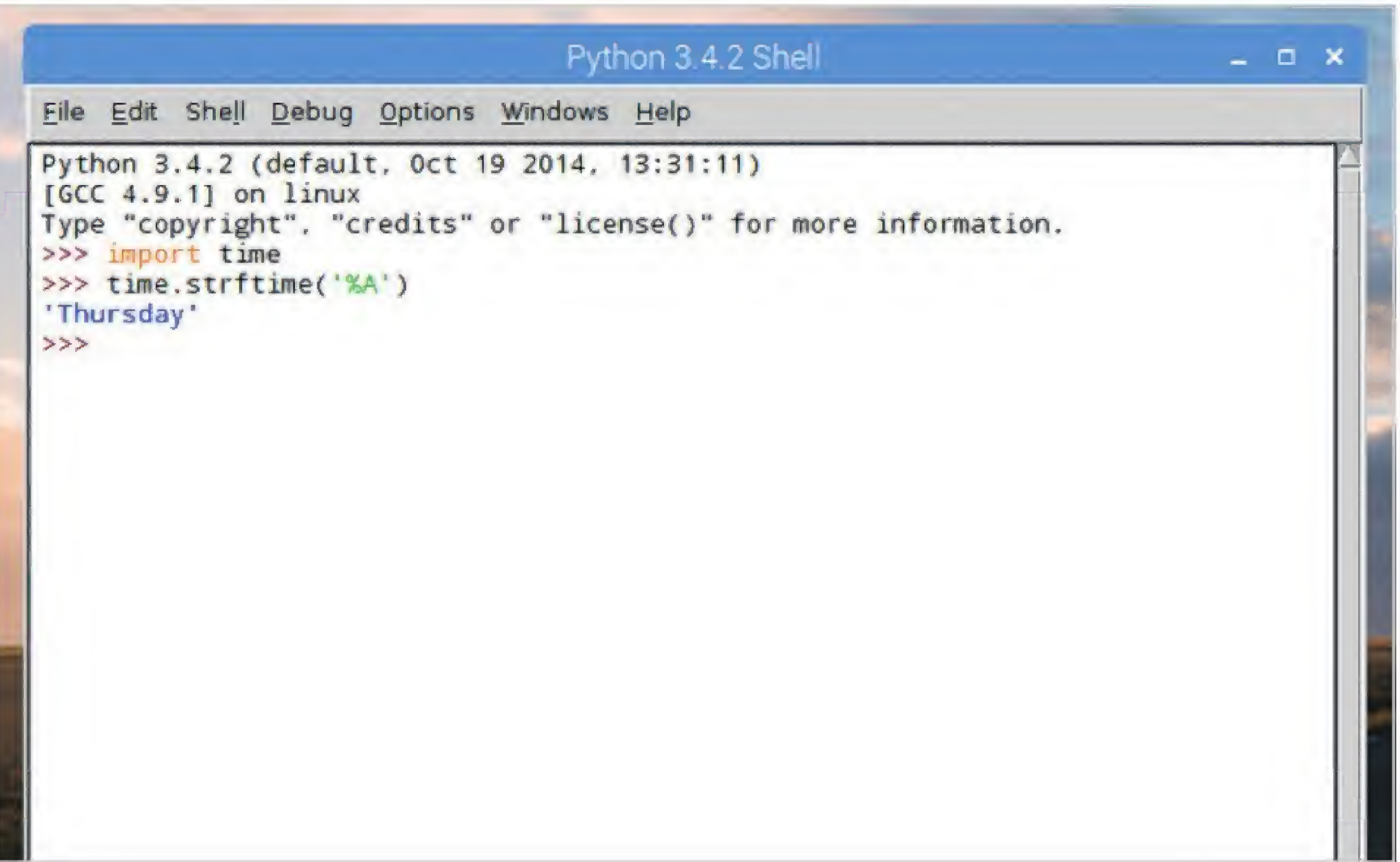
```
time.localtime()
```

The output is displayed as such: ‘time.struct_time(tm_year=2017, tm_mon=9, tm_mday=7, tm_hour=9, tm_min=6, tm_sec=13, tm_wday=3, tm_yday=250, tm_isdst=0)’; obviously dependent on your current time as opposed to the time this book was written.



STEP 4 There are numerous functions built into the time module. One of the most common of these is .strftime(). With it, you’re able to present a wide range of arguments as it converts the time tuple into a string. For example, to display the current day of the week you can use:

```
time.strftime('%A')
```



**STEP 5**

This naturally means you can incorporate various functions into your own code, such as:

```
time.strftime("%a")
time.strftime("%B")
time.strftime("%b")
time.strftime("%H")
time.strftime("%H%M")
```

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> import time
>>> time.strftime("%a")
'Thu'
>>> time.strftime("%B")
'September'
>>> time.strftime("%b")
'Sep'
>>> time.strftime("%H")
'09'
>>> time.strftime("%H%M")
'0941'
>>> |
```

STEP 6

Note the last two entries, with %H and %H%M, as you can see these are the hours and minutes and as the last entry indicates, entering them as %H%M doesn't display the time correctly in the Shell. You can easily rectify this with:

```
time.strftime("%H:%M")
```

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> import time
>>> time.strftime("%a")
'Thu'
>>> time.strftime("%B")
'September'
>>> time.strftime("%b")
'Sep'
>>> time.strftime("%H")
'09'
>>> time.strftime("%H%M")
'0941'
>>> time.strftime("%H:%M")
'09:43'
>>> |
```

STEP 7

This means you're going to be able to display either the current time or the time when something occurred, such as a user entering their name. Try this code in the Editor:

```
import time
name=input("Enter login name: ")
print("Welcome", name, "\n")
print("User:", name, "logged in at", time.
strftime("%H:%M"))
```

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> import time
>>> help(time)
Help on built-in module time:

NAME
time - This module provides various functions to manipulate time values.

DESCRIPTION
There are two standard representations of time. One is the number of seconds since the Epoch, in UTC (a.k.a. GMT). It may be an integer or a floating point number (to represent fractions of seconds). The Epoch is system-defined; on Unix, it is generally January 1st, 1970. The actual value can be retrieved by calling gmtime(0).

The other representation is a tuple of 9 integers giving local time. The tuple items are:
year (including century, e.g. 1998)
month (1-12)
```

STEP 8

You saw at the end of the previous section, in the code to calculate Pi to however many decimal places the users wanted, you can time a particular event in Python. Take the code from above and alter it slightly by including:

```
start_time=time.time()
```

Then there's:

```
endtime=time.time()-start_time
```

```
logintime.py - /home/pi/Documents/Python Code/logintime.py (3.4.2)
File Edit Format Run Options Windows Help
import time
start_time=time.time()
name=input("Enter login name: ")
endtime=time.time()-start_time
print("Welcome", name, "\n")
print("User:", name, "logged in at", time.strftime("%H:%M"))
print("It took", name, endtime, "to login to their account.")
>>> |
```

STEP 9

The output will look similar to the screenshot below. The timer function needs to be either side of the input statement, as that's when the variable name is being created, depending on how long the user took to login. The length of time is then displayed on the last line of the code as the `endtime` variable.

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> ----- RESTART -----
>>> Enter login name: David
Welcome David \n
User: David logged in at 09:52
It took David 5.311823129653931 to login to their account.
>>> |
```

STEP 10

There's a lot that can be done with the time module; some of it is quite complex too, such as displaying the number of seconds since January 1st 1970. If you want to drill down further into the time module, then in the Shell enter: `help(time)` to display the current Python version help file for the time module.

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> import time
>>> help(time)
Help on built-in module time:

NAME
time - This module provides various functions to manipulate time values.

DESCRIPTION
There are two standard representations of time. One is the number of seconds since the Epoch, in UTC (a.k.a. GMT). It may be an integer or a floating point number (to represent fractions of seconds). The Epoch is system-defined; on Unix, it is generally January 1st, 1970. The actual value can be retrieved by calling gmtime(0).

The other representation is a tuple of 9 integers giving local time. The tuple items are:
year (including century, e.g. 1998)
month (1-12)
```




Opening Files

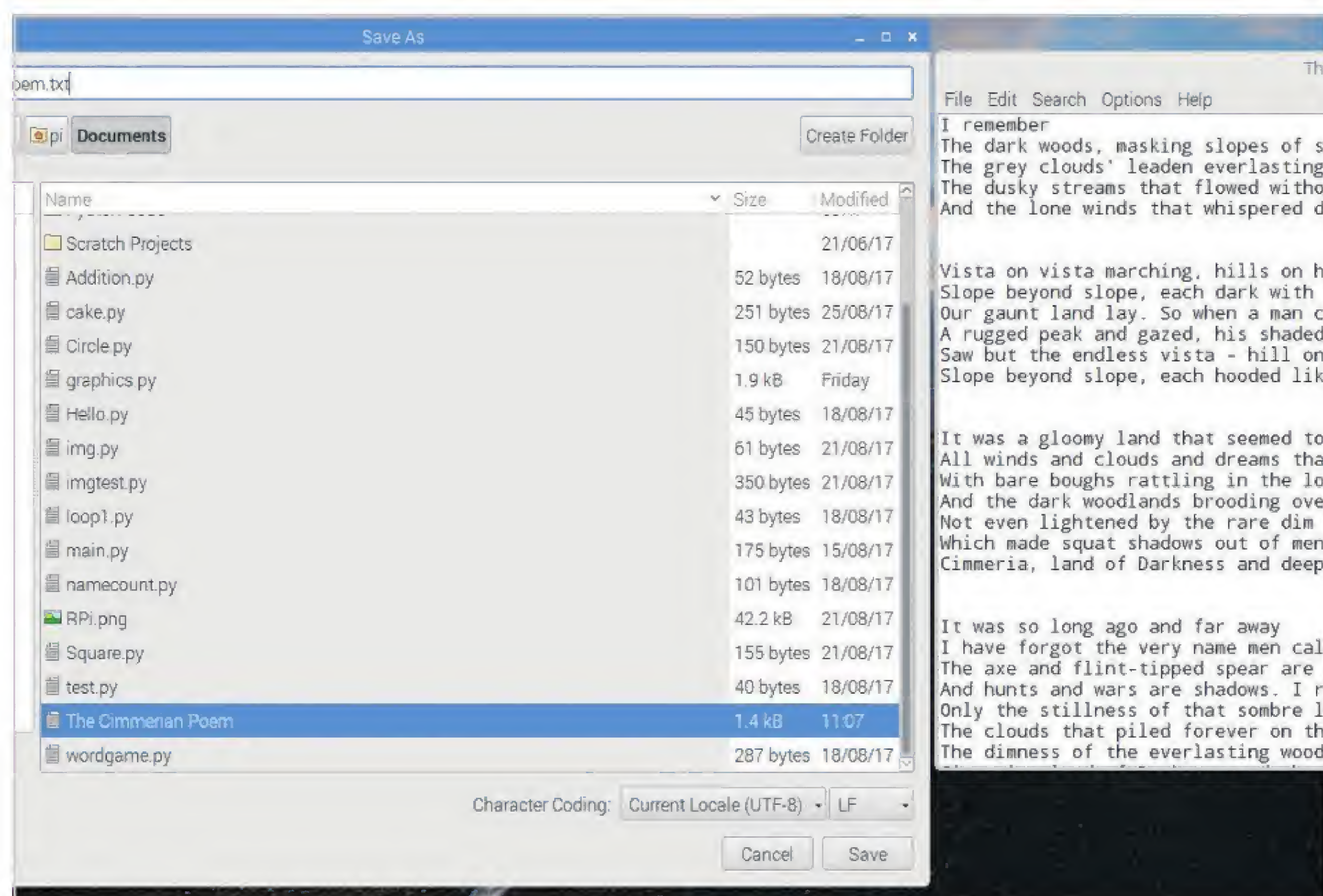
In Python you can read text and binary files in your programs. You can also write to file, which is something we will look at next. Reading and writing to files enables you to output and store data from your programs.

OPEN, READ AND WRITE

In Python you create a file object, similar to creating a variable, only pass in the file using the `open()` function. Files are usually categorised as text or binary.

STEP 1

Start by entering some text into your system's text editor. The text editor is best, not a word processor, as word processors include background formatting and other elements. In our example, we have the poem The Cimmerian, by Robert E Howard. You need to save the file as poem.txt.

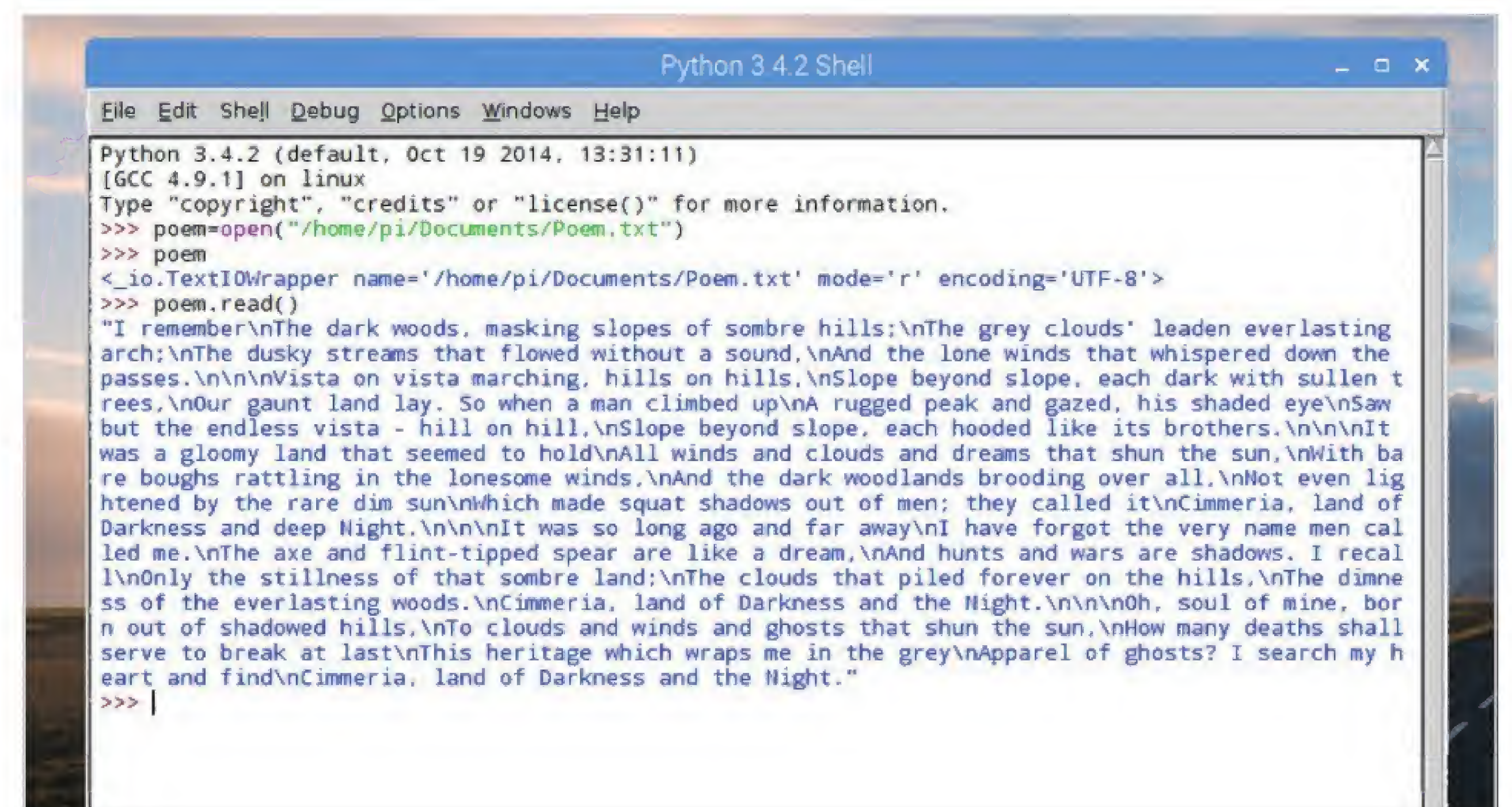


STEP 3

If you now enter poem into the Shell, you will get some information regarding the text file you've just asked to be opened. You can now use the poem variable to read the contents of the file:

```
poem.read()
```

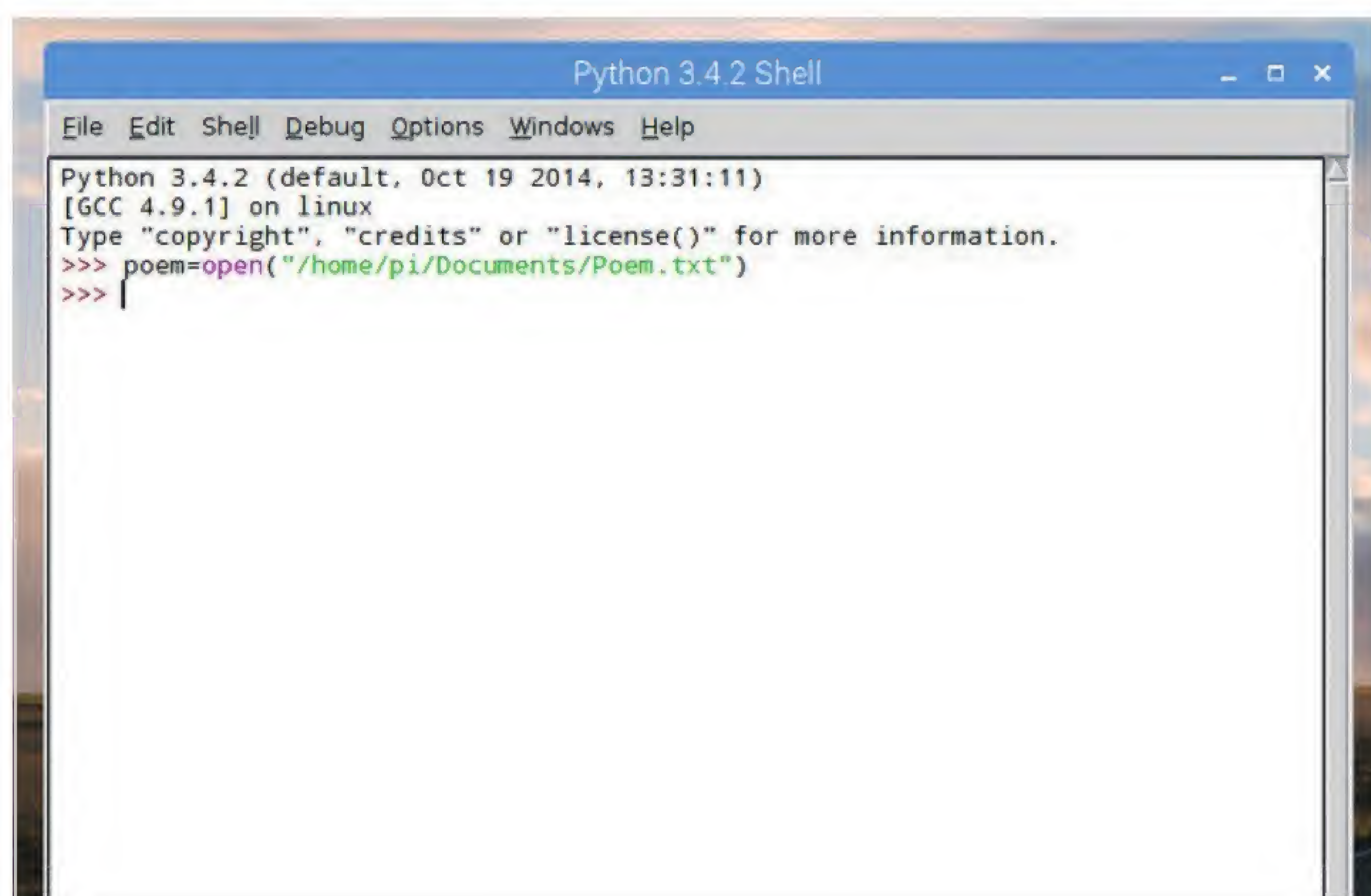
Note that a `/n` entry in the text represents a new line, as you used previously.



STEP 2

You use the `open()` function to pass the file into a variable as an object. You can name the file object anything you like, but you will need to tell Python the name and location of the text file you're opening:

```
poem=open("/home/pi/Documents/Poem.txt")
```

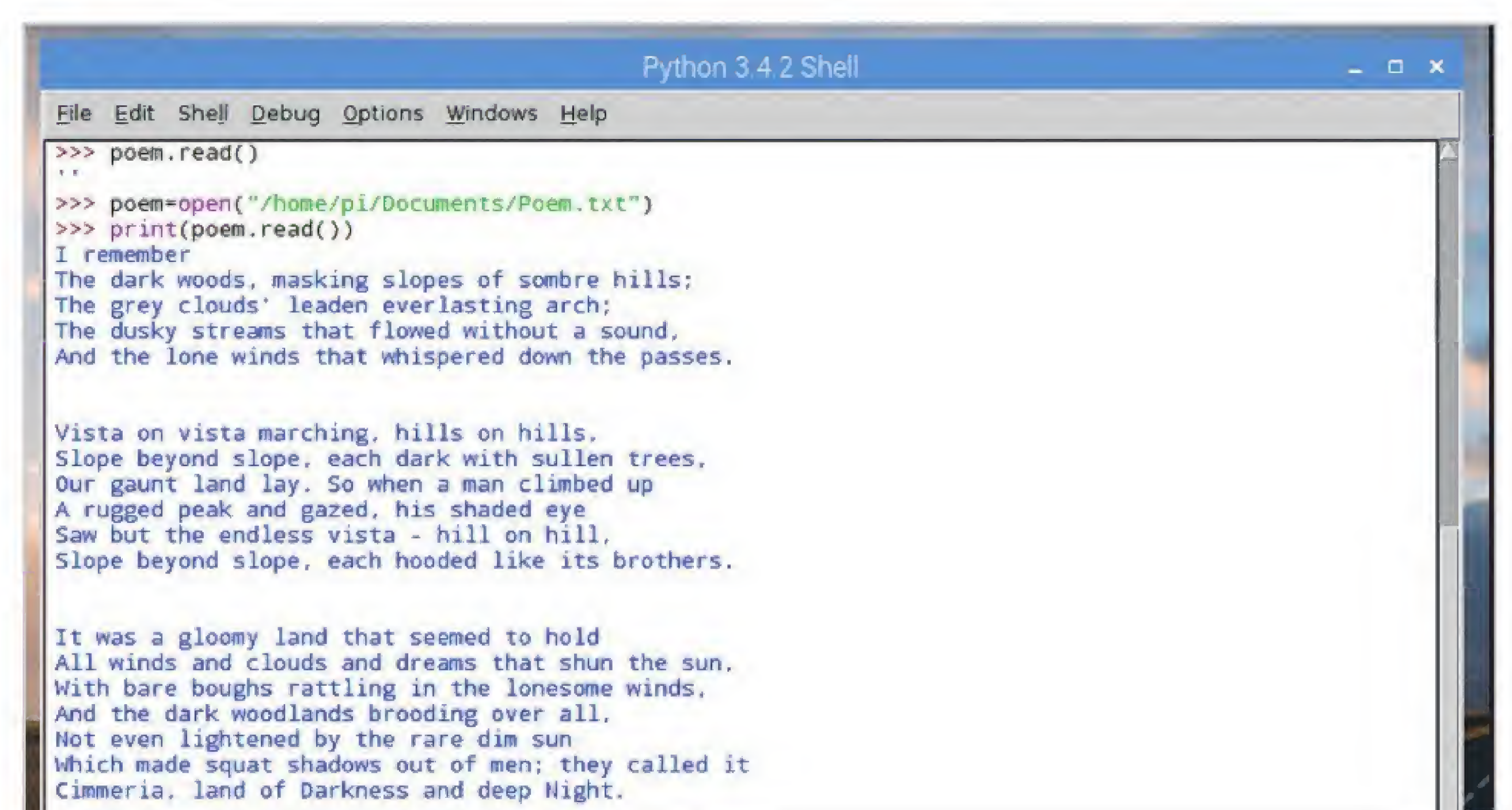


STEP 4

If you enter `poem.read()` a second time you will notice that the text has been removed from the file. You will need to enter: `poem=open("/home/pi/Documents/Poem.txt")` again to recreate the file. This time, however, enter:

```
print(poem.read())
```

This time, the `/n` entries are removed in favour of new lines and readable text.



**STEP 5**

Just as with lists, tuples, dictionaries and so on, you're able to index individual characters of the text. For example:

```
poem.read(5)
```

Displays the first five characters, whilst again entering:

```
poem.read(5)
```

Will display the next five. Entering (1) will display one character at a time.

```
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> poem=open("/home/pi/Documents/Poem.txt")
>>> poem.read(5)
'I rem'
>>> poem.read(5)
'ember'
>>>
```

STEP 6

Similarly, you can display one line of text at a time by using the readline() function. For example:

```
poem=open("/home/pi/Documents/Poem.txt")
poem.readline()
```

Will display the first line of the text with:

```
poem.readline()
```

Displaying the next line of text once more.

```
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> poem=open("/home/pi/Documents/Poem.txt")
>>> poem.readline()
'I remember\n'
>>> poem.readline()
'The dark woods, masking slopes of sombre hills:\n'
>>>
```

STEP 7

You may have guessed that you can pass the readline() function into a variable, thus allowing you to call it again when needed:

```
poem=open("/home/pi/Documents/Poem.txt")
line=poem.readline()
line
```

```
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> poem=open("/home/pi/Documents/Poem.txt")
>>> line=poem.readline()
>>> line
'I remember\n'
>>>
```

STEP 8

Extending this further, you can use readlines() to grab all the lines of the text and store them as multiple lists. These can then be stored as a variable:

```
poem=open("/home/pi/Documents/Poem.txt")
lines=poem.readlines()
lines[0]
lines[1]
lines[2]
```

```
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> poem=open("/home/pi/Documents/Poem.txt")
>>> lines=poem.readlines()
>>> lines[0]
'I remember\n'
>>> lines[1]
'The dark woods, masking slopes of sombre hills:\n'
>>> lines[2]
'The grey clouds' leaden everlasting arch;\n'
>>>
```

STEP 9

You can also use the for statement to read the lines of text back to us:

```
for lines in lines:
    print(lines)
```

Since this is Python, there are other ways to produce the same output:

```
poem=open("/home/pi/Documents/Poem.txt")
for lines in poem:
    print(lines)
```

```
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> poem=open("/home/pi/Documents/Poem.txt")
>>> for lines in poem:
>>>     print(lines)

I remember

The dark woods, masking slopes of sombre hills:

The grey clouds' leaden everlasting arch:

```

STEP 10

Let's imagine that you want to print the text one character at a time, like an old dot matrix printer would. You can use the time module mixed with what you've looked at here. Try this:

```
import time
poem=open("/home/pi/Documents/Poem.txt")
lines=poem.read()
for lines in lines:
    print(lines, end="")
    time.sleep(.15)
```

The output is fun to view, and easily incorporated into your own code.

```
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> import time
>>> poem=open("/home/pi/Documents/Poem.txt")
>>> lines=poem.read()
>>> for lines in lines:
>>>     print(lines, end="")
>>>     time.sleep(.15)

I remember
The dark woods, masking slopes of sombre hills:
The grey clouds' leaden everlasting arch:

```




Writing to Files

The ability to read external files within Python is certainly handy but writing to a file is better still. Using the `write()` function, you're able to output the results of a program to a file, that you can then `read()` back into Python.

WRITE AND CLOSE

The `write()` function is slightly more complex than `read()`. Along with the filename you must also include an access mode which determines whether the file in question is in read or write mode.

STEP 1 Start by opening IDLE and enter the following:

```
t=open("/home/pi/Documents/text.txt", "w")
```

Change the destination from `/home/pi/Documents` to your own system. This code will create a text file called `text.txt` in write mode using the variable `t`. If there's no file of that name in the location, it will create one. If one already exists, it will overwrite it, so be careful.

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> t=open("/home/pi/Documents/text.txt", "w")
>>>
```

STEP 3 However, the actual text file is still blank (you can check by opening it up). This is because you've written the line of text to the file object but not committed it to the file itself. Part of the `write()` function is that you need to commit the changes to the file; you can do this by entering:

```
t.close()
```

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> t=open("/home/pi/Documents/text.txt", "w")
>>> t.write("You awake in a small, square room. A single table stands to one side, there is a locked door in front of you.")
109
>>> t.close()
>>>
```

STEP 2 You can now write to the text file using the `write()` function. This works opposite to `read()`, writing lines instead of reading them. Try this:

```
t.write("You awake in a small, square room. A single table stands to one side, there is a locked door in front of you.")
```

Note the 109. It's the number of characters you've entered.

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> t=open("/home/pi/Documents/text.txt", "w")
>>> t.write("You awake in a small, square room. A single table stands to one side, there is a locked door in front of you.")
109
>>>
```

STEP 4 If you now open the text file with a text editor, you can see that the line you created has been written to the file. This gives us the foundation for some interesting possibilities: perhaps the creation of your own log file or even the beginning of an adventure game.

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> t=open("/home/pi/Documents/text.txt", "w")
>>> t.write("You awake in a small, square room. A single table stands to one side, there is a locked door in front of you.")
109
>>> t.close()
>>>
```

```
File Edit Search Options Help
You awake in a small, square r
there is a locked door in fron
```


**STEP 5**

To expand this code, you can reopen the file using 'a', for access or append mode. This will add any text at the end of the original line instead of wiping the file and creating a new one. For example:

```
t=open("/home/pi/Documents/text.txt","a")
t.write("\n")
t.write(" You stand and survey your surroundings.
On top of the table is some meat, and a cup of
water.\n")
```

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> t=open("/home/pi/Documents/text.txt","a")
>>> t.write("\n")
1
>>> t.write(" You stand and survey your surroundings. On top of the table is some
meat, and a cup of water.\n")
94
>>>
```

STEP 6

You can keep extending the text line by line, ending each with a new line (\n). When you're done, finish the code with t.close() and open the file in a text editor to see the results:

```
t.write("The door is made of solid oak with iron
strips. It's bolted from the outside, locking you
in. You are a prisoner!\n")
t.close()
```

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> t=open("/home/pi/Documents/text.txt","a")
>>> t.write("\n")
1
>>> t.write(" You stand and survey your surroundings. On top of the table is some
meat, and a cup of water.\n")
94
>>> t.write("The door is made of solid oak with iron strips. It's bolted from the
outside, locking you in. You are a prisoner!\n")
110
>>> t.close()
>>>
```

```
Text.txt
You awake in a small, square room. A single table stands to one side,
there is a locked door in front of you.

You stand and survey your surroundings. On top of the table is some
meat, and a cup of water.

The door is made of solid oak with iron strips. It's bolted from the
outside, locking you in. You are a prisoner!
```

STEP 7

There are various types of file access to consider using the open() function. Each depends on how the file is accessed and even the position of the cursor. For example, r+ opens a file in read and write and places the cursor at the start of the file.

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> t=open("/home/pi/Documents/text.txt","r+")
>>> t.write("Adventure Game!\n\n")
17
>>> t.close()
>>>
```

```
Text.txt
Adventure Game!

You awake in a small, square room. A single table stands to one side,
there is a locked door in front of you.

You stand and survey your surroundings. On top of the table is some
meat, and a cup of water.

The door is made of solid oak with iron strips. It's bolted from the
outside, locking you in. You are a prisoner!
```

STEP 8

You can pass variables to a file that you've created in Python. Perhaps you want the value of Pi to be written to a file. You can call Pi from the math module, create a new file and pass the output of Pi into the new file:

```
import math
print("Value of Pi is: ",math.pi)
print("\nWriting to a file now...")
```

```
*writepitofile.py - /home/pi/Documents/Python Code/writepitofile.py (3.4.2)*
File Edit Format Run Options Windows Help
import math
print("Value of Pi is: ",math.pi)
print("\nWriting to a file now...")
```

STEP 9

Now let's create a variable called pi and assign it the value of Pi:

```
pi=math.pi
```

You also need to create a new file in which to write Pi to:

```
t=open("/home/pi/Documents/pi.txt","w")
```

Remember to change your file location to your own particular system setup.

```
*writepitofile.py - /home/pi/Documents/Python Code/writepitofile.py (3.4.2)*
File Edit Format Run Options Windows Help
import math
print("Value of Pi is: ",math.pi)
print("\nWriting to a file now...")
pi=math.pi
t=open("/home/pi/Documents/pi.txt","w")
```

STEP 10

To finish, you can use string formatting to call the variable and write it to the file, then commit the changes and close the file:

```
t.write("Value of Pi is: {}".format(pi))
t.close()
```

You can see from the results that you're able to pass any variable to a file.

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> import math
>>> print("Value of Pi is: ",math.pi)
Value of Pi is: 3.141592653589793
>>> print("\nWriting to a file now...")
Writing to a file now...
>>> pi=math.pi
>>> t=open("/home/pi/Documents/pi.txt","w")
>>> t.write("Value of Pi is: {}".format(pi))
>>> t.close()

*pi.txt
File Edit Search Options Help
Value of Pi is: 3.141592653589793
```



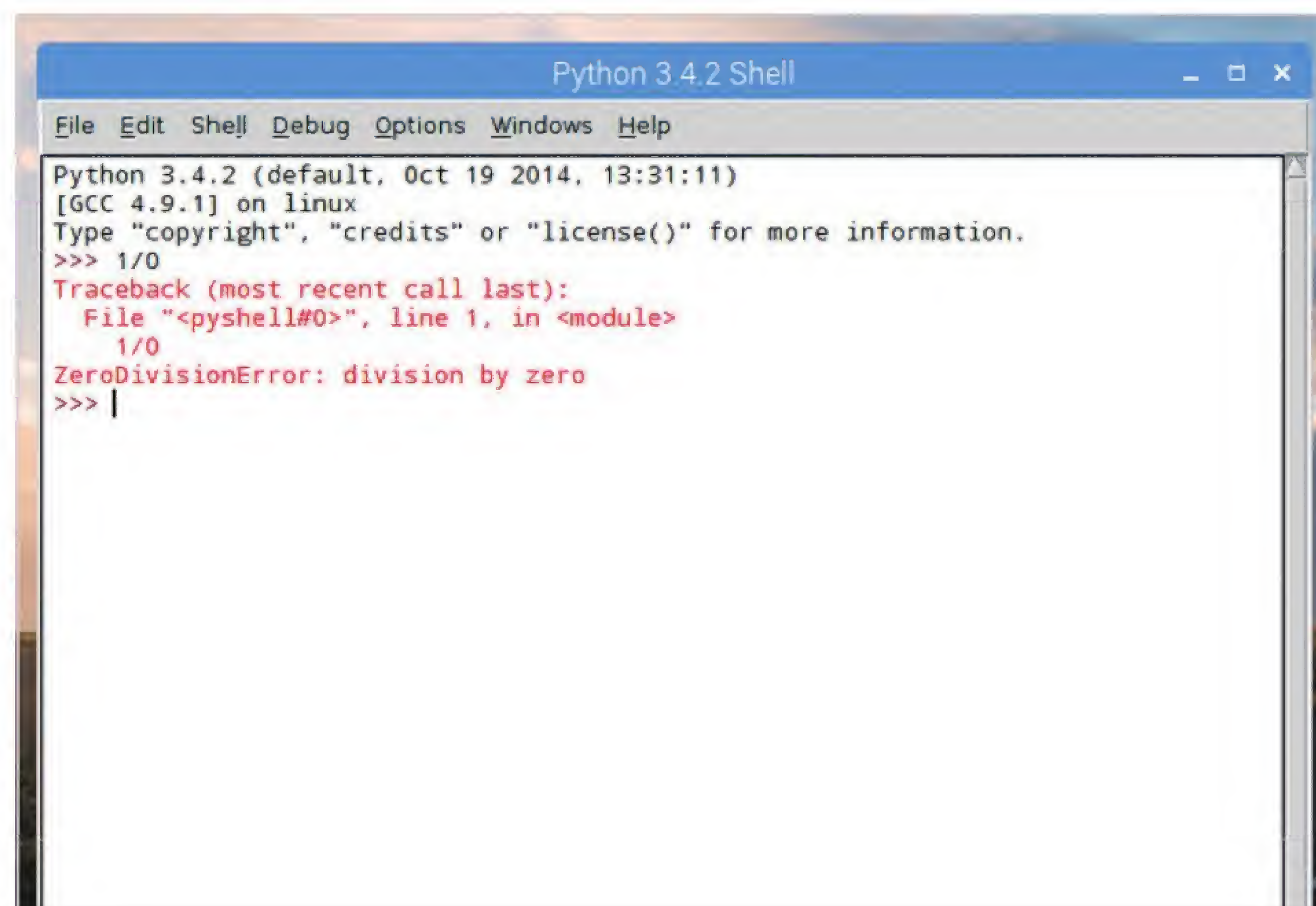

Exceptions

When coding, you'll naturally come across some issues that are out of your control. Let's assume you ask a user to divide two numbers and they try to divide by zero. This will create an error and break your code.

EXCEPTIONAL OBJECTS

Rather than stop the flow of your code, Python includes exception objects which handle unexpected errors in the code. You can combat errors by creating conditions where exceptions may occur.

STEP 1 You can create an exception error by simply trying to divide a number by zero. This will report back with the ZeroDivisionError: Division by zero message, as seen in the screenshot. The ZeroDivisionError part is the exception class, of which there are many.

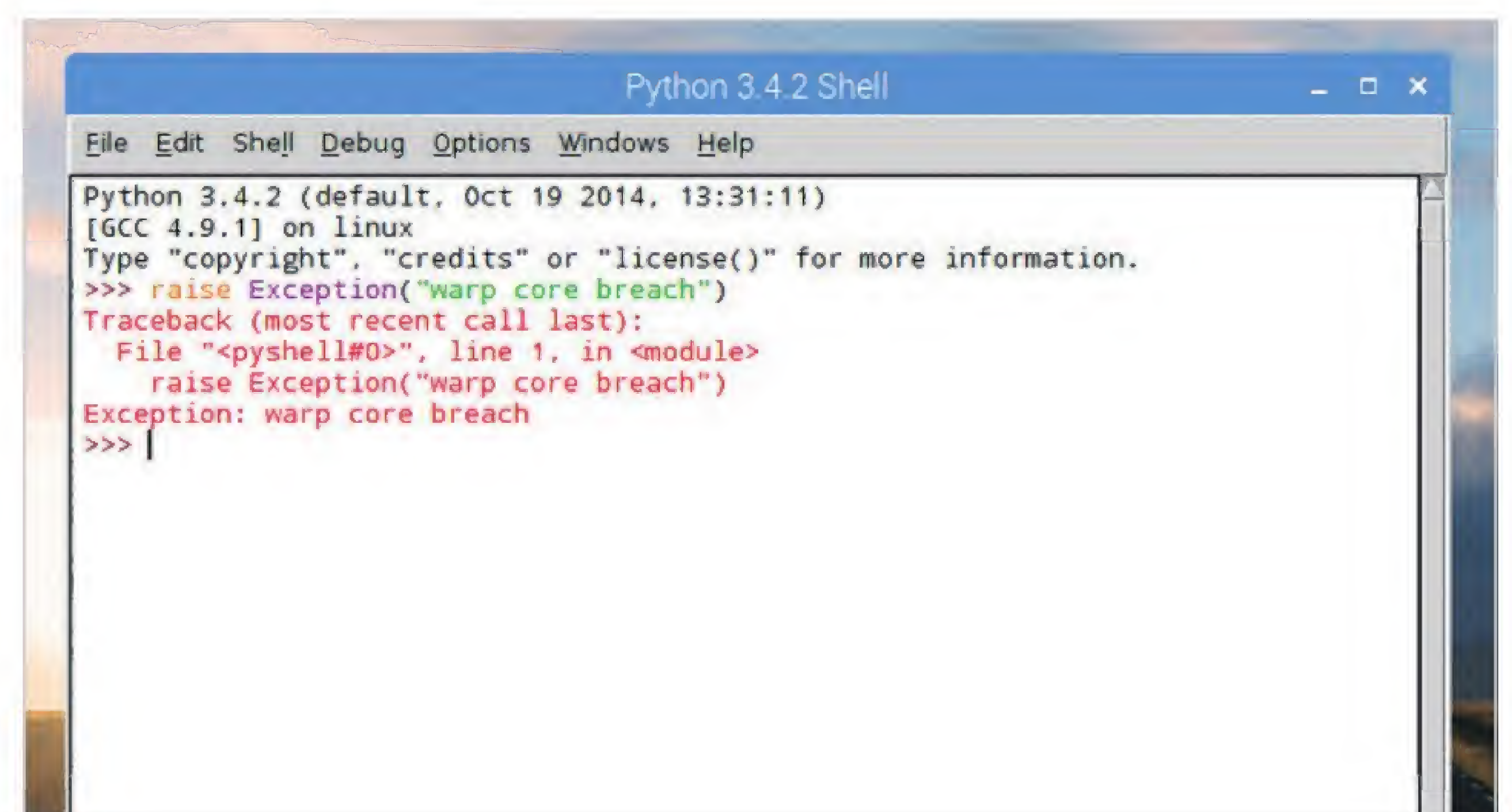


STEP 2 Most exceptions are raised automatically when Python comes across something that's inherently wrong with the code. However, you can create your own exceptions that are designed to contain the potential error and react to it, as opposed to letting the code fail.

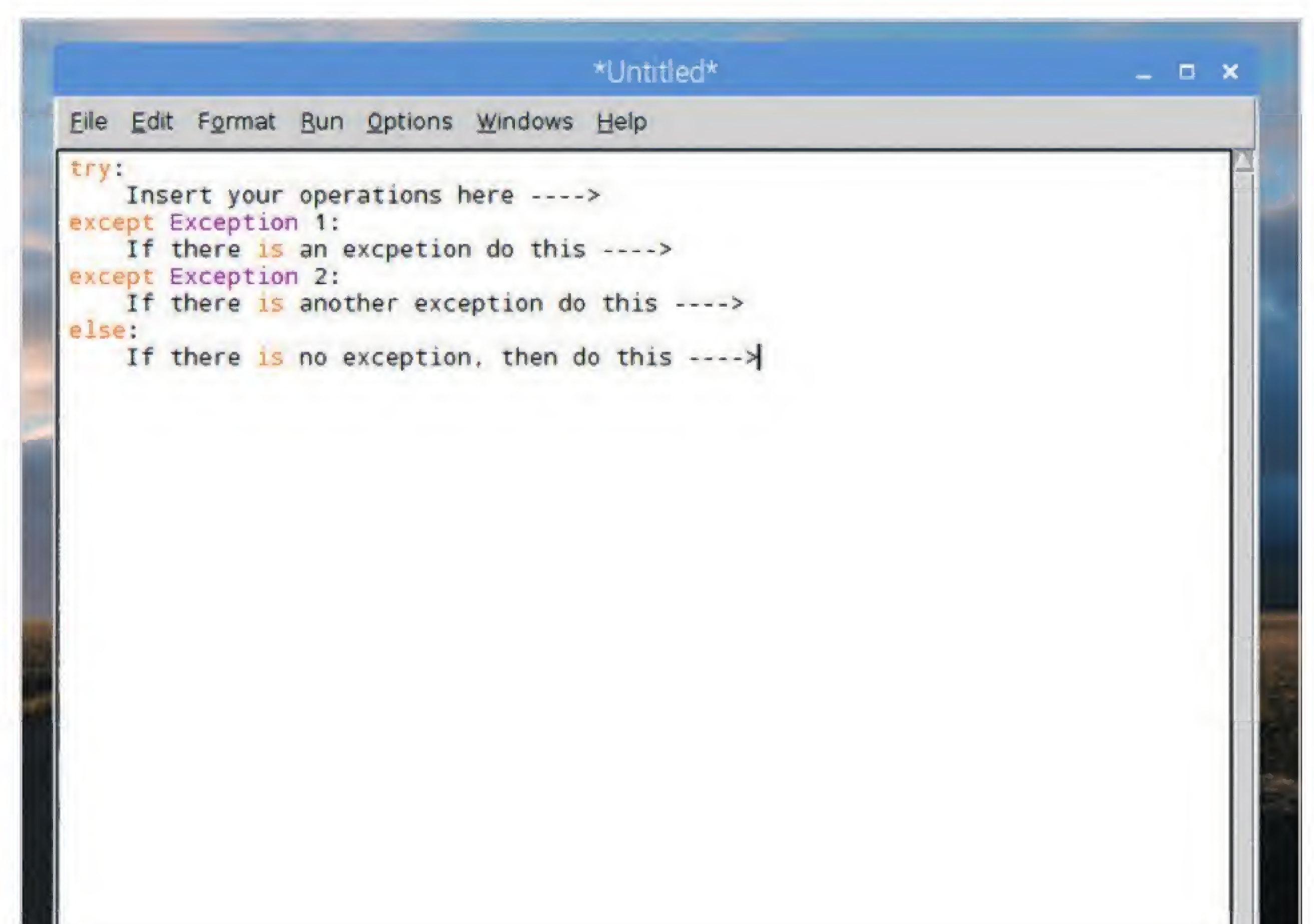


STEP 3 You can use the functions raise exception to create our own error handling code within Python. Let's assume your code has you warping around the cosmos, too much however results in a warp core breach. To stop the game from exiting due to the warp core going supernova, you can create a custom exception:

`raise Exception("warp core breach")`



STEP 4 To trap any errors in the code you can encase the potential error within a try: block. This block consists of try, except, else, where the code is held within try:, then if there's an exception do something, else do something else.

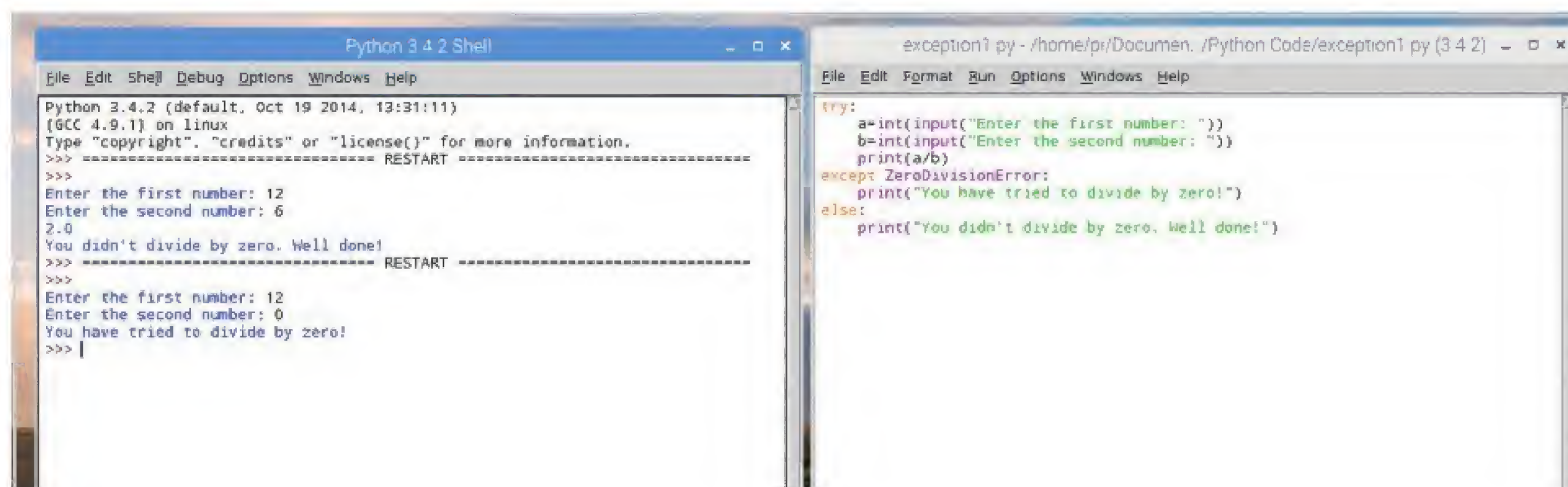




STEP 5

For example, use the divide by zero error. You can create an exception where the code can handle the error without Python quitting due to the problem:

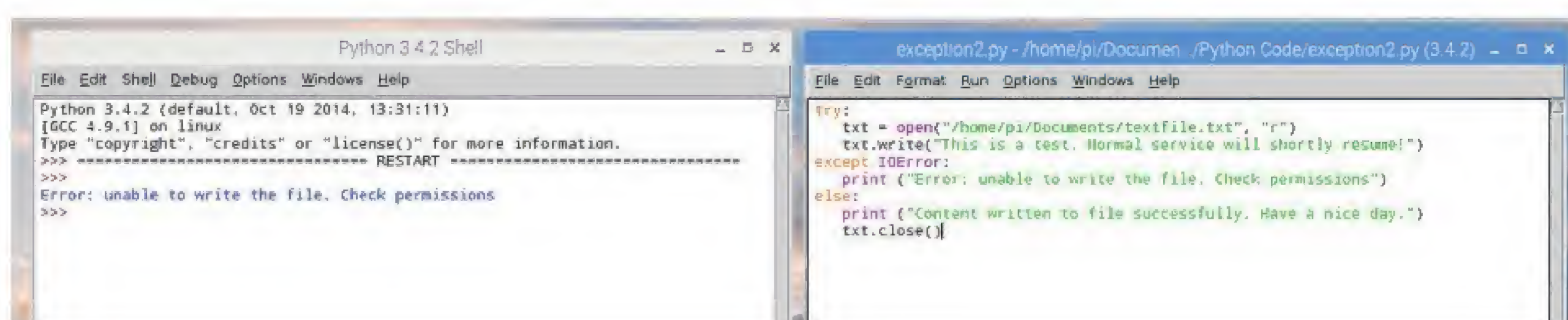
```
try:
    a=int(input("Enter the first number: "))
    b=int(input("Enter the second number: "))
    print(a/b)
except ZeroDivisionError:
    print("You have tried to divide by zero!")
else:
    print("You didn't divide by zero. Well done!")
```



STEP 6

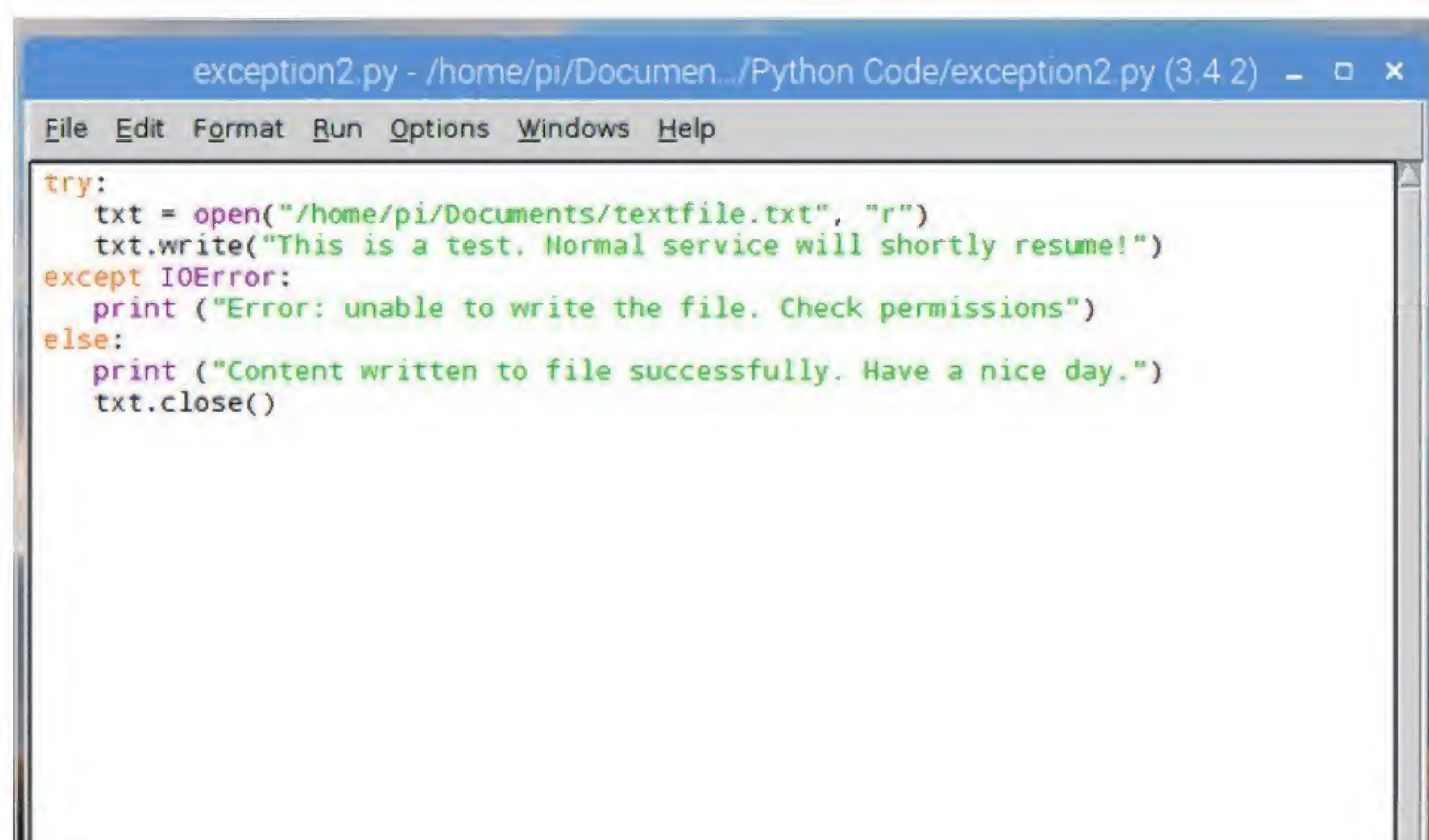
You can use exceptions to handle a variety of useful tasks. Using an example from our previous tutorials, let's assume you want to open a file and write to it:

```
try:
    txt = open("/home/pi/Documents/textfile.txt", "r")
    txt.write("This is a test. Normal service will shortly resume!")
except IOError:
    print("Error: unable to write the file. Check permissions")
else:
    print("Content written to file successfully. Have a nice day.")
    txt.close()
```



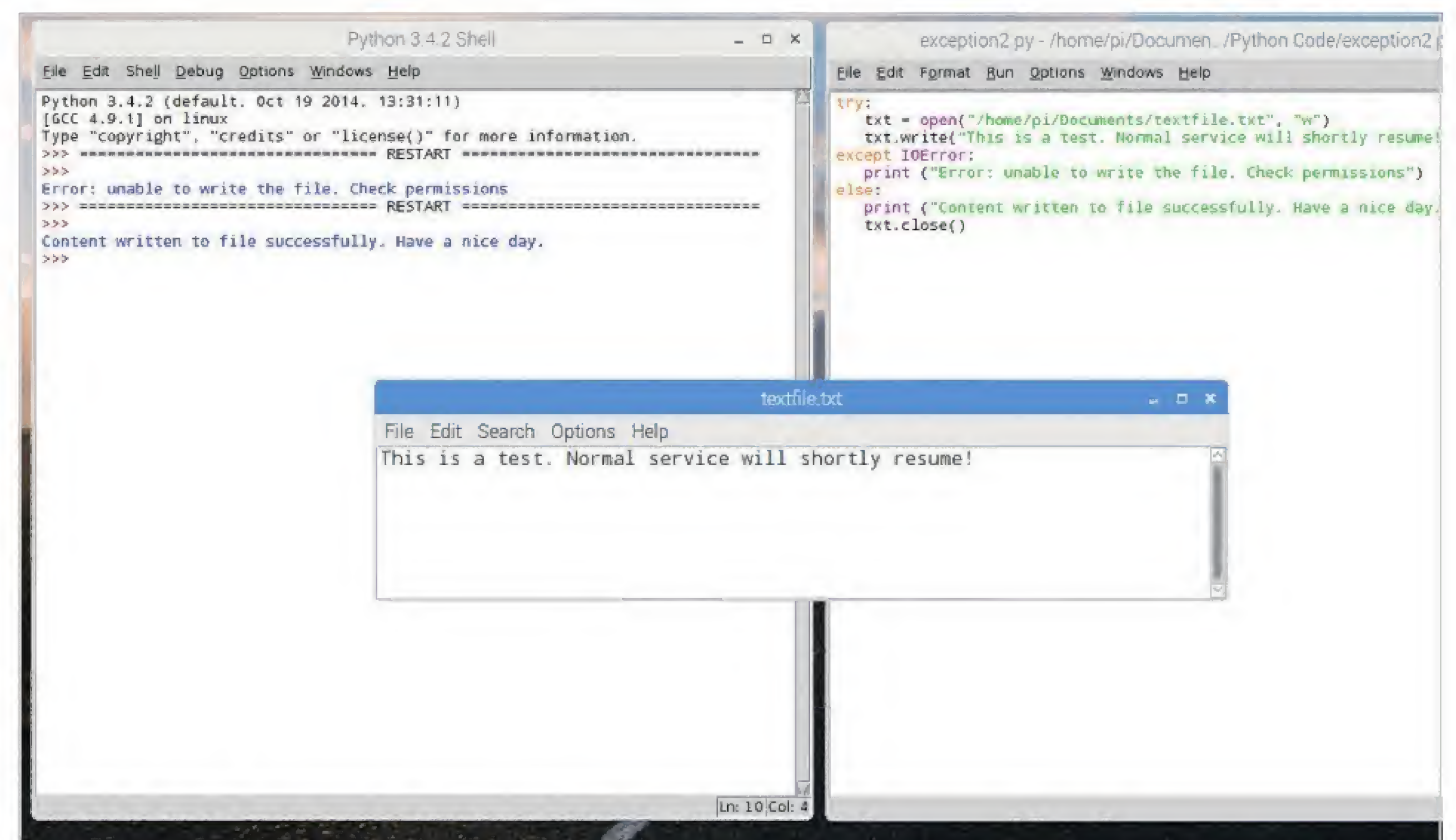
STEP 7

Obviously this won't work due to the file textfile.txt being opened as read only (the "r" part). So in this case rather than Python telling you that you're doing something wrong, you've created an exception using the IOError class informing the user that the permissions are incorrect.



STEP 8

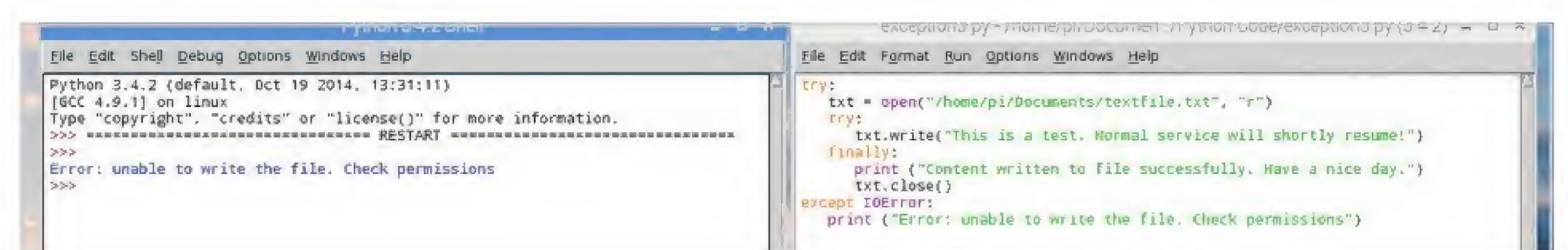
Naturally, you can quickly fix the issue by changing the "r" read only instance with a "w" for write. This, as you already know, will create the file and write the content then commit the changes to the file. The end result will report a different set of circumstances, in this case, a successful execution of the code.



STEP 9

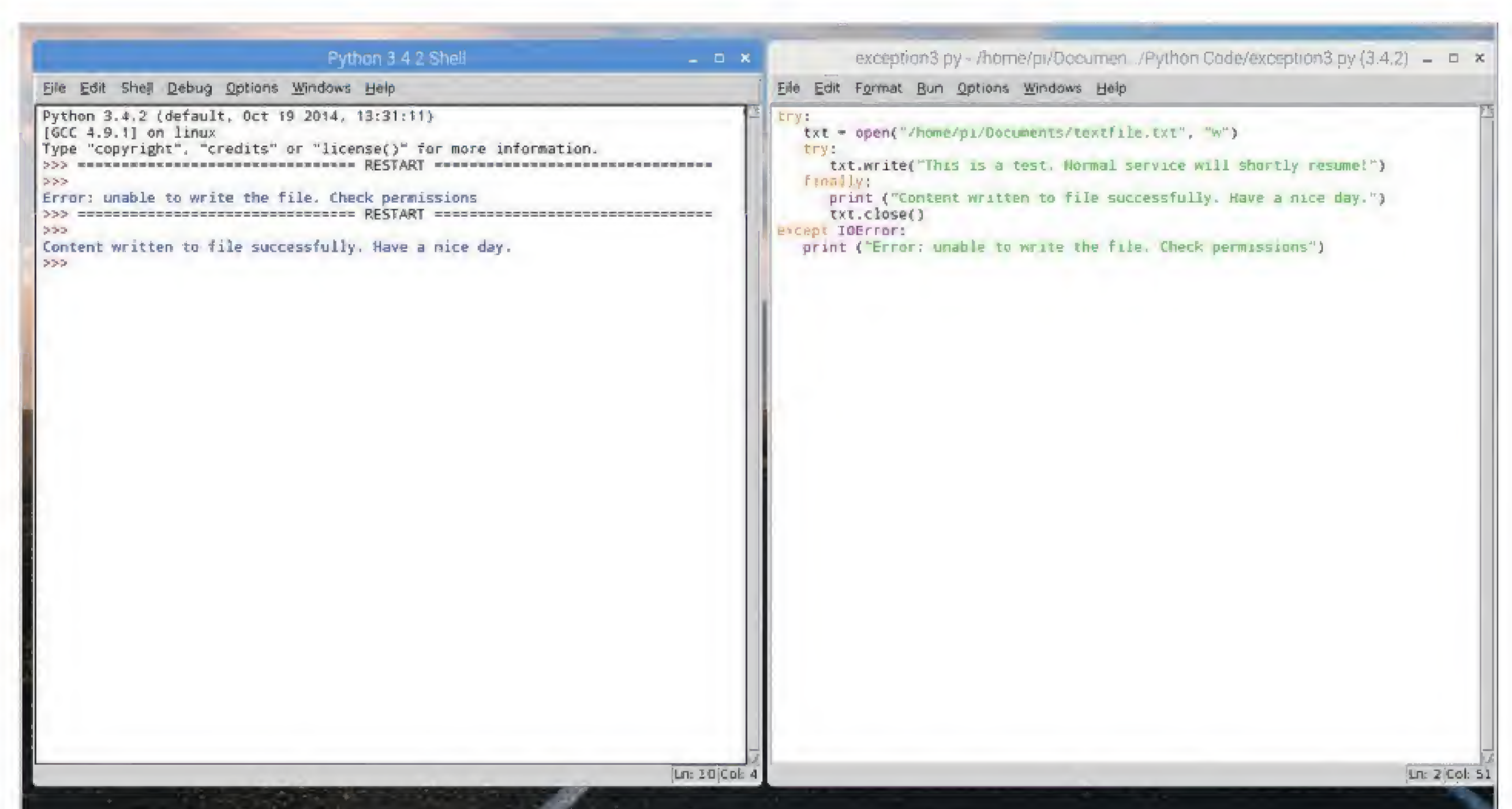
You can also use a finally: block, which works in a similar fashion but you can't use else with it. To use our example from Step 6:

```
try:
    txt = open("/home/pi/Documents/textfile.txt", "r")
    try:
        txt.write("This is a test. Normal service will shortly resume!")
    finally:
        print("Content written to file successfully. Have a nice day.")
        txt.close()
except IOError:
    print("Error: unable to write the file. Check permissions")
```



STEP 10

As before an error will occur as you've used the "r" read-only permission. If you change it to a "w", then the code will execute without the error being displayed in the IDLE Shell. Needless to say, it can be a tricky getting the exception code right the first time. Practise though, and you will get the hang of it.





Python Graphics

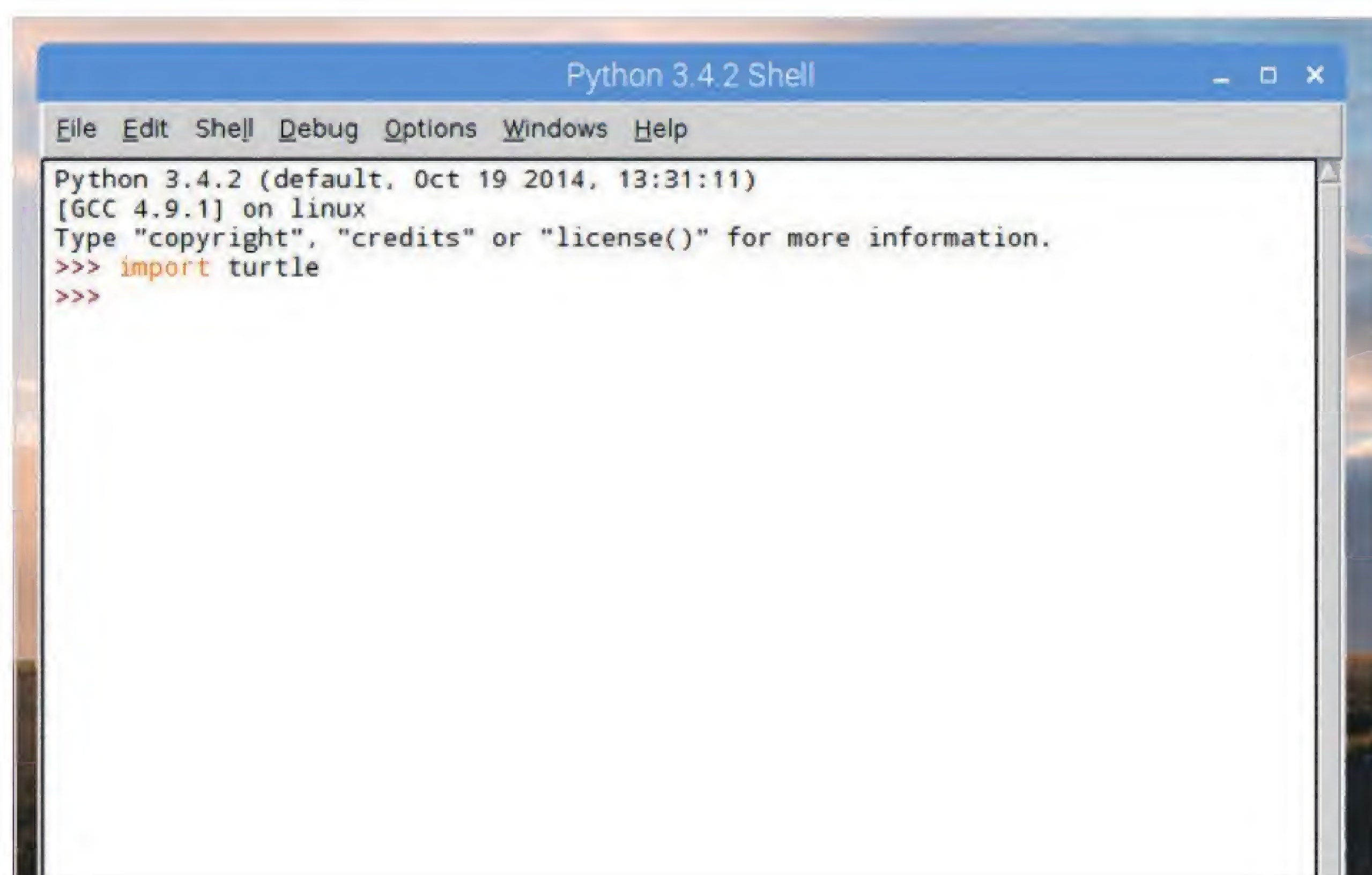
Whilst dealing with text on the screen, either as a game or in a program, is great, there will come a time when a bit of graphical representation wouldn't go amiss. Python 3 has numerous ways in which to include graphics and they're surprisingly powerful too.

GOING GRAPHICAL

You can draw simple graphics, lines, squares and so on, or you can use one of the many Python modules available, to bring out some spectacular effects.

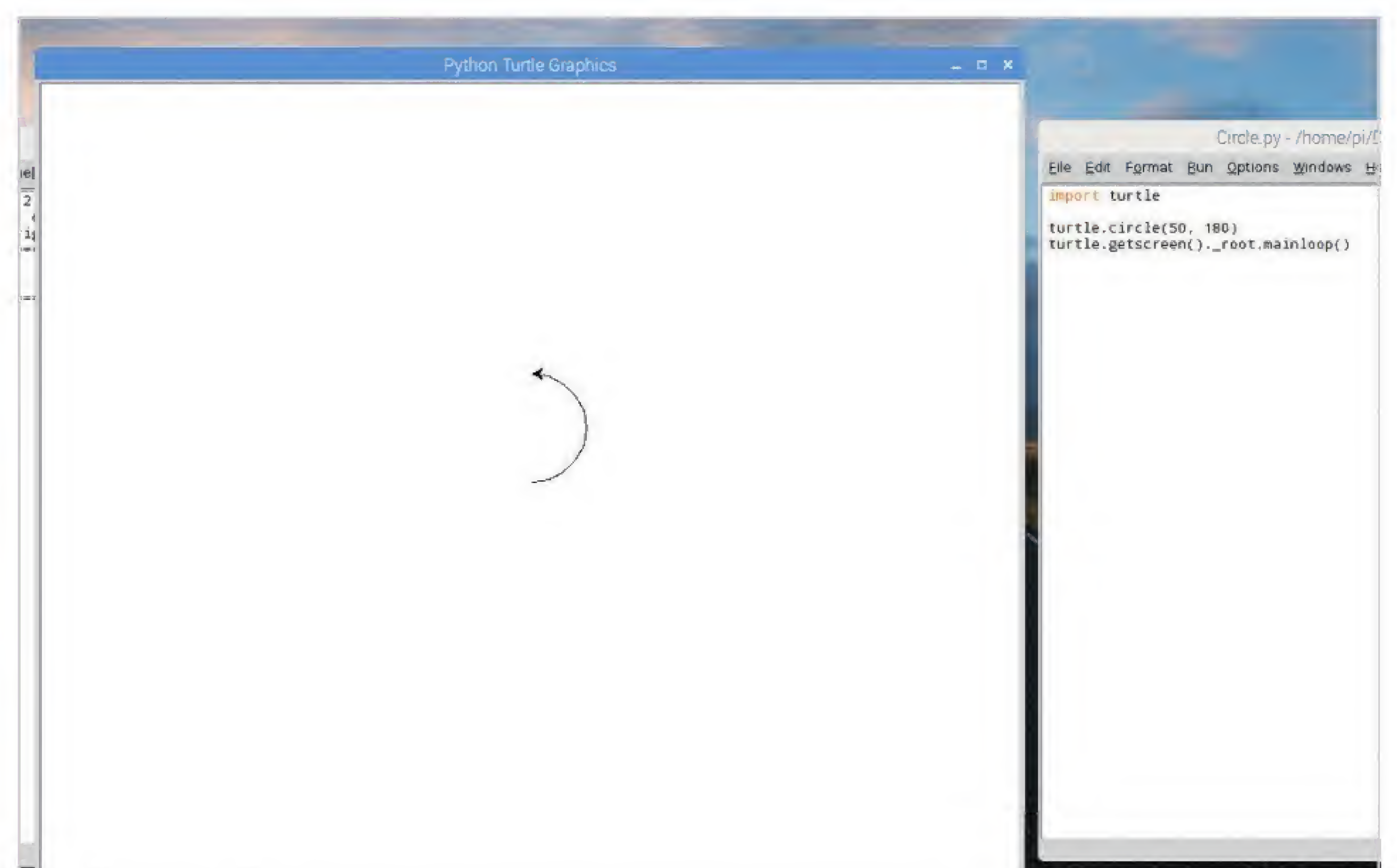
STEP 1

One of the best graphical modules to begin learning Python graphics is Turtle. The Turtle module is, as the name suggests, based on the turtle robots used in many schools, that can be programmed to draw something on a large piece of paper on the floor. The Turtle module can be imported with: `import turtle`.



STEP 3

The command `turtle.circle(50)` is what draws the circle on the screen, with 50 being the size. You can play around with the sizes if you like, going up to 100, 150 and beyond; you can draw an arc by entering: `turtle.circle(50, 180)`, where the size is 50, but you're telling Python to only draw 180° of the circle.

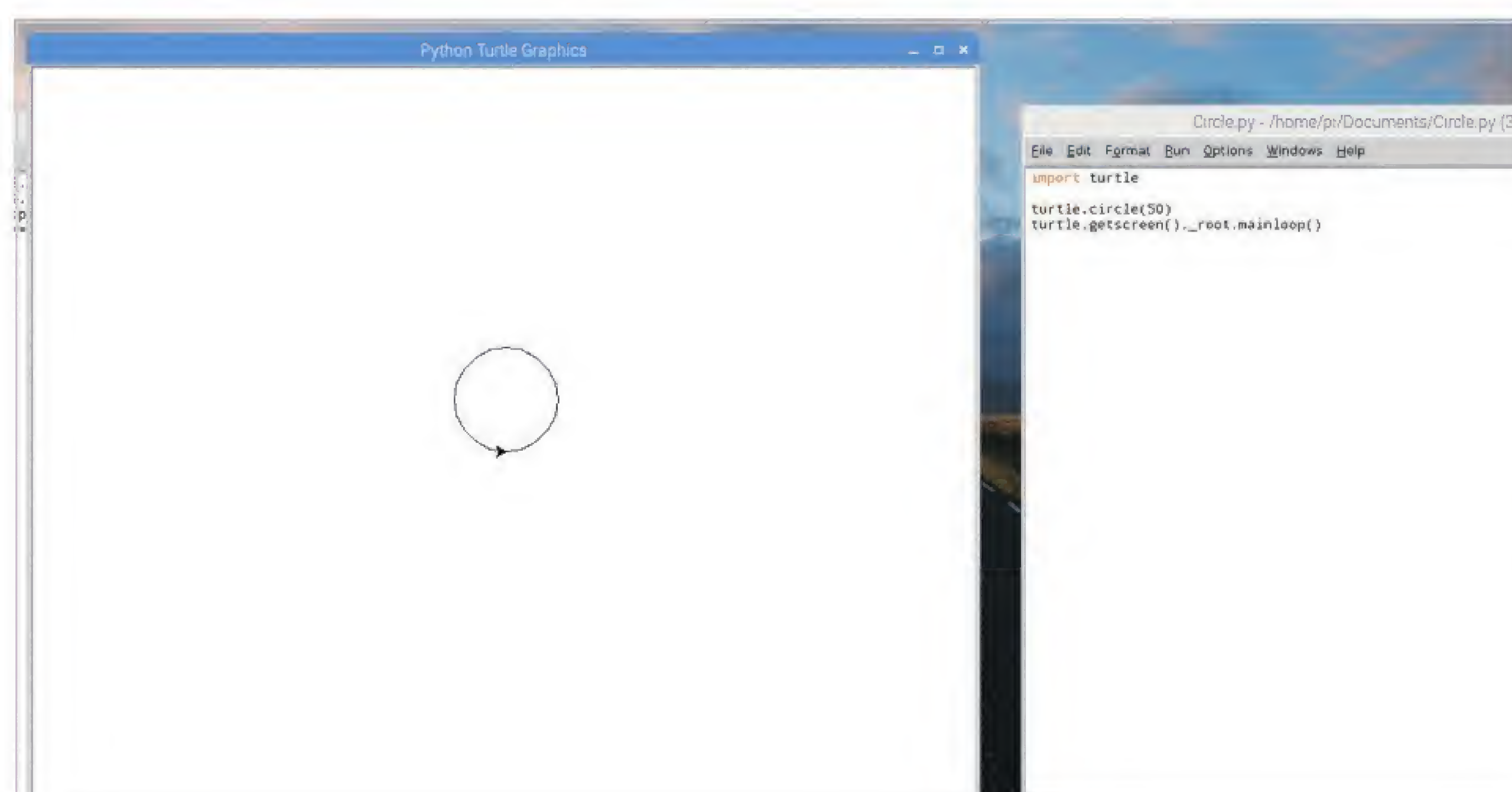


STEP 2

Let's begin by drawing a simple circle. Start a New File, then enter the following code:

```
import turtle
turtle.circle(50)
turtle.getscreen()._root.mainloop()
```

As usual press F5 to save the code and execute it. A new window will now open up and the 'Turtle' will draw a circle.

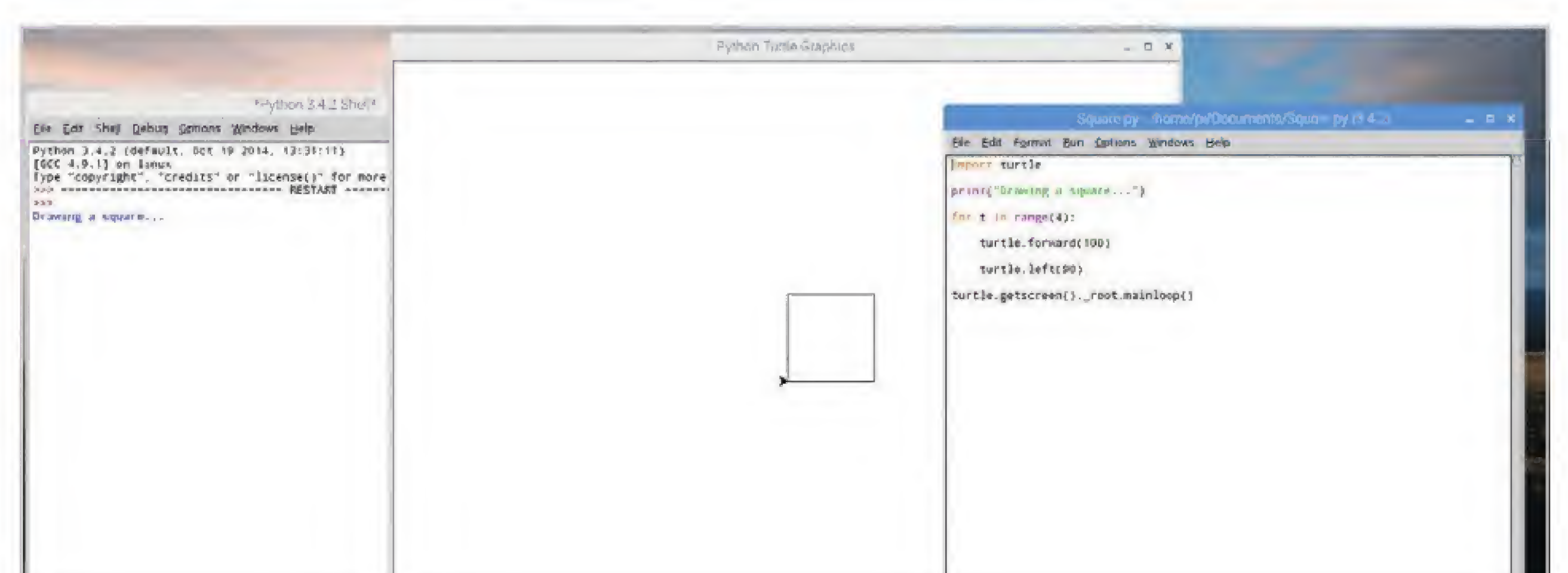


STEP 4

The last part of the circle code tells Python to keep the window where the drawing is taking place to remain open, so the user can click to close it. Now, let's make a square:

```
import turtle
print("Drawing a square...")
for t in range(4):
    turtle.forward(100)
    turtle.left(90)
turtle.getscreen()._root.mainloop()
```

You can see that we've inserted a loop to draw the sides of the square.



**STEP 5**

You can add a new line to the square code to add some colour:

```
turtle.color("Red")
```

Then you can even change the character to an actual turtle by entering:

```
turtle.shape("turtle")
```

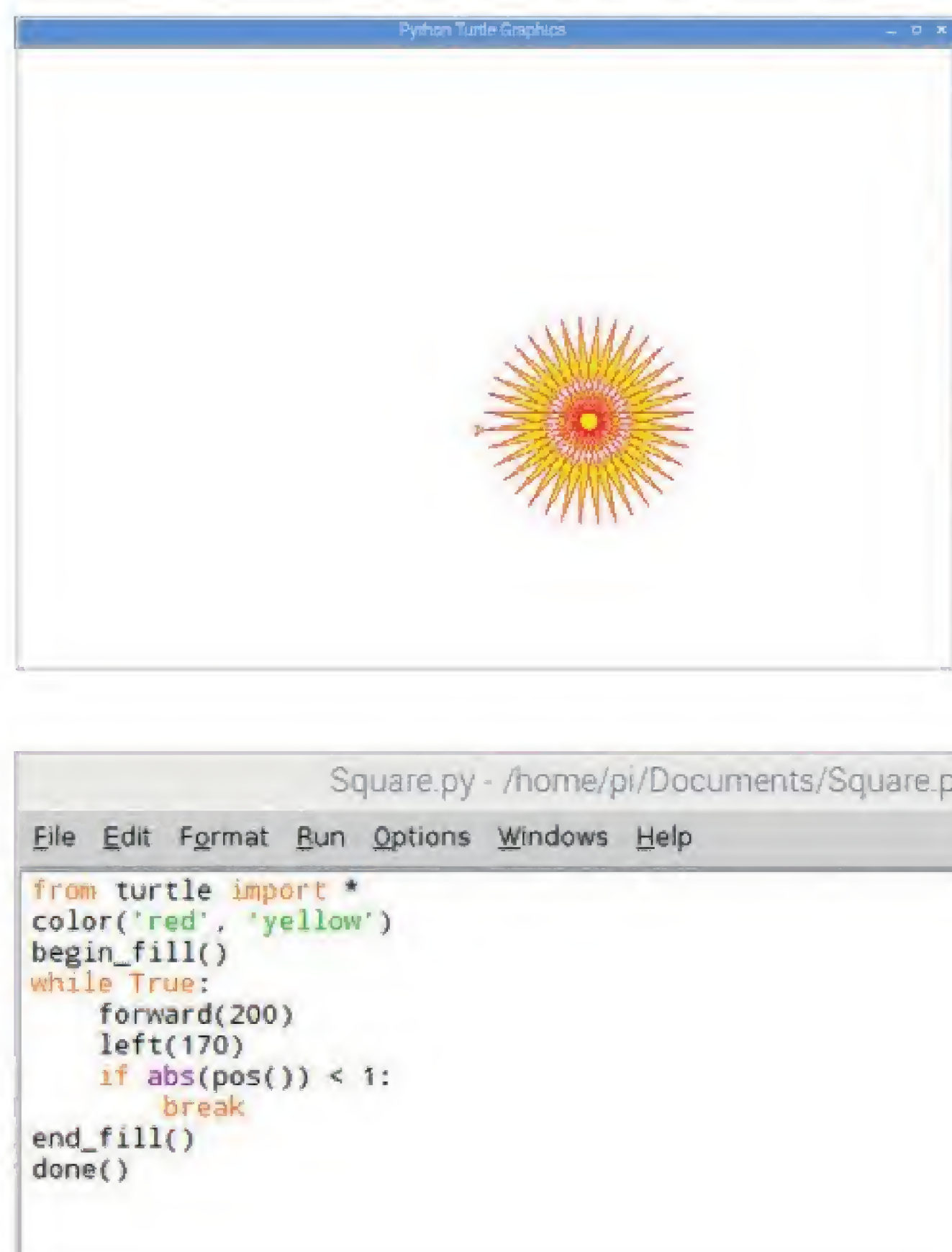
You can also use the command `turtle.begin_fill()`, and `turtle.end_fill()` to fill in the square with the chosen colours; red outline, yellow fill in this case.

**STEP 6**

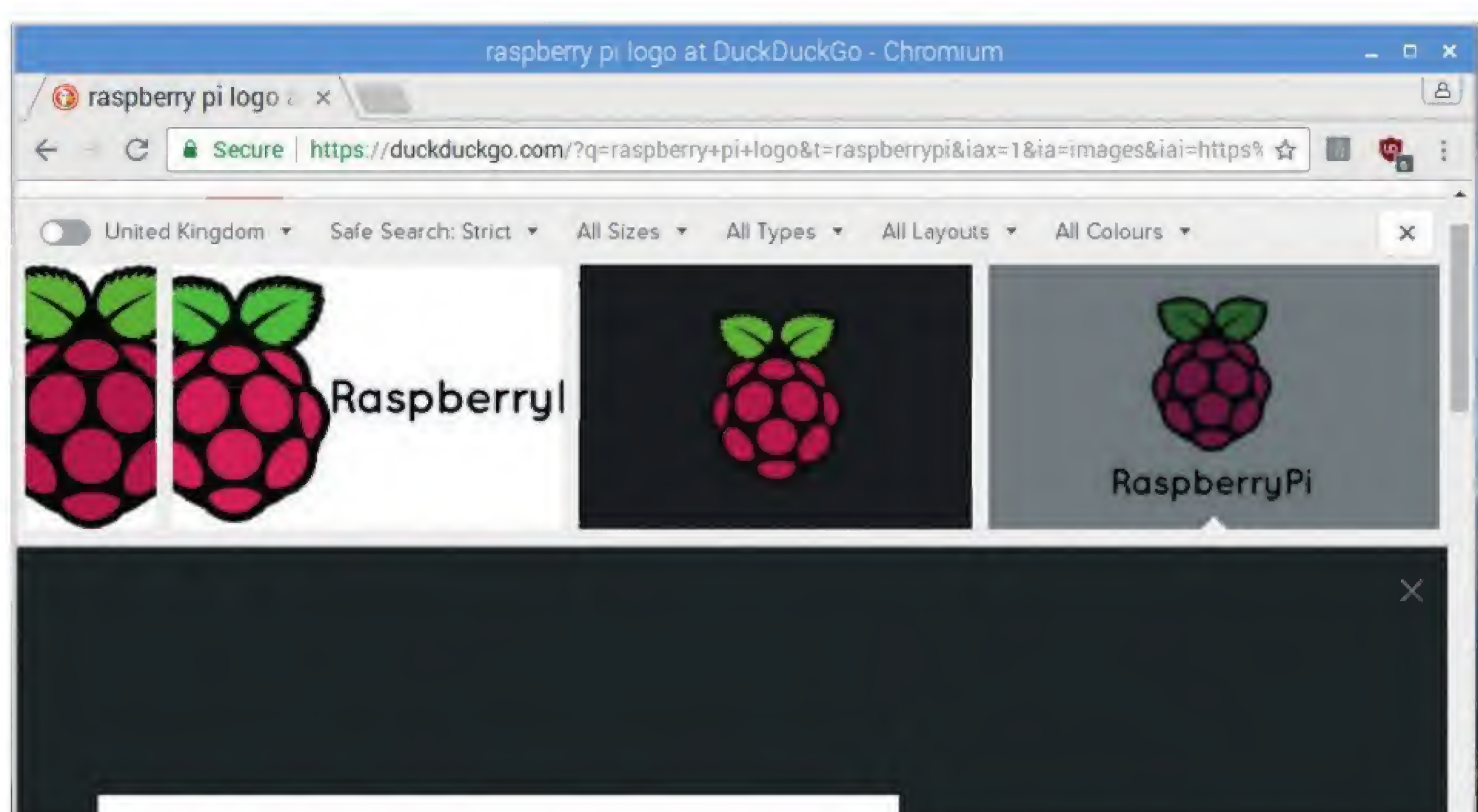
You can see that the Turtle module can draw out some pretty good shapes and become a little more complex as you begin to master the way it works. Enter this example:

```
from turtle import *
color('red', 'yellow')
begin_fill()
while True:
    forward(200)
    left(170)
    if abs(pos()) < 1:
        break
end_fill()
done()
```

It's a different method, but very effective.

**STEP 7**

Another way in which you can display graphics is by using the Pygame module. There are numerous ways in which pygame can help you output graphics to the screen but for now let's look at displaying a predefined image. Start by opening a browser and finding an image, then save it to the folder where you save your Python code.

**STEP 8**

Now let's get the code by importing the pygame module:

```
import pygame
pygame.init()
```

```
img = pygame.image.load("RPI.png")
```

```
white = (255, 255, 255)
```

```
w = 900
```

```
h = 450
```

```
screen = pygame.display.
```

```
set_mode((w, h))
```

```
screen.fill((white))
```

```
screen.fill((white))
```

```
screen.blit(img,(0,0))
```

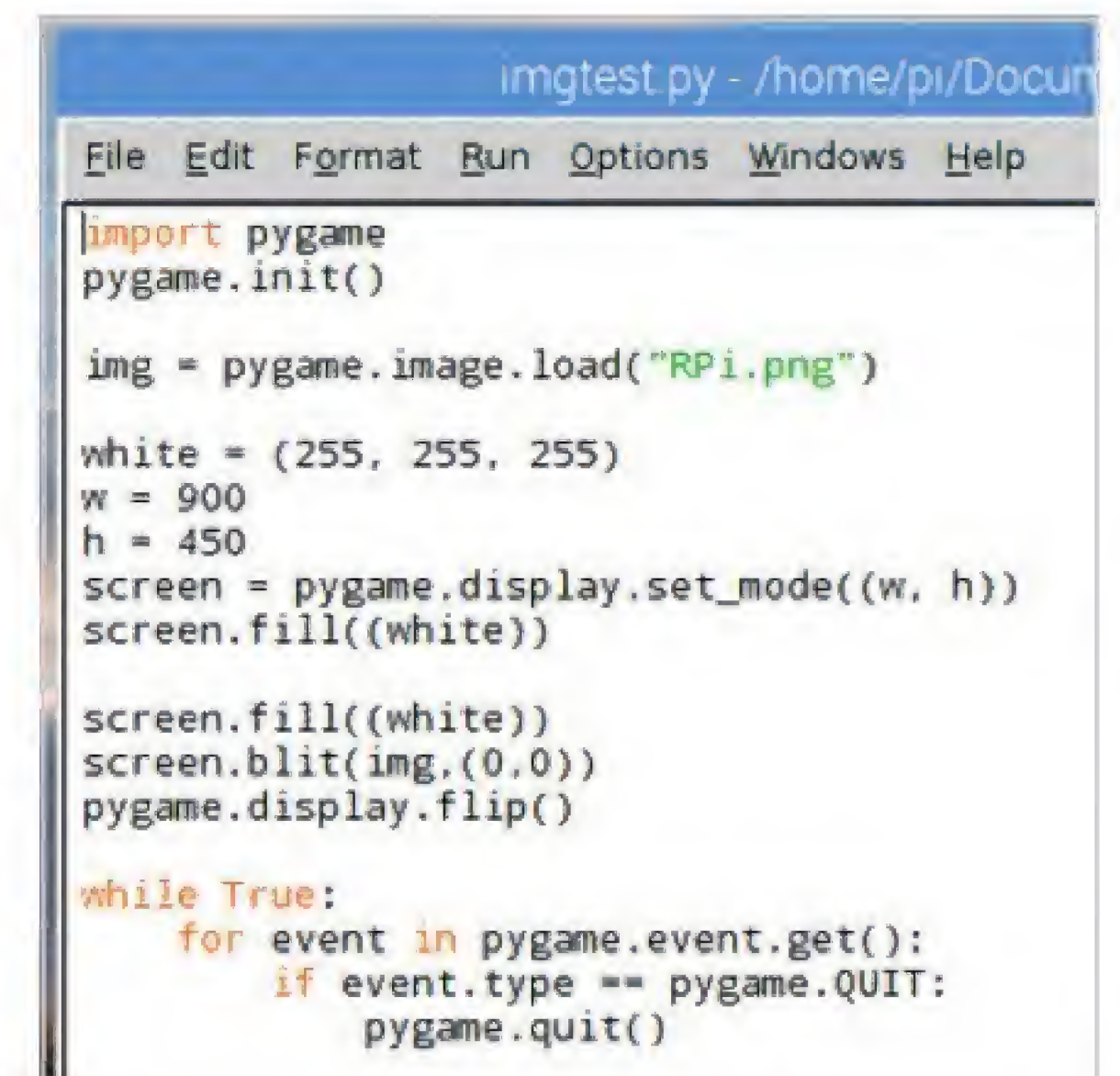
```
pygame.display.flip()
```

```
while True:
```

```
    for event in pygame.event.get():
```

```
        if event.type == pygame.QUIT:
```

```
            pygame.quit()
```

**STEP 9**

In the previous step you imported pygame, initiated the pygame engine and asked it to import our saved Raspberry Pi logo image, saved as RPI.png. Next you defined the background colour of the window to display the image and the window size as per the actual image dimensions. Finally you have a loop to close the window.

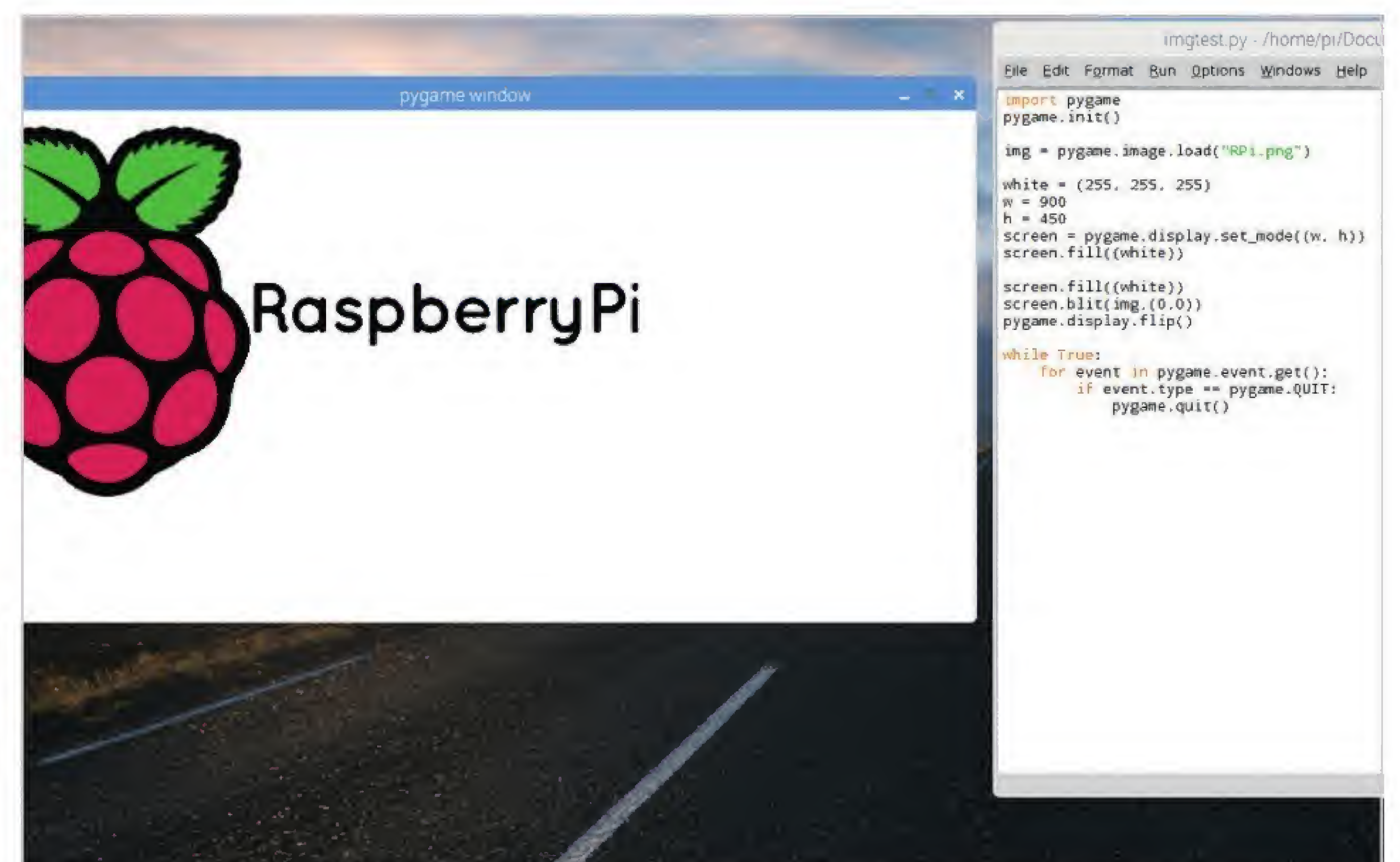
```
w = 900
h = 450
screen = pygame.display.set_mode((w, h))
screen.fill((white))

screen.fill((white))
screen.blit(img,(0,0))
pygame.display.flip()

while True:
    for event in pygame.event.get():
        if event.type == pygame.QUIT:
            pygame.quit()
```

STEP 10

Press F5 to save and execute the code and your image will be displayed in a new window. Have a play around with the colours, sizes and so on and take time to look up the many functions within the pygame module too.





Combining What You Know So Far

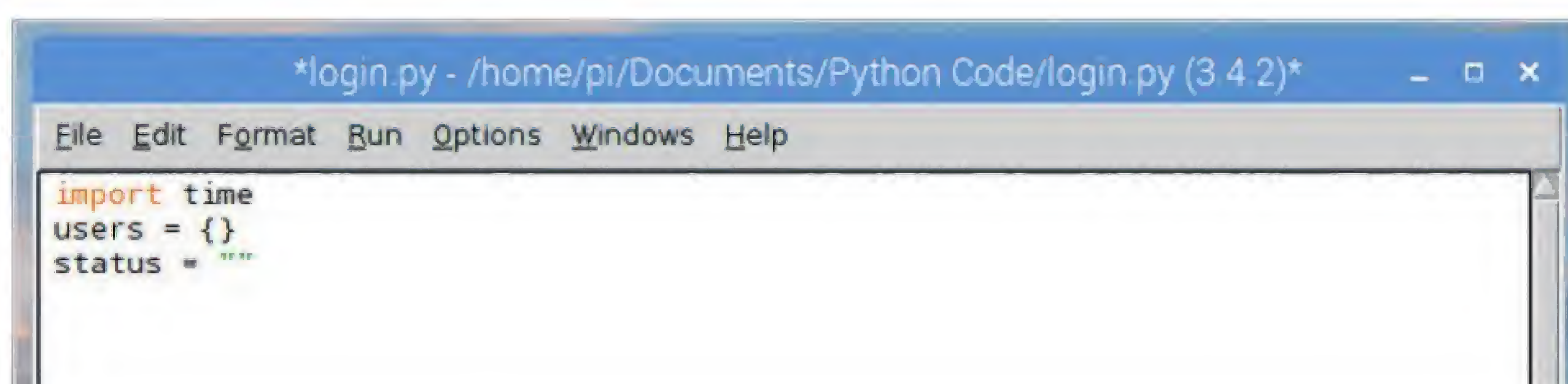
Based on what you've looked at over this section, let's combine it all and come up with a piece of code that can easily be applied into a real-world situation; or at the very least, something which you can incorporate into your programs.

LOGGING IN

For this example, let's look to a piece of code that creates user logins and then allows them to log into the system and write the time they logged in at. You can even include an option to quit the program by pressing 'q'.

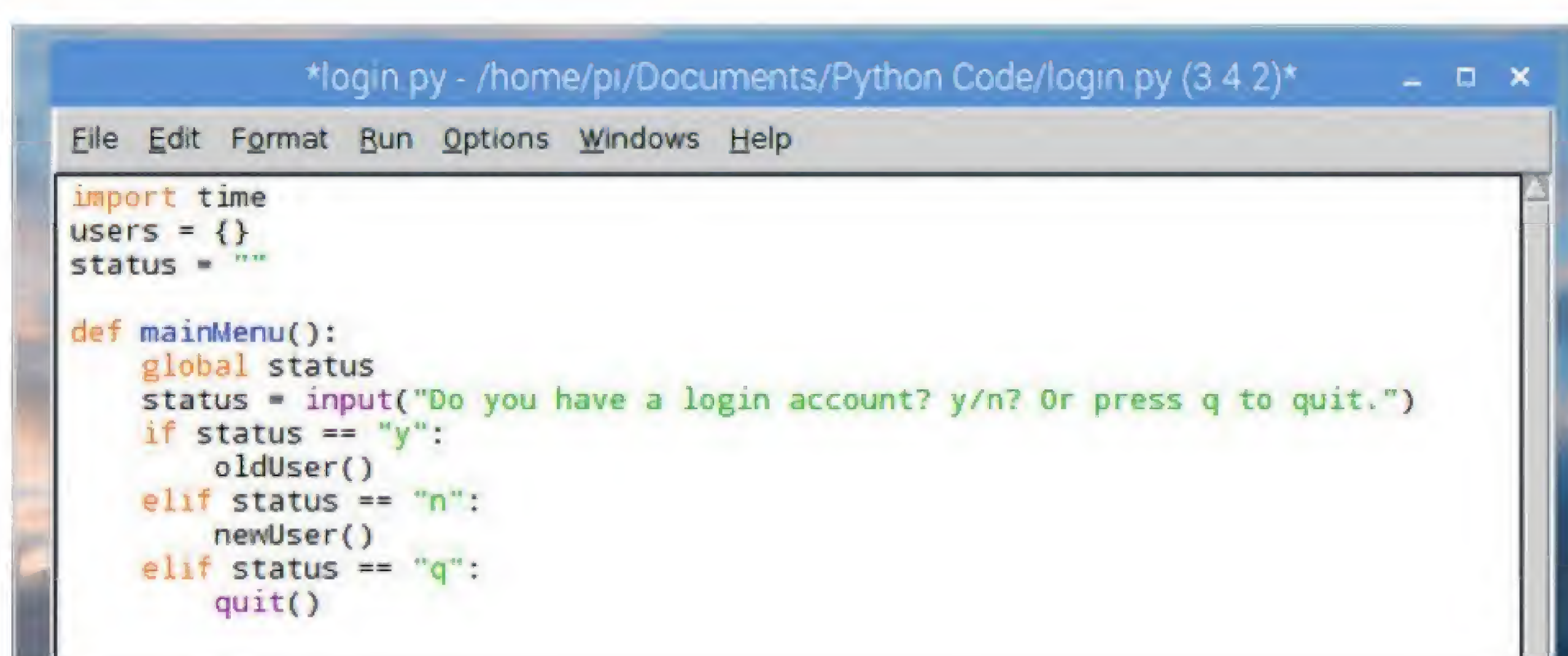
STEP 1 Begin by importing the time module, creating a new dictionary to handle the usernames and passwords and creating a variable to evaluate the current status of the program:

```
import time
users = {}
status = ""
```



STEP 2 Next you need to define some functions. You can begin by creating the main menu, where all users will return to after selecting the available options:

```
def mainMenu():
    global status
    status = input("Do you have a login account? y/n? Or press q to quit.")
    if status == "y":
        oldUser()
    elif status == "n":
        newUser()
    elif status == "q":
        quit()
```



STEP 3 The global status statement separates a local variable from one that can be called throughout the code, this way you can use the q=quit element without it being changed inside the function. We've also referenced some newly defined functions: oldUser and newUser which we'll get to next.

```
def mainMenu():
    global status
    status = input("Do you have a login account? y/n? Or press q to quit.")
    if status == "y":
        oldUser()
    elif status == "n":
        newUser()
    elif status == "q":
        quit()
```

STEP 4 The newUser function is next:

```
def newUser():
    createLogin = input("Create a login name: ")
    if createLogin in users:
        print("\nLogin name already exists!\n")
    else:
        createPassw = input("Create password: ")
        users[createLogin] = createPassw
        print("\nUser created!\n")
        logins=open("/home/pi/Documents/logins.txt", "a")
        logins.write("\n" + createLogin + " " + createPassw)
        logins.close()
```

This creates a new user and password, and writes the entries into a file called logins.txt.



**STEP 5**

You will need to specify your own location for the logins.txt file, since we're using a Raspberry Pi. Essentially, this adds the username and password inputs from the user to the existing users{} dictionary, so the key and value structure remains: each user is the key, the password is the value.

```
def newUser():
    createLogin = input("Create a login name: ")

    if createLogin in users:
        print ("\nLogin name already exists!\n")
    else:
        createPassw = input("Create password: ")
        users[createLogin] = createPassw
        print ("\nUser created!\n")
        logins=open("/home/pi/Documents/logins.txt", "a")
        logins.write("\n" + createLogin + " " + createPassw)
        logins.close()
```

STEP 6

Now to create the oldUser function:

```
def oldUser():
    login = input("Enter login name: ")
    passw = input("Enter password: ")

    # check if user exists and login matches password
    if login in users and users[login] == passw:
        print ("\nLogin successful!\n")
        print ("User:", login, "accessed the system on:", time.asctime())
    else:
        print ("\nUser doesn't exist or wrong password!\n")
```

```
def mainMenu():
    global status
    status = input("Do you have a login account? y/n? Or press q to quit.")
    if status == "y":
        oldUser()
    elif status == "n":
        newUser()
    elif status == "q":
        quit()

def newUser():
    createLogin = input("Create a login name: ")

    if createLogin in users:
        print ("\nLogin name already exists!\n")
    else:
        createPassw = input("Create password: ")
        users[createLogin] = createPassw
        print ("\nUser created!\n")
        logins=open("/home/pi/Documents/logins.txt", "a")
        logins.write("\n" + createLogin + " " + createPassw)
        logins.close()

def oldUser():
    login = input("Enter login name: ")
    passw = input("Enter password: ")

    # check if user exists and login matches password
    if login in users and users[login] == passw:
        print ("\nLogin successful!\n")
        print ("User:", login, "accessed the system on:", time.asctime())
    else:
        print ("\nUser doesn't exist or wrong password!\n")
```

STEP 7

There's a fair bit happening here. There are login and passw variables, which are then matched to the users dictionary. If there's a match, then you have a successful login and the time and date of the login is outputted. If they don't match, then you print an error and the process starts again.

```
def oldUser():
    login = input("Enter login name: ")
    passw = input("Enter password: ")

    # check if user exists and login matches password
    if login in users and users[login] == passw:
        print ("\nLogin successful!\n")
        print ("User:", login, "accessed the system on:", time.asctime())
    else:
        print ("\nUser doesn't exist or wrong password!\n")
```

STEP 8

Finally, you need to continually check that the 'q' key hasn't been pressed to exit the program. We can do this with:

```
while status != "q":
    status = displayMenu()
```

```
*login.py - /home/pi/Documents/Python Code/login.py (3.4.2)*
File Edit Format Run Options Windows Help

import time
users = {}
status = ""

def mainMenu():
    global status
    status = input("Do you have a login account? y/n? Or press q to quit.")
    if status == "y":
        oldUser()
    elif status == "n":
        newUser()
    elif status == "q":
        quit()

def newUser():
    createLogin = input("Create a login name: ")

    if createLogin in users:
        print ("\nLogin name already exists!\n")
    else:
        createPassw = input("Create password: ")
        users[createLogin] = createPassw
        print ("\nUser created!\n")
        logins=open("/home/pi/Documents/logins.txt", "a")
        logins.write("\n" + createLogin + " " + createPassw)
        logins.close()

def oldUser():
    login = input("Enter login name: ")
    passw = input("Enter password: ")

    # check if user exists and login matches password
    if login in users and users[login] == passw:
        print ("\nLogin successful!\n")
        print ("User:", login, "accessed the system on:", time.asctime())
    else:
        print ("\nUser doesn't exist or wrong password!\n")

while status != "q":
    status = displayMenu()
```

STEP 9

Although a seemingly minor two lines, the while loop is what keeps the program running. At the end of every function it's checked against the current value of status. If that global value isn't 'q' then the program continues. If it's equal to 'q' then the program can quit.

```
while status != "q":
    status = displayMenu()
```

STEP 10

You can now create users, then login with their names and passwords, with the logins.txt file being created to store the login data and successful logins being time-stamped. Now it's up to you to further improve the code. Perhaps you can import the list of created users from a previous session and display a graphic upon a successful login?

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>>
Do you have a login account? y/n? Or press q to quit: y
Create a login name: David
Create password: password
User created!
Do you have a login account? y/n? Or press q to quit: n
Create a login name: Jim
Create password: B0M4Pubs
User created!
Do you have a login account? y/n? Or press q to quit: y
Enter login name: David
Enter password: password
Login successful!
User: David accessed the system on: Mon Sep 11 11:52:40 2017
Do you have a login account? y/n? Or press q to quit: q
>>>
```




Using Modules





A Python module is simply a Python created source file which contains the necessary code for classes, functions and global variables. You can bind and reference modules to extend functionality and create even more spectacular Python programs.

Want to see how to better use these modules to add a little something extra to your code? Then read on and learn how they can be used to fashion fantastic code.

.....

76 Calendar Module

78 OS Module

80 Random Module

82 Tkinter Module

84 Pygame Module

88 Using the Math Module

90 Create Your Own Modules



Calendar Module

Beyond the time module, the calendar module can produce some interesting results when executed within your code. It does far more than simply display the date in the time module-like format, you can actually call up a wall calendar type display.

WORKING WITH DATES

The calendar module is built into Python 3. However, if for some reason it's not installed you can add it using `pip install calendar` as a Windows administrator or `sudo pip install calendar` for Linux and macOS.

STEP 1 Launch Python 3 and enter: `import calendar` to call up the module and its inherent functions. Once it's loaded into memory, start by entering:

```
sep=calendar.TextCalendar(calendar.SUNDAY)
sep.prmonth(2017, 9)
```

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> import calendar
>>> sep=calendar.TextCalendar(calendar.SUNDAY)
>>> sep.prmonth(2017, 9)
September 2017
Su Mo Tu We Th Fr Sa
    1  2
 3  4  5  6  7  8  9
10 11 12 13 14 15 16
17 18 19 20 21 22 23
24 25 26 27 28 29 30
>>>
```

STEP 2 You can see that the days of September 2017 are displayed in a wall calendar fashion. Naturally you can change the 2017, 9 part of the second line to any year and month you want, a birthday for example (1973, 6). The first line configures TextCalendar to start its weeks on a Sunday; you can opt for Monday if you prefer.

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> import calendar
>>> sep=calendar.TextCalendar(calendar.SUNDAY)
>>> sep.prmonth(2017, 9)
September 2017
Su Mo Tu We Th Fr Sa
    1  2
 3  4  5  6  7  8  9
10 11 12 13 14 15 16
17 18 19 20 21 22 23
24 25 26 27 28 29 30
>>> birthday=calendar.TextCalendar(calendar.MONDAY)
>>> birthday.prmonth(1973, 6)
June 1973
Mo Tu We Th Fr Sa Su
    1  2  3
 4  5  6  7  8  9 10
11 12 13 14 15 16 17
18 19 20 21 22 23 24
25 26 27 28 29 30
>>>
```

STEP 3 There are numerous functions within the calendar module that may be of interest to you when forming your own code. For example, you can display the number of leap years between two specific years:

```
leaps=calendar.leapdays(1900, 2018)
print(leaps)
```

The result is 29, starting from 1904 onward.

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> import calendar
>>> leaps=calendar.leapdays(1900, 2018)
>>> print(leaps)
29
>>>
```

STEP 4 You could even fashion that particular example into a piece of working, user interactive Python code:

```
import calendar
print(">>>>>>>>>Leap Year Calculator<<<<<<<<<<\n")
y1=int(input("Enter the first year: "))
y2=int(input("Enter the second year: "))
leaps=calendar.leapdays(y1, y2)
print("Number of leap years between", y1, "and", y2, "is:", leaps)
```

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>>>>>>>>Leap Year Calculator<<<<<<<<<<
Enter the first year: 1756
Enter the second year: 2022
Number of leap years between 1756 and 2022 is: 65
>>>

leapyears.py - /home/p/Documents/Python Code/leapyears.py (3.4.2)
File Edit Format Run Options Windows Help
import calendar
print(">>>>>>>>>Leap Year Calculator<<<<<<<<<<\n")
y1=int(input("Enter the first year: "))
y2=int(input("Enter the second year: "))
leaps=calendar.leapdays(y1, y2)
print("Number of leap years between", y1, "and", y2, "is:", leaps)
```

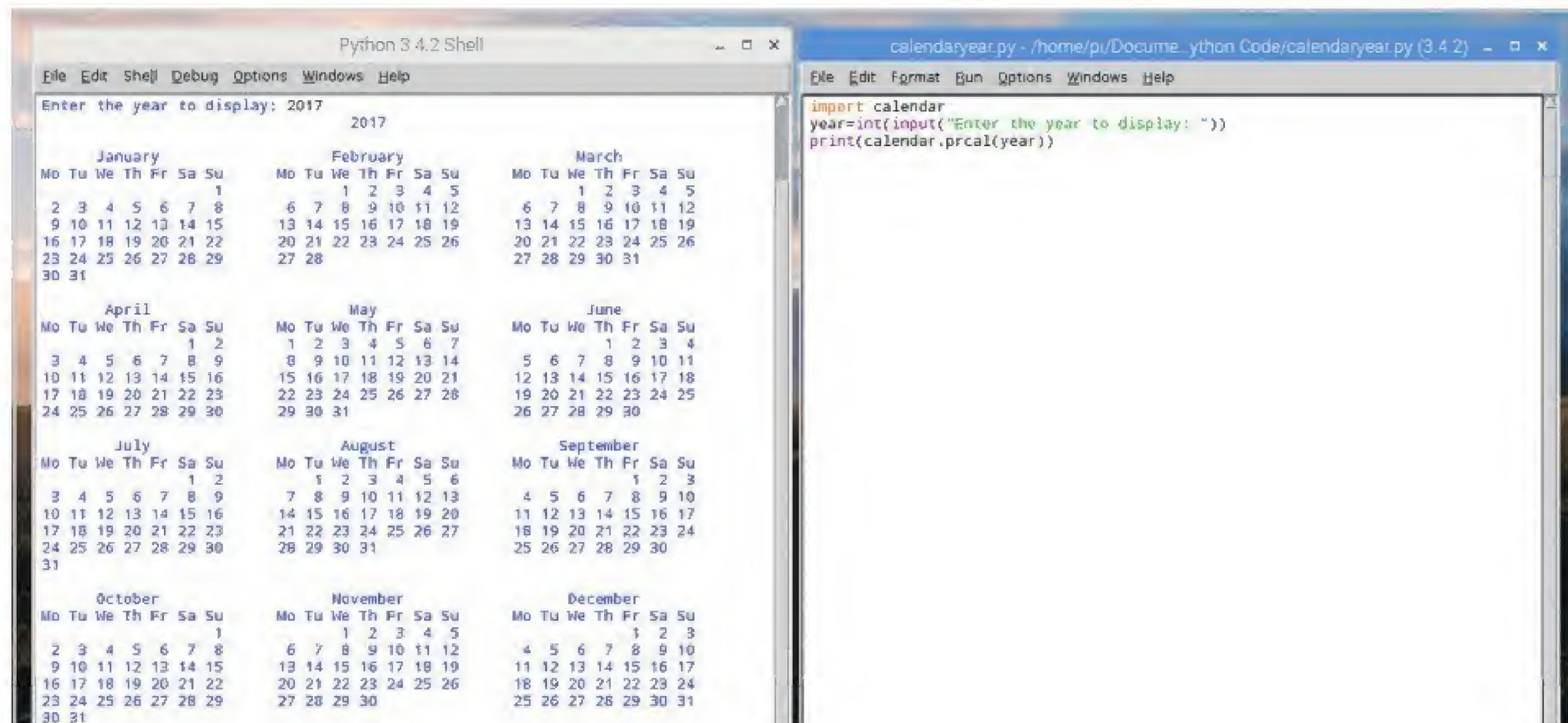



STEP 5

You can also create a program that will display all the days, weeks and months within a given year:

```
import calendar
year=int(input("Enter the year to display: "))
print(calendar.prcal(year))
```

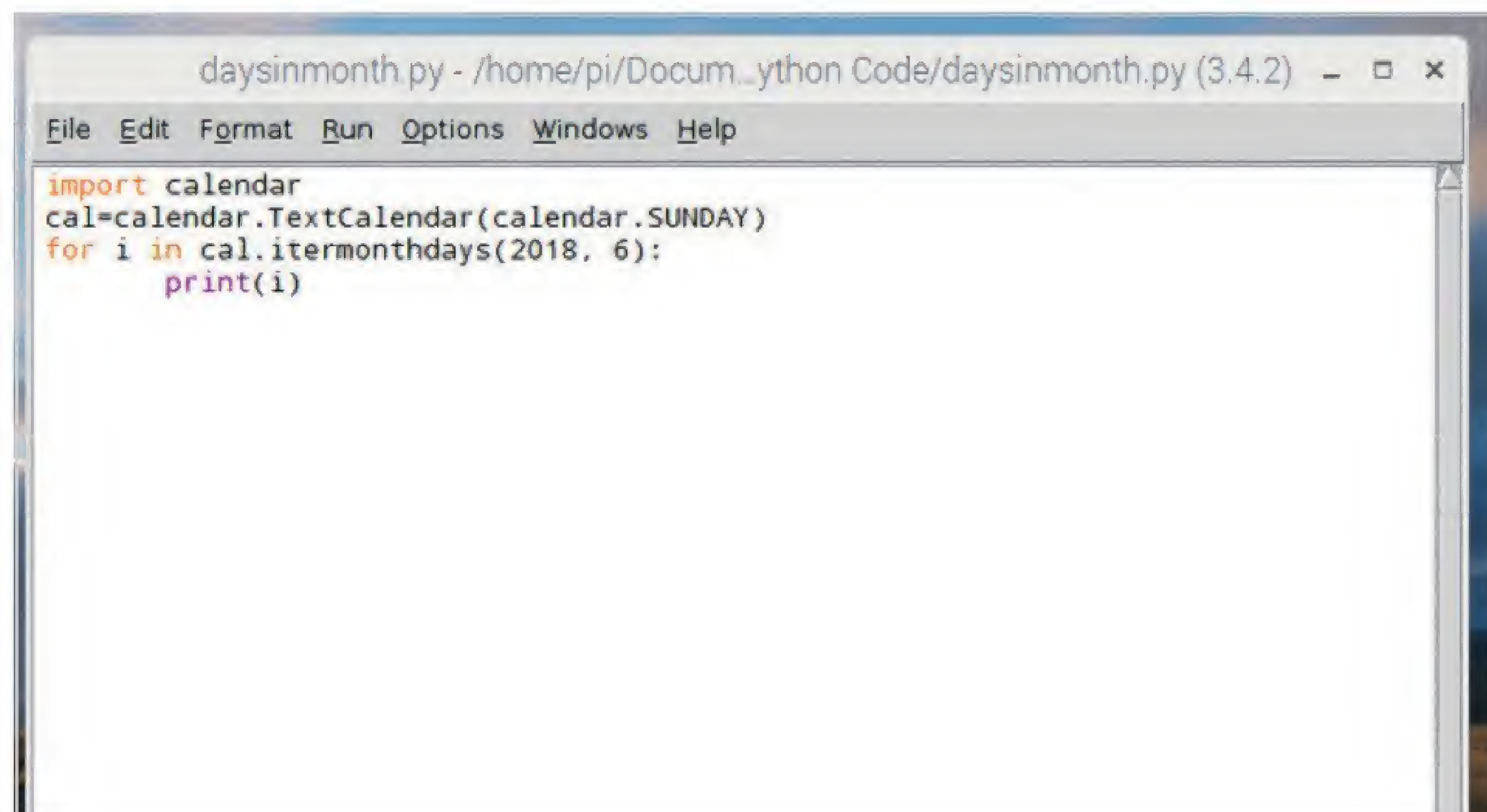
We're sure you'll agree that's quite a handy bit of code to have to hand.



STEP 6

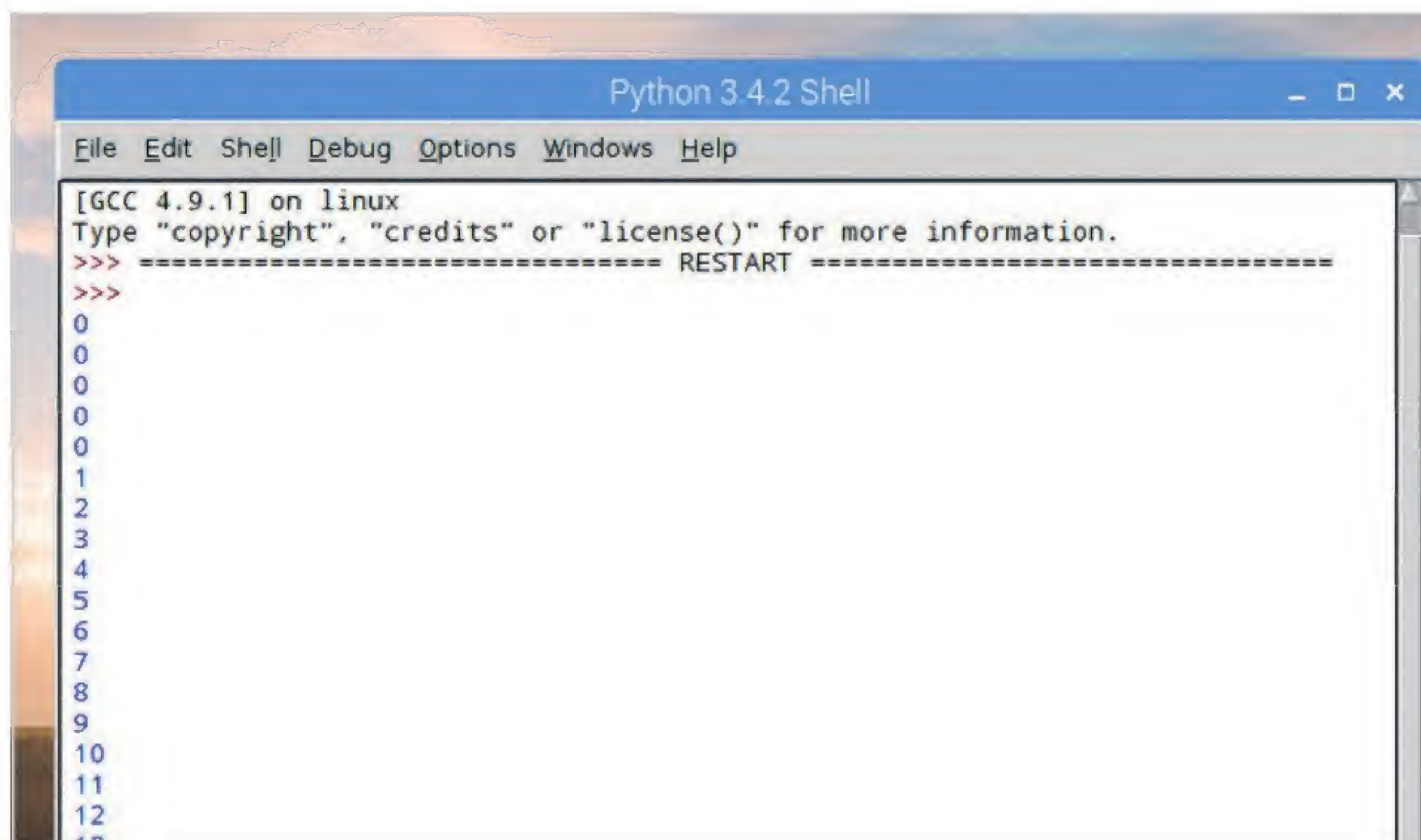
Interestingly we can also list the number of days in a month by using a simple for loop:

```
import calendar
cal=calendar.TextCalendar(calendar.SUNDAY)
for i in cal.itermonthdays(2018, 6):
    print(i)
```



STEP 7

You can see that code produced some zeros at the beginning, this is due to the starting day of the week, Sunday in this case, and overlapping days from the previous month. So the counting of the days will start on Friday 1st June 2018 and will total 30 as the output correctly displays.

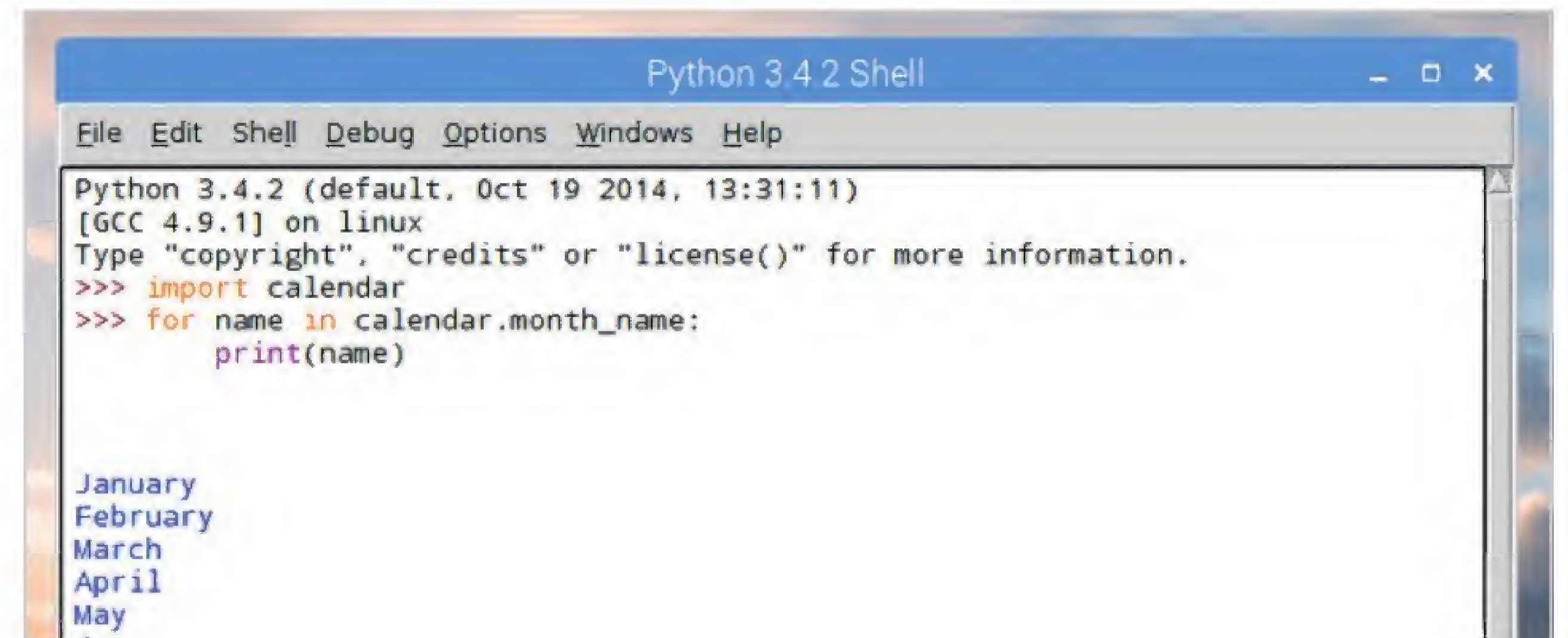


STEP 8

You're also able to print the individual months or days of the week:

```
import calendar
for name in calendar.month_name:
    print(name)

import calendar
for name in calendar.day_name:
    print(name)
```

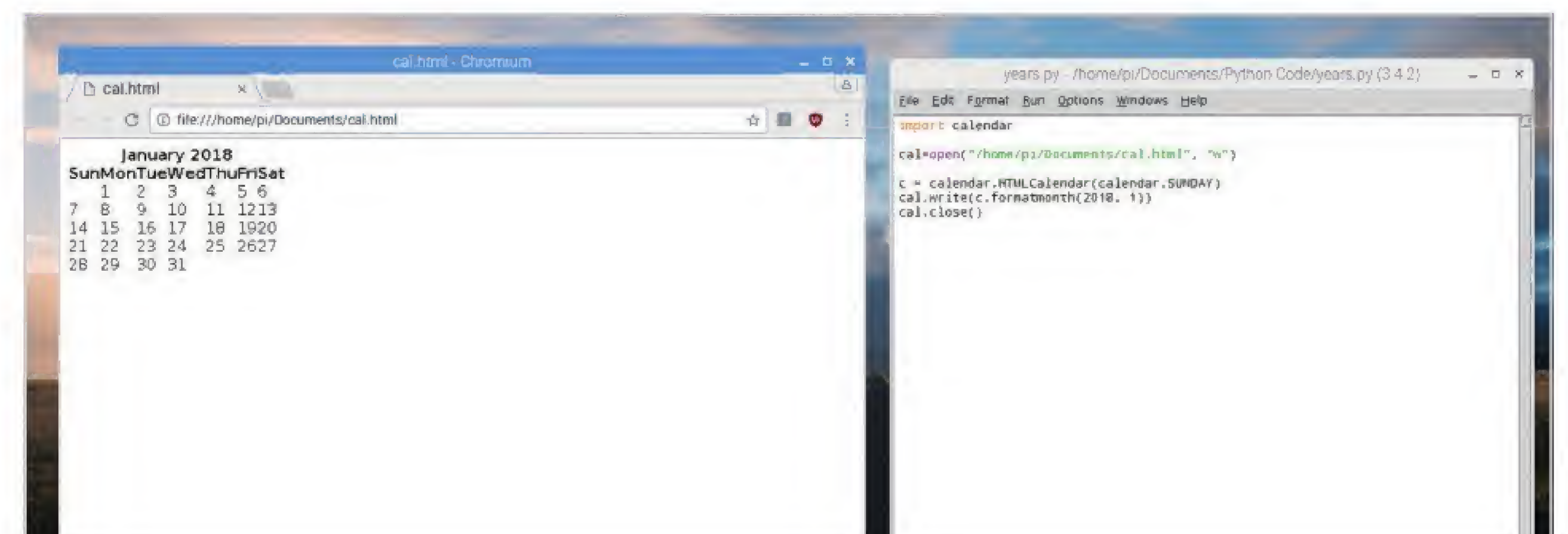


STEP 9

The calendar module also allows us to write the functions in HTML, so that you can display it on a website. Let's start by creating a new file:

```
import calendar
cal=open("/home/pi/Documents/cal.html", "w")
c=calendar.HTMLCalendar(calendar.SUNDAY)
cal.write(c.formatmonth(2018, 1))
cal.close()
```

This code will create an HTML file called cal, open it with a browser and it displays the calendar for January 2018.



STEP 10

Of course, you can modify that to display a given year as a web page calendar:

```
import calendar
year=int(input("Enter the year to display as a webpage: "))
cal=open("/home/pi/Documents/cal.html", "w")
cal.write(calendar.HTMLCalendar(calendar.MONDAY).
formatyear(year))
cal.close()
```

This code asks the user for a year, then creates the necessary webpage. Remember to change your file destination.





OS Module

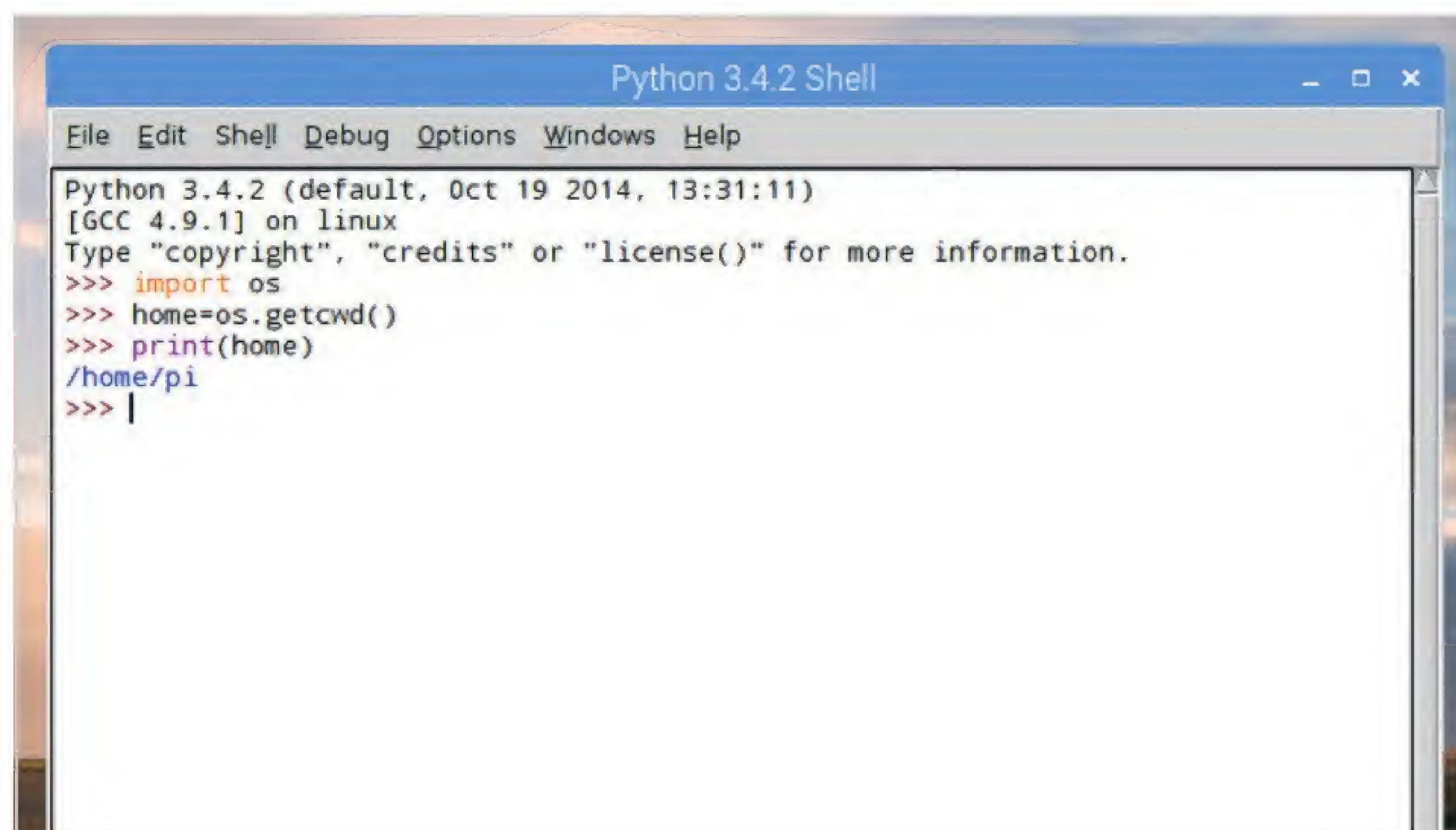
The OS module allows you to interact directly with the built-in commands found in your operating system. Commands vary depending on the OS you're running, as some will work with Windows whereas others will work with Linux and macOS.

INTO THE SYSTEM

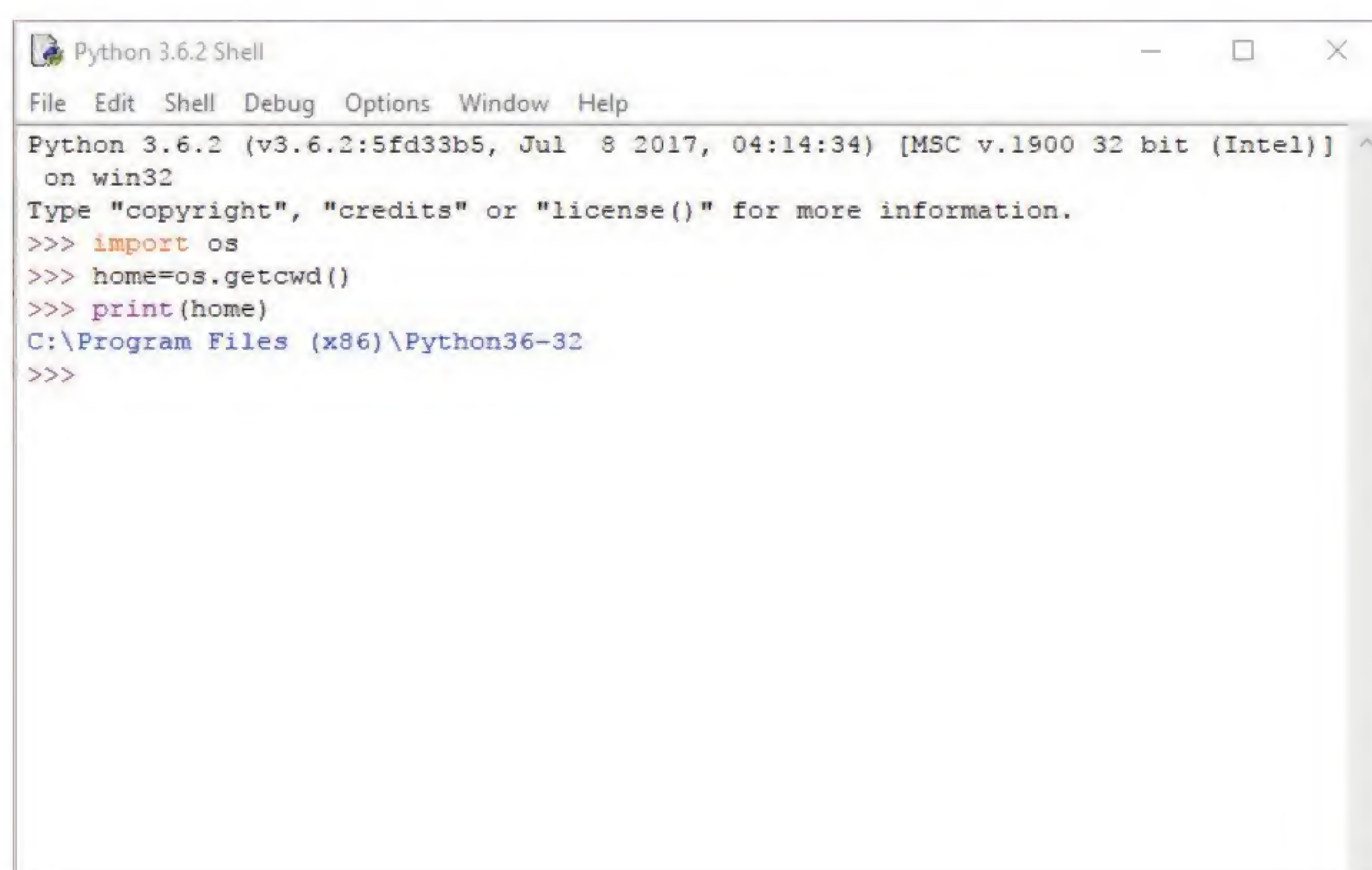
One of the primary features of the OS module is the ability to list, move, create, delete and otherwise interact with files stored on the system, making it the perfect module for backup code.

STEP 1 You can start the OS module with some simple functions to see how it interacts with the operating system environment that Python is running on. If you're using Linux or the Raspberry Pi, try this:

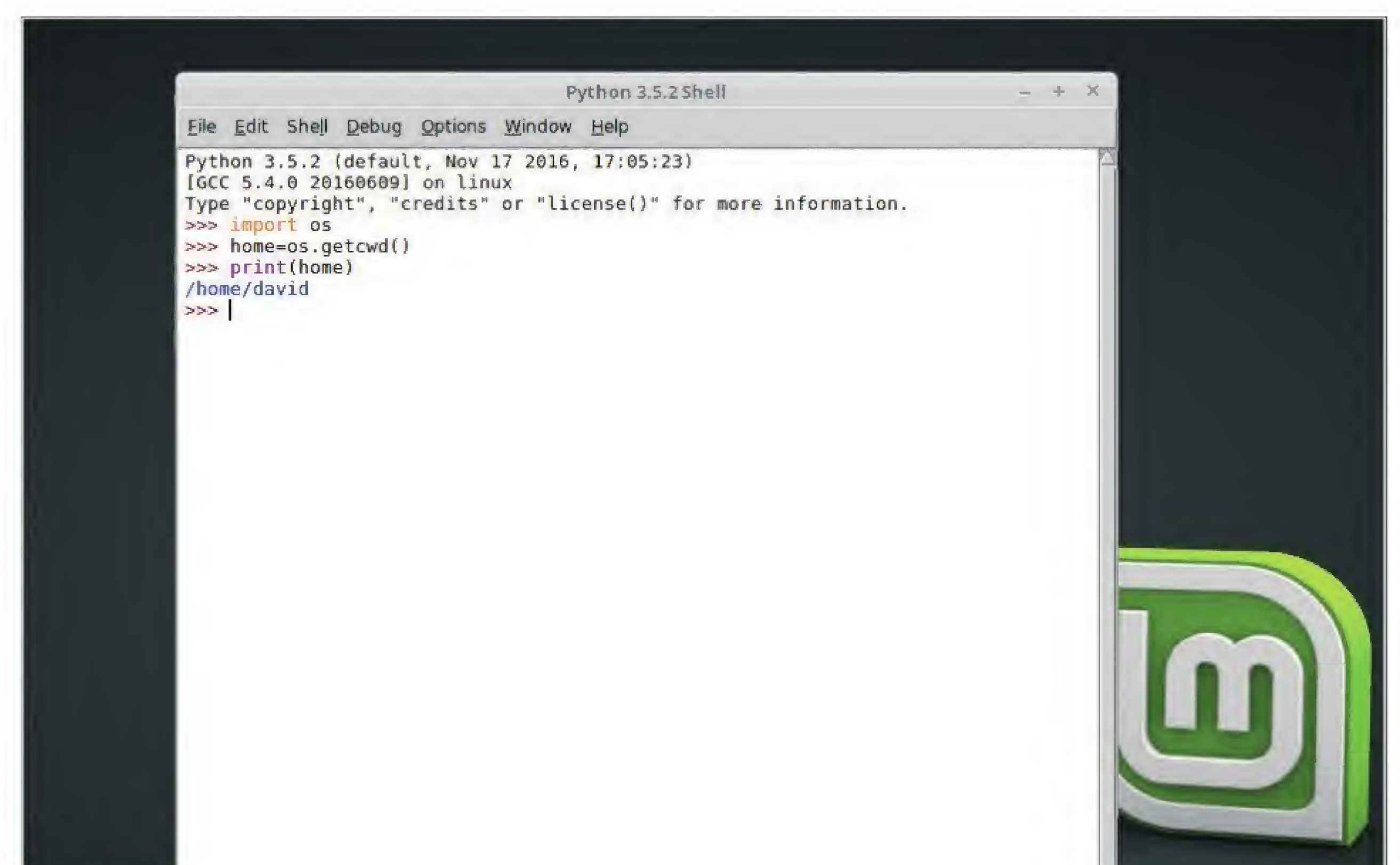
```
import os
home=os.getcwd()
print(home)
```



STEP 2 The returned result from printing the variable home is the current user's home folder on the system. In our example that's /home/pi; it will be different depending on the user name you login as and the operating system you use. For example, Windows 10 will output: C:\Program Files (x86)\Python36-32.

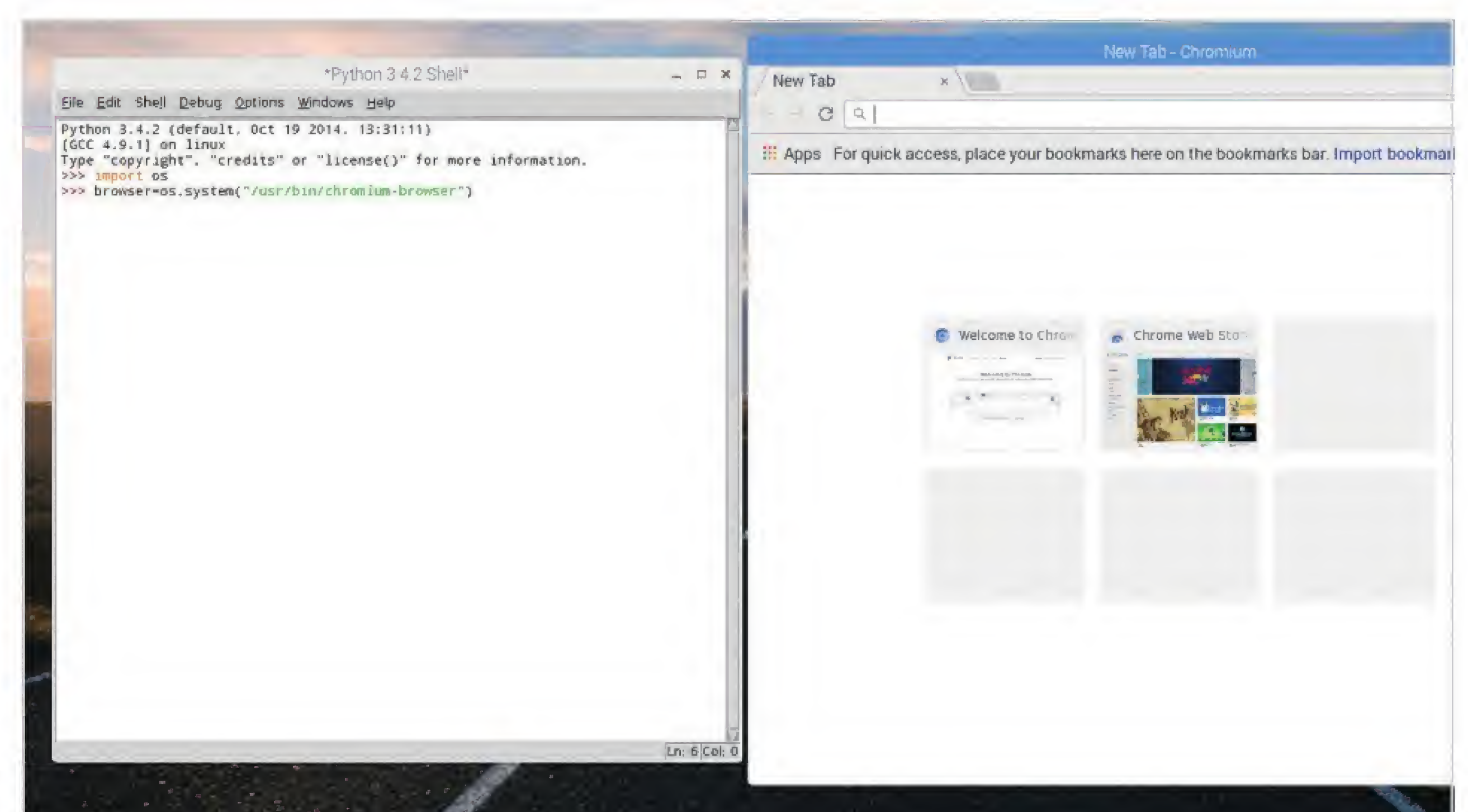


STEP 3 The Windows output is different as that's the current working directory of Python, as determined by the system; as you might suspect, the os.getcwd() function is asking Python to retrieve the Current Working Directory. Linux users will see something along the same lines as the Raspberry Pi, as will macOS users.



STEP 4 Yet another interesting element to the OS module, is its ability to launch programs that are installed in the host system. For instance, if you wanted to launch the Chromium browser from within a Python program you can use the command:

```
import os
browser=os.system("/usr/bin/chromium-browser")
```

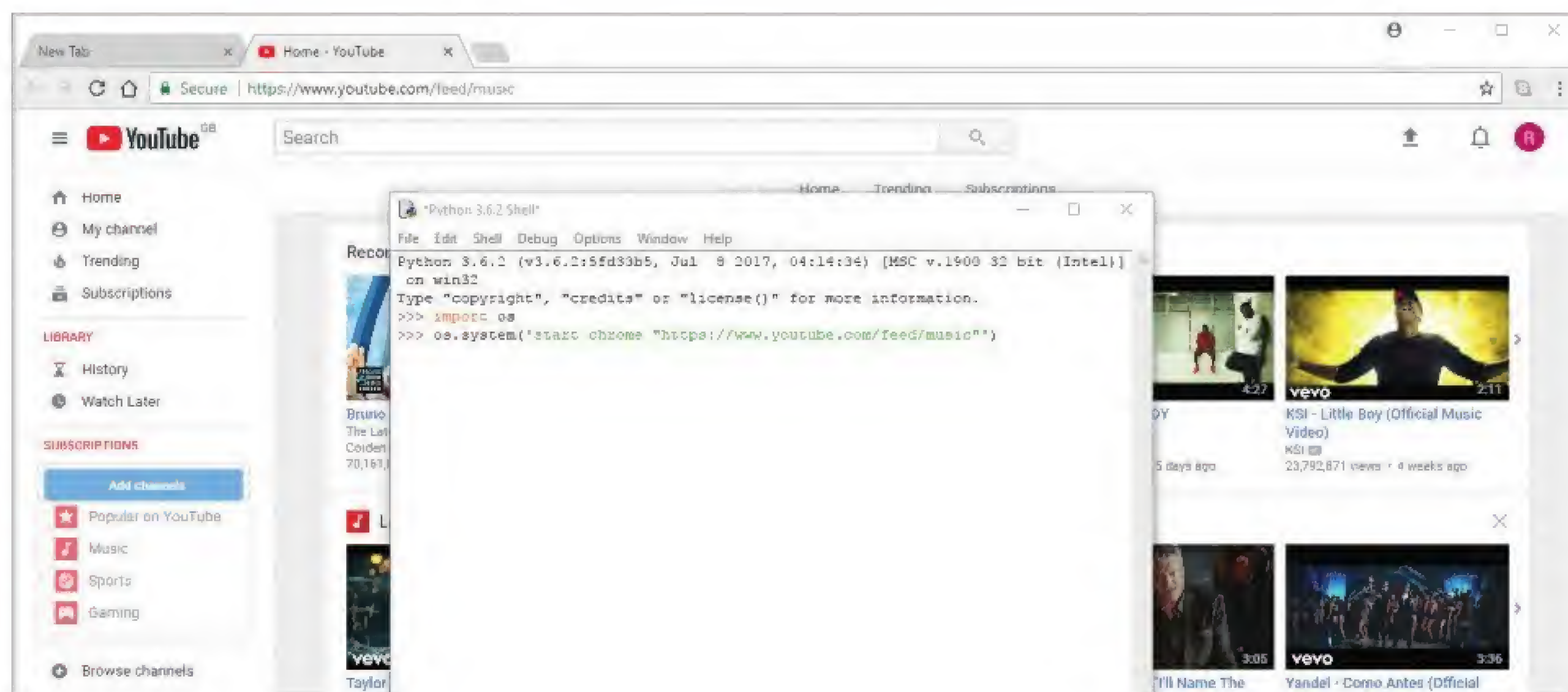




STEP 5

The `os.system()` function is what allows interaction with external programs; you can even call up previous Python programs using this method. You will obviously need to know the full path and program file name for it to work successfully. However, you can use the following:

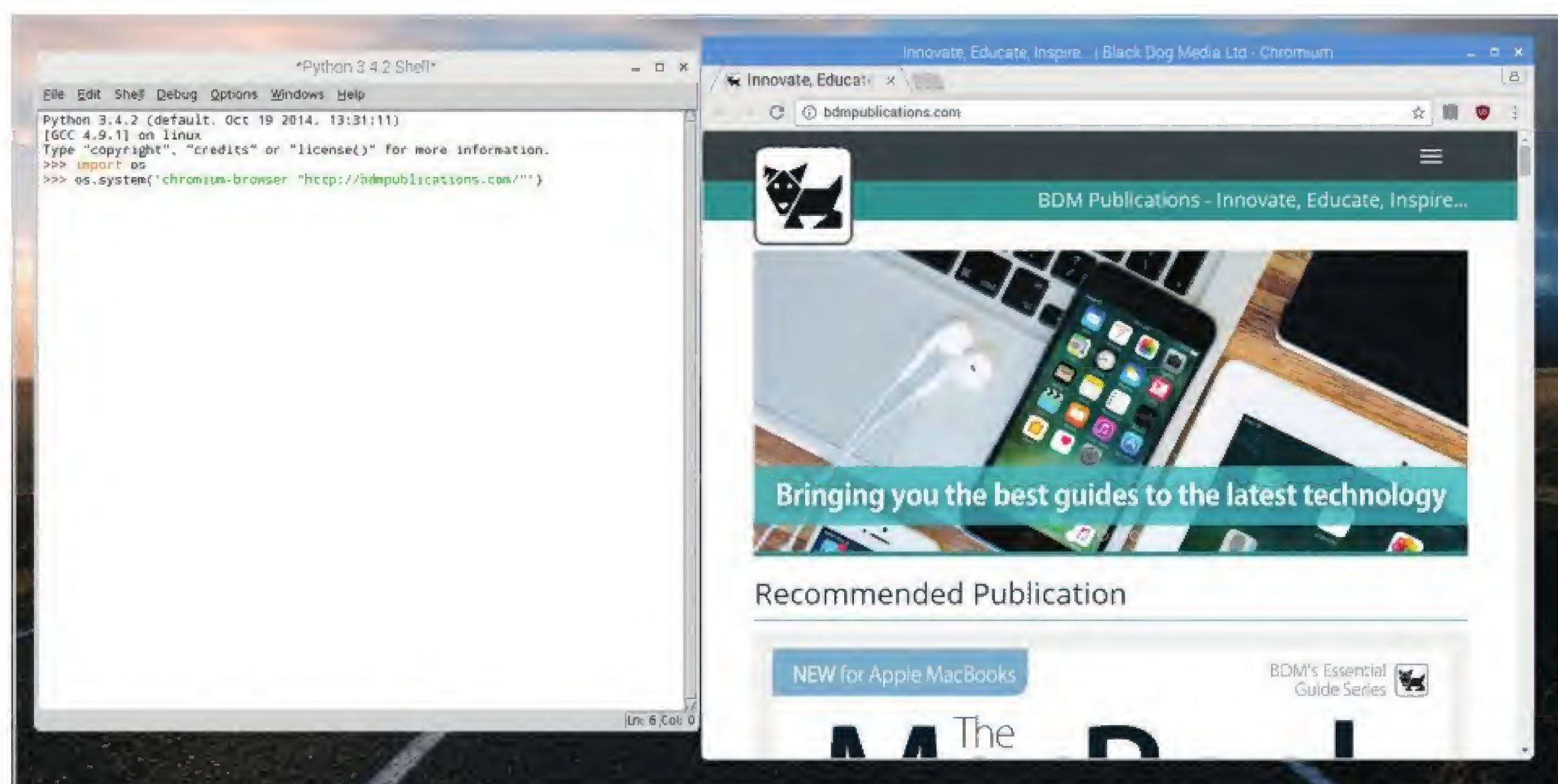
```
import os
os.system('start chrome "https://www.youtube.com/feed/music"')
```



STEP 6

For Step 5's example we used Windows, to show that the OS module works roughly the same across all platforms. In that case, we opened YouTube's music feed page, so it is therefore possible to open specific pages:

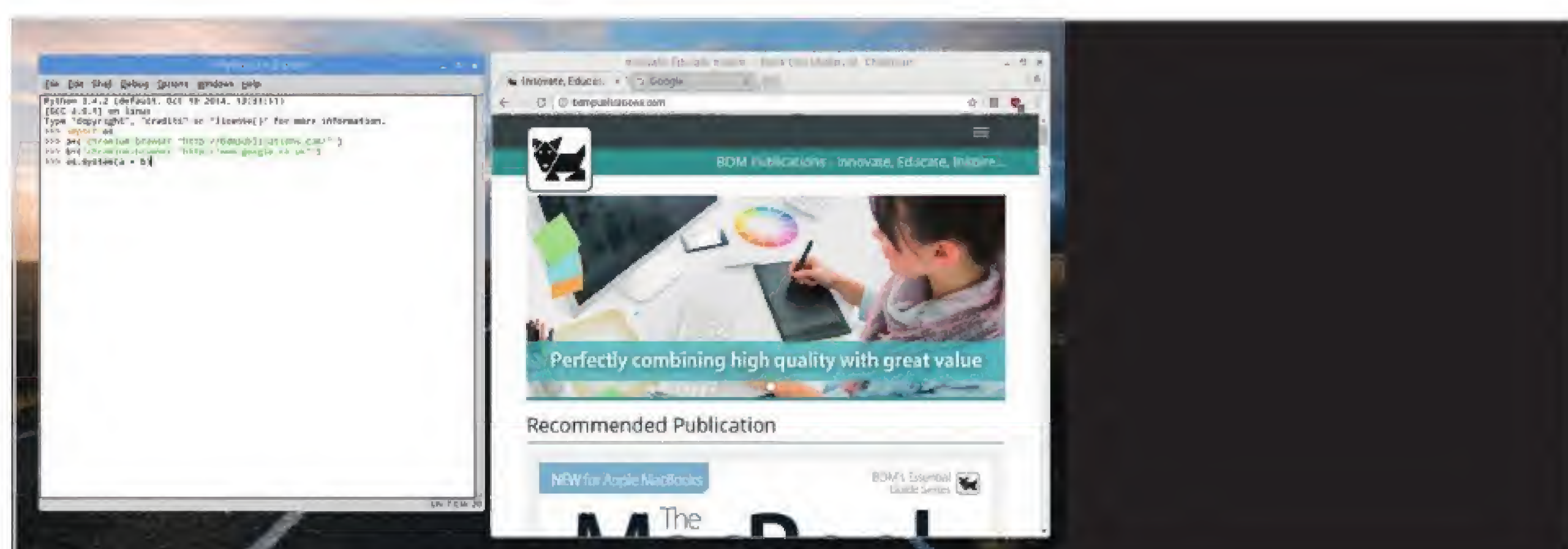
```
import os
os.system('chromium-browser "http://bdmpublications.com/"')
```



STEP 7

Note in the previous step's example the use of single and double-quotes. The single quotes encase the entire command and launching Chromium, whereas the double quotes open the specified page. You can even use variables to call multiple tabs in the same browser:

```
import os
a=('chromium-browser "http://bdmpublications.com/"')
b=('chromium-browser "http://www.google.co.uk"')
os.system(a + b)
```

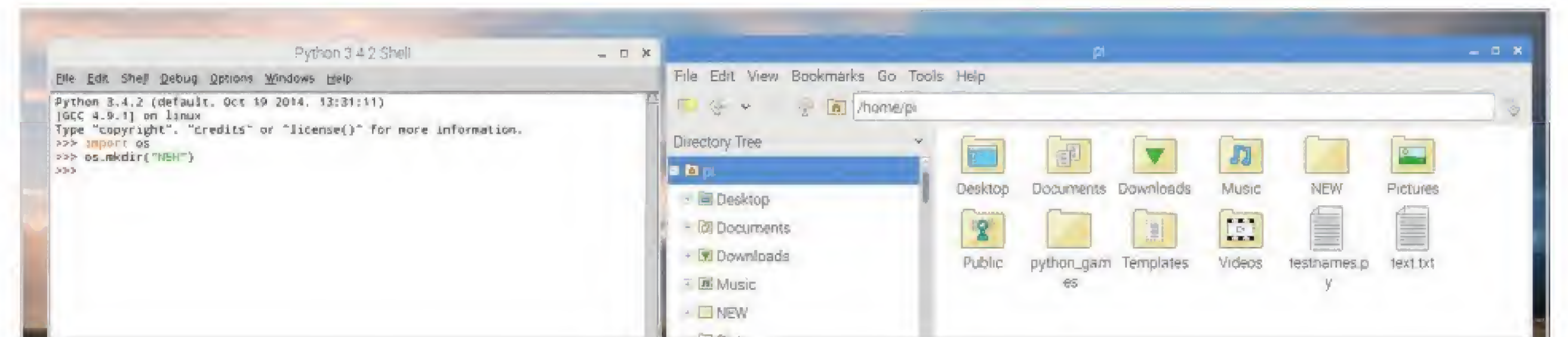


STEP 8

The ability to manipulate directories, or folders if you prefer, is one of the OS module's best features. For example, to create a new directory you can use:

```
import os
os.mkdir("NEW")
```

This creates a new directory within the Current Working Directory, named according to the object in the `mkdir` function.



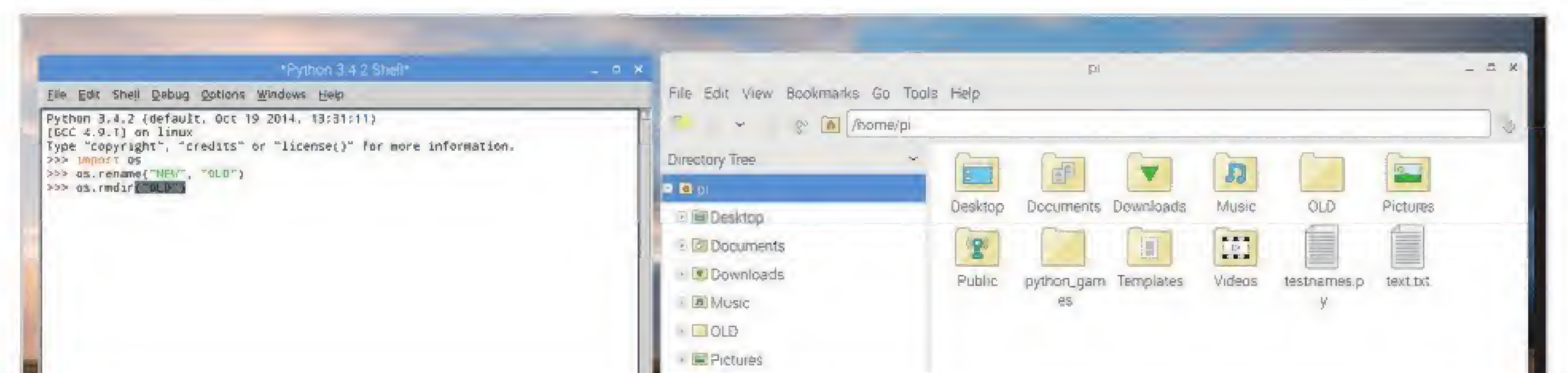
STEP 9

You can also rename any directories you've created by entering:

```
import os
os.rename("NEW", "OLD")
```

To delete them:

```
import os
os.rmdir("OLD")
```



STEP 10

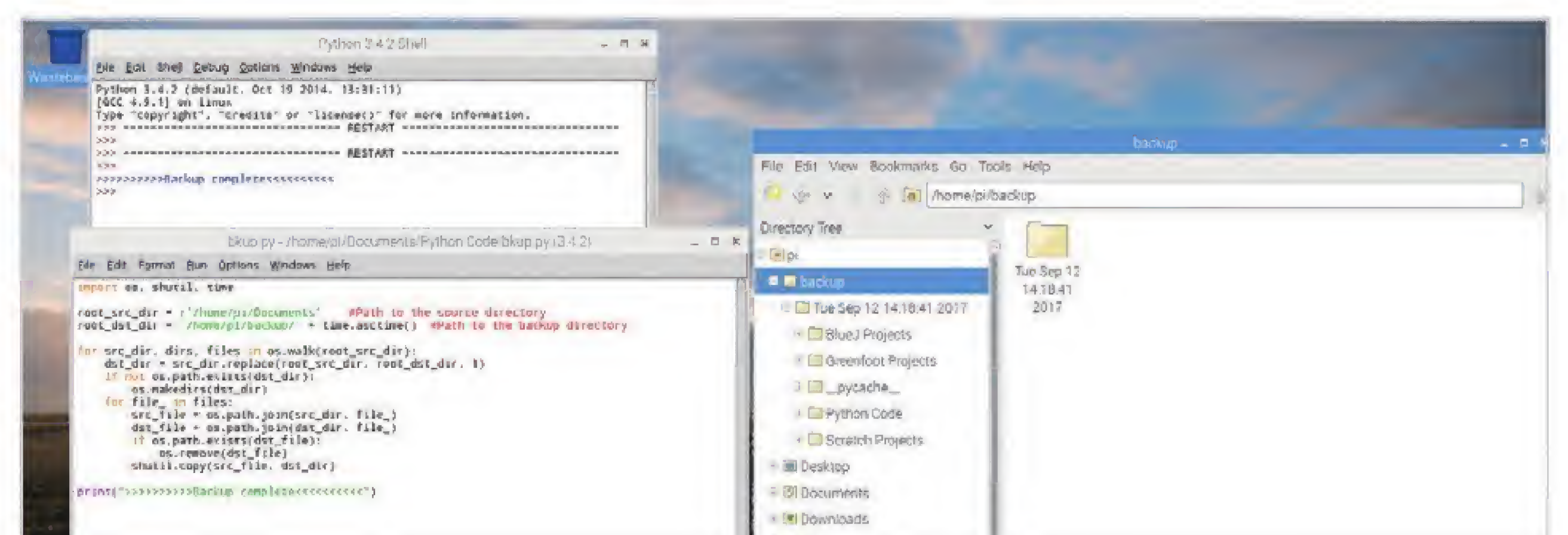
Another module that goes together with OS is `shutil`. You can use the `shutil` module together with OS and `time` to create a time-stamped backup directory, and copy files into it:

```
import os, shutil, time

root_src_dir = r'/home/pi/Documents'
root_dst_dir = '/home/pi/backup/' + time.asctime()

for src_dir, dirs, files in os.walk(root_src_dir):
    dst_dir = src_dir.replace(root_src_dir, root_dst_dir, 1)
    if not os.path.exists(dst_dir):
        os.makedirs(dst_dir)
    for file_ in files:
        src_file = os.path.join(src_dir, file_)
        dst_file = os.path.join(dst_dir, file_)
        if os.path.exists(dst_file):
            os.remove(dst_file)
        shutil.copy(src_file, dst_dir)

print(">>>>>>>>Backup complete<<<<<<<<<")
```





Random Module

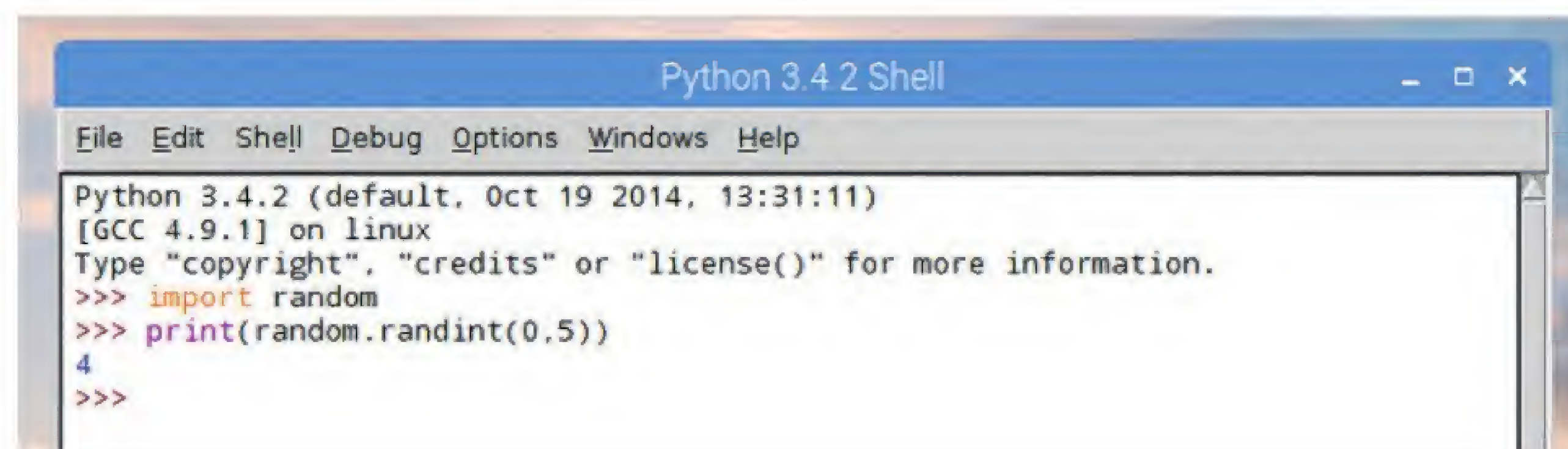
The random module is one you will likely come across many times in your Python programming lifetime; as the name suggests, it's designed to create random numbers or letters. However, it's not exactly random but it will suffice for most needs.

RANDOM NUMBERS

There are numerous functions within the random module, which when applied can create some interesting and very useful Python programs.

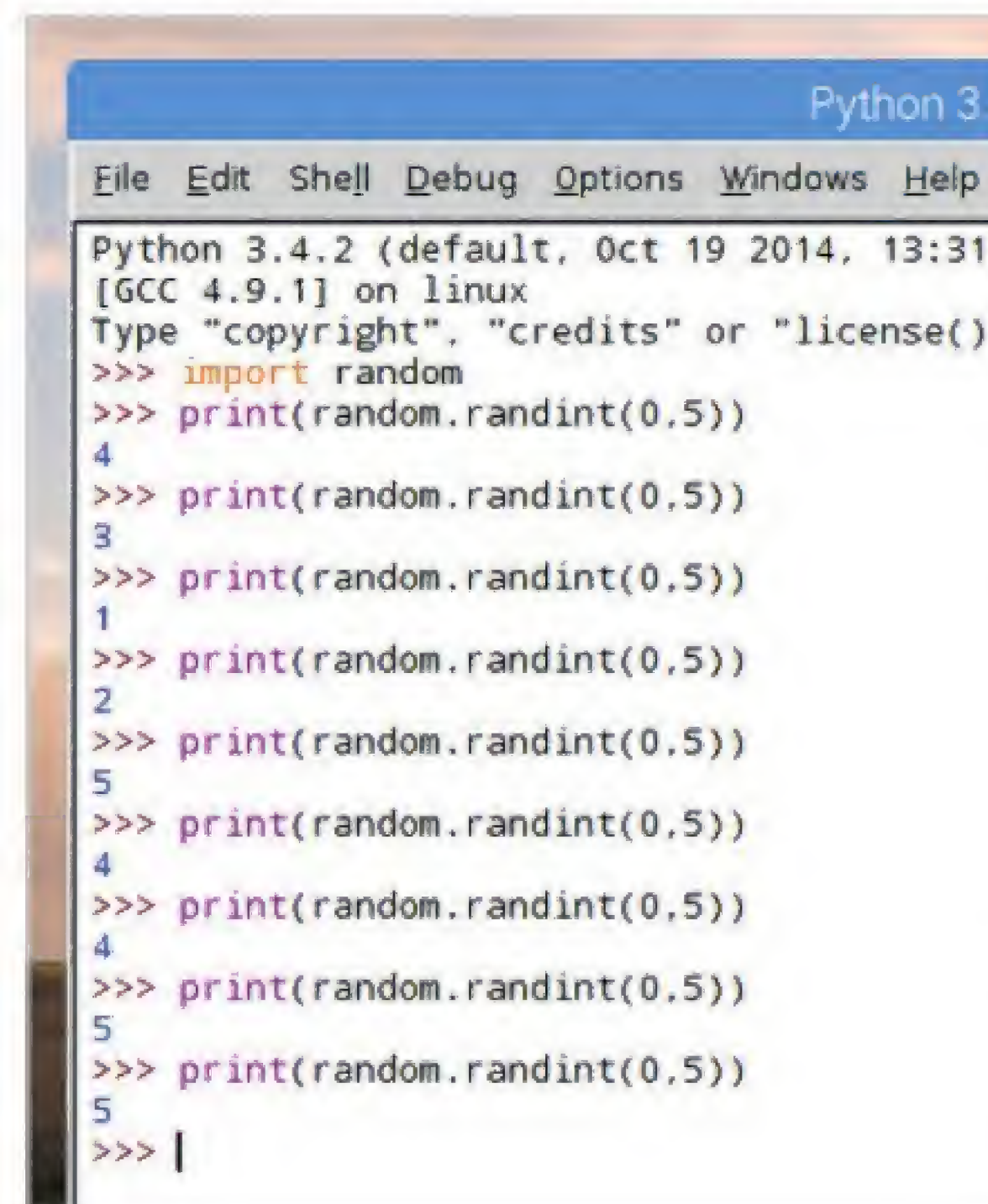
STEP 1 Just as with other modules you need to import random before you can use any of the functions we're going to look at in this tutorial. Let's begin by simply printing a random number from 1 to 5:

```
import random
print(random.randint(0,5))
```



```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> import random
>>> print(random.randint(0,5))
4
>>>
```

STEP 2 In our example the number four was returned. However, enter the print function a few more times and it will display different integer values from the set of numbers given, zero to five. The overall effect, although pseudo-random, is adequate for the average programmer to utilise in their code.

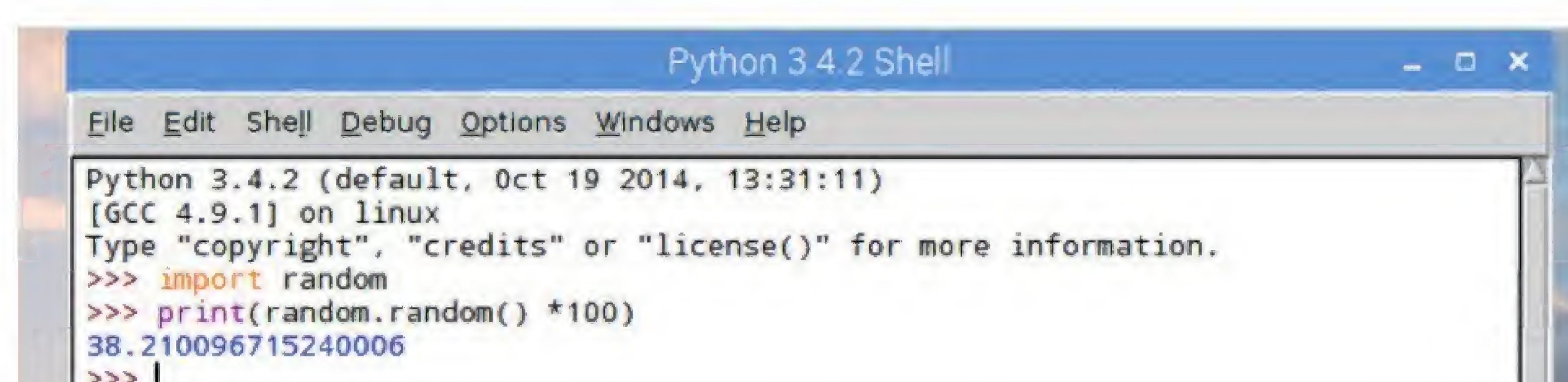


```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> import random
>>> print(random.randint(0,5))
4
>>> print(random.randint(0,5))
3
>>> print(random.randint(0,5))
1
>>> print(random.randint(0,5))
2
>>> print(random.randint(0,5))
5
>>> print(random.randint(0,5))
4
>>> print(random.randint(0,5))
4
>>> print(random.randint(0,5))
5
>>> print(random.randint(0,5))
5
>>> |
```

STEP 3 For a bigger set of numbers, including floating point values, you can extend the range by using the multiplication sign:

```
import random
print(random.random() * 100)
```

Will display a floating point number between 0 and 100, to the tune of around fifteen decimal points.

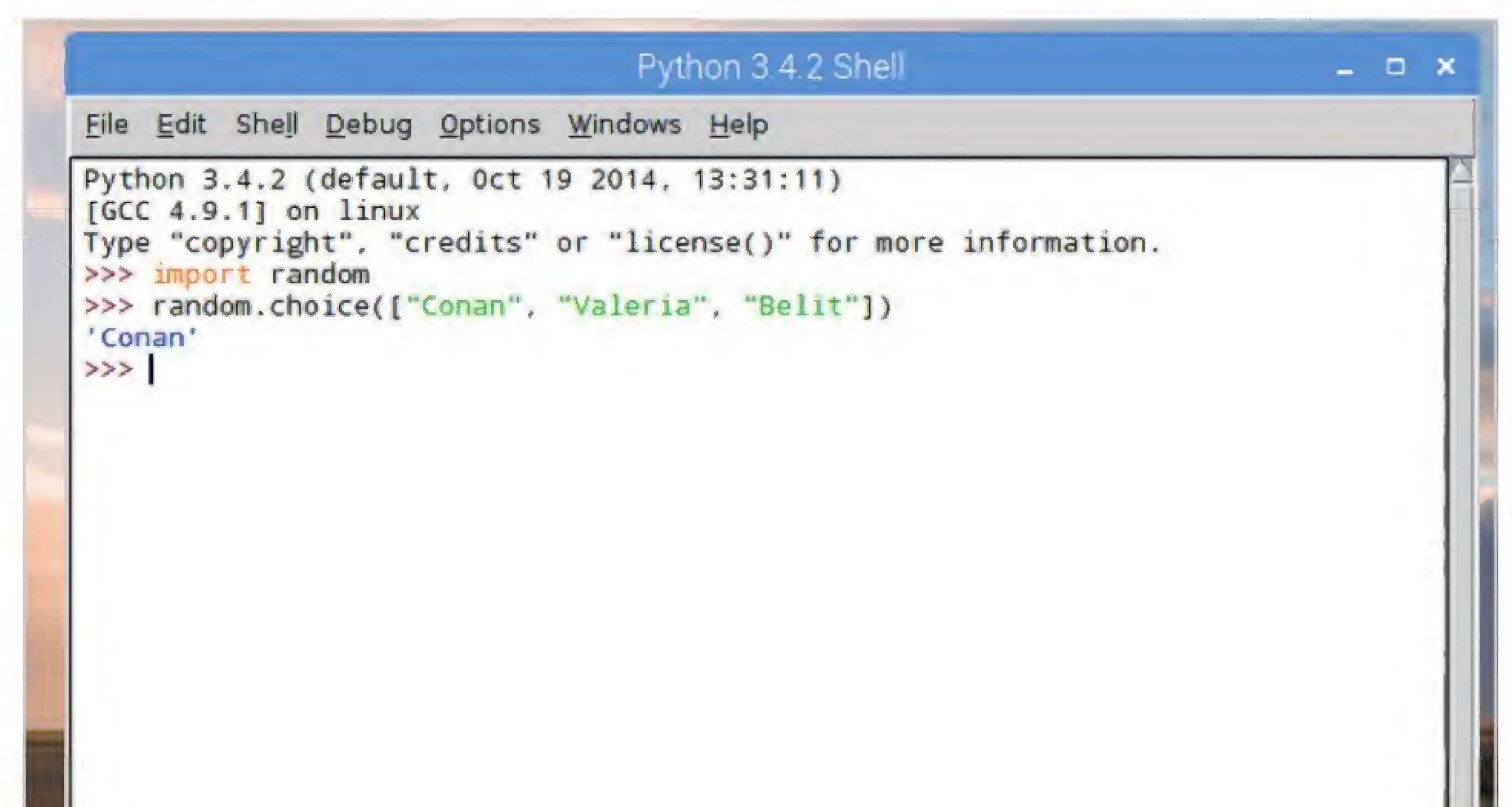


```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> import random
>>> print(random.random() * 100)
38.210096715240006
>>> |
```

STEP 4 However, the random module isn't used exclusively for numbers. You can use it to select an entry from a list from random, and the list can contain anything:

```
import random
random.choice(["Conan", "Valeria", "Belit"])
```

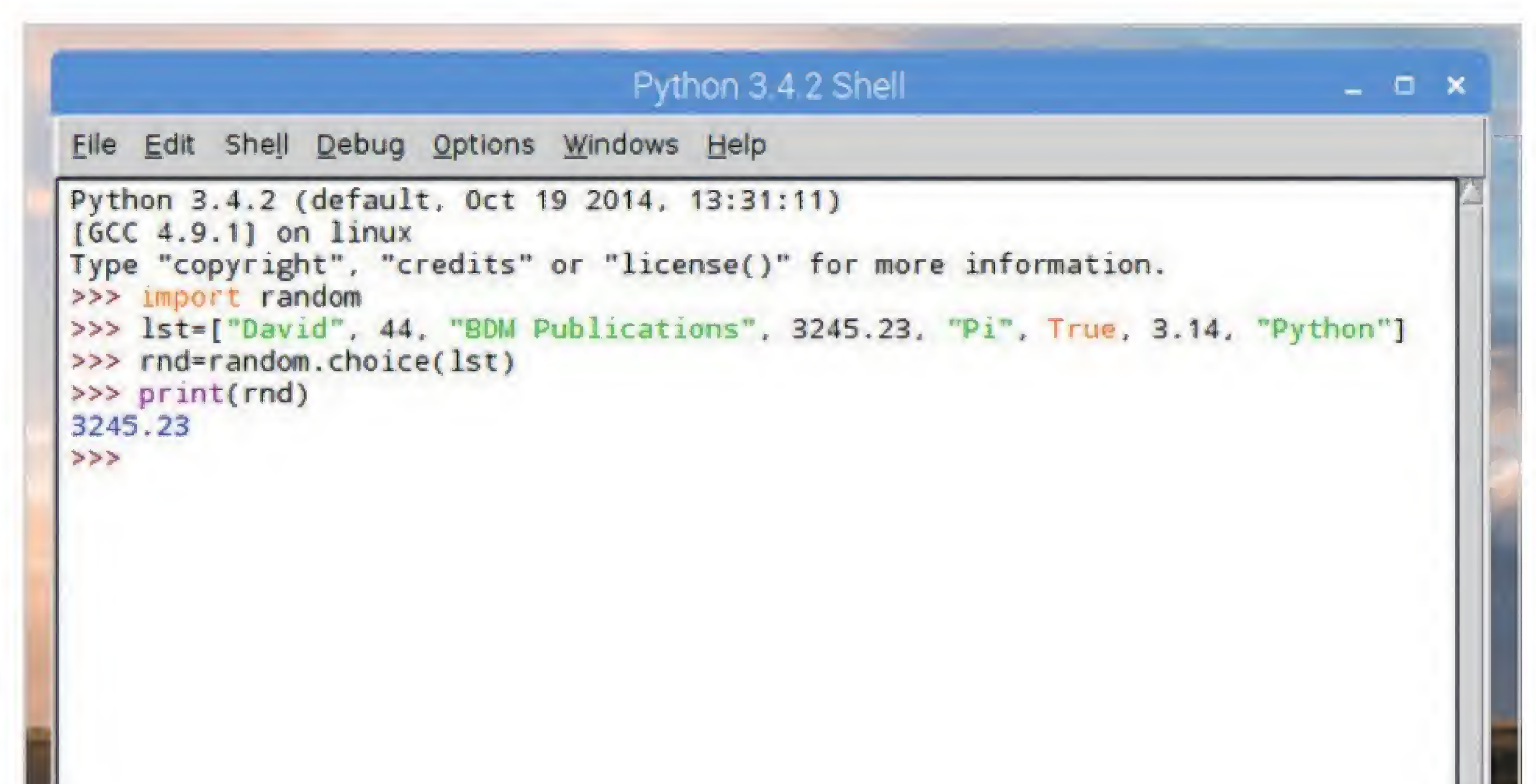
This will display one of the names of our adventurers at random, which is a great addition to a text adventure game.



```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> import random
>>> random.choice(["Conan", "Valeria", "Belit"])
'Conan'
>>> |
```

STEP 5 You can extend the previous example somewhat by having random.choice() select from a list of mixed variables. For instance:

```
import random
lst=["David", 44, "BDM Publications", 3245.23, "Pi", True, 3.14, "Python"]
rnd=random.choice(lst)
print(rnd)
```



```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> import random
>>> lst=["David", 44, "BDM Publications", 3245.23, "Pi", True, 3.14, "Python"]
>>> rnd=random.choice(lst)
>>> print(rnd)
3245.23
>>>
```




Tkinter Module

Whilst running your code from the command line, or even in the Shell, is perfectly fine, Python is capable of so much more. The Tkinter module enables the programmer to set up a Graphical User Interface to interact with the user, and it's surprisingly powerful too.

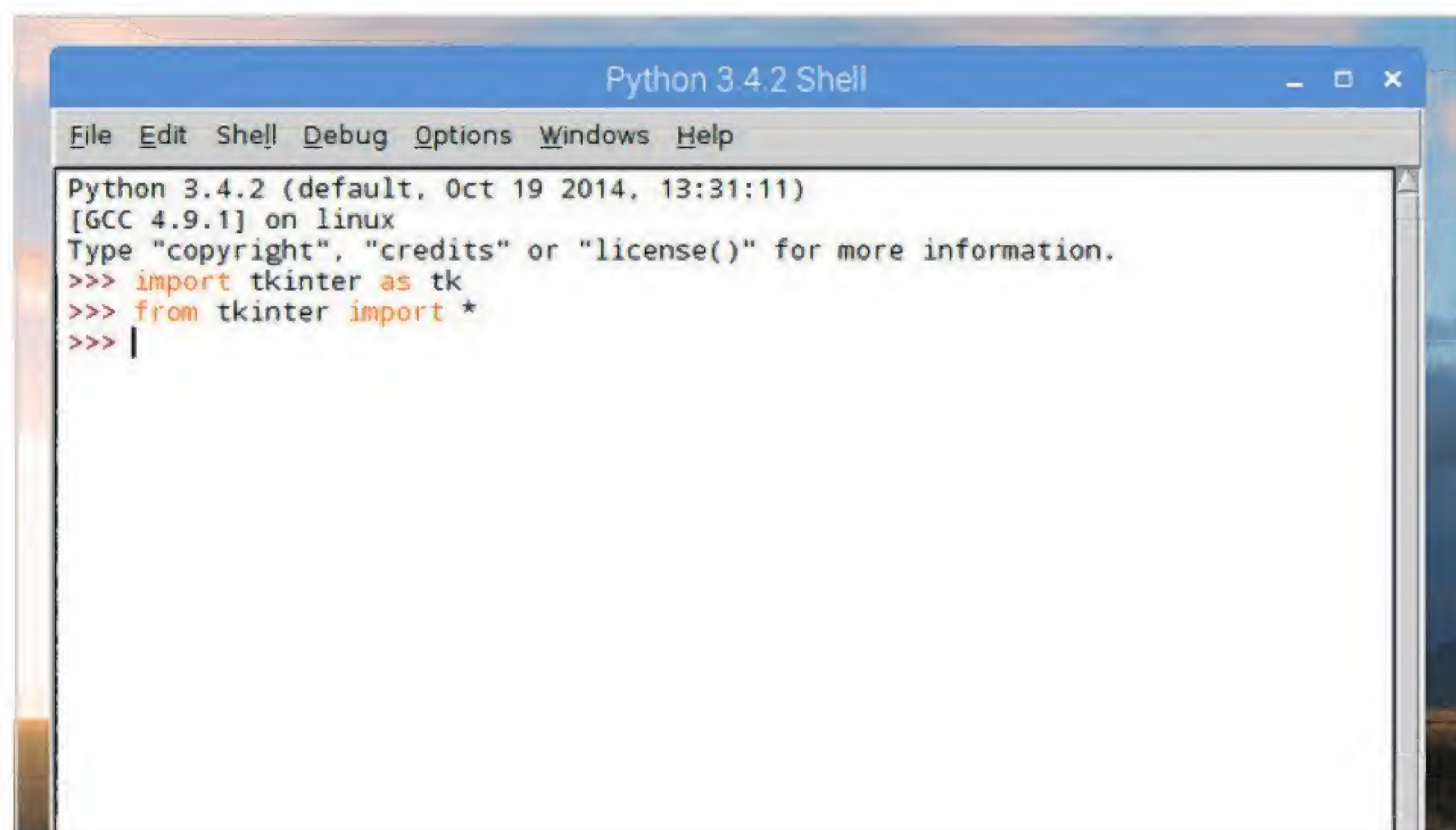
GETTING GUI

Tkinter is easy to use but there's a lot more you can do with it. Let's start by seeing how it works and getting some code into it. Before long you will discover just how powerful this module really is.

STEP 1

Tkinter is usually built into Python 3. However, if it's available when you enter: `import tkinter`, then you need to `pip install tkinter` from the command prompt. We can start to import modules differently than before, to save on typing and by importing all their contents:

```
import tkinter as tk
from tkinter import *
```



STEP 3

The ideal approach is to add `mainloop()` into the code to control the Tkinter event loop, but we'll get to that soon. You've just created a Tkinter widget and there are several more we can play around with:

```
btn=Button()
btn.pack()
btn["text"]="Hello everyone!"
```

The first line focuses on the newly created window. Click back into the Shell and continue the other lines.

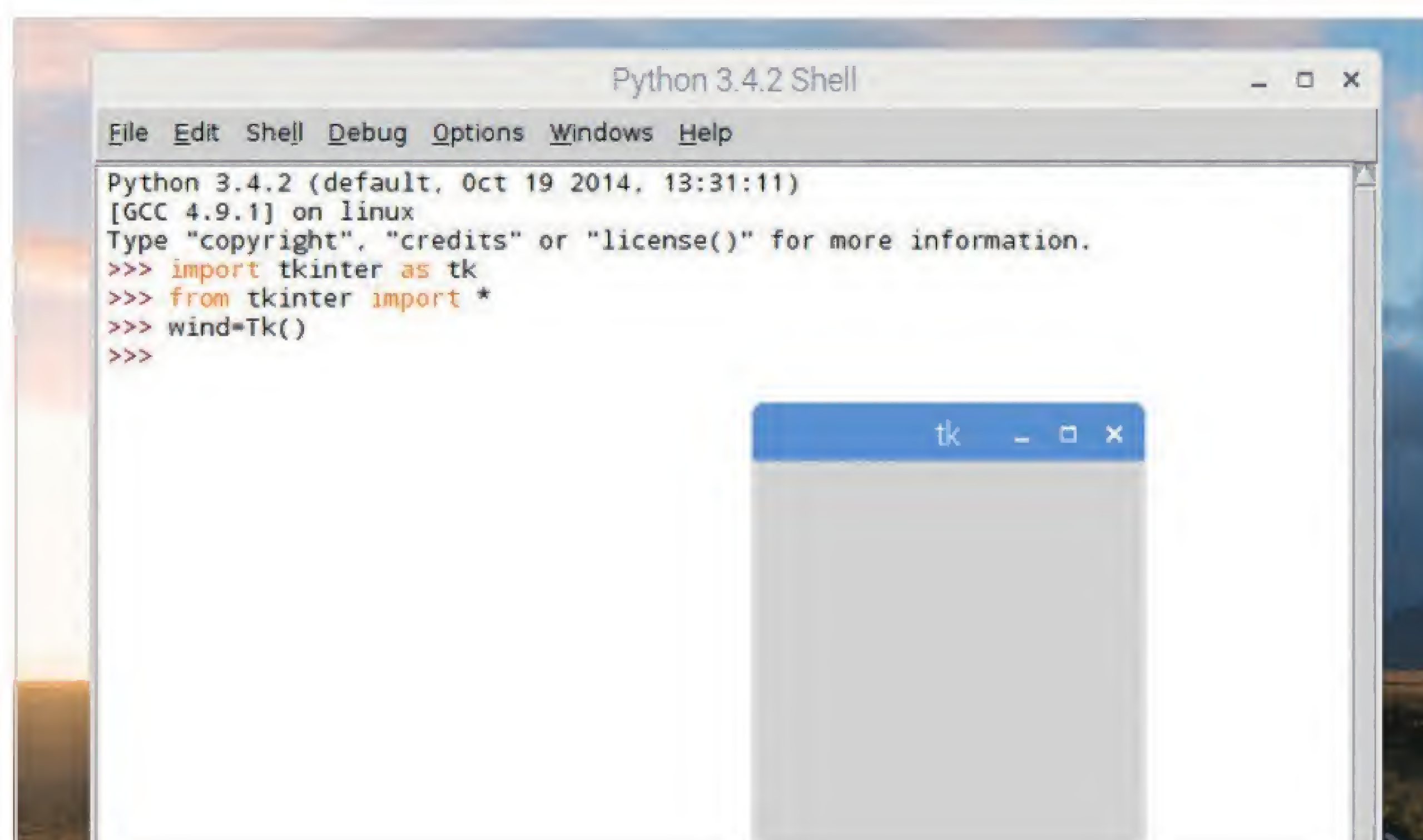


STEP 2

It's not recommended to import everything from a module using the asterisk but it won't do any harm normally. Let's begin by creating a basic GUI window, enter:

```
wind=Tk()
```

This creates a small, basic window. There's not much else to do at this point but click the X in the corner to close the window.



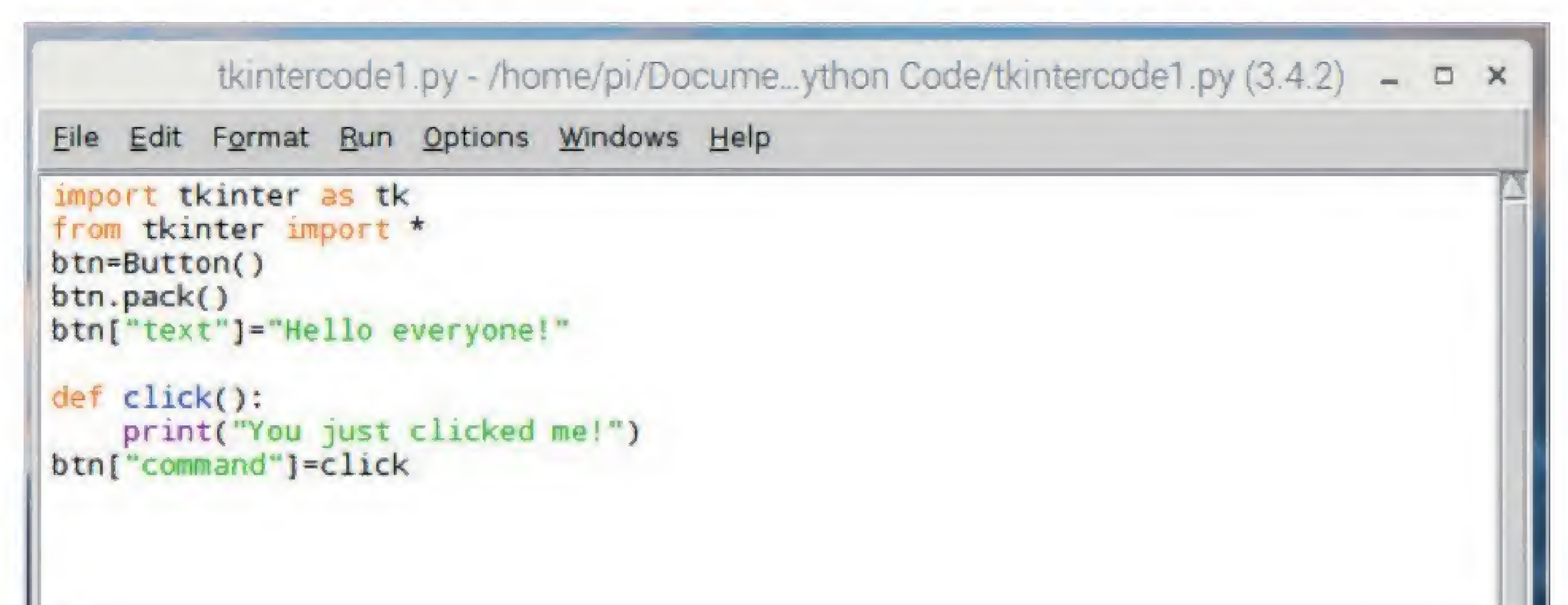
STEP 4

You can combine the above into a New File:

```
import tkinter as tk
from tkinter import *
btn=Button()
btn.pack()
btn["text"]="Hello everyone!"
```

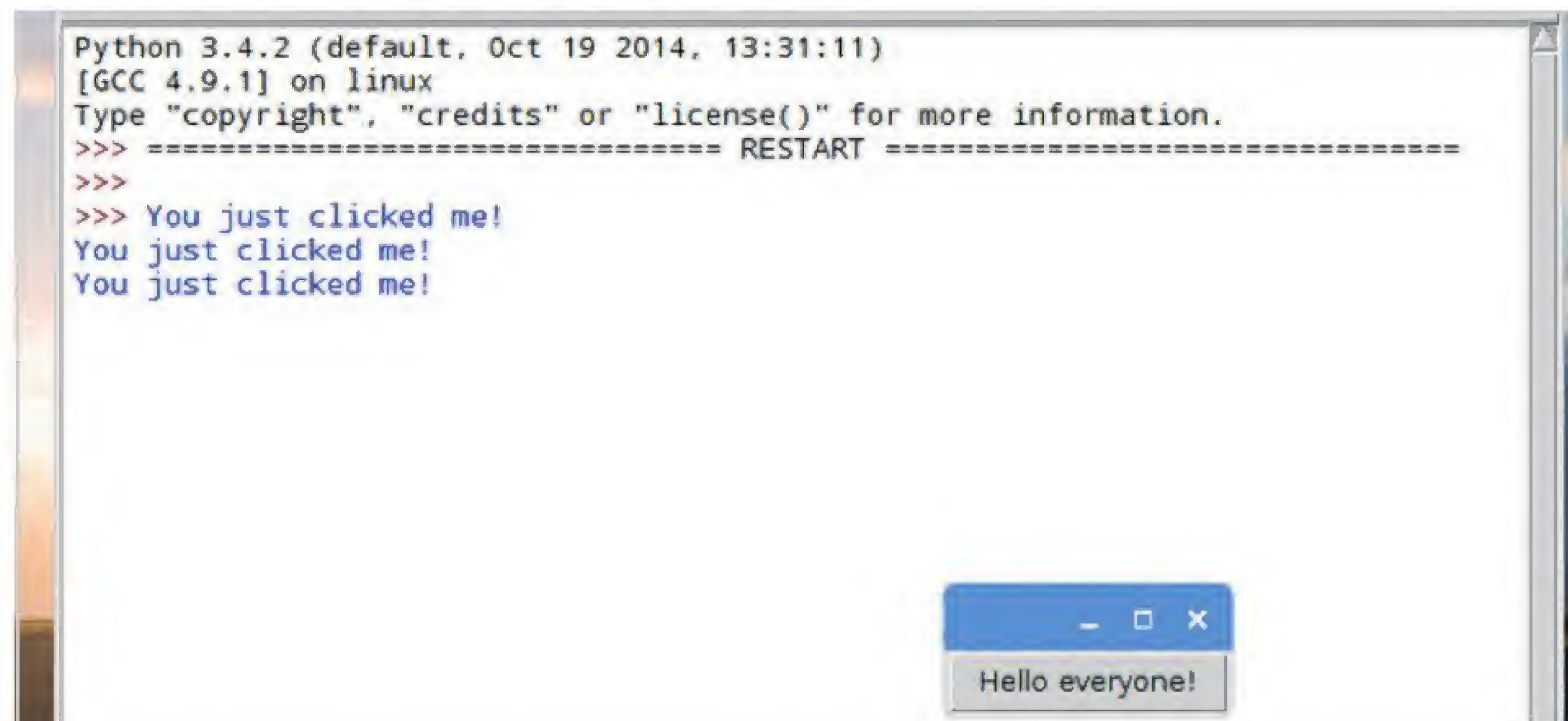
Then add some button interactions:

```
def click():
    print("You just clicked me!")
btn["command"]=click
```



**STEP 5**

Save and execute the code from Step 5 and a window appears with 'Hello everyone!' inside. If you click the Hello everyone! button, the Shell will output the text 'You just clicked me!'. It's simple but shows you what can be achieved with a few lines of code.

**STEP 6**

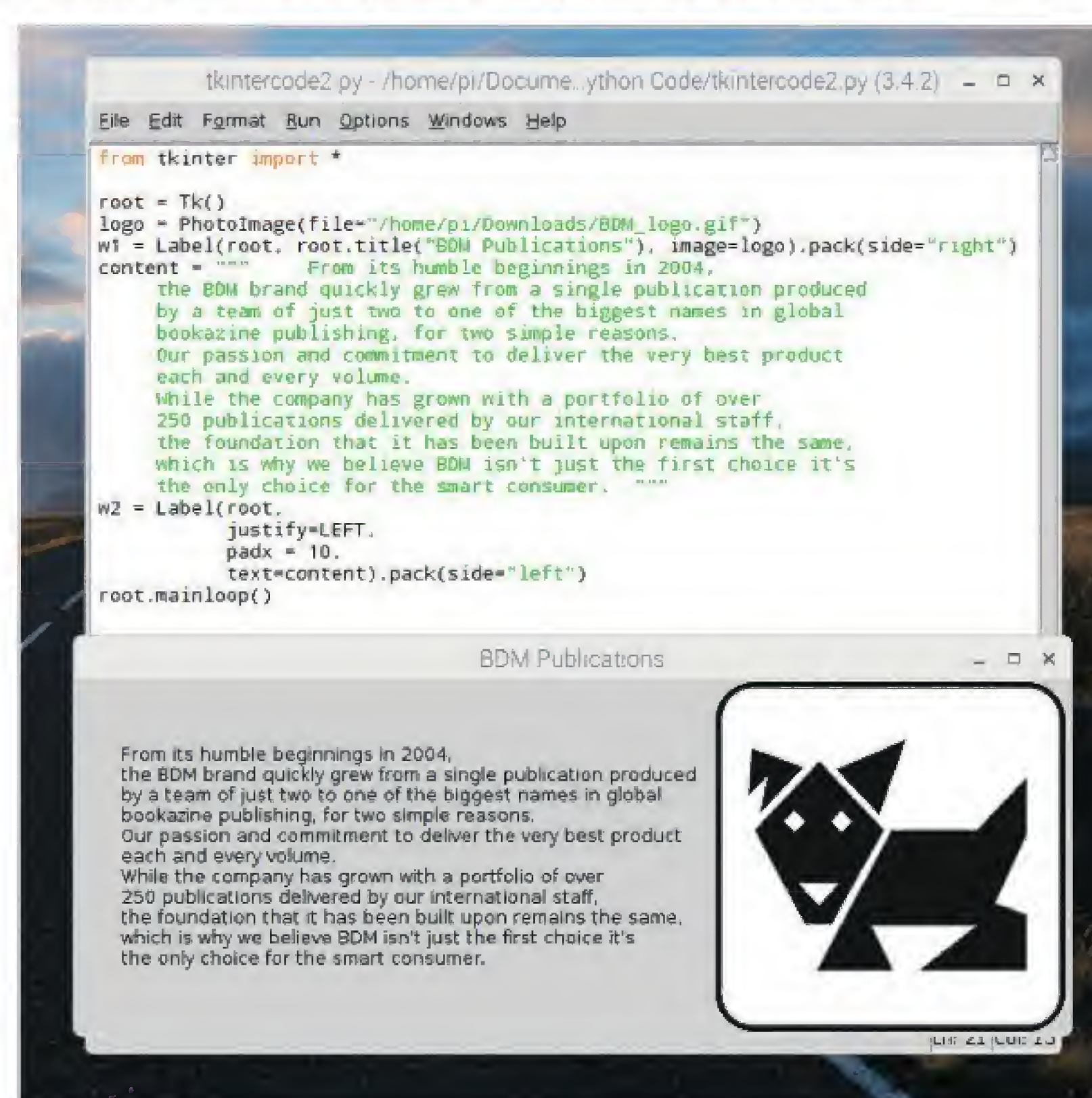
You can also display both text and images within a Tkinter window. However, only GIF, PGM or PPM formats are supported. So find an image and convert it before using the code. Here's an example using the BDM Publishing logo:

```
from tkinter import *

root = Tk()
logo = PhotoImage(file="/home/pi/Downloads/BDM_logo.gif")
w1 = Label(root, root.title("BDM Publications"),
image=logo).pack(side="right")
content = """ From its humble beginnings in 2004,
the BDM brand quickly grew from a single publication produced
by a team of just two to one of the biggest names in global
bookazine publishing, for two simple reasons. Our passion and
commitment to deliver the very best product each and every
volume. While the company has grown with a portfolio of over
250 publications delivered by our international staff, the
foundation that it has been built upon remains the same,
which is why we believe BDM isn't just the first choice it's
the only choice for the smart consumer. """
w2 = Label(root,
justify=LEFT,
padx = 10,
text=content).pack(side="left")
root.mainloop()
```

STEP 7

The previous code is quite weighty, mostly due to the content variable holding a part of BDM's About page from the company website. You can obviously change the content, the root.title and the image to suit your needs.

**STEP 8**

You can create radio buttons too. Try:

```
from tkinter import *

root = Tk()
v = IntVar()

Label(root, root.title("Options"), text="Choose
a preferred language:"),
justify = LEFT, padx = 20).pack()
Radiobutton(root,
text="Python",
padx = 20,
variable=v,
value=1).pack(anchor=W)
Radiobutton(root,
text="C++",
padx = 20,
variable=v,
value=2).pack(anchor=W)

mainloop()
```

STEP 9

You can also create check boxes, with buttons and output to the Shell:

```
from tkinter import *
root = Tk()

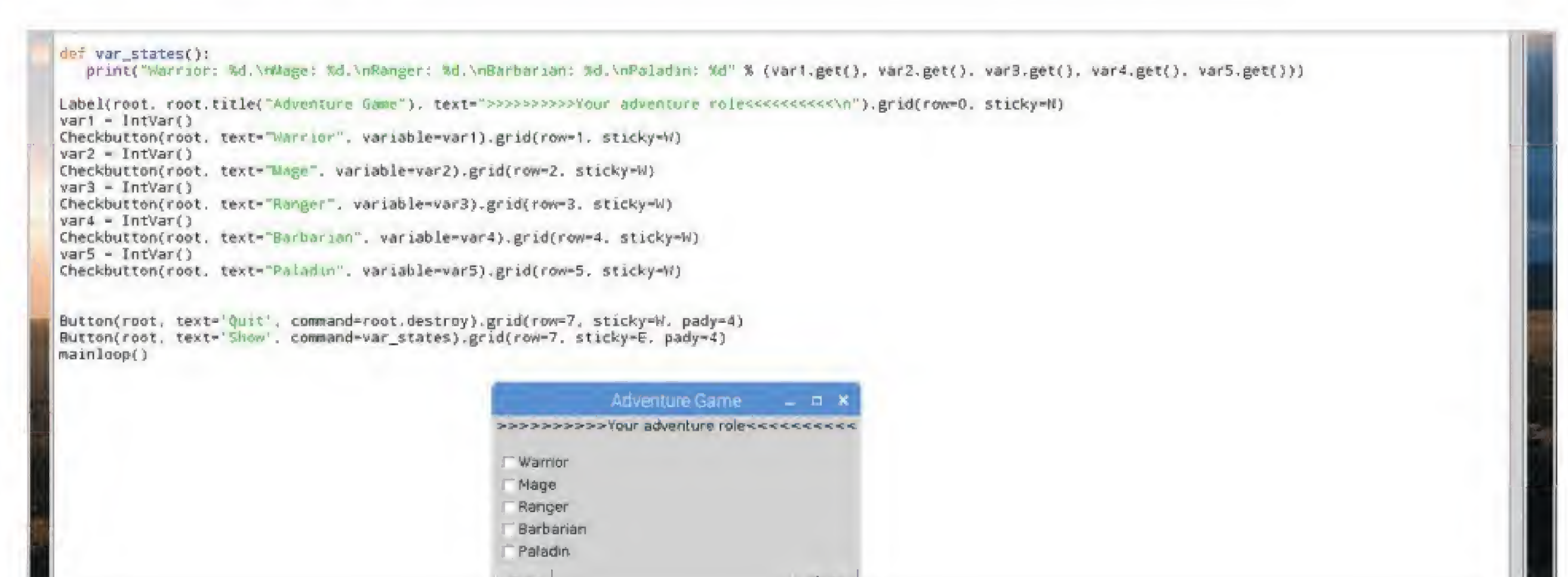
def var_states():
    print("Warrior: %d,\nMage: %d" % (var1.get(),
var2.get()))

Label(root, root.title("Adventure Game"),
text=">>>>>>>>>Your adventure role<<<<<<<<<").
grid(row=0, sticky=N)
var1 = IntVar()
Checkbutton(root, text="Warrior", variable=var1).
grid(row=1, sticky=W)
var2 = IntVar()
Checkbutton(root, text="Mage", variable=var2).
grid(row=2, sticky=W)
Button(root, text='Quit', command=root.destroy).
grid(row=3, sticky=W, pady=4)
Button(root, text='Show', command=var_states).
grid(row=3, sticky=E, pady=4)

mainloop()
```

STEP 10

The code from Step 9 introduced some new geometry elements into Tkinter. Note the sticky=N, E and W arguments. These describe the locations of the check boxes and buttons (North, East, South and West). The row argument places them on separate rows. Have a play around and see what you get.





Pygame Module

We've had a brief look at the Pygame module already but there's a lot more to it that needs exploring. Pygame was developed to help Python programmers create either graphical or text-based games.

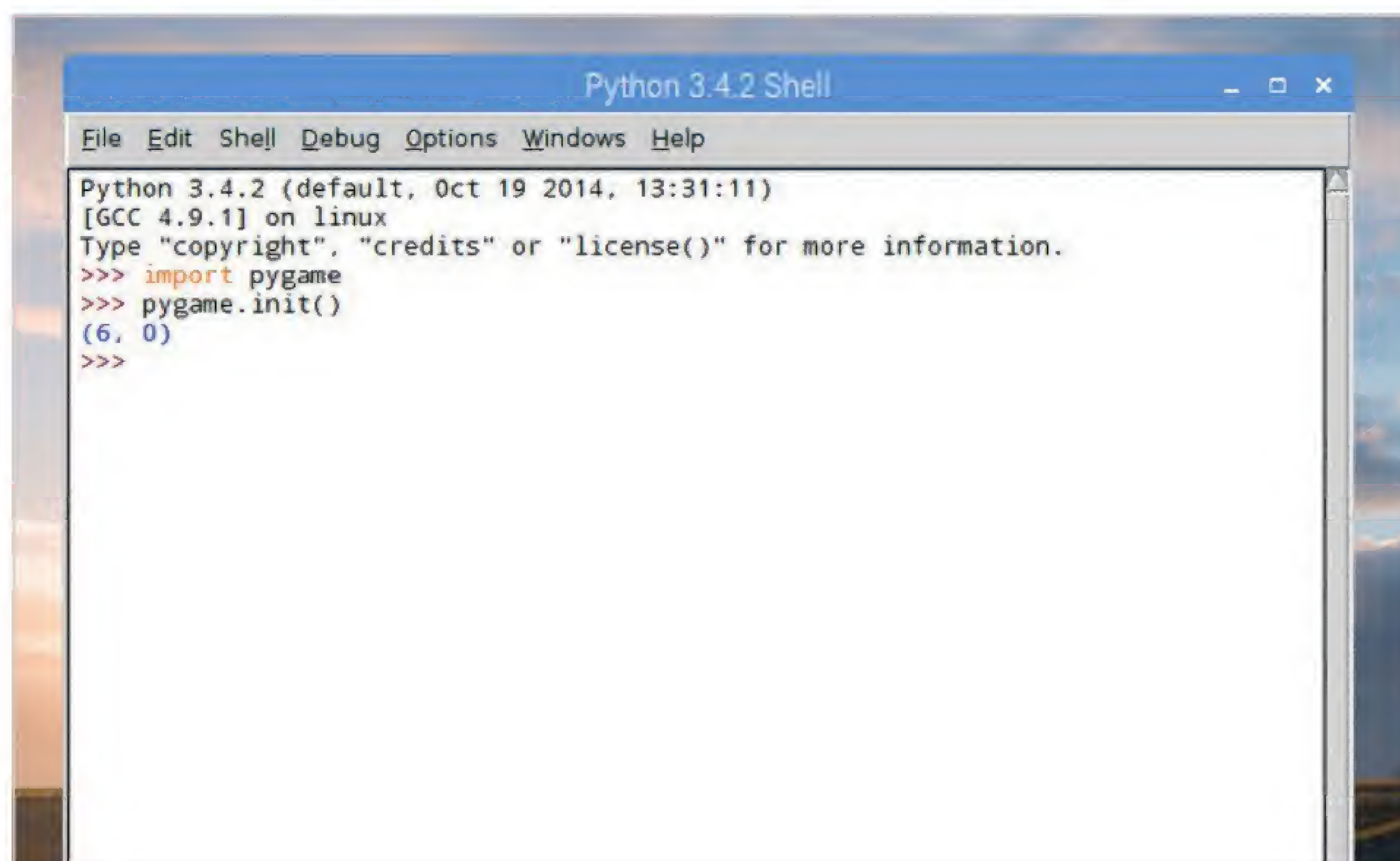
PYGAMING

Pygame isn't an inherent module to Python but those using the Raspberry Pi will already have it installed. Everyone else will need to use: **pip install pygame** from the command prompt.

STEP 1 Naturally you need to load up the Pygame modules into memory before you're able to utilise them.

Once that's done Pygame requires the user to initialise it prior to any of the functions being used:

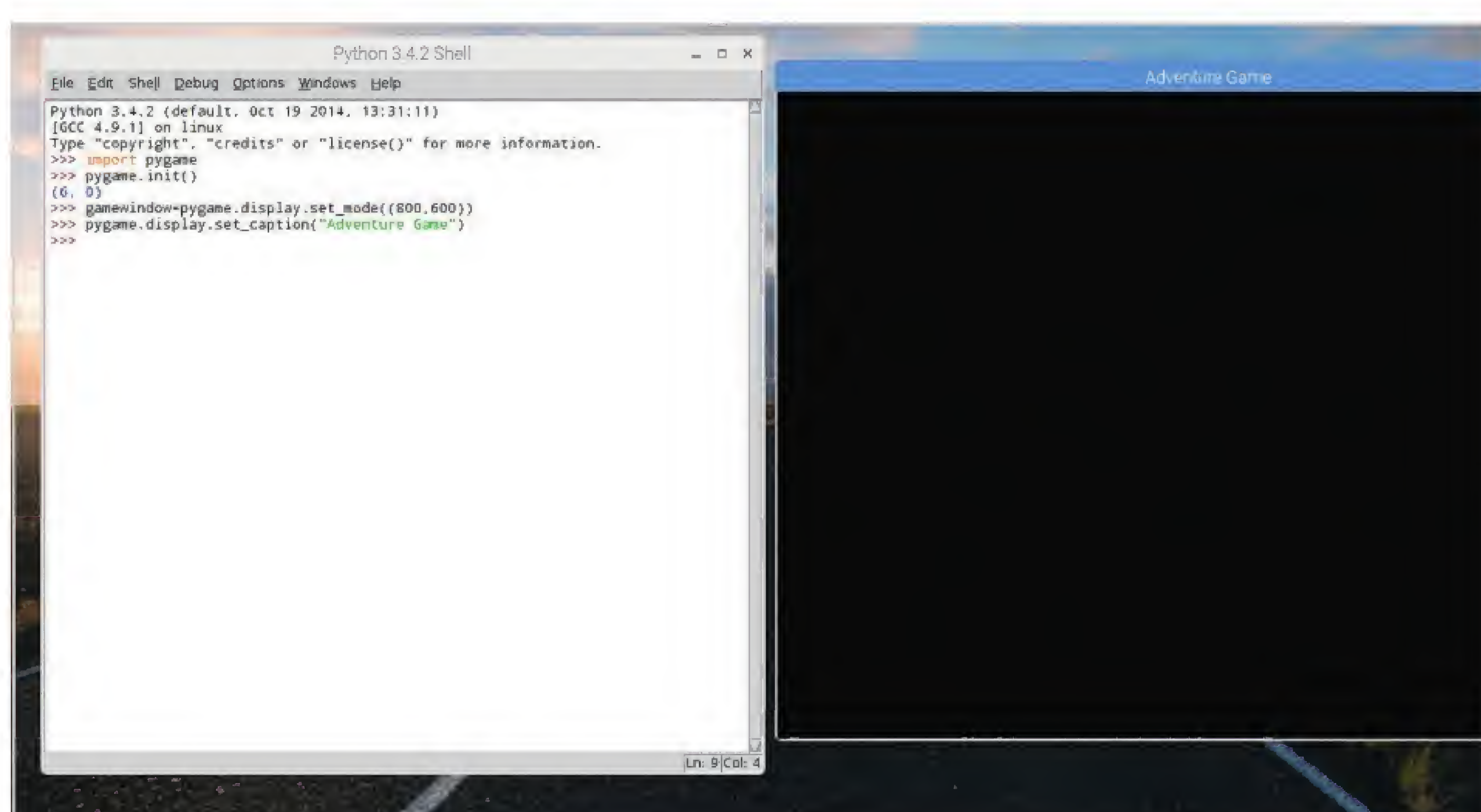
```
import pygame
pygame.init()
```



STEP 2 Let's create a simple game ready window, and give it a title:

```
gamewindow=pygame.display.set_mode((800,600))
pygame.display.set_caption("Adventure Game")
```

You can see that after the first line is entered, you need to click back into the IDLE Shell to continue entering code; also, you can change the title of the window to anything you like.



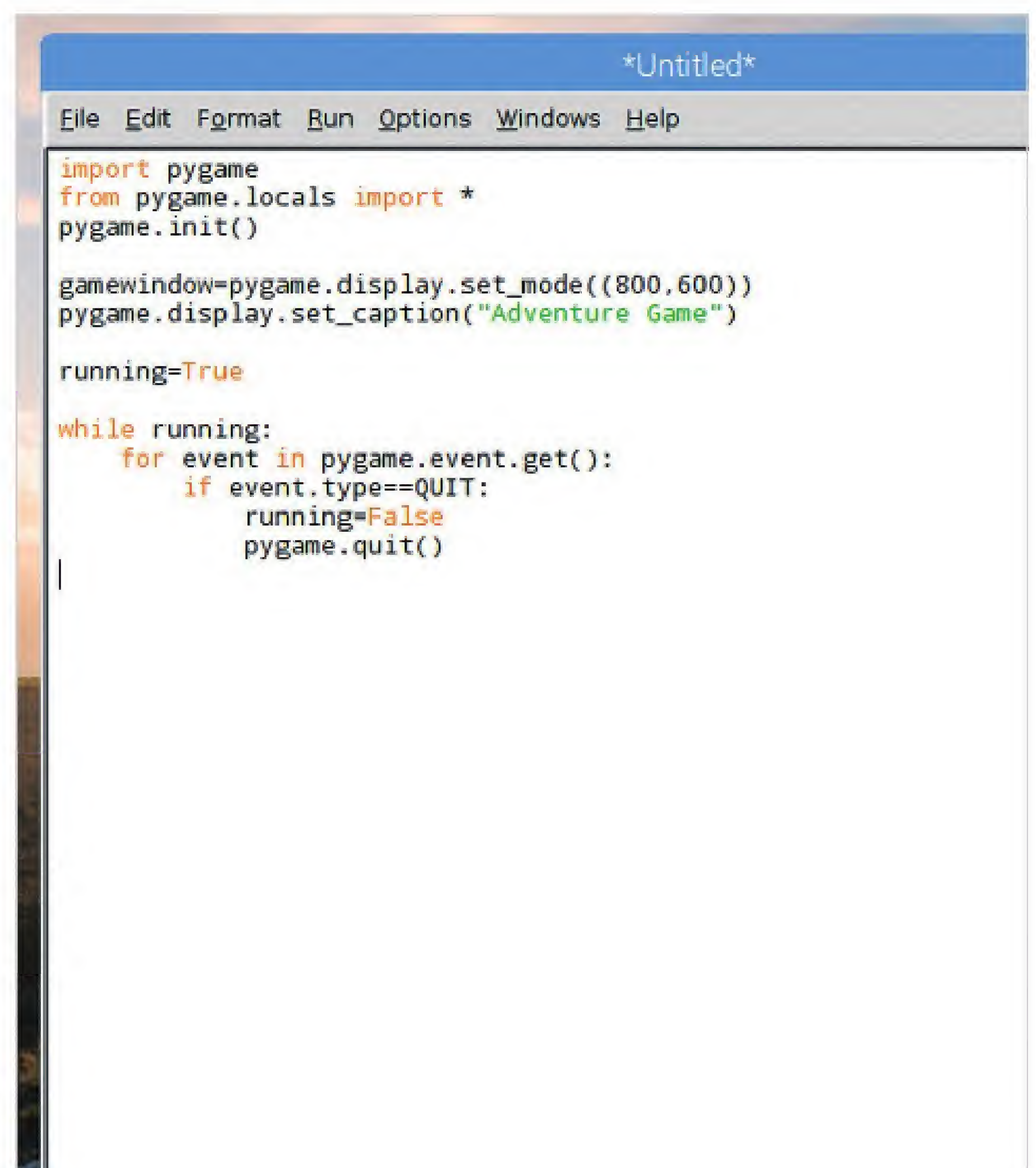
STEP 3 Sadly you can't close the newly created Pygame window without closing the Python IDLE Shell, which isn't very practical. For this reason, you need to work in the editor (New > File) and create a True/False while loop:

```
import pygame
from pygame.locals import *
pygame.init()

gamewindow=pygame.display.set_mode((800,600))
pygame.display.set_caption("Adventure Game")

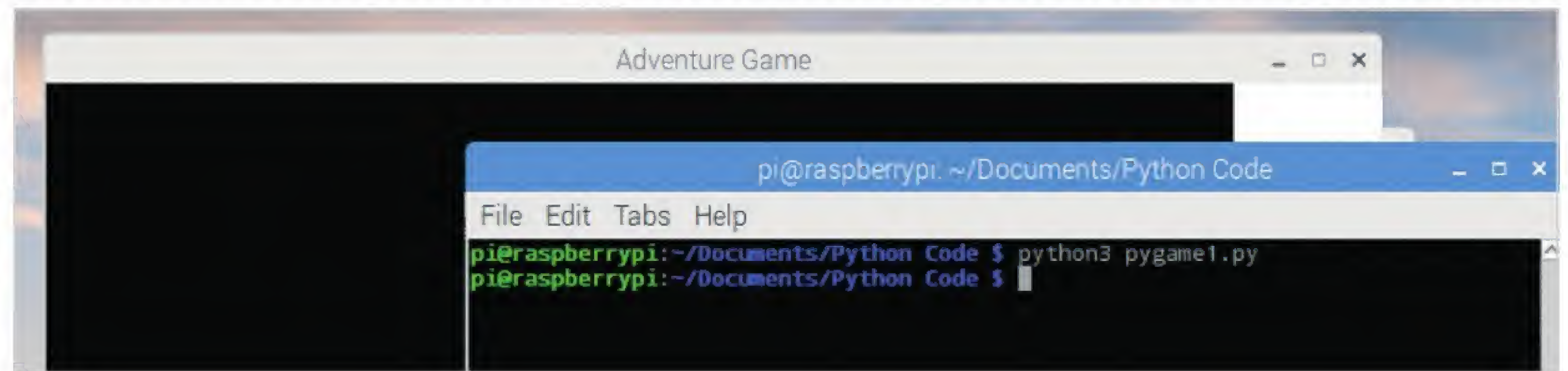
running=True

while running:
    for event in pygame.event.get():
        if event.type==QUIT:
            running=False
            pygame.quit()
```



**STEP 4**

If the Pygame window still won't close don't worry, it's just a discrepancy between the IDLE (which is written with Tkinter) and the Pygame module. If you run your code via the command line, it closes perfectly well.

**STEP 5**

You're going to shift the code around a bit now, running the main Pygame code within a while loop; it makes it neater and easier to follow. We've downloaded a graphic to use and we need to set some parameters for pygame:

```
import pygame
pygame.init()
running=True
while running:
    gamewindow=pygame.display.set_mode((800,600))
    pygame.display.set_caption("Adventure Game")
    black=(0,0,0)
    white=(255,255,255)
```

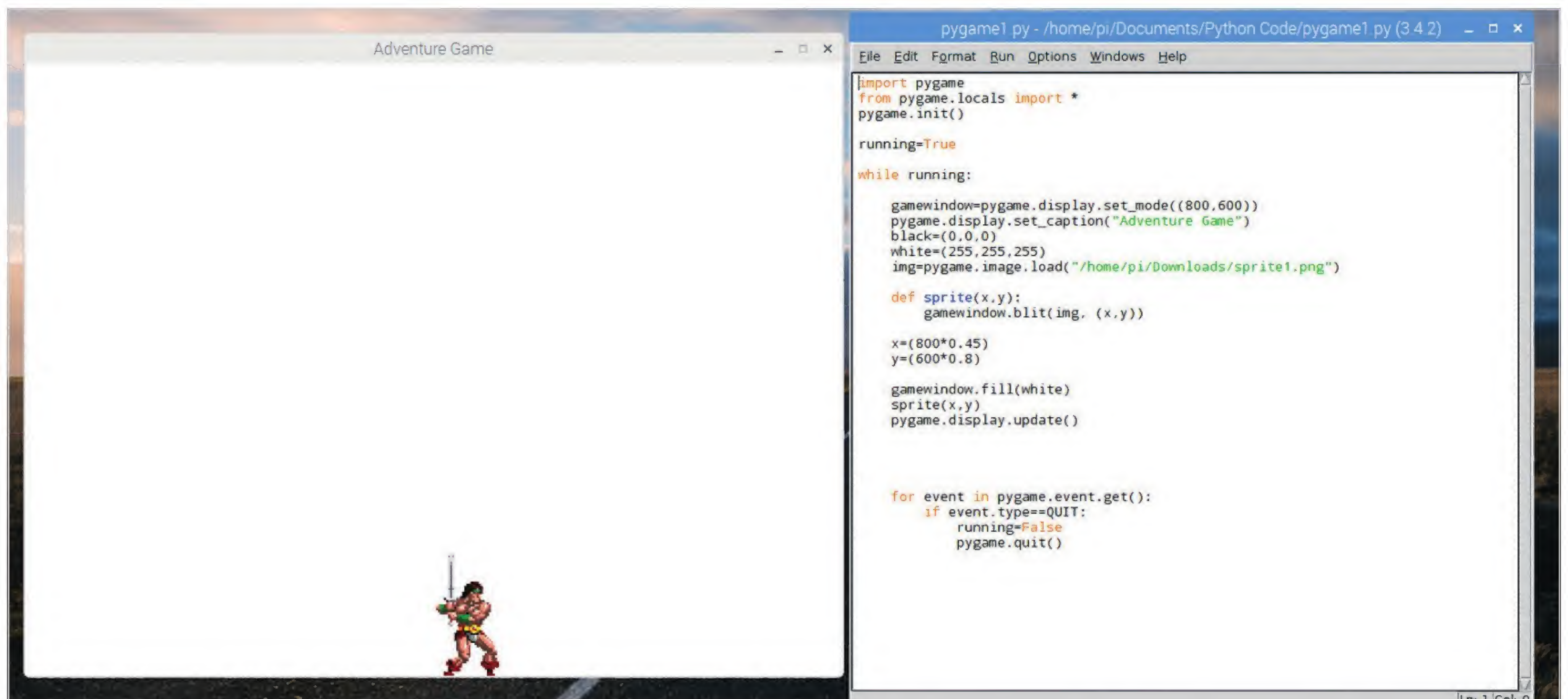
```
img=pygame.image.load("/home/pi/Downloads/
sprite1.png")
```

```
def sprite(x,y):
    gamewindow.blit(img, (x,y))
```

```
x=(800*0.45)
y=(600*0.8)
```

```
gamewindow.fill(white)
sprite(x,y)
pygame.display.update()
```

```
for event in pygame.event.get():
    if event.type==pygame.QUIT:
        running=False
```

**STEP 6**

Let's quickly go through the code changes. We've defined two colours, black and white together with their respective RGB colour values. Next we've loaded the

downloaded image called sprite1.png and allocated it to the variable img; and also defined a sprite function and the Blit function will allow us to eventually move the image.

```
import pygame
from pygame.locals import *
pygame.init()

running=True
while running:
    gamewindow=pygame.display.set_mode((800,600))
    pygame.display.set_caption("Adventure Game")
    black=(0,0,0)
    white=(255,255,255)
    img=pygame.image.load("/home/pi/Downloads/sprite1.png")

    def sprite(x,y):
        gamewindow.blit(img, (x,y))
```

```
x=(800*0.45)
y=(600*0.8)

gamewindow.fill(white)
sprite(x,y)
pygame.display.update()

for event in pygame.event.get():
    if event.type==QUIT:
        running=False
        pygame.quit()
```




STEP 7

Now we can change the code around again, this time containing a movement option within the while loop, and adding the variables needed to move the sprite around the screen:

```
import pygame
from pygame.locals import *
pygame.init()

running=True

gamewindow=pygame.display.set_mode((800,600))
pygame.display.set_caption("Adventure Game")
black=(0,0,0)
white=(255,255,255)
img=pygame.image.load("/home/pi/Downloads/sprite1.png")

def sprite(x,y):
    gamewindow.blit(img, (x,y))

x=(800*0.45)
y=(600*0.8)

xchange=0
```

```
imgspeed=0

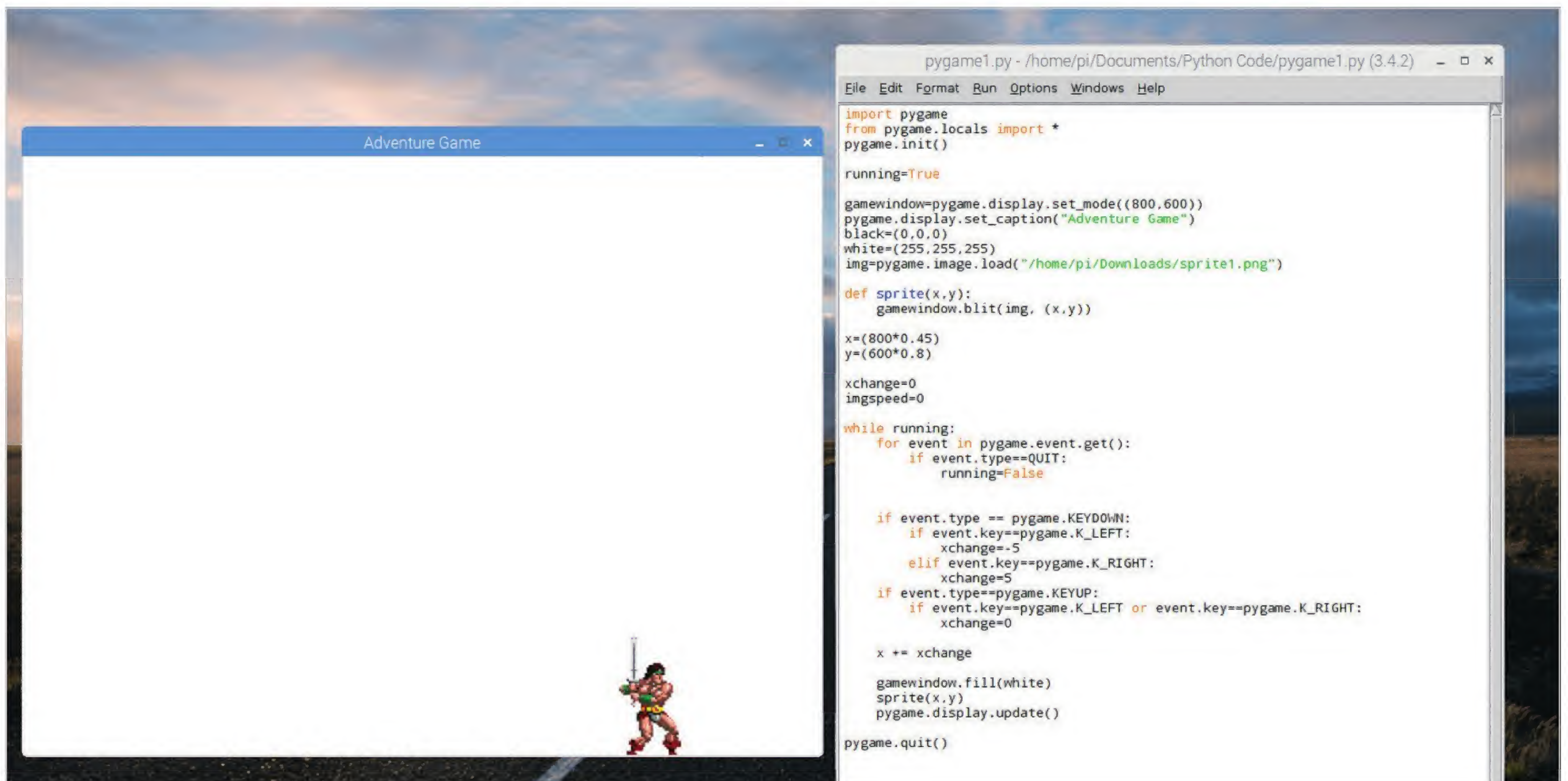
while running:
    for event in pygame.event.get():
        if event.type==QUIT:
            running=False

    if event.type == pygame.KEYDOWN:
        if event.key==pygame.K_LEFT:
            xchange=-5
        elif event.key==pygame.K_RIGHT:
            xchange=5
    if event.type==pygame.KEYUP:
        if event.key==pygame.K_LEFT or event
        key==pygame.K_RIGHT:
            xchange=0

    x += xchange

    gamewindow.fill(white)
    sprite(x,y)
    pygame.display.update()

pygame.quit()
```



STEP 8

Copy the code down and using the left and right arrow keys on the keyboard you can move your sprite across the bottom of the screen. Now, it looks like you have the makings of a classic arcade 2D scroller in the works.

```
import pygame
from pygame.locals import *
pygame.init()

running=True

gamewindow=pygame.display.set_mode((800,600))
pygame.display.set_caption("Adventure Game")
black=(0,0,0)
white=(255,255,255)
img=pygame.image.load("/home/pi/Downloads/sprite1.png")

def sprite(x,y):
    gamewindow.blit(img, (x,y))

x=(800*0.45)
y=(600*0.8)

xchange=0
imgspeed=0
```

```
while running:
    for event in pygame.event.get():
        if event.type==QUIT:
            running=False

    if event.type == pygame.KEYDOWN:
        if event.key==pygame.K_LEFT:
            xchange=-5
        elif event.key==pygame.K_RIGHT:
            xchange=5
    if event.type==pygame.KEYUP:
        if event.key==pygame.K_LEFT or event.key==pygame.K_RIGHT:
            xchange=0

    x += xchange

    gamewindow.fill(white)
    sprite(x,y)
    pygame.display.update()

pygame.quit()
```


**STEP 9**

You can now implement a few additions and utilise some previous tutorial code. The new elements are the subprocess module, of which one function allows us to launch a second Python script from within another; and we're going to create a New File called pygametxt.py:

```
import pygame
import time
import subprocess
pygame.init()
screen = pygame.display.set_mode((800, 250))
clock = pygame.time.Clock()

font = pygame.font.Font(None, 25)
pygame.time.set_timer(pygame.USEREVENT, 200)

def text_generator(text):
    tmp = ''
    for letter in text:
        tmp += letter
        if letter != ' ':
            yield tmp

class DynamicText(object):
    def __init__(self, font, text, pos,
autoreset=False):
        self.done = False
        self.font = font
        self.text = text
        self._gen = text_generator(self.text)
        self.pos = pos
        self.autoreset = autoreset
        self.update()

    def reset(self):
        self._gen = text_generator(self.text)
        self.done = False
        self.update()

    def update(self):
        if not self.done:
            try: self.rendered = self.font.
render(next(self._gen), True, (0, 128, 0))
            except StopIteration:
                self.done = True
                time.sleep(10)
                subprocess.Popen("python3 /home/pi/Documents/
Python\ Code/pygame1.py 1", shell=True)

    def draw(self, screen):
        screen.blit(self.rendered, self.pos)

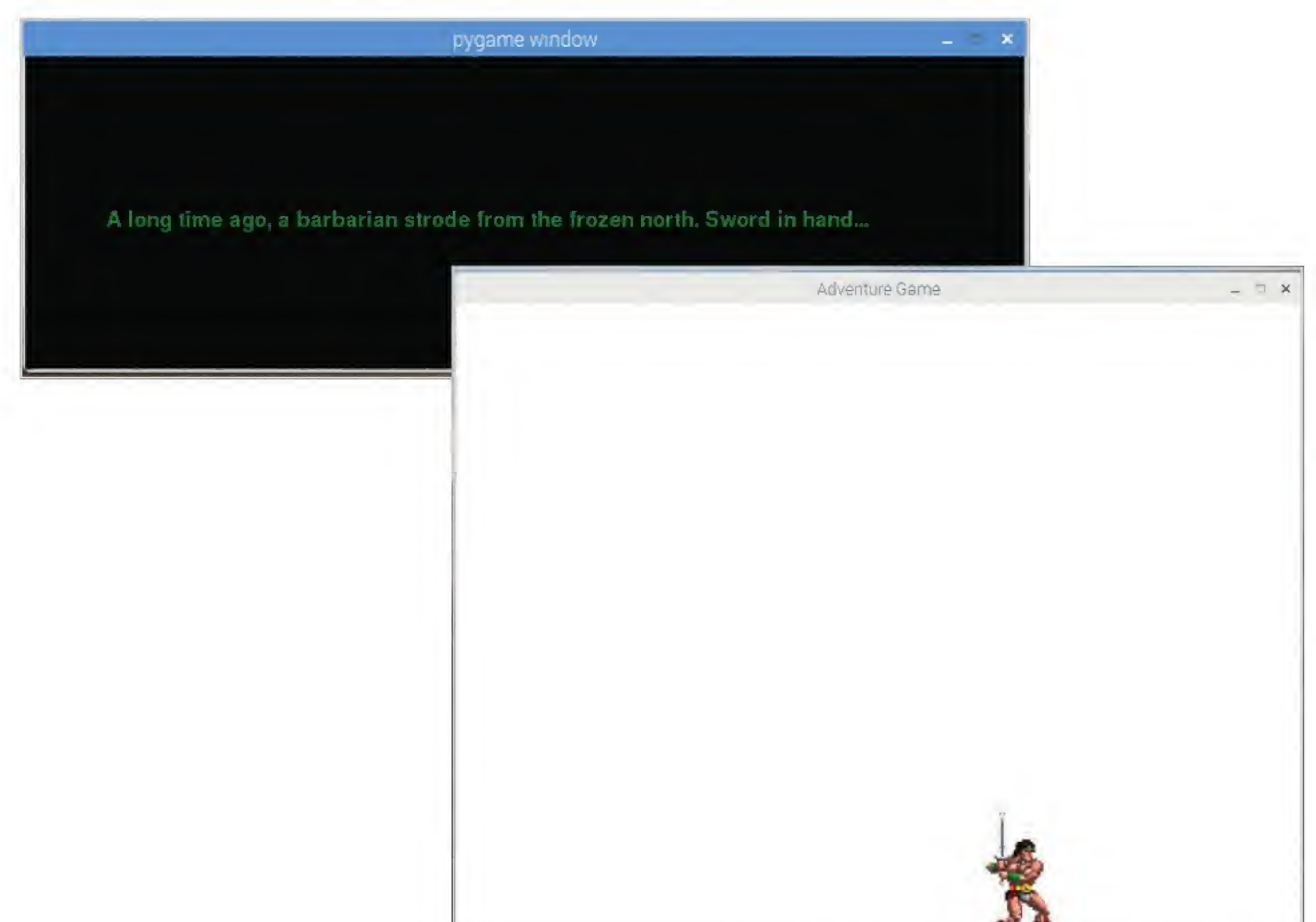
text=("A long time ago, a barbarian strode from the
frozen north. Sword in hand...")
message = DynamicText(font, text, (65, 120),
autoreset=True)

while True:
    for event in pygame.event.get():
        if event.type == pygame.QUIT: break
        if event.type == pygame.USEREVENT: message.
update()
    else:
        screen.fill(pygame.color.Color('black'))
        message.draw(screen)
```

```
pygame.display.flip()
clock.tick(60)
continue
break
pygame.quit()
```

STEP 10

When you run this code it will display a long, narrow Pygame window with the intro text scrolling to the right. After a pause of ten seconds, it then launches the main game Python script where you can move the warrior sprite around. Overall the effect is quite good but there's always room for improvement.





Using the Math Module

One of the more used modules you will come across is the math module. We have mentioned previously in this book that mathematics is the backbone of programming and there's an incredible number of uses the math module can have in your code.

E = MC²

The math module provides access to a plethora of mathematical functions, from simply displaying the value of Pi to helping you create complex 3D shapes.

STEP 1

The math module is built in to Python 3, so there's no need to PIP install it. Just like the other modules present, you can import the module's function by simply entering: `import math` into the Shell, or as part of your code in the Editor.

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> import math
>>> |
```

STEP 2

Importing the math module gives you access to the module's code. From there you can call up any of the available functions within Math by using: `math`. Followed by the name of the function in question. For example, enter:

`math.sin(2)`

This displays the sine of 2.

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> import math
>>> math.sin(2)
0.9092974268256817
>>> |
```

STEP 3

No doubt you are aware by now that if you know the name of the individual functions within the module, you can specifically import them. For instance, the Floor and Ceil functions round down and up a float:

```
from math import floor, ceil
floor(1.2) # returns 1
ceil(1.2) # returns 2
```

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> from math import floor, ceil
>>> floor(1.2)
1
>>> ceil(1.2)
2
>>>
```

STEP 4

The math module can also be renamed as you import it, as with the other modules on offer within Python. This often saves time but don't forget to make a comment to show someone else looking at your code what you've done:

```
import math as m
m.trunc(123.45) # Truncate removes the fraction
```

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> import math as m
>>> m.trunc(123.45)
123
>>>
```


**STEP 5**

Although it's not the usual way, it is possible to import functions from a module and rename them. In this example we imported Floor from Math and renamed it to f. This process can quickly become confusing though, where lengthy code is in use:

```
from math import floor as f
f(1.2)
```

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> from math import floor as f
>>> f(1.2)
1
>>>
```

STEP 8

For further accuracy when it comes to numbers, the exp and expm1 functions can be used to compute precise values:

```
from math import exp, expm1
exp(1e-5) - 1 # value accurate to 11 places
expm1(1e-5) # result accurate to full precision
```

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> from math import exp, expm1
>>> exp(1e-5) - 1
1.0000050000069649e-05
>>> expm1(1e-5)
1.0000050000166668e-05
>>> |
```

STEP 6

Importing all the functions of the math module can be done by entering:

```
from math import *
```

While certainly handy, this is often frowned upon by the developer community as it takes up unnecessary resources and isn't an efficient way of coding. However, if it works for you then go ahead.

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> from math import *
>>> sqrt(16)
4.0
>>> cos(2)
-0.4161468365471424
>>> |
```

STEP 9

This level of accuracy is really quite impressive but quite niche for the most part. Probably the two most used function are e and Pi, where e is the numerical constant equal to 2.71828 (where the circumference of a circle is divided by its diameter):

```
import math
print(math.e)
print(math.pi)
```

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> import math
>>> print(math.e)
2.718281828459045
>>> print(math.pi)
3.141592653589793
>>> |
```

STEP 7

Interestingly, some functions within the math module are more accurate or to be more precise, are designed to return a more accurate value, than others. For example:

```
sum([.1, .1, .1, .1, .1, .1, .1, .1, .1, .1])
```

Returns the value of 0.999999999. Whereas:

```
fsum([.1, .1, .1, .1, .1, .1, .1, .1, .1, .1])
```

Returns the value of 1.0.

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> from math import *
>>> sum([.1, .1, .1, .1, .1, .1, .1, .1, .1, .1])
0.9999999999999999
>>> fsum([.1, .1, .1, .1, .1, .1, .1, .1, .1, .1])
1.0
>>>
```

STEP 10

The wealth of mathematical functions available through the math module is vast and covers everything from factors to infinity, powers to trigonometry and angular conversion to constants. Look up www.docs.python.org/3/library/math.html# for a list of available math module functions.

```
9.2.4. Angular conversion
math.degrees(x)
    Convert angle x from radians to degrees
math.radians(x)
    Convert angle x from degrees to radians

9.2.5. Hyperbolic functions
Hyperbolic functions are analogs of trigonometric functions that are based on hyperbolas instead of circles.
math.acosh(x)
    Return the inverse hyperbolic cosine of x
math.asinh(x)
    Return the inverse hyperbolic sine of x
math.atanh(x)
    Return the inverse hyperbolic tangent of x
math.cosh(x)
    Return the hyperbolic cosine of x
math.sinh(x)
    Return the hyperbolic sine of x
math.tanh(x)
    Return the hyperbolic tangent of x

9.2.6. Special functions
math.erf(x)
    Return the error function at x
The erf(x) function can be used to compute traditional statistical functions such as the cumulative standard normal distribution.
def phi(x):
    "Cumulative distribution function for the standard normal distribution"
    return (1.0 + erf(x / sqrt(2.0))) / 2.0
```




Create Your Own Modules

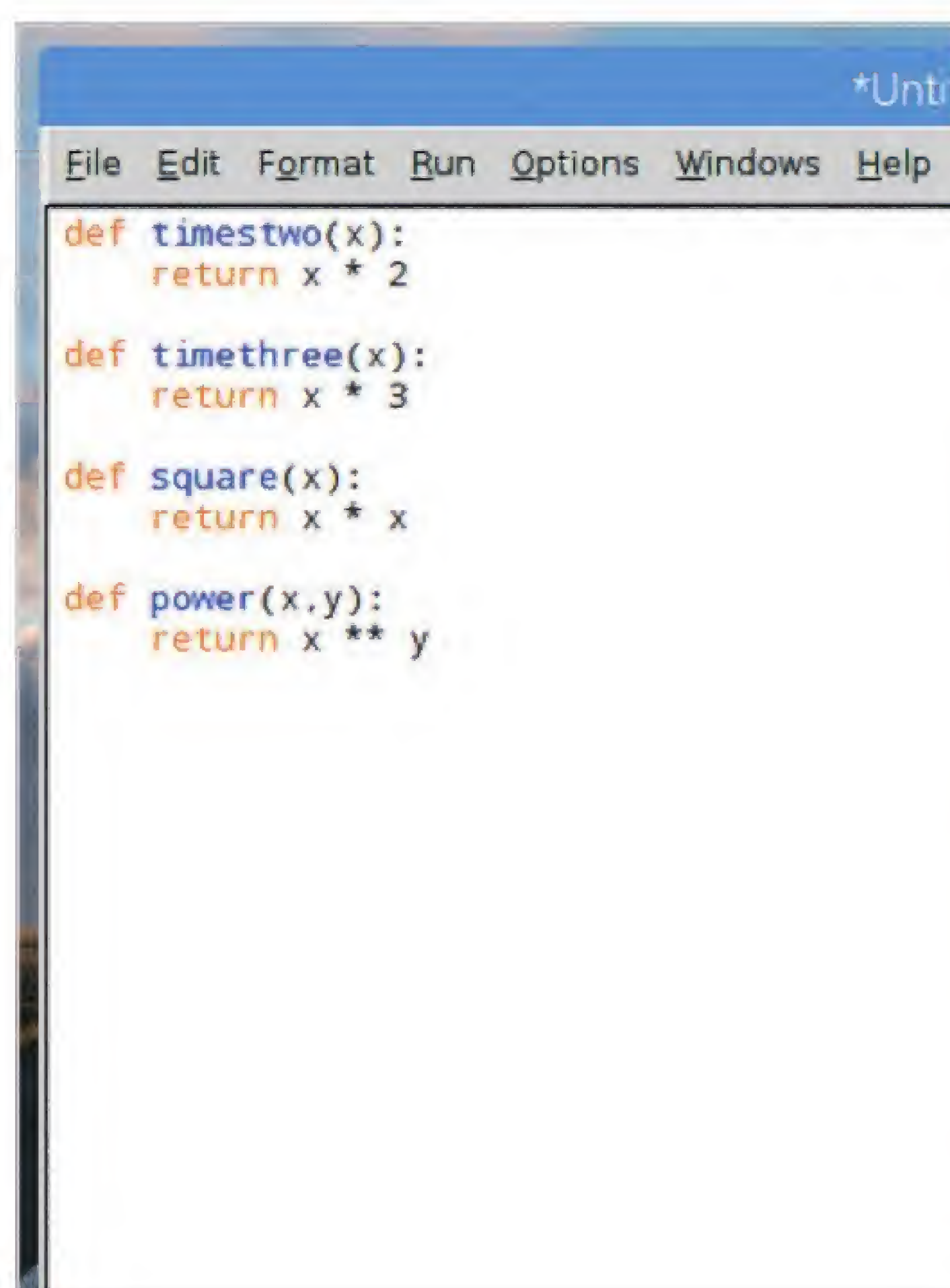
Large programs can be much easier to manage if you break them up into smaller parts and import the parts you need as modules. Learning to build your own modules also makes it easier to understand how they work.

BUILDING MODULES

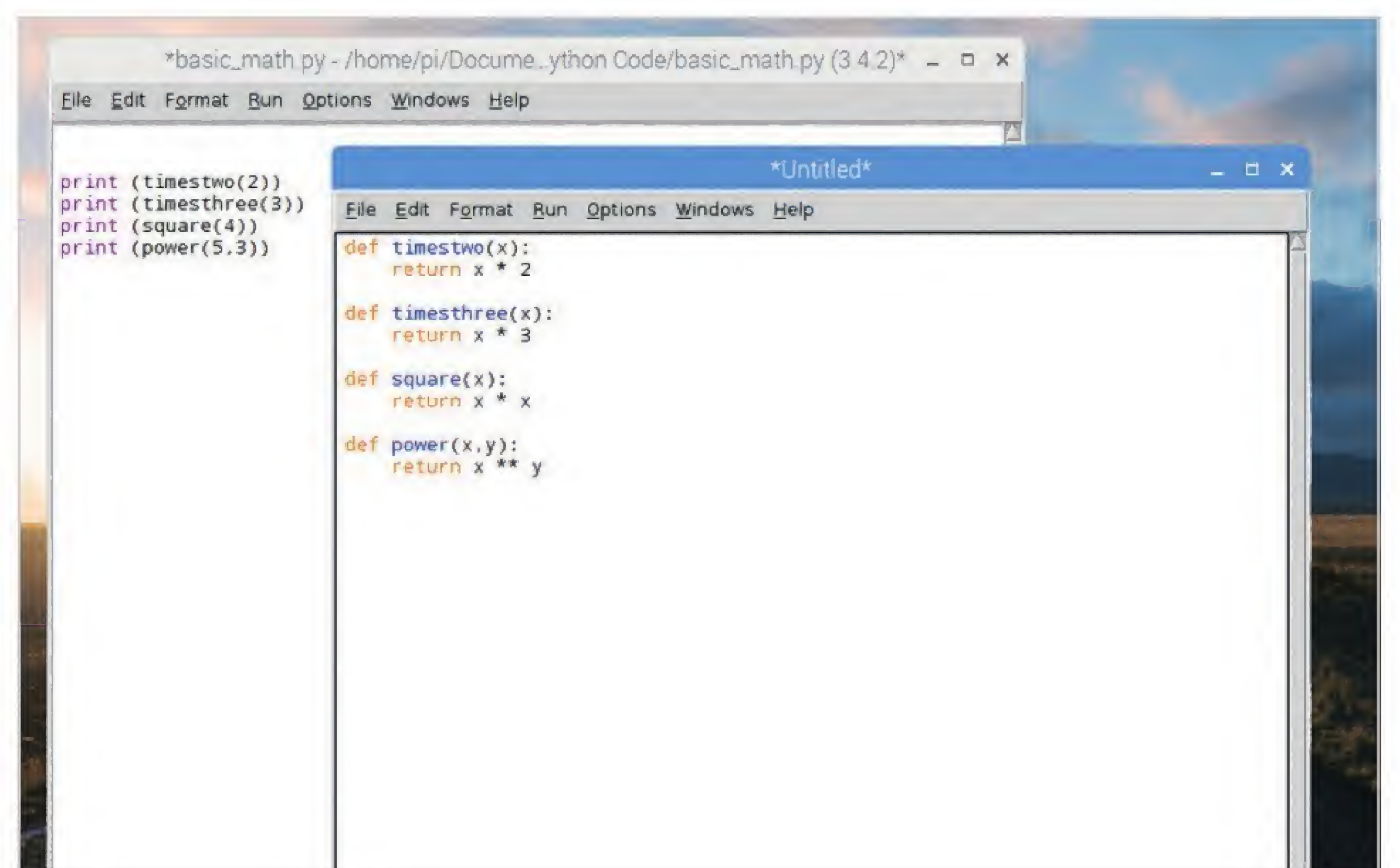
Modules are Python files, containing code, that you save using a .py extension. These are then imported into Python using the now familiar import command.

STEP 1 Let's start by creating a set of basic Mathematics Functions. Multiply a number by two, three and square or raise a number to an exponent (power). Create a New File in the IDLE and enter:

```
def timestwo(x):  
    return x * 2  
  
def timesthree(x):  
    return x * 3  
  
def square(x):  
    return x * x  
  
def power(x,y):  
    return x ** y
```



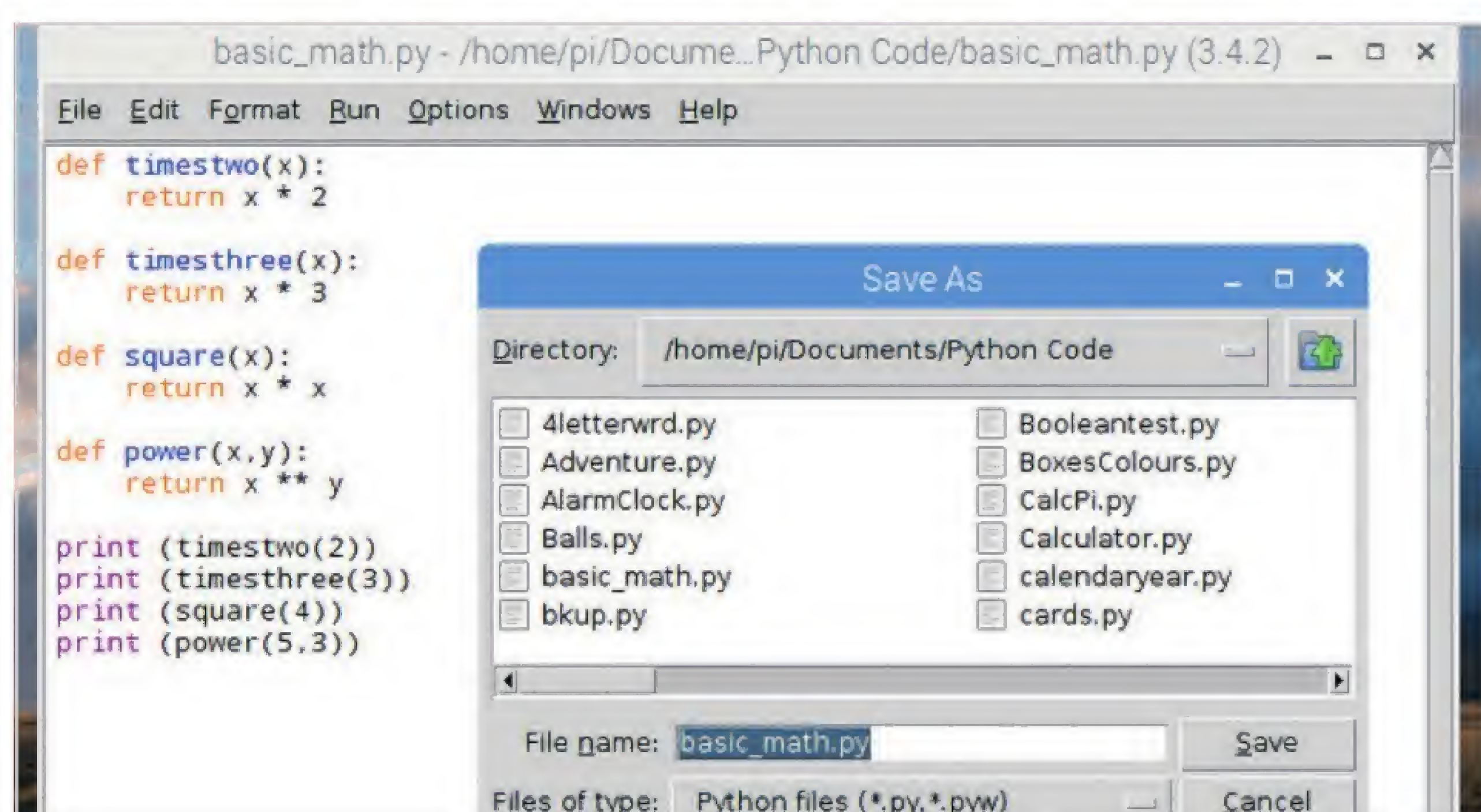
STEP 3 Now you're going to take the function definitions out of the program and into a separate file. Highlight the function definitions and choose Edit > Cut. Choose File > New File and use Edit > Paste in the new window. You now have two separate files, one with the function definitions, the other with the function calls.



STEP 2 Under the above code, enter functions to call the code:

```
print (timestwo(2))  
print (timesthree(3))  
print (square(4))  
print (power(5,3))
```

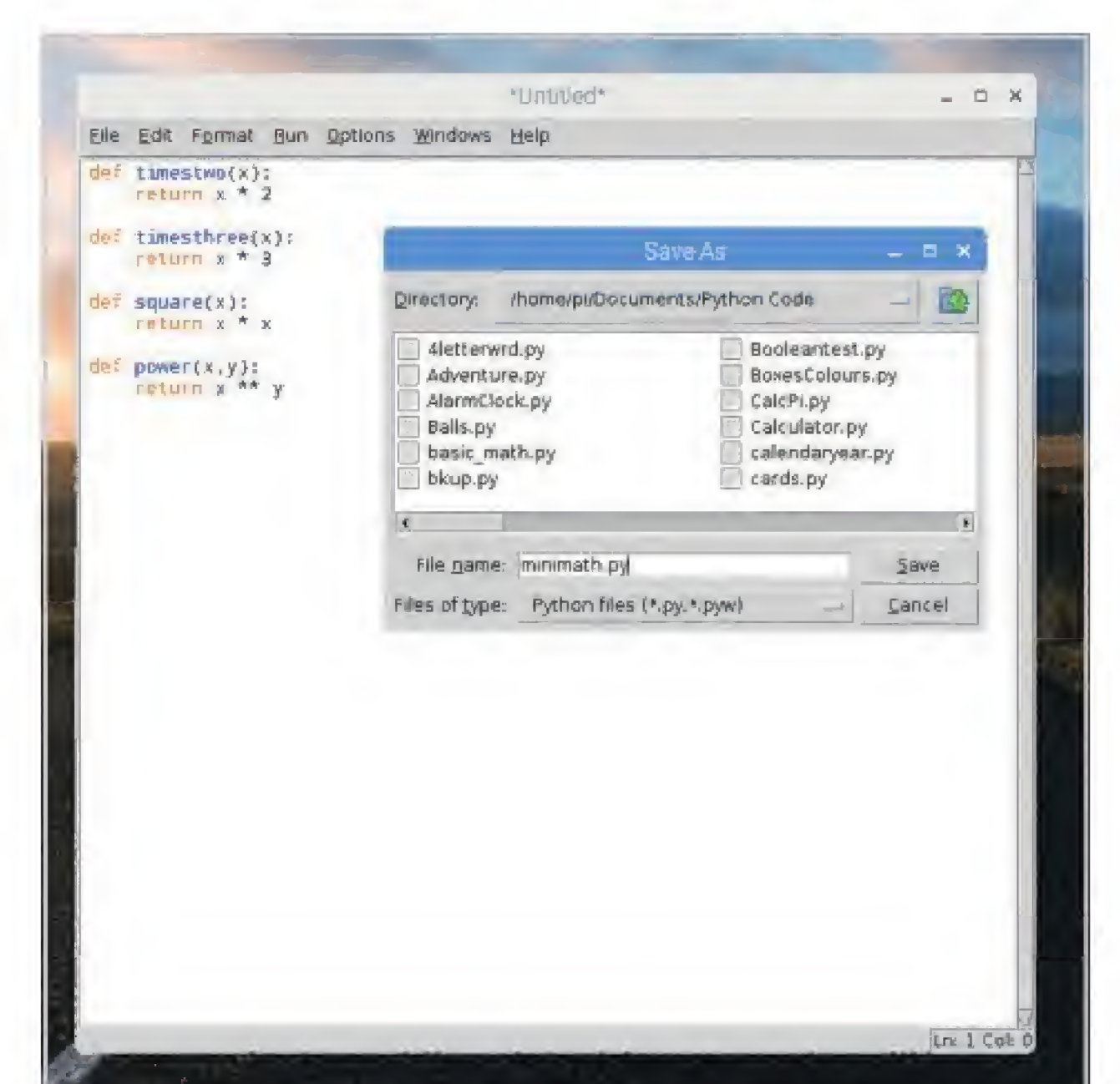
Save the program as basic_math.py and execute it to get the results.



STEP 4 If you now try and execute the basic_math.py code again, the error '**NameError: name 'timestwo' is not defined**' will be displayed. This is due to the code no longer having access to the function definitions.

```
Traceback (most recent call last):  
  File "/home/pi/Documents/Python Code/basic_math.py", line 3, in <module>  
    print (timestwo(2))  
NameError: name 'timestwo' is not defined  
>>> |
```

STEP 5 Return to the newly created window containing the function definitions, and click File > Save As. Name this **minimath.py** and save it in the same location as the original **basic_math.py** program. Now close the minimath.py window, so the basic_math.py window is left open.



**STEP 6**

Back to the basic_math.py window: at the top of the code enter:

```
from minimath import *
```

This will import the function definitions as a module. Press F5 to save and execute the program to see it in action.

STEP 7

You can now use the code further to make the program a little more advanced, utilising the newly created module to its full. Include some user interaction. Start by creating a basic menu the user can choose from:

```
print("Select operation.\n")
print("1.Times by two")
print("2.Times by Three")
print("3.Square")
print("4.Power of")
```

```
choice = input("\nEnter choice (1/2/3/4):")
```

STEP 8

Now we can add the user input to get the number the code will work on:

```
num1 = int(input("\nEnter number: "))
```

This will save the user-entered number as the variable num1.

STEP 9

Finally, you can now create a range of if statements to determine what to do with the number and utilise the newly created function definitions:

```
if choice == '1':
    print(timestwo(num1))
elif choice == '2':
    print(timesthree(num1))
elif choice == '3':
    print(square(num1))
elif choice == '4':
    num2 = int(input("Enter second number: "))
    print(power(num1, num2))
else:
    print("Invalid input")
```

STEP 10

Note that for the last available options, the Power of choice, we've added a second variable, num2. This passes a second number through the function definition called power. Save and execute the program to see it in action.



Code Repository

SHARE YOUR CODE!

The code listed within this section can be downloaded as Python files, so you don't have to type it out. Simply visit: <http://bdmpublications.com/code-portal>, and the code is available as a compressed file for you to download and execute.

Also, if you've written something amazing, and you want to show it off, then why not send it in and we'll add it to the Code Portal as well as mention it via our social media accounts.

Tell us what the code does, how it works (don't forget to include comments in the code), and what platform to run it on.

Send it in to: enquiries@bdmpublications.com. We look forward to seeing what you've done.

We've included a vast Python code repository for you to use freely in your own programs. There's plenty in here to help you create a superb piece of programming or extend your project ideas.

There's code for making backups of your files and folders, number guessing games, random number generators, Google search code, game code, animation code, graphics code, text adventure code and even code that plays music stored on your computer.

This is an excellent resource that you won't find in any other Python book, so use it, take it apart and adapt it to your own programs, and see what you can create.

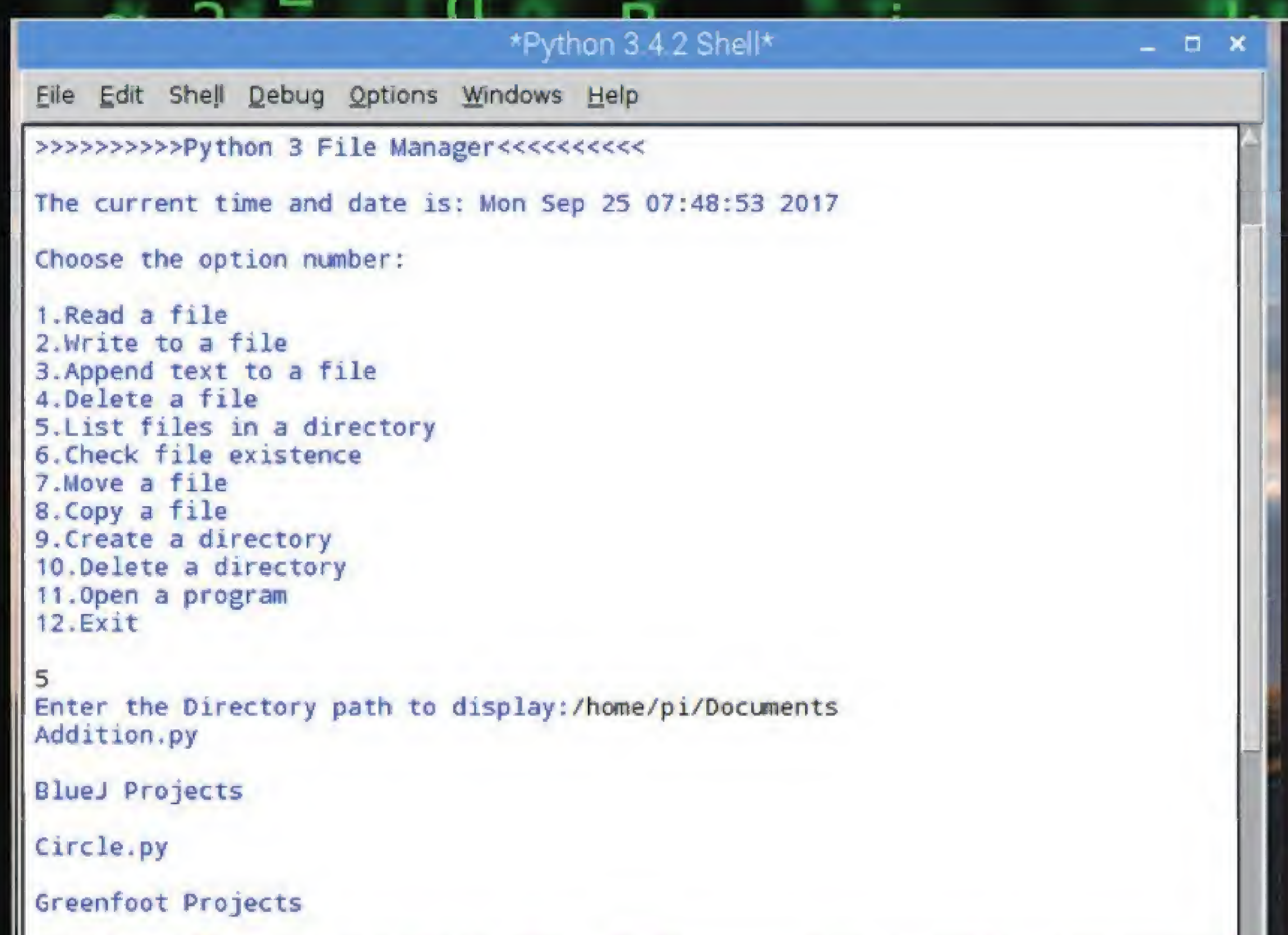
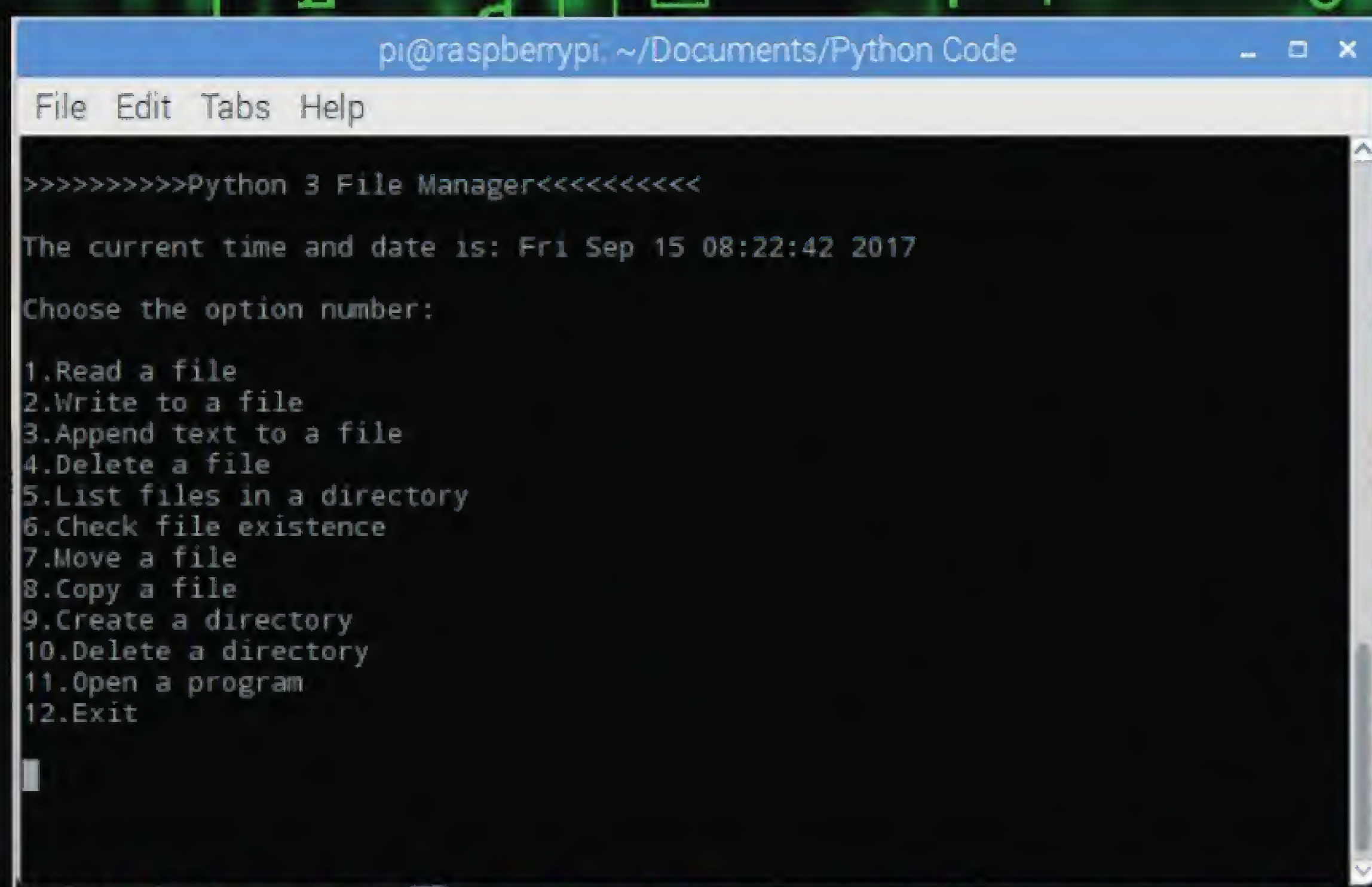
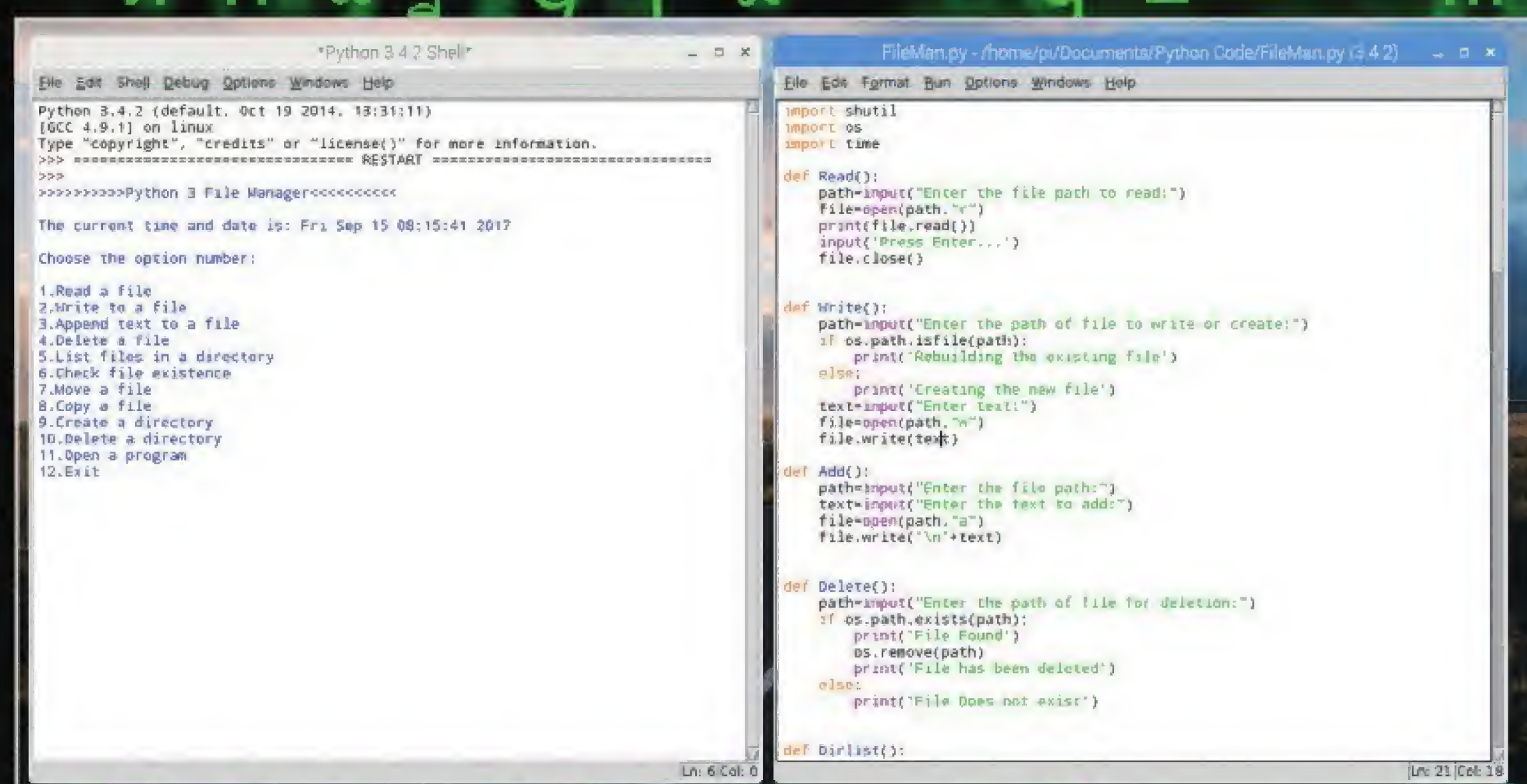
.....

94	Python File Manager
96	Number Guessing Game
98	Polygon Circles
99	Random Number Generator
100	Random Password Generator
101	Keyboard Drawing Script
102	Pygame Text Examples
103	Google Search Script
104	Text to Binary Converter
106	Basic GUI File Browser
108	Mouse Controlled Turtle
109	Python Alarm Clock
110	Vertically Scrolling Text
112	Python Digital Clock
114	Pygame Music Player
115	Python Image Slideshow Script
116	Playing Music with the Winsound Module
118	Text Adventure Script
120	Python Scrolling Ticker Script
121	Simple Python Calculator
122	Hangman Game Script



Python File Manager

This file manager program displays a list of options that allow you to read a file, write to a file, append to a file, delete a file, list the contents of a directory and much more. It's remarkably easy to edit and insert into your own code, or add to.



FILEMAN.PY

Copy the code below into a New > File and save it as FileMan.py. Once executed it will display the program title, along with the current time and date and the available options.

```
import shutil
import os
import time
import subprocess

def Read():
    path=input("Enter the file path to read:")
    file=open(path,"r")
    print(file.read())
    input('Press Enter...')
    file.close()

def Write():
    path=input("Enter the path of file to write or create:")
    if os.path.isfile(path):
        print('Rebuilding the existing file')
    else:
        print('Creating the new file')
    text=input("Enter text:")
    file=open(path,"w")
    file.write(text)

def Add():
    path=input("Enter the file path:")
    text=input("Enter the text to add:")
    file=open(path,"a")
    file.write('\n'+text)

def Delete():
    path=input("Enter the path of file for deletion:")
    if os.path.exists(path):
        print('File Found')
        os.remove(path)
        print('File has been deleted')
    else:
        print('File Does not exist')

def Dirlist():
    path=input("Enter the Directory path to display:")
    sortlist=sorted(os.listdir(path))
    i=0
    while(i<len(sortlist)):
        print(sortlist[i]+'\\n')
        i+=1

def Check():
    fp=int(input('Check existence of \\n1.File \\n2.
Directory\\n'))
    if fp==1:
        path=input("Enter the file path:")
        os.path.isfile(path)
```



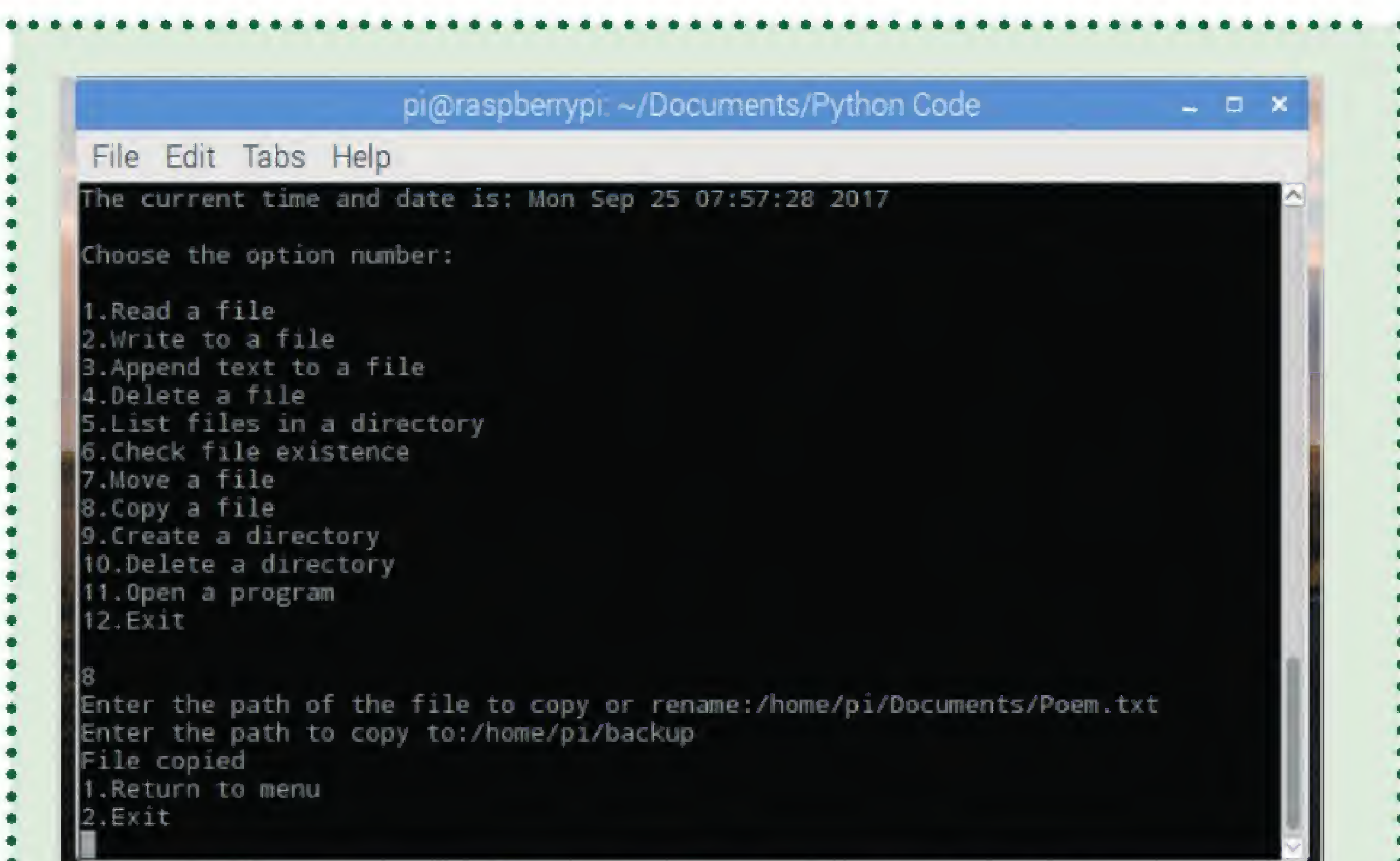
```

5.List files in a directory
6.Check file existence
7.Move a file
8.Copy a file
9.Create a directory
10.Delete a directory
11.Open a program
12.Exit

'''
    if dec==1:
        Read()
    if dec==2:
        Write()
    if dec==3:
        Add()
    if dec==4:
        Delete()
    if dec==5:
        Dirlist()
    if dec==6:
        Check()
    if dec==7:
        Move()
    if dec==8:
        Copy()
    if dec==9:
        Makedir()
    if dec==10:
        Removedir()
    if dec==11:
        Openfile()
    if dec==12:
        exit()

run=int(input("1.Return to menu\n2.Exit \n"))
if run==2:
    exit()

```



There are three modules to import here: Shutil, OS and Time. The first two deal with the operating system and file management and manipulation; and the Time module simply displays the current time and date.

95



Number Guessing Game

This is a simple little piece of code but it makes good use of the Random module, print and input, and a while loop. The number of guesses can be increased from 5 and the random number range can easily be altered too.

```
NumberGuess.py - /home/pi/Docum...hon Code/NumberGuess.py (3.4.2) - □
File Edit Format Run Options Windows Help

import random

guessesUsed = 0
Name=input('Hello! What is your name? ')
number = random.randint(1, 30)
print('Greetings, ' + Name + ', I\'m thinking of a number between 1 and 30.')
while guessesUsed < 5:
    guess=int(input('Guess the number within 5 guesses...'))
    guessesUsed = guessesUsed + 1
    if guess < number:
        print('Too low, try again.')
    if guess > number:
        print('Too high, try again.')
    if guess == number:
        break
if guess == number:
    guessesUsed = str(guessesUsed)
    print('Well done, ' + Name + '! You guessed correctly in ' + guessesUsed + ' guesses.')
if guess != number:
    number = str(number)
    print('Sorry, out of guesses. The number I was thinking of is ' + number)
```

NUMBERGUESS.PY

Copy the code and see if you can beat the computer within five guesses. It's an interesting bit of code that can be quite handy when your implementing a combination of the Random module alongside a while loop.

```
import random

guessesUsed = 0
Name=input('Hello! What is your name? ')
number = random.randint(1, 30)
print('Greetings, ' + Name + ', I\'m thinking of a number between 1 and 30.')
while guessesUsed < 5:
    guess=int(input('Guess the number within 5 guesses...'))
    guessesUsed = guessesUsed + 1
    if guess < number:
        print('Too low, try again.')
    if guess > number:
        print('Too high, try again.')
    if guess == number:
        break
if guess == number:
    guessesUsed = str(guessesUsed)
    print('Well done, ' + Name + '! You guessed correctly in ' + guessesUsed + ' guesses.')
if guess != number:
    number = str(number)
    print('Sorry, out of guesses. The number I was thinking of is ' + number)
```

The left screenshot shows the Python 3.4.2 Shell interface. The prompt is 'Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11) [GCC 4.9.1] on linux'. The user has entered 'David' as their name. The program has generated a random number between 1 and 30. The user has made three guesses: 26, 20, and 15. The program has responded with 'Too high, try again.' for the first two guesses and 'Well done, David! You guessed correctly in 3 guesses.' for the third guess. The shell prompt is now '>>>'.

The right screenshot shows the code editor for 'NumberGuess.py - /home/pi/Docum...hon Code/NumberGuess.py (3.4.2)'. The code is the same as shown in the previous blocks. The status bar at the bottom right indicates 'Ln: 1 | Col: 13'.



```

pi@raspberrypi: ~/Documents/Python Code
File Edit Tabs Help

pi@raspberrypi:~/Documents/Python Code $ python3 NumberGuess.py
Hello! What is your name? David
Greetings, David, I'm thinking of a number between 1 and 30.
Guess the number within 5 guesses...25
Too low, try again.
Guess the number within 5 guesses...27
Well done, David! You guessed correctly in 2 guesses.
pi@raspberrypi:~/Documents/Python Code $

```

```

Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help

Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> ===== RESTART =====
>>>
Your character's stats are as follows:

Endurance: 4
Combat Rating: 5
Luck: 6
>>> ===== RESTART =====
>>>
Your character's stats are as follows:

Endurance: 2
Combat Rating: 20
Luck: 6
>>> ===== RESTART =====
>>>
Your character's stats are as follows:

Endurance: 12
Combat Rating: 16
Luck: 9
>>>

```

Code Improvements

Since this is such a simple script to apply to a situation, there's plenty of room to mess around with it and make it more interesting. Perhaps you can include an option to take score, the best out of three rounds. Maybe an elaborate way to congratulate the player for getting a 'hole in one' correct guess on their first try.

Moreover, the number guessing game code does offer some room for implementing into your code in a different manner. What we mean by this is, the code can be used to retrieve a random number between a range, which in turn can give you the start of a character creation defined function within an adventure game.

Imagine the start of a text adventure written in Python, where the player names their character. The next step is to roll the virtual random dice to decide what that character's combat rating, strength, endurance and luck values are. These can then be carried forward into the game under a set of variables that can be reduced or increased depending on the circumstances the player's character ends up in.

For example, as per the screenshot provided, you could use something along the lines of:

```

Endurance=0
CR=0
Luck=0
Endurance = random.randint(1, 15)
CR = random.randint(1, 20)
Luck = random.randint(1, 10)
Print("Your character's stats are as follows:\n")
Print("Endurance:", Endurance)
Print("Combat Rating:", CR)
Print("Luck:", Luck)

```

The player can then decide to either stick with their roll or try again for the hope of better values being picked. There's ample ways in which to implement this code into a basic adventure game.

```

Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help

Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> ===== RESTART =====
>>>
Your character's stats are as follows:

Endurance: 4
Combat Rating: 5
Luck: 6
>>> ===== RESTART =====
>>>
Your character's stats are as follows:

Endurance: 2
Combat Rating: 20
Luck: 6
>>> ===== RESTART =====
>>>
Your character's stats are as follows:

Endurance: 12
Combat Rating: 16
Luck: 9
>>>

```

```

CharacterStats.py - /home/pi/Documents/Python Code/CharacterStats.py (3.4.2)
File Edit Format Run Options Windows Help

import random

Endurance=0
CR=0
Luck=0
Endurance=random.randint(1, 15)
CR=random.randint(1, 20)
Luck=random.randint(1, 10)
print("Your character's stats are as follows:\n")
print("\nEndurance:", Endurance)
print("Combat Rating:", CR)
print("Luck:", Luck)

```




Polygon Circles

Here's a fun, and mathematical, look at making a circle from straight lines. Using the Math module, in particular sin, cos and Pi, this code will draw a series of straight lines using the Turtle module. The end result is quite remarkable and has plenty of scope for further exploration.

POLYGONCIRCLES.PY

There's lots of Mathematics used here along with some intricate coordinate manipulation with the Turtle module. Enter the code and execute it to see how it turns out.

```
from turtle import*
from math import sin, cos, pi
r=200
inc=2*pi/100
t=0;n=1.5
for i in range(100):
    x1=r*sin(t); y1=r*cos(t)
    x2=r*sin(t+n);y2=r*cos(t+n)
    penup(); goto(x1,y1)
    pendown();goto(x2,y2)
    t+=inc
```

Graphical Enhancements

There are several ways in which you can improve this code to make it more interesting. You can insert colours, perhaps a different colour for every line. You can display a message inside the circle and have the Turtle draw around it. Let your imagination run wild on this one.

Turtle's graphics can take a while to map out and draw, depending on how big and how intricate an image it is you're designing. Whilst the effect can be quite stunning, it is limited by the amount of time it takes to display an image. Therefore it's worth seeing if the function turtle.speed() will quicken things up.

Turtle.speed() comes in various values:

slowest
slow
normal
fast
fastest

You can experiment with the various speeds by adding the function in the for loop, just before the penup line.

For example:

```
for i in range(100):
    x1=r*sin(t); y1=r*cos(t)
    x2=r*sin(t+n);y2=r*cos(t+n)
    speed('fastest')
    penup(); goto(x1,y1)
    pendown();goto(x2,y2)
    t+=inc
```

This will run through the code at the 'fastest' speed possible for the Turtle. It certainly makes a difference and is worth considering if you're drawing Turtle images for games or presentations.

```
PolygonCircles.py - /home/pi/Docu...hon Code/PolygonC
File Edit Format Run Options Windows Help
from turtle import *
from math import sin, cos, pi
r=200
inc=2*pi/100
t=0;n=1.5
for i in range(100):
    x1=r*sin(t); y1=r*cos(t)
    x2=r*sin(t+n);y2=r*cos(t+n)
    speed('fastest')
    penup(); goto(x1,y1)
    pendown();goto(x2,y2)
    t+=inc
```


๓ □ ๓๐
 € " □ □ ฟ □ □ ข จ □
 □ □ ย ๖ ๖ ย ๖ q % □ ๖ D ข
 □ H บ # ก ค = ๖ จ 5 * ท 1 < ๖ 4 ๖ □

More Input

While an easy code to follow, it could be more interesting if you prompt the user for more input. Perhaps you can provide them with addition, subtraction, multiplication elements with their numbers. If you're feeling clever, see if you can pass the code through a Tkinter window or even the Ticker window that's available on Page 128.

Furthermore, the core of the code can be used in a text adventure game, where the character fights something and their health, along with the enemy's, is reduced by a random number. This can be mixed with the previous code from Page 90's Number Guessing Game, where we defined the stats for the adventure game's character.

You can also introduce the Turtle module into the code and perhaps set some defined rules for drawing a shape, object or something based on a user inputted random value from a range of numbers. It takes a little working out but the effect is certainly really interesting.

It might be simple but this little piece of code will ask the user for two sets of numbers, a start and a finish. The code will then pluck out a random number between the two sets and display it.

For example, the code could be edited to this:

Whilst it's a little rough around the edges, you can easily make it more suitable.





Random Password Generator

We're always being told that our passwords aren't secure enough; well here's a solution for you to implement into your own future programs. The random password generator code below will create a 12-letter string of words (both cases) and numbers each time it's executed.

Secure Passwords

There's plenty you can do to modify this code and improve it further. For one, you can increase the number of characters the generated password displays and perhaps you can include special characters too, such as signs and symbols. Then, you can output the chosen password to a file, then securely compress it using the previous random number generator as a file password and send it to a user for their new password.

An interesting aspect to this code is the ability to introduce a loop and print any number of random passwords. Let's assume you have a list of 50 users for a company and you're in charge of generating a random password for them each month.

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
>>> ===== RESTART =====
>>>
P9nLS9MFXLIbCq1z
QfnQRjt5qf8pjdPT
mfdGBK1Kcv0L1lHR
Ri967mcVqChvoHdv
RoLZWVDN1qiCXTIK
ZnsSBooDsDL4TcV0
KvHKy616fIJ5dxHE
SPSk77QPZnE20Cm7
8DWHFcubP0XMI3II
UuCR5GhxFL4fwP50
BCyVhma09Qrp5MKc
C2X7add0CsX6x0at
05FvZ15oCHApT7Bx
WYBbbzy3nPqHyTvb
2PfTnUv3fzgnbBqH
H820ULLPkxbE1L2u
y57cKCE7IwXBkHNe
t0Ddz1QDuSWYCSga
225Hpidc1tdLXP4v
TnJApxX0uimIL6EC
MvmaA0HGHE8pqI4fe
9zytByYRgs0zS2d1
2N0xyped208a5ME8
Fjd2145MIhwgKNTF
rTYN44th0xP0KJz0
13HM40ZqMcGs6L76
pntySQ1VTRJfC7kN
iazbaL4SK1Yz9cSc
s1hzoLLq62I2kx2z
TilTPlJCzXcdrYZ8
onSV3wL0Qni5KPXI
```

RNDPASSWORD.PY

Copy the code and run it; each time you'll get a random string of characters that can easily be used as a secure password which will be incredibly difficult for a password cracker to hack.

```
import string
import random

def randompassword():
    chars=string.ascii_uppercase + string.ascii_lowercase + string.digits
    size= 8
    return ''.join(random.choice(chars) for x in range(size,20))

print(randompassword())
```

Adding a loop to print a password fifty times is extremely easy, for example:

```
import string
import random

def randompassword():
    chars=string.ascii_uppercase + string.ascii_lowercase + string.digits
    size= 4
    return ''.join(random.choice(chars) for x in range(size,20))

n=0
while n<50:
    print(randompassword())
    n=n+1
```

This will output fifty random passwords based on the previous random selection of characters.

```
RndPasswordLoop.py - /home/pi/D... Code/RndPasswordLoop.py (3.4.2)
File Edit Format Run Options Windows Help

import string
import random

def randompassword():
    chars=string.ascii_uppercase + string.ascii_lowercase + string.digits
    size= 4
    return ''.join(random.choice(chars) for x in range(size,20))

n=0
while n<50:
    print(randompassword())
    n=n+1
```


Keyboard Drawing Script

The Turtle module is an excellent resource for the Python programmer. However, what makes it more interesting, is its ability to enable the user to control the turtle on the screen. This piece of code does exactly that, allowing the user to unleash their inner artist.

KEYBDRAW.PY

There are two modules in this script: Turtle and Tkinter. The Turtle module is the main display, where the user controls the drawing, whereas Tkinter simply displays the user controls.

```
"""
All movements and turns are by increments of 5.
Right arrow key = move forward
Left arrow key = move backward
r = turn right
l = turn left
u = pen up
d = pen down
h = go home
c = clear
"""

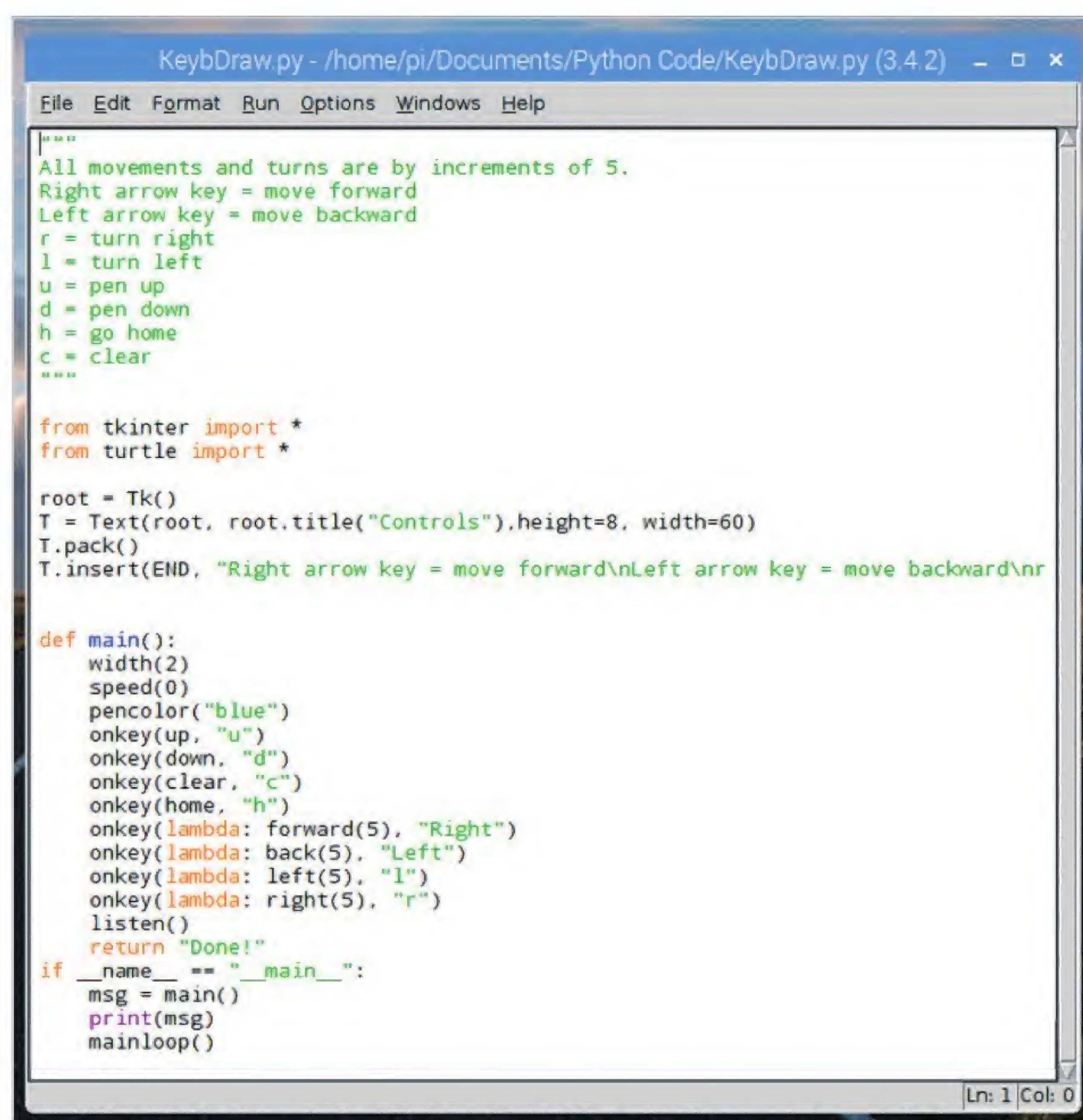
from tkinter import *
from turtle import *

root = Tk()
T = Text(root, root.title("Controls"), height=8, width=60)
T.pack()
T.insert(END, "Right arrow key = move forward\nLeft arrow key = move backward\nr = turn right\nl = turn left\nu = pen up\nd = pen down\nh = go home\nc = clear")

def main():
    width(2)
    speed(0)
    pencolor("blue")
    onkey(up, "u")
    onkey(down, "d")
    onkey(clear, "c")
    onkey(home, "h")
    onkey(lambda: forward(5), "Right")
    onkey(lambda: back(5), "Left")
    onkey(lambda: left(5), "l")
    onkey(lambda: right(5), "r")
    listen()
    return "Done!"

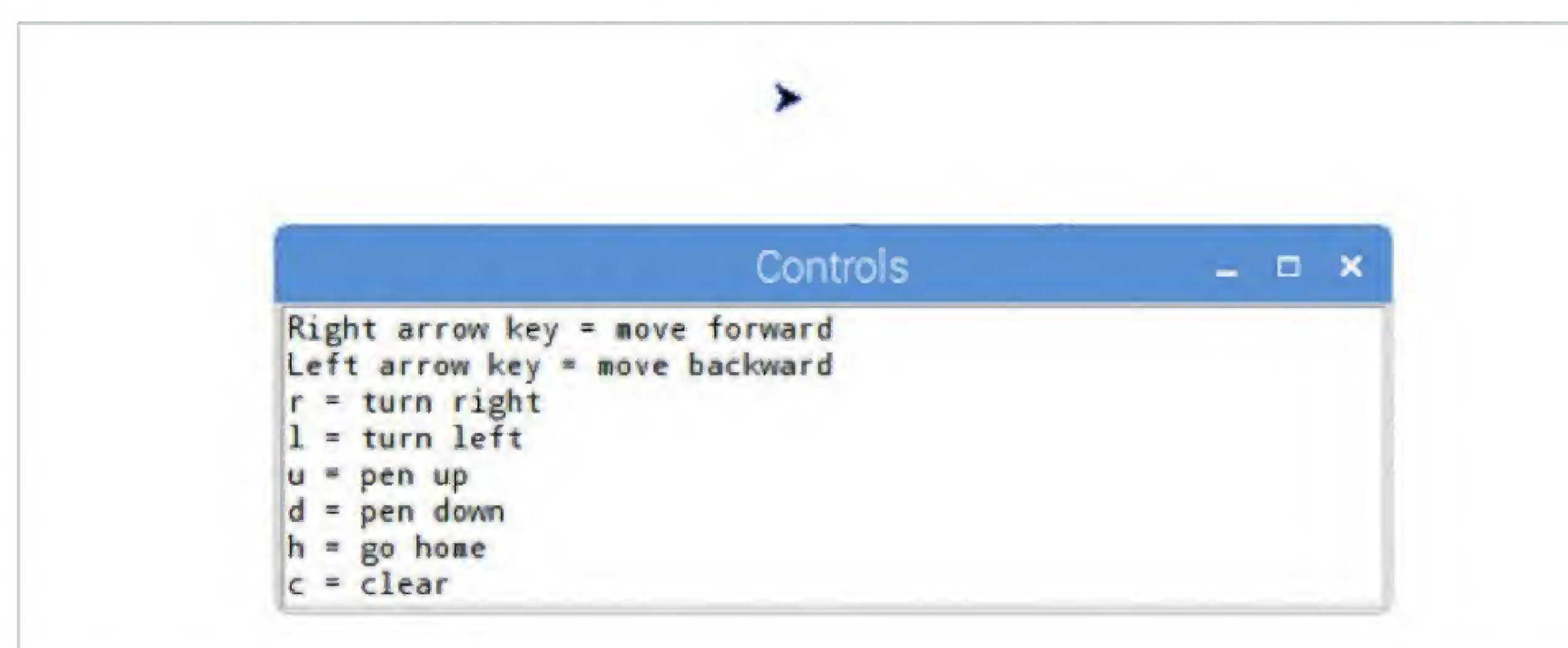
if __name__ == "__main__":
    msg = main()
    print(msg)
    mainloop()
```

```
listen()
return "Done!"
if __name__ == "__main__":
    msg = main()
    print(msg)
    mainloop()
```



Artwork

Just as with all code, there's always room for improvement somewhere. Here you could change the colours or ask the user which colour they want to start with and then include a key in the controls to change the pen colour whilst drawing. There's also room to increase or decrease the speed of the pen, again that could be a user-defined speed. You can also expand the controls thoroughly to include a lot more detail and options.





Pygame Text Examples

There's a lot you can do using the Pygame module that's not related to displaying graphics. The module contains many functions which can manipulate text, such as flipping it, displaying it sideways, upside down and even rotating it with animations.

TXTROT.PY

Here we've introduced several examples of displaying text within the Pygame module. Each is easily recognised within the code, so you can pull it out and use it in your code.

```
import pygame
pygame.init()

BLACK = (0, 0, 0)
WHITE = (255, 255, 255)
BLUE = (0, 0, 255)
GREEN = (0, 255, 0)
RED = (255, 0, 0)

PI = 3.141592653

size = (400, 500)
screen = pygame.display.set_mode(size)

pygame.display.set_caption("Text Examples")

done = False
clock = pygame.time.Clock()

text_rotate_degrees = 0

while not done:

    for event in pygame.event.get():
        if event.type == pygame.QUIT:
            done = True

    screen.fill(WHITE)

    pygame.draw.line(screen, BLACK, [100,50],
                     [200, 50])
    pygame.draw.line(screen, BLACK, [100,50],
                     [100, 150])

    font = pygame.font.SysFont('Calibri', 25,
                                True, False)
    text = font.render("Sideways text", True, BLACK)
    text = pygame.transform.rotate(text, 90)
    screen.blit(text, [0, 0])

    text = font.render("Upside down text", True, BLACK)
    text = pygame.transform.rotate(text, 180)
    screen.blit(text, [30, 0])

    text = font.render("Flipped text", True, BLACK)
    text = pygame.transform.flip(text, False, True)
    screen.blit(text, [30, 20])

    text = font.render("Rotating text", True, BLACK)
    text = pygame.transform.rotate(text, text_rotate_degrees)
    text_rotate_degrees += 1
    screen.blit(text, [100, 50])

    pygame.display.flip()

    clock.tick(60)

pygame.quit()
```

```
text = font.render("Upside down text", True, BLACK)
text = pygame.transform.rotate(text, 180)
screen.blit(text, [30, 0])

text = font.render("Flipped text", True, BLACK)
text = pygame.transform.flip(text, False, True)
screen.blit(text, [30, 20])

text = font.render("Rotating text", True, BLACK)
text = pygame.transform.rotate(text, text_rotate_degrees)
text_rotate_degrees += 1
screen.blit(text, [100, 50])

pygame.display.flip()

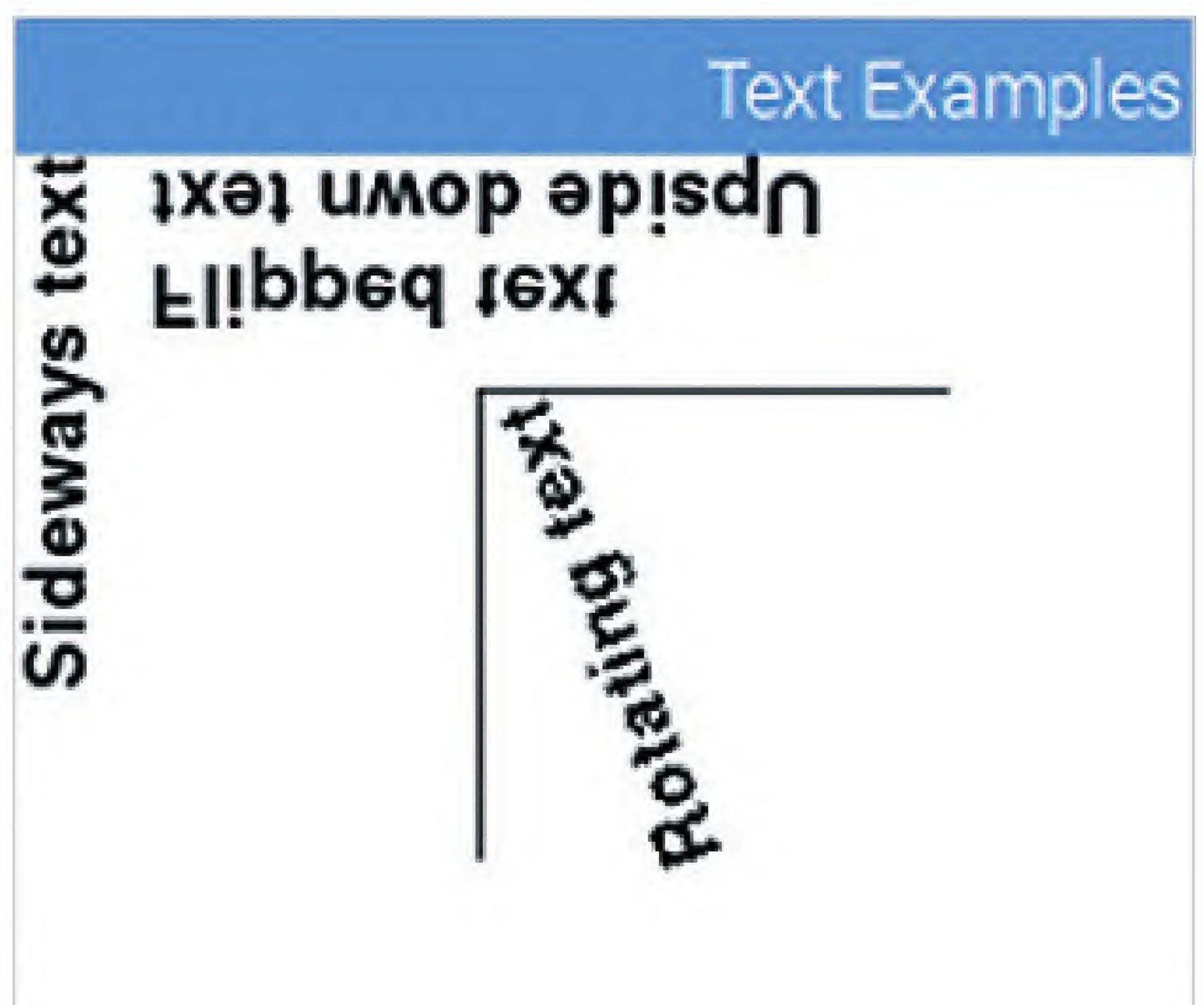
clock.tick(60)

pygame.quit()
```

The Joy Of Text

Here, you can see that we've started by defining the colours but left the text black throughout the rest of the code; then, also left the display window with a white background. The code itself is fairly easy to follow and you can improve it by using different colours, changing the font for each text example, and its size too.

Try using some of the text examples individually in your code as an introduction to your program perhaps. Either way you use it, it will help make it stand out a little more than the standard Python code you will likely come across during your time as a programmer.



Google Search Script

Using the OS and Urllib modules, this small snippet of code will display a window for the user's input, then pass the input to a Google search in their browser. It's really quite a handy script and one that's easily introduced into your own code.

GOOGLESEARCH.PY

You will need to pip install the urllib module, unless it's already installed. It also uses Zenity, which is a Linux-based (GNOME) tool for creating dialog boxes.

```
import os
import urllib.parse
google = os.popen('zenity --entry --text="Enter your
Google search: " --title="Google Search").read()
google = urllib.parse.quote(google)
os.system('chromium-browser http://www.google.com/
search?q=%s' % (google))
```

Searching For More

Here we've used the Zenity command to create the dialog box, which as we mentioned is only available to Linux machines (such as Ubuntu, Raspberry Pi, Linux Mint and so on). If you want to execute it in Windows you have a couple of possibilities: you can find a Windows version of Zenity and pass the user's query through it; or you can create a Tkinter dialog box to pass the information.

You can see that this particular code uses the Chromium browser which comes preinstalled on the Raspberry Pi, and some versions of Linux. To use your favourite browser in Windows, for example, you will need to change the command in the last line of the code to read Firefox, or whatever you use, together with the Start command. So essentially, one of the following:

```
os.system('start firefox http://www.google.com/
search?q=%s' % (google))
```

```
os.system('start chrome http://www.google.com/
search?q=%s' % (google))
```

```
os.system('start iexplore http://www.google.com/
search?q=%s' % (google))
```

The last two for Chrome and Internet Explorer respectively.

There is a Zenity for Windows project available on GitHub at www.github.com/kvaps/zenity-windows. It's a good working version but you do need to install it to a folder on your system where you won't require administrator access to be able to run the Zenity program. When you have Zenity installed, you can modify the Windows version of this code in Python to read:

```
import os
import urllib.parse

google = os.popen('start c:\Temp\Zenity\bin\
zenity --entry --text="Enter your Google search: "
--title="Google Search").read()
google = urllib.parse.quote(google)
os.system('start firefox http://www.google.com/
search?q=%s' % (google))
```

GoogleSearch.py - C:/Users/david/Documents/Python/GoogleSearch.py (3.6.2)

File Edit Format Run Options Window Help

```
import os
import urllib.parse

google = os.popen('start c:\Temp\Zenity\bin\zenity --entry --text="Enter your Google search: " --title="Google Search").read()
google = urllib.parse.quote(google)
os.system('start firefox http://www.google.com/search?q=%s' % (google))
```

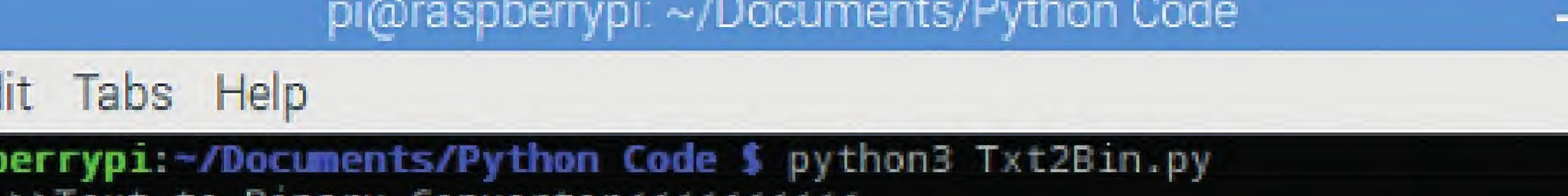

Whilst it may not seem too exciting, this text to binary convertor is actually quite good fun. It also only uses two lines of code, so it's extremely easy to insert into your own script.

Naturally we're using the format function to convert the user's entered text string into its binary equivalent. If you want to check its accuracy, you can plug the binary into an online convertor.

The image shows two side-by-side terminal windows. The left window is titled "Python 3.4.2 Shell" and displays the output of running a Python script. It shows the prompt "Enter text to convert to Binary:" followed by the input "David". Below this, it shows the binary representation of "David": "1000100 1100001 1110110 1101001 1100100". The right window is titled "Txt2Bin.py - /home/pi/Documents/Python Code/Txt2Bin.py (3.4.2)" and displays the source code of the script. The code uses the `ord()` function to convert each character of the input string into its corresponding ASCII value, which is then formatted as a binary string.

```
Python 3.4.2 Shell
File Edit Shell Debug Options Windows Help
Python 3.4.2 (default, Oct 19 2014, 13:31:11)
[GCC 4.9.1] on linux
Type "copyright", "credits" or "license()" for more information.
>>> ----- RESTART -----
>>>
>>>>>>>>Text to Binary Converter<<<<<<<<<
Enter text to convert to Binary: David
1000100 1100001 1110110 1101001 1100100
>>> |
```

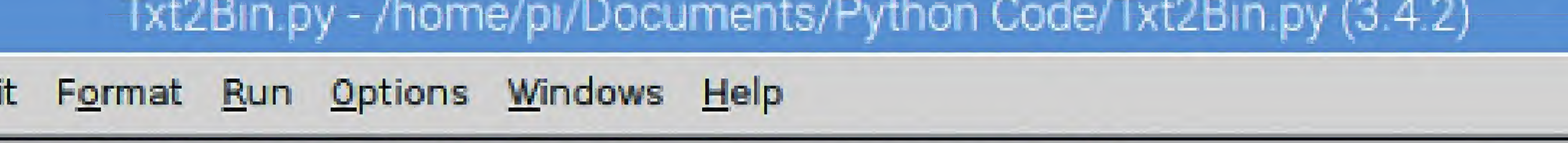
```
Txt2Bin.py - /home/pi/Documents/Python Code/Txt2Bin.py (3.4.2)
File Edit Format Run Options Windows Help
print(">>>>>>>>>>Text to Binary Converter<<<<<<<<<\n")
text=input("Enter text to convert to Binary: ")
print(' '.join(format(ord(x), 'b') for x in text))
```



The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "pi@raspberrypi: ~/Documents/Python Code". The menu bar includes "File", "Edit", "Tabs", and "Help". The terminal content shows the command `python3 Txt2Bin.py` being executed. The script outputs a separator line of greater and less-than signs, prompts for text to convert, and displays the binary representation of the word "David" as a sequence of 20 bits: 1000100 1100001 1110110 1101001 1100100. The prompt `pi@raspberrypi:~/Documents/Python Code $` is visible at the bottom.

```
pi@raspberrypi: ~/Documents/Python Code
File Edit Tabs Help
pi@raspberrypi:~/Documents/Python Code $ python3 Txt2Bin.py
>>>>>>>>Text to Binary Convertor<<<<<<<<<

Enter text to convert to Binary: David
1000100 1100001 1110110 1101001 1100100
pi@raspberrypi:~/Documents/Python Code $
```



```
Txt2Bin.py - /home/pi/Documents/Python Code/Txt2Bin.py (3.4.2)
File Edit Format Run Options Windows Help

print(">>>>>>>>>Text to Binary Converter<<<<<<<<<\n")

text=input("Enter text to convert to Binary: ")

print(' '.join(format(ord(x), 'b') for x in text))
```


1000010 1101001 1101110 1100001 1110010
1111001

The text to binary convertor does offer some room for improvement and enhancement. There are many uses: it could be utilised in a password or secret word script, as part of an adventure game or just a novel way to display someone's name.

With regards to improvements, you could display the binary conversion in a Pygame window, using the animated text options from page 100. You could also ask the user if they wanted to have another go, or even ask if they wanted the binary output to be saved to a file.

With regards to rendering the outputted binary conversion to a Pygame window, complete with rotating text, you can use:

```
import pygame
pygame.init()

BLACK = (0, 0, 0)
WHITE = (255, 255, 255)
BLUE = (0, 0, 255)
GREEN = (0, 255, 0)
RED = (255, 0, 0)

print(">>>>>>>>>Text to Binary Convertor<<<<<<<<<\n")

conversion=input("Enter text to convert to Binary: ")

size = (600, 400)
screen = pygame.display.set_mode(size)
```

```
pygame.display.set_caption("Binary Conversion")

done = False
clock = pygame.time.Clock()

text_rotate_degrees = 0

Binary=(' '.join(format(ord(x), 'b') for x in
conversion))

while not done:

    for event in pygame.event.get():
        if event.type == pygame.QUIT:
            done = True

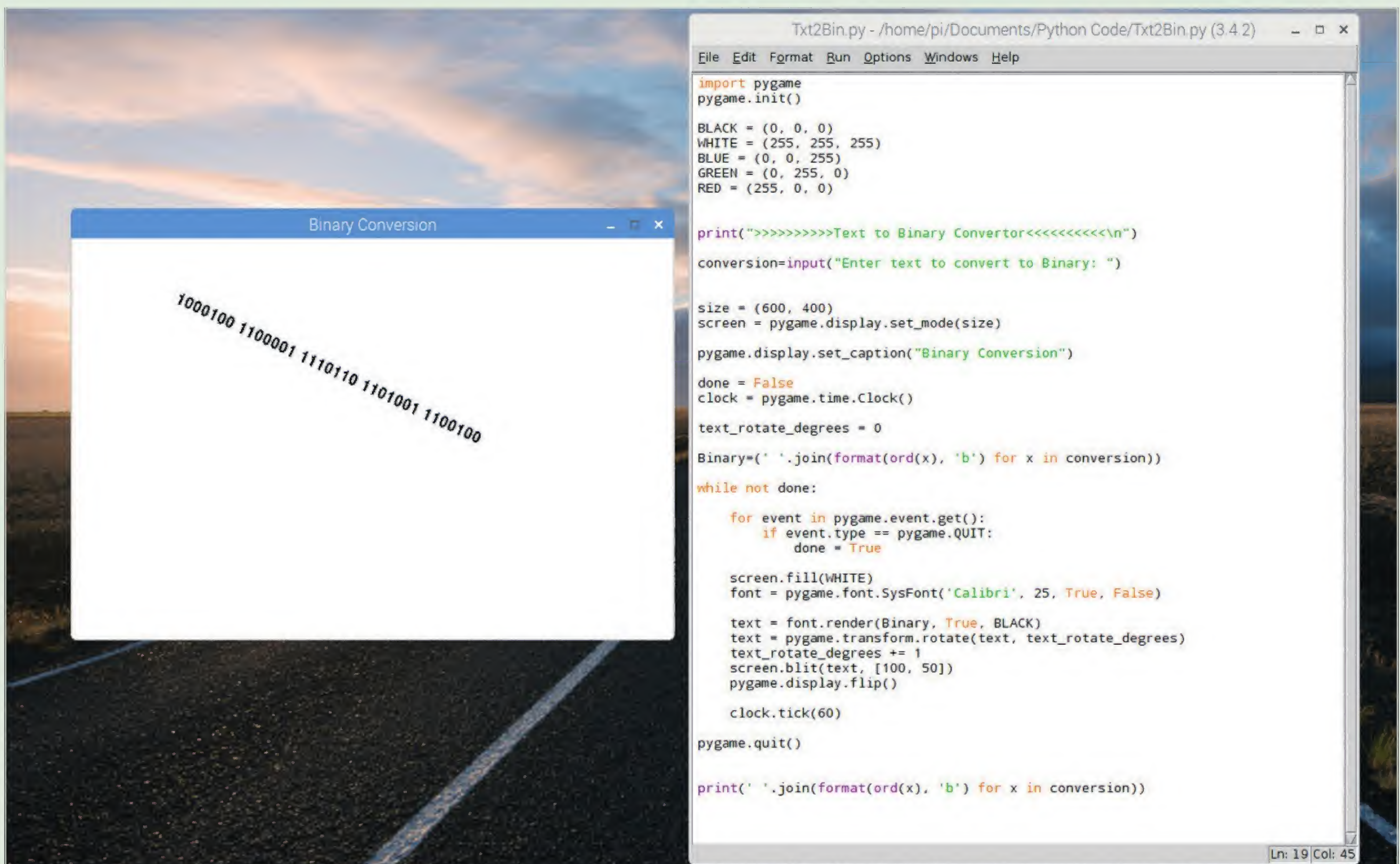
    screen.fill(WHITE)
    font = pygame.font.SysFont('Calibri', 25, True, False)

    text = font.render(Binary, True, BLACK)
    text = pygame.transform.rotate(text, text_rotate_degrees)
    text_rotate_degrees += 1
    screen.blit(text, [100, 50])
    pygame.display.flip()

    clock.tick(60)

pygame.quit()

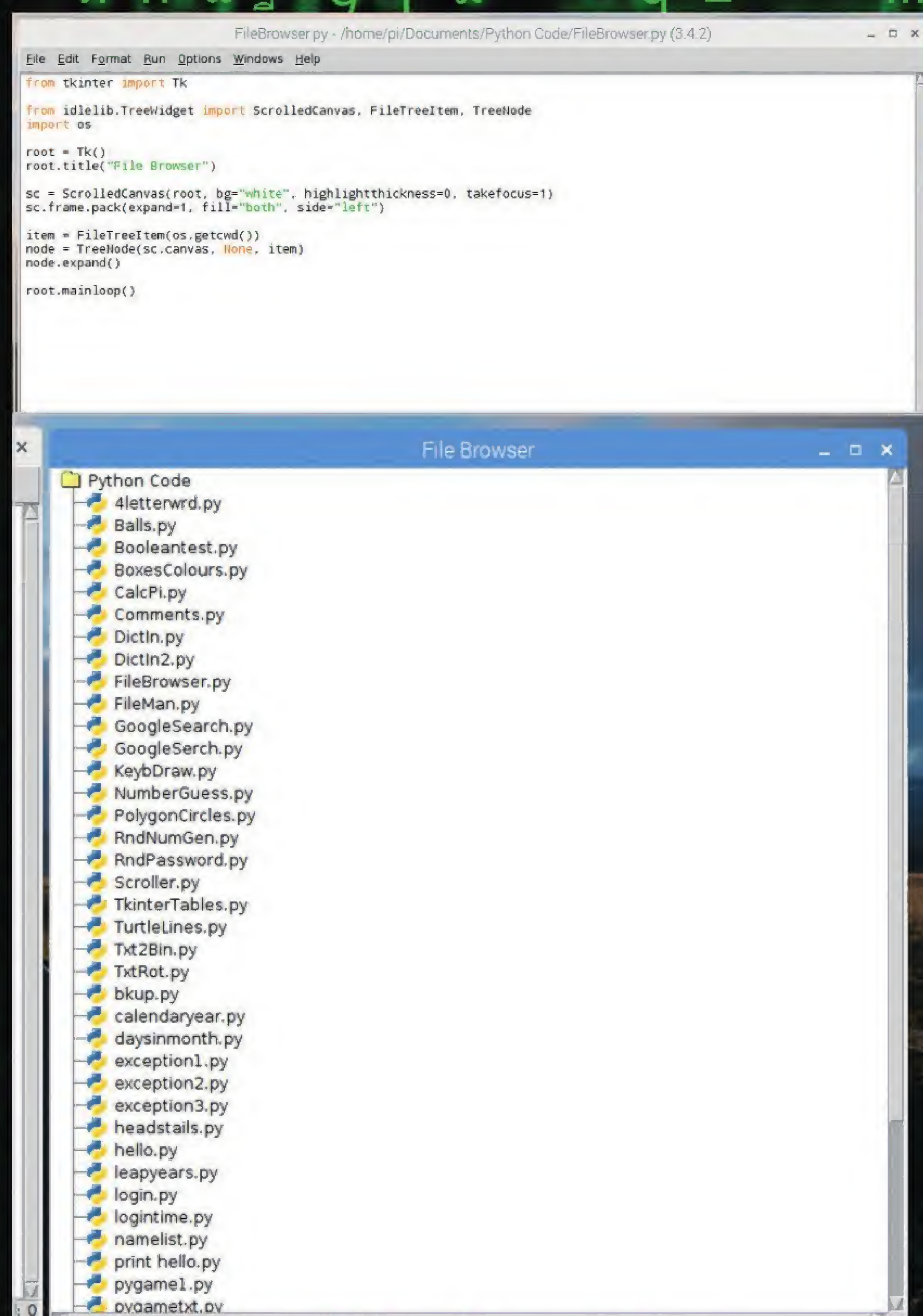
print(' '.join(format(ord(x), 'b') for x in conversion))
```





Basic GUI File Browser

Here's a helpful and interesting piece of code. It's an extremely basic file browser that's presented in a graphical user interface using the Tkinter module. There's a lot you can learn from this code and implement into your own programs.



FILEBROWSER.PY

Tkinter is the main module in use here but we're also using idlelib, so you may need to pip install any extras if the dependencies fail when you execute the code.

```
from tkinter import Tk

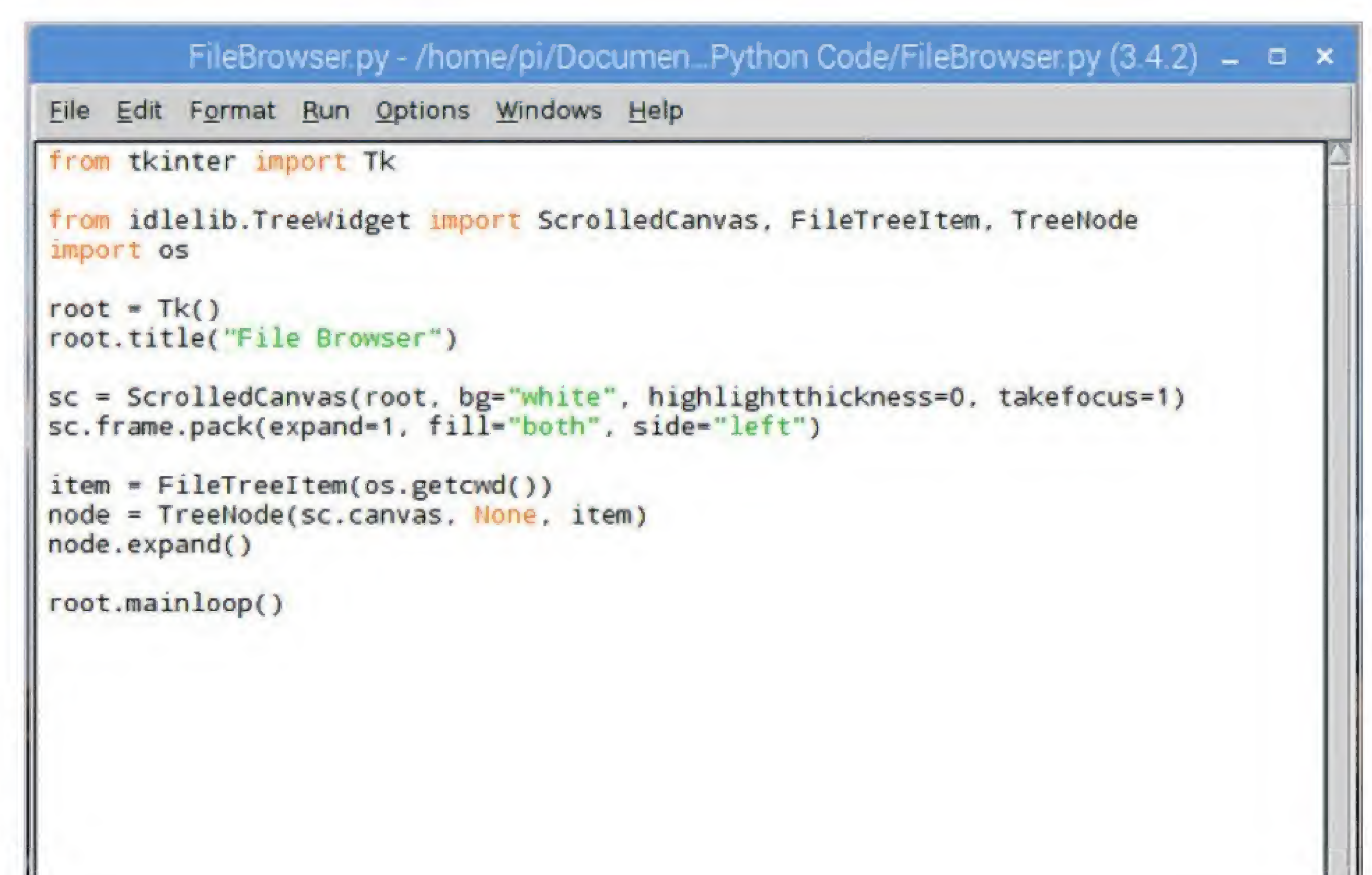
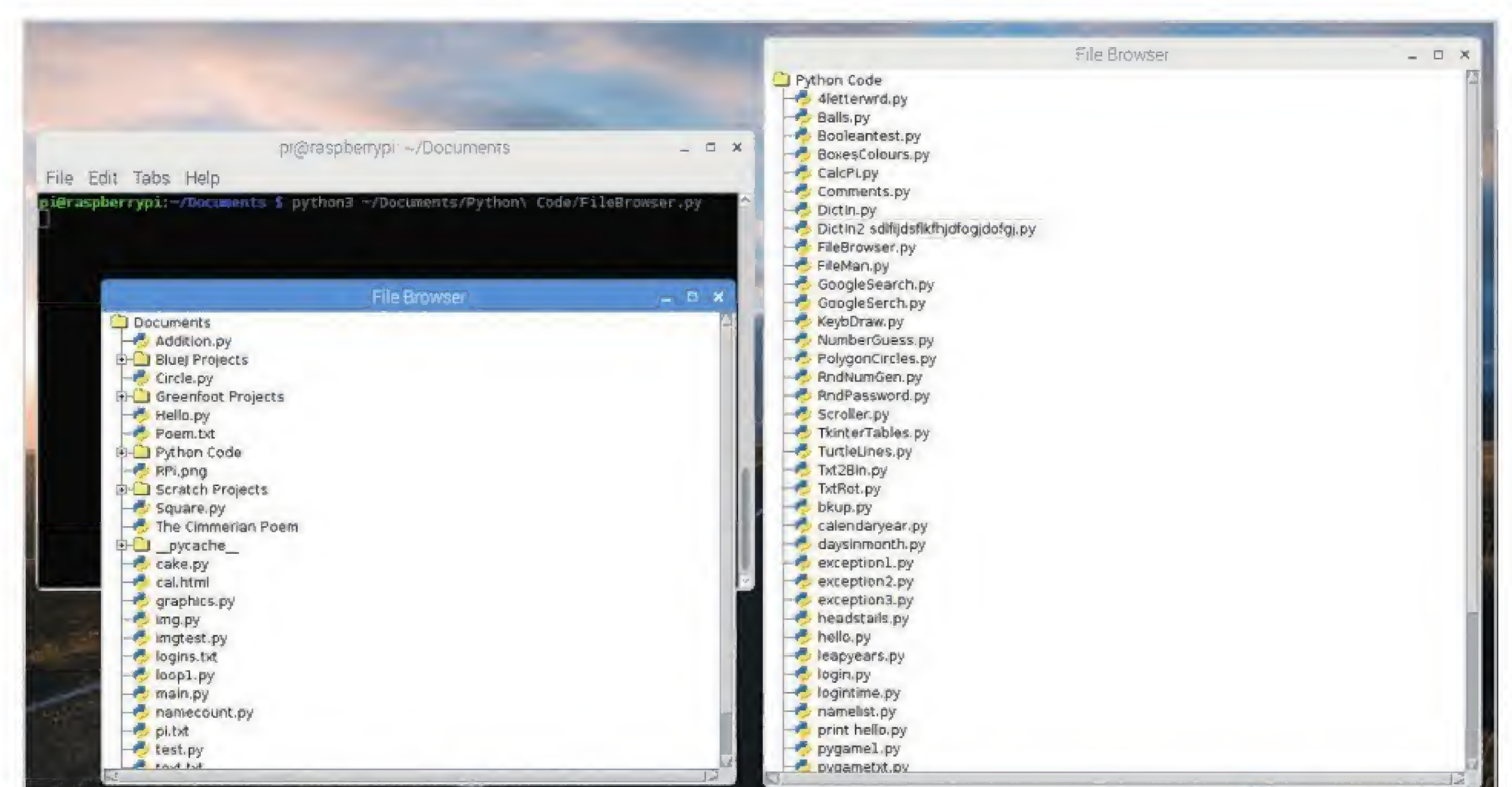
from idlelib.TreeWidget import ScrolledCanvas,
FileTreeItem, TreeNode
import os

root = Tk()
root.title("File Browser")

sc = ScrolledCanvas(root, bg="white",
highlightthickness=0, takefocus=1)
sc.frame.pack(expand=1, fill="both", side="left")

item = FileTreeItem(os.getcwd())
node = TreeNode(sc.canvas, None, item)
node.expand()

root.mainloop()
```



Advanced Filing

When executed, the code will display the current directory's contents. If you want to see the contents of another directory, you can run the code from a command line within the chosen directory; just remember to call the code from where it's located on your system, as per the second screenshot. You can also double-click any of the file names shown in the directory tree and rename them.

This is an interesting piece of code and one that you can insert into your own programs. You can extend the code to include a user specified directory to browse, perhaps your own unique file icons too. If you're using Linux, create an alias to execute the code and then you can run it from wherever you are in the system.

Windows users may have some trouble with the above code, an alternative can be achieved by using the following:

```
from tkinter import *
from tkinter import ttk
from tkinter.filedialog import askopenfilename

root = Tk( )

def OpenFile():
    name = askopenfilename(initialdir="C:/",
                           filetypes=(("Text File", "*.txt"),("All
                           Files","*.")),
                           title = "Choose a file."
                           )
    print (name)
```

```
try:
    with open(name,'r') as UseFile:
        print(UseFile.read())
except:
    print("No files opened")

Title = root.title( "File Opener")
label = ttk.Label(root, text ="File
Open",foreground="red",font=("Helvetica", 16))
label.pack()

menu = Menu(root)
root.config(menu=menu)

file = Menu(menu)

file.add_command(label = 'Open', command = OpenFile)
file.add_command(label = 'Exit', command =
lambda:exit())

menu.add_cascade(label = 'File', menu = file)

root.mainloop()
```

It's not quite the same but this code allows you to open files in your system via the familiar Windows Explorer. It's worth experimenting with to see what you can do with it.

```
Filetest1.py - C:\Users\david\Documents\Python\filetest1.py (3.6.2)
File Edit Format Run Options Window Help

from tkinter import *
from tkinter import ttk
from tkinter.filedialog import askopenfilename

root = Tk( )

def OpenFile():
    name = askopenfilename(initialdir="C:/",
                           filetypes=(("Text File", "*.txt"),("All
                           Files","*.")),
                           title = "Choose a file."
                           )
    print (name)
    try:
        with open(name,'r') as UseFile:
            print(UseFile.read())
    except:
        print("No files opened")

Title = root.title( "File Opener")
label = ttk.Label(root, text ="File Open",foreground="red",font=("Helvetica", 16))
label.pack()

menu = Menu(root)
root.config(menu=menu)

file = Menu(menu)

file.add_command(label = 'Open', command = OpenFile)
file.add_command(label = 'Exit', command = lambda:exit())

menu.add_cascade(label = 'File', menu = file)

root.mainloop()
```

Ln: 11 Col: 28



Mouse Controlled Turtle

We've already seen the Turtle module being controlled by the user via the keyboard but now we thought we'd see how the user can use their mouse as a drawing tool within Python. We have two possible code examples here, pick which works best for you.

```
from turtle import Screen, Turtle

screen = Screen()
yertle = Turtle()

def k101():
    screen.onscreenclick(click_handler)

def click_handler(x, y):
    screen.onscreenclick(None) # disable event inside event handler
    yertle.setheading(yertle.towards(x, y))
    yertle.goto(x, y)
    screen.onscreenclick(click_handler) # reenale event on event handler exit

screen.onkey(k101, " ") # space turns on mouse drawing

screen.listen()

screen.mainloop()
```

```
from turtle import *

shape("circle")
pencolor("blue")
width(2)
ondrag(goto)
listen()

#Warning - This code can crash Python, so use it sparingly.
```

MOUSETURTLE.PY

The first piece of code presents the standard Turtle window. Press Space and then click anywhere on the screen for the Turtle to draw to the mouse pointer. The second allows you to click the Turtle and drag it around the screen; but be warned, it can crash Python.

1st Code Example:

```
from turtle import Screen, Turtle

screen = Screen()
yertle = Turtle()

def k101():
    screen.onscreenclick(click_handler)

def click_handler(x, y):
    screen.onscreenclick(None) # disable event inside event handler
    yertle.setheading(yertle.towards(x, y))
    yertle.goto(x, y)
    screen.onscreenclick(click_handler) # reenale event on event handler exit

screen.onkey(k101, " ") # space turns on mouse drawing

screen.listen()

screen.mainloop()
```

2nd Code Example:

```
from turtle import *
shape("circle")
pencolor("blue")
width(2)
ondrag(goto)
listen()
```

Ninja TurtleMouse

This code utilises some interesting skills. Obviously it will stretch your Python Turtle skills to come up with any improvements, which is great, but it could make for a nice piece of code to insert into something a young child will use. Therefore it can be a fantastic project for a younger person to get their teeth into; or perhaps even as part of a game where the main character is tasked to draw a skull and crossbones or something similar.

Python Alarm Clock

Ever taken a quick break from working at the computer, then suddenly realised many minutes later that you've spent all that time on Facebook? Introducing the Python alarm clock code, where you can drop into the command prompt and tell the code how many minutes until the alarm goes off.

ALARMCLOCK.PY

This code is designed for use in the command prompt, be that Windows, Linux or macOS. There are some instructions on how to use it in the main print section but essentially it's: `python3 AlarmClock.py 10` (to go off in ten minutes).

```
import sys
import string
from time import sleep

sa = sys.argv
lsa = len(sys.argv)
if lsa != 2:
    print ("Usage: [ python3 ] AlarmClock.py duration_in_minutes")
    print ("Example: [ python3 ] AlarmClock.py 10")
    print ("Use a value of 0 minutes for testing the alarm immediately.")
    print ("Beeps a few times after the duration is over.")
    print ("Press Ctrl-C to terminate the alarm clock early.")
    sys.exit(1)

try:
    minutes = int(sa[1])
except ValueError:
    print ("Invalid numeric value (%s) for minutes" % sa[1])
    print ("Should be an integer >= 0")
    sys.exit(1)

if minutes < 0:
    print ("Invalid value for minutes, should be >= 0")
    sys.exit(1)

seconds = minutes * 60

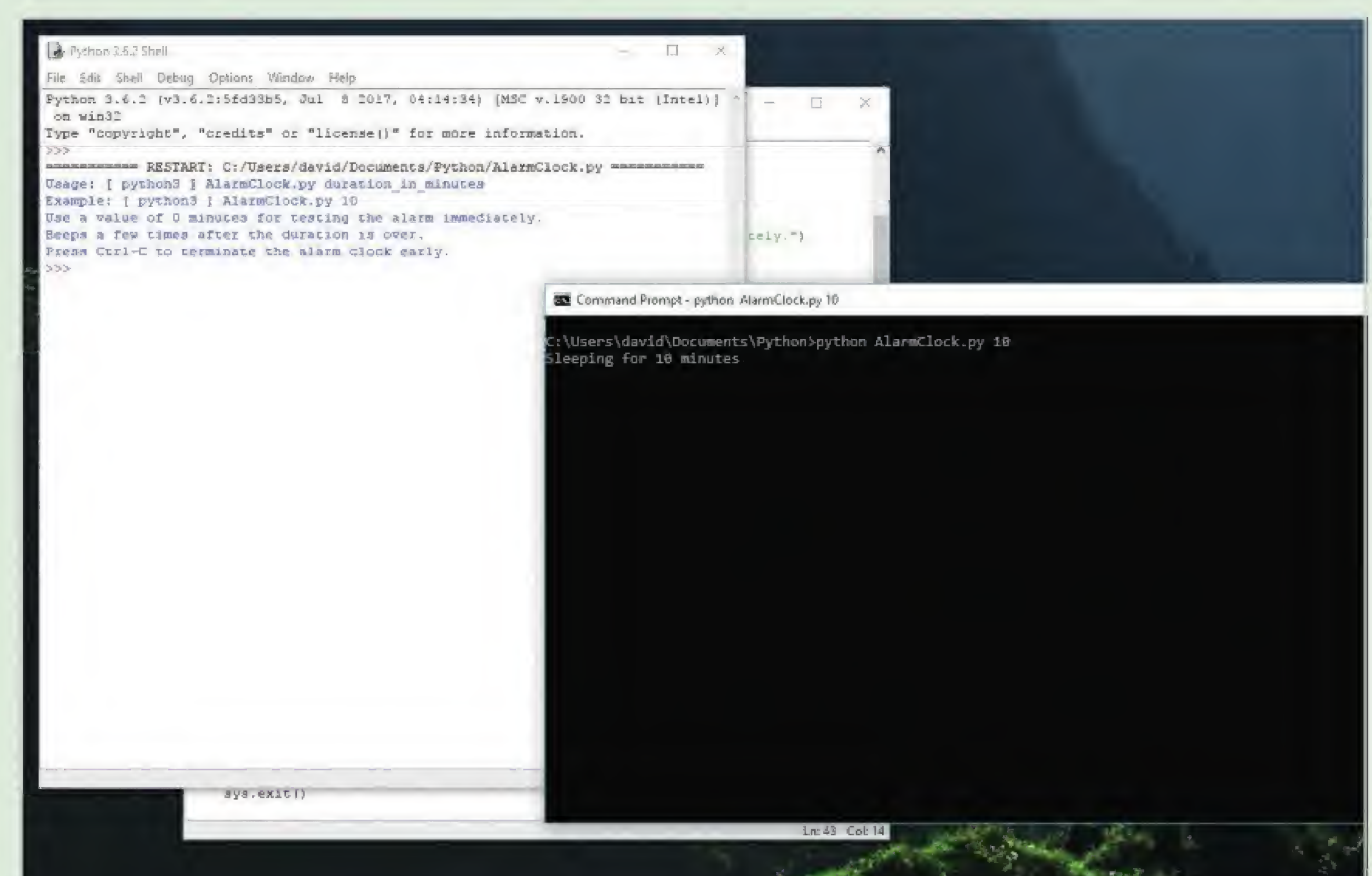
if minutes == 1:
    unit_word = " minute"
else:
    unit_word = " minutes"
```

```
try:
    if minutes > 0:
        print ("Sleeping for " + str(minutes) + unit_word)
        sleep(seconds)
        print ("Wake up")
        for i in range(5):
            print (chr(7)),
            sleep(1)
except KeyboardInterrupt:
    print ("Interrupted by user")
    sys.exit(1)
```

Wakey Wakey

There's some good use of try and except blocks here, alongside some other useful loops that can help you get a firmer understanding of how they work in Python. The code itself can be used in a variety of ways: in a game where something happens after a set amount of time or simply as a handy desktop alarm clock for your tea break.

Linux users, try making the alarm clock code into an alias, so you can run a simple command to execute it. Then, why not integrate a user input at the beginning to ask the user for the length of time they want until the alarm goes off, rather than having to include it in the command line.



Windows users, if Python 3 is the only version installed on your system then you will need to execute the code without adding the 3 to the end of the Python command. For example:

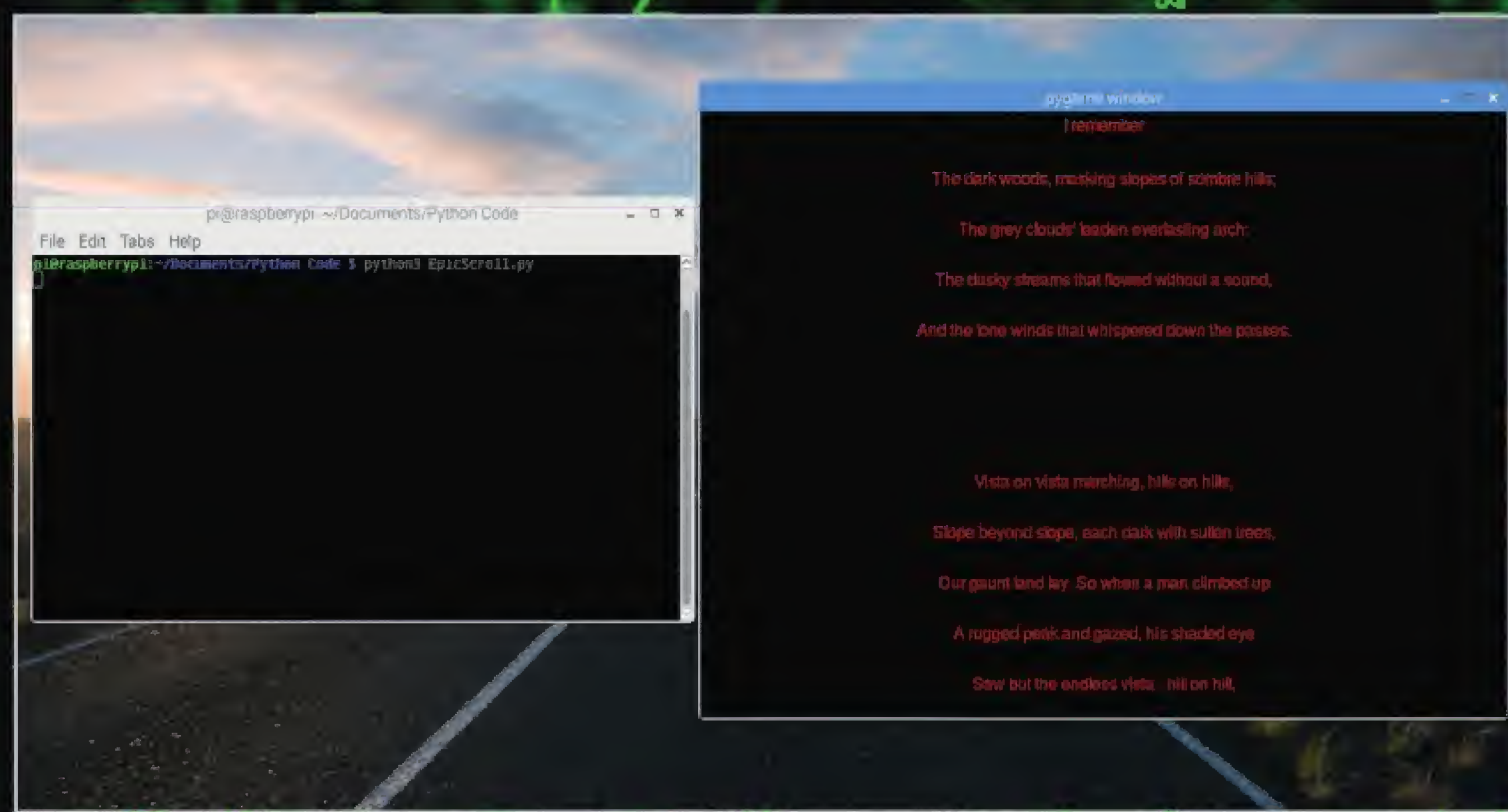
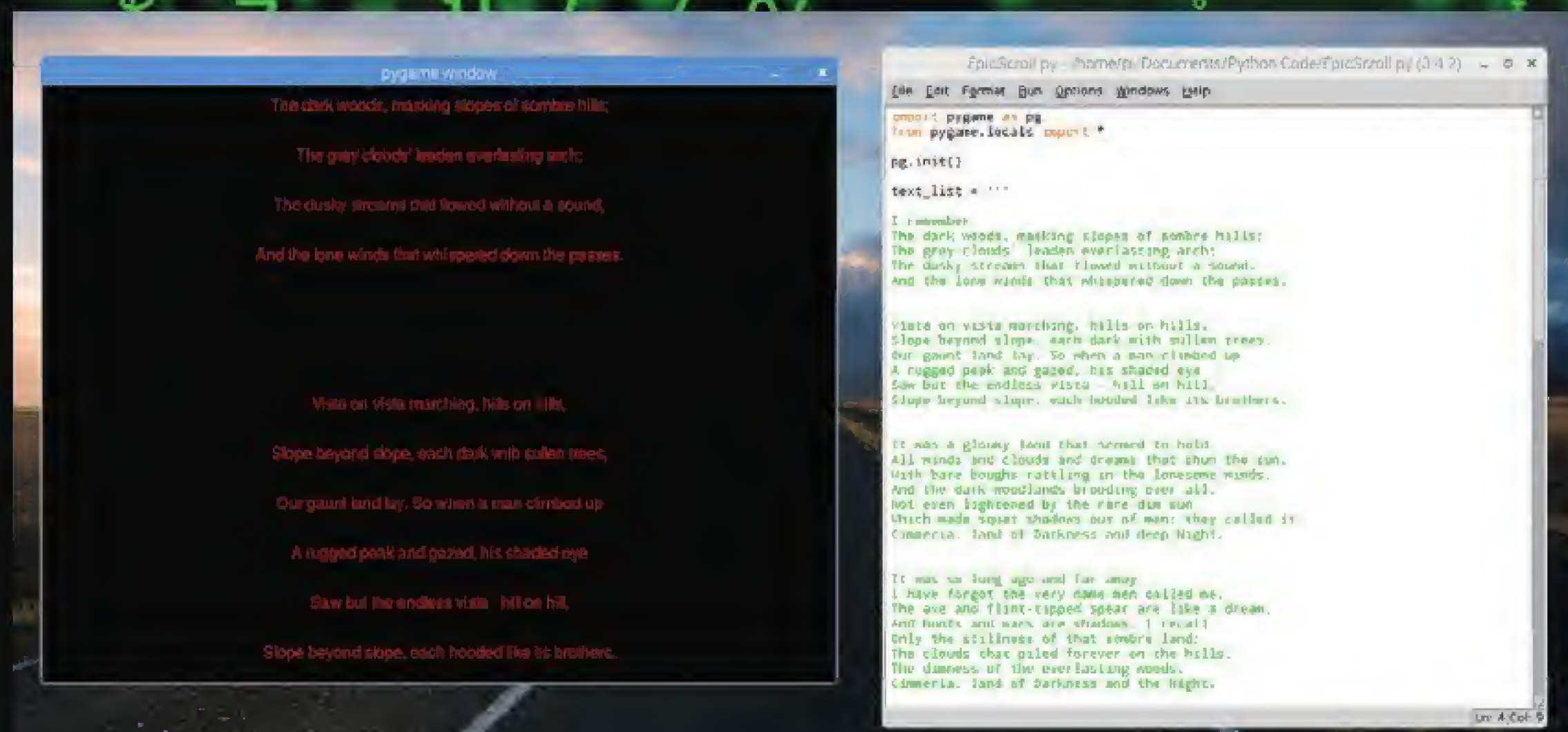
```
python AlarmClock.py 10
```

Again, you could easily incorporate this into a Windows batch file and even set a schedule to activate the alarm at certain times of the day.



Vertically Scrolling Text

What's not to like about vertically scrolling text? Its uses are many: the beginning of a game or introduction to something epic, like the beginning of every Star Wars movie; a list of credits at the end of something, such as a Python presentation. The list goes on.



EPICSCROLL.PY

We've used the poem Cimmeria by Robert E. Howard for the code's scrolling text, along with a dramatic black background and red text. We think you'll agree, it's quite epic.

```
import pygame as pg
from pygame.locals import *

pg.init()

text_list = ''

I remember
The dark woods, masking slopes of sombre hills;
The grey clouds' leaden everlasting arch;
The dusky streams that flowed without a sound,
And the lone winds that whispered down the passes.

Vista on vista marching, hills on hills,
Slope beyond slope, each dark with sullen trees,
Our gaunt land lay. So when a man climbed up
A rugged peak and gazed, his shaded eye
Saw but the endless vista - hill on hill,
Slope beyond slope, each hooded like its brothers.

It was a gloomy land that seemed to hold
All winds and clouds and dreams that shun the sun,
With bare boughs rattling in the lonesome winds,
And the dark woodlands brooding over all,
Not even lightened by the rare dim sun
Which made squat shadows out of men; they called it
Cimmeria, land of Darkness and deep Night.

It was so long ago and far away
I have forgot the very name men called me.
The axe and flint-tipped spear are like a dream,
And hunts and wars are shadows. I recall
Only the stillness of that sombre land;
The clouds that piled forever on the hills,
The dimness of the everlasting woods.
Cimmeria, land of Darkness and the Night.

Oh, soul of mine, born out of shadowed hills,
To clouds and winds and ghosts that shun the sun,
How many deaths shall serve to break at last
This heritage which wraps me in the grey
Apparel of ghosts? I search my heart and find
Cimmeria, land of Darkness and the Night!

''.split('\n')
```



```

class Credits:
    def __init__(self, screen_rect, lst):
        self.srect = screen_rect
        self.lst = lst
        self.size = 16
        self.color = (255,0,0)
        self.buff_centery = self.srect.height/2 + 5
        self.buff_lines = 50
        self.timer = 0.0
        self.delay = 0
        self.make_surfaces()

    def make_text(self,message):
        font = pg.font.SysFont('Arial', self.size)
        text = font.render(message,True,self.color)
        rect = text.get_rect(center = (self.srect.
        centerx, self.srect.centery + self.buff_centery) )
        return text,rect

    def make_surfaces(self):
        self.text = []
        for i, line in enumerate(self.lst):
            l = self.make_text(line)
            l[1].y += i*self.buff_lines
            self.text.append(l)

    def update(self):
        if pg.time.get_ticks()-self.timer > self.delay:
            self.timer = pg.time.get_ticks()
            for text, rect in self.text:
                rect.y -= 1

    def render(self, surf):
        for text, rect in self.text:
            surf.blit(text, rect)

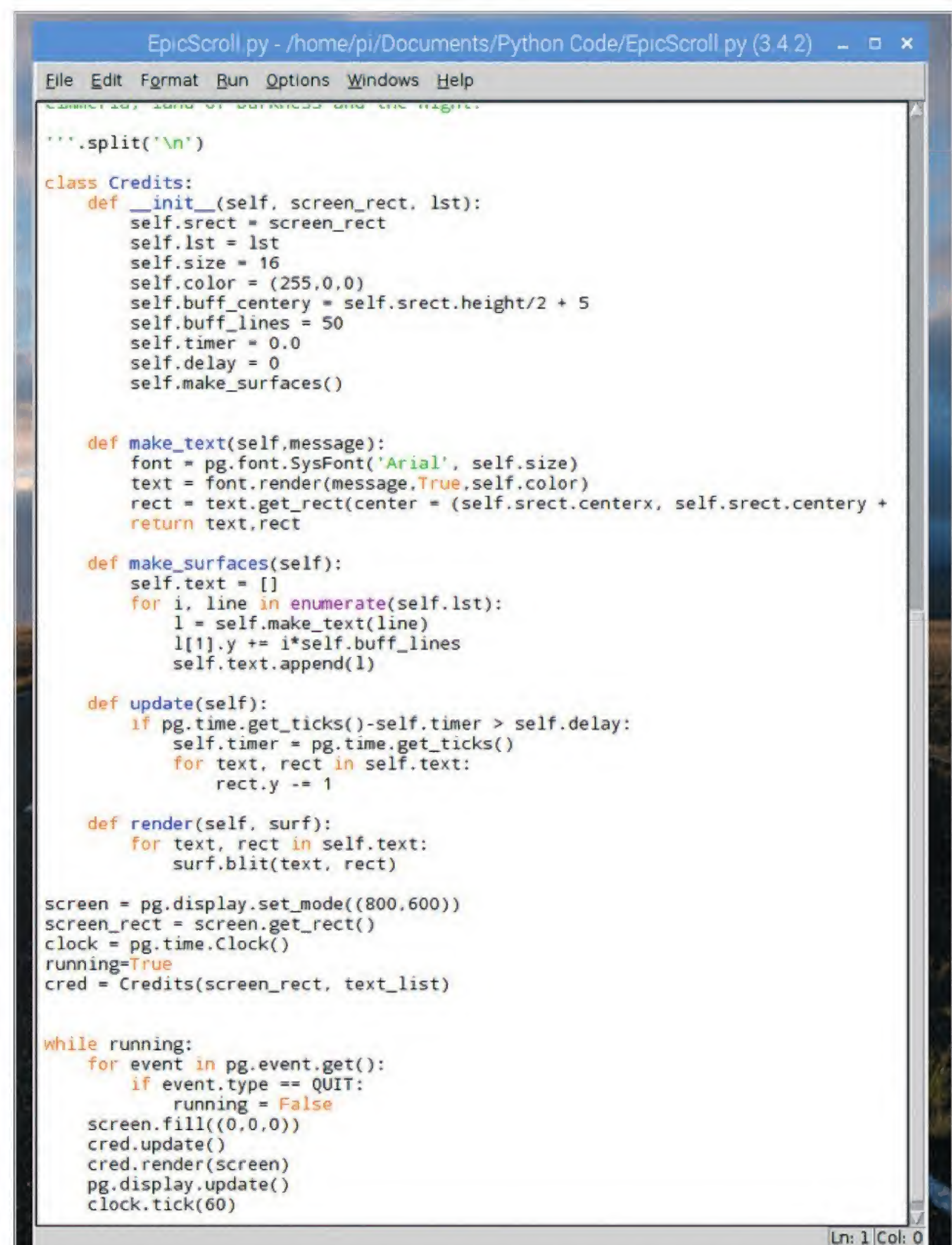
screen = pg.display.set_mode((800,600))
screen_rect = screen.get_rect()
clock = pg.time.Clock()
running=True
cred = Credits(screen_rect, text_list)

while running:
    for event in pg.event.get():
        if event.type == QUIT:
            running = False
    screen.fill((0,0,0))
    cred.update()
    cred.render(screen)
    pg.display.update()
    clock.tick(60)

```

A Long Time Ago...

The obvious main point of enhancement is the actual text itself. Replace it with a list of credits, or an equally epic opening storyline to your Python game, and it will certainly hit the mark with whoever plays it. Don't forget to change the screen resolution if needed; we're currently running it at 800 x 600.



```

EpicScroll.py - /home/pi/Documents/Python Code/EpicScroll.py (3.4.2)
File Edit Format Run Options Windows Help

...split('\n')

class Credits:
    def __init__(self, screen_rect, lst):
        self.srect = screen_rect
        self.lst = lst
        self.size = 16
        self.color = (255,0,0)
        self.buff_centery = self.srect.height/2 + 5
        self.buff_lines = 50
        self.timer = 0.0
        self.delay = 0
        self.make_surfaces()

    def make_text(self,message):
        font = pg.font.SysFont('Arial', self.size)
        text = font.render(message,True,self.color)
        rect = text.get_rect(center = (self.srect.centerx, self.srect.centery +
        return text,rect

    def make_surfaces(self):
        self.text = []
        for i, line in enumerate(self.lst):
            l = self.make_text(line)
            l[1].y += i*self.buff_lines
            self.text.append(l)

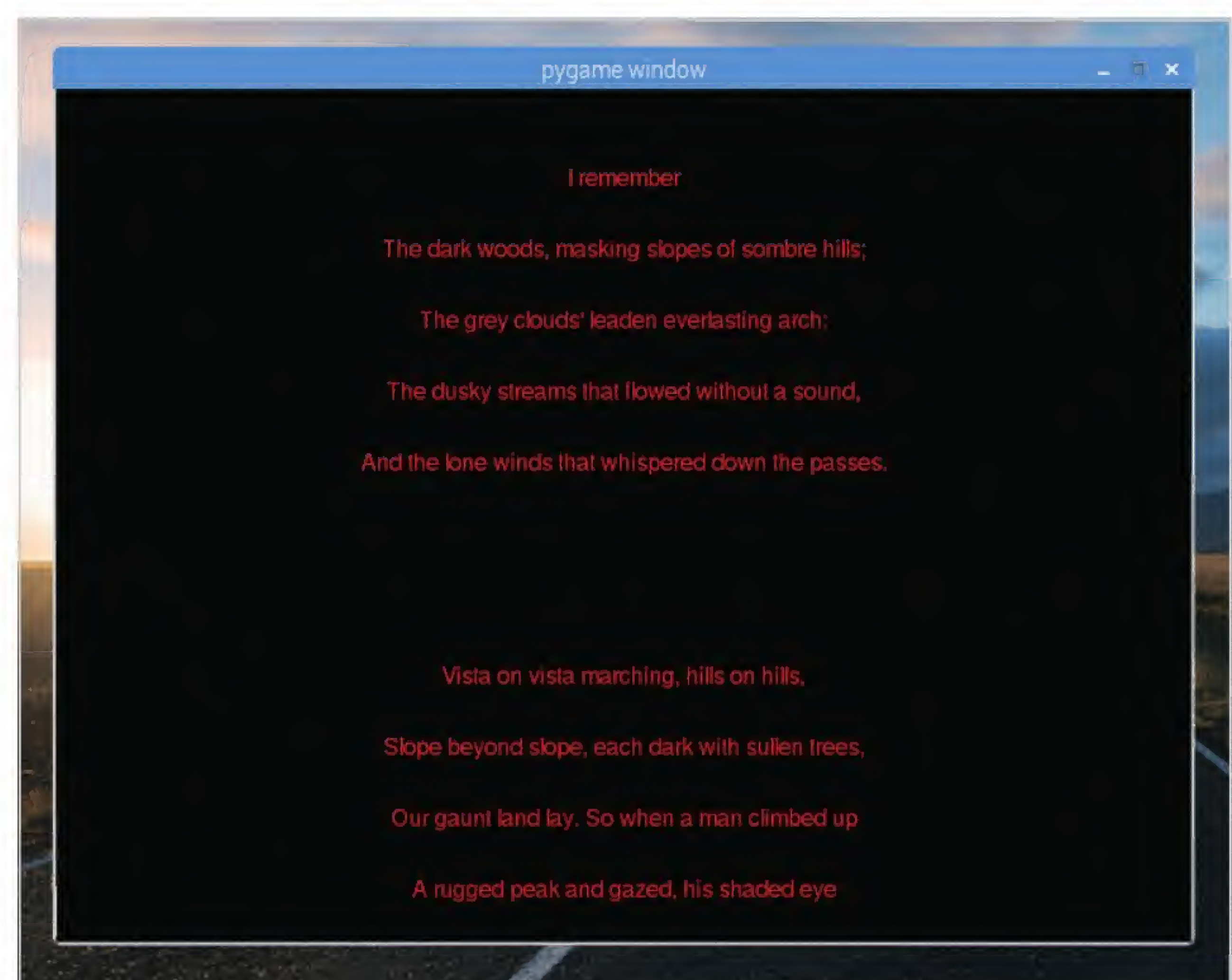
    def update(self):
        if pg.time.get_ticks()-self.timer > self.delay:
            self.timer = pg.time.get_ticks()
            for text, rect in self.text:
                rect.y -= 1

    def render(self, surf):
        for text, rect in self.text:
            surf.blit(text, rect)

screen = pg.display.set_mode((800,600))
screen_rect = screen.get_rect()
clock = pg.time.Clock()
running=True
cred = Credits(screen_rect, text_list)

while running:
    for event in pg.event.get():
        if event.type == QUIT:
            running = False
        screen.fill((0,0,0))
        cred.update()
        cred.render(screen)
        pg.display.update()
        clock.tick(60)

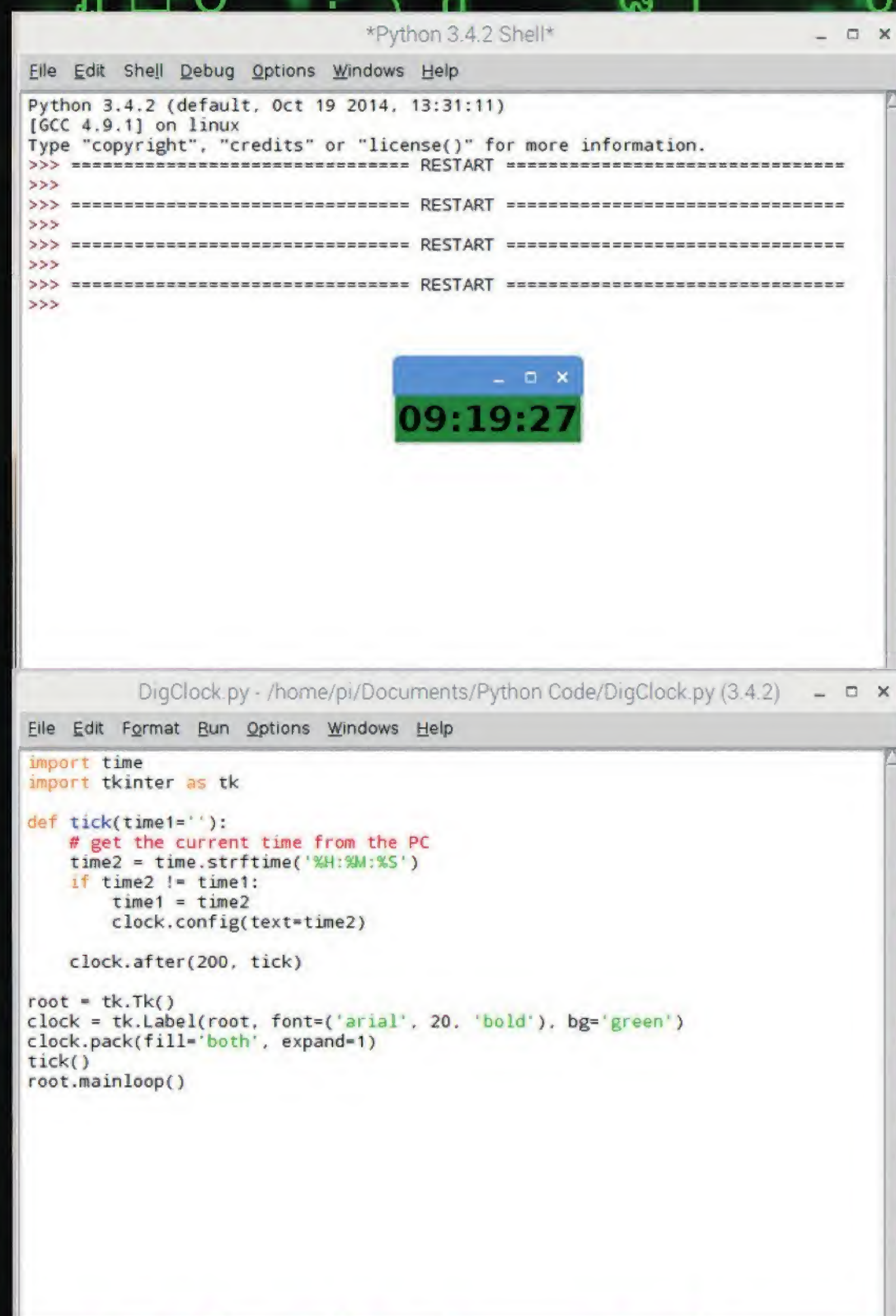
```





Python Digital Clock

There is already a clock displayed on the desktop of most operating systems but it's always handy to have one on top of the currently open window. To that end, why not create a Python digital clock that can be a companion desktop widget for you.



DIGCLOCK.PY

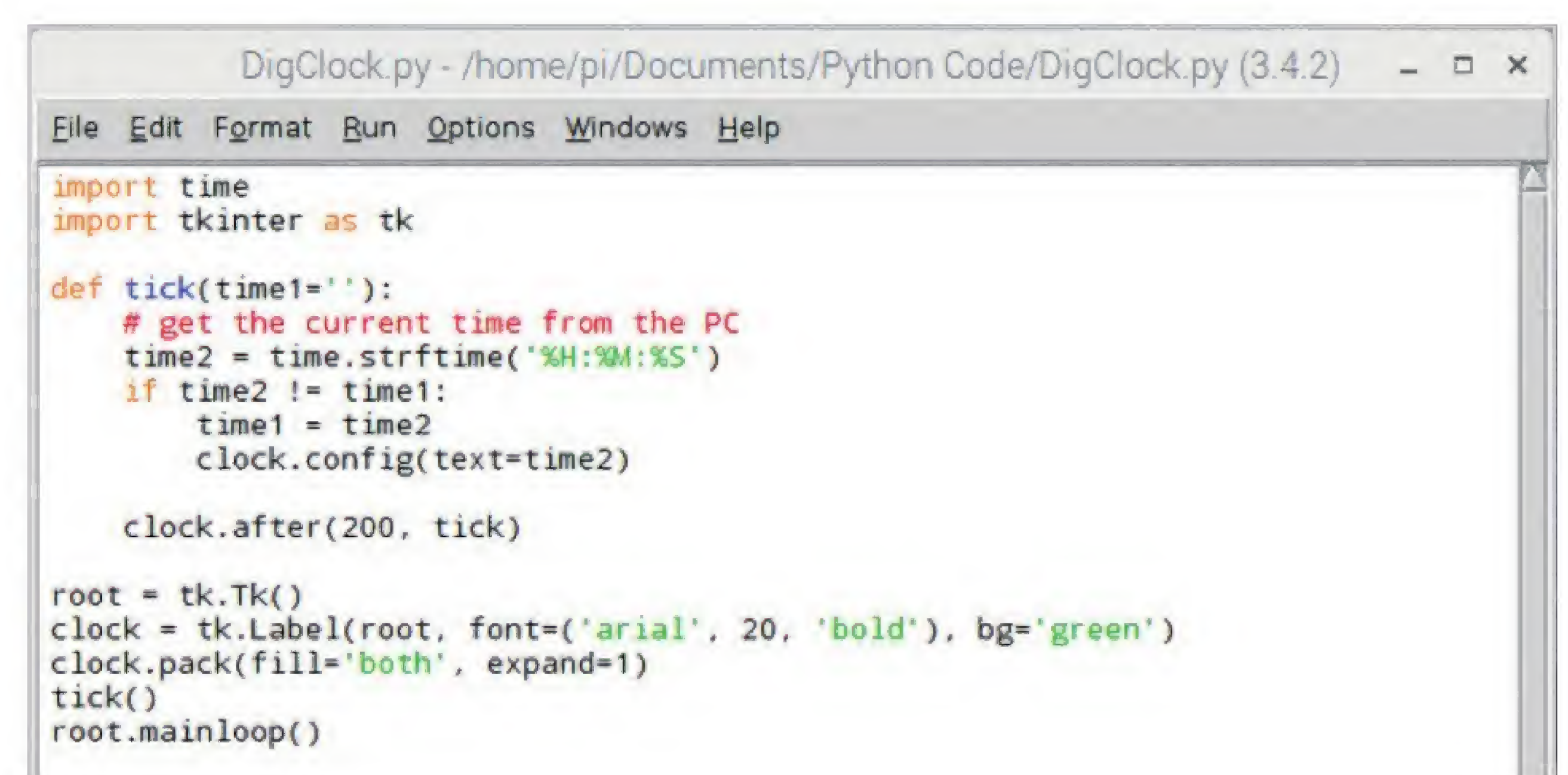
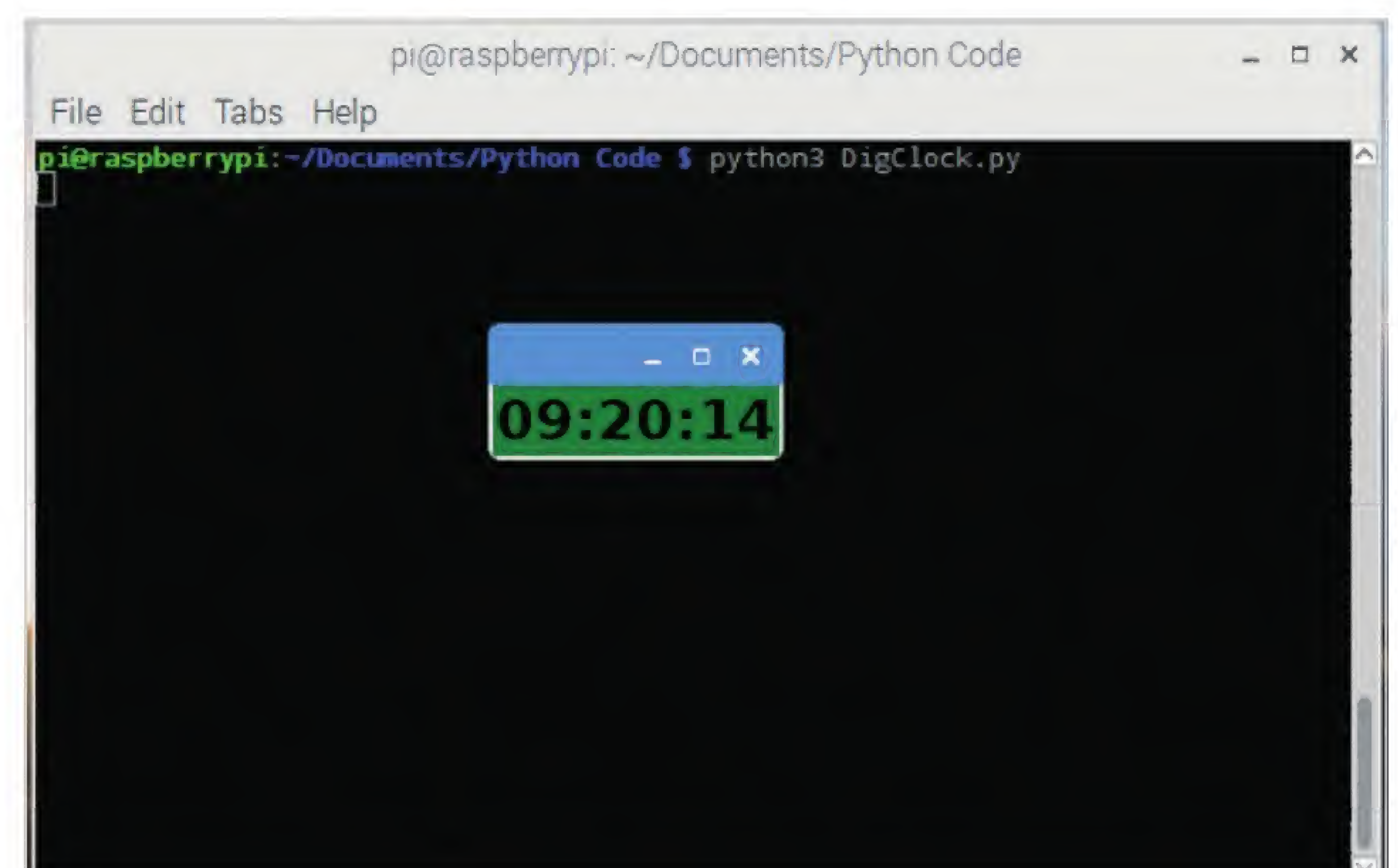
This is a surprisingly handy little script and one that we've used in the past instead of relying on a watch or even the clock in the system tray of the operating system.

```
import time
import tkinter as tk

def tick(time1=''):
    # get the current time from the PC
    time2 = time.strftime('%H:%M:%S')
    if time2 != time1:
        time1 = time2
        clock.config(text=time2)

    clock.after(200, tick)

root = tk.Tk()
clock = tk.Label(root, font=('arial', 20, 'bold'),
                 bg='green')
clock.pack(fill='both', expand=1)
tick()
root.mainloop()
```

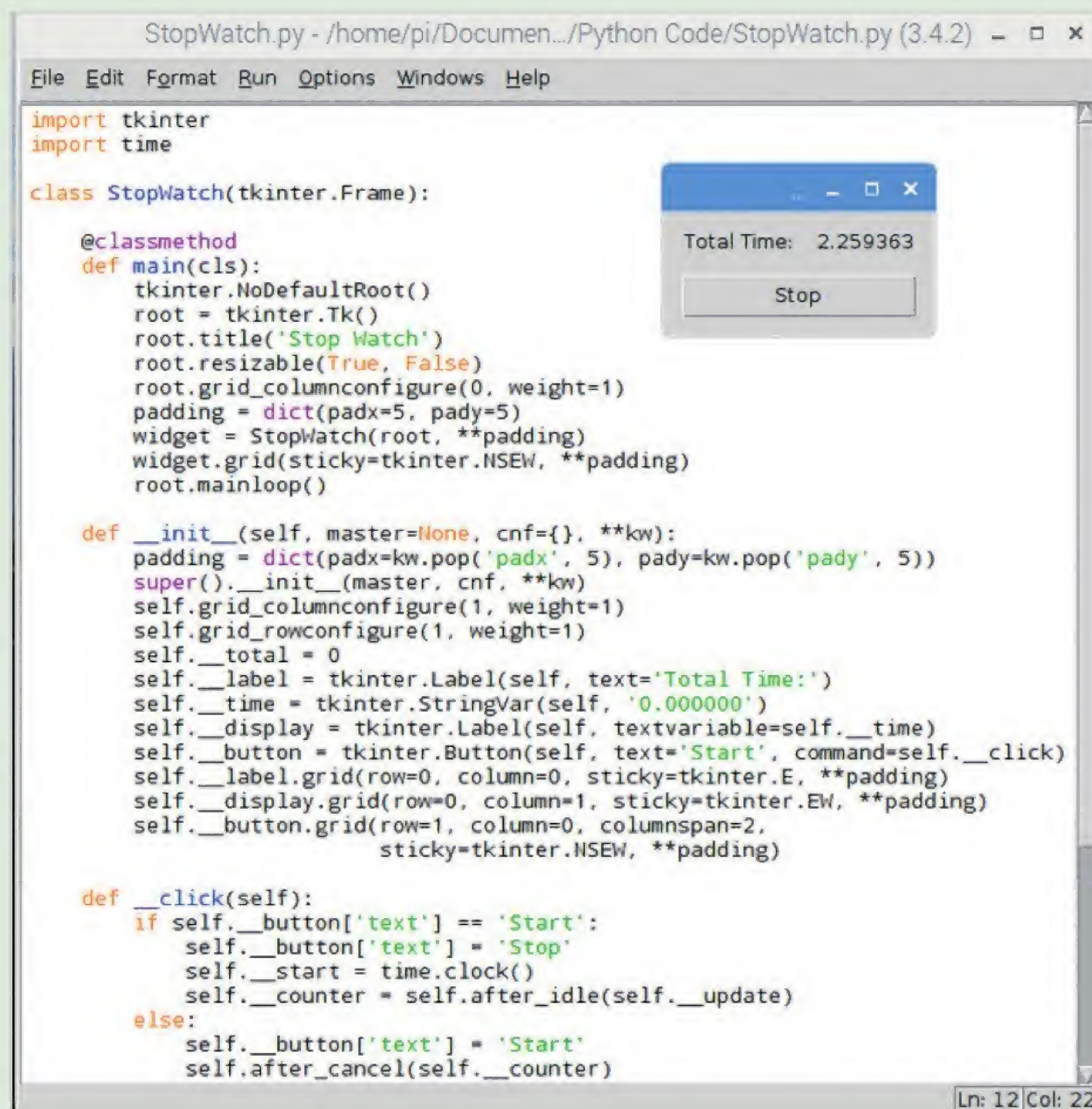


Tick Tock

This is a piece of code we've used many times in the past to keep track of time while working on multiple monitors and with just a quick glance to where we've placed it on the screen.

The Tkinter box can be moved around without affecting the time, maximised or closed by the user at will. We haven't given the Tkinter clock window a title, so you can add to that easily enough by snipping the code from other examples in this book.

Another area of improvement is to include this code when Windows or Linux starts, so it automatically pops up on the desktop. See also, if you're able to improve its functionality by including different time zones: Rome, Paris, London, New York, Moscow and so on.



Another example, expanding on the original code, could be a digital stopwatch. For that you could use the following:

```
import tkinter
import time

class StopWatch(tkinter.Frame):
```

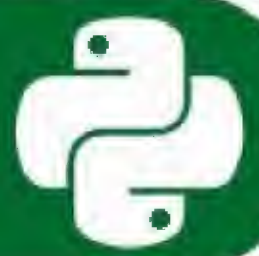
```
    @classmethod
    def main(cls):
        tkinter.NoDefaultRoot()
        root = tkinter.Tk()
        root.title('Stop Watch')
        root.resizable(True, False)
        root.grid_columnconfigure(0, weight=1)
        padding = dict(padx=5, pady=5)
        widget = StopWatch(root, **padding)
        widget.grid(sticky=tkinter.NSEW, **padding)
        root.mainloop()

    def __init__(self, master=None, cnf={}, **kw):
        padding = dict(padx=kw.pop('padx', 5), pady=kw.
            pop('pady', 5))
        super().__init__(master, cnf, **kw)
        self.grid_columnconfigure(1, weight=1)
        self.grid_rowconfigure(1, weight=1)
        self.__total = 0
        self.__label = tkinter.Label(self,
            text='Total Time:')
        self.__time = tkinter.StringVar(self, '0.000000')
        self.__display = tkinter.Label(self,
            textvariable=self.__time)
        self.__button = tkinter.Button(self,
            text='Start', command=self.__click)
        self.__label.grid(row=0, column=0,
            sticky=tkinter.E, **padding)
        self.__display.grid(row=0, column=1,
            sticky=tkinter.EW, **padding)
        self.__button.grid(row=1, column=0,
            columnspan=2, sticky=tkinter.NSEW, **padding)

    def __click(self):
        if self.__button['text'] == 'Start':
            self.__button['text'] = 'Stop'
            self.__start = time.clock()
            self.__counter = self.after_idle(self.__update)
        else:
            self.__button['text'] = 'Start'
            self.after_cancel(self.__counter)

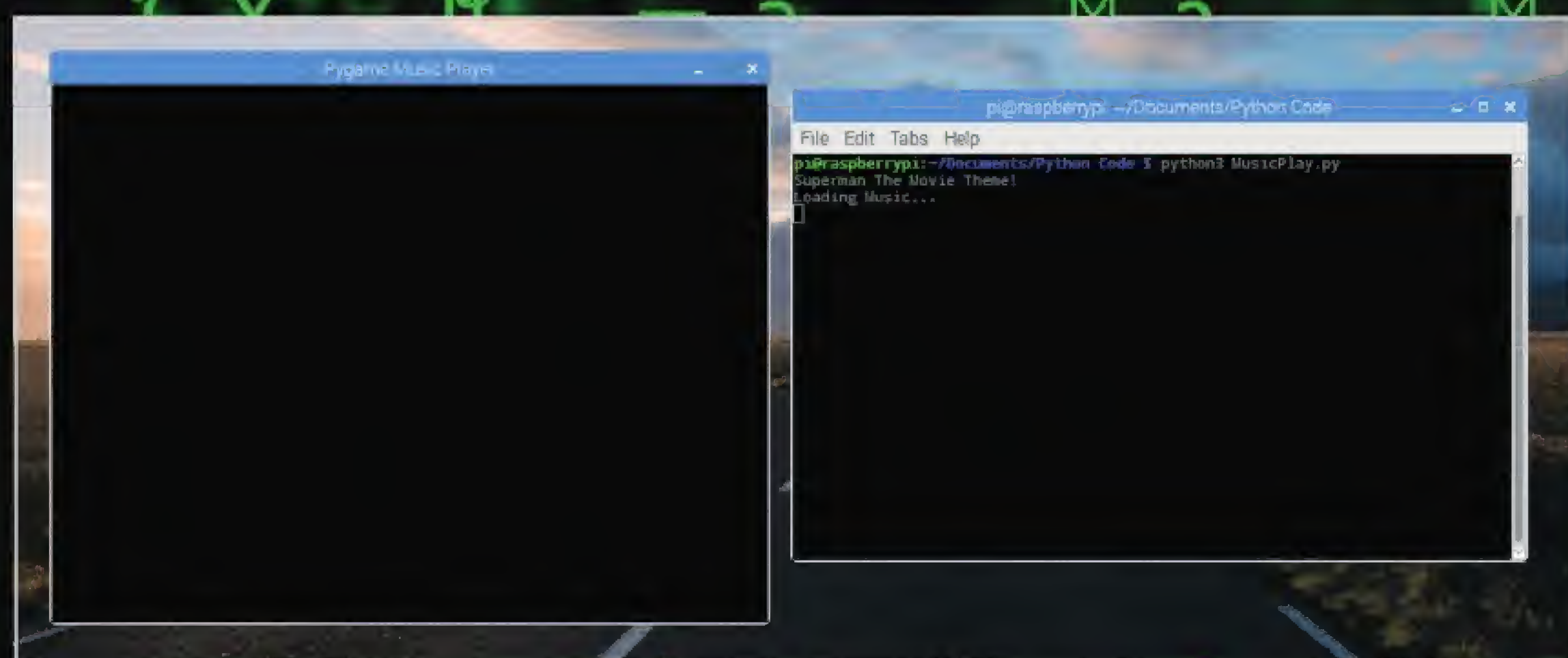
    def __update(self):
        now = time.clock()
        diff = now - self.__start
        self.__start = now
        self.__total += diff
        self.__time.set('{:.6f}'.format(self.__total))
        self.__counter = self.after_idle(self.__update)

if __name__ == '__main__':
    StopWatch.main()
```

Pygame Music Player

The Pygame module does far more than simply display graphics or GUI windows, it can also playback MP3 files amongst other media file types. For this we can use the `pygame.mixer.music()` function, along with its accompanying `pygame.mixer.music.play()` function.



MUSICPLAY.PY

The code is remarkably simple and can be played with very few lines to clutter your already fully-loaded program. Insert this code and make sure you've either provided the full path to the MP3 or it's in the same directory as the Python file.

```
import pygame, sys
from pygame.locals import *
pygame.init()

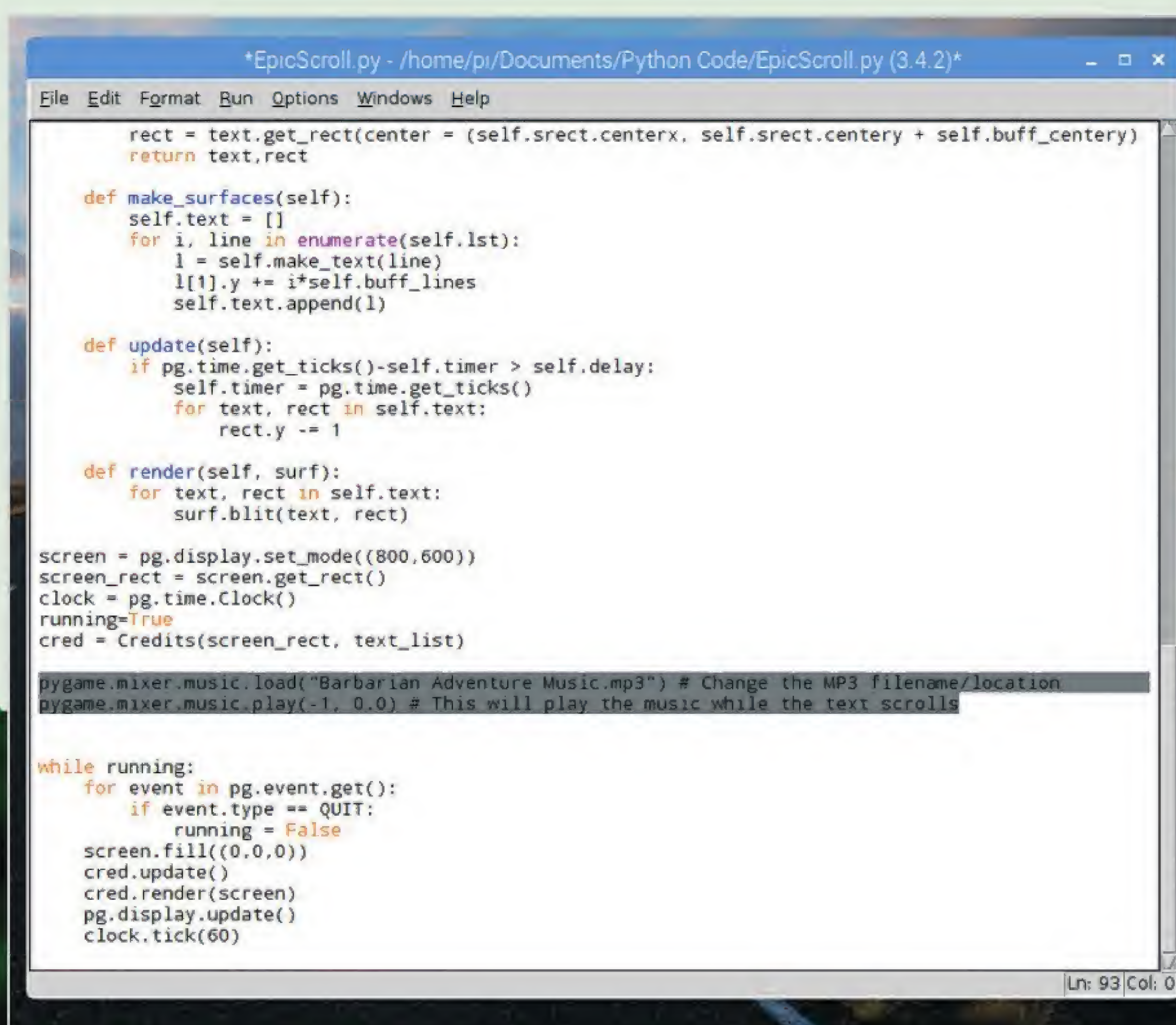
screen = pygame.display.set_mode((640, 480))
screen.fill((0, 0, 0, 255))
pygame.display.set_caption("Pygame Music Player")

pygame.mixer.music.load("Superman.mp3")
print("Superman The Movie Theme!")
print("Loading Music...")
pygame.mixer.music.play(-1, 0.0)

while True:
    for event in pygame.event.get():
        if event.type == pygame.QUIT:
            pygame.quit()
            sys.exit()
    pygame.display.update()
```

Just Play the Music and Dance...

There are a few extras you can apply here to make the music code a little more interesting. For one, how about creating a list of the available MP3s on the system, then offering the user the choice of music to play via a simple list and input functions.



You can also insert a small section of the code into a previous example used: the Vertically Scrolling Text code from Page 108. For example, you can have the bulk of the code displaying the text itself but then you can insert a couple of lines to play some music alongside the text. Making it an excellent opening to a Python game or presentation:

```
pygame.mixer.music.load("Barbarian Adventure Music.
mp3") # Change the MP3 filename/location
pygame.mixer.music.play(-1, 0.0) # This will play the
music while the text scrolls
```

Insert these lines just before the While loop in the Vertically Scrolling Text example and as long as the MP3 is present, or you pointed it to the correct location in the system, the code will scroll and play the music in the background.

Python Image Slideshow Script

Displaying images in Python can be tricky at times. Some modules work better than others at displaying certain image media types. Pygame is often the main choice but Tkinter can do a better job whilst using less memory too.

SLIDESHOW.PY

Using Tkinter to display a series of images as a slideshow is a great method of building Python programming skills. However, the images need to be saved as a .GIF.

```
from itertools import cycle
import tkinter as tk

class App(tk.Tk):
    '''Tk window/label adjusts to size of image'''
    def __init__(self, image_files, x, y, delay):

        tk.Tk.__init__(self)

        self.geometry('{}+{}'.format(x, y))
        self.delay = delay

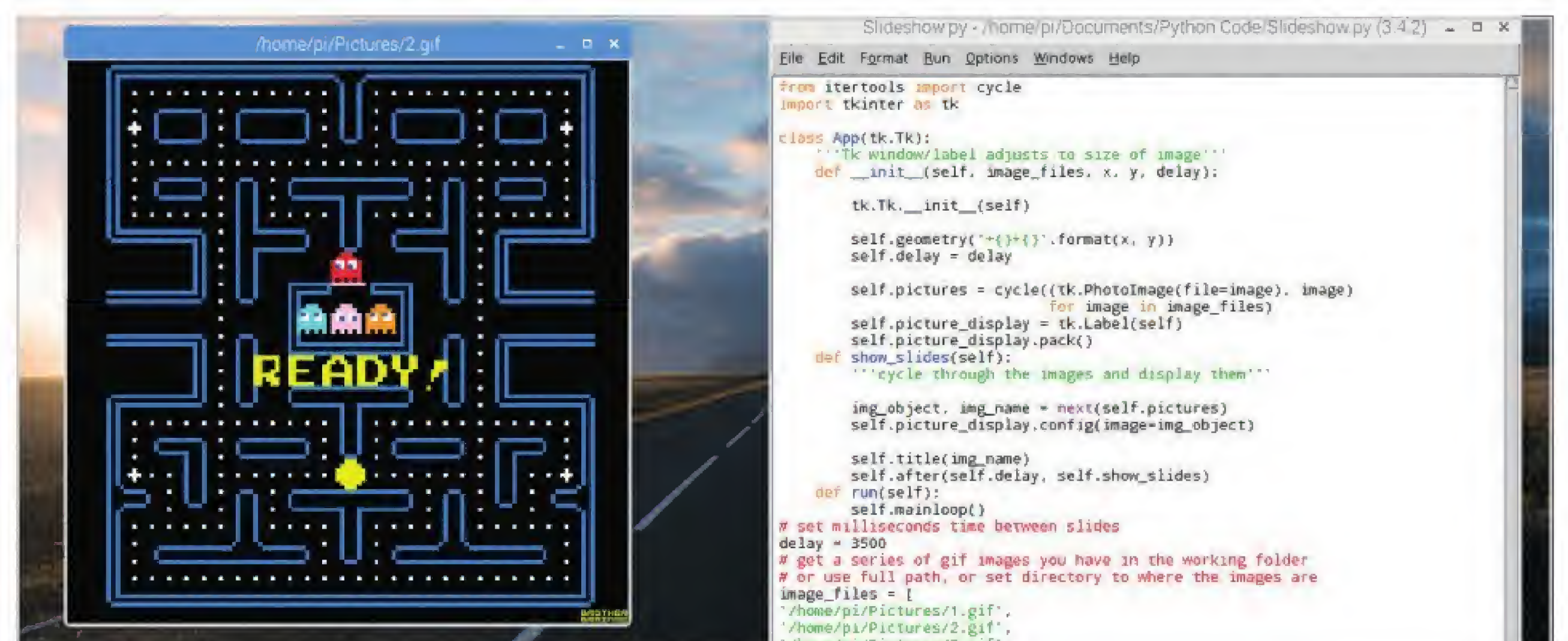
        self.pictures = cycle((tk.
            PhotoImage(file=image), image)
            for image in image_files)
        self.picture_display = tk.Label(self)
        self.picture_display.pack()
    def show_slides(self):
        '''cycle through the images and display them'''

        img_object, img_name = next(self.pictures)
        self.picture_display.config(image=img_object)

        self.title(img_name)
        self.after(self.delay, self.show_slides)
    def run(self):
        self.mainloop()
# set milliseconds time between slides
delay = 3500
# get a series of gif images you have in the
working folder
# or use full path, or set directory to where the
images are
image_files = [
    '/home/pi/Pictures/1.gif',
    '/home/pi/Pictures/2.gif',
    '/home/pi/Pictures/3.gif',
    '/home/pi/Pictures/4.gif',
```

```
'/home/pi/Pictures/5.gif'
]

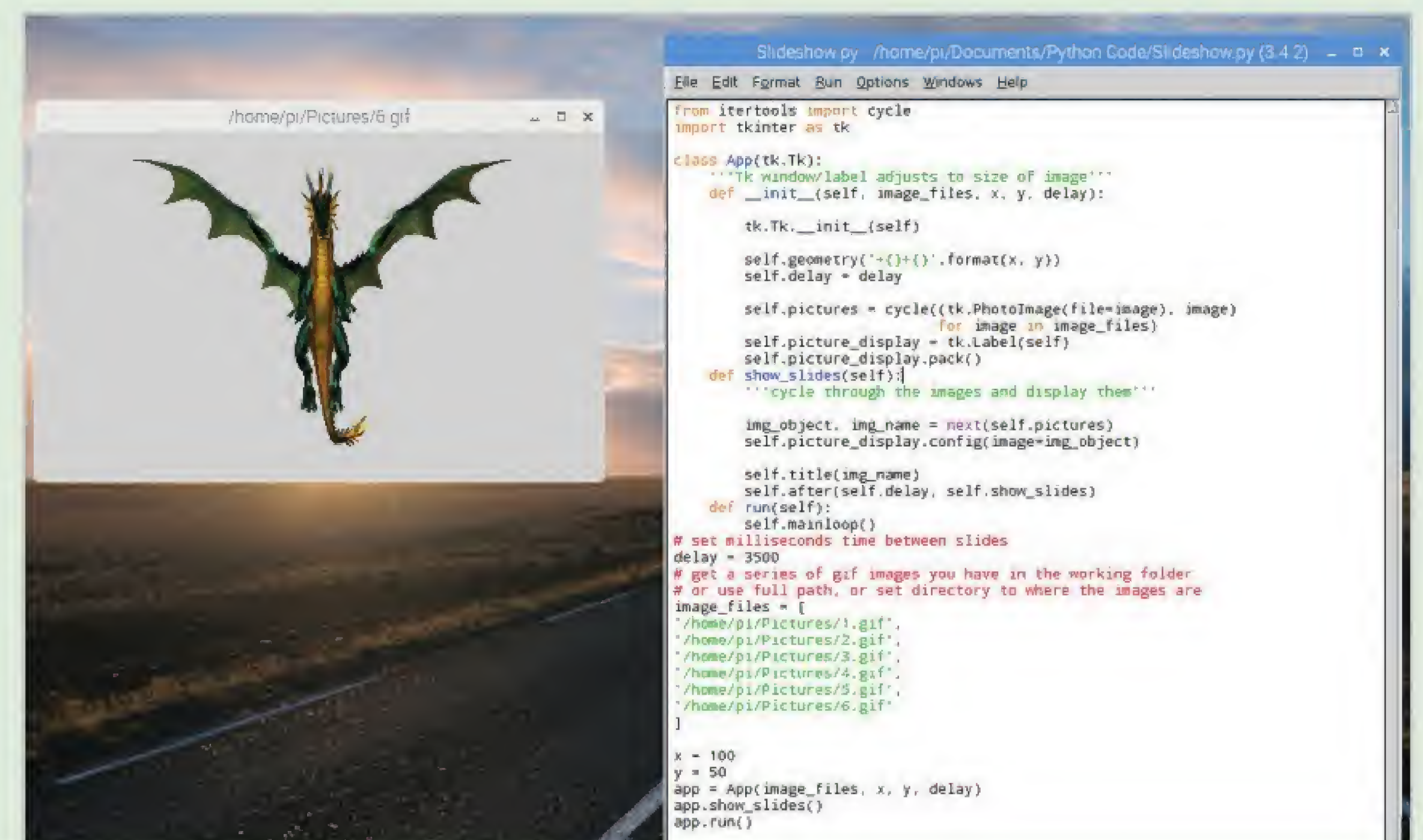
x = 100
y = 50
app = App(image_files, x, y, delay)
app.show_slides()
app.run()
```



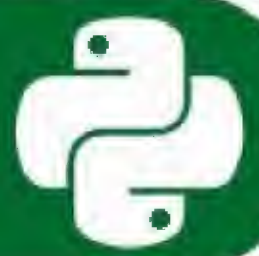
Slideshow Off

If you store your images in the same directory as the Python script is executed from, then you won't need to apply the full path destination as defined in the image_files list; you simply name them 1.gif, 2.gif and so on (or retain their full file names).

The time taken to display each image is handled by the delay variable, as noted in the code. To lessen or increase the time between slides, simply reduce or increase the number relating to the variable.

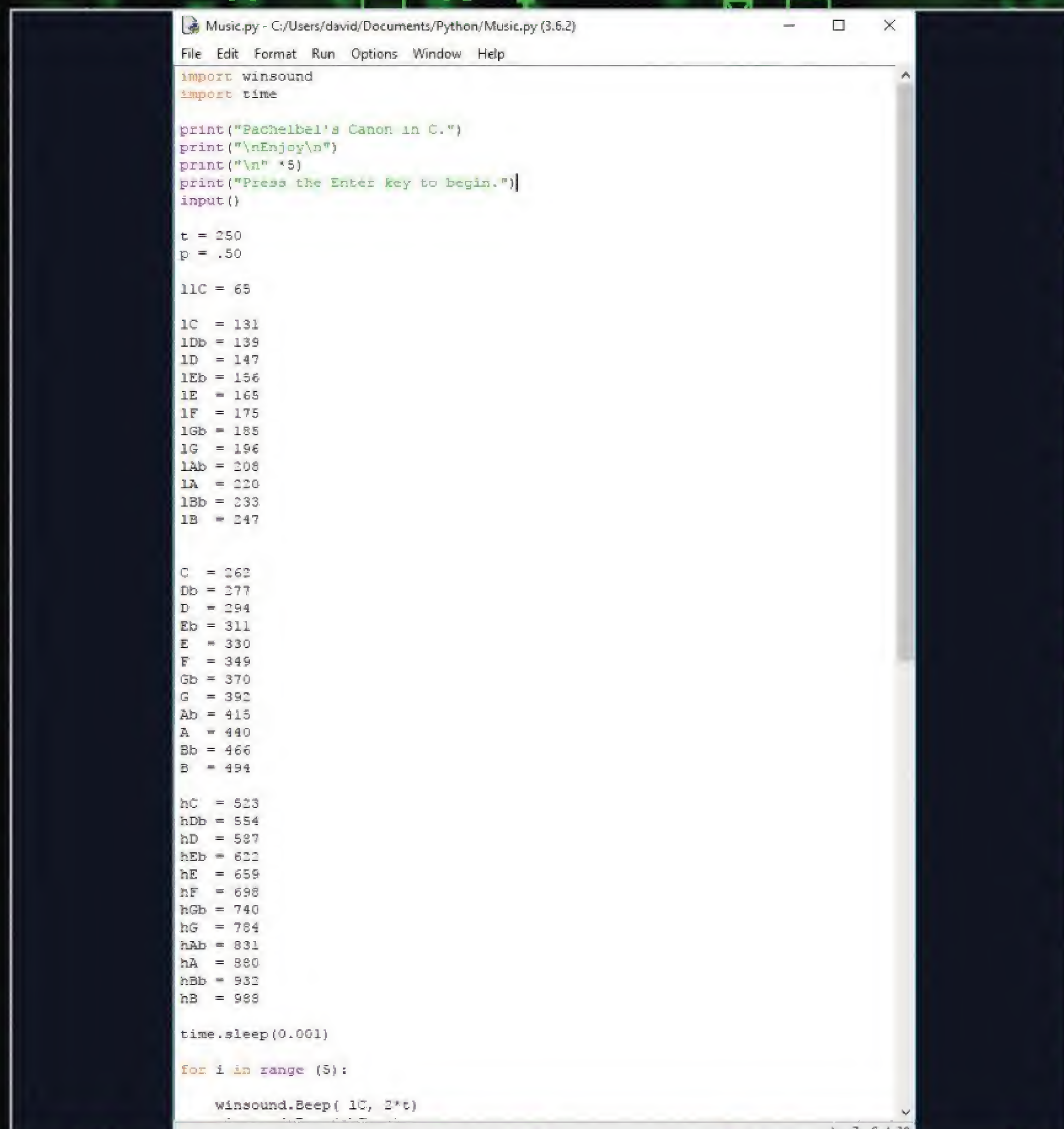
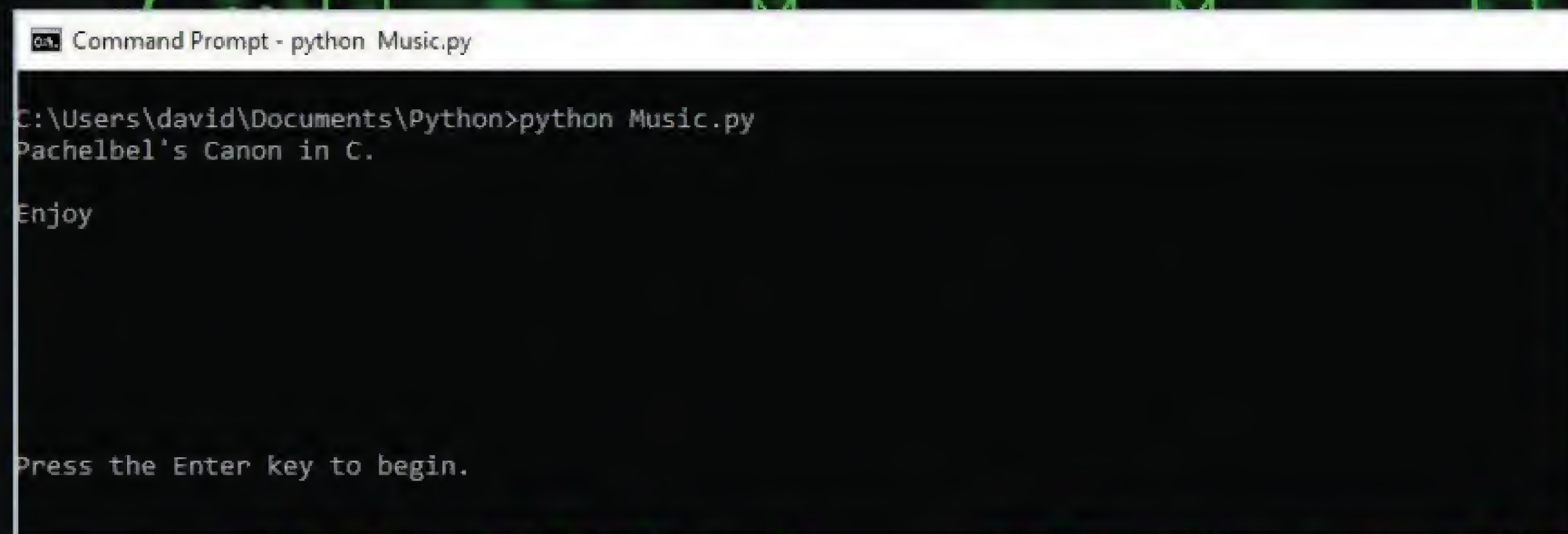
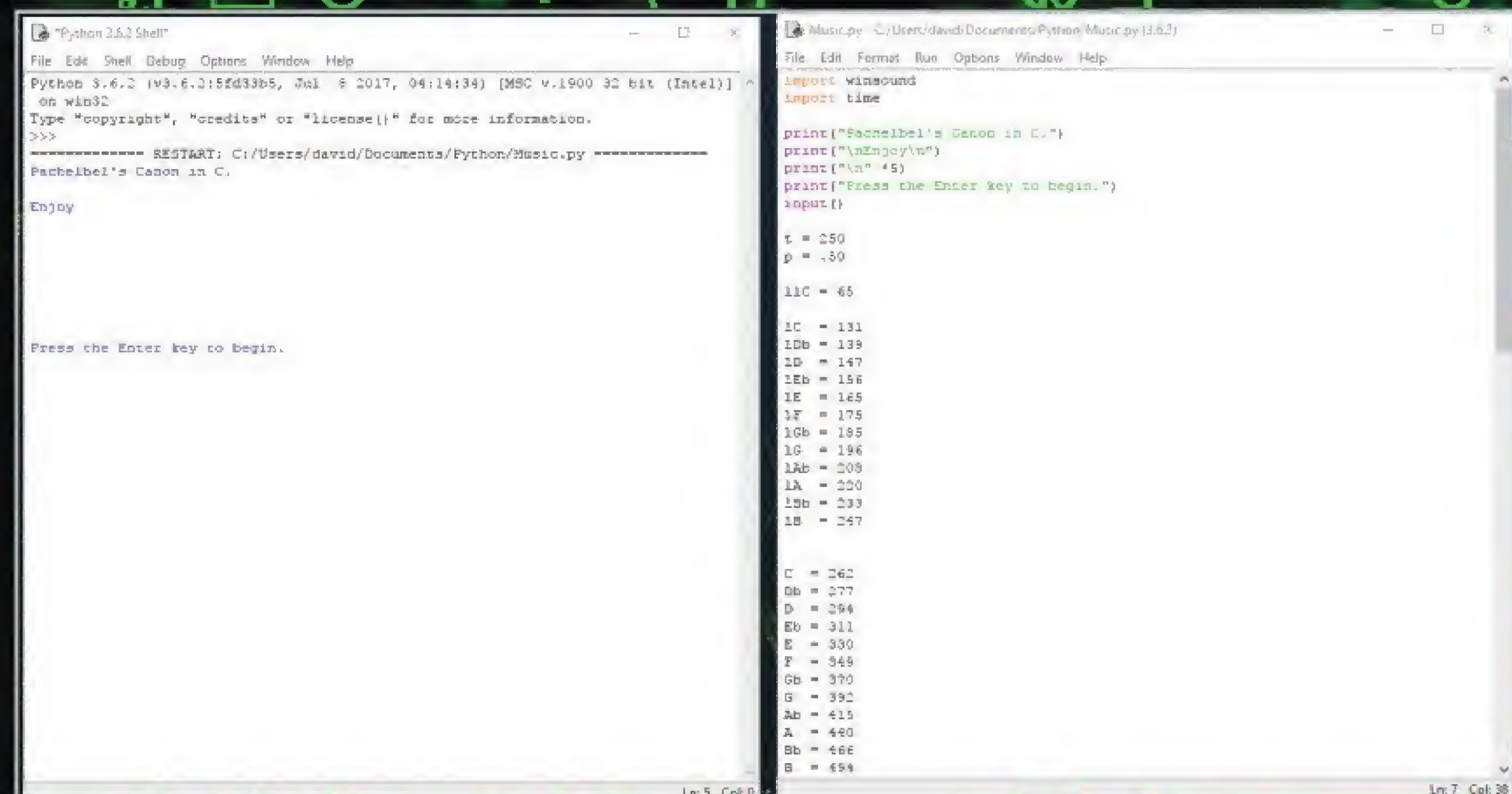


Improvements to the code can include waiting for the user to press a key or a mouse button to display the next image. Perhaps you could insert the code into the text adventure you made from Page 120, displaying a scene in the game when the character comes across something worthwhile, such as a pile of gold, a giant spider or some long lost city deep in the desert.



Playing Music with the Winsound Module

Of course, instead of playing an existing MP3, you can always make your own music. The code below will play out Pachelbel's Canon in D, no less.



MUSIC.PY

The code utilises both the Time and Winsound modules, defining the tone and pitch and inserting small pauses of .5 of a second.

```
import winsound
import time
```

```
t = 250
```

```
p = .50
```

```
11C = 65
```

```
1C = 131
```

```
1Db = 139
```

```
1D = 147
```

```
1Eb = 156
```

```
1E = 165
```

```
1F = 175
```

```
1Gb = 185
```

```
1G = 196
```

```
1Ab = 208
```

```
1A = 220
```

```
1Bb = 233
```

```
1B = 247
```

```
C = 262
```

```
Db = 277
```

```
D = 294
```

```
Eb = 311
```

```
E = 330
```

```
F = 349
```

```
Gb = 370
```

```
G = 392
```

```
Ab = 415
```

```
A = 440
```

```
Bb = 466
```

```
B = 494
```

```
hC = 523
```

```
hDb = 554
```

```
hD = 587
```

```
hEb = 622
```

```
hE = 659
```

```
hF = 698
```

```
hGb = 740
```

```
hG = 784
```

```
hAb = 831
```

```
hA = 880
```

```
hBb = 932
```

```
hB = 988
```

```
time.sleep(0.001)
```

```
for i in range (5):
```



```
winsound.Beep( 1C, 2*t)
winsound.Beep( hC, t)
winsound.Beep( hE, t)
winsound.Beep( hG, t)
time.sleep(p)
```

```
winsound.Beep( 1G, 2*t)
winsound.Beep( G, t)
winsound.Beep( B, t)
winsound.Beep( hD, t)
time.sleep(p)
```

```
winsound.Beep( 1A, 2*t)
winsound.Beep( A, t)
winsound.Beep( hC, t)
winsound.Beep( hE, t)
time.sleep(p)
```

```
winsound.Beep( 1E, 2*t)
winsound.Beep( E, t)
winsound.Beep( G, t)
winsound.Beep( B, t)
time.sleep(p)
```

```
winsound.Beep( 1F, 2*t)
winsound.Beep( F, t)
winsound.Beep( A, t)
winsound.Beep( hC, t)
time.sleep(p)
```

```
winsound.Beep( 11C, 2*t)
winsound.Beep( C, t)
winsound.Beep( E, t)
winsound.Beep( G, t)
time.sleep(p)
```

```
winsound.Beep( 1F, 2*t)
winsound.Beep( F, t)
winsound.Beep( A, t)
winsound.Beep( hC, t)
time.sleep(p)
```

```
winsound.Beep( 1G, 2*t)
winsound.Beep( G, t)
winsound.Beep( B, t)
winsound.Beep( hD, t)
time.sleep(p)
```

Sweet Music

Obviously the Winsound module is a Windows-only set of functions for Python. Open your IDLE in Windows and copy the code in. Press F5 to save and execute, then press the Enter key, as instructed in the code, to start the music.

Naturally you can swap out the winsound.Beep frequency and durations to suit your own particular music; or you can leave it as is and enjoy. Perhaps play around with the various methods to make other music.

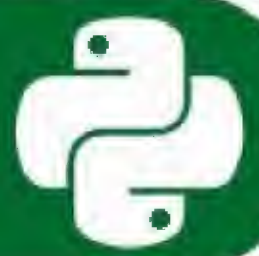
For example, players of the Nintendo classic game, The Legend of Zelda: Ocarina of Time, can enjoy the game's titular musical intro by entering:

```
import winsound
beep = winsound.Beep

c = [
    (880, 700),
    (587, 1000),
    (698, 500),
    (880, 500),
    (587, 1000),
    (698, 500),
    (880, 250),
    (1046, 250),
    (988, 500),
    (784, 500),
    (699, 230),
    (784, 250),
    (880, 500),
    (587, 500),
    (523, 250),
    (659, 250),
    (587, 750)
]

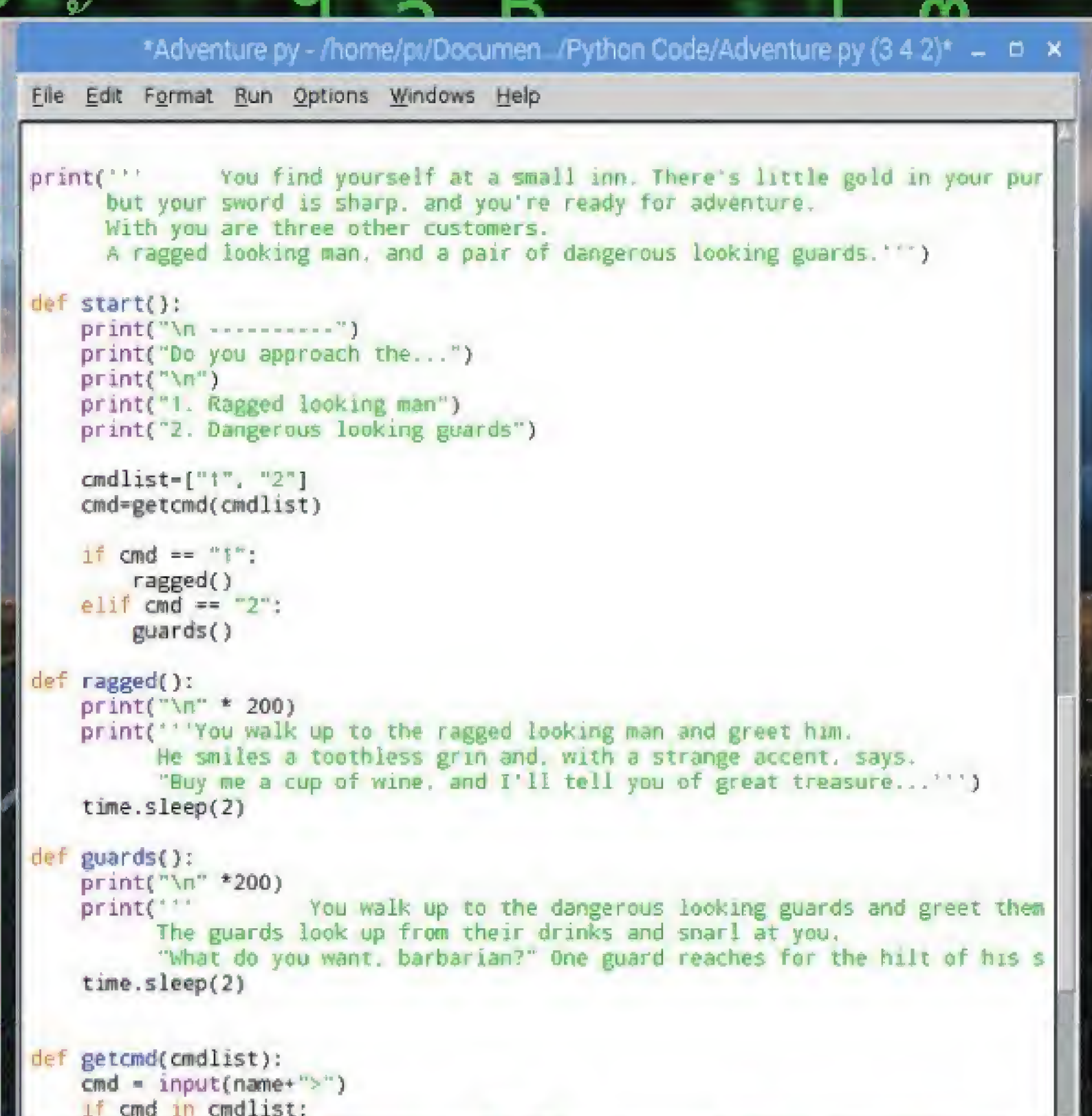
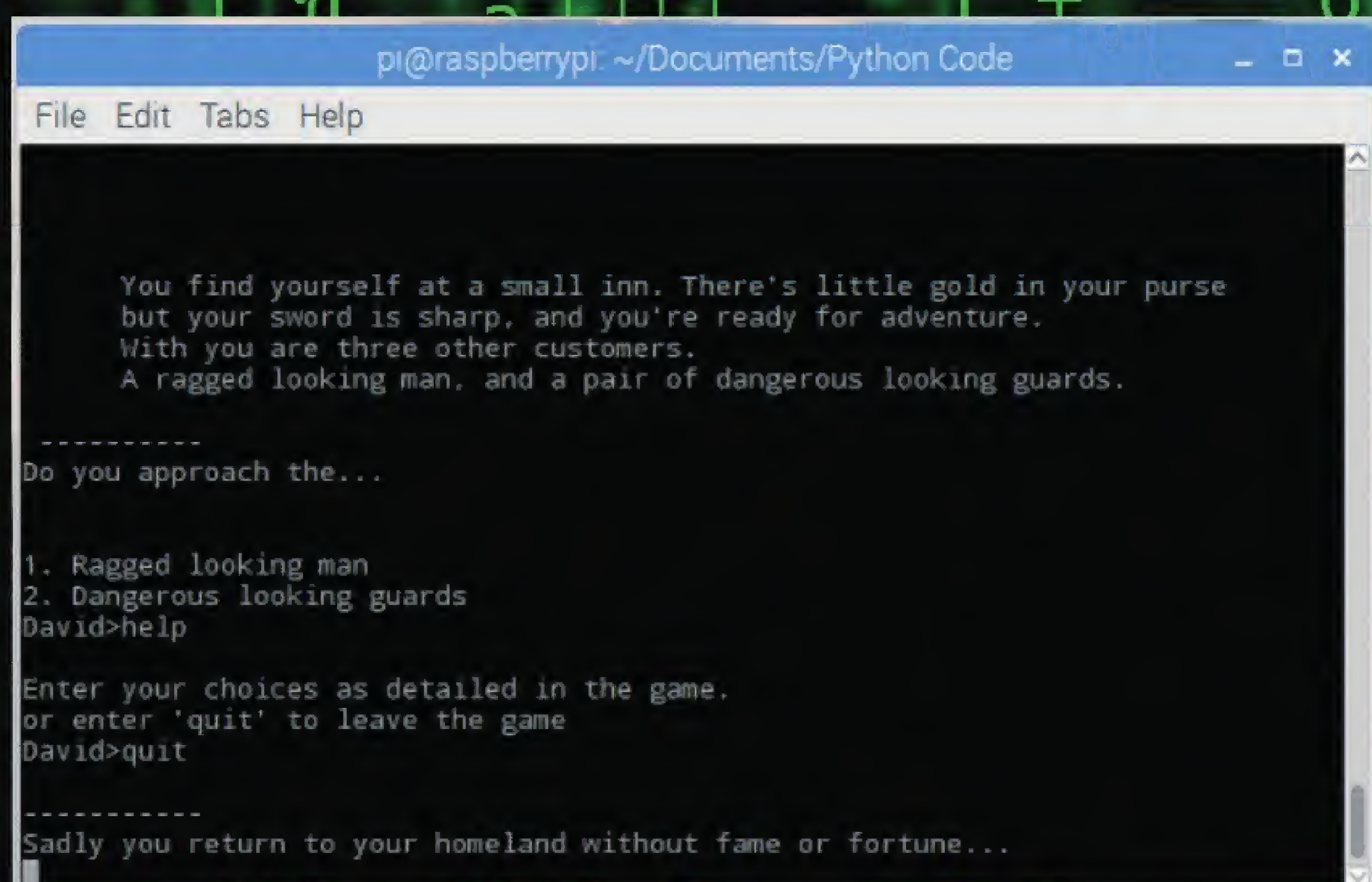
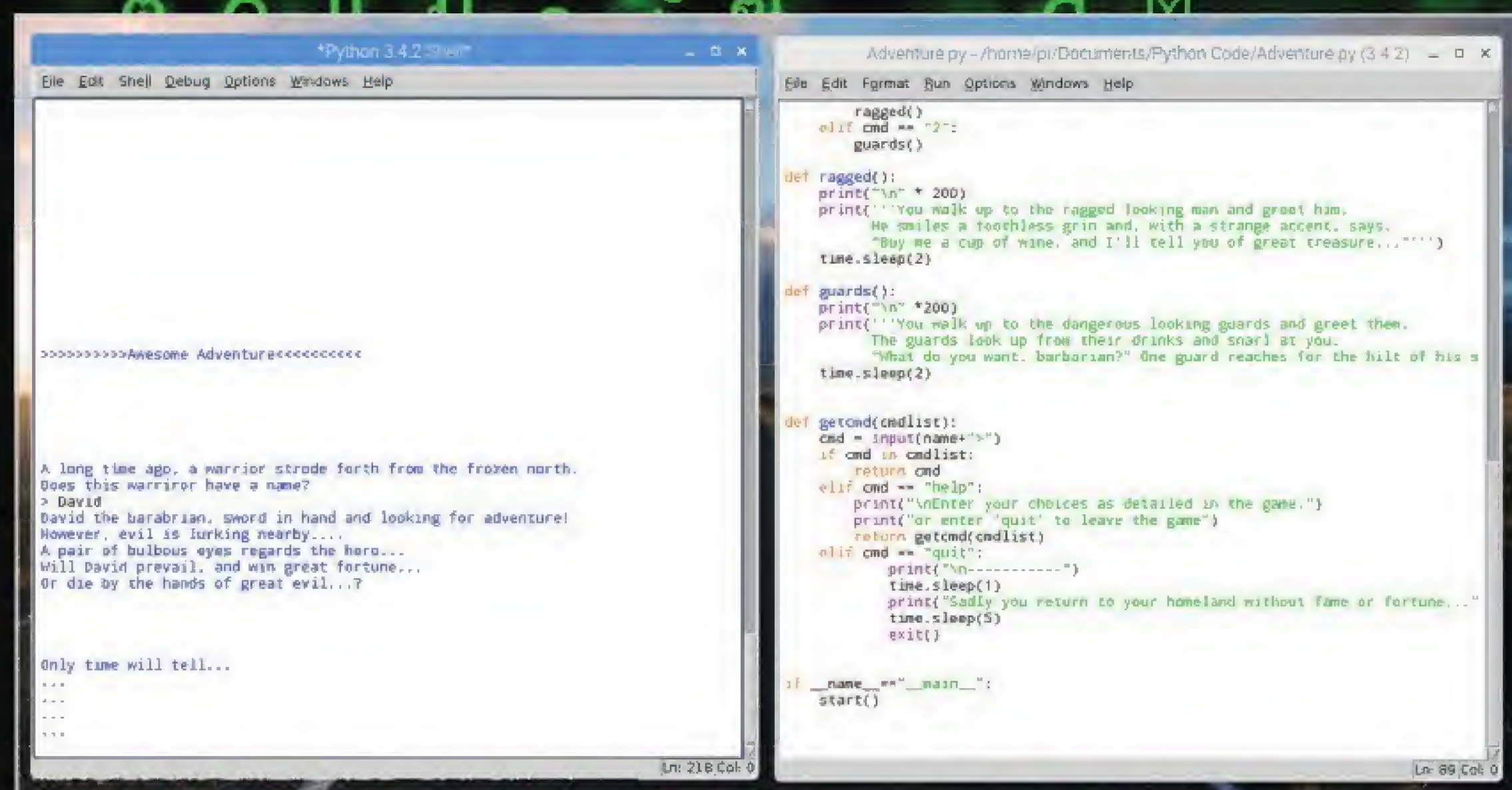
s = c + c

for f, d in s:
    beep(f, d)
```

Text Adventure Script

Text adventures are an excellent way to build your Python coding skills and have some fun at the same time. This example that we created will start you on the path to making a classic text adventure; where it will end is up to you.



ADVENTURE.PY

The Adventure game uses just the time module to begin with, creating pauses between print functions. There's a help system in place to expand upon, as well as the story itself.

```
import time

print("\n" * 200)
print(">>>>>>>>>Awesome Adventure<<<<<<<<<\n")
print("\n" * 3)
time.sleep(3)
print("\nA long time ago, a warrior strode forth from
the frozen north.")
time.sleep(1)
print("Does this warrior have a name?")
name=input("> ")
print(name, "the barbarian, sword in hand and looking
for adventure!")
time.sleep(1)
print("However, evil is lurking nearby...")
time.sleep(1)
print("A pair of bulbous eyes regards the hero...")
time.sleep(1)
print("Will", name, "prevail, and win great fortune...")
time.sleep(1)
print("Or die by the hands of great evil...?")
time.sleep(1)
print("\n" * 3)
print("Only time will tell...")
time.sleep(1)
print('...')
time.sleep(1)
print('...')
time.sleep(1)
print('...')
time.sleep(1)
print('...')
time.sleep(1)
print('...')
time.sleep(5)
print("\n" * 200)

print(''      You find yourself at a small inn. There's
      little gold in your purse but your sword is sharp,
      and you're ready for adventure.
      With you are three other customers.
      A ragged looking man, and a pair of dangerous
      looking guards.'')

def start():
    print("\n -----")
    print("Do you approach the...")
    print("\n")
    print("1. Ragged looking man")
    print("2. Dangerous looking guards")

    cmdlist=["1", "2"]
    cmd=getcmd(cmdlist)

    if cmd == "1":
        ragged()
    elif cmd == "2":
        guards()

def ragged():
    print("\n" * 200)
    print("You walk up to the ragged looking man and greet him.
    He smiles a toothless grin and, with a strange accent, says.
    'Buy me a cup of wine, and I'll tell you of great treasure...'"
    time.sleep(2)

def guards():
    print("\n" * 200)
    print("You walk up to the dangerous looking guards and greet them.
    The guards look up from their drinks and snarl at you.
    'What do you want, barbarian?' One guard reaches for the hilt of his s
    time.sleep(2)

def getcmd(cmdlist):
    cmd = input(name+"> ")
    if cmd in cmdlist:
```



```
if cmd == "1":
    ragged()
elif cmd == "2":
    guards()

def ragged():
    print("\n" * 200)
    print('You walk up to the ragged looking man and greet him.
    He smiles a toothless grin and, with a strange accent, says.
    "Buy me a cup of wine, and I'll tell you of great treasure..."')
    time.sleep(2)

def guards():
    print("\n" * 200)
    print('You walk up to the dangerous looking guards and greet them.
    The guards look up from their drinks and snarl at you.
    "What do you want, barbarian?" One guard reaches for the hilt of his sword...')
```

```
time.sleep(2)

def getcmd(cmdlist):
    cmd = input(name+">")
    if cmd in cmdlist:
        return cmd
    elif cmd == "help":
        print("\nEnter your choices as detailed in the game.")
        print("or enter 'quit' to leave the game")
        return getcmd(cmdlist)
    elif cmd == "quit":
        print("\n-----")
        time.sleep(1)
        print("Sadly you return to your homeland without fame or fortune...")
        time.sleep(5)
        exit()

if __name__ == "__main__":
    start()
```

Adventure Time


This, as you can see, is just the beginning of the adventure and takes up a fair few lines of code. When you expand it, and weave the story along, you'll find that you can repeat certain instances such as a chance meeting with an enemy or the like.

We've created each of the two encounters as a defined set of functions, along with a list of possible choices under the cmdlist list, and cmd variable, of which is also a defined function. Expanding on this is quite easy, just map out each encounter and choice and create a defined function around it. Providing the user doesn't enter quit into the adventure, they can keep playing.

There's also room in the adventure for a set of variables designed for combat, luck, health, endurance and even an inventory or amount of gold earned. Each successful combat situation can reduce the main character's health but increase their combat skills or endurance. Plus, they could loot the body and gain gold, or earn gold through quests.

Finally, how about introducing the random module. This will enable you to include an element of chance in the game. For example, in combat, when you strike an enemy you will do a random amount of damage as will they. You could even work out the maths behind improving the chance of a better hit based on your or your opponent's combat skills, current health, strength and endurance. You could create a game of dice in the inn, to see if you win or lose gold (again, improve the chances of winning by working out your luck factor into the equation).

Needless to say, your text adventure can grow exponentially and prove to be a work of wonder. Good luck, and have fun with your adventure.



```
*Adventure.py - /home/pi/Documents/Python Code/Adventure.py (3.4.2)*
File Edit Format Run Options Windows Help

print("\n" * 200)

CR=0
Strength=0
Health=0
Luck=0

print("The mountains of the north make for a hard life.")
print("Press Enter to roll the dice and see how strong", name, "is:")
input()
Strength=random.randint(1,20)
print(name, "has a Strength value of:", Strength)
print("\nIt's a hard life indeed, and all northerners are born warriors.")
print("Press Enter to roll the dice and see the Combat Rating for", name+".")
input()
CR=random.randint(1, 30)
print(name, "has a Combat Rating of:", CR)
print("\nYour Health is the total of your Strength and Combat Rating.")
print("Press Enter to see", name+"'s", "Health value.")
input()
Health=Strength+CR
print(name, "has a Health value of:", Health)
print("\nEveryone needs a certain amount of luck to survive.")
print("Press Enter to roll the dice and see how lucky", name, "is.")
input()
Luck=random.randint(1, 15)
if Luck > 13:
    print(name, "is luck indeed, and has a Luck value of:", Luck)
else:
    print(name, "has a Luck value of:", Luck)
time.sleep(5)
print("\n" * 200)
print("Here's your character stats:\n")
print(name)
print("\nCombat Rating =", CR)
print("Strength =", Strength)
print("Health =", Health)
print("Luck =", Luck)
print("\n" * 5)
print("Press Enter to start your adventure...")
input()
print("\n" * 200)

print('You find yourself at a small inn. There's little gold in your purse
but your sword is sharp, and you're ready for adventure.
With you are three other customers.
A ragged looking man, and a pair of dangerous looking guards.')
```




Python Scrolling Ticker Script

You may be surprised to hear that one of the snippets of code we're often asked for is some form of scrolling ticker. Whilst we've covered various forms of scrolling text previously, the ticker is something that seems to keep cropping up. So, here it is.

Ticker Time

The obvious improvements to the Ticker code lie in the speed of the text and what the text will display. Otherwise you can change the background colour of the ticker window, the font and the font colour, along with the geometry of the Tkinter window if you want to.

Yet another interesting element that could be introduced is one of the many text to speech modules available for Python 3. You could pip install one, import it, then as the ticker displays the text, the text to speech function will read out the variable at the same time, since the entire text is stored in the variable labelled 's'.



The ticker example can be used for system warnings, perhaps something that will display across your work or home network detailing the shutting down of a server over the weekend for maintenance; or even just to inform everyone as to what's happening. We're sure you will come up with some good uses for it.

TICKER.PY

We're using Tkinter here along with the Time module to determine the speed the text is displayed across the window.

```
import time
import tkinter as tk

root = tk.Tk()
canvas = tk.Canvas(root, root.title("Ticker Code"),
height=80, width=600, bg="yellow")
canvas.pack()
font = ('courier', 48, 'bold')
text_width = 15

#Text blocks insert here...

s1 = "This is a scrolling ticker example. As you
can see, it's quite long but can be a lot longer if
necessary... "
s2 = "We can even extend the length of the ticker
message by including more variables... "
s3 = "The variables are within the s-values in
the code. "
s4 = "Don't forget to concatenate them all before the
For loop, and rename the 'spacer' s-variable too."

# pad front and end of text with spaces
s5 = ' ' * text_width
# concatenate it all
s = s5 + s1 + s2 + s3 + s4 + s5
x = 1
y = 2
text = canvas.create_text(x, y, anchor='nw', text=s,
font=font)
dx = 1
dy = 0 # use horizontal movement only

# the pixel value depends on dx, font and length of text
pixels = 9000

for p in range(pixels):
    # move text object by increments dx, dy
    # -dx --> right to left
    canvas.move(text, -dx, dy)
    canvas.update()
    # shorter delay --> faster movement
    time.sleep(0.005)
    #print(k) # test, helps with pixel value

root.mainloop()
```


Simple Python Calculator

Sometimes the simplest code can be the most effective. Take for example, this Simple Python Calculator script. It's based on the Create Your Own Modules section seen earlier but doesn't utilise any external modules.

CALCULATOR.PY

We created some function definitions to begin with, then lead on to the user menu and inputs. It's an easy piece of code to follow and as such can also be expanded well too.

```
print("-----Simple Python Calculator-----\n")

def add(x, y):
    return x + y

def subtract(x, y):
    return x - y

def multiply(x, y):
    return x * y

def divide(x, y):
    return x / y

print("Select operation.\n")
print("1.Add")
print("2.Subtract")
print("3.Multiply")
print("4.Divide")

choice = input("\nEnter choice (1/2/3/4):")

num1 = int(input("\nEnter first number: "))
num2 = int(input("Enter second number: "))

if choice == '1':
    print(num1,"+",num2,"=", add(num1,num2))

elif choice == '2':
    print(num1,"-",num2,"=", subtract(num1,num2))

elif choice == '3':
    print(num1,"*",num2,"=", multiply(num1,num2))

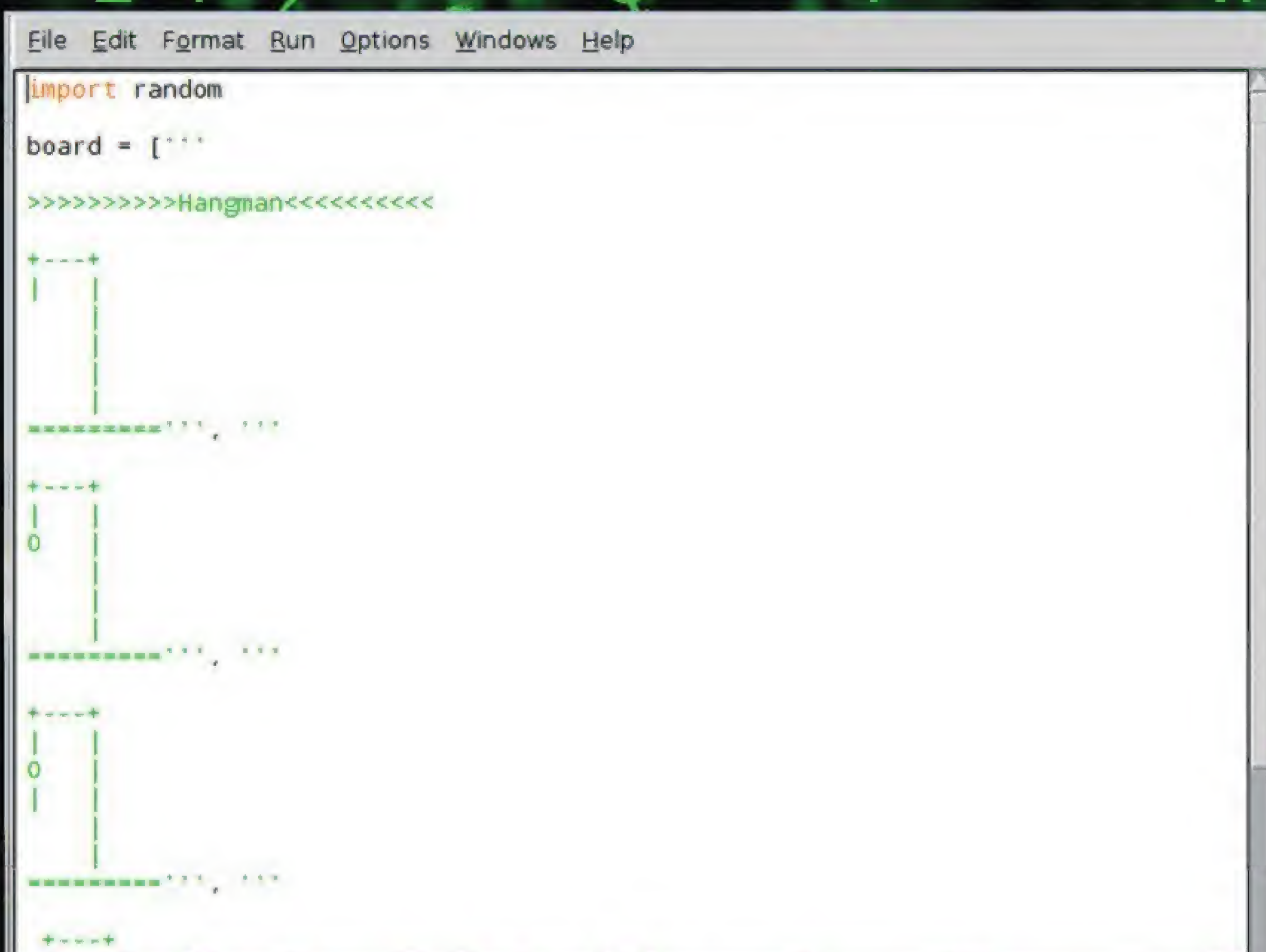
elif choice == '4':
    print(num1,"/",num2,"=", divide(num1,num2))
else:
    print("Invalid input")
```

Improved Calculations

The obvious contender for improvement here is using the Create Your Own Modules route and extracting the function definitions as a module. You can then call the module and focus on the body of the code.

The other area of improvement is code itself. Where there's just a single shot at making a calculation, you could encase it in a while loop, so once a value is presented the user is sent back to the main menu. Perhaps, improvement to the Invalid Input section is worth looking into as well.

Hangman is a great game to program into Python. It can be extremely complex, displaying graphics, the number of guesses left in the secret word, a huge bank of available words picked at random and countless other elements. It can also be quite simple. Here we have a mix between the two.



We've made a Hangman game board (the gallows) out of characters that can be displayed in the IDLE Shell, along with a huge bank of words to randomly choose from.


```

|
====='''
'''

+---+
|   |
O   |
/\\  |
/\\  |
    |
====='''

class Hangman:
    def __init__(self, word):
        self.word = word
        self.missed_letters = []
        self.guessed_letters = []

    def guess(self, letter):
        if letter in self.word and letter not in self.guessed_letters:
            self.guessed_letters.append(letter)
        elif letter not in self.word and letter not in self.missed_letters:
            self.missed_letters.append(letter)
        else:
            return False
        return True

    def hangman_over(self):
        return self.hangman_won() or (len(self.missed_letters) == 6)

    def hangman_won(self):
        if '_' not in self.hide_word():
            return True
        return False

    def hide_word(self):
        rtn = ''
        for letter in self.word:
            if letter not in self.guessed_letters:
                rtn += '_'
            else:
                rtn += letter
        return rtn

    def print_game_status(self):
        print(board[len(self.missed_letters)])
        print('Word: ' + self.hide_word())
        print('Letters Missed: ')
        for letter in self.missed_letters:
            print(letter,)
        print()
        print('Letters Guessed: ')
        for letter in self.guessed_letters:
            print(letter,)
        print()

    def rand_word():
        bank = 'ability about above absolute accessible accommodation accounting beautiful bookstore calculator clever engaged engineer enough handsome refrigerator opposite socks interested strawberry backgammon anniversary confused dangerous entertainment exhausted impossible overweight temperature vacation scissors accommodation appointment decrease development earthquake environment brand environment necessary

```

```

luggage responsible ambassador circumstance
congratulate frequent'.split()
return bank[random.randint(0, len(bank))]

```

```

def main():
    game = Hangman(rand_word())
    while not game.hangman_over():
        game.print_game_status()
        user_input = input('\nEnter a letter: ')
        game.guess(user_input)

    game.print_game_status()
    if game.hangman_won():
        print('\nCongratulations! You have won!!')
    else:
        print('\nSorry, you have lost.')
        print('The word was ' + game.word)

    print('\nGoodbye!\n')

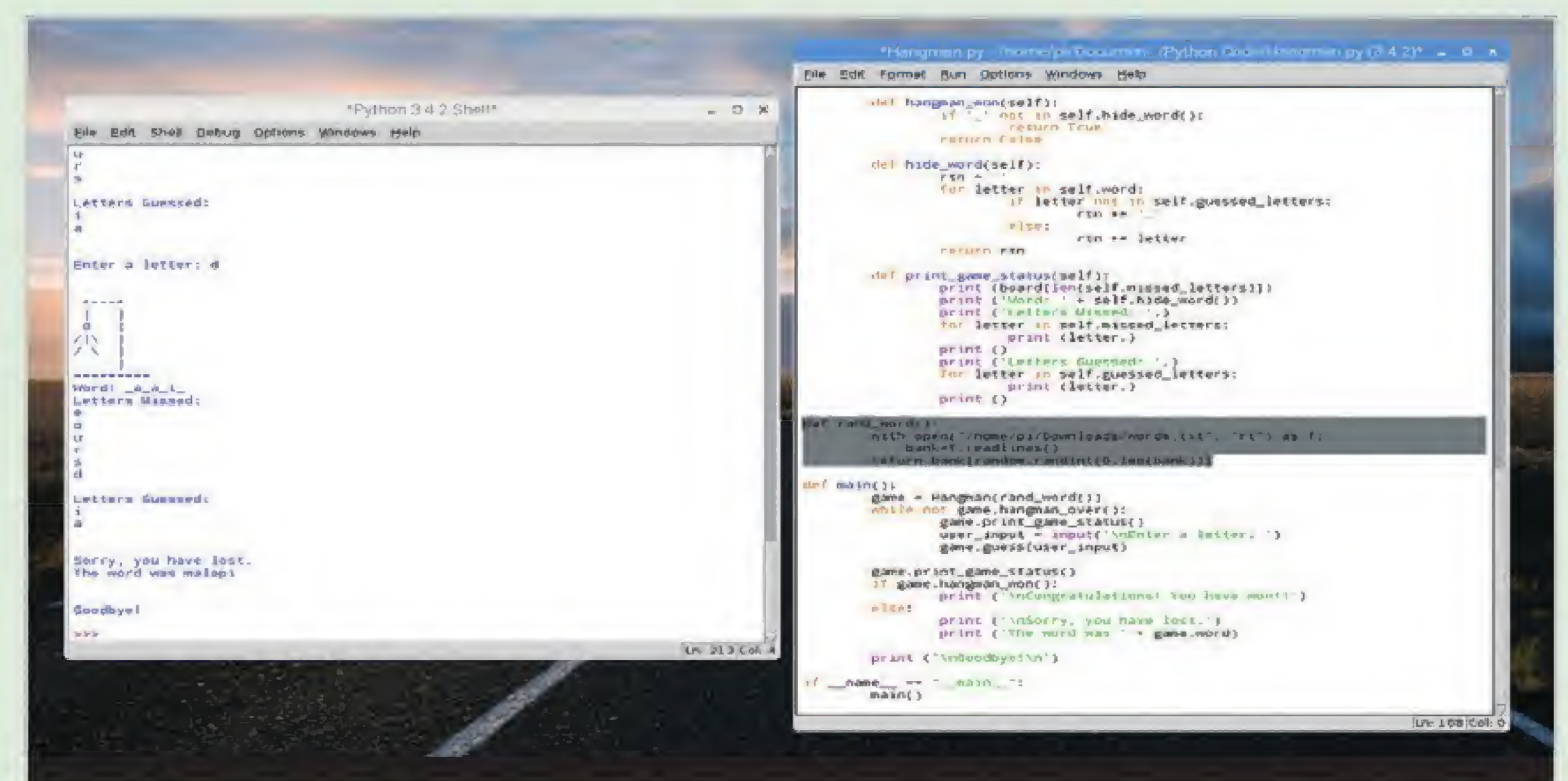
if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()

```

QUIT()

Since this is the last example in our Python code repository, we thought we'd go out with a bang and feature the hangman gallows being drawn with each incorrect guess of the word. Don't worry if it looks misaligned in the text here, this is merely due to the differences between using the Python IDLE editor and pasting the code into a word processor (which formats things differently).

There's plenty you can do to improve, enhance and expand on what we've presented here. You can include a routine that returns an error if the user enters a number or character. You can include extra points for someone who guesses the entire word in one go rather than one letter at a time and you could perhaps add Chopin's Funeral March should you lose the game; or something celebratory if you win.



Consider replacing the bank of words too. They're found under the bank list, and could easily be swapped out for something more difficult. If you download www.github.com/dwyl/english-words you can find a text document with over 466,000 words. Perhaps you could swap the words in the bank to instead read the contents of the text file:

```

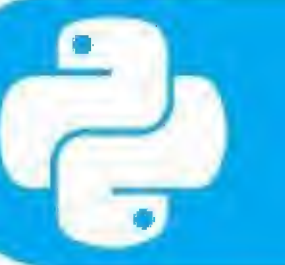
def rand_word():
    with open("/home/pi/Downloads/words.txt", "rt") as f:
        bank=f.readlines()
    return bank[random.randint(0, len(bank))]

```




Learn Object Orientated Programming with Scratch & Python





Scratch is a free programming language and online community that's targeted primarily at young people but also useful for older users too. It's a visual language created by MIT (Massachusetts Institute of Technology) and designed to help teach the building blocks of programming.

It's extremely versatile and as such can be used in conjunction with Python code to create interesting and useful programs. With the pairing of Scratch and Python you can make games, system utilities and control external sensors, robots and motors.

.....

- 126 Getting Started with Scratch
- 128 Creating Scripts in Scratch
- 130 Interaction in Scratch
- 132 Using Sprites in Scratch
- 134 Sensing and Broadcast
- 136 Objects and Local Variables
- 138 Global Variables and a Dice Game
- 140 Classes and Objects



Getting Started with Scratch

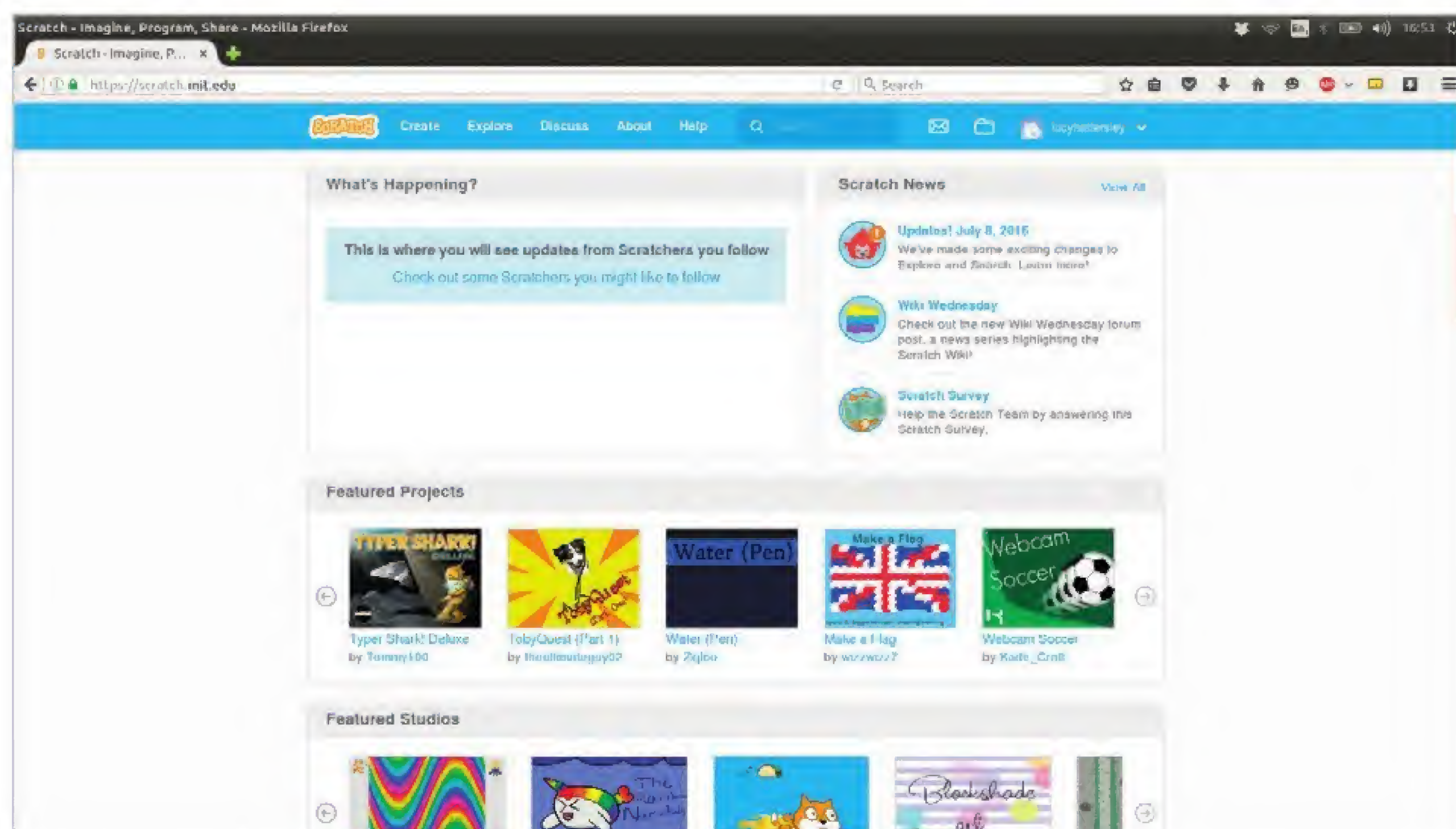
If you are completely new to programming then Scratch is the perfect place to start. With Scratch you can learn the building blocks of programming and important programming concepts in a highly visual interface.

INSTALLING SCRATCH

Scratch can be run inside your web browser at scratch.mit.edu. You need to have Flash installed in your browser; if isn't already, it can be installed from get.adobe.com/flashplayer. Sign up for an account with Scratch so you can save your programs.

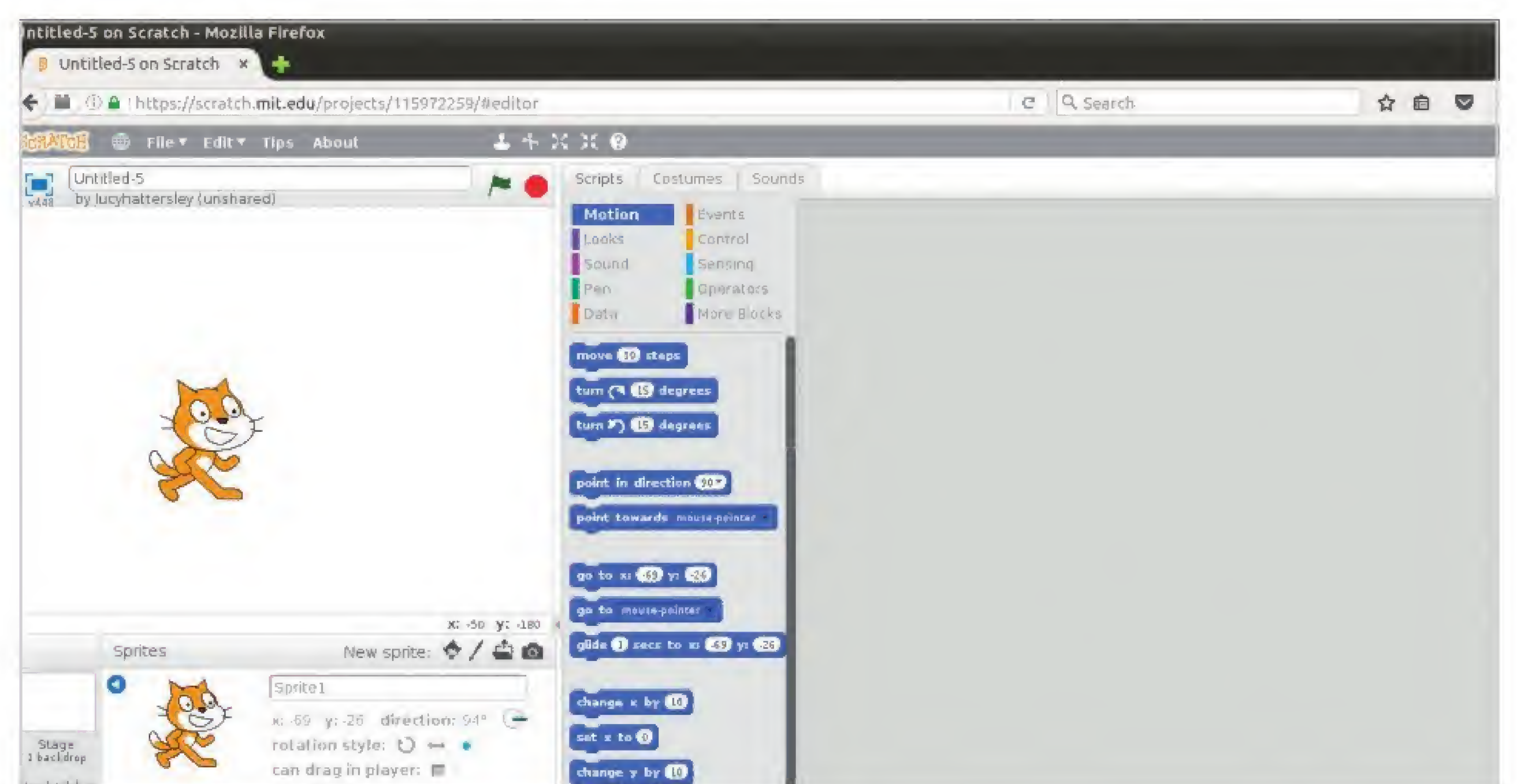
STEP 1

Scratch runs from inside the web browser. Click Create to open a new document. The Scratch interface opens in the web browser, click the maximise button on your browser so you have plenty of space to view the window and all its contents.



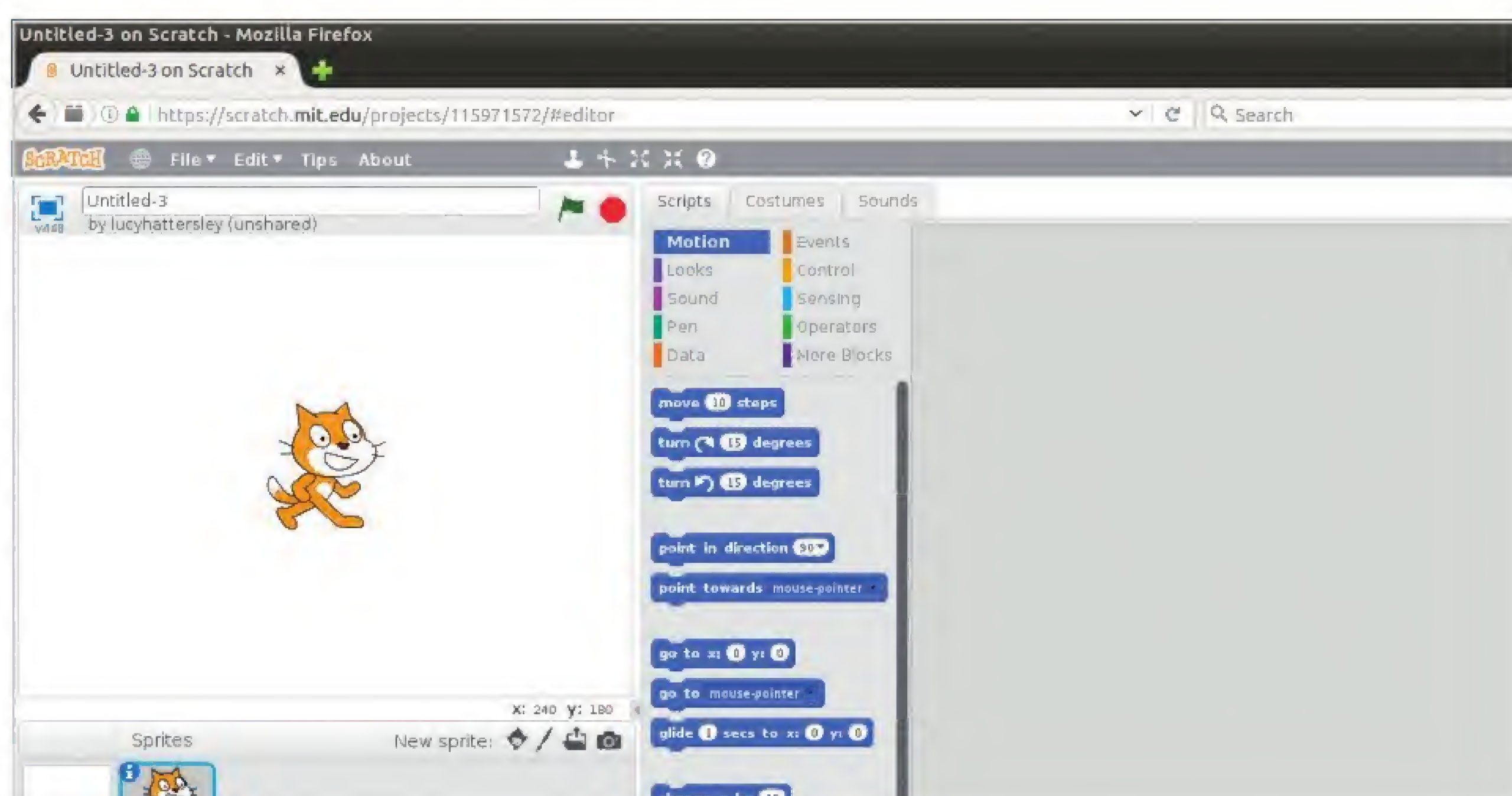
STEP 3

Let's take a look at Scratch Cat. Use click and drag with the mouse to position him on the Stage. At the top, just above Scripts, you'll see two icons for Grow and Shrink. Click one and click the cat to resize him. Shift-click on Scratch Cat and choose Info to access rotation controls. Click the blue back button to get back to the Sprites pane.



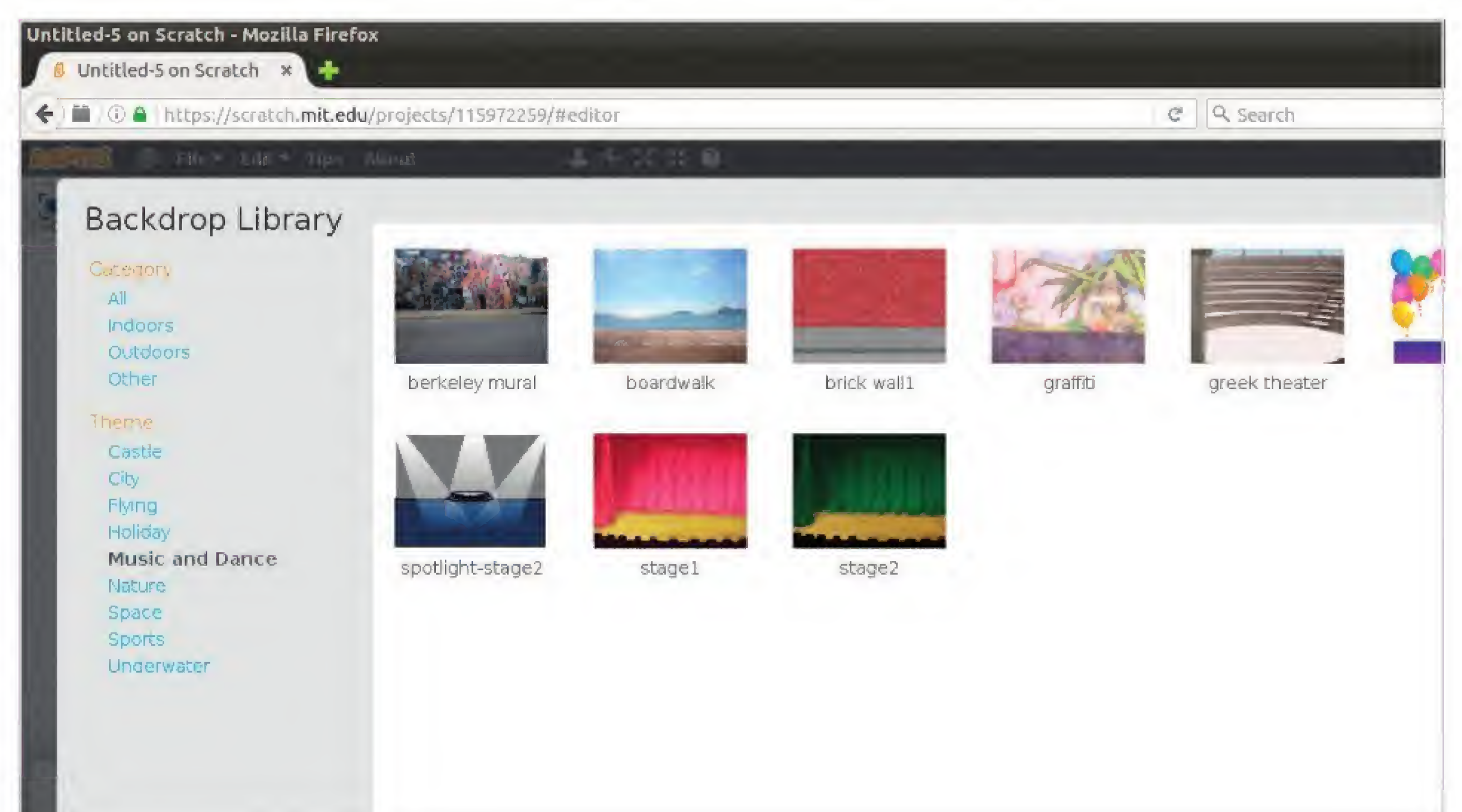
STEP 2

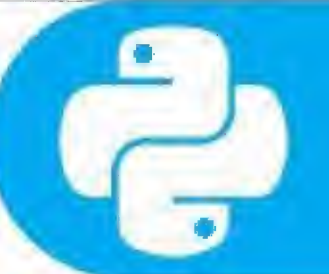
You can see the Scratch interface with a list of blue items in the Block Palette, an empty Script Area and a Stage. On the Stage will be an orange cartoon cat, known as "Scratch Cat". This is the default sprite that comes with all new projects; you will also see smaller versions of the sprite above the Script Area and in the Sprites Panel.



STEP 4

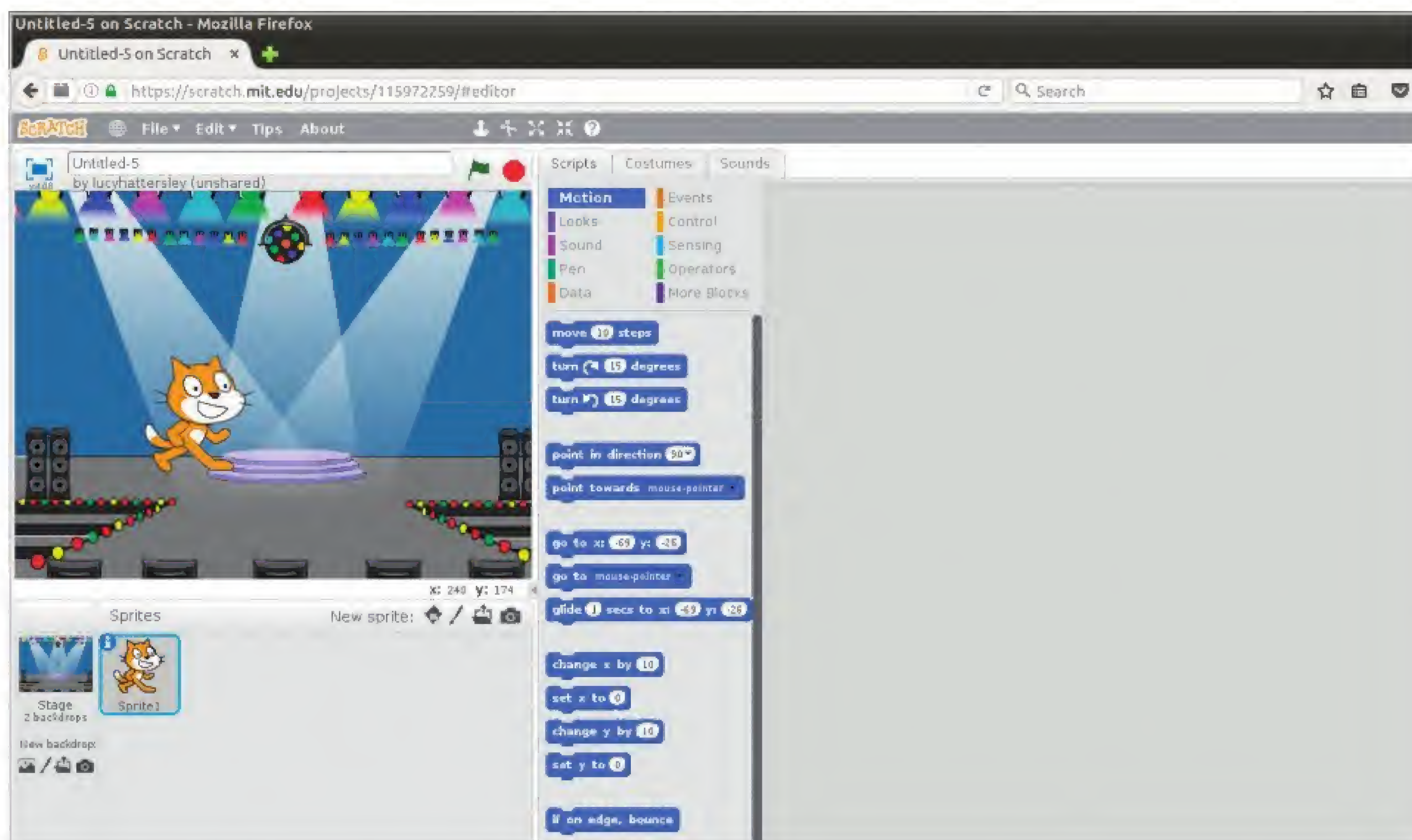
Scratch Cat looks a little lonely on his white space, so let's give him a background. Click the Stage icon to the left of the Sprites Pane. The Script Area switches to Backdrop Library displaying the available backgrounds. Click Music and Dance and choose spotlight-stage. Click OK.





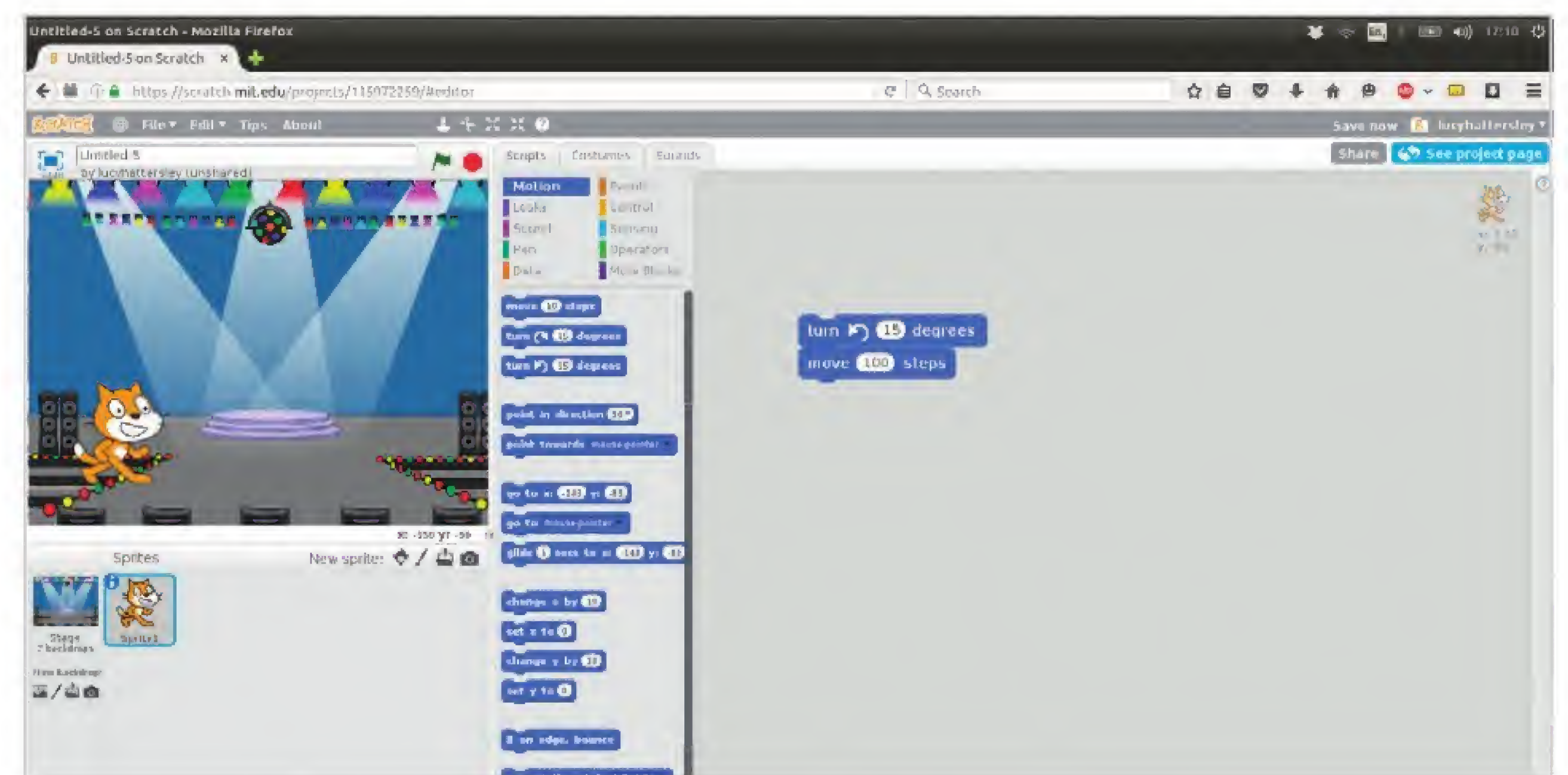
STEP 5

The background appears on the Stage and Scratch Cat looks a lot happier. Let's create a script that moves him to the stage. Click Sprite1 in the Sprites Pane to select the cat and click the Scripts tab to return to the Script Area. Now click the blue Motion tab at the top of the Block Palette.



STEP 6

Drag the **turn [15] degrees** block (with an anti-clockwise symbol) from the Block Palette to the Script Area. Now drag the **move [10] steps** block and connect it to the bottom of the Turn 15 Degrees block. They will snap together. Change the 10 in **move [10] steps** to 100. Our program is now ready. Click the script (the two blocks) to see what it does. Scratch Cat will rotate and move towards the stage.

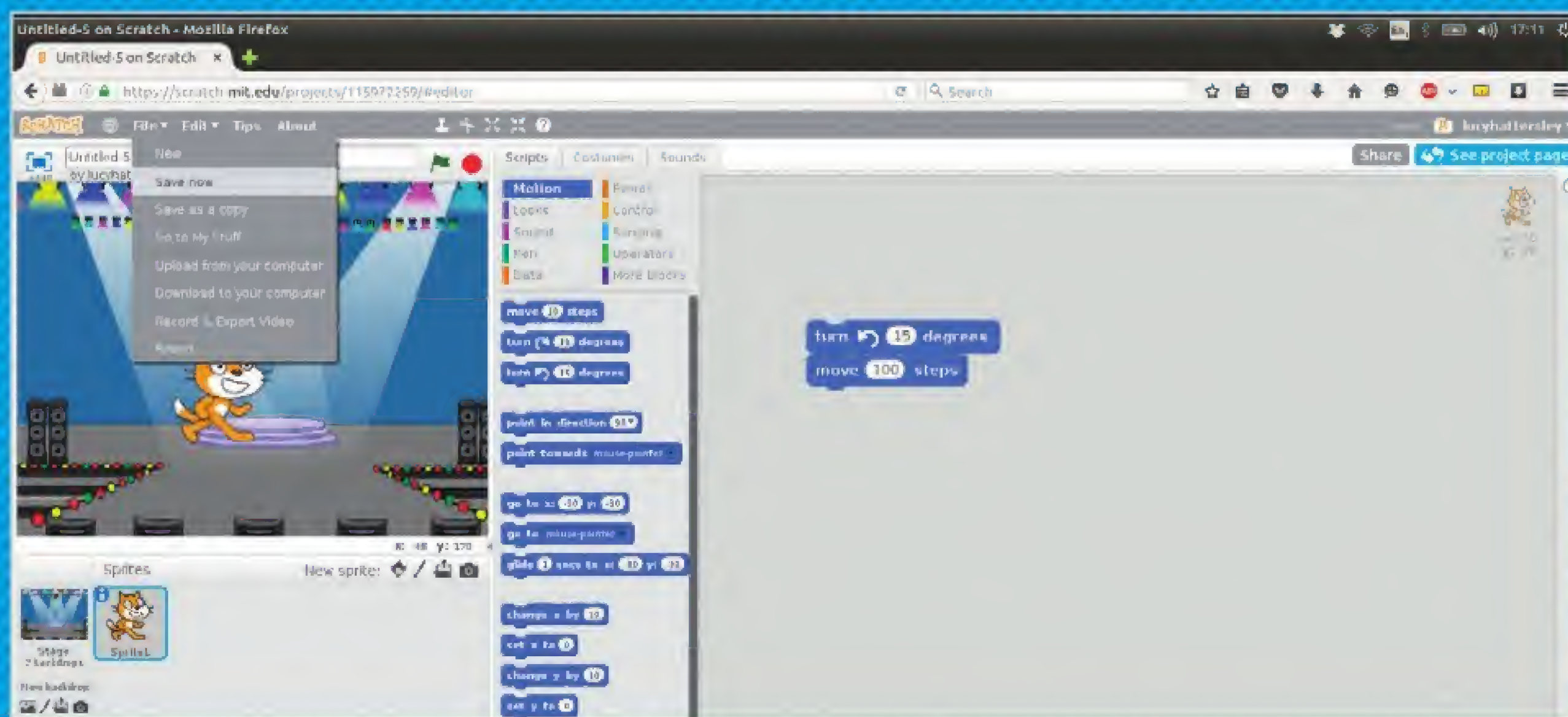


SAVING SCRATCH FILES

Take the time to learn how to open and save your files, and open other test programs, before you get stuck into programming with Scratch. There are lots of Scratch programs available so it's easy to learn alongside other users.

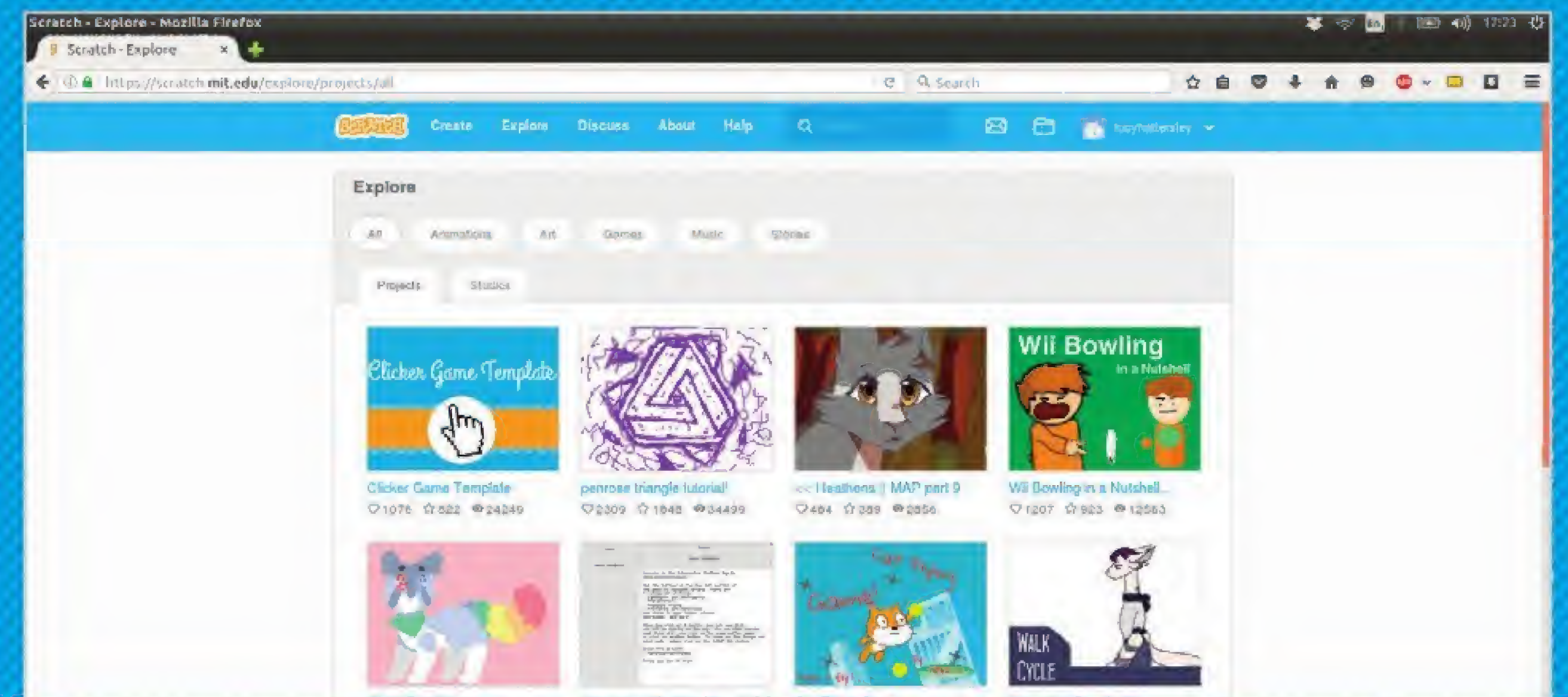
STEP 1

Click File > Save Now to save your project. Enter a name in the New Filename box; we called ours "Scratch_Cat_On_Stage". As we mentioned in both Python and Unix tutorials, it's important to avoid any special characters and spaces in your filenames. Use underscores "_" instead.



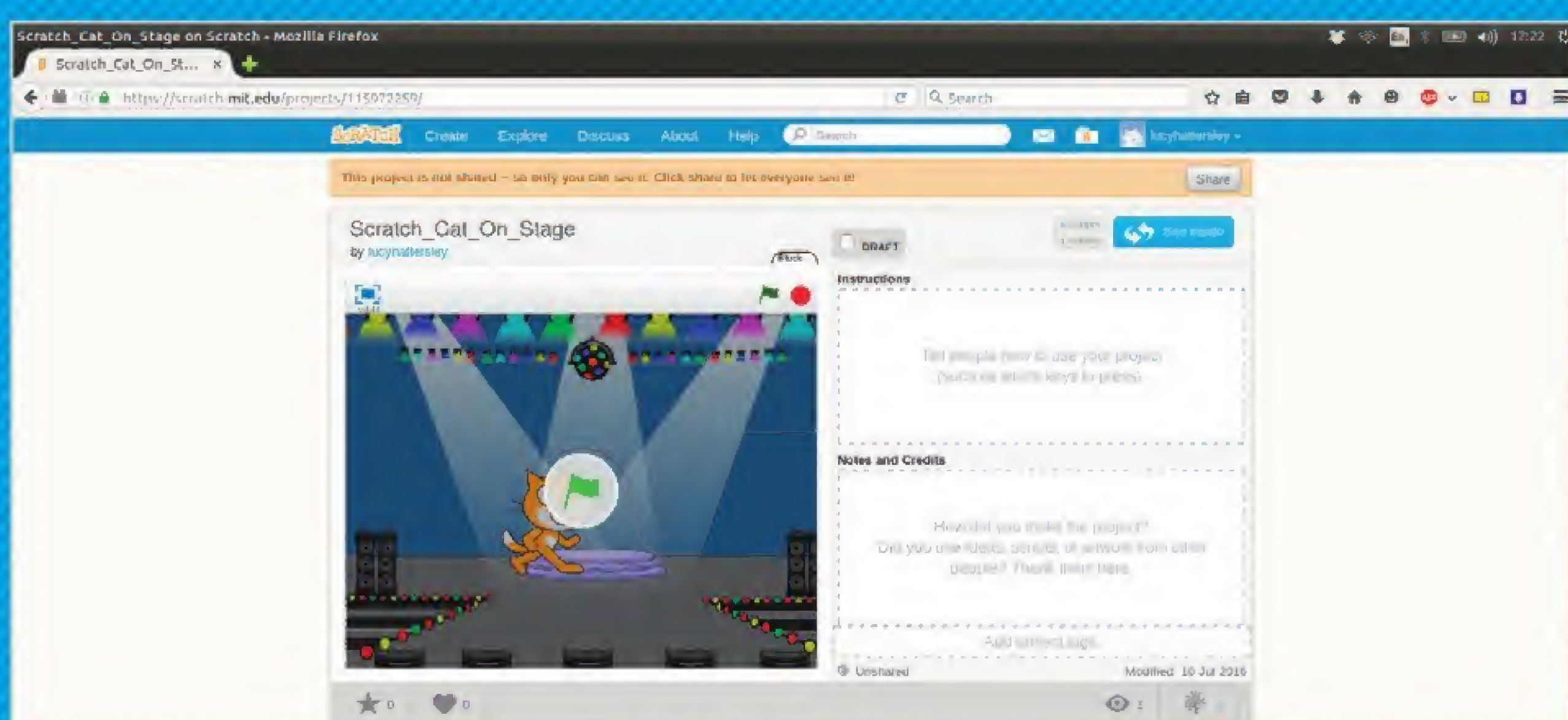
STEP 3

Lots of example Scratch files can be found on the MIT website by clicking Explore. Here you can see a huge range of projects built by other users and you'll also be able to share your own projects. Choose a project from Explore to open it.



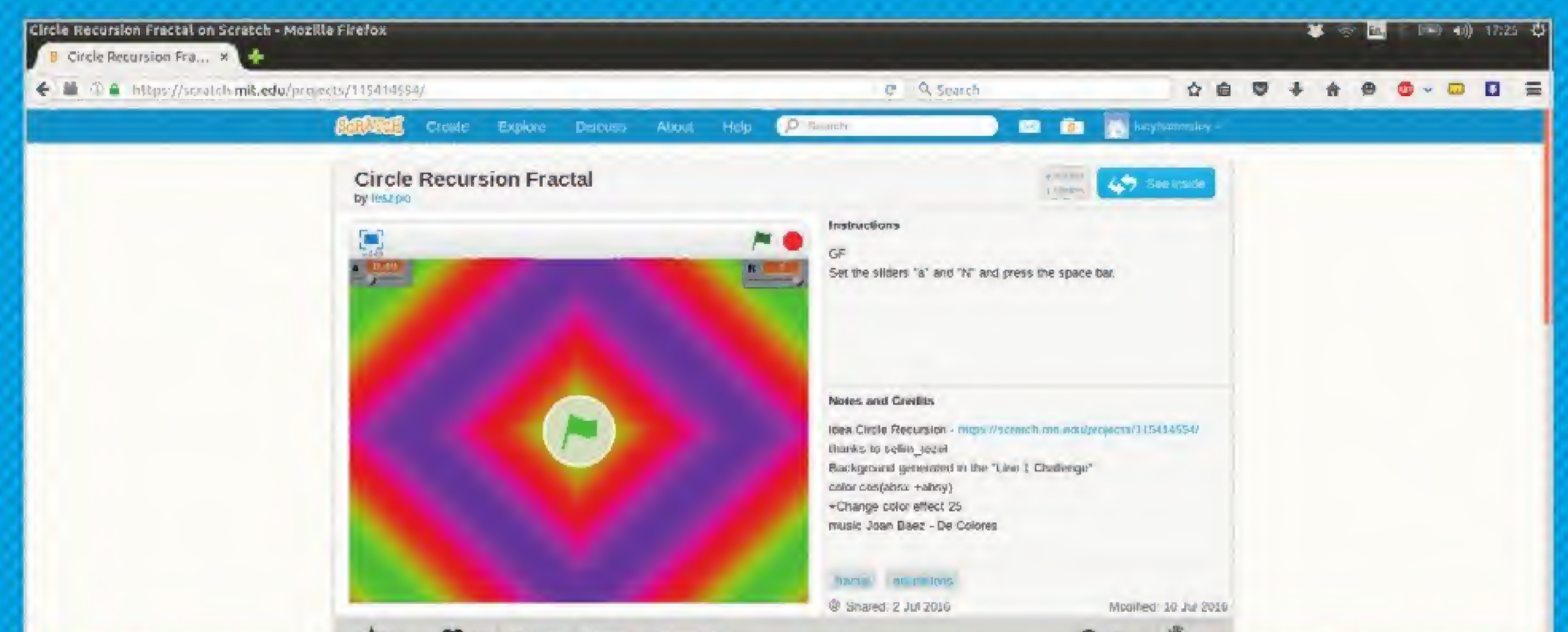
STEP 2

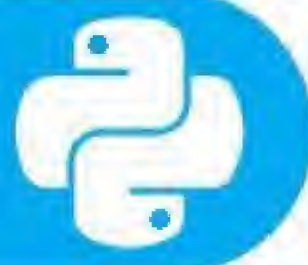
Choose File > Go to My Stuff to exit the stage and view the saved file. Click the Scratch_Cat_On_Stage link to view your file. You can add Instructions, Notes and Credits here, and Tags. Click See Inside to head back to viewing your code again.



STEP 4

You can run the project directly inside the main window by clicking the Green Flag icon. Click the Star icon to Favourite or bookmark the project and the Heart icon to like it. More importantly, click the See Inside to see the code used to create the project. This is a good way to learn how Scratch code is being used.





Creating Scripts in Scratch

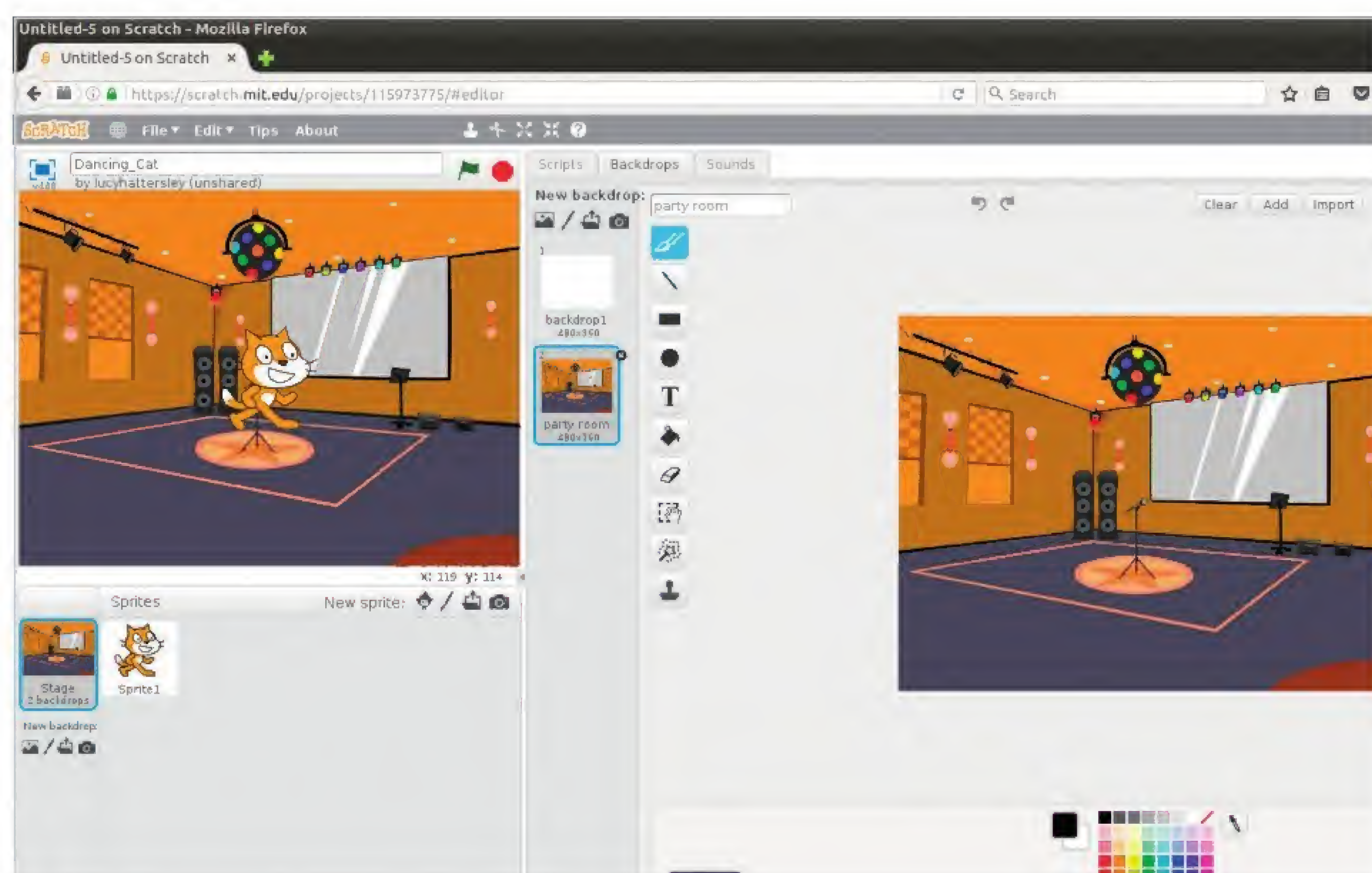
The program you make in Scratch is a script, or a bunch of scripts. In this tutorial we'll take a look at how you construct your scripts to build up a great program. This is great starter practice for creating objects in Python.

VISUAL CODING

The scripts in Scratch are created by snapping together blocks. These blocks are similar to the code you find in more complex programming languages, such as Python, but much easier to understand.

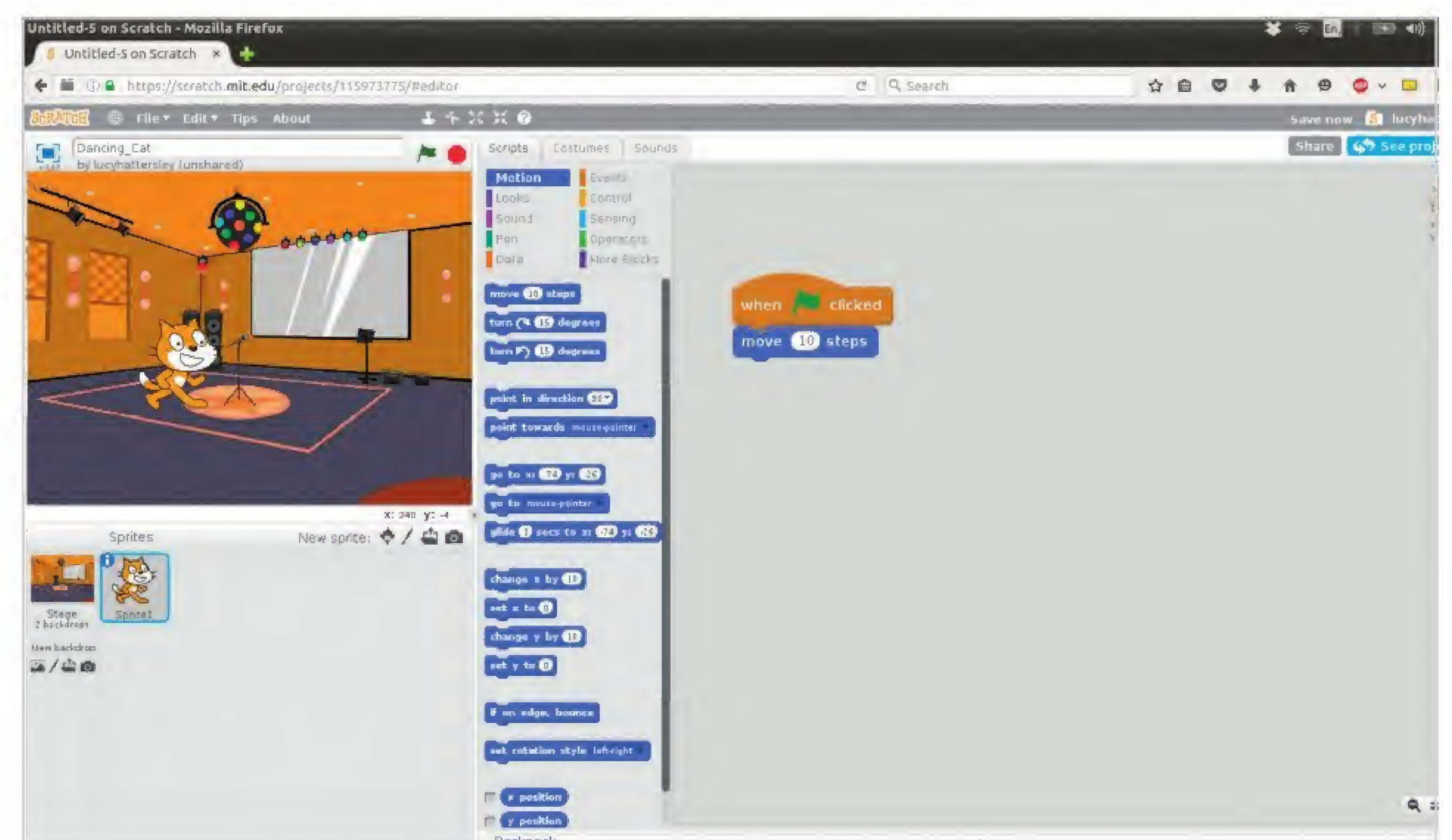
STEP 1

Click Create to start a new Scratch project and name it Dancing Cat. You're going to put your cat and some other characters on a dance floor and get them to bust some moves. Click Stage, then Music and Dance and choose party-room. Drag the Scratch Cat graphic around the Stage to find a good starting position.



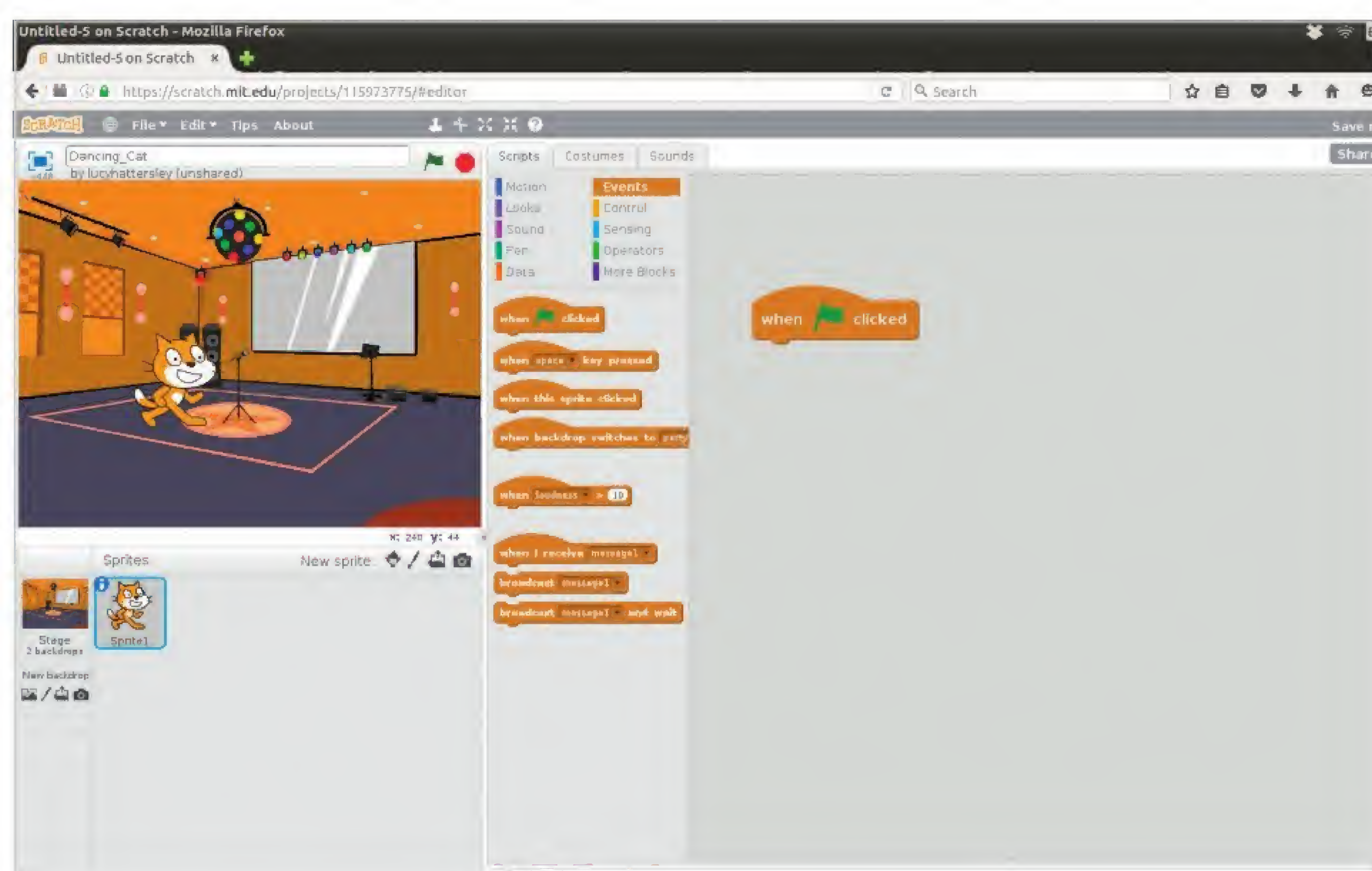
STEP 3

Click the Motion tab and drag the **move [10] steps** block and connect it beneath the **when flag clicked** block. A quick word about that [10]. When you write a number or word inside those square brackets, that's the way of saying you can choose a value. It's the equivalent of a variable, because it varies. We'll tell you which number or selection we're using but you can use any you want. Play around.



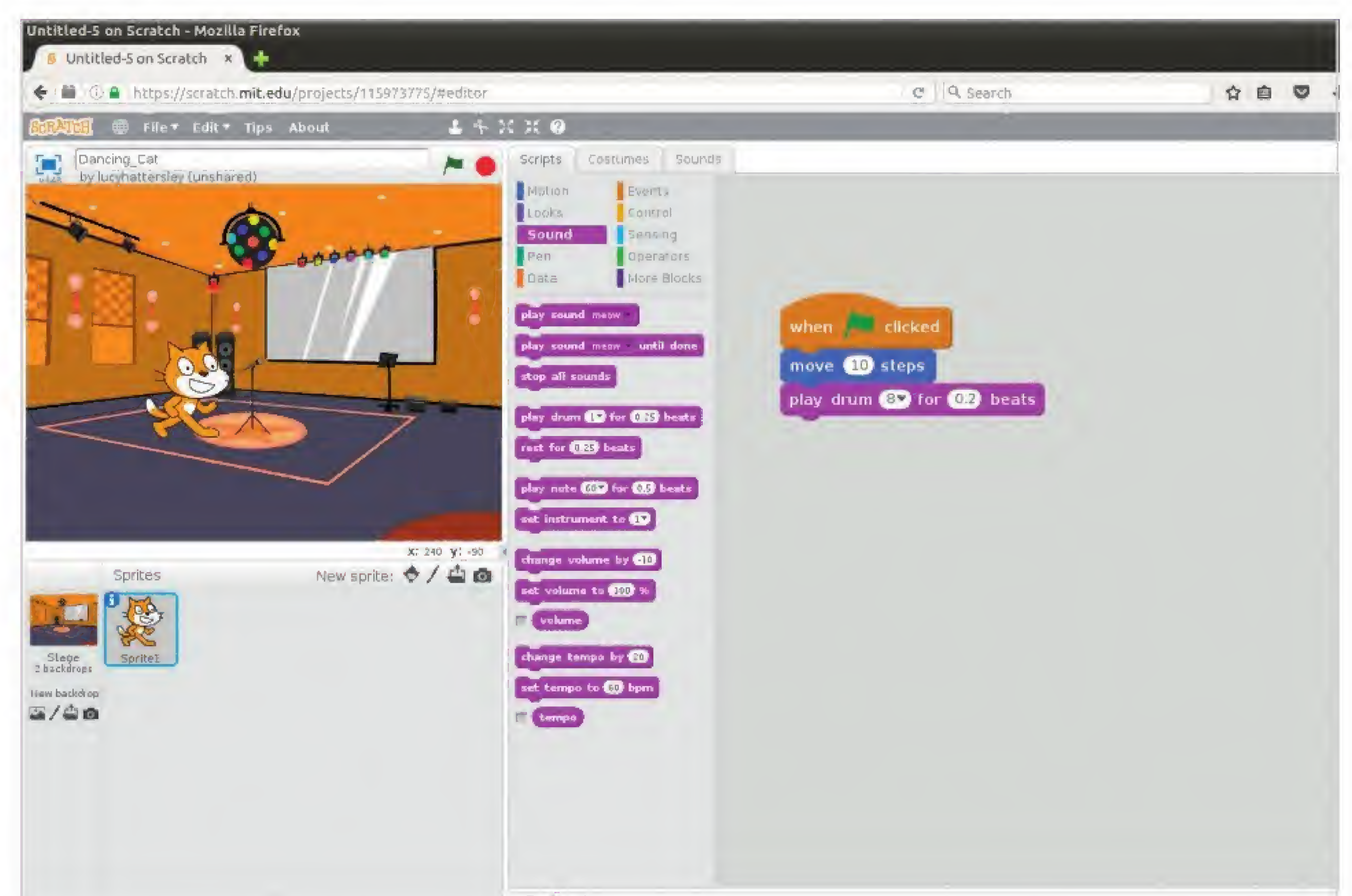
STEP 2

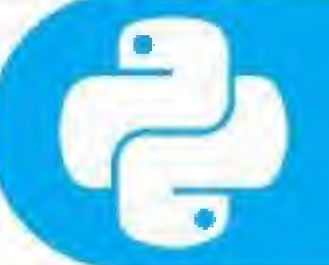
Click on Sprite1 in the Sprites Panes and click the Scripts tab above the Scripts area. Now click Events in the Blocks Pane and drag the **when flag clicked** block into the Scripts area. This block represents the start of your program. It tells Scratch to run through the blocks below it when we click the Green Flag icon above the Stage window.



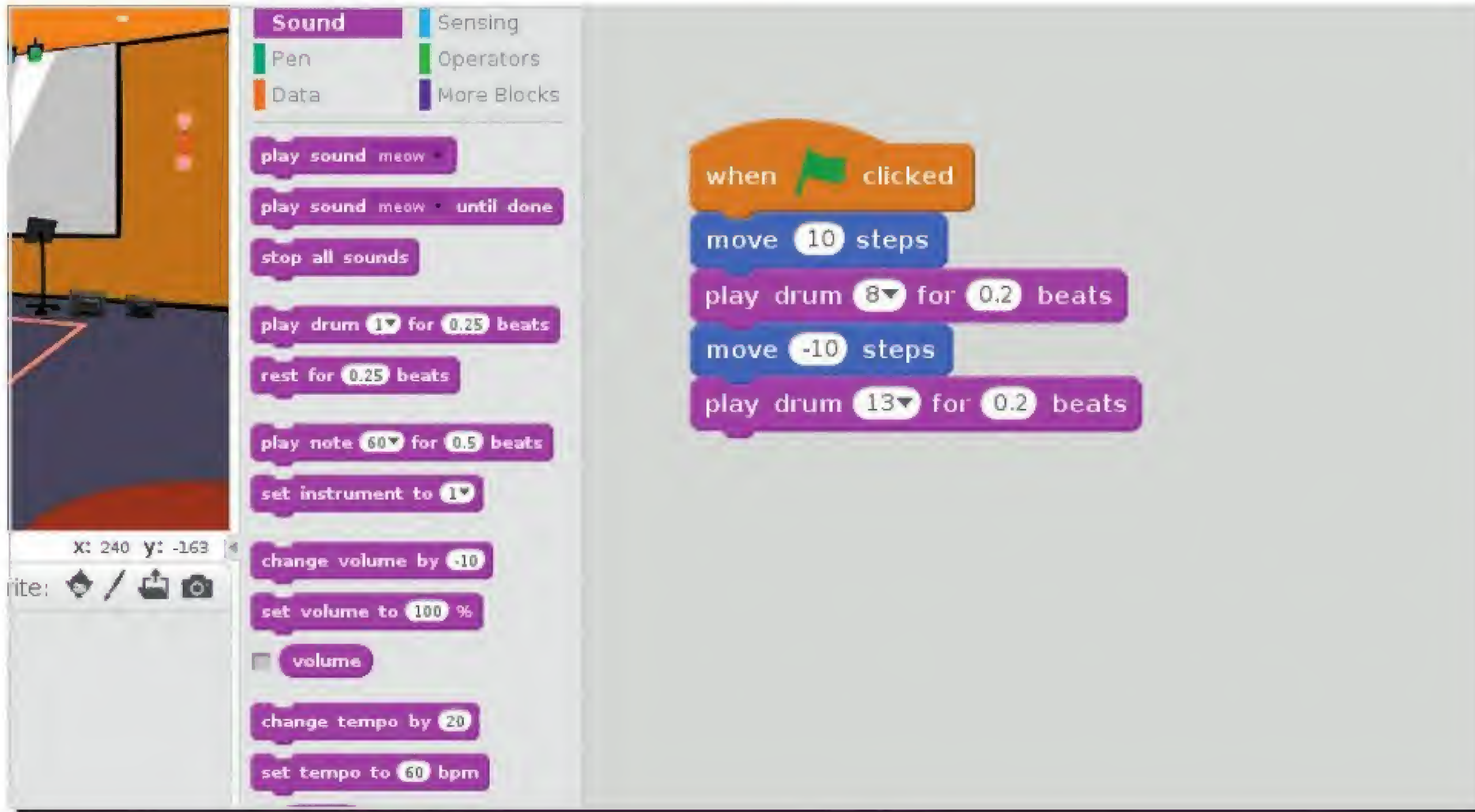
STEP 4

It's not much of a disco, so let's add some sound. Click the sound tab and drag **play drum [8] for [0.2] beats** and connect it to the bottom of the stack of blocks. Click on the blocks and Scratch Cat will move and a sound will come from your speaker.

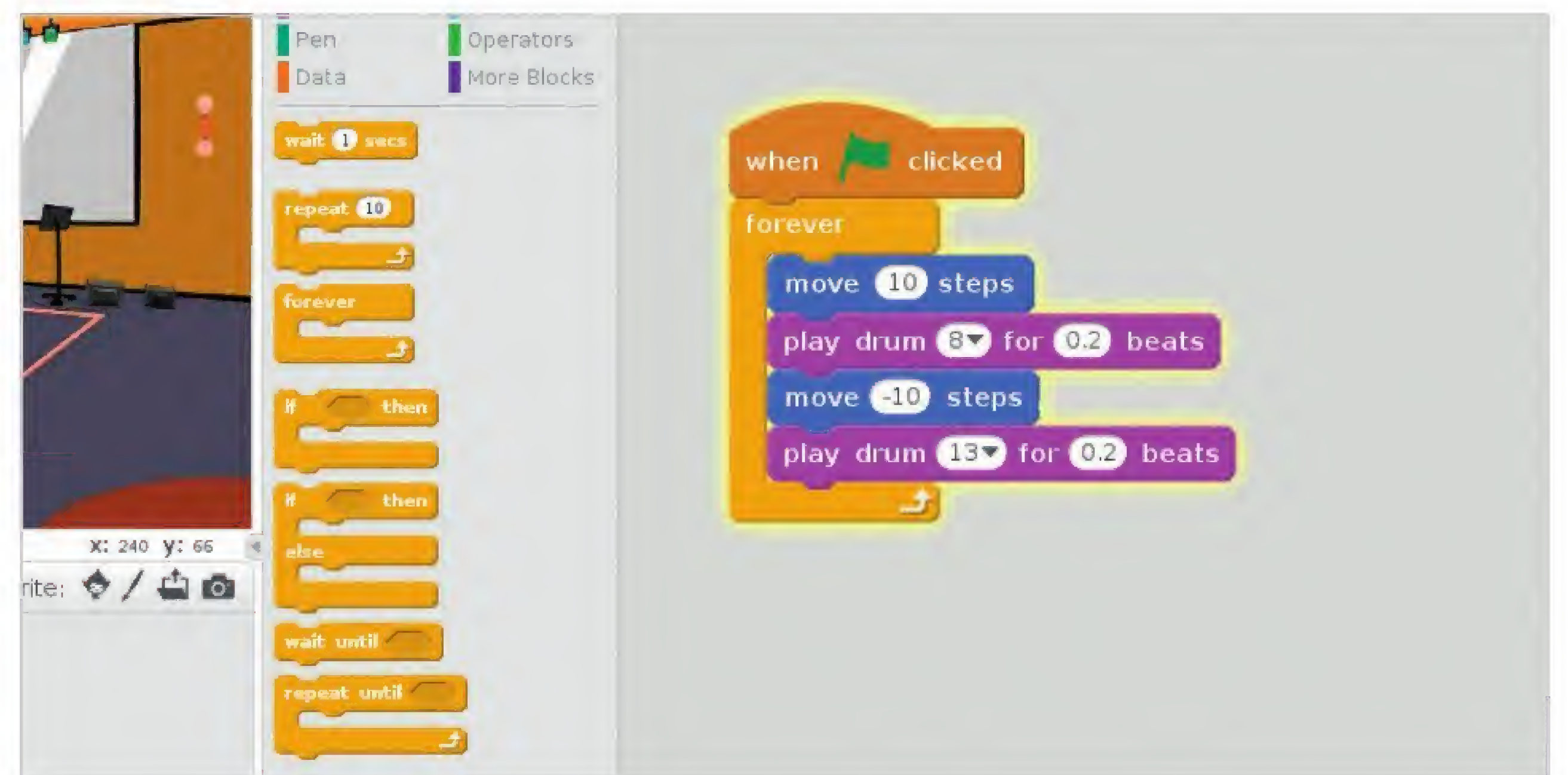


**STEP 5**

Dancing is a back and forth affair, so let's get Scratch Cat moving back. Drag another **move [10] steps** block to the bottom of the stack. Now click the **10** and change it to **-10** (minus 10). Entering minus figures moves the cat backwards. Drag another **play drum** block to the bottom of the script. Pick a different drum sound. We chose **13**.

**STEP 6**

Scratch Cat only moves back and forth once, which isn't much of a party. Click Control and drag the **forever** block to the Script Area. Carefully position it beneath the **when [flag] clicked** block but above the **move [10] steps** block. The script should nest within the two prongs of the **forever** block. Click the Green Flag icon to start the disco. Click the red Stop icon to end the program.

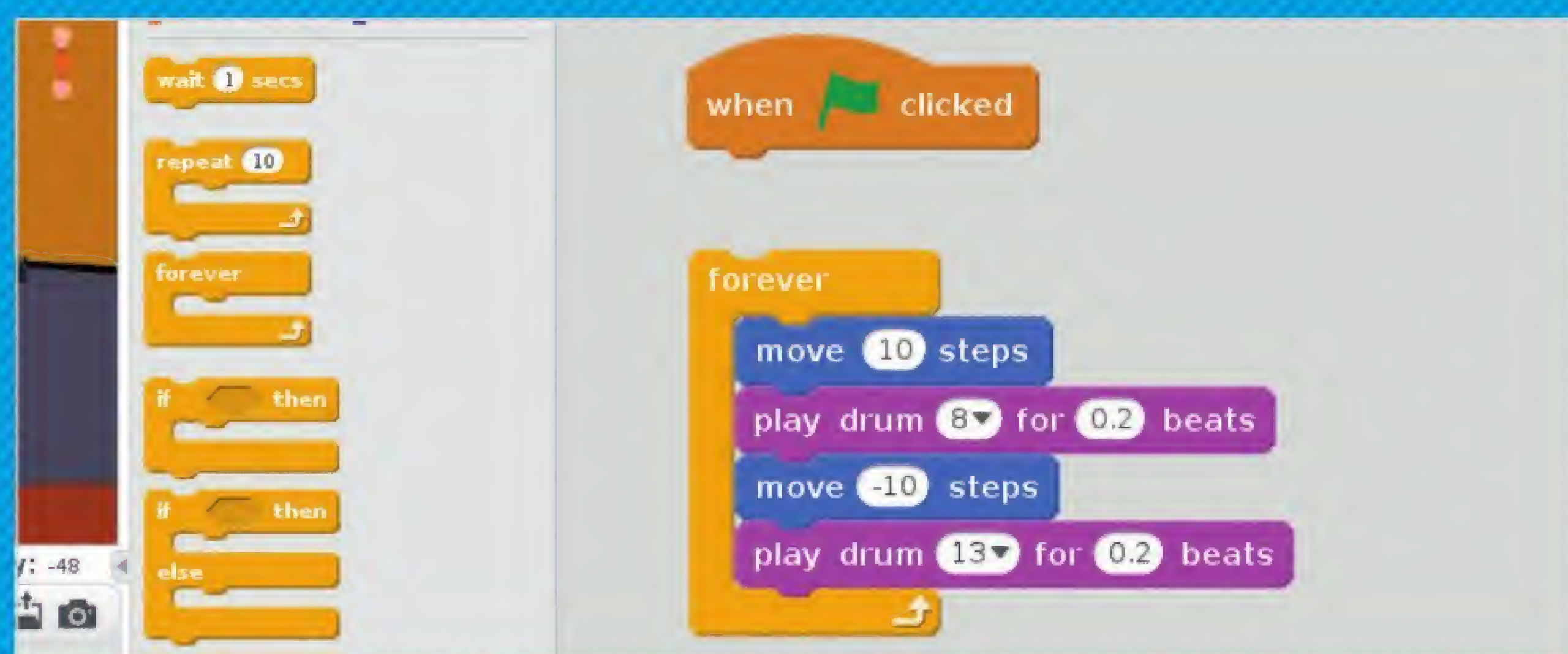


EDITING SCRIPTS

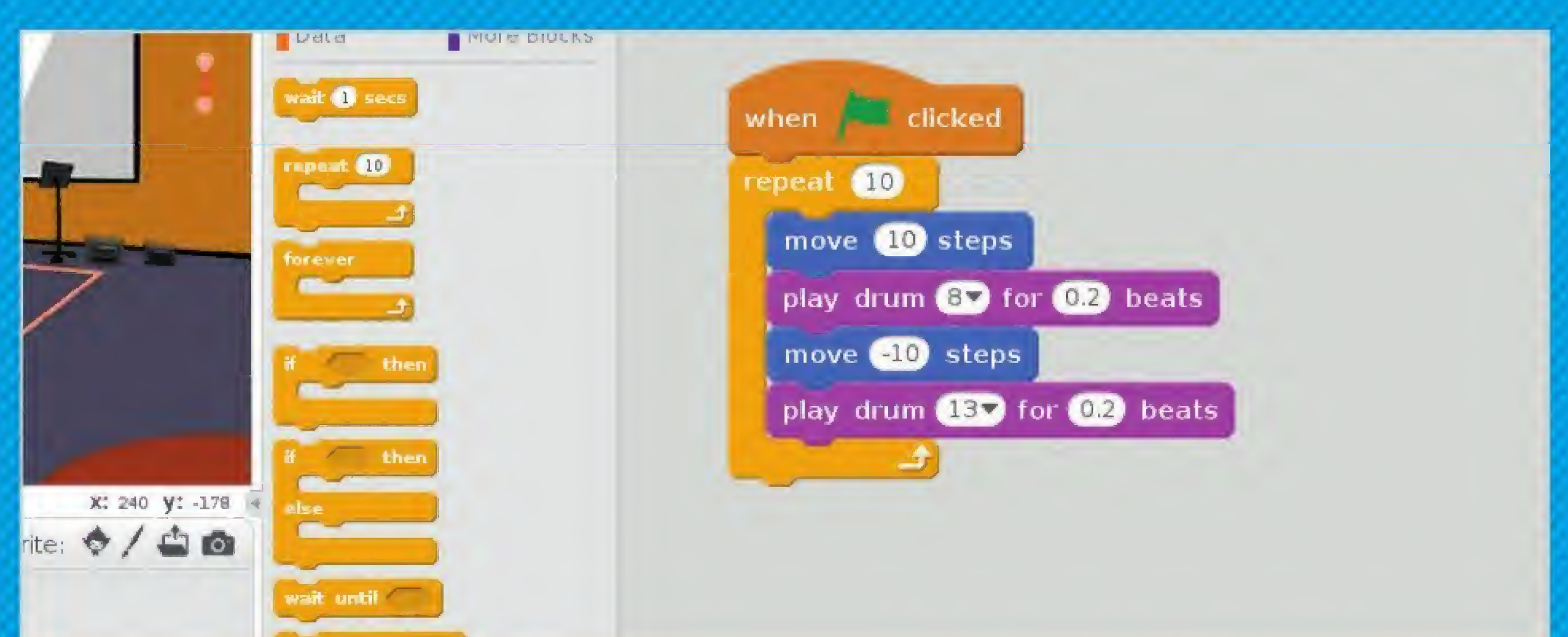
Nothing is set in stone, and you can move your blocks in and out of scripts and even have several scripts or parts of scripts in the Script Area. Scratch is far more forgiving than other programming languages for experimentation.

STEP 1

It's pretty bad form to use the **forever** block or a forever loop in programming. Programs are supposed to run from start to a finish. Even programs like Scratch have an end point when you quit the program. You want to replace the **forever** block with a **repeat** one. Click the **forever** block in your script and drag it down to separate it from the other blocks.

**STEP 3**

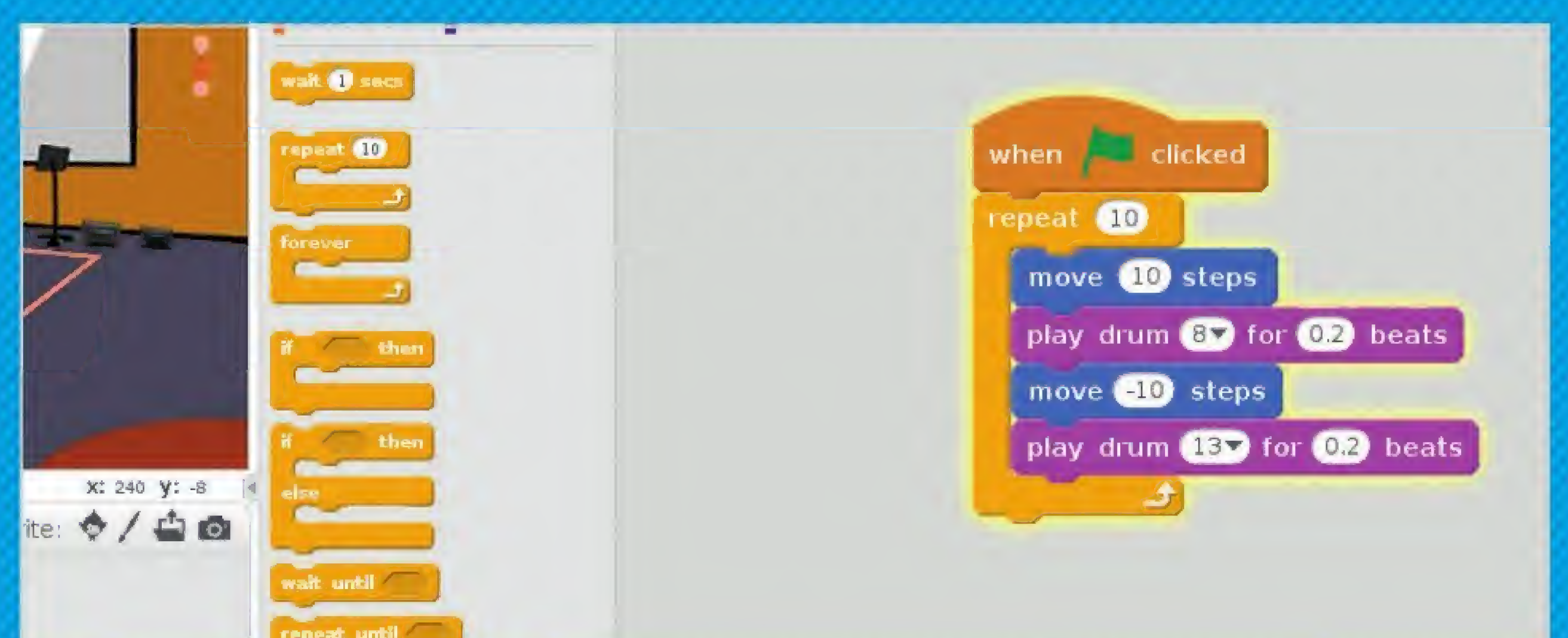
Now drag a **repeat [10]** block from the block list and connect it to the **when [flag] clicked** block in the Script Area. Now drag the top **play drum** block of the stack inside the **repeat [10]** block. If you drag the top block all the blocks underneath move with it and the whole lot will be nested inside the **repeat [10]** stack.

**STEP 2**

Your **move** and **play drum** blocks are still nested within the **forever** block though and you want to keep them. Click the topmost **move** block and drag it out of the **forever** block. It's now good to get rid of the **forever** block so drag it to the left and back to the Blocks List to get rid of it.

**STEP 4**

You can position the stack anywhere on the Script Area and even keep the unused blocks around, although we think it's good practice to keep only what you are using in the Script Area and remove any unused blocks. Click the Green Flag icon above the Stage Window to view Scratch Cat doing a short dance.





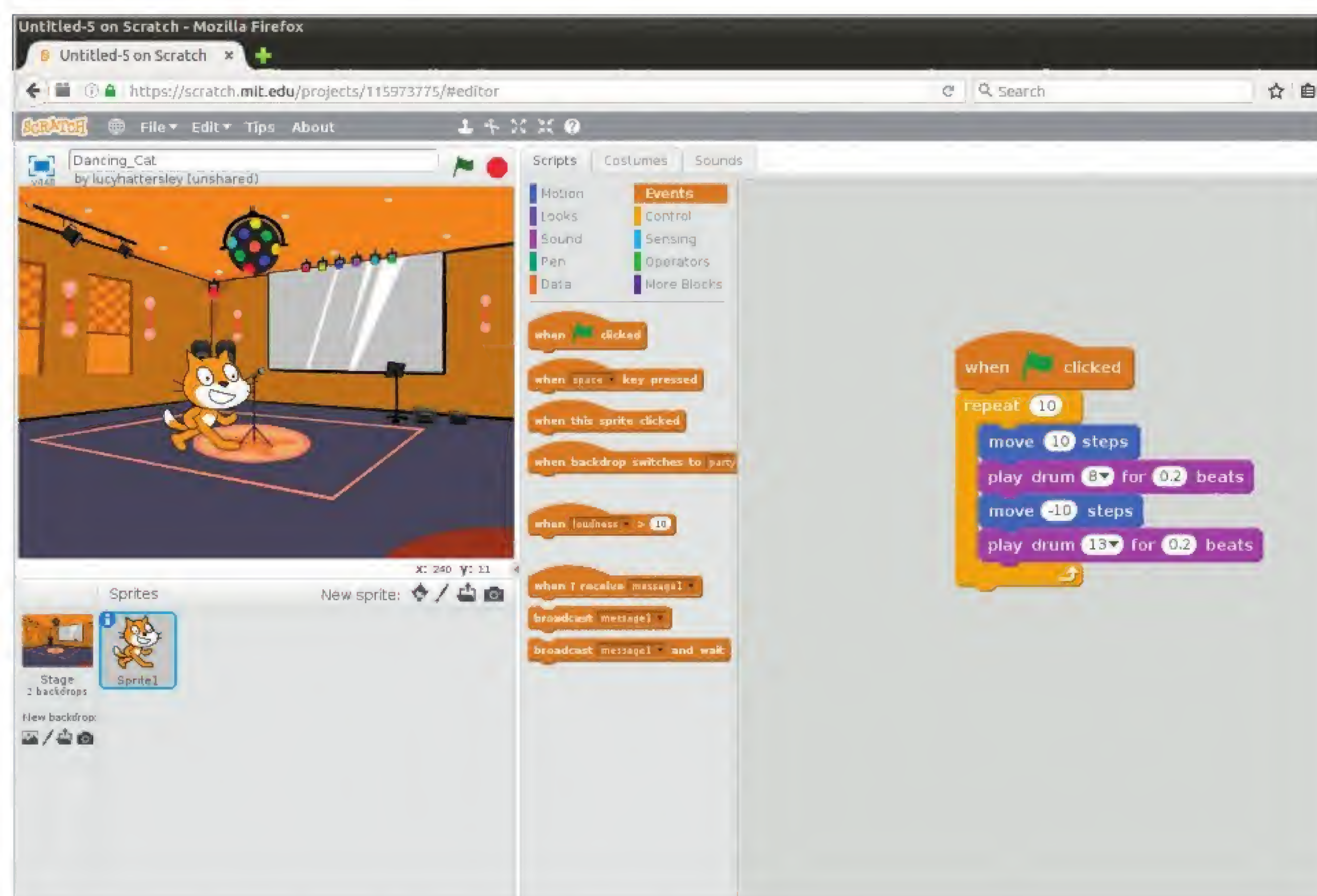
Interaction in Scratch

Your Scratch Cat is now dancing back and forth but wouldn't it be great if you could control him. In this tutorial you're going to look at creating keyboard interactions in Scratch. Let's get our disco cat really grooving!

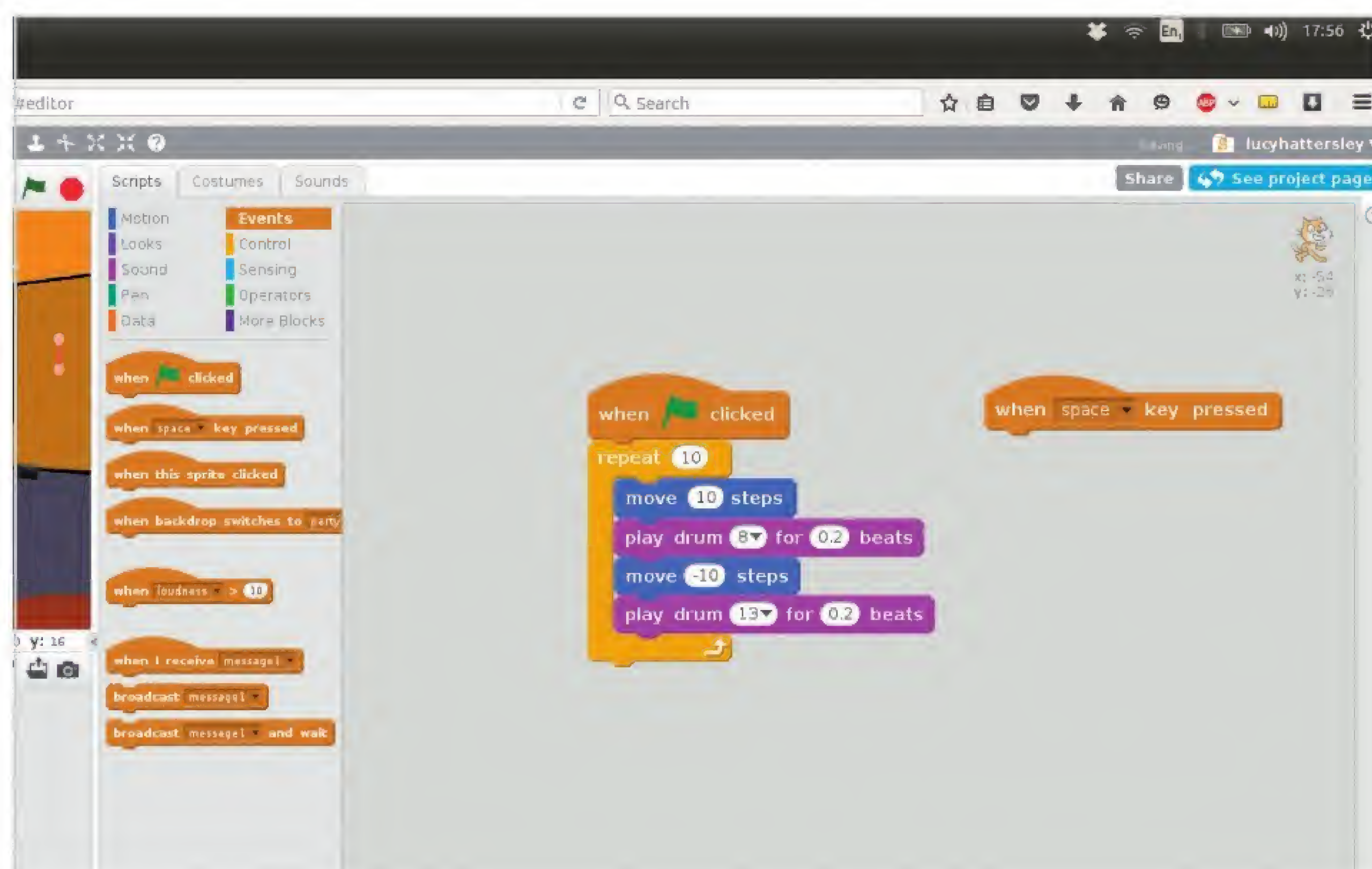
INTERACTIVE CONTROL

The only Control option we've really looked at so far is the `when [flag] clicked` block, which starts the program. Once the program is running it does its thing, right up until it finishes. You're going to use the other Control blocks to do something more interesting.

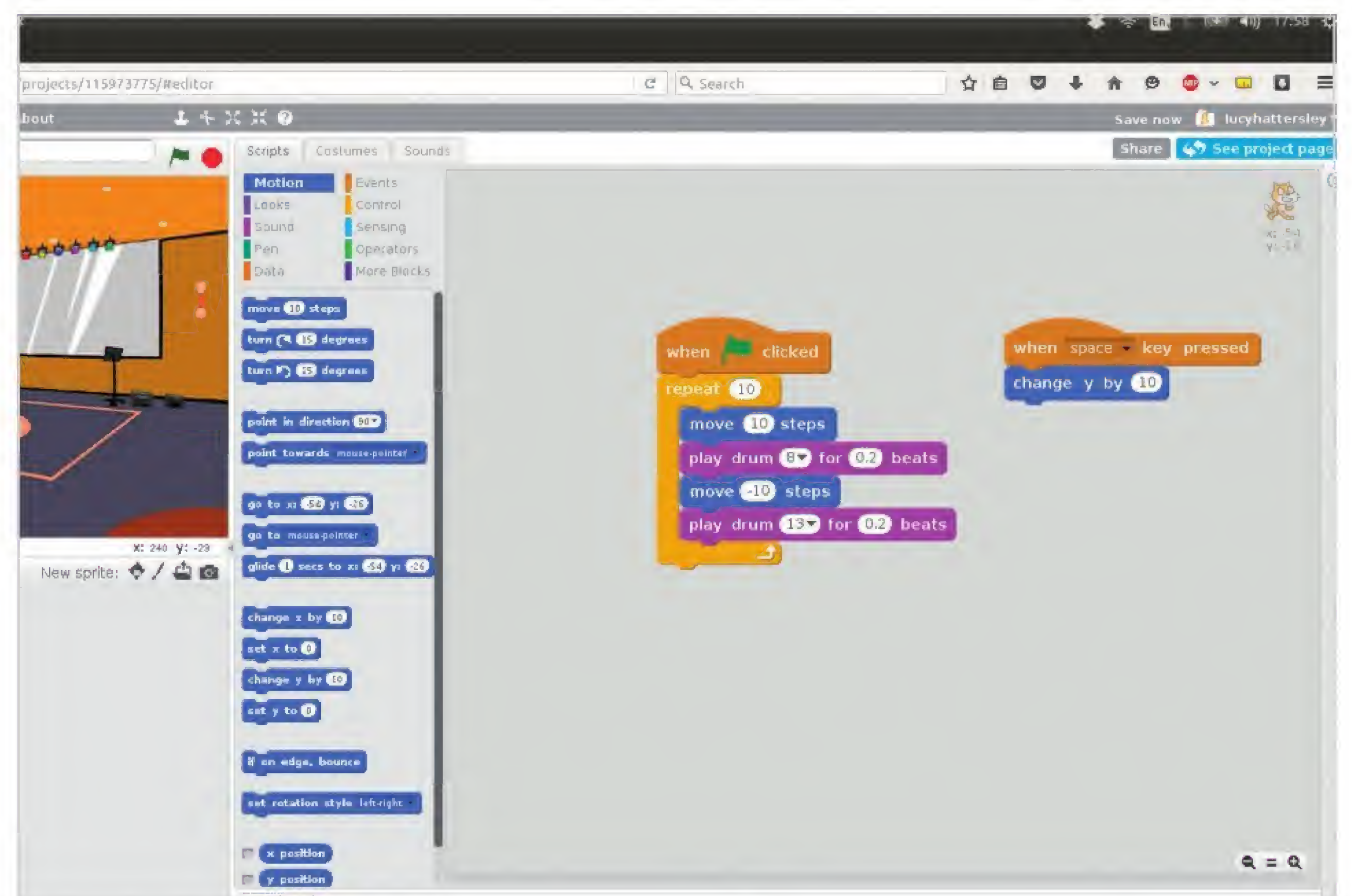
STEP 1 Open the Dancing Cat program from previous tutorials. Select Sprite1 and click on Events so you can see the `when [flag] clicked` script. Now click Control in the Block Palette and drag the `when [space] key pressed` block to an empty part of the Script Area.



STEP 2 You can drag and rearrange the block scripts to any part of the Script Area. We like to have our `when [flag] clicked` scripts in the top left but it really doesn't matter where they are. It's also worth spotting that we now have more than one script for Sprite1; you can have multiple scripts for each sprite in your program.

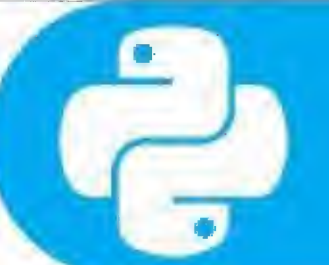


STEP 3 We're going to make Scratch Cat jump up and down when we press the space bar. Click Motion and drag `change y by [10]` and clip it to the `when [space] key pressed` block. What's with the "y"? This is what's known as a "coordinate".

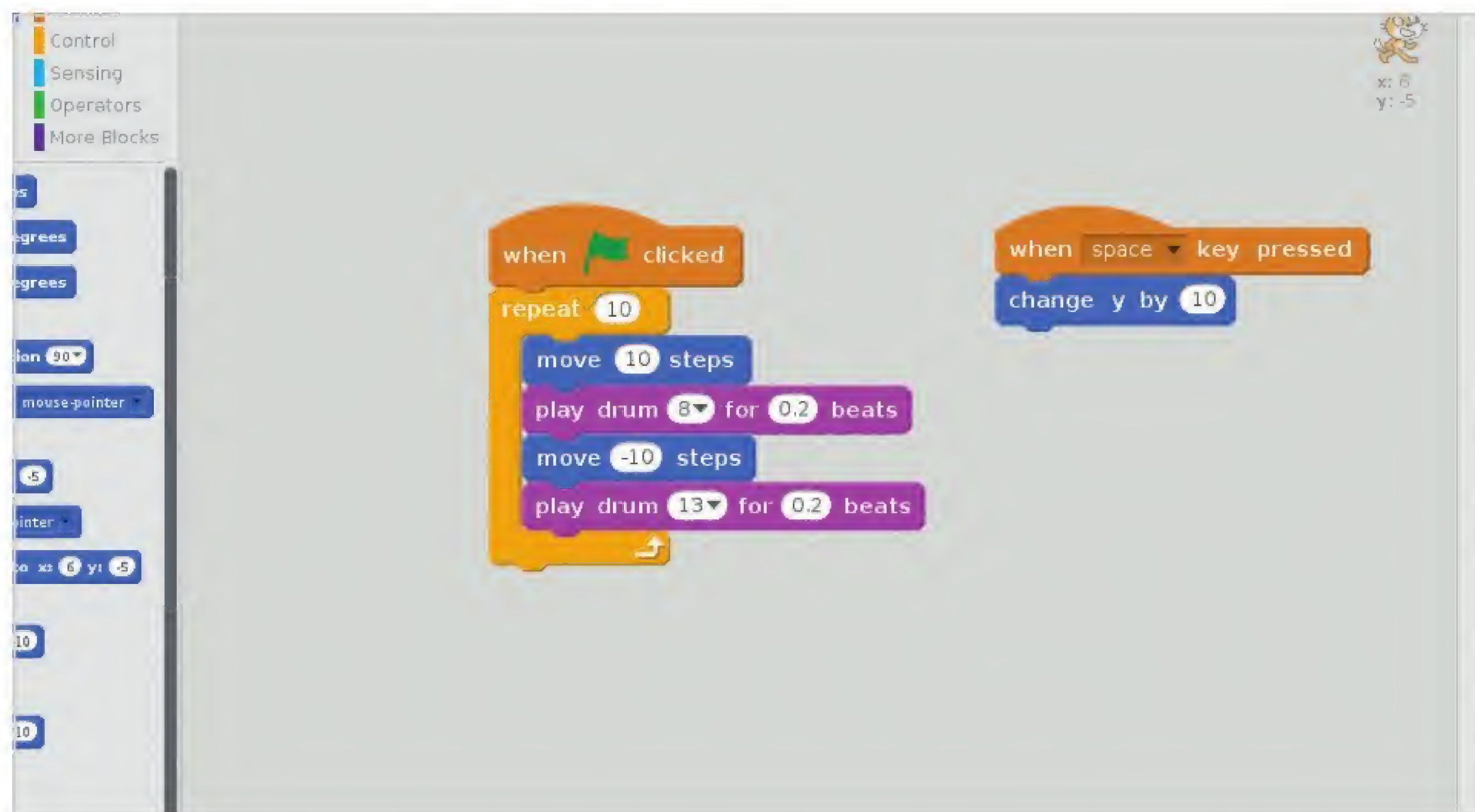


STEP 4 The position of each sprite on the stage is shown using two variables, x and y. These are referred to as the "coordinates". The x is the sprites horizontal position on the stage whilst the y coordinate is the vertical position. Click and drag the sprite around the Stage and you'll see the x and numbers change.

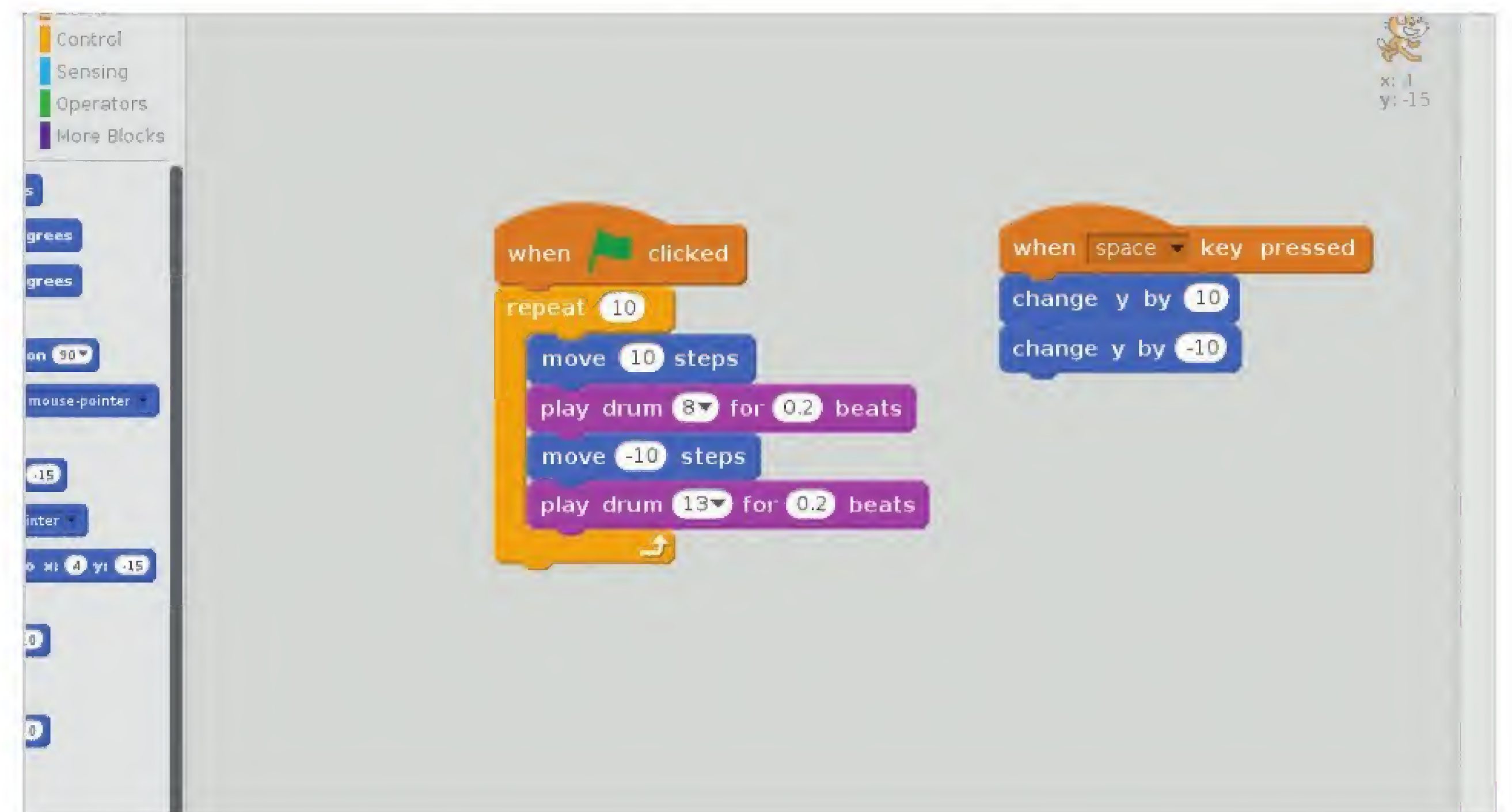


**STEP 5**

The centre of the Stage is x: 0 and y: 0. As you move the sprite up and to the right the numbers increase and as you move it left and down they decrease (going into negative numbers). So when we use the **change y by [10]** block it says, take the current value of y (the vertical position) and increase it by 10. That makes our cat jump up.

**STEP 6**

What goes up must come back down. So drag another **change y by [10]** block and attach it to the bottom of the **when [space] key pressed** script. Now change [10] to [-10]. Click the Green Flag and run the program. Now press the space bar and... oh no, nothing happens. We've just encountered our first "bug".



FIXING YOUR SCRIPT

We know that there's something wrong with our script and we want to see Scratch Cat jump when the space bar is pressed. So let's quickly squash this bug and see it working.

STEP 1

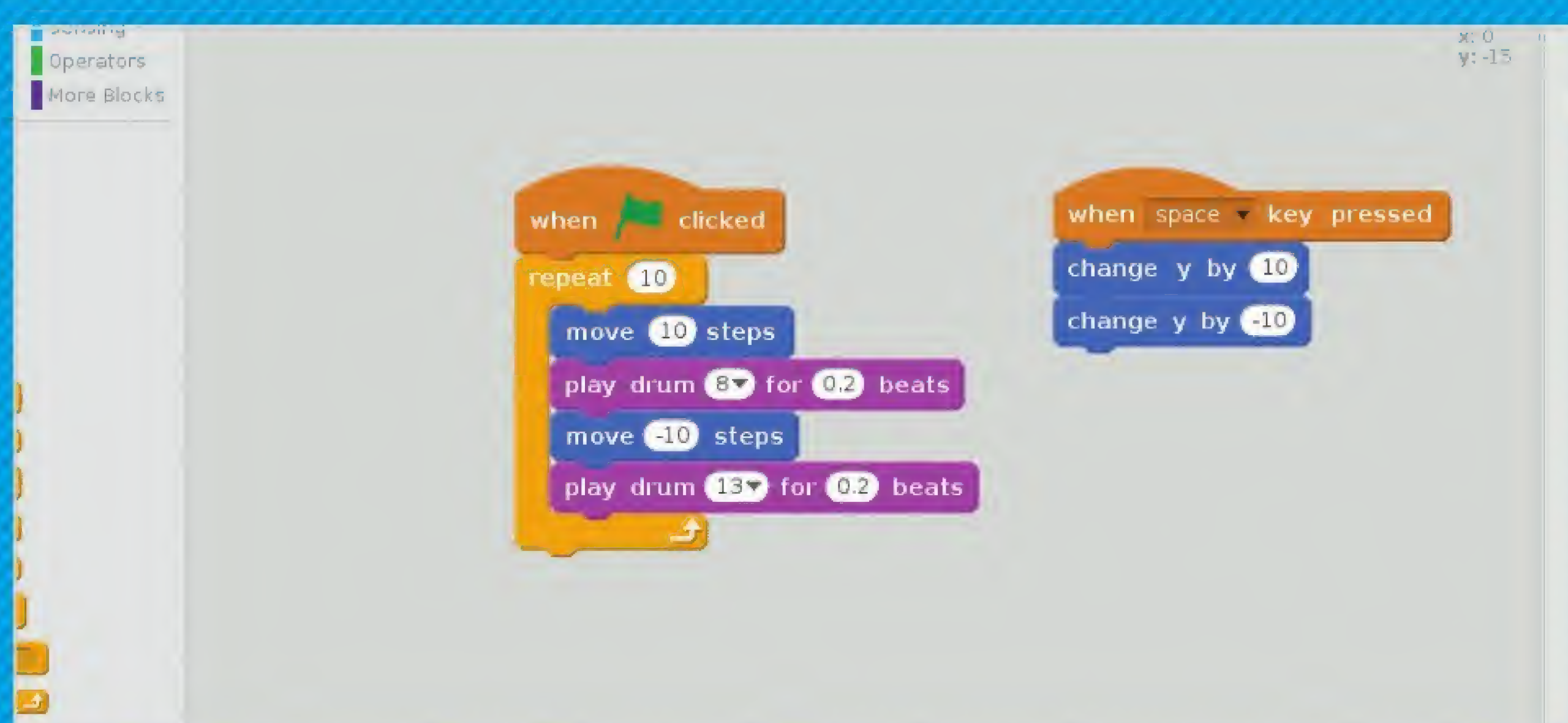
The problem is that programs are super fast and highly visual programs like Scratch can move in the blink of an eye and that's what is happening here. If you tap the space bar repeatedly while the program is running you'll see Scratch Cat flickering as it jumps up and down.

**STEP 3**

Drag a **wait [1] secs** block from the Blocks Palette and insert it underneath the **change [y] by 10** block. Now press the space bar on the keyboard to see Scratch cat jump up, and then back down. Notice that you don't need to press the Green Flag icon to run the program; the Green Flag starts our other script.

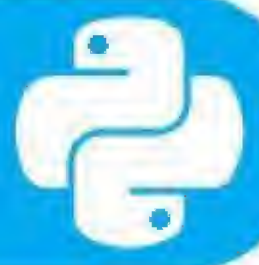
**STEP 2**

The challenge is that our motion controls move the cat instantly from one place to another, so fast that we can't see. Sometimes this is fine, like our back and forth dance, but obviously we need to slow down the jump. Help is at hand. Click the Motion tab to view the Motion blocks.

**STEP 4**

We think Scratch Cat stays in the air a bit too long. We want a jump, not a levitation effect. Change the **wait [1] secs** variable to **[0.25]**. This is a quarter of a second and will give us a more fun hop. Press the Green Flag to start the script and tap the space bar whenever you want Scratch Cat to jump.





Using Sprites in Scratch

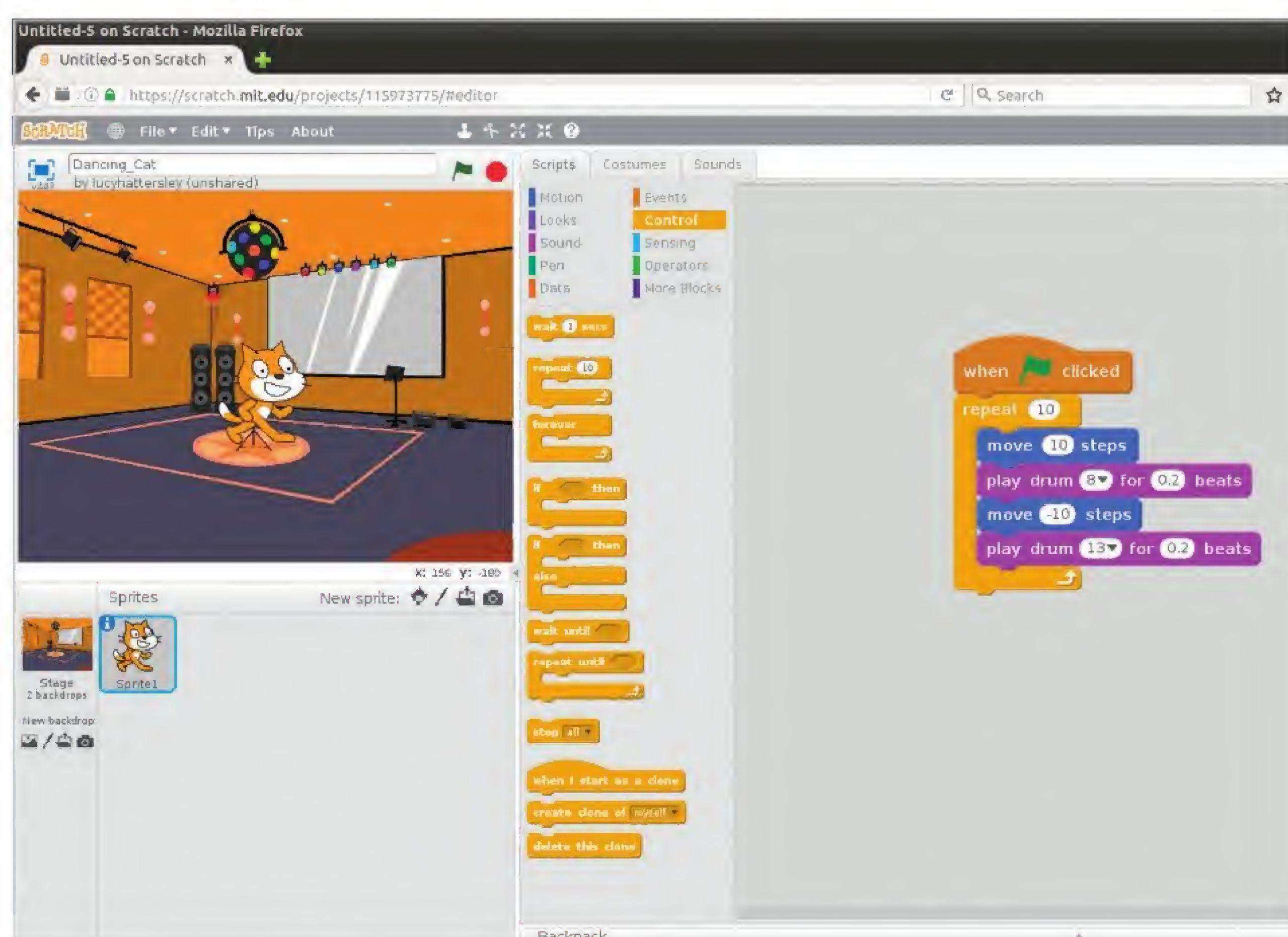
So far we've just got the one sprite in Scratch, the eponymous Scratch Cat. In this tutorial we're going to add a second sprite and see how to make the two sprites interact with each other.

LOOK SPRITE

Sprites are 2D (flat) graphics drawn on top of a background. They are commonly used to display information in games such as health bars, scores or lives. Older games are composed entirely of sprites, just like our Scratch project.

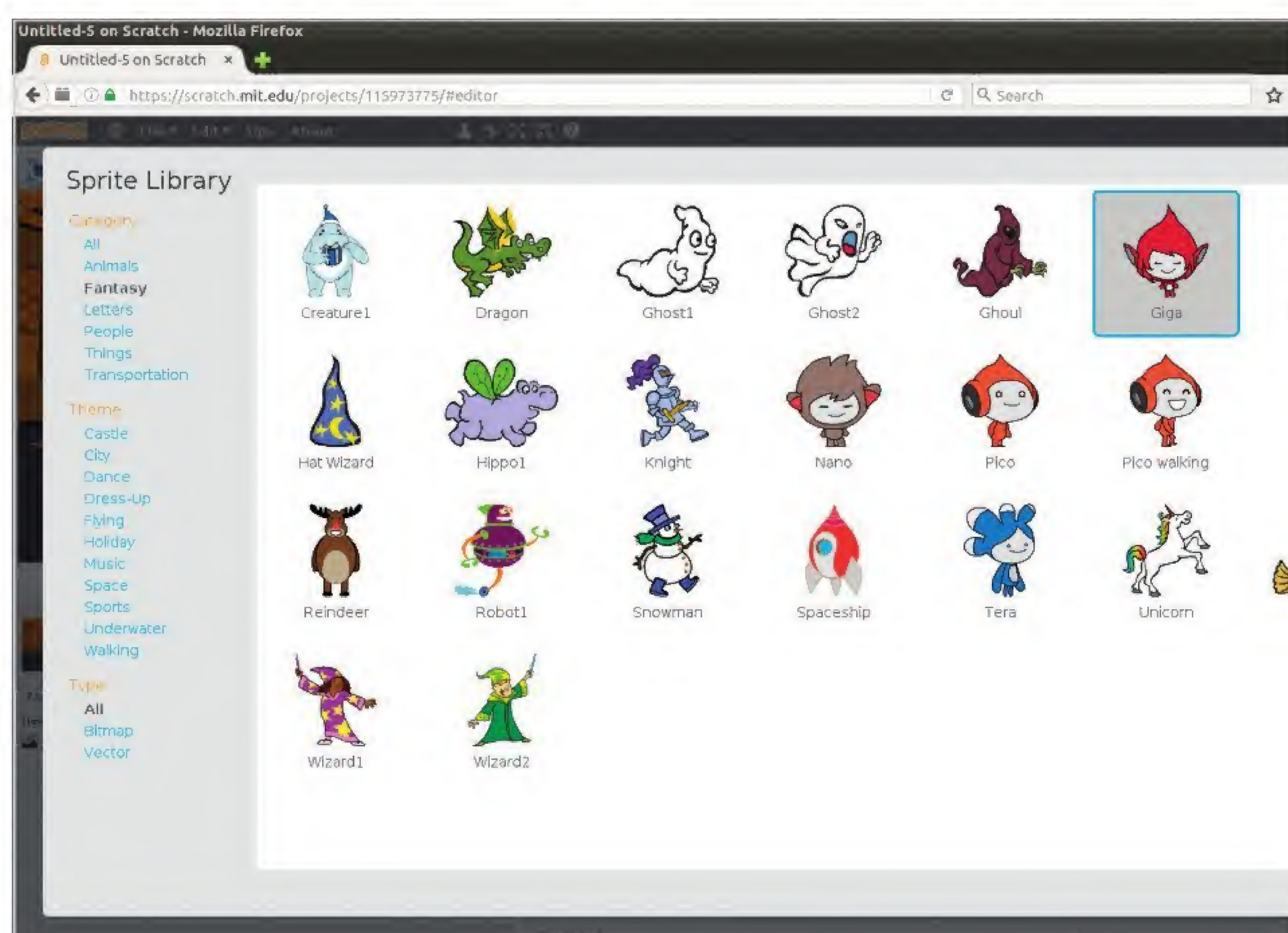
STEP 1

We're going to add another sprite to our project and a second character to the scene. Click the Choose Sprite From Library button, just above the Sprites pane. This opens the Sprite Library that displays all the different characters available.



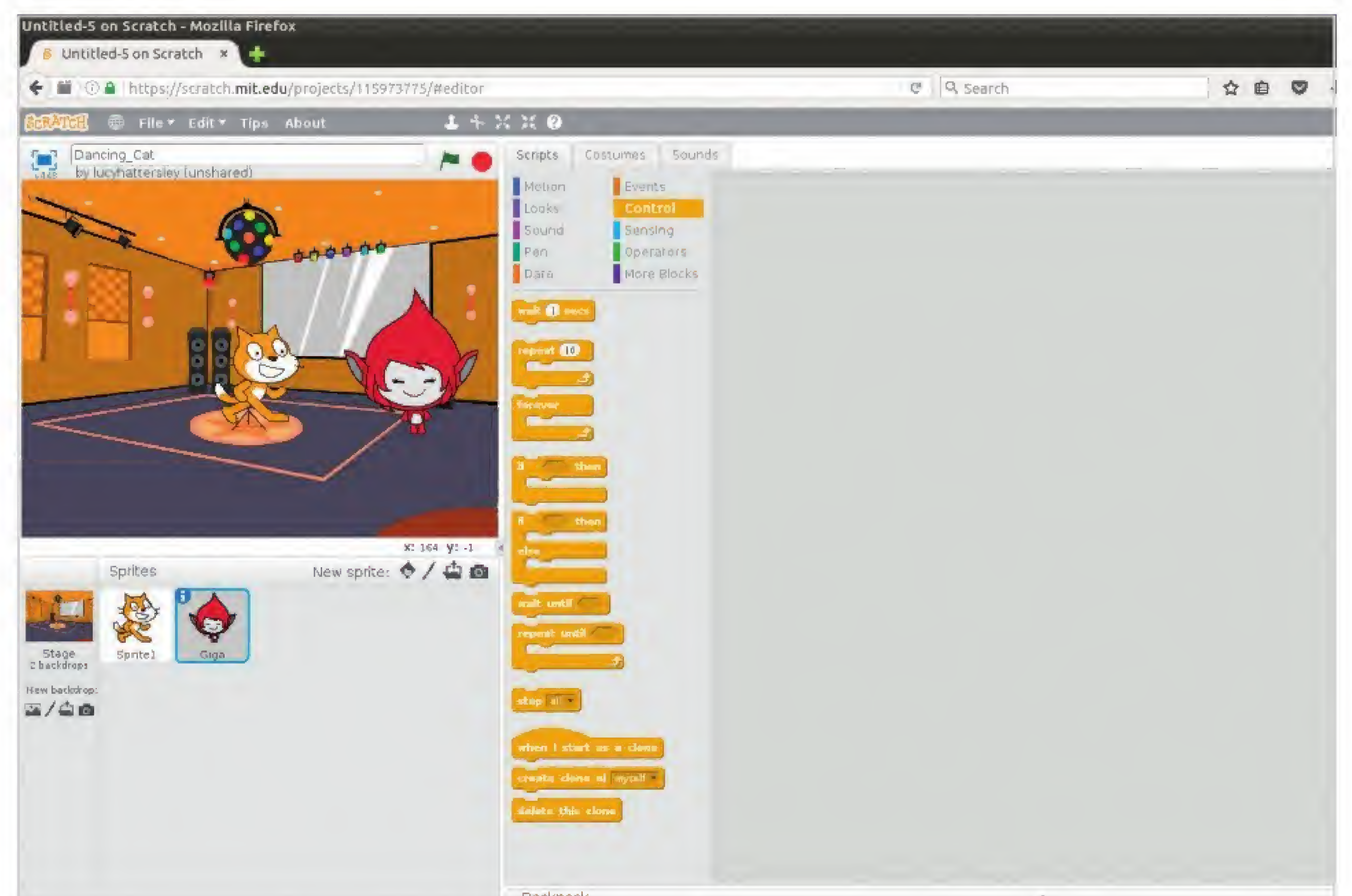
STEP 2

Click on the Fantasy link in the sidebar and choose Giga. Click OK to add the character to the stage. Click and drag the sprite to reposition Giga to the right of Scratch Cat. Notice that a Giga icon has joined Sprite1 in the Sprites pane.



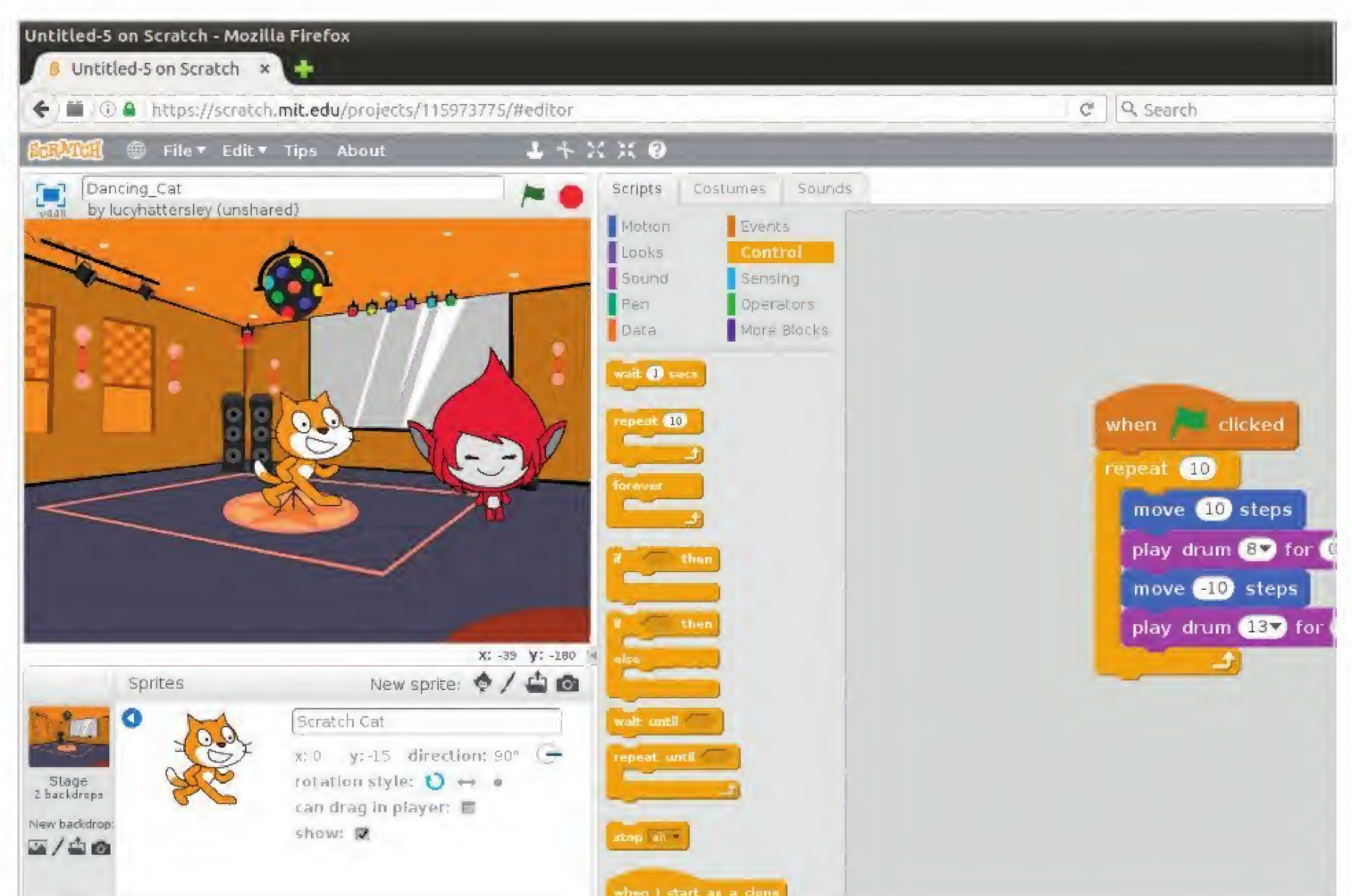
STEP 3

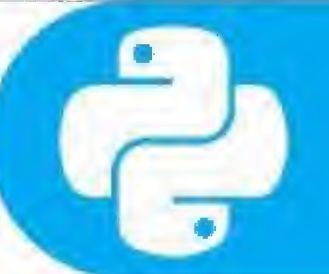
All the blocks on the Script Area have vanished. The scripts we built for Scratch Cat relate to that object, not to our new sprite. Click on Sprite1 in the Sprites pane to view the Scratch Cat scripts again. Then click Giga to return to your Giga character.



STEP 4

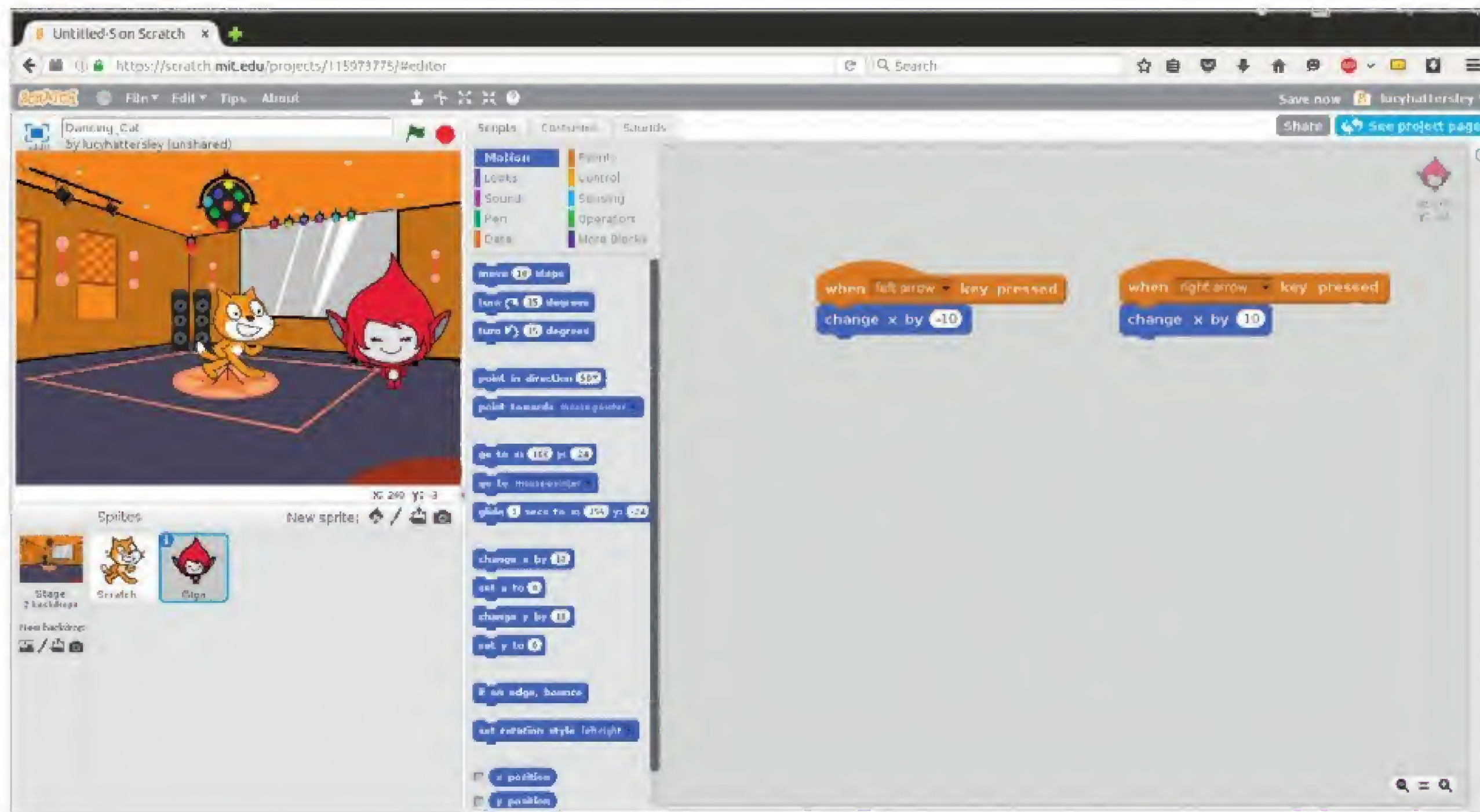
Now that we have more than one sprite, it's a good idea to name them. Click the "i" icon next to Sprite1. Change Sprite1 in the text box to Scratch Cat. Take a look at the other options here. You can remove a sprite from the stage by unticking the Show checkbox, without deleting it from the project.





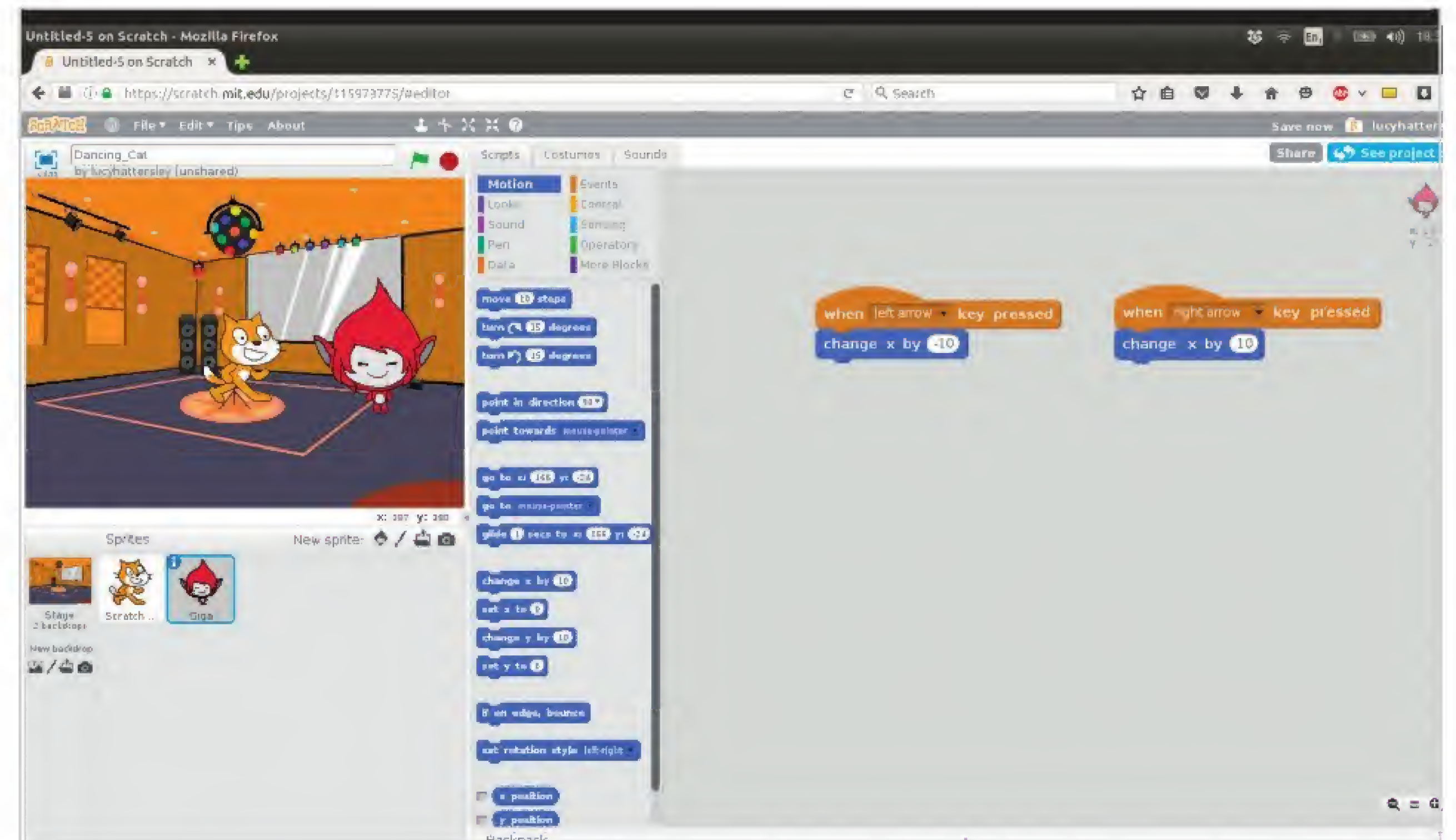
STEP 5

Select Giga and choose Events. Drag a **when [space] key pressed** and **change [space] to [right arrow]**. Add a **change x by [10]** block beneath. Shift-click the script and choose duplicate to create another. For the second script change the when **[right arrow] key pressed** to **[left arrow]** and **change x by [10]** to **[-10]**.



STEP 6

We're quite sure you can see where this is going. Press the Green Flag icon and our Scratch Cat object will start to dance and still jumps with space, whilst our other object, Giga, can be moved left and right using the arrow keys on our keyboard.

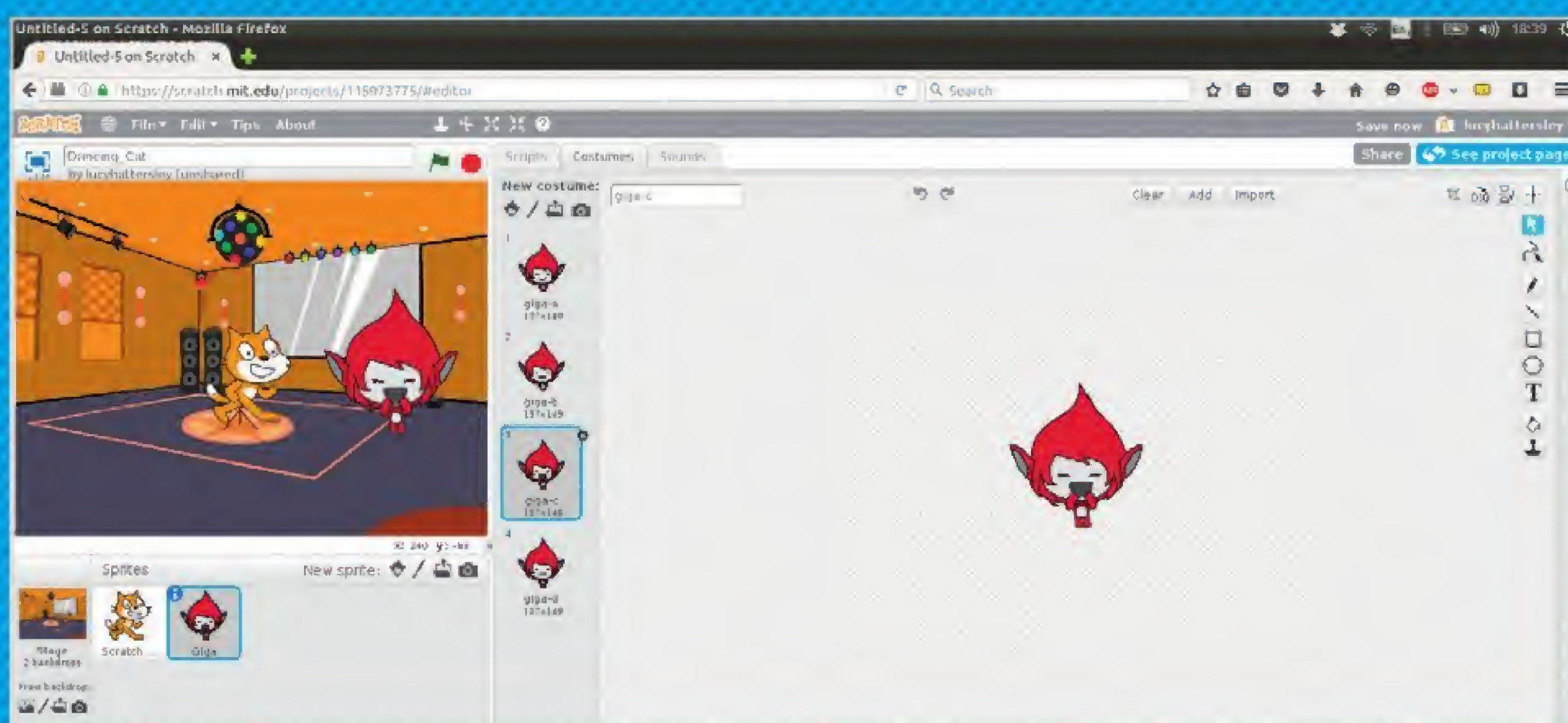


CHANGING COSTUMES

Our two objects, Giga and Scratch Cat don't have to look like the original characters. That's just the name we've given to each sprite. The visual appearance is a costume and our objects can change their costume and look completely different.

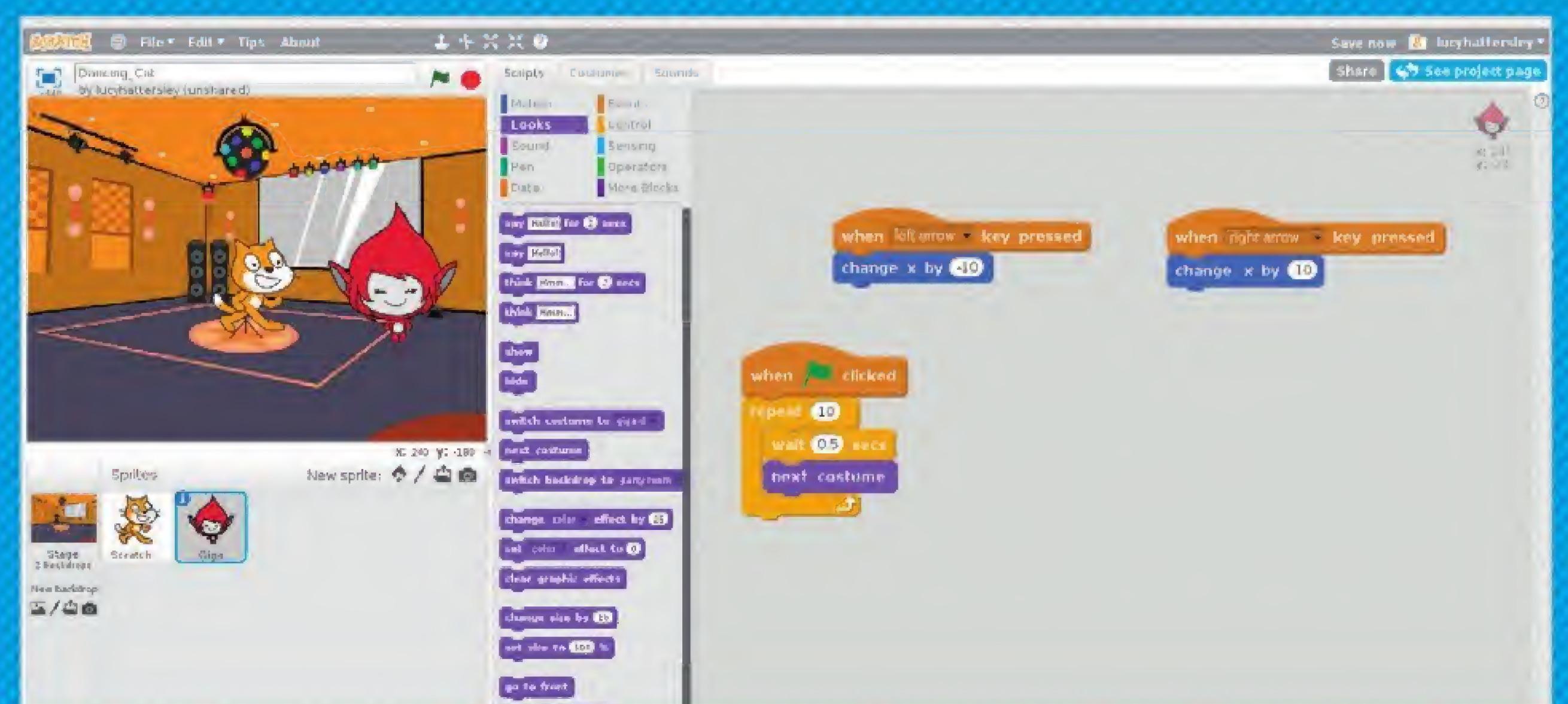
STEP 1

Select Giga in the Sprite Pane and click the Costumes tab. The Scripts Area now displays the costumes being used by Giga, including the current look. Choose giga-c in the list on the sidebar; this gives our sprite a different pose. Switch back to giga-a for now.



STEP 3

Attach a **repeat [10]** block and inside it place **wait [1] secs**. Change **[1]** to **[0.5]**. Click Looks and drag a **next costume** block into the **repeat** block. Now Giga will switch to the next costume every half a second, creating an animation effect.



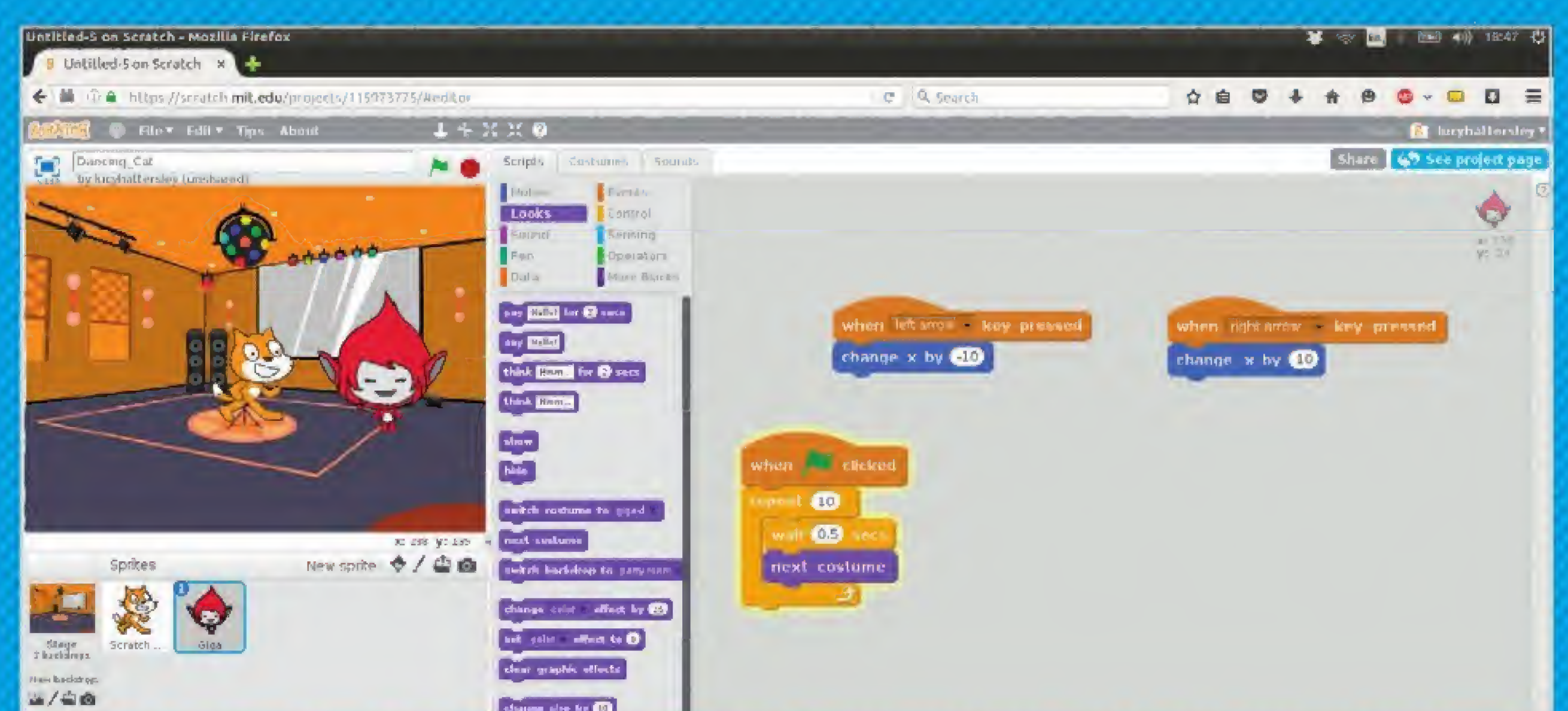
STEP 2

Let's use costume changes to animate Giga. Click Events and drag **when flag clicked** block to the Scripts Area. This block will activate at the same time as the Scratch Cat scripts when the Green Flag icon is clicked.



STEP 4

Click the Green Flag icon to start the animation. Scratch Cat now moves back and forth, tapping out a beat, and Giga animates through four different poses. You can move Giga left and right using the arrow keys. It's starting to form into an interactive scene.





Sensing and Broadcast

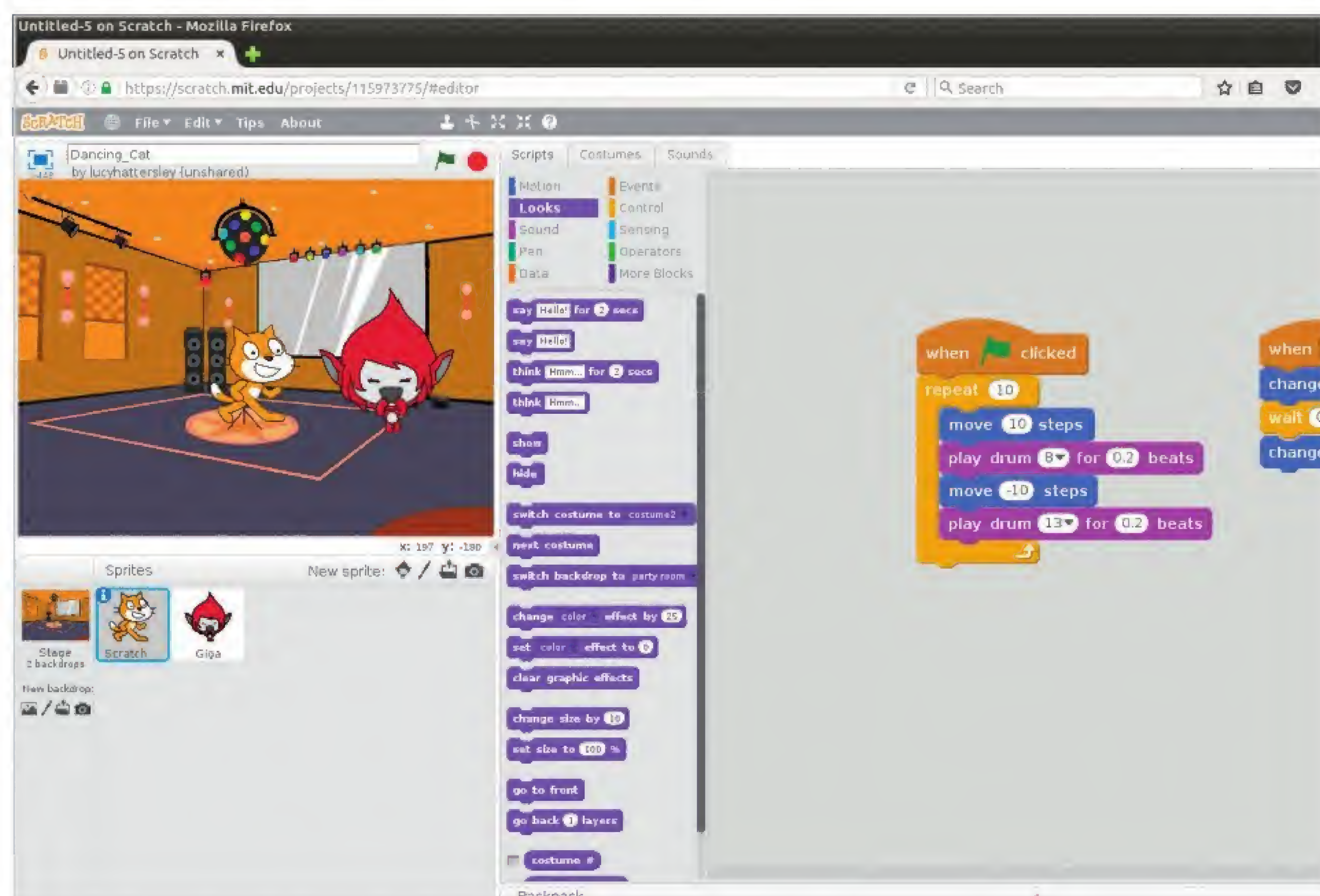
Get your sprites and scripts to communicate with each other. The concept of Sensing and Broadcast is similar to the way objects communicate in Python. This tutorial will walk you through the process.

MORE INTERACTION

Earlier we looked at how you could interact with scripts, using the keyboard to move the sprites but scripts and sprites can interact with each other, sending messages and responding to events.

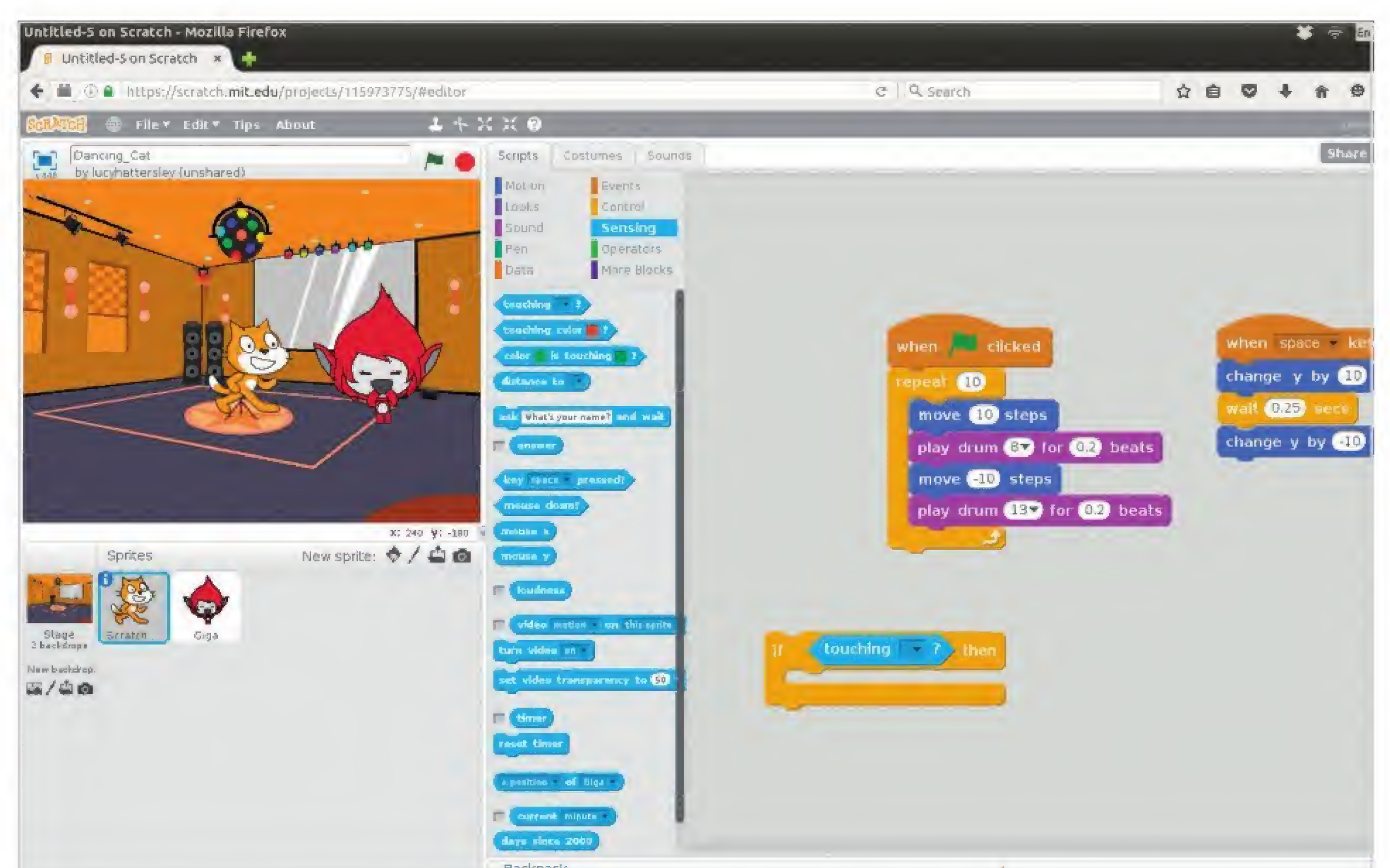
STEP 1

Scripts can broadcast messages to each other. These can be used to start other scripts or respond to events. You're going to get Scratch Cat to respond to the Giga and say "Watch Out!!!" if the two sprites touch. Select Scratch Cat in the Sprites Pane so you can view its Script Area.



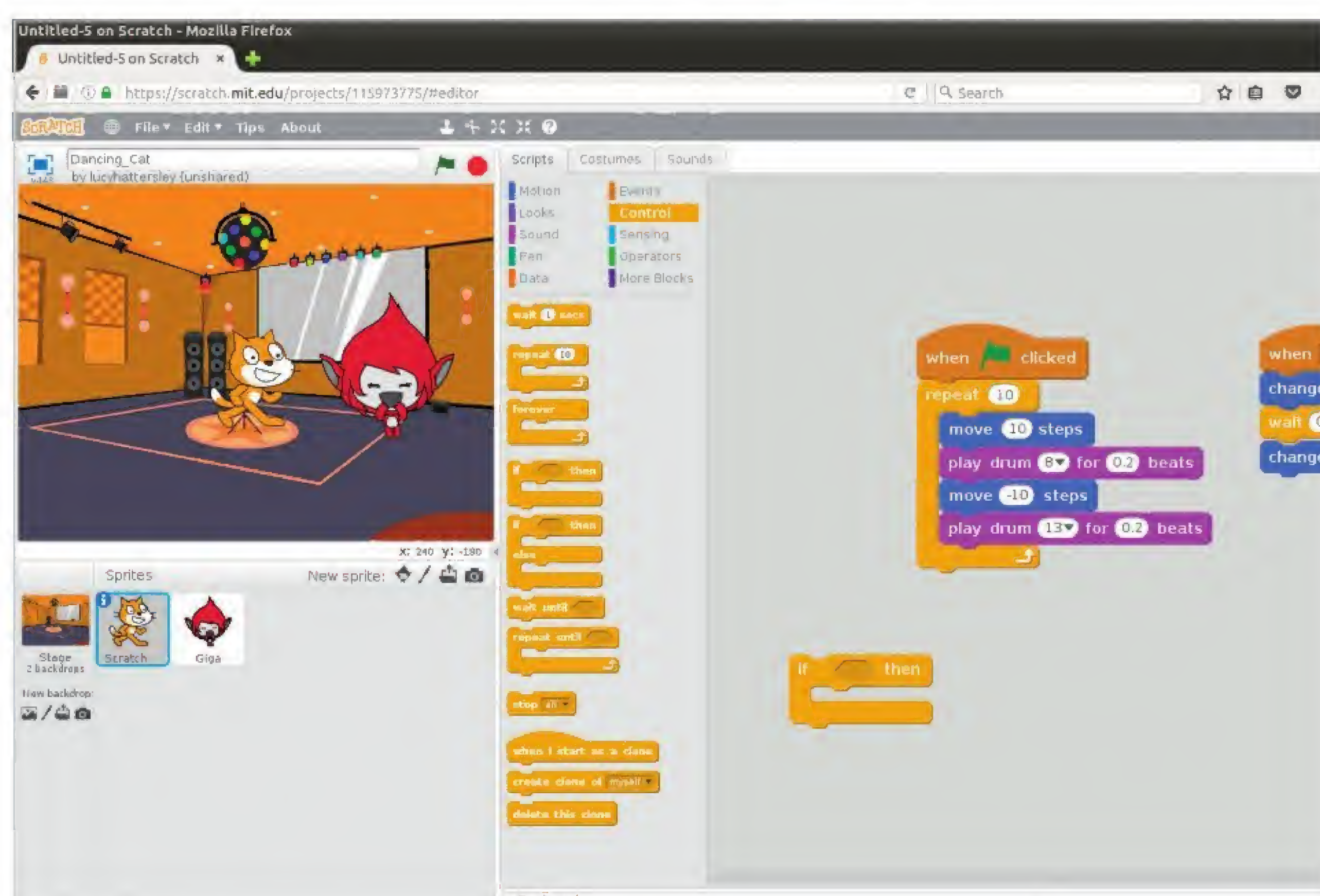
STEP 3

The options for interaction between the sprites are found in the Sensing part of the Block Palette. The one we are looking for is touching, at the top. Notice that this is a different shape to ones you are used to. It is designed to fit in the slot next to our **if** block. Drag the **touching** block into the spare slot in the **if** block.



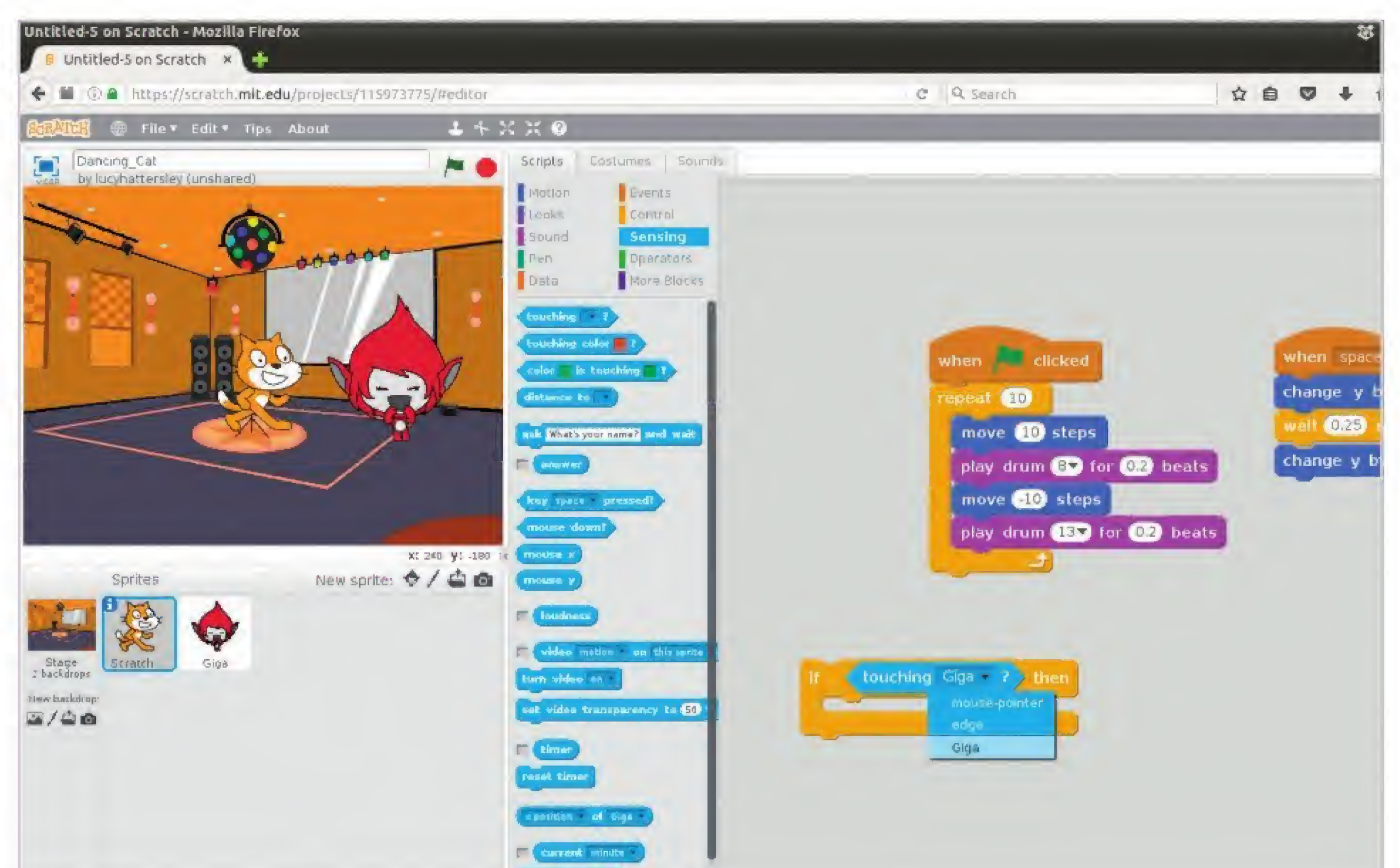
STEP 2

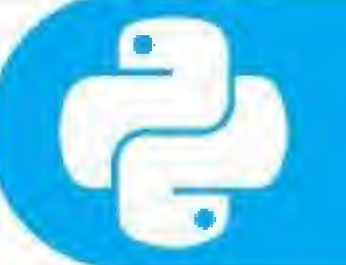
You've looked at 'if' and 'else' in Python, so now you need to look at them in Scratch. Programs work around a few simple terms and 'if this then do that' is one of them. On our stage, you want to say, "if Giga touches Scratch then Scratch says 'Watch Out!!!" Click Control and drag an **if** block to the Script Area.



STEP 4

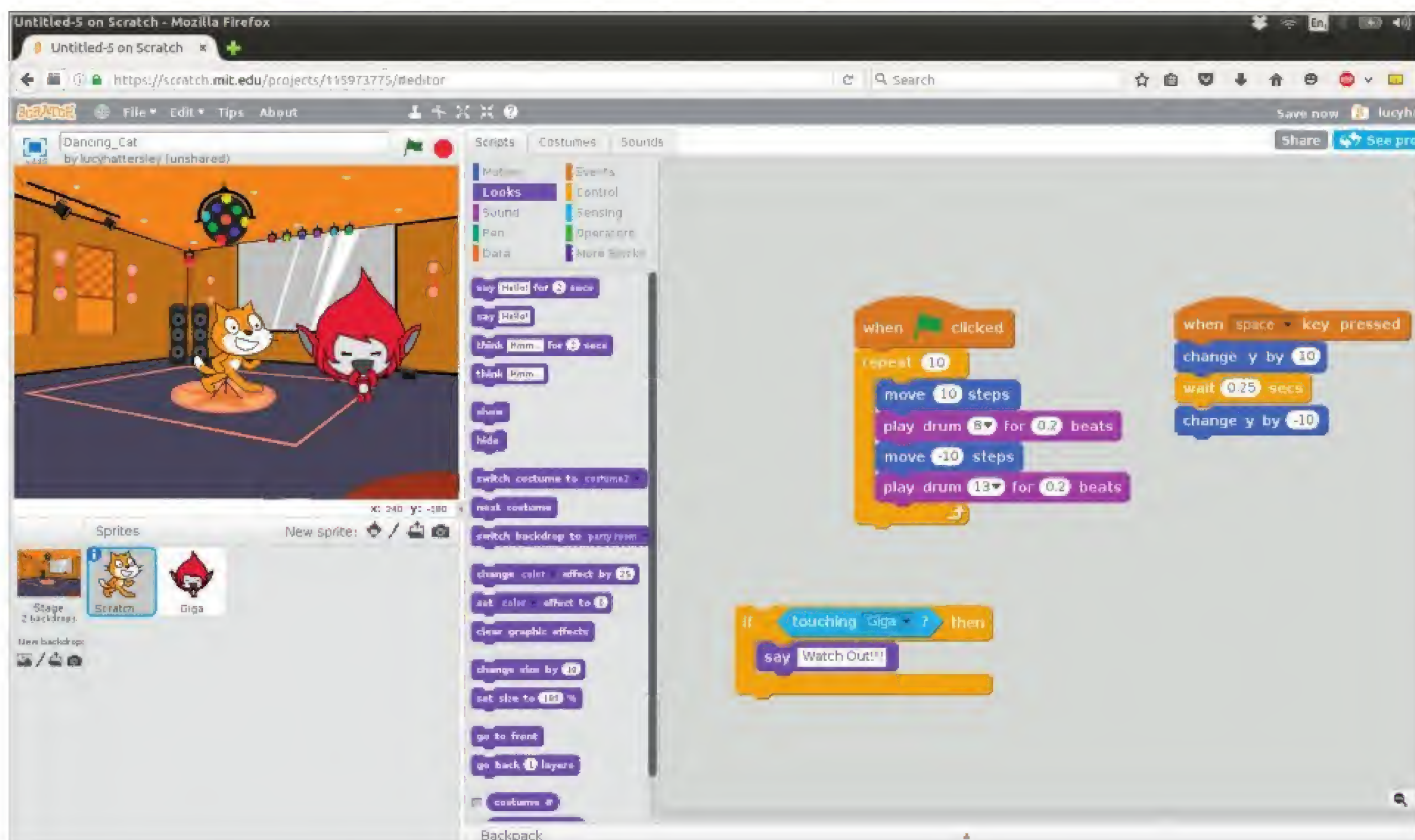
The **touching** block responds to the condition of our sprite; in this case if it's touching another sprite. However, we need to tell it which one. Click the arrow in the touching block and choose Giga from the list. There are a couple of default options, mouse pointer and edge. These are handy if you're making games.





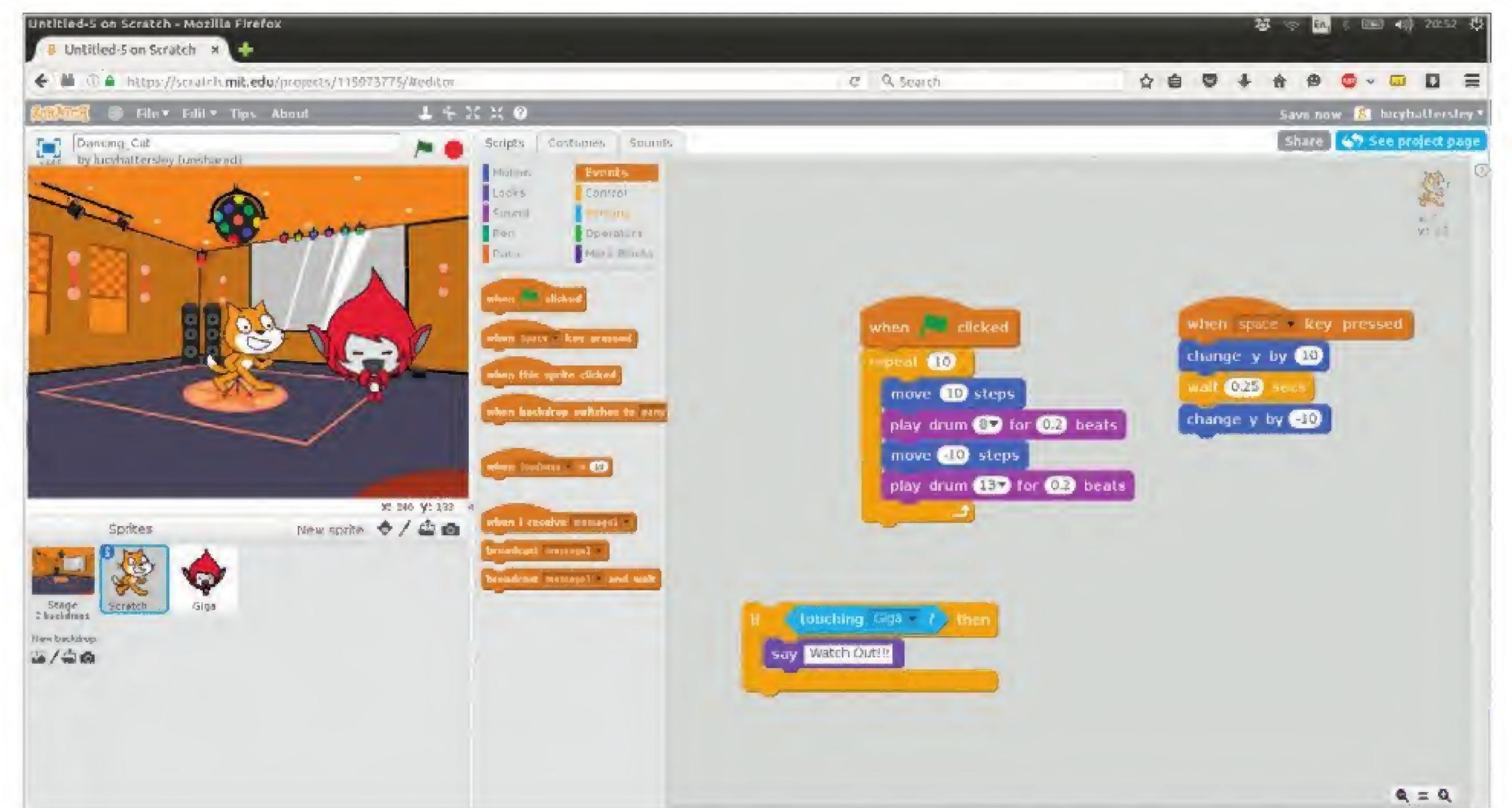
STEP 5

We've got our **if**, what we now need is a response. Click Looks and drag a **say [Hello!] for 2 secs** block and insert it inside the **if** block. Change **[Hello!]** to **[Watch Out!!!]**. Try to run the program. Nothing happens! That's because our **if** script isn't part of the **when flag clicked** script.



STEP 6

How do we get our 'if' script to run alongside the other scripts? We could put the **if** block inside **when flag clicked** but it would look big and ugly and do two different things. We could add a second **when [flag] clicked** block to the **if** block but that would only work if they were touching at the start. The answer is to use a **broadcast** block.



BROADCASTING

The broadcast block enables one script to interact with the others. It can be used to tell scripts to run and is ideal for bigger projects where each sprite does several things at once.

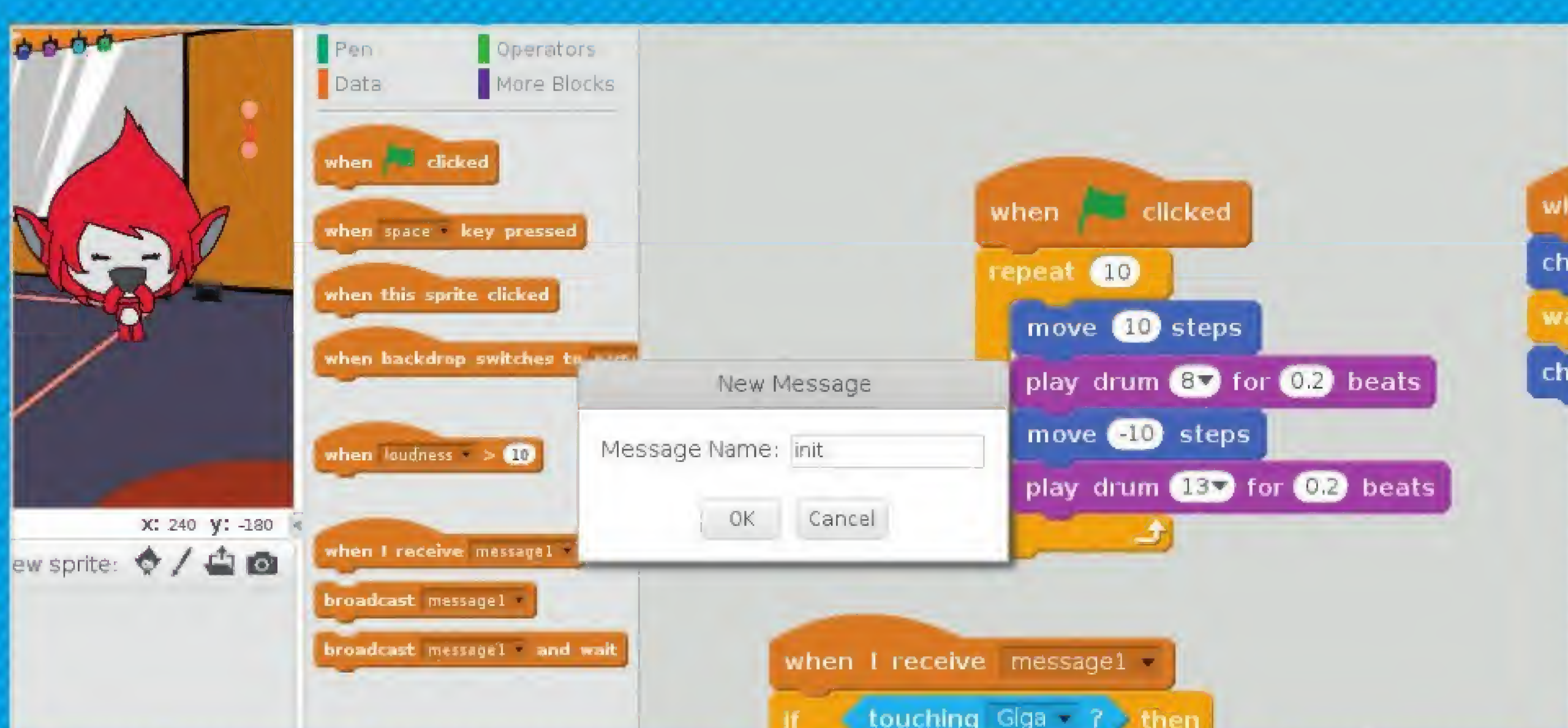
STEP 1

Click the Events tab in Scripts and look for the **when I receive** block. Drag this and connect it to the top of the **if** block. We need to set the receiver, i.e. the message it gets from the other script. Click the arrow next to receive to reveal the Message name window.



STEP 2

You can call the message anything you want but it should start with a lowercase letter and in this instance you are going to use the word "init". This stands for "initialize" and getting the lingo right now will make your life much easier when you move to a more complex language. Click OK.



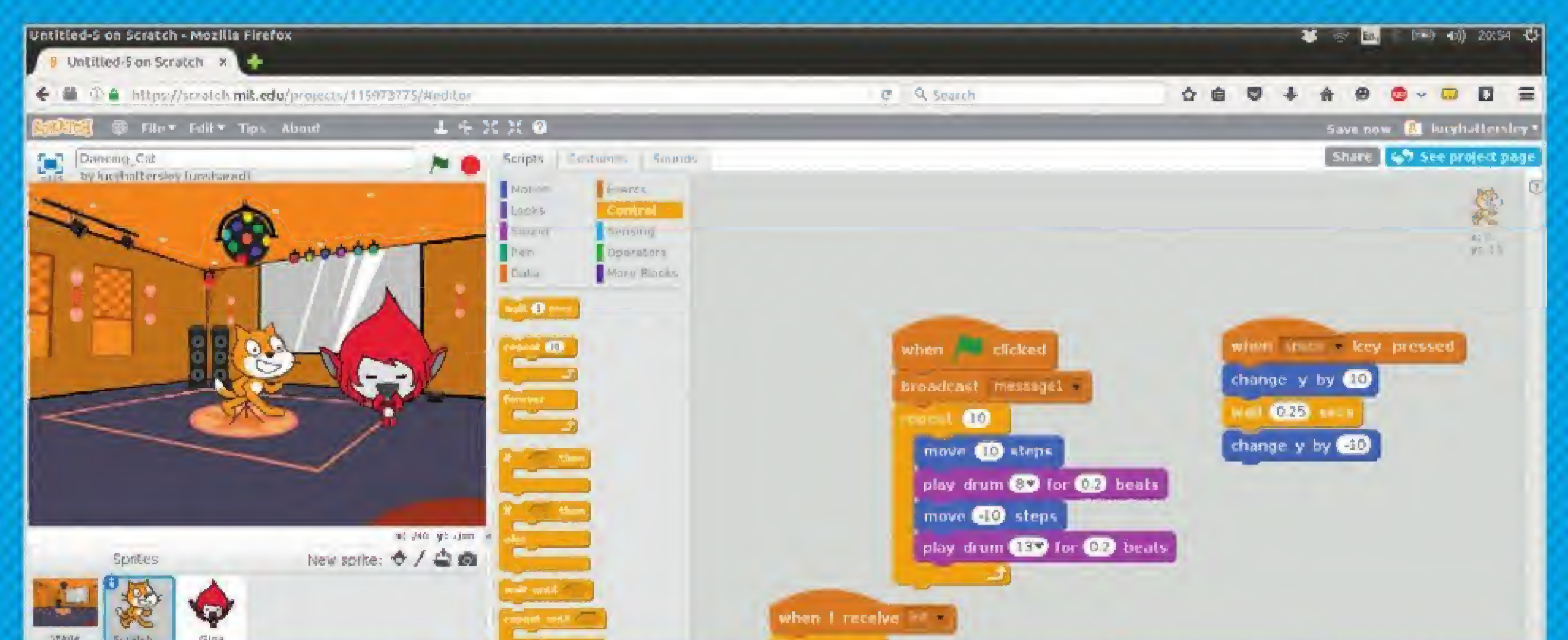
STEP 3

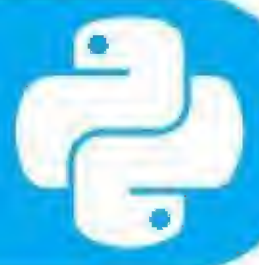
Now we need to broadcast that 'init' message from our **when [flag] clicked** script so it runs at the same time. Drag a **broadcast** block to the Script Area and insert between the **when flag clicked** block and the **repeat [10]** block. Now click the arrow in **broadcast** and choose 'init'.



STEP 4

Our program is almost ready but our **if** script only works once, when the Green Flag icon is clicked. We're going to place it inside a **Forever** block. This is okay though because it's not our main program and we are also going to add a **stop all** block to the end of our **when flag clicked** block. Click the Green Flag to see your program run.





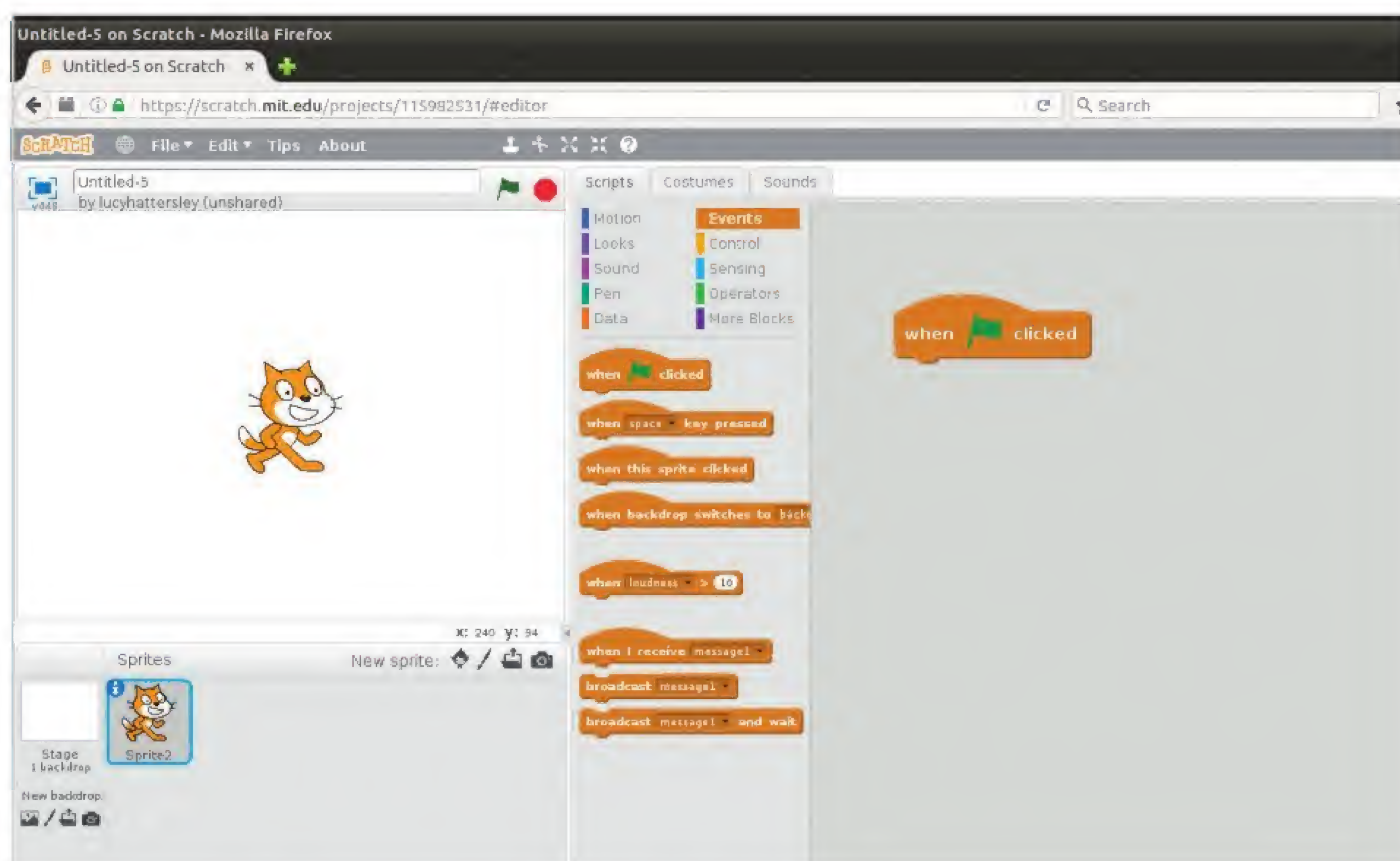
Objects and Local Variables

You've already met variables but Scratch makes them easy to understand. What isn't so obvious in Python is how variables are stored locally to objects. This is where Scratch helps. You're going to create a dice game to help understand this.

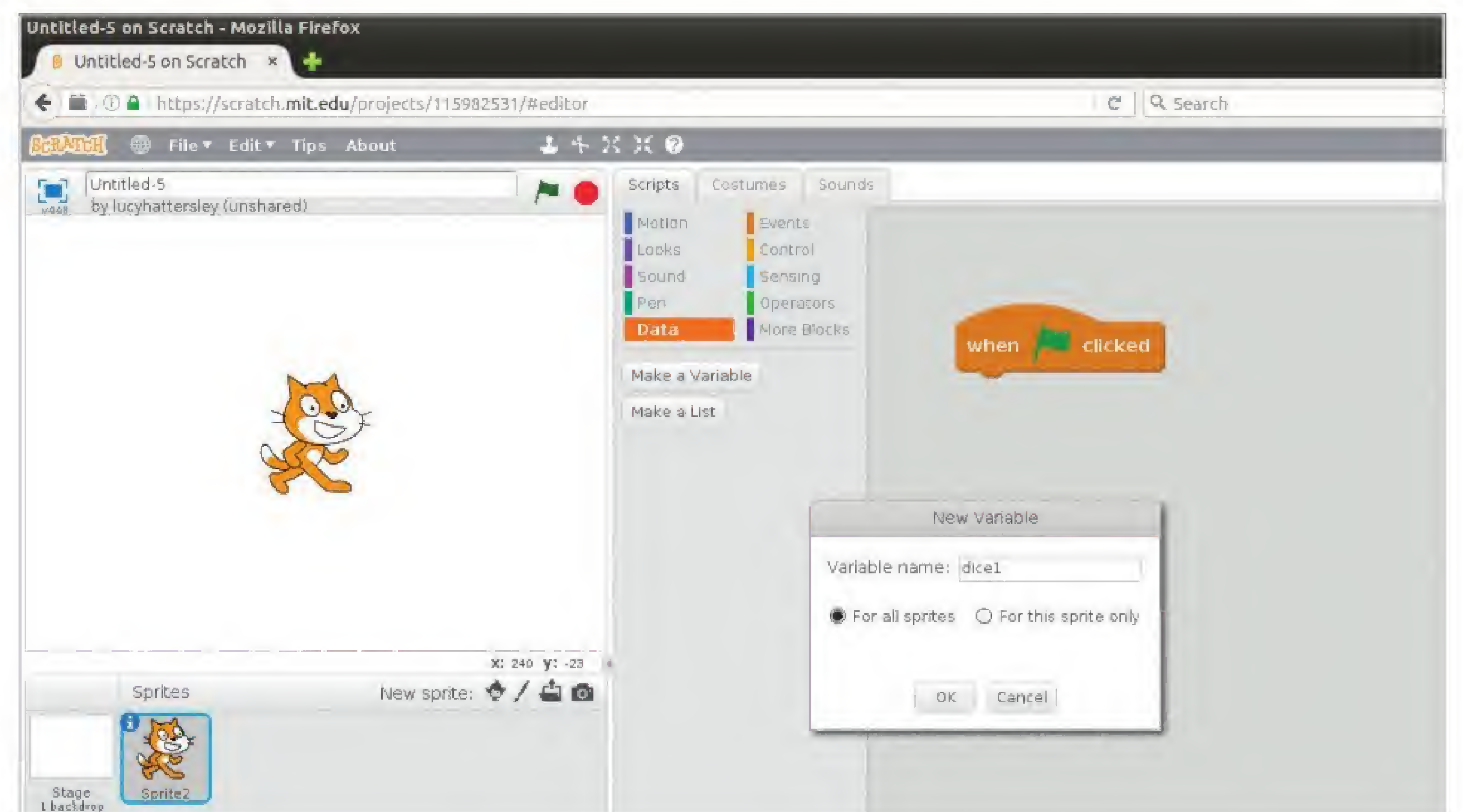
ARE YOU LOCAL OR GLOBAL?

Objects, like your Scratch Cat sprite, can have their own variables. This could be the player score or the amount of ammunition left. These are stored inside the object and are known as "local". Variables used by all objects are known as 'global'.

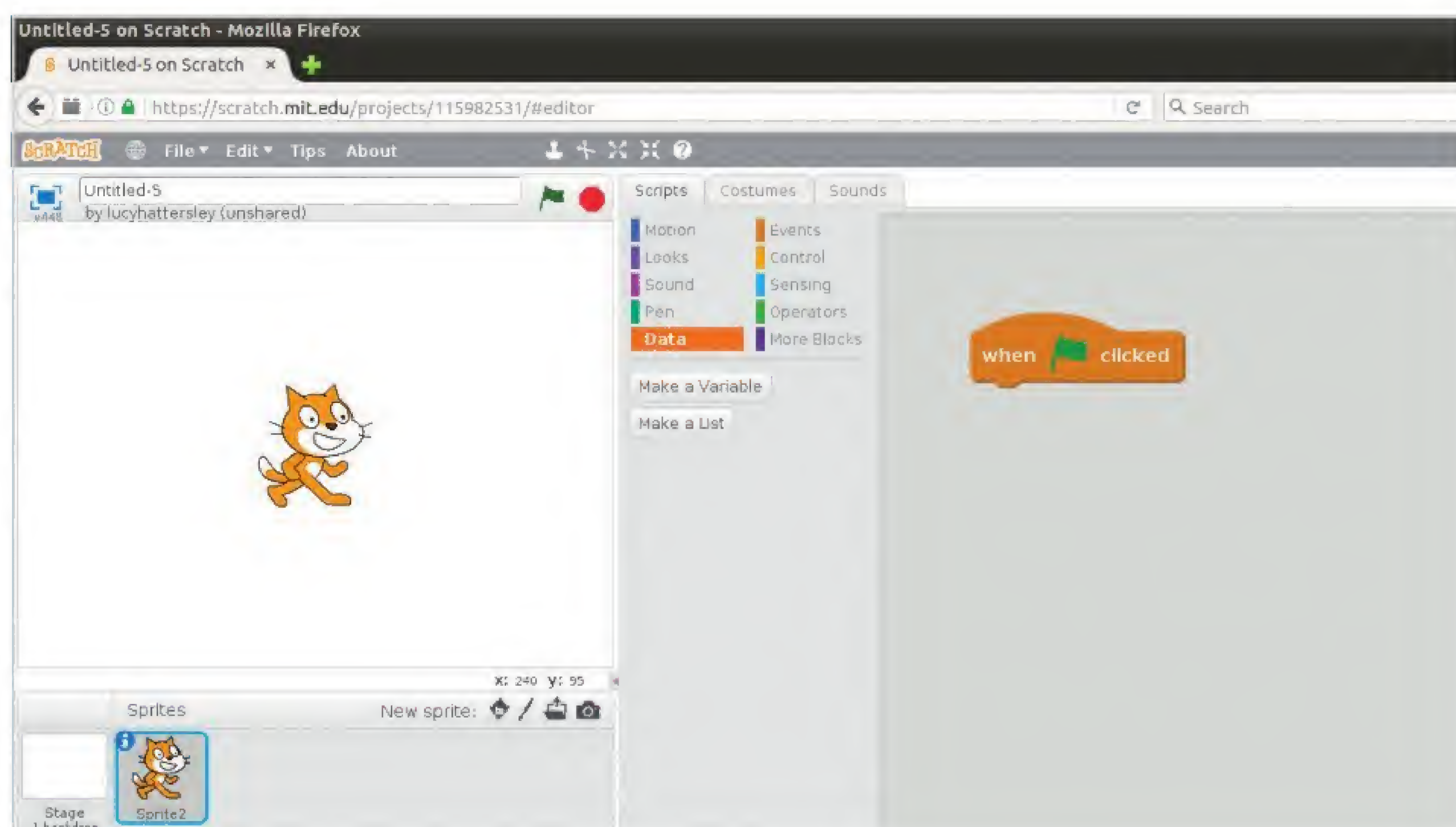
STEP 1 You're going to leave the disco behind. Choose File > New. You start with a blank stage containing a single Scratch Cat sprite. Click Control and drag a **when flag clicked** block to the Script Area.



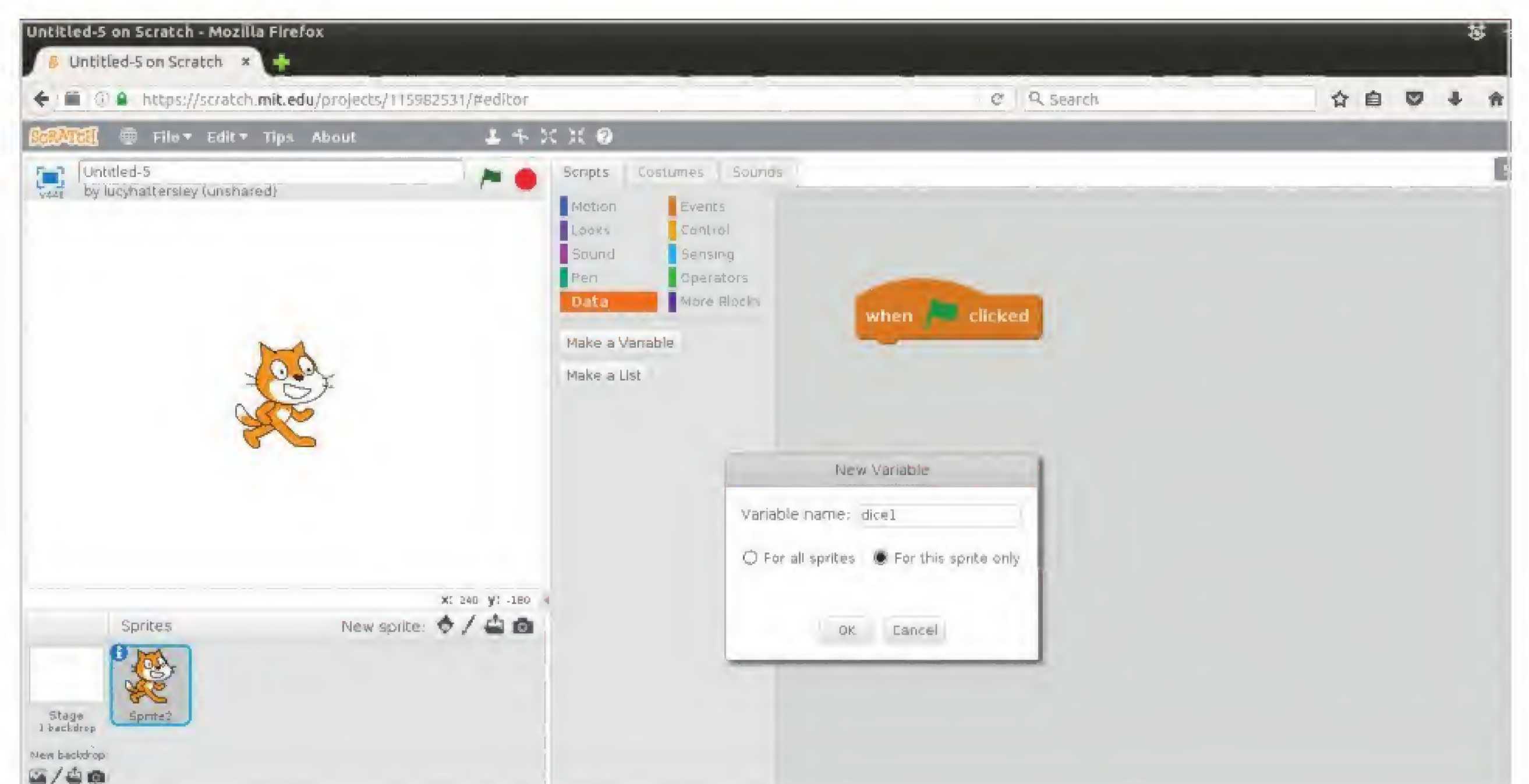
STEP 3 Click Make a variable and enter **dice1** into the ? window making sure that your variable starts with a lowercase letter. There are two options here: **For all sprites** and **For this sprite only**. **For all sprites** allows every sprite to use the dice; this is known as a global variable.

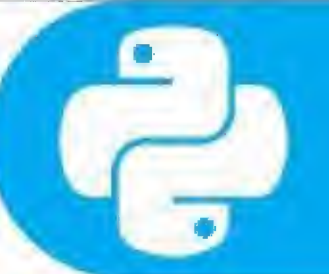


STEP 2 You're going to create a simple game where Scratch Cat rolls two dice and wins if they're both the same number. Click Data. Unlike other sections there are no blocks here; instead we have to create the variables we need. We need two, one for each dice.



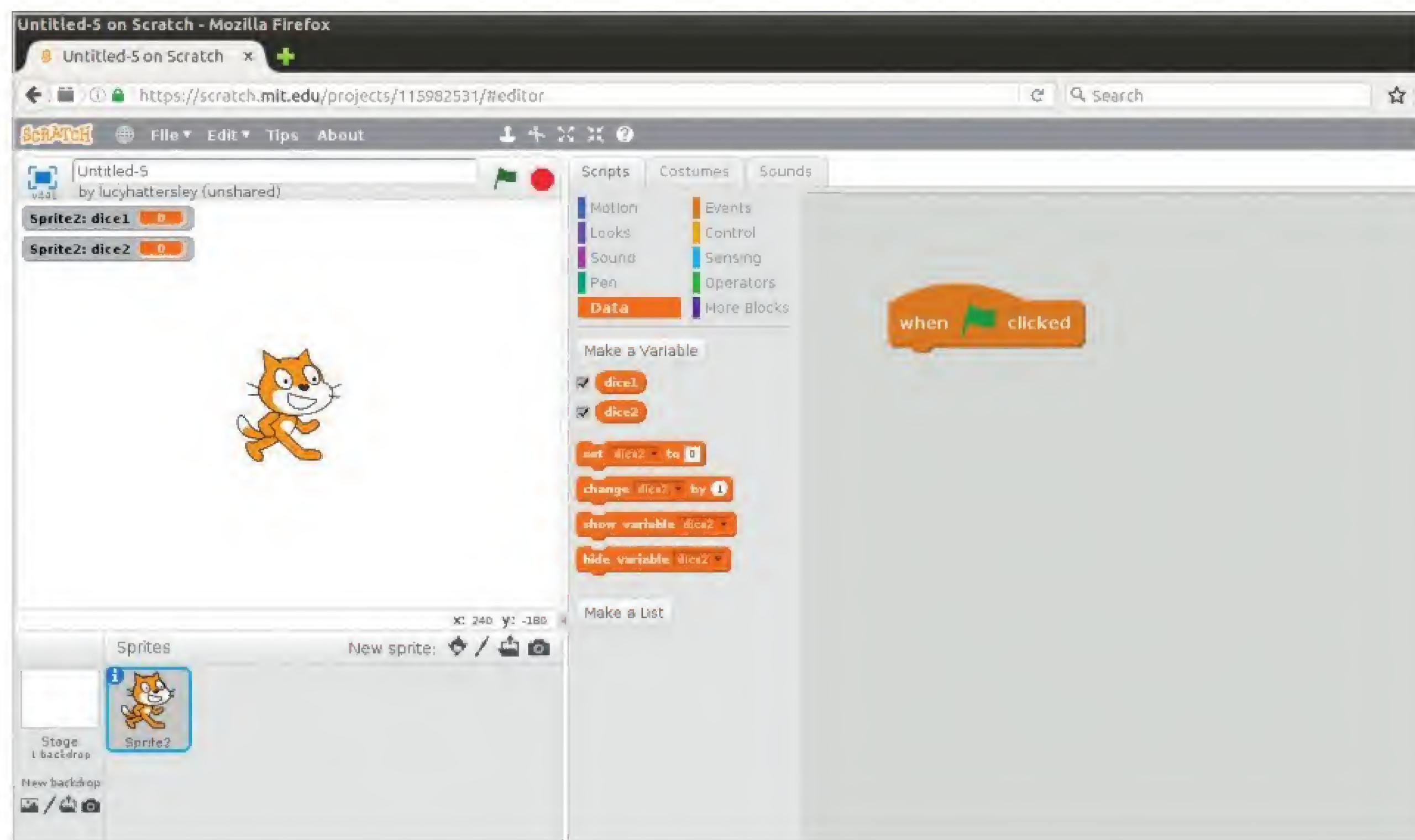
STEP 4 **For this sprite only** means that only this sprite can use the two dice variables. this is known as a local variable. This is useful if you want to create another character with their own set of dice and play against each other. We're doing that in the next tutorial, so choose **For this sprite only** and click OK.





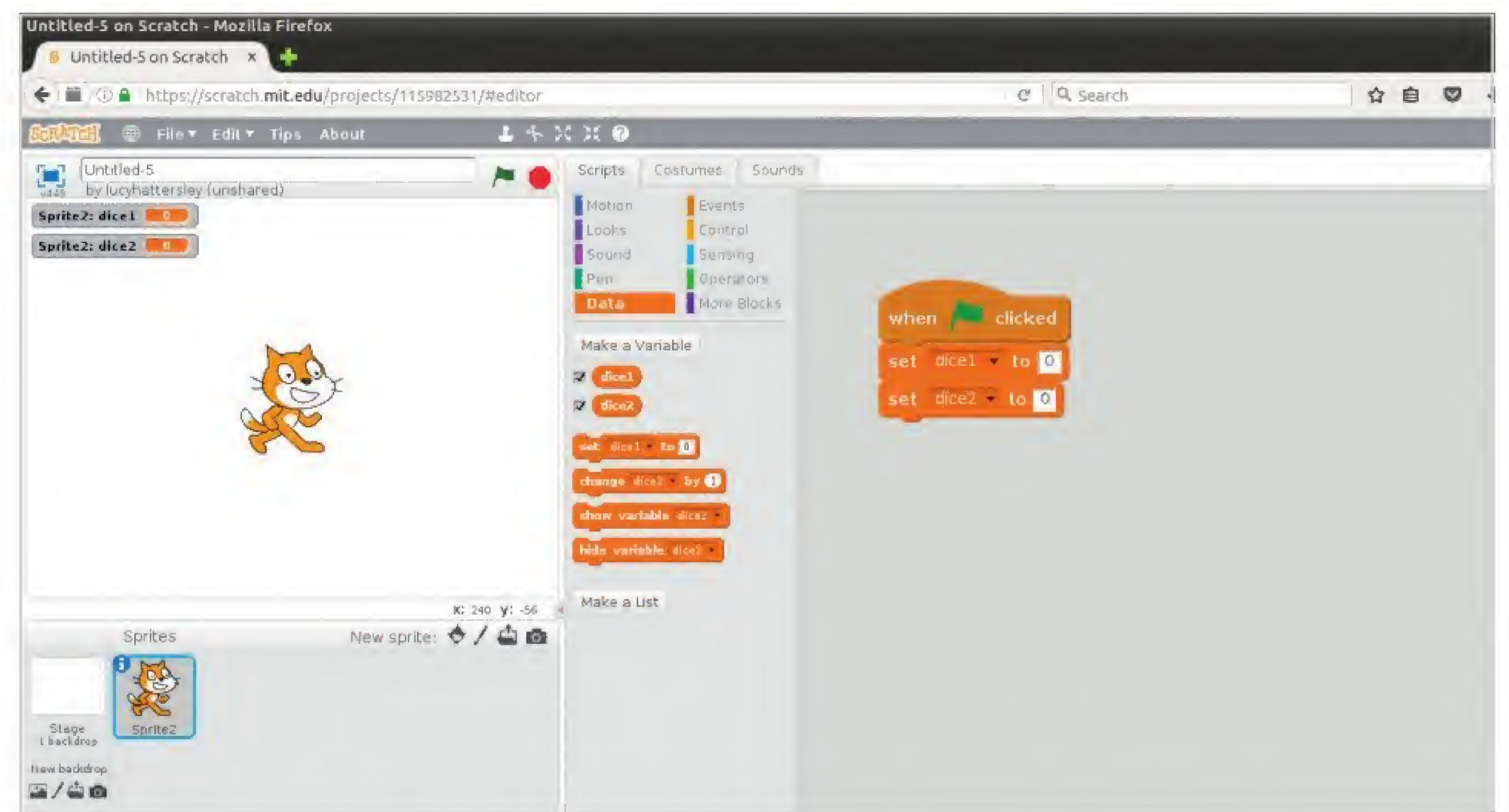
STEP 5

A whole bunch of blocks appears in the Block Palette. We can now use our dice1 variable but we want two dice, so click **Make a variable** again and this time enter **dice2**. Remember to choose **For this sprite only** and click OK.



STEP 6

Both the dice1 and dice2 variables are currently empty. They could be anything we wanted, but we want them to be a random number between 1 and 6. Drag the **set [dice1] to [0]** block and click it underneath the **when flag clicked** block. Drag another **set [dice1] to [0]** block underneath and change the **[dice1]** setting to **[dice2]**.

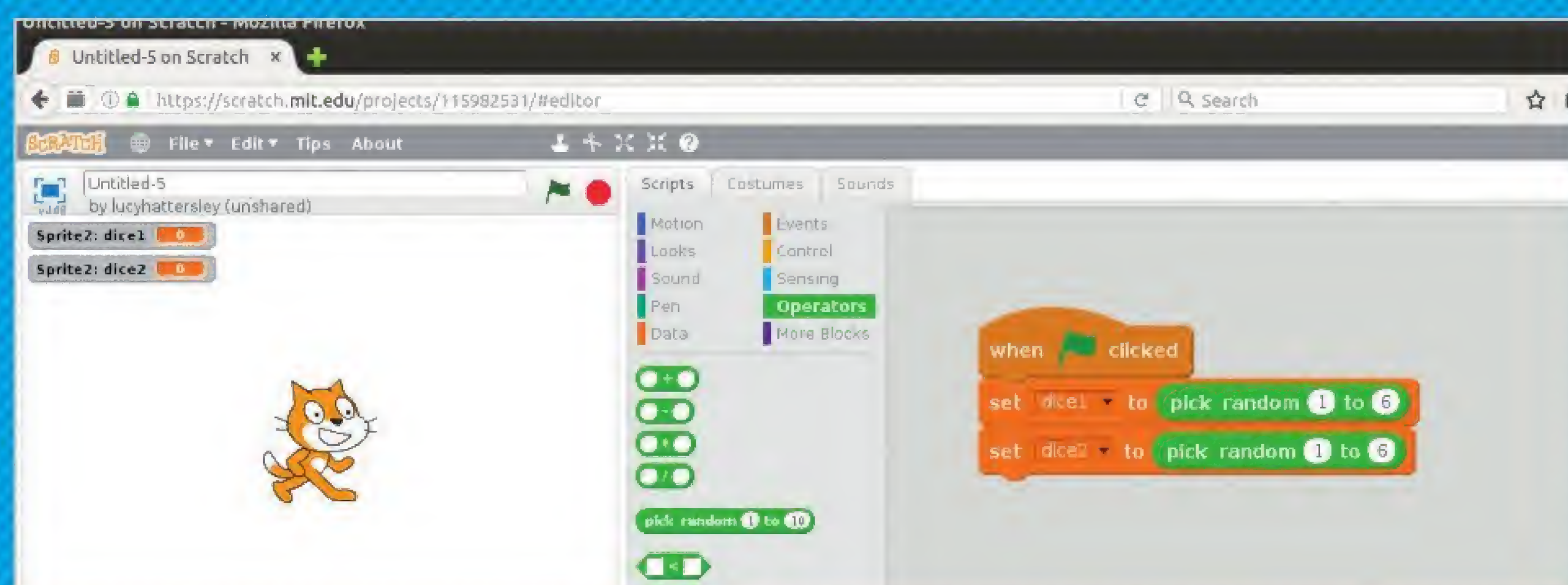


SMOOTH OPERATORS

Operators are used to change the values of variables. Some of these will be familiar; you've used the addition operator '+' to add two numbers together. Programs can also check if numbers are equal, bigger or smaller than each other or even not equal.

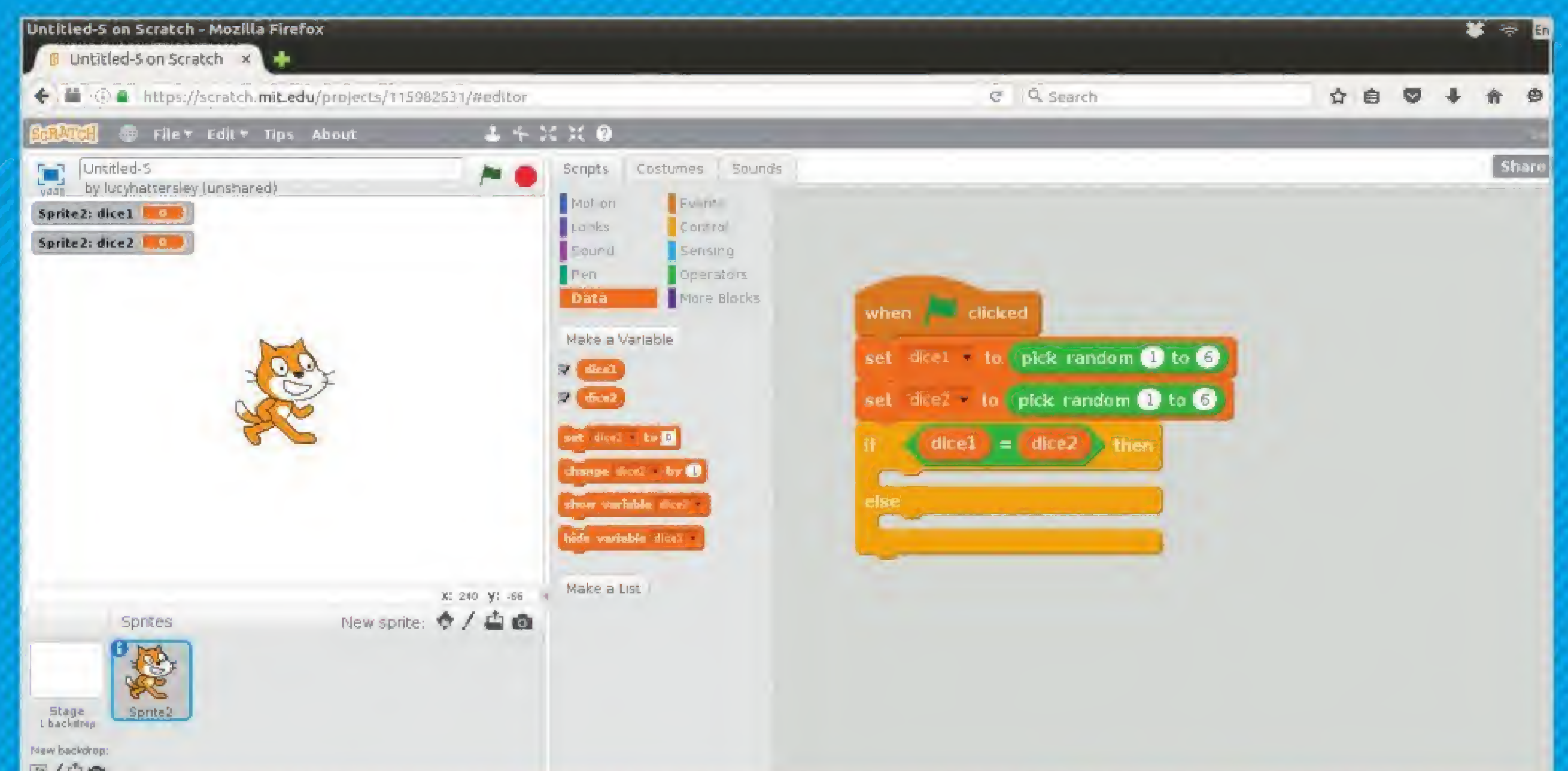
STEP 1

Click the Operator tab and drag a **pick random 1 to 10** block and drop it into the **[0]** in **set dice1 to [0]**. Change the **[10]** to a **[6]** so it reads **set dice1 to pick random [1] to [6]**. When we click the Green Flag it will pick a number between 1 and 6 and store it in the dice1 variable. Add a **pick random [1] to [10]** block to dice 2 and also set it to **[6]**.



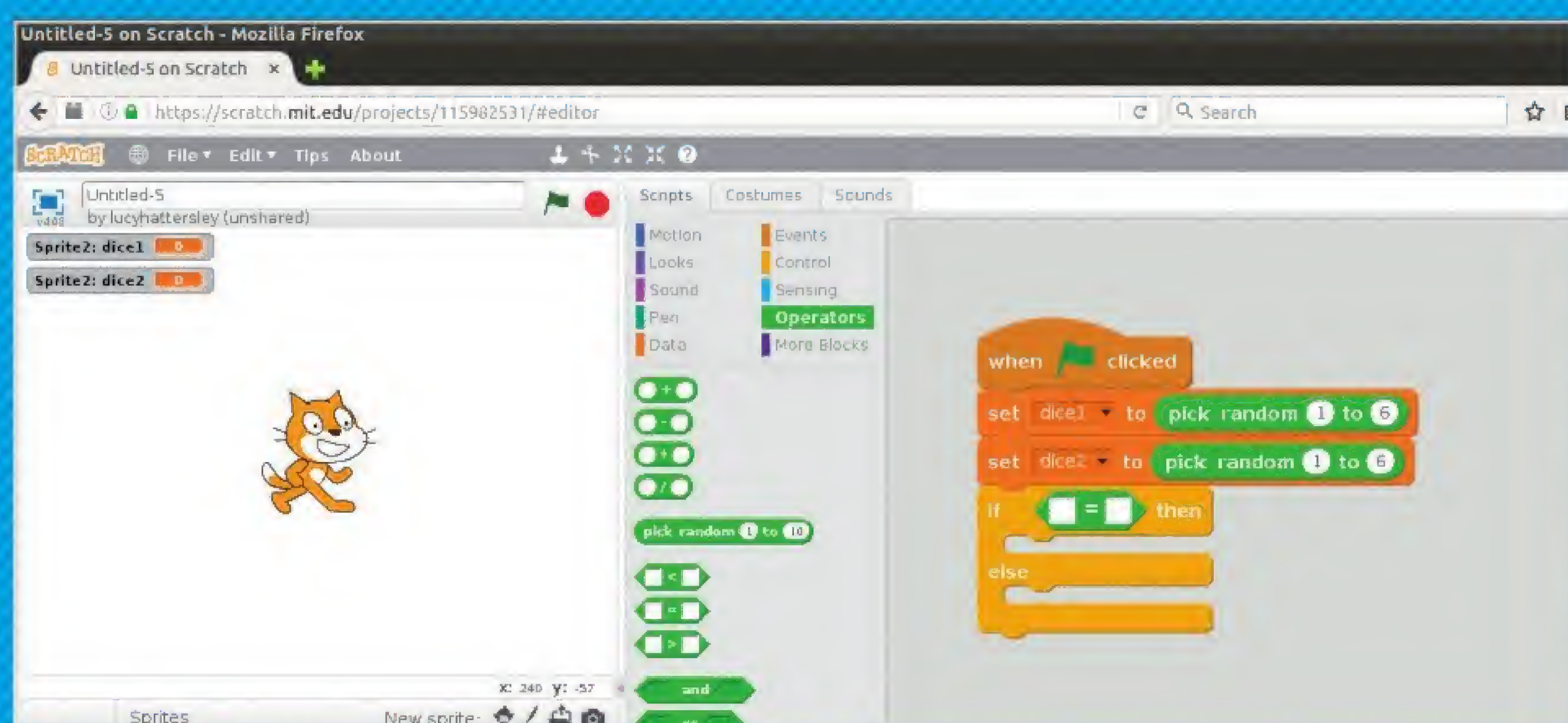
STEP 3

The **=** operator checks if two things are the same but we need to tell it to check our variables. Click Data and drag **dice1** to the space on the left of the **=** block. Drag **dice2** to the space on the right of the **=** block.



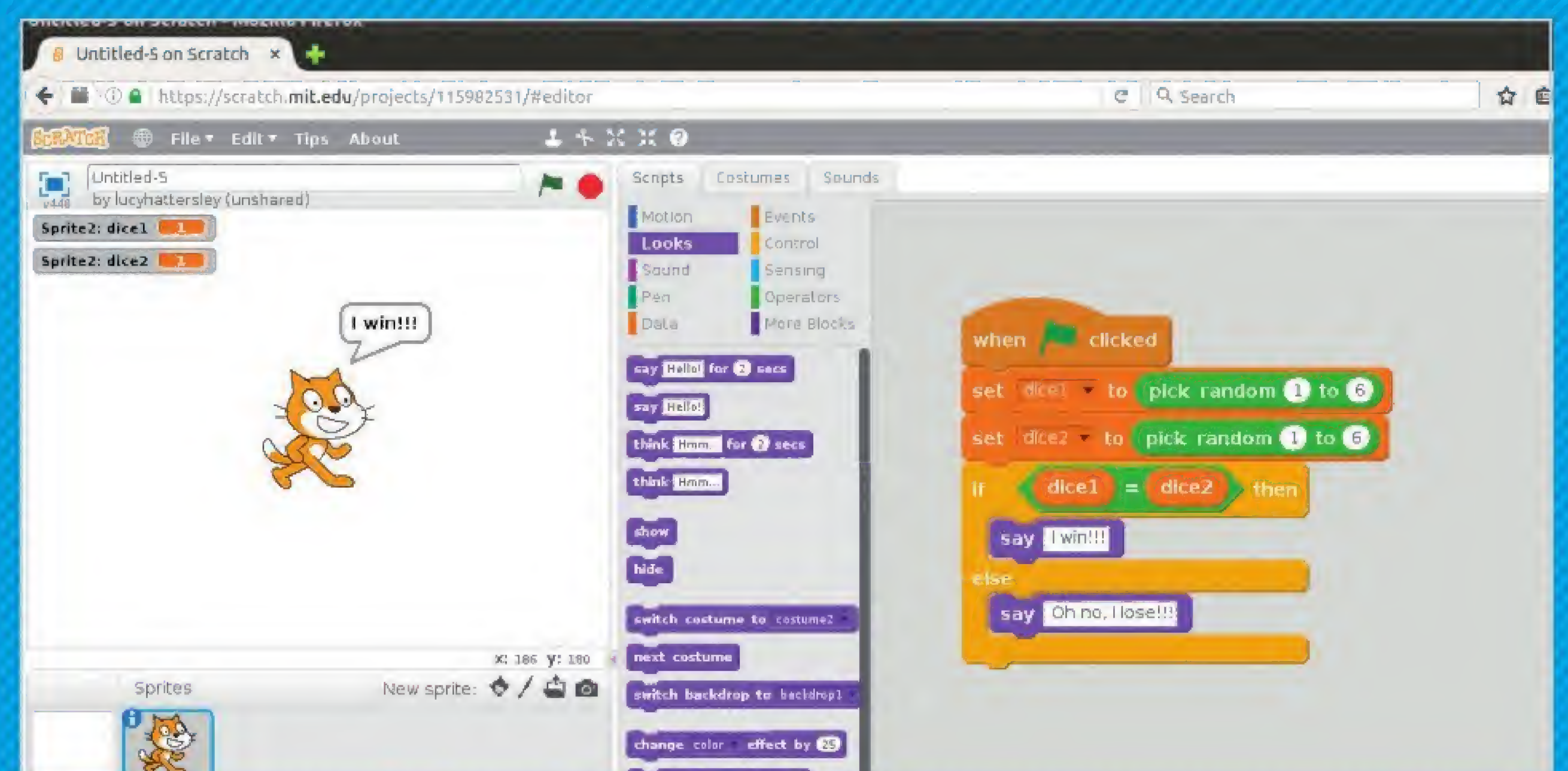
STEP 2

We need to check the two dice. Click the Control tab and drag the **if else** block to the script. This block is like the **if** block we used before but it says, "if this happens, do this; if not, do this instead." Now click operators and look for the **=** block. Drag it into the space next to **if**.



STEP 4

Finally click the Looks tab and drag **say [Hello!]** blocks into the **if** and **else** spaces. Change the **say [Hello!]** text in **if** to **[I win!!!]** and in **else** to **[Oh no. I lose!]**. Click the Green Flag to play the game.





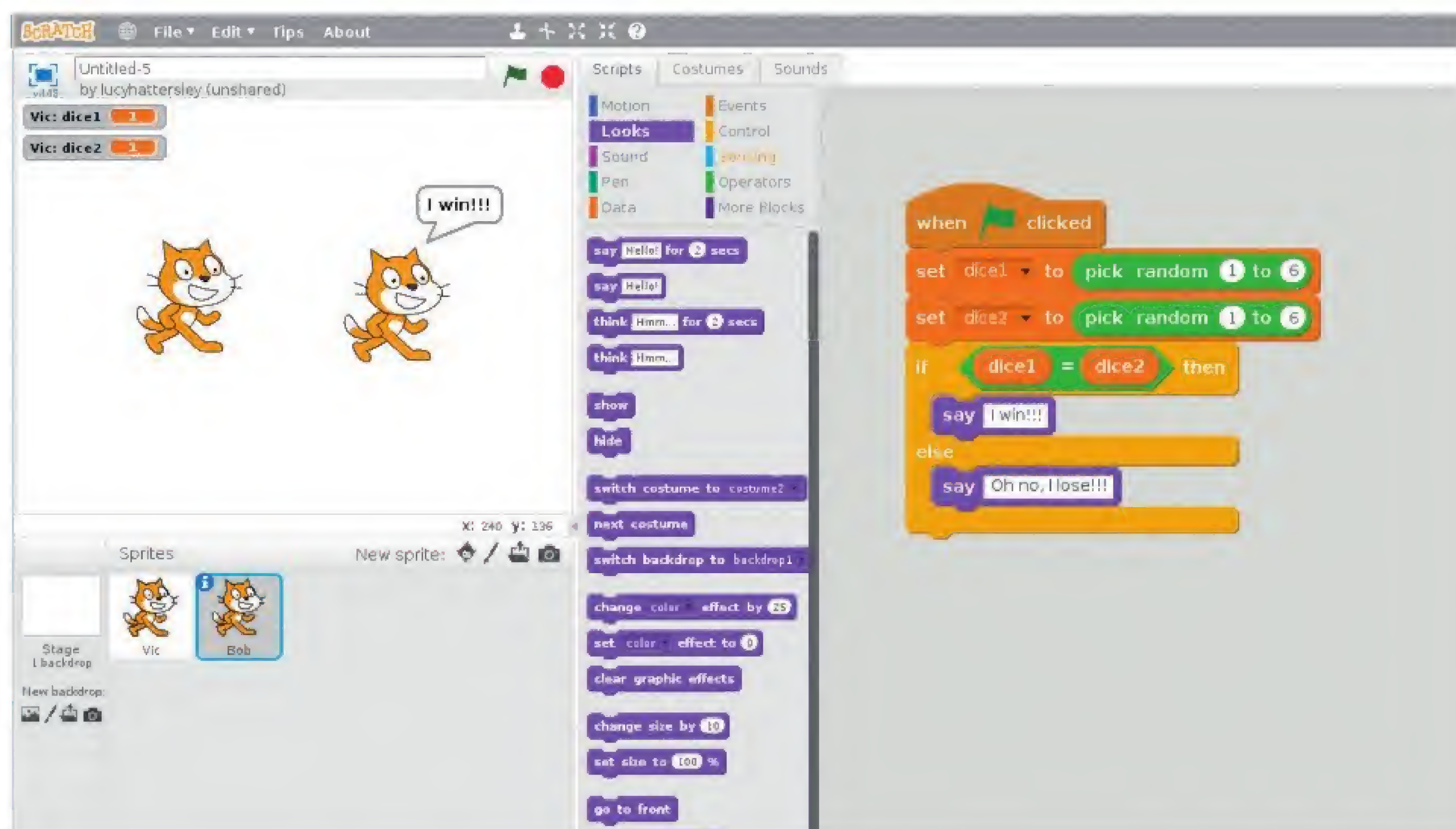
Global Variables and a Dice Game

We're going to create a game where two sprites play dice with each other and the sprite with the highest score wins. This lets us examine the idea of more than one object, each with its own set of local variables.

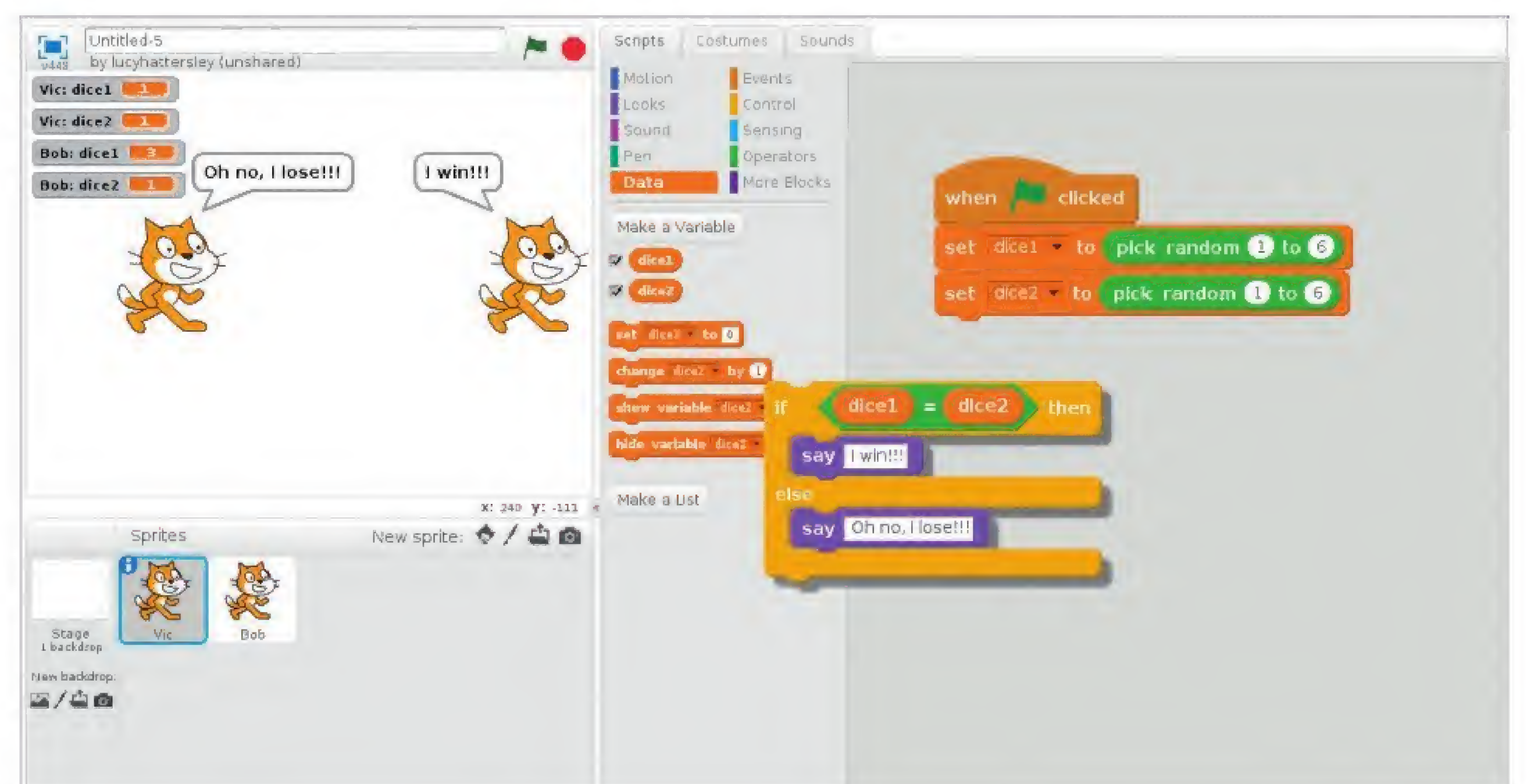
DOUBLE TROUBLE

We're going to start with the dice game from the previous tutorial, but create a second character. The fancy OOP word for this is "instantiation": creating an instance of something – in this case another instance of Scratch Cat.

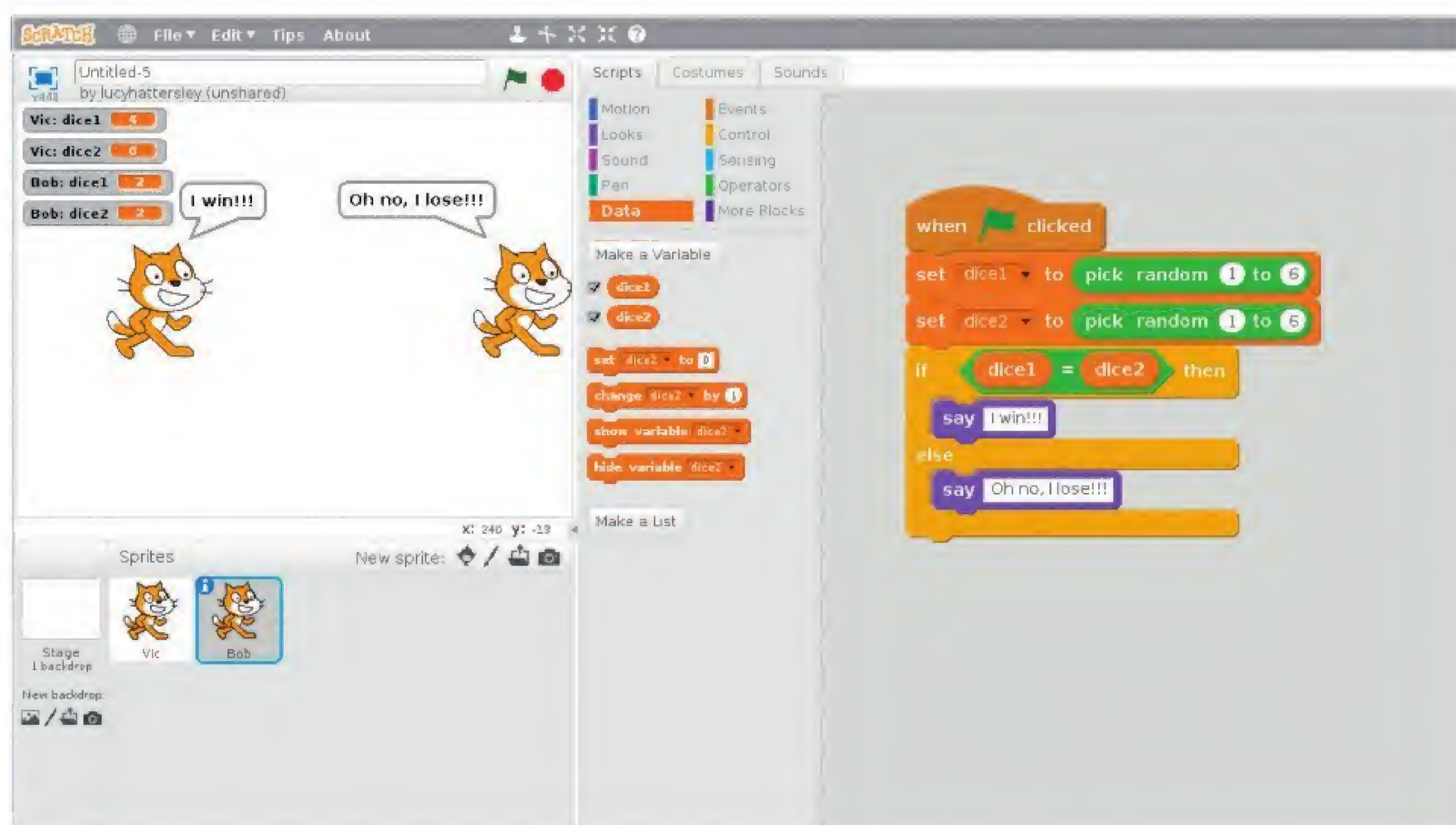
STEP 1 Let's add a second character to the Stage. Shift click on Scratch Cat on the stage and choose Duplicate. Click OK. Rearrange the two characters on the stage so they're stood side by side. Use the Sprite Info Window to give them names: "Vic" and "Bob".



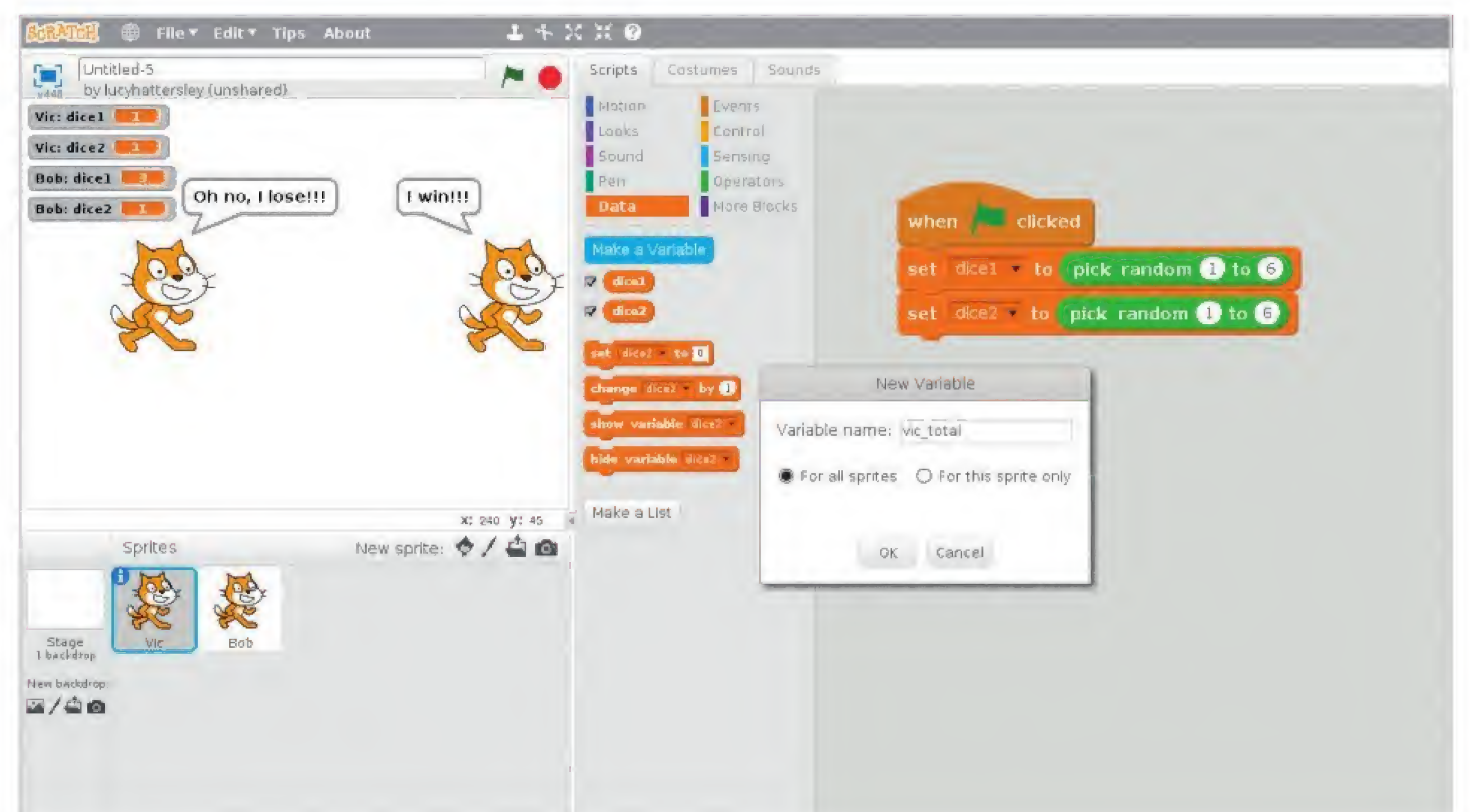
STEP 3 You can check this out by clicking the Green Flag icon. Vic and Bob will both roll dice1 and dice2 but each gets its own random result (shown in the Stage). We're going to change the game to one where the two dice are added together (highest score wins). Disconnect the If block from the script and drag it to the Block Palette.

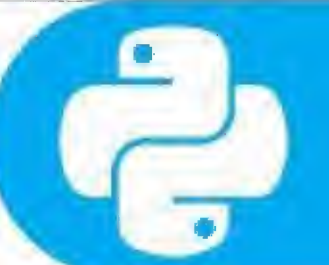


STEP 2 Select Bob and click Data in the Script Palette and you'll see dice1 and dice2. Bob received his own set of dice when we duplicated him but he doesn't share dice1 and dice2 with Vic. Place checks in the boxes next to dice1 and dice2 so you can see them on the Stage.



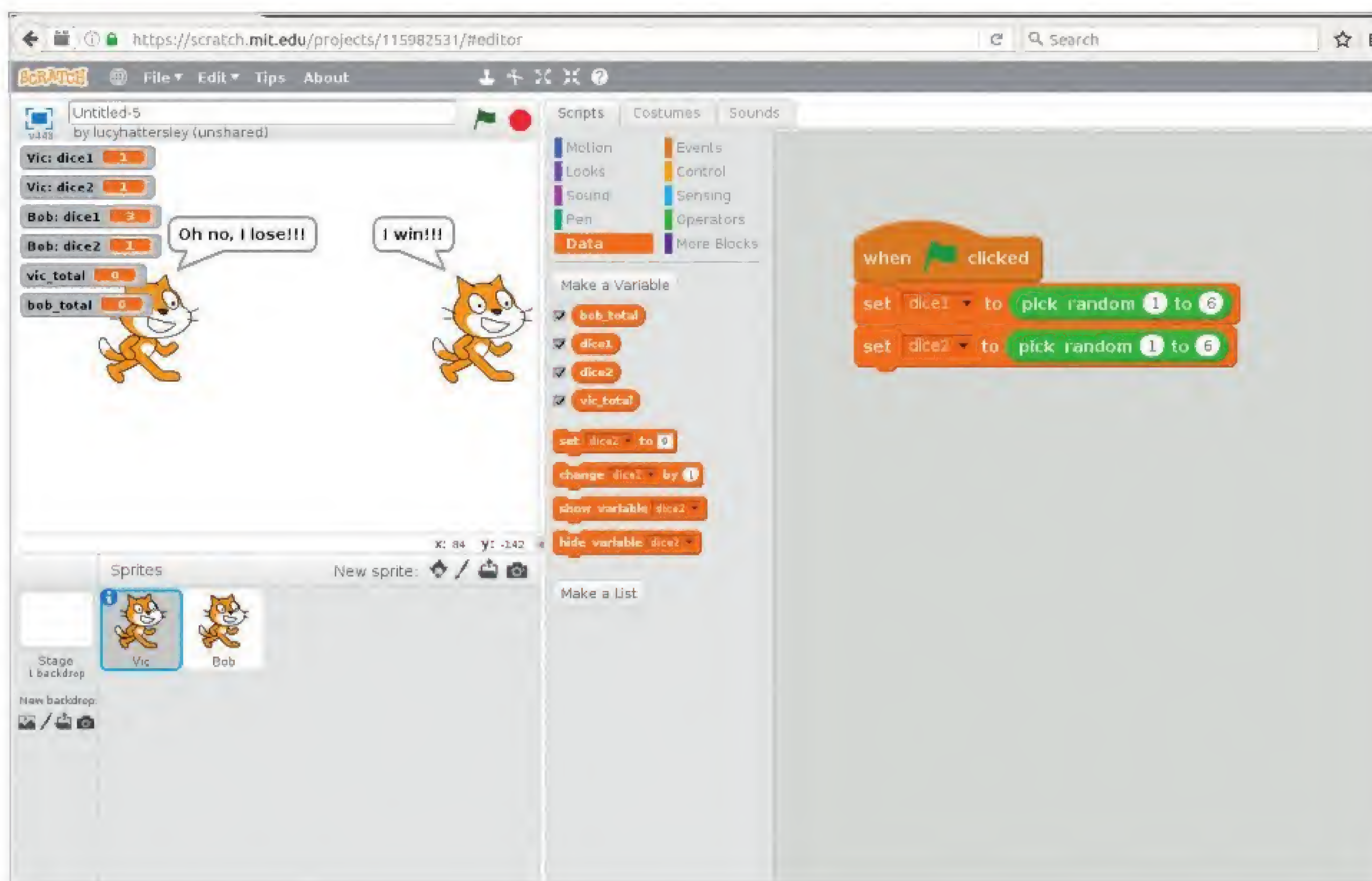
STEP 4 We need two new variables: one for Vic's total, and one for Bob's. Click **Make a variable** and enter **vic_total**. This time choose **For all sprites** then click OK. With Vic still selected, click **Make a variable** again and enter **bob_total**. Click OK.





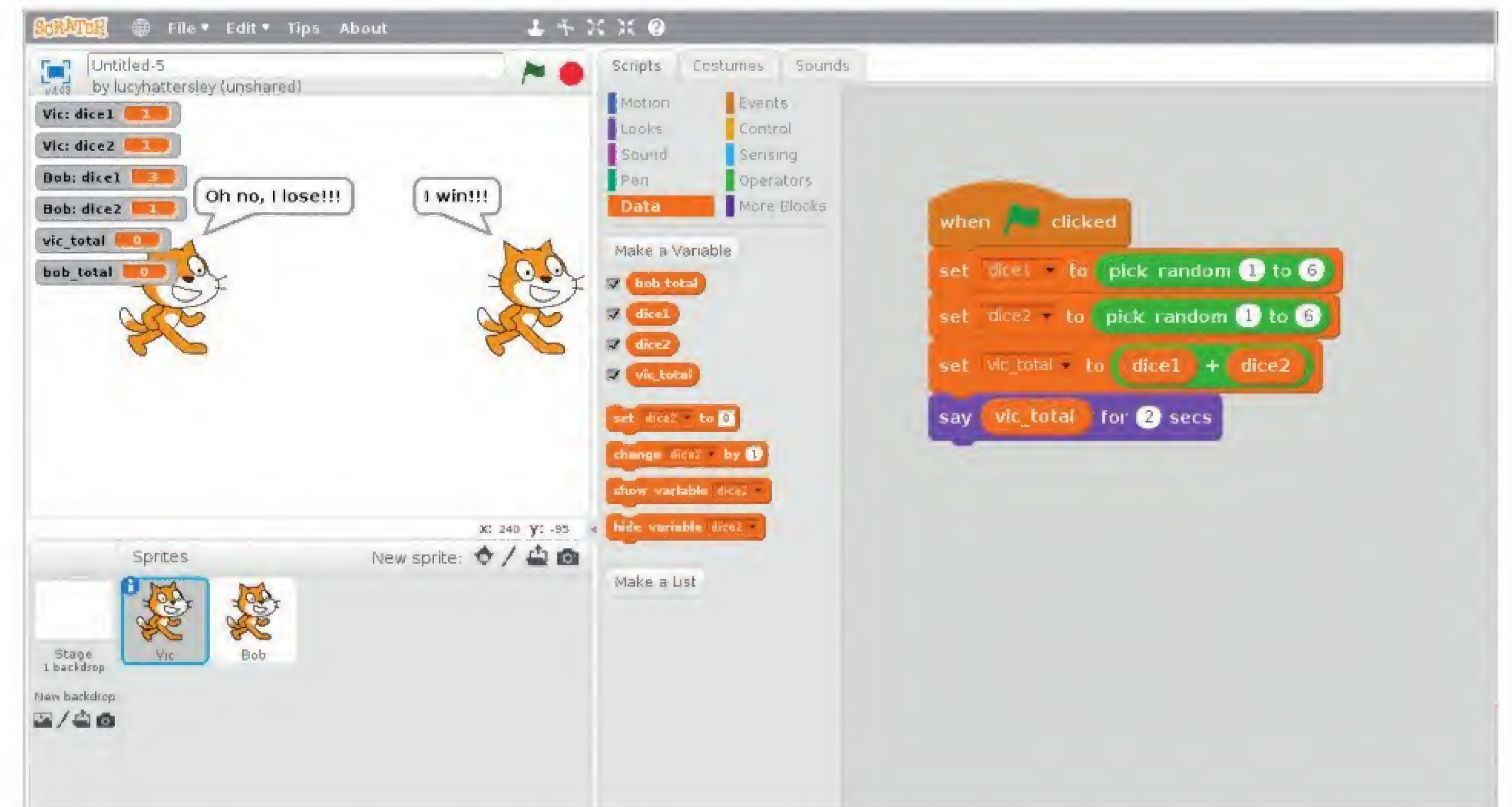
STEP 5

Imagine both characters writing their totals on a blackboard that they share, but each has its own pair of dice. The totals are global and shared across both characters; the dice are local to each object.



STEP 6

Drag `set [dice2] to [0]` from the block palette and connect it to the script. Change `dice2` to `vic_total`. Now click Operators and drag the `+` block to the `[0]`. Click Data and drag `dice1` to the left side of the `+` block and `dice2` to the right side. This adds up the `dice1` and `dice2` variables, and stores the combined value in `vic_total`.



GREATER THAN

The sprite with the highest score is going to win our game. This is decided using the greater than symbol `>`. This sits between two numbers, i.e. $3 > 2$ and lets you know if the number on the left is bigger than the one on the right.

STEP 1

Both sprites are going to announce their score and the one with the highest score will say, "I win!". Click Looks and drag `say [hello] for 2 secs`. Now click Data and drag `vic_total` to replace `[hello]`. The first part of the game is ready, we're going to use an `if` block with an `>` operator for the next part of the game.



STEP 3

Bob needs to run the same script, only with `bob_total` in place of `cat_total`. We could write Bob with the same code but the point of objects is that you can stamp out copies. Shift-click Bob and choose Delete. Now Shift-click Vic and choose Duplicate. Click the Info icon and rename Vic2 as Bob.



STEP 2

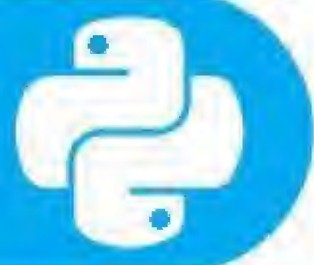
Click Control and drag an `if` block to the script. Now click Operators and drag the `>` operator to the slot in the `if` block. Click Variables and drag `vic_total` to the left of the `>` block and `bob_total` to the right. Finally click Looks and drag a `say [hello!] for 2 secs` block inside the `if` block and change the text to `[I win!]`.



STEP 4

You need to change Bob's variables. Change `set vic_total to set bob_total` and `say vic_total to say bob_total`. Finally swap around the `vic_total` and `bob_total` in the `if` block. Now click the Green Flag icon to play the game. Vic and Bob role their dice, and the winner is announced.





Classes and Objects

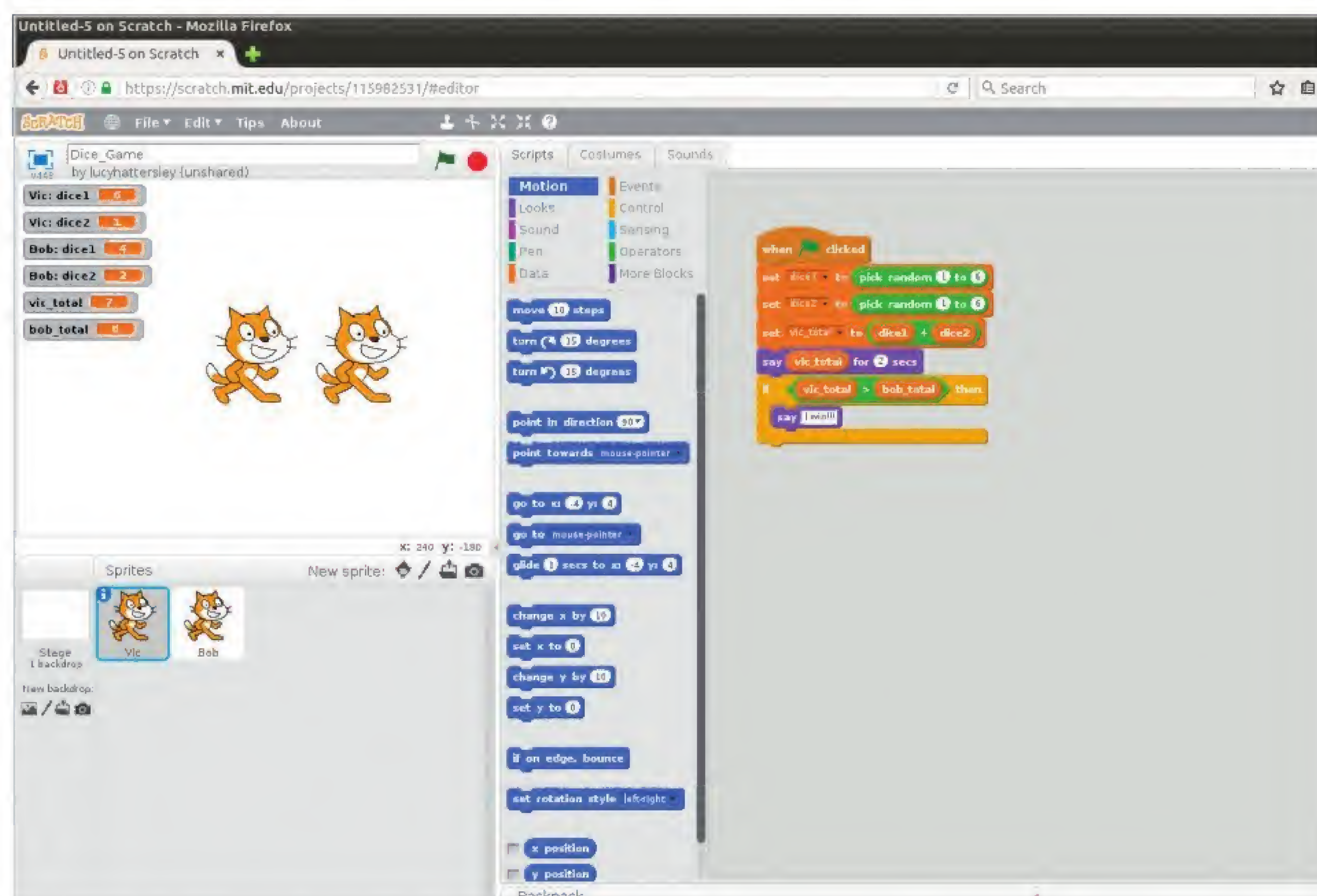
Modern coding uses a style called Object Orientated Programming, or OOP for short. In OOP you group together variables and functions into small blocks of code called objects. These objects then make up your program.

SCRATCH THAT

OOP can be hard to explain, but makes sense when you start using it. If you've used Scratch then you already have an idea of what an object looks like, it looks like a sprite. This is why we detoured into Scratch. It's great for learning OOP.

STEP 1

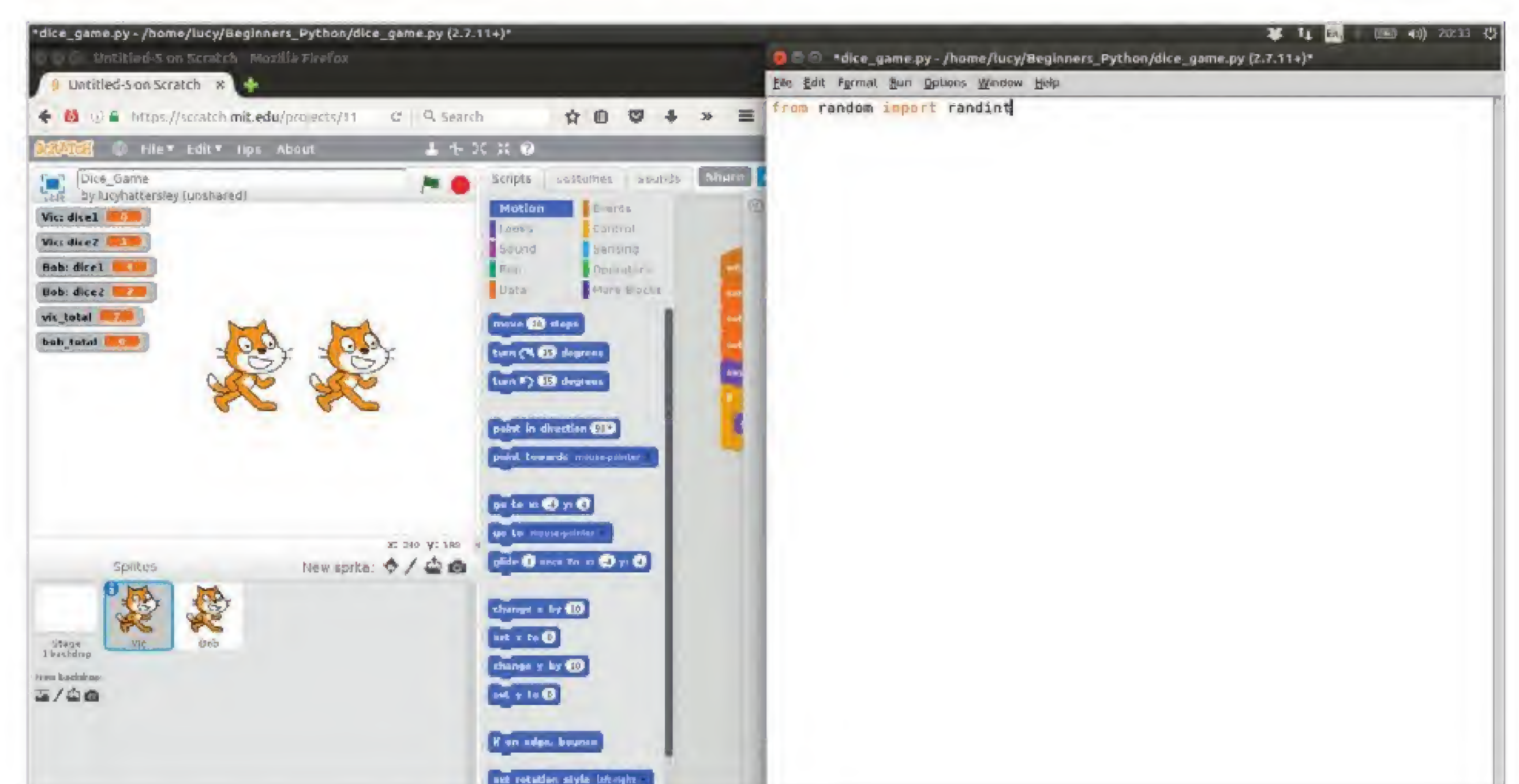
In this tutorial we're going to open the dice_game program that we created earlier in Scratch. Resize the window and place Scratch on the left-hand side of the screen. Next we're going to recreate this game in Python using objects, so you can see how objects are similar to Scratch sprites.



STEP 3

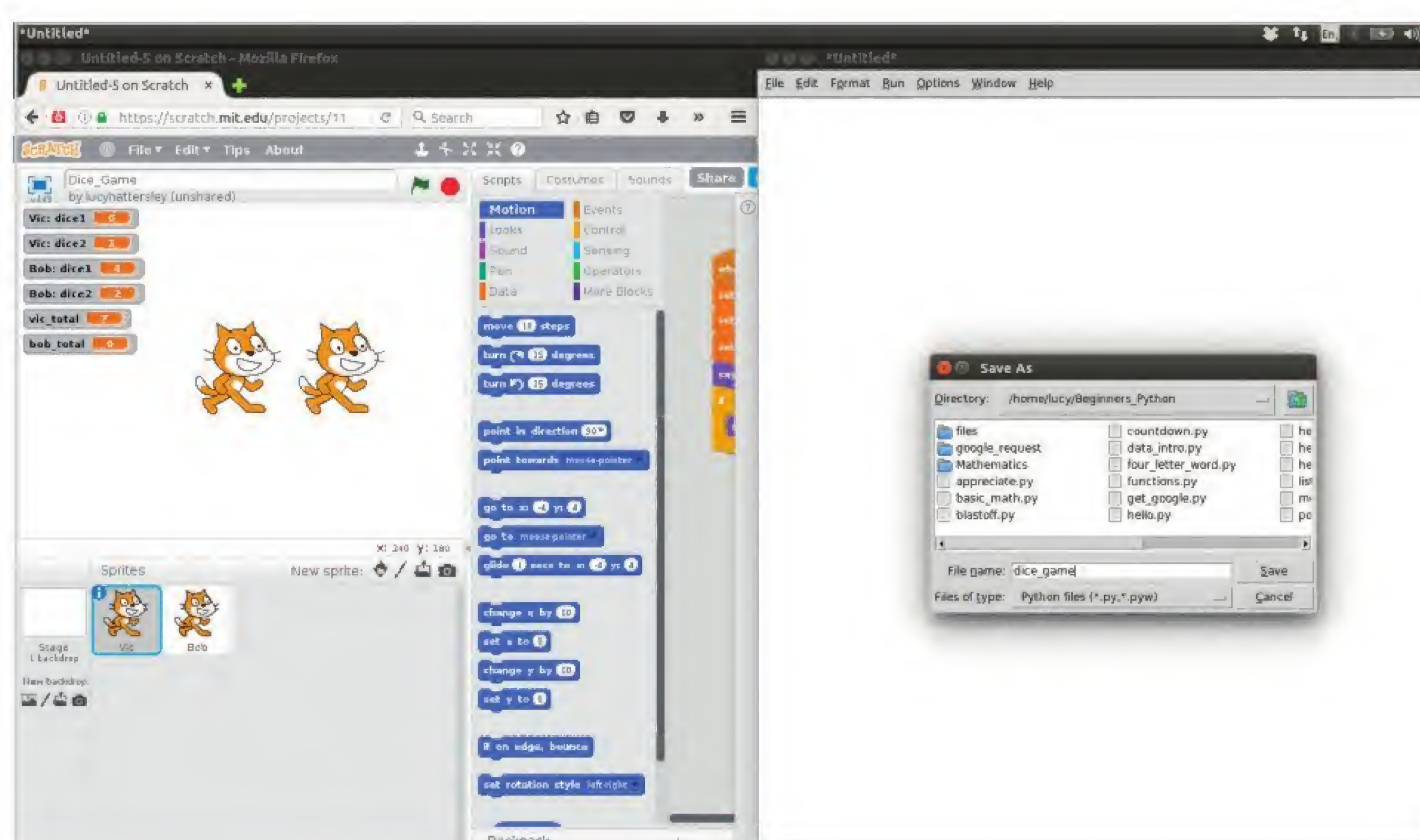
In OOP we don't design objects. Instead we design a blueprint for our object, called a "Class". Think of it like a blueprint or stamp. Vic and Bob are both dice-rolling cats, so we create a blueprint for a dice-rolling animal. We then stamp out two identical objects from that blueprint. One called "Vic" the other called "Bob". We're going to need the random number module, so enter this line:

```
from random import randint
```



STEP 2

Open Python 2 and choose File > New Window. Resize the Editor window to the right-hand size of the screen. Choose File > Save As and name it dice_game. Now let's have a look at the objects in Scratch. We have two: Vic and Bob. Each has three variables (two dice and a total); both pick random numbers between 1 and 6 and check to see if their total is bigger than the other.

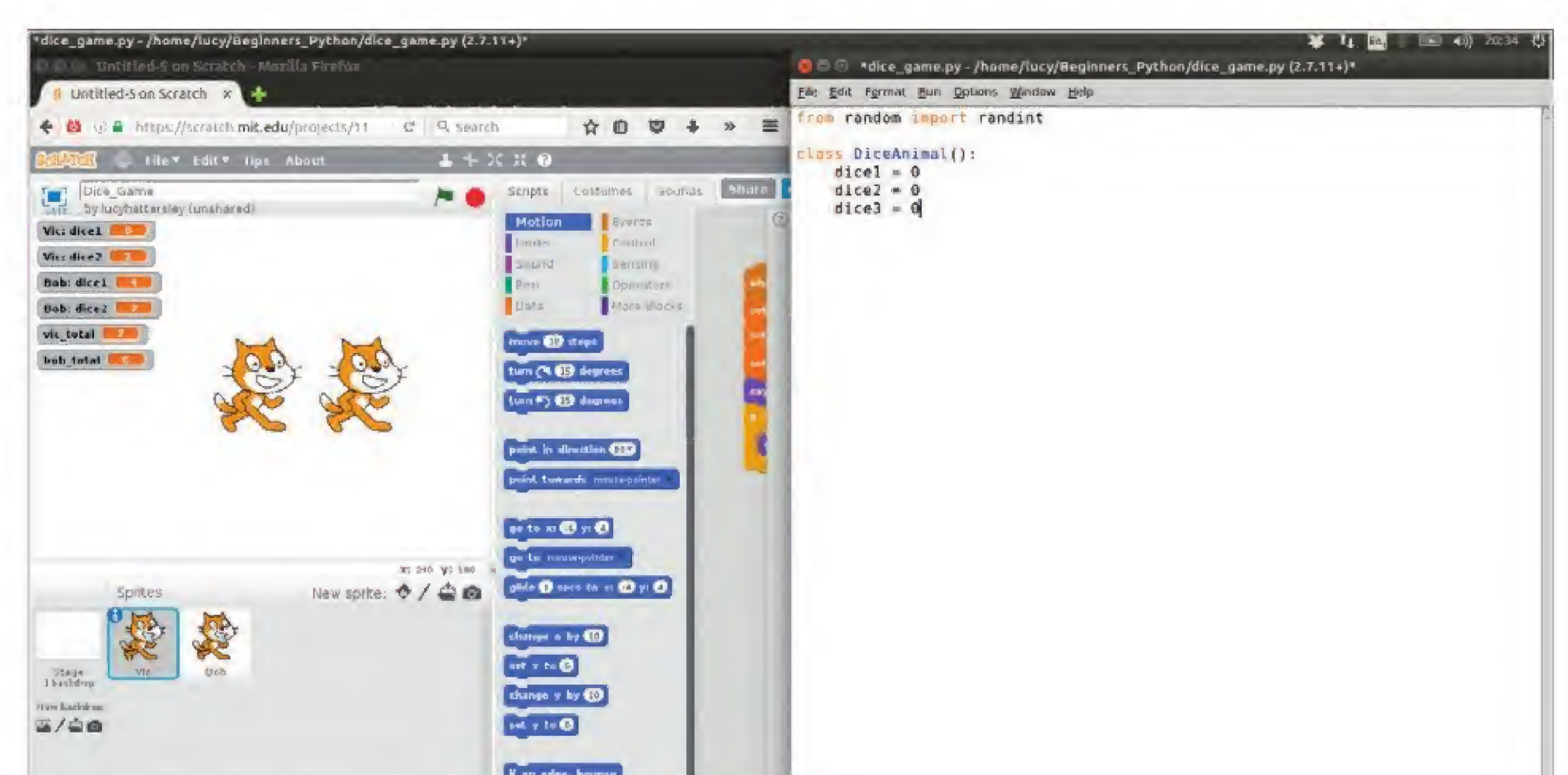


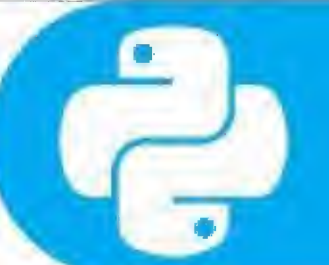
STEP 4

Now let's define our class, which we're going to call DiceAnimal. Enter:

```
class DiceAnimal():  
    dice1 = 0  
    dice2 = 0  
    total = 0
```

Notice the funny capitalisation of DiceAnimal. This is known as CamelCase and class definitions should be named in this fashion.

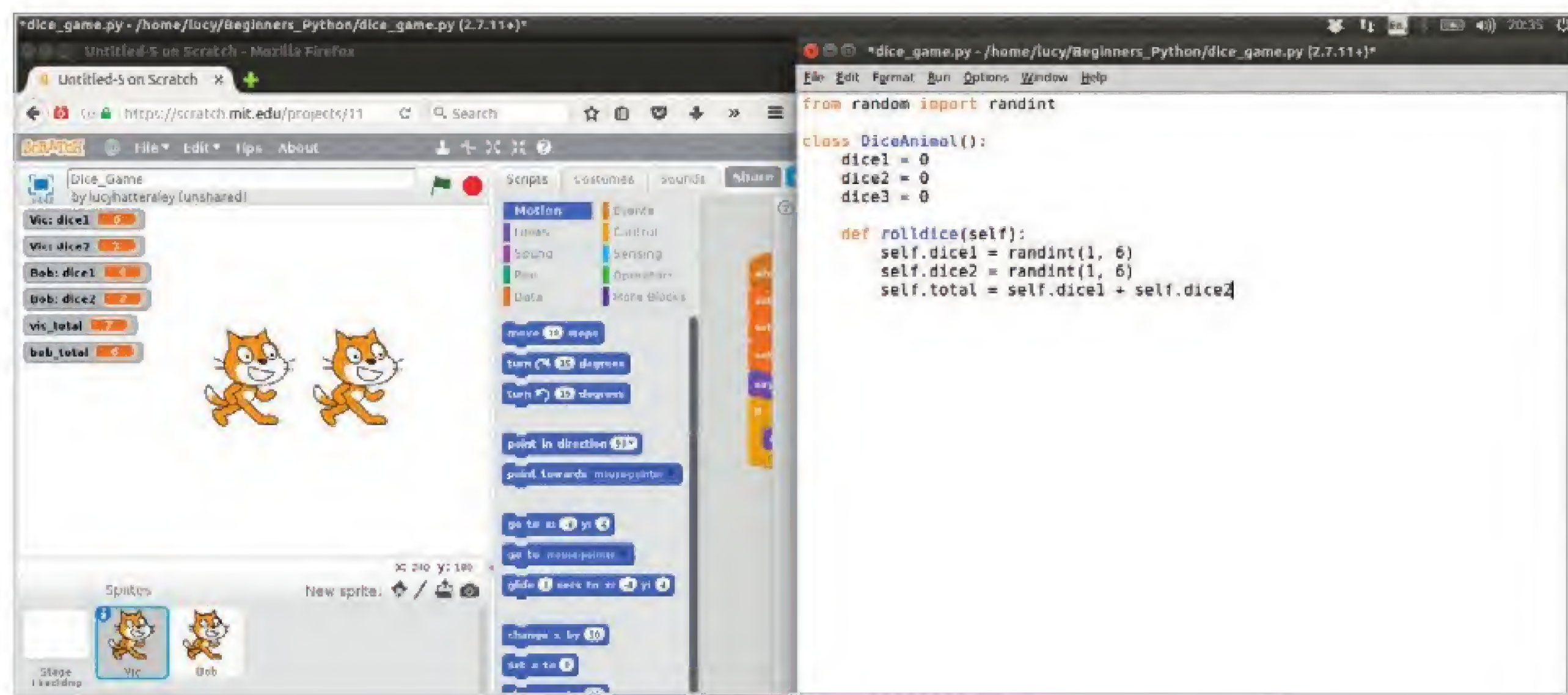




STEP 5

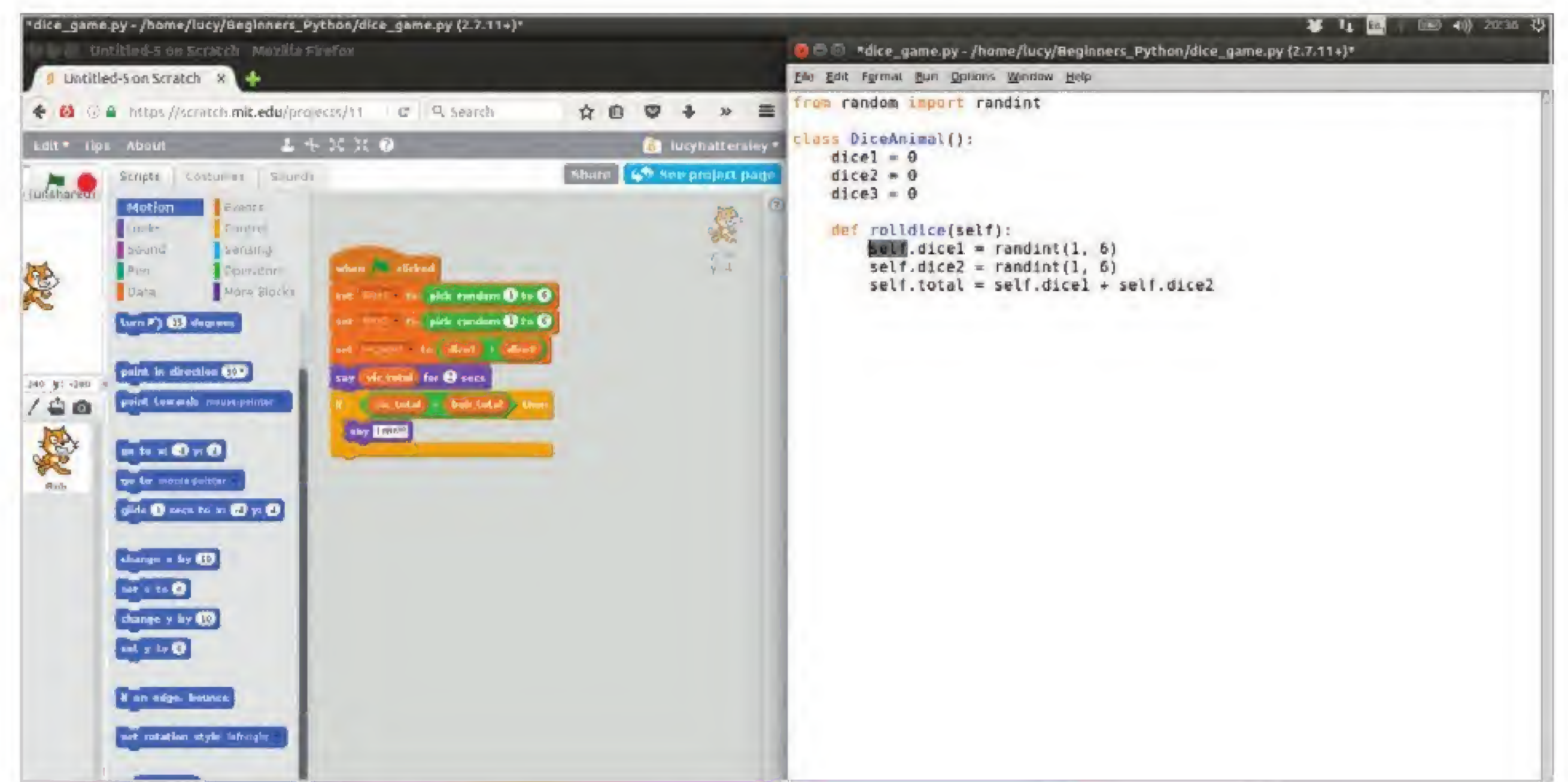
Now we're going to define a function that rolls both dice, and adds the two together to create the total. Inside the class, indented four lines to line up with `dice1`, `dice2` and `total`, enter this:

```
def rolldice(self):
    self.dice1 = random.randint(1, 6)
    self.dice2 = random.randint(1, 6)
    self.total = self.dice1 + self.dice2
```



STEP 6

Look at Scratch, and you'll see this is the same as the set `dice1` to pick random 1 to 6 block. But what are those `self` bits about? Remember that Vic and Bob have their own dice. Vic's dice are going to be accessed use `vic.dice1` and `vic.dice2` and Bob's using `bob.dice1` and `bob.dice2`. But the class doesn't know what we're going to call each object; instead it uses "`self`" as a placeholder. This works no matter what name each object has.



CREATING OBJECTS

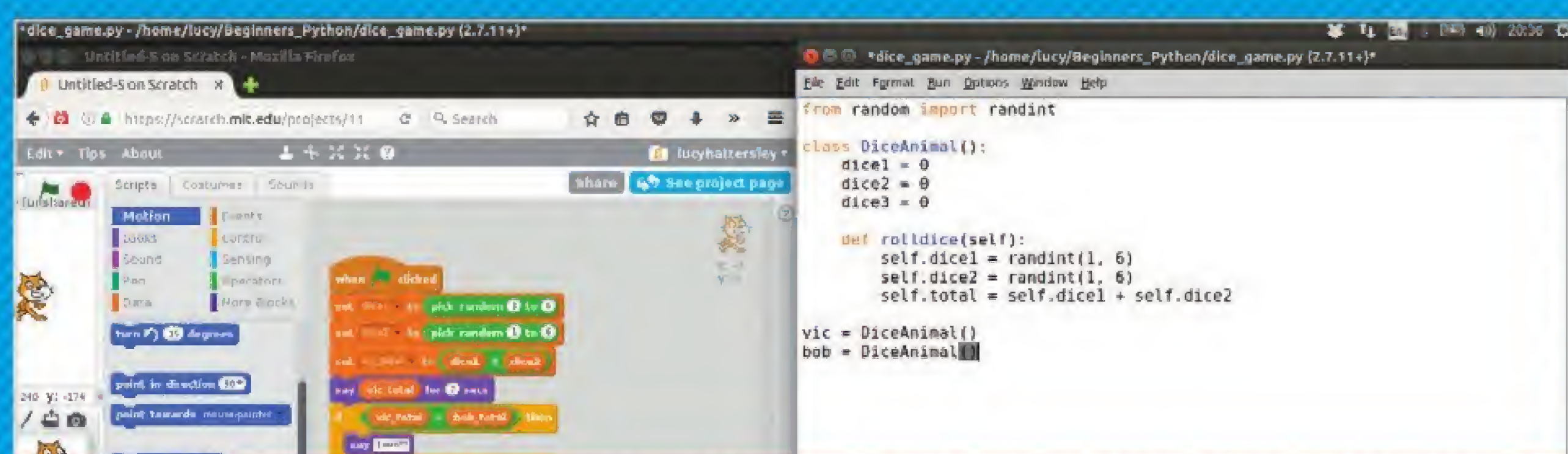
Now that our class is ready, we need to create two characters from it. One 'vic' and one 'bob'. These are known as objects, and also sometimes as instances (or 'object instance'). Because each one is an instance of the `DiceAnimal` class.

STEP 1

Creating an object in OOP has a big fancy name: "instantiation". Don't be impressed by the language, all it means is creating an instance of your class. And this is exactly the same as creating a variable, only instead of passing in a number, or string, you make it equal to your class. Enter this:

```
vic = DiceAnimal()
bob = DiceAnimal()
```

There, that wasn't hard at all.

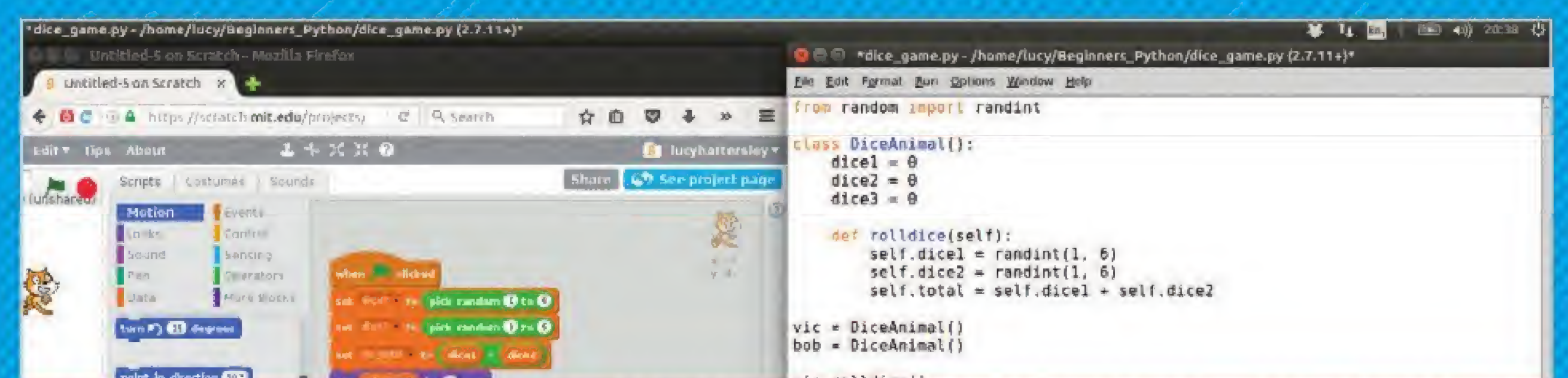


STEP 3

Now we're going to use dot notation to access the values inside both the cat and lobster. Enter this code:

```
print "Vic rolled a", vic.dice1, "and a",
vic.dice2
print "Bob rolled a", bob.dice1, "and a",
bob.dice2
```

Finally, we're going to use `if`, `elif` and `else` statements to create the game.



STEP 2

You now have two objects, a vic and a bob. You access the variables and functions inside the object using the objects name followed by a dot. To access Vic's dice, you use `vic.dice1` and `vic.dice2`. We're going to get both objects to roll their dice and store the total in their own `self.total`. Enter this:

```
vic.rolldice()
bob.rolldice()
```

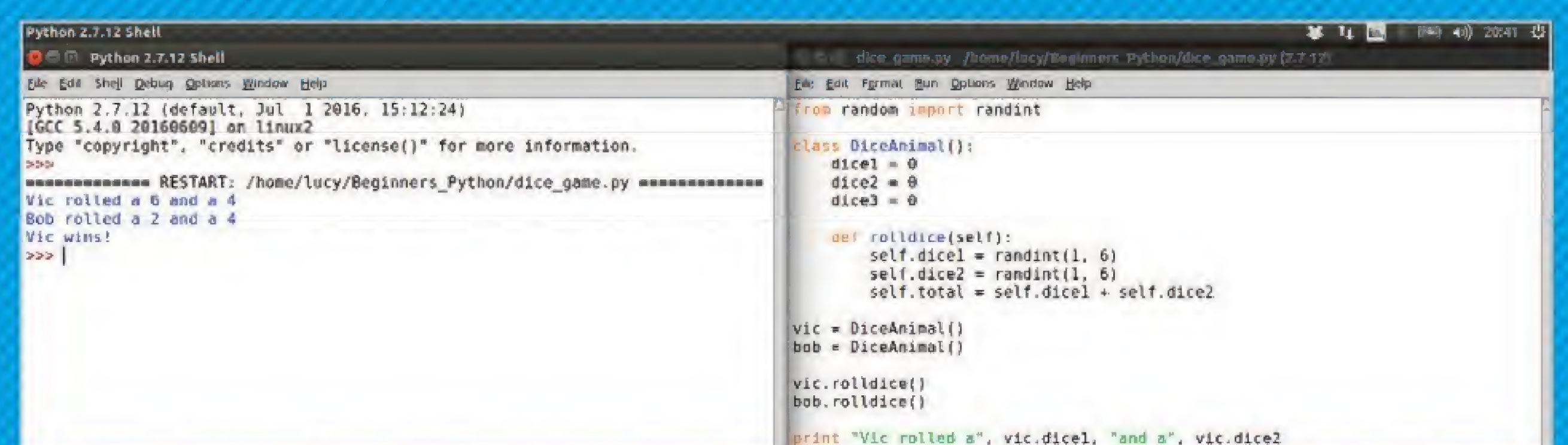


STEP 4

Enter this code:

```
if vic.total > bob.total:
    print "Vic wins!"
elif bob.total > vic.total:
    print "Bob wins"
else:
    print "It's a draw"
```

Press F5 to run the game.





Robots, Drones and Cool Python Projects





Python is not only an interesting and easy language to learn, it’s also remarkably powerful and can interact with many different hardware projects.

Thanks to the likes of the Raspberry Pi and other electronic project boards and computers, Python can help you build the software and controls around sensors, servos, robotics, as well as an arcade machine.

We have some cool projects for you to consider in this last section. From here, it’s up to you how far you take your Python skills. Do you aim for the stars and send your code up into orbit on a high altitude weather balloon or maybe use it to create the next generation of computer games and robotics?

.....

144	Using GitHub
146	Build a CamJam EduKit Robot
148	Controlling Your Robot
150	Add Sensors to the Robot
152	Amazing Robotics Projects to Try
154	Arcade Machine Projects
156	Security Projects
158	Becoming a Coder
160	Glossary of Terms



Using GitHub

As you start to create advanced projects in Python, you'll need more advanced code. You could type it in by hand and often you'll find code on developer's websites but increasingly it's being housed on GitHub.

GETTING TO KNOW GIT

Git is an online versioning and collaboration portal that enables you to store code online, download code, make changes and then integrate those changes. Github (github.com) is a website that developers use to host links to the code.

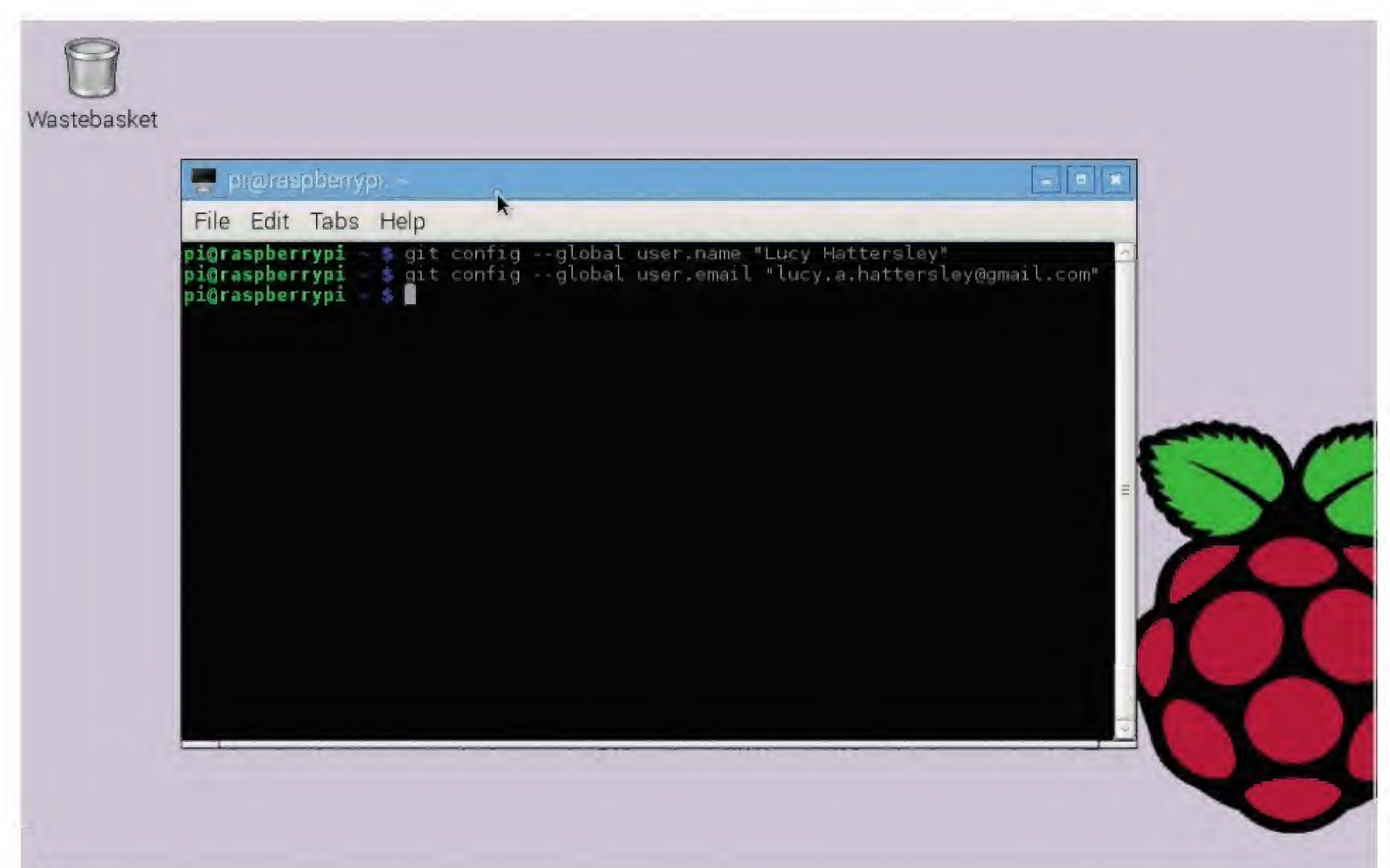
STEP 1

Git enables you to clone code created by other developers on your laptop or Raspberry Pi. So it's a vital tool to have on all your systems. You install Git in Linux using APT. First enter `sudo apt-get update` to get the latest package lists and `sudo apt-get install git` to install the latest version of Git. Follow the instructions at github.com for macOS and Windows systems.

```
pi@raspberrypi ~$ sudo apt-get update
Hit http://archive.raspberrypi.org wheezy Release.gpg
Hit http://archive.raspberrypi.org wheezy Release
Hit http://mirrordirector.raspbian.org wheezy Release.gpg
Hit http://mirrordirector.raspbian.org wheezy Release
Hit http://raspberrypi.collabora.com wheezy Release.gpg
Hit http://mirrordirector.raspbian.org wheezy Release
Hit http://raspberrypi.collabora.com wheezy Release
Hit http://archive.raspberrypi.org wheezy/main armhf Packages
Hit http://mirrordirector.raspbian.org wheezy/main armhf Packages
Hit http://raspberrypi.collabora.com wheezy/rpi armhf Packages
Hit http://mirrordirector.raspbian.org wheezy/contrib armhf Packages
Hit http://mirrordirector.raspbian.org wheezy/non-free armhf Packages
Hit http://mirrordirector.raspbian.org wheezy/rpi armhf Packages
Ign http://archive.raspberrypi.org wheezy/main Translation-en_GB
Ign http://archive.raspberrypi.org wheezy/main Translation-en
Ign http://raspberrypi.collabora.com wheezy/rpi Translation-en_GB
Ign http://raspberrypi.collabora.com wheezy/rpi Translation-en
Ign http://mirrordirector.raspbian.org wheezy/contrib Translation-en_GB
Ign http://mirrordirector.raspbian.org wheezy/contrib Translation-en
Ign http://mirrordirector.raspbian.org wheezy/main Translation-en_GB
Ign http://mirrordirector.raspbian.org wheezy/main Translation-en
Ign http://mirrordirector.raspbian.org wheezy/non-free Translation-en_GB
Ign http://mirrordirector.raspbian.org wheezy/non-free Translation-en
Ign http://mirrordirector.raspbian.org wheezy/rpi Translation-en_GB
Ign http://mirrordirector.raspbian.org wheezy/rpi Translation-en
Reading package lists... Done
pi@raspberrypi ~$ sudo apt-get install git
Reading package lists... Done
Building dependency tree
```

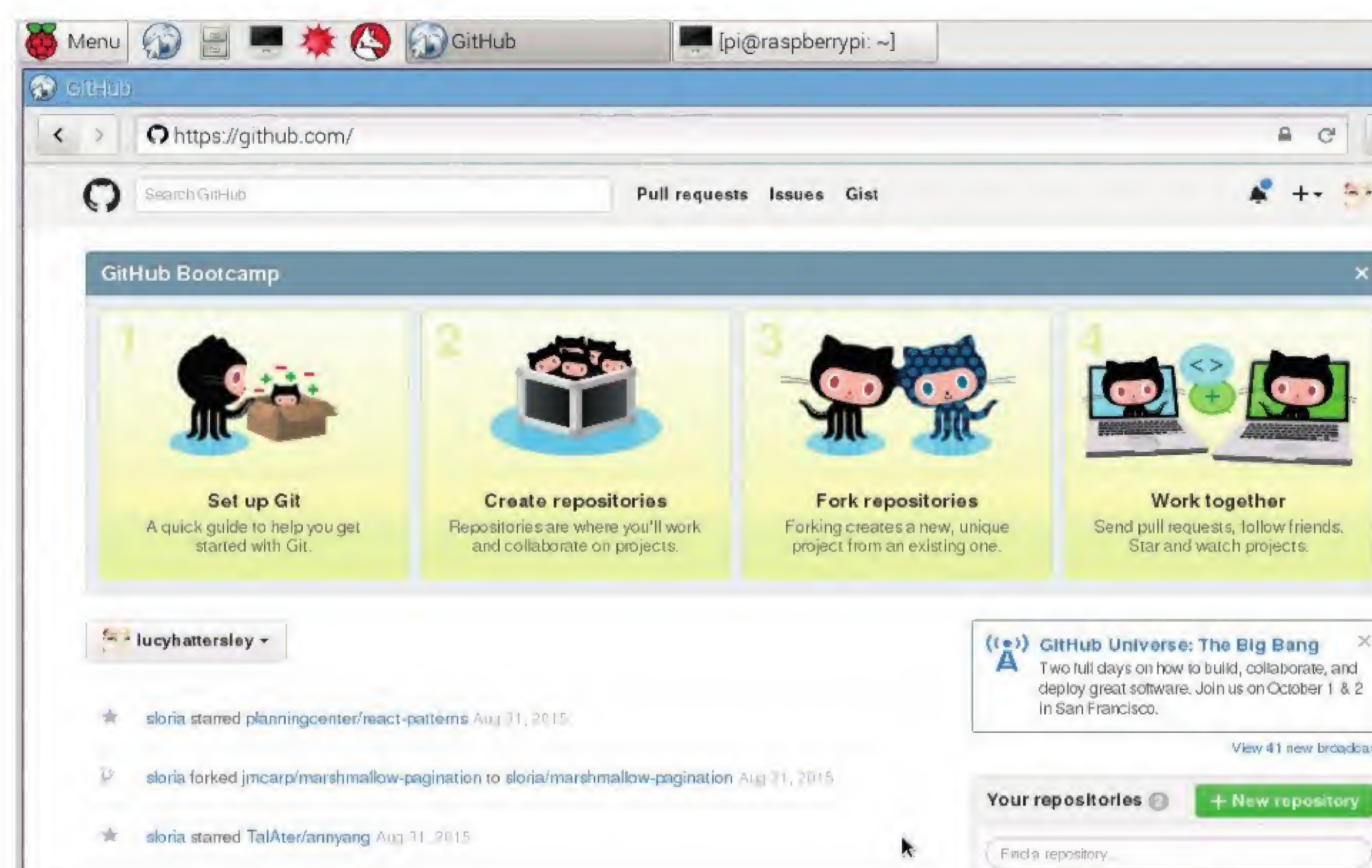
STEP 3

Open a web browser and enter github.com. Click Sign Up and create an account. Now open a terminal window and enter `git config --global user.name "John Doe"` (replacing John Doe with your name). Next enter `git config --global user.email john.doe@mail.com` replacing the email address with the same one you used to sign up to Github.



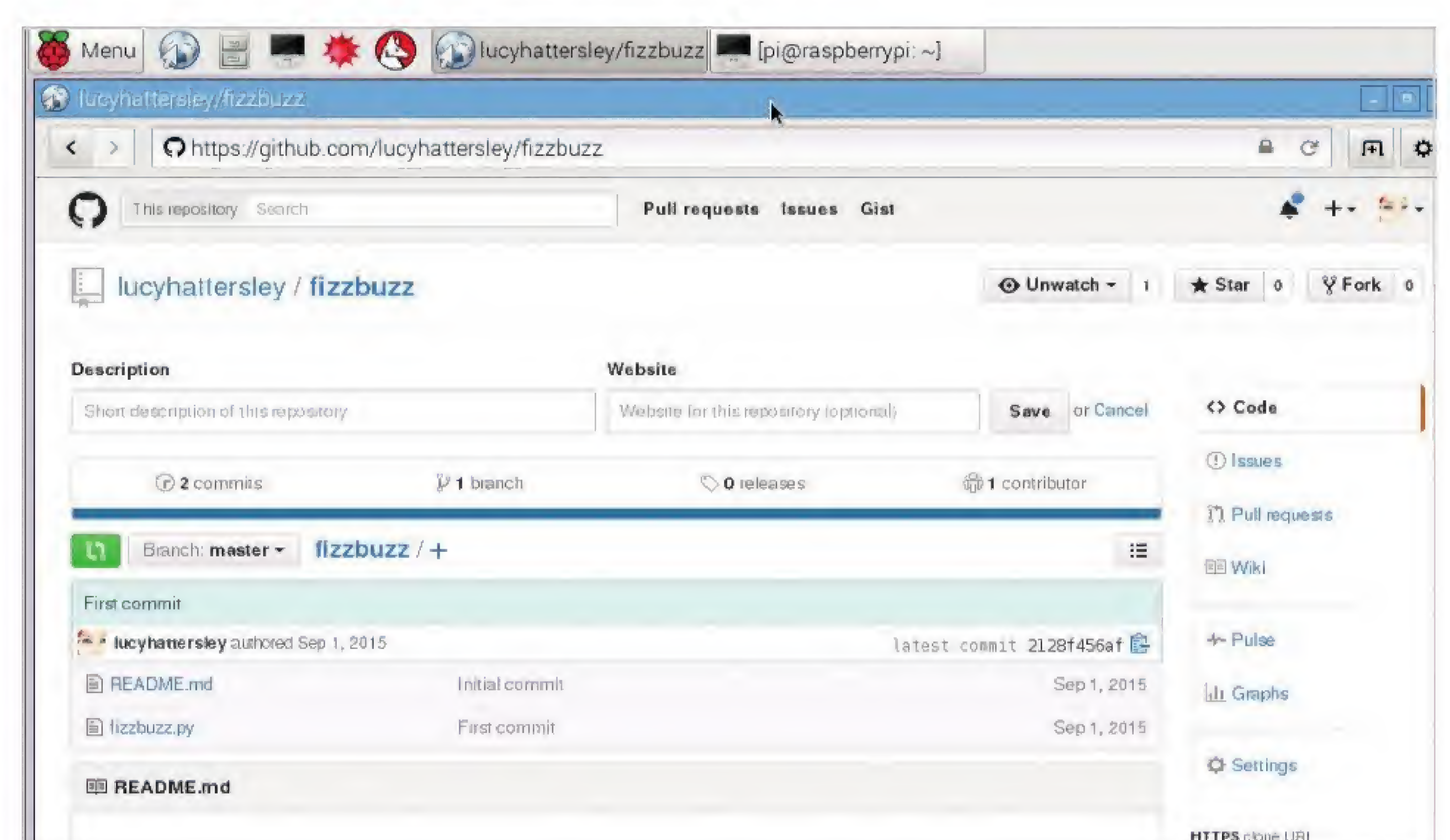
STEP 2

Enter `git --version` to make sure it's installed correctly. You should have the latest version installed (ours is 1.7.10.4). You can enter `git -h` to get quick help or `man git` to read the manual but Git is pretty complex at first so it's better to follow our guide. You're going to use the desktop to take a look at Github next so enter `startx`.



STEP 4

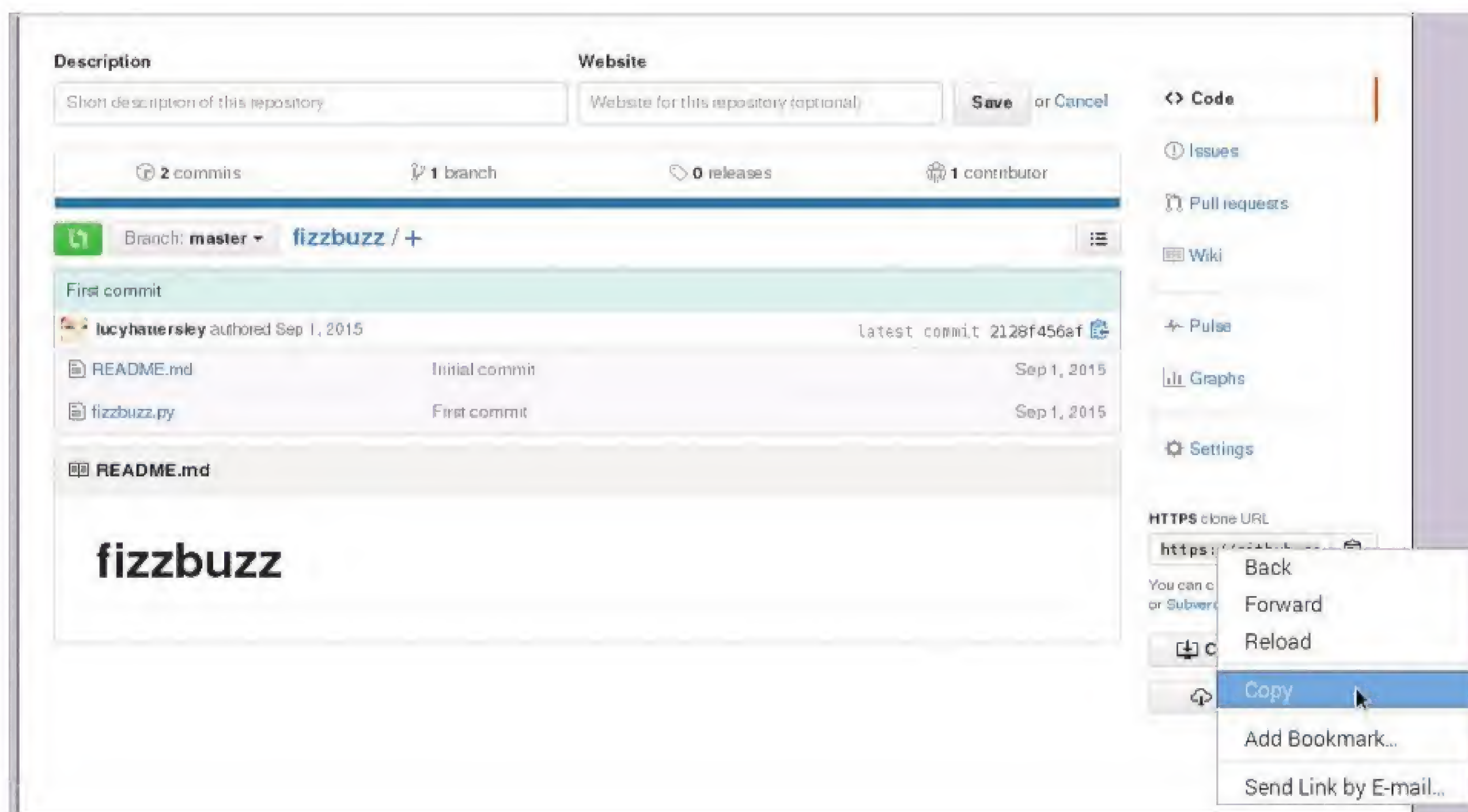
Now we're going to clone a project from Github to our computer. In the web browser enter `github.com/lucyhattersley/fizzbuzz`. This is a repository I've created on Git that contains a program called FizzBuzz. A repository is like an online folder that contains the code. You will see links to the files contained in the project: README.md and fizzbuzz.py but don't click on these.





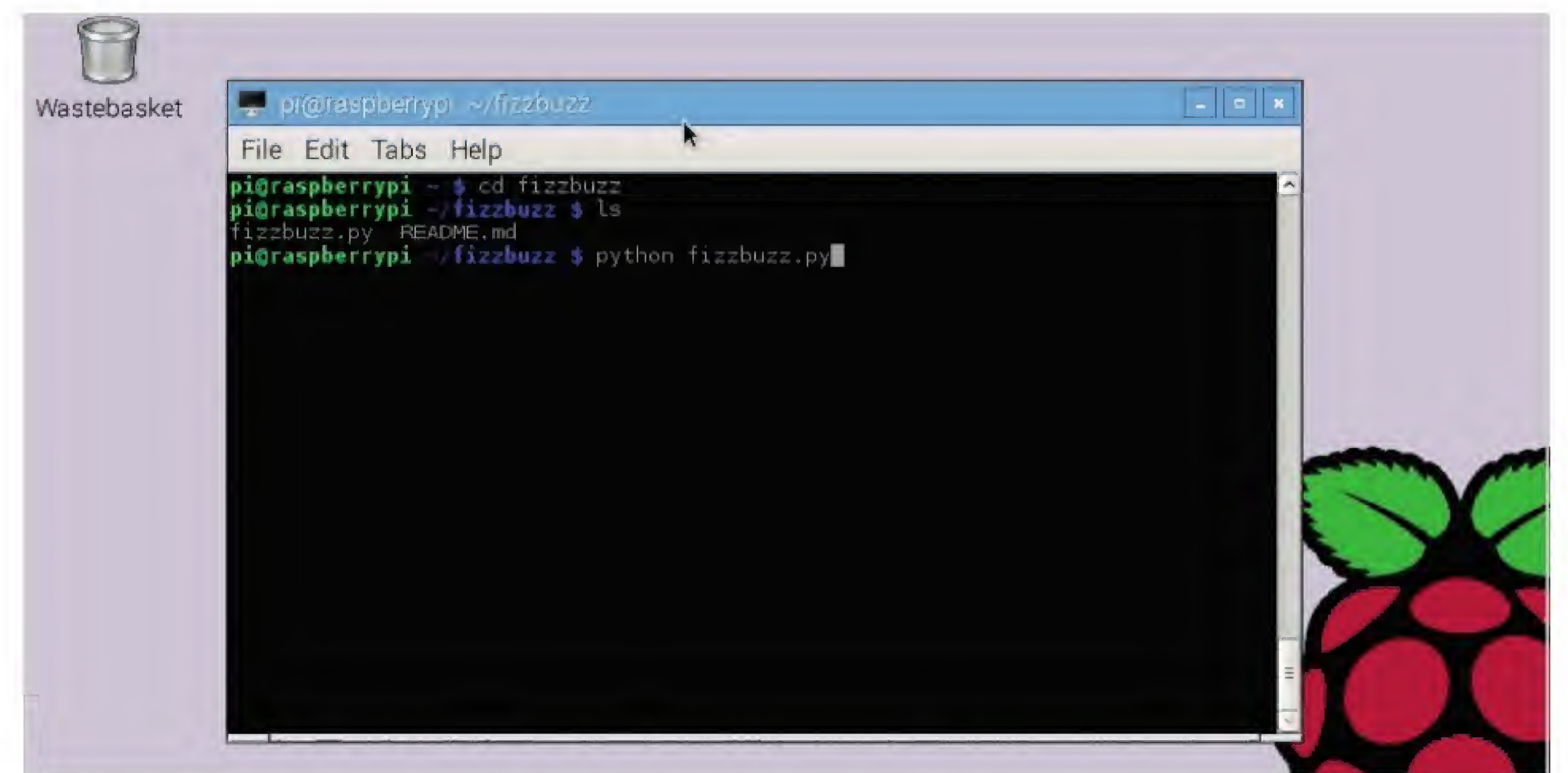
STEP 5

In the bottom right of the Github window you will see a text box marked HTTPS clone URL and inside it there is a URL. Click the text and press Control-A to select it all. Now right-click and choose Copy. Now open a terminal window and enter `git clone` and choose Edit > Paste to paste the HTTP address after the command.



STEP 6

Enter `ls` and you will see the Fizzbuzz directory in your home directory. Enter `cd fizzbuzz` to switch that directory and `ls` again to view the `fizzbuzz.py` and `README.md` files. FizzBuzz is a classic program that counts to 100 but on numbers divisible by 5 or 3 it prints "Fizz" or "Buzz" instead (or FizzBuzz if it's divisible by both 5 and 3). Enter `python fizzbuzz.py` to run the code.



ADDING CODE TO GIT

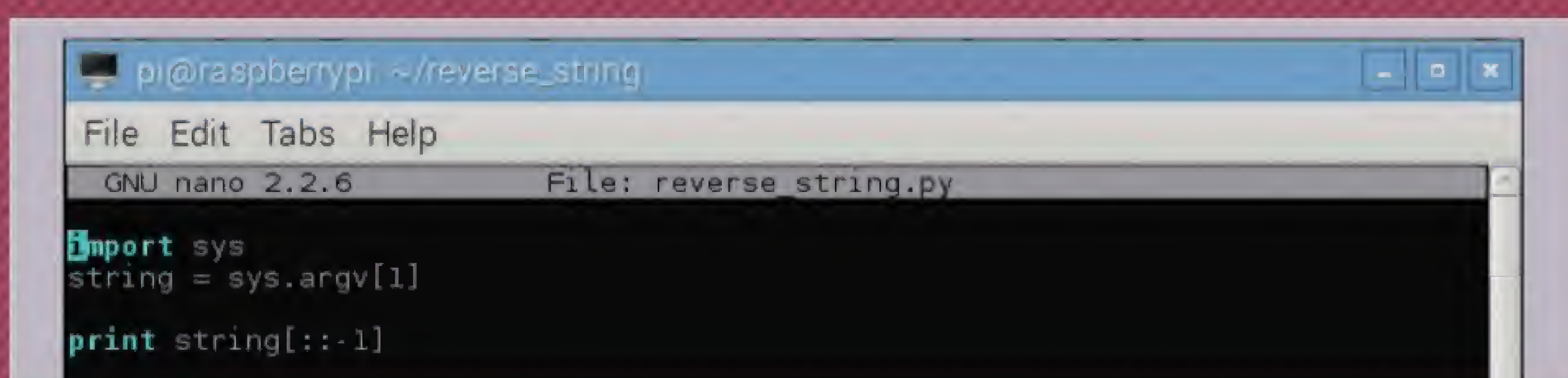
Now that you know how to get clone code from Github to your Raspberry Pi, you might be wondering how to put your own code into Git. Git is a powerful and fairly complex piece of software but this will help you get started.

STEP 1

You're going to create a Python program that reverses a string and upload it to Git. Enter `mkdir reverse_string` and `cd reverse_string`. Then `nano reverse_string.py` and enter this code:

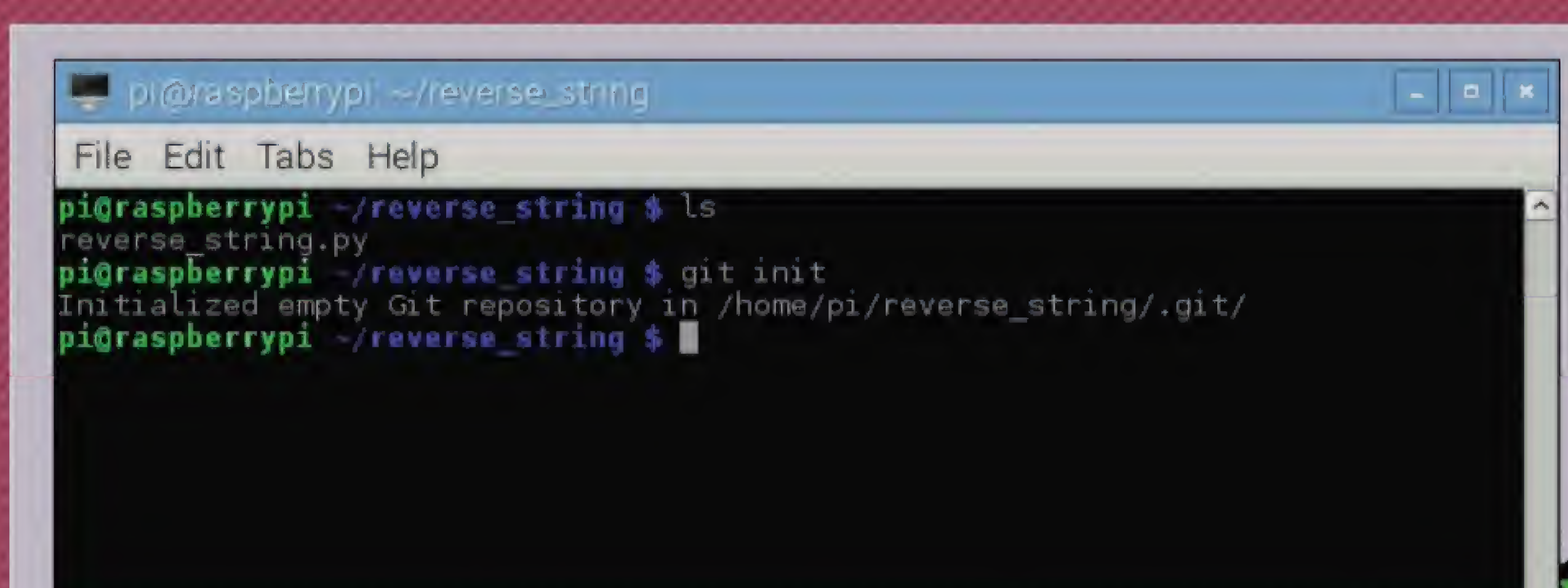
```
import sys
string = sys.argv[1]
print string[::-1]
```

Press Control-O and then Enter to save the code. Press Control-X to exit.



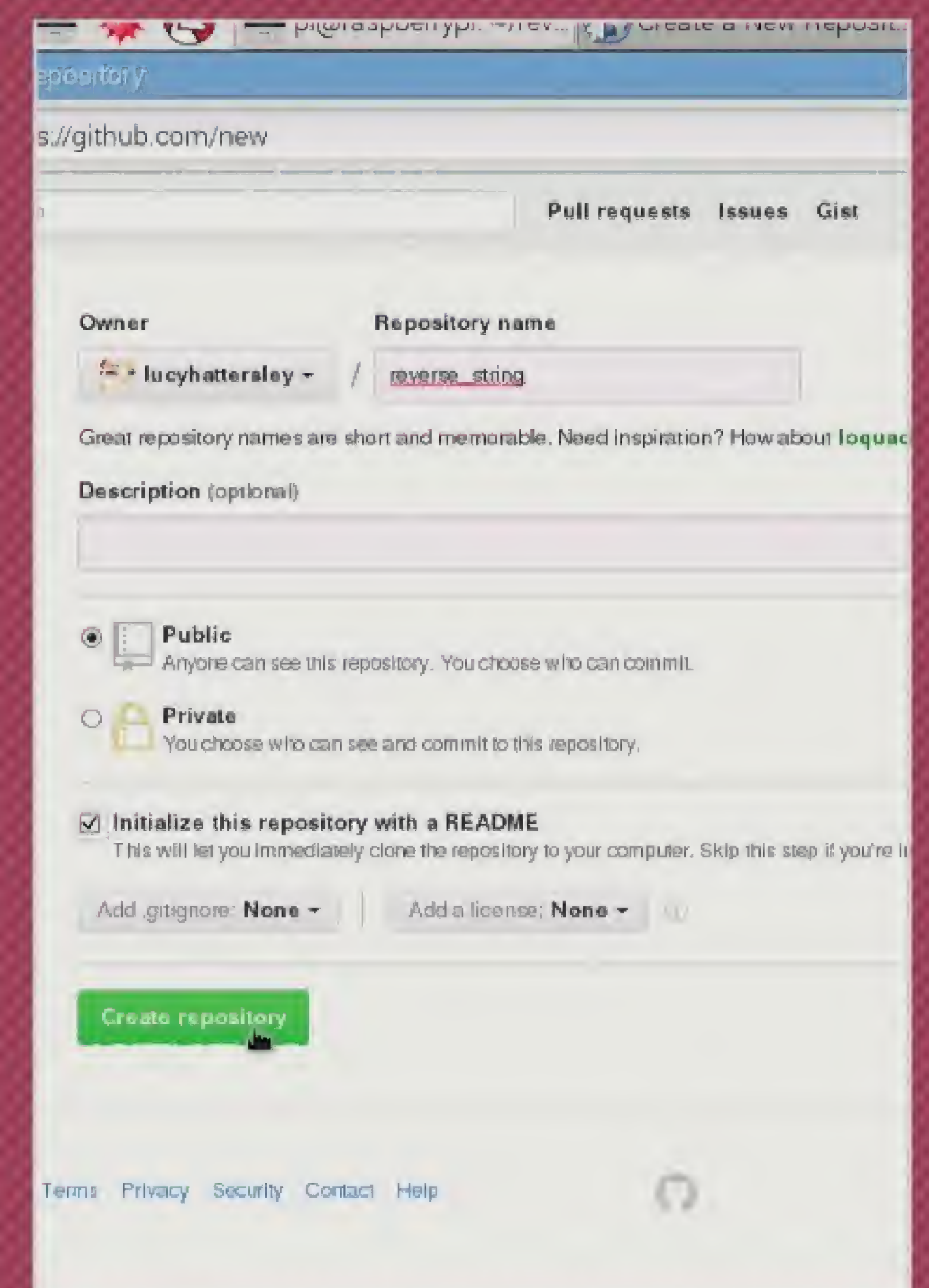
STEP 2

You can test the program by entering `python reverse_string "Hello World"`. You should see `dlorW olleH` returned on the command line. You're going to put this program on your Github but first it needs to be a Git folder, enter `git init`. This initialises the directory as a git repository. It creates a hidden file called `.git` to the folder. You can see this using `ls -lah`.



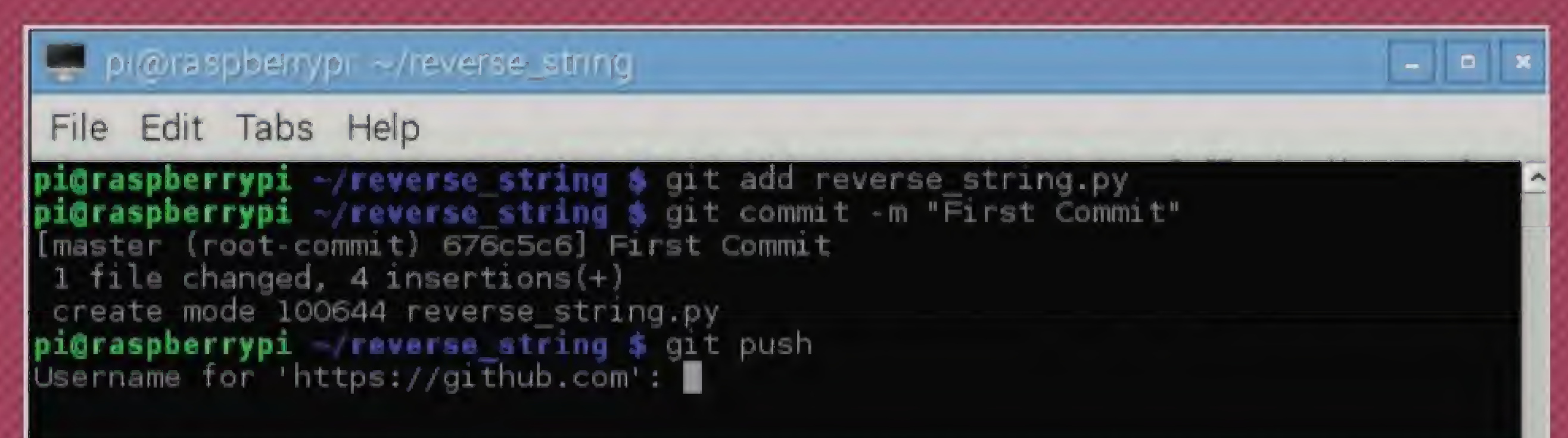
STEP 3

First we need a repository. Open Github (github.com) and click the green New Repository button. Enter reverse string in the Repository name field and select the Initialise this repository with a README option. Click Create repository to make the file. Next you need to copy the text from the HTTP's clone URL field as you did when cloning a website. Return to the command line and enter `git remote add` and use Edit > Paste to paste in the URL.



STEP 4

You've now linked the local directory to the Git repository and can sync changes from one place to another. Enter `git add reverse_string.py` to track the python file. Now enter `git commit -m "First commit"` to tell Git you want to send "commit" the file to your Git space. Finally enter `git push` and enter your username and password to send the files. You'll now see them on github.com. This is only a really rough introduction to Git. Head over to codeschool.com/courses/try-git to find an online course.





Build a CamJam EduKit Robot

The CamJam EduKit 3 is a fantastic robot kit that enables you to build a fully functioning robot with ultrasonic and line following sensors for just £17. All you need is a chassis and we'll show you how to turn an old tin box into an amazing robot.

CAMJAM

The Cambridge Raspberry Jam (camjam.me) teaches children of all ages how to build electronics projects and the kits are sold to everyone via the Pi Hut. The CamJam EduKit #3 has everything you need to build a robot (thepihut.com/collections/camjam-edukit).

STEP 1

The CamJam EduKit 3 includes wheels, motors, a battery box, an EduKit Controller Board and two sensors. You also get a breadboard, wires and resistors to bring it all together, along with some double-sided tape. We suggest you get a USB battery charger, the type used to recharge phones and a Wi-Fi dongle.



STEP 3

Flip the box upside down and make a hole in it in the middle, at one end. We're using a metal drill to drill a hole through the tin box but if your box is made from plastic or card you could cut a hole using scissors. It doesn't need to be large, just big enough to fit the wires from the servo motors.



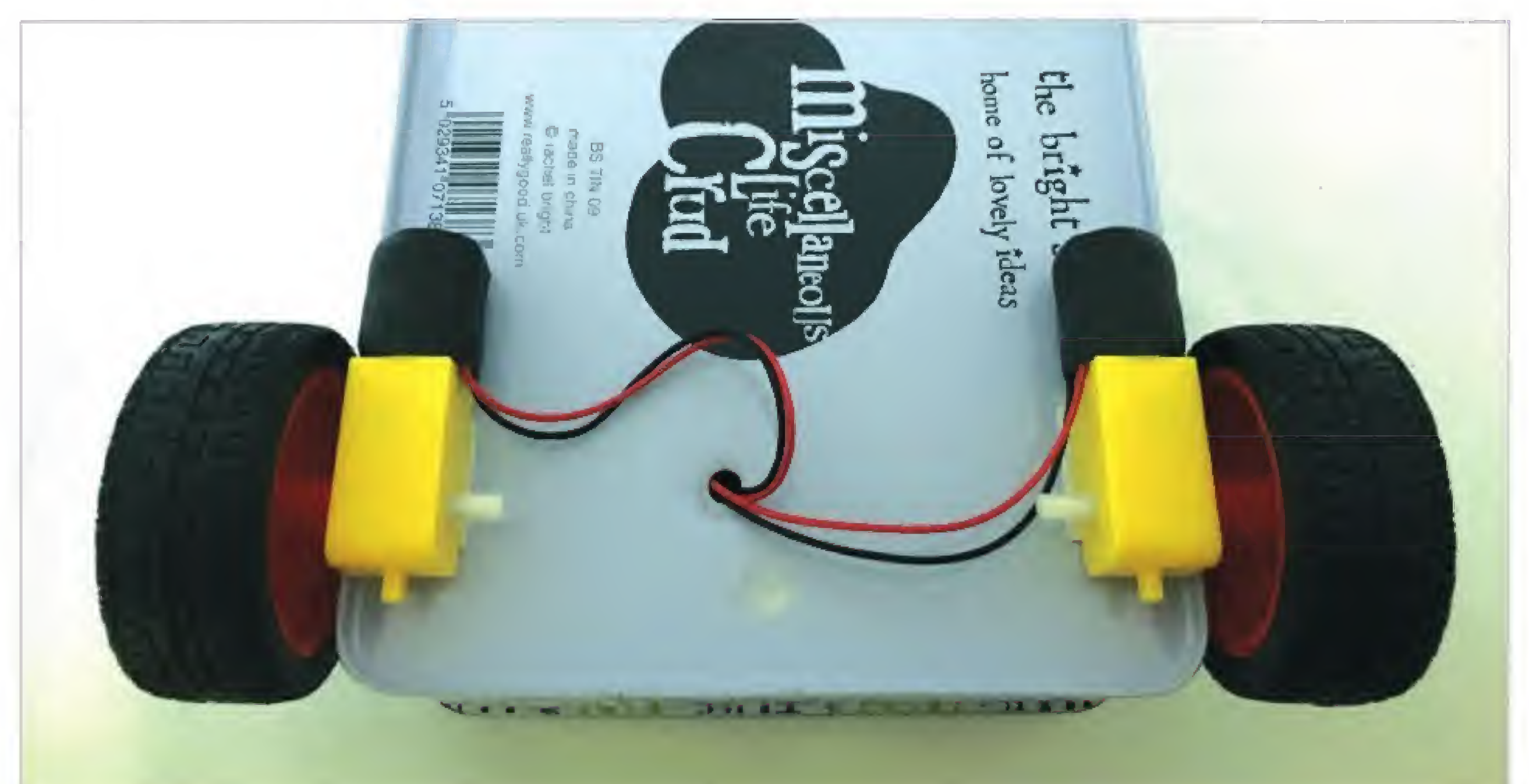
STEP 2

You'll need a chassis for your robot. We're using a tin box, the type you often get to keep knick-knacks in. You can use any flat surface as a chassis, so long as you can mount the wheels but using a container makes it easier to hold all the bits inside. You could also use a plastic Tupperware box or even the box that the kit comes in.



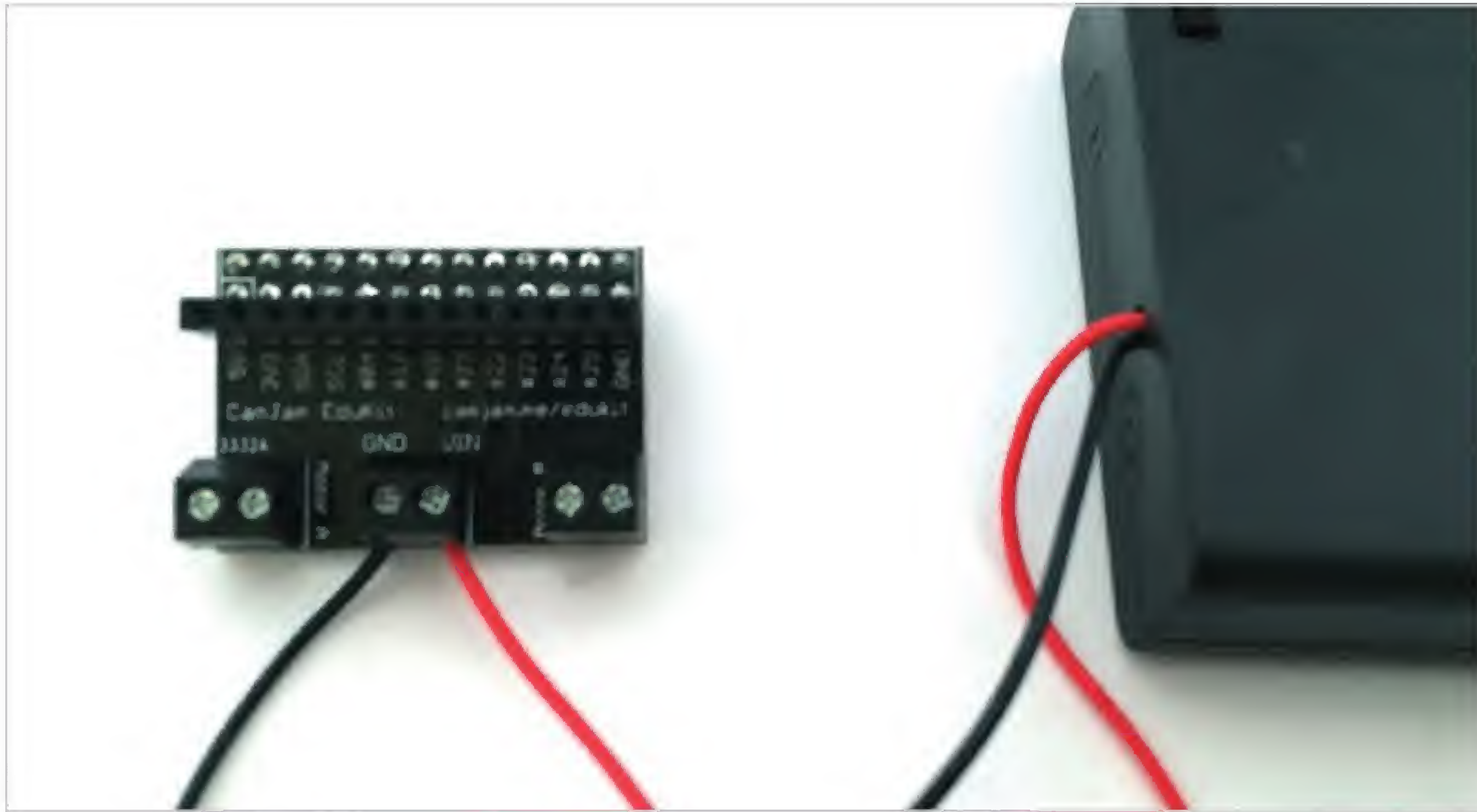
STEP 4

Attach the two plastic wheels to the yellow servo motors making sure they're on opposite sides. Now fix the servos to the underside of the box, making sure they're near the hole you created. You can use the double-sided tape to mount the wheels but it's a good idea to use Blu-Tack first to make sure the design works.

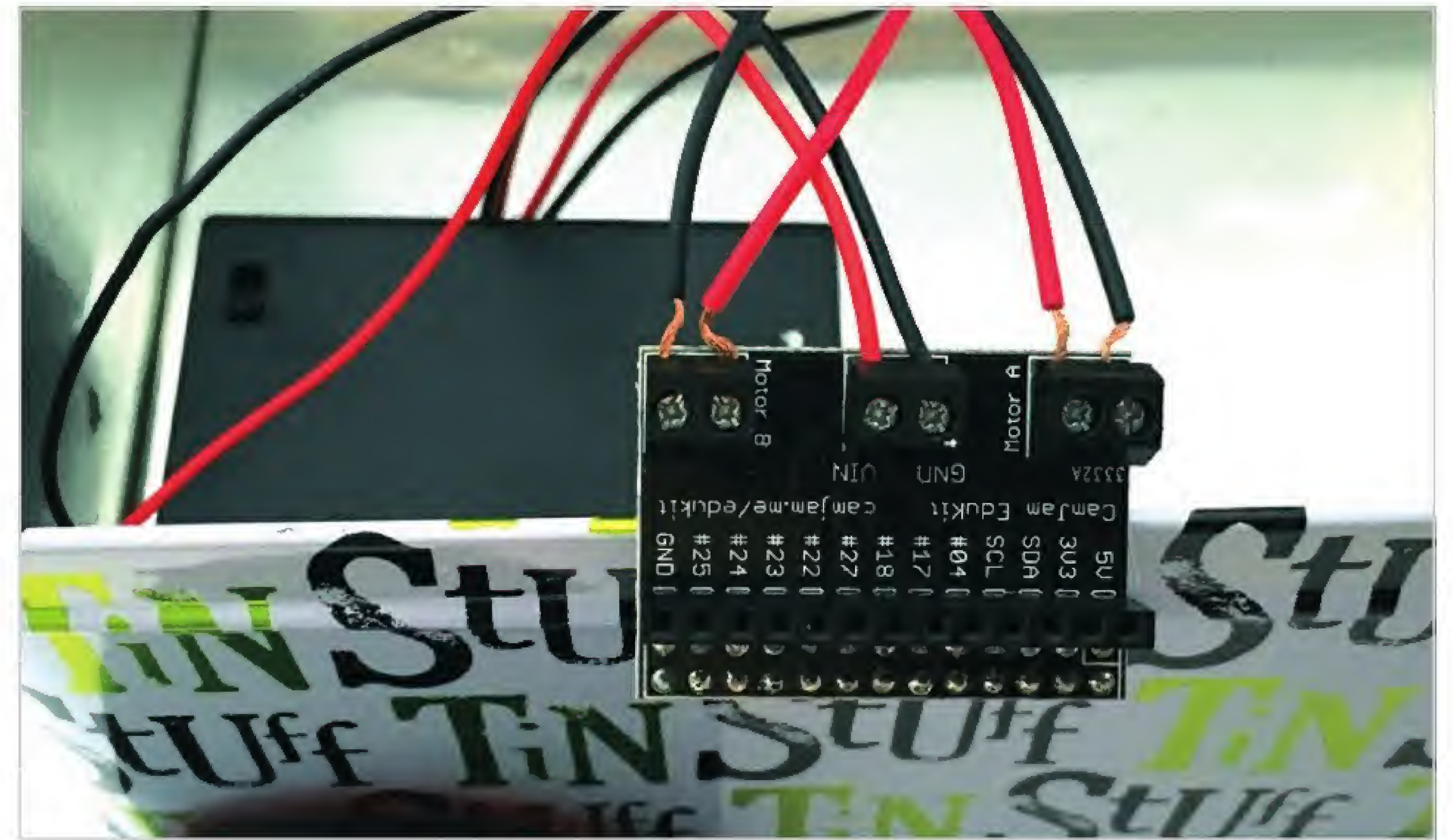


**STEP 5**

Place four AA batteries inside the battery box and make sure it is set to Off. Use a small screwdriver to loosen the two central screws in the EduKit Controller Board. Place the black wire from the battery box in the GND and the red wire in VIN (Voltage). Take a look at Worksheet 1 (camjam.me/?page_id=1035#worksheets) for more info.

**STEP 6**

Place the robot front away from you and attach the red and black wires from the right wheel to the block marked Motor A. It doesn't matter which way round. Take the wires from the left wheel and attach them to Motor B with the wires the opposite way round from Motor A (see picture).

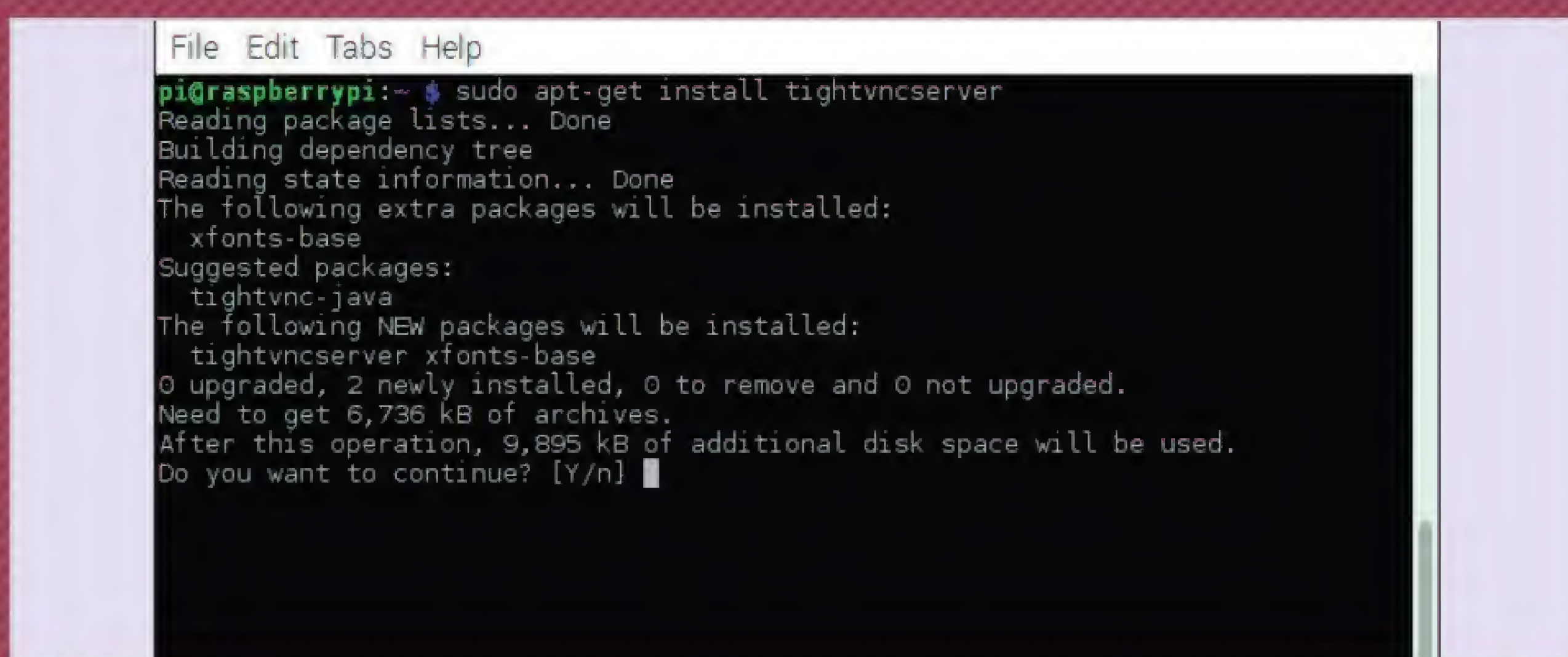


SETTING UP THE RASPBERRY PI

The Raspberry Pi will need to operate on the move, so it needs power and a wireless network connection. You'll also want to access it remotely, so you'll want to set up VNC. Let's build the brains.

STEP 1

Install a fresh build of Raspbian Jessie on an SD Card. Use `sudo apt-get update` and `sudo apt-get upgrade` to get the latest builds for all your software. Now use `sudo apt-get install tightvncserver` to install VNC software. Enter `sudo nano .bashrc` and add `vncserver` to the end of your bash file so it starts at boot time.

**STEP 2**

Connect a Wi-Fi dongle to your Raspberry Pi and click on the Wi-Fi icon in the top right of the Xfce desktop interface; enter `startx` if you're not in the desktop environment. Choose your network and enter the Wi-Fi password. Open the terminal and enter `ifconfig`. Make a note of your network address.

**STEP 3**

Charge up a portable USB charger, the type normally use for mobile phones and make sure it's got plenty of juice. Shut down your Raspberry Pi and plug in the portable charger and make sure it can boot and run your Raspberry Pi.

**STEP 4**

Check that the VNC connection is working from another computer. On a Mac press Control-K and enter the `vnc://192.168.0.[x]:5901` (with x the number from ifconfig in Step 2). Click Connect and you should see the Xfce desktop. Your Raspberry Pi is now ready to work remotely inside the robot.





Controlling Your Robot

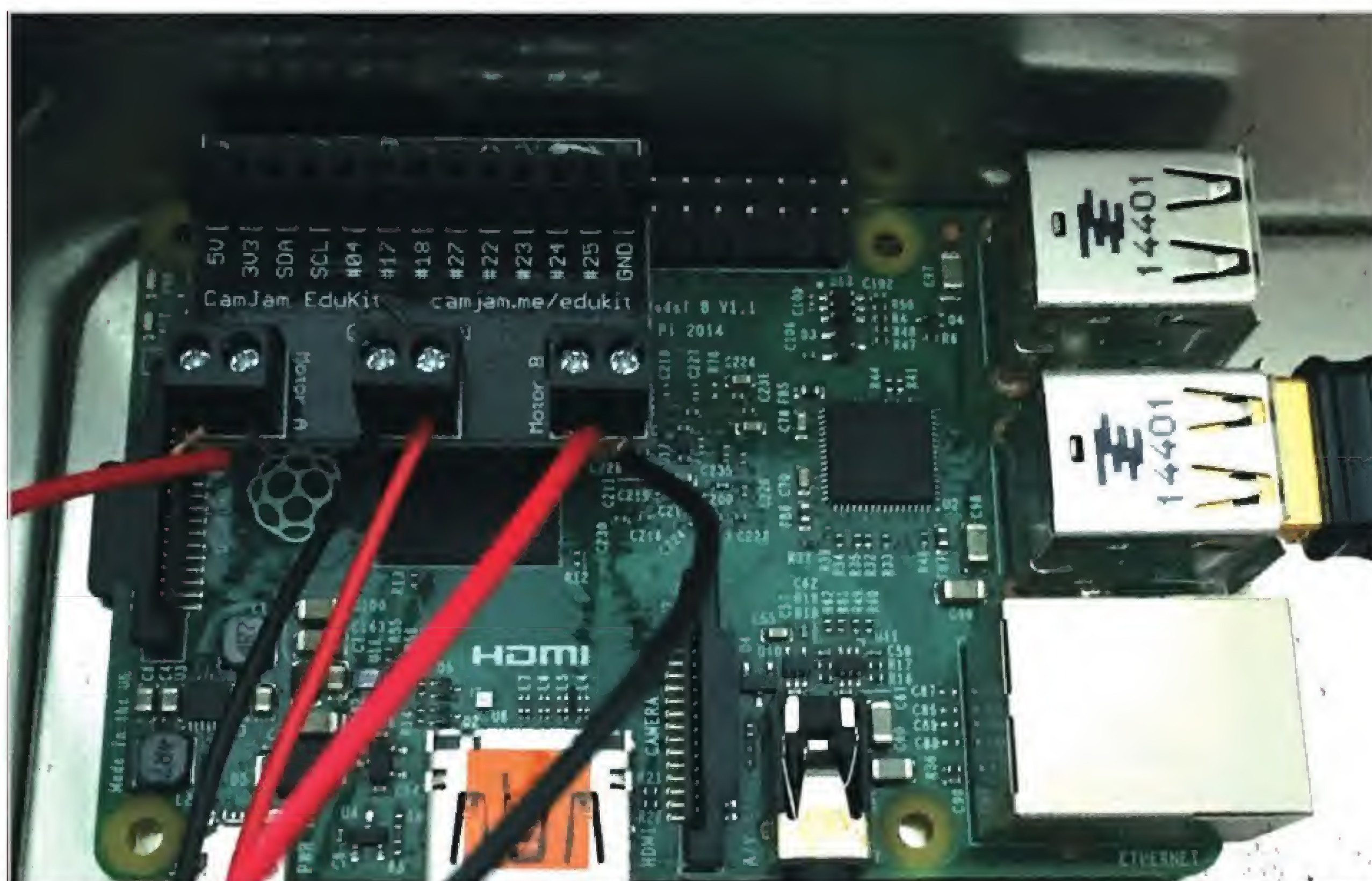
With all the motor parts in place, it's now time to hook everything up and start testing out your robot. Once the motor control unit is attached to the Raspberry Pi and it is all powered up, you're ready to start testing its movement in code.

READY TO ROLL

Our robot still has a way to go to be complete but with the servos and wheels attached to the motor control unit and the power in place, it's ready to start rolling around.

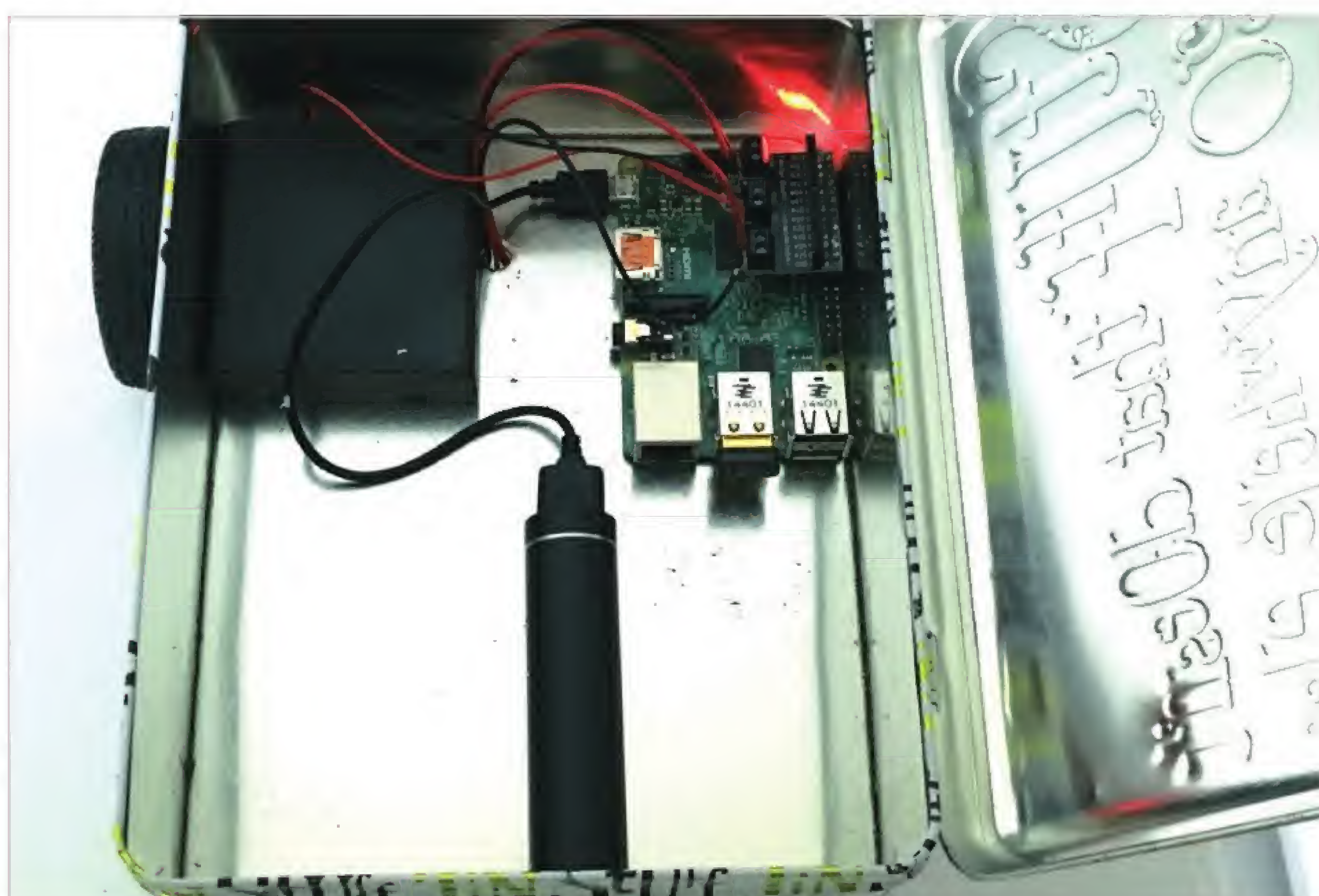
STEP 1

You should have all six wires attached to the EduKit Controller Board unit. Double check that the black wire from the battery is going to GND and the red wire to VIN and that the black and red wires to Motor A and Motor B are the mirror opposite way around (as shown in this photo). Gently push the motor control unit into the GPIO pins on the left side.



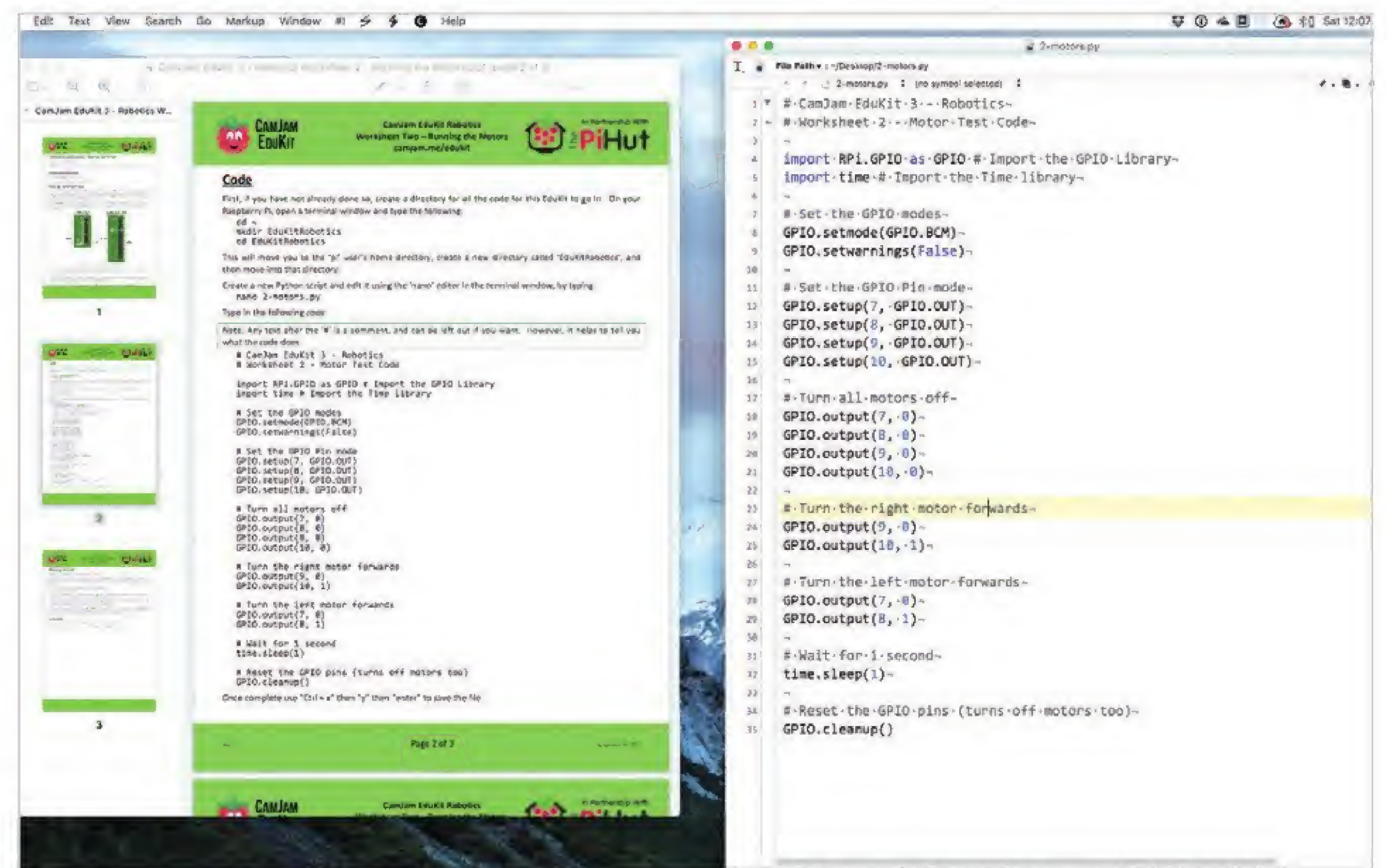
STEP 2

Now it's time to power up your robot and see if it moves. Attach the battery pack to the Raspberry Pi and switch on the battery box. Give the Raspberry Pi thirty seconds to go through the boot process and connect to it from a computer using VNC to make sure it is responding.



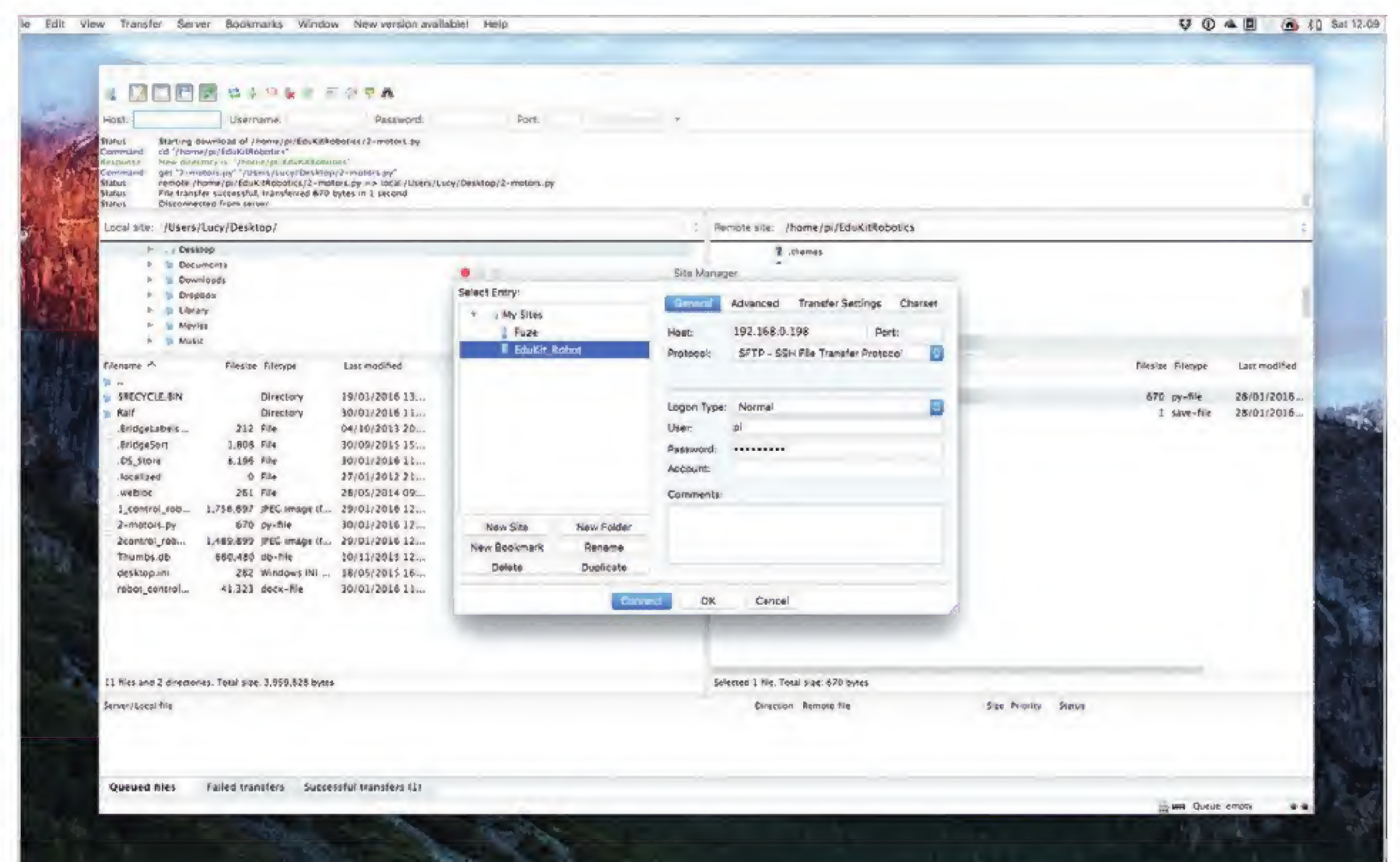
STEP 3

Open the CamJam website (camjam.me/?page_id=1035#worksheets) and download Worksheet 2 - Running the motors. Open a text editor on your computer and type out the code for the 2-motors.py program. You can cut and paste it to your text editor but we think it makes more sense to type it line by line so you understand what it's doing.



STEP 4

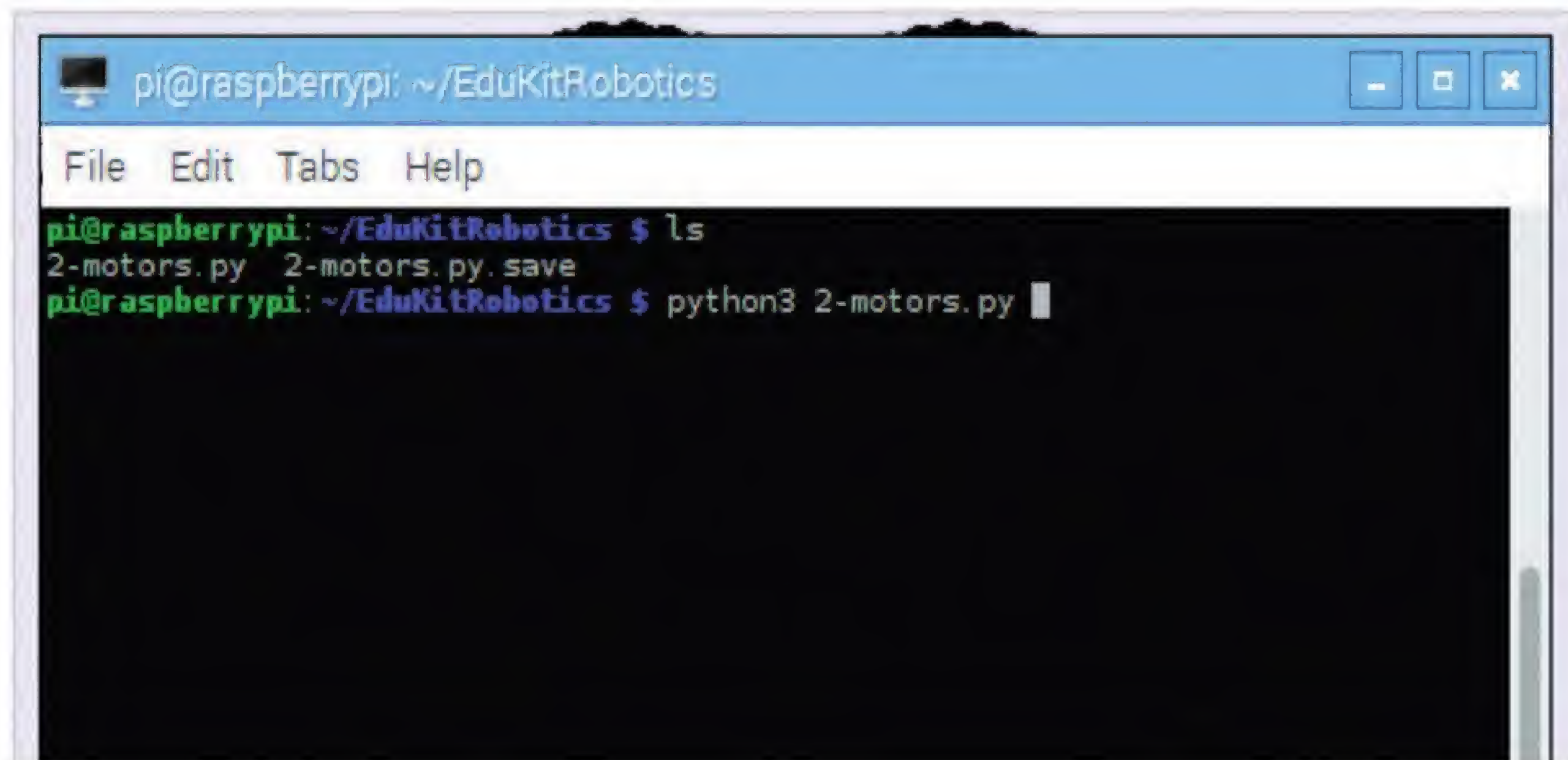
Open a FTP program such as FileZilla and choose File > Site Manager. Enter the IP address in the Host field, "pi" in the User field and your password ("raspberrypi" by default). Right-click on pi under Remote Site and choose Create Directory, name it "EduKitRobotics". Now transfer the 2-motors.py file to the EduKit directory on your robot.





STEP 5

Open the VNC program and connect to your Raspberry Pi. You should see the Xfce desktop even if you set up the robot to boot into the command line. Enter `cd EduKitRobotics`. Make sure your robot is on the floor and has about a meter of space in front of it. Now enter `python3 2-motors.py` and press Return



STEP 6

All being well your robot should move forwards. If it moves backwards you need to swap the position of the red and black wires on both Motor A and Motor B. If it fails to move then check the wires to the motor control unit, check that everything is switched on and try replacing the batteries. You need good quality batteries with enough power to move the servos.

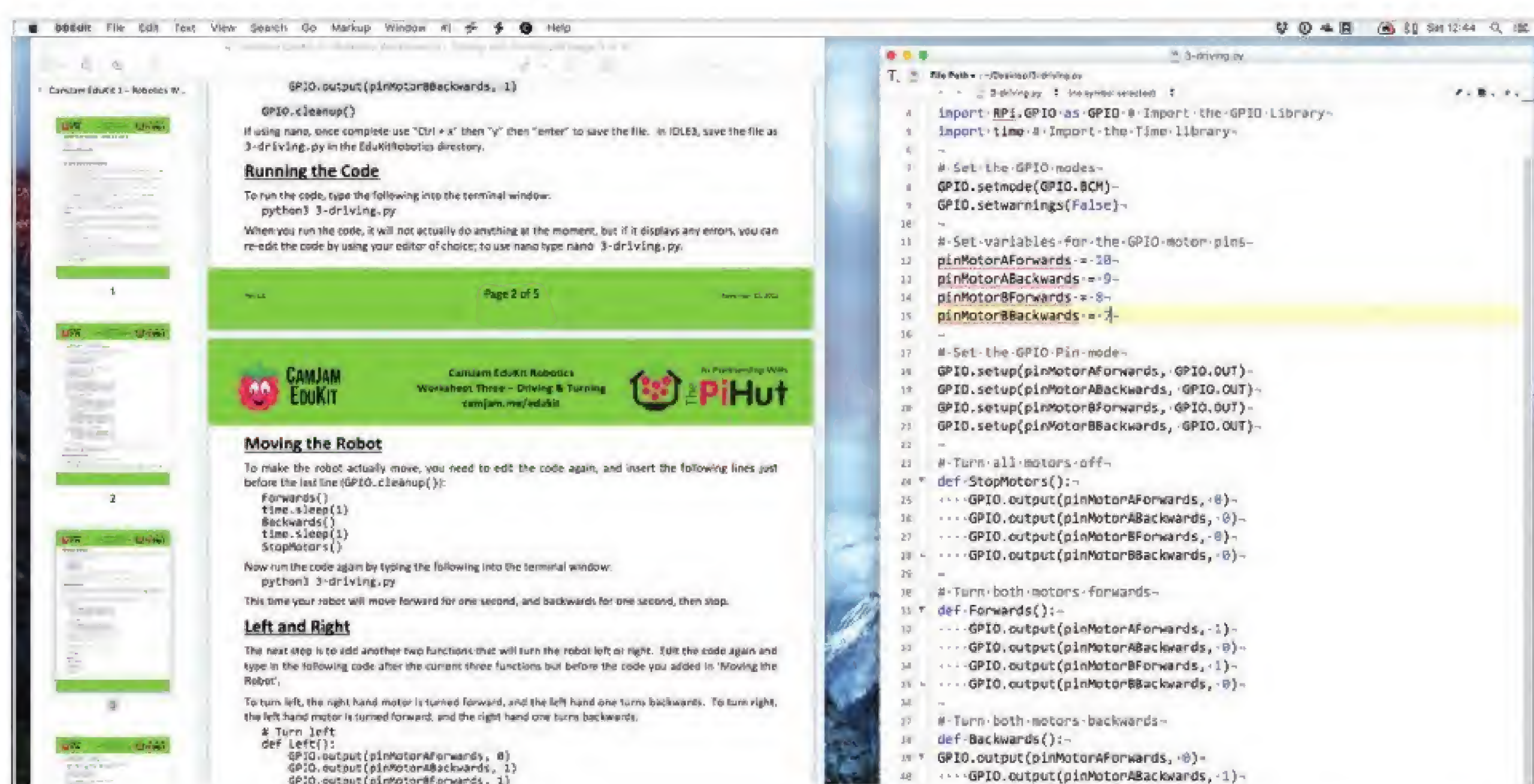


DRIVING CODE

Now that our robot is up and moving, it's time to give it better control functionality. This code enables you to move the robot forward, backwards and rotate left and right. It also makes it easy to give the robot multiple directions in order.

STEP 1

Head back to the CamJam website (camjam.me/?page_id=1035#worksheets) and download Worksheet 3 - Driving and Turning. Type in the first block of code and save it as `3-driving.py` in the `EduKitRobotics` folder. Make sure you enter the code from the section Moving the Robot at the end of your main block of code.



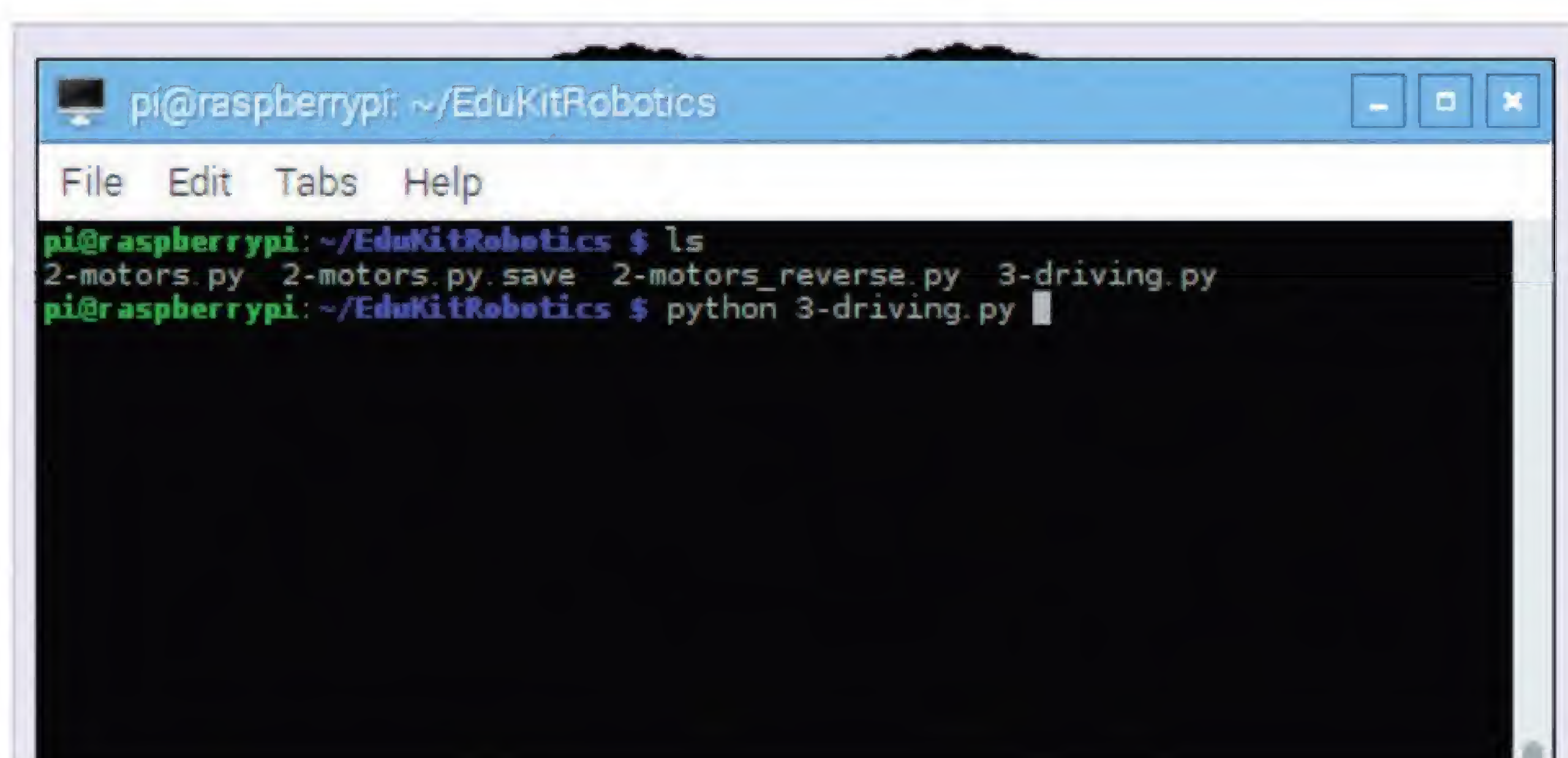
STEP 3

Take a good look at the Python code to see how it creates function definitions for `Forwards()`, `Backwards()` and `StopMotors()`. These definitions enable you to move the robot using functions, rather than typing out the code each time. Now add the `Left()` and `Right()` functions from the worksheet to the code.



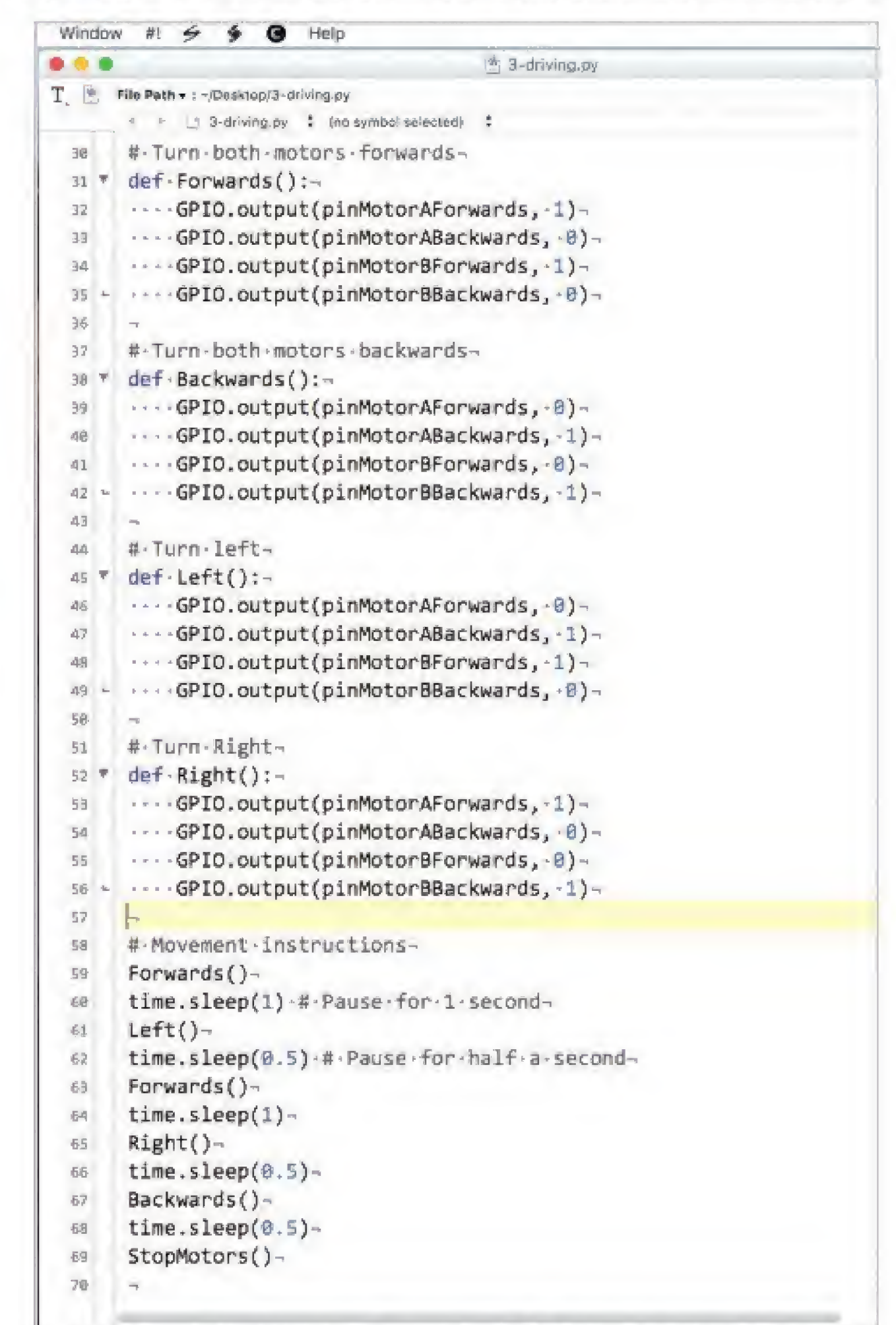
STEP 2

The worksheet advises using nano to create code directly on your Raspberry Pi robot but we think it makes more sense to type it out on your computer and transfer it using FTP. Use VNC to connect to your Raspberry Pi and run the program using `python3 3-driving.py`. The robot should move forwards then backwards.



STEP 4

Add the movement instructions to the very end of the code and save the `3-driving.py` program to your `EduKitRobotics` folder, using FTP to transfer it. Use VNC to run `python3 3-driving.py` on the Raspberry Pi. The robot should move forwards, rotate left, move forwards again, rotate right, move backwards and then stop.





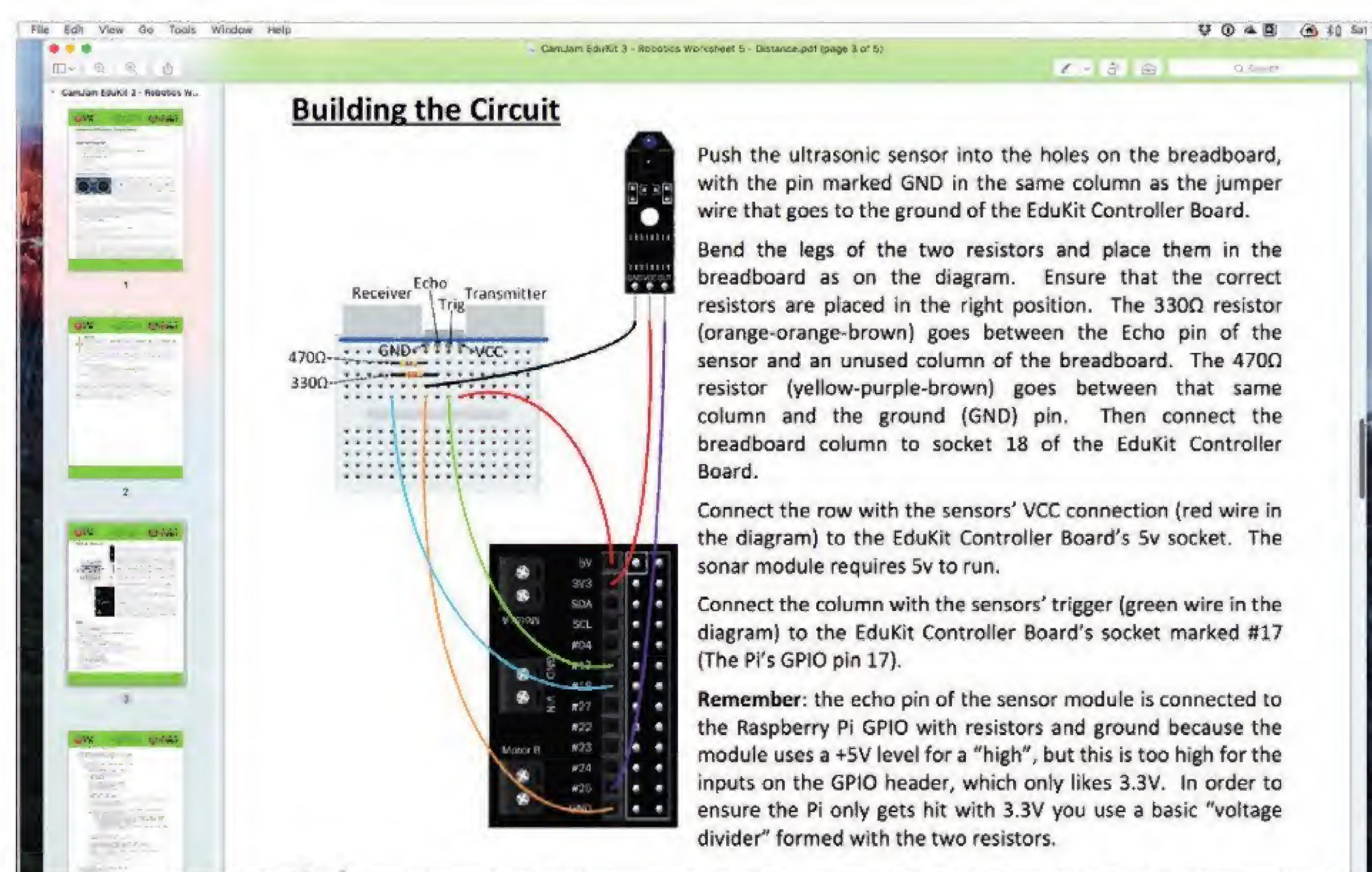
Add Sensors to the Robot

Now that your robot is built and moving around, it's time to give it some smarts. The two sensors can be used by the robot to react to its surroundings; either following a line or avoiding obstacles.

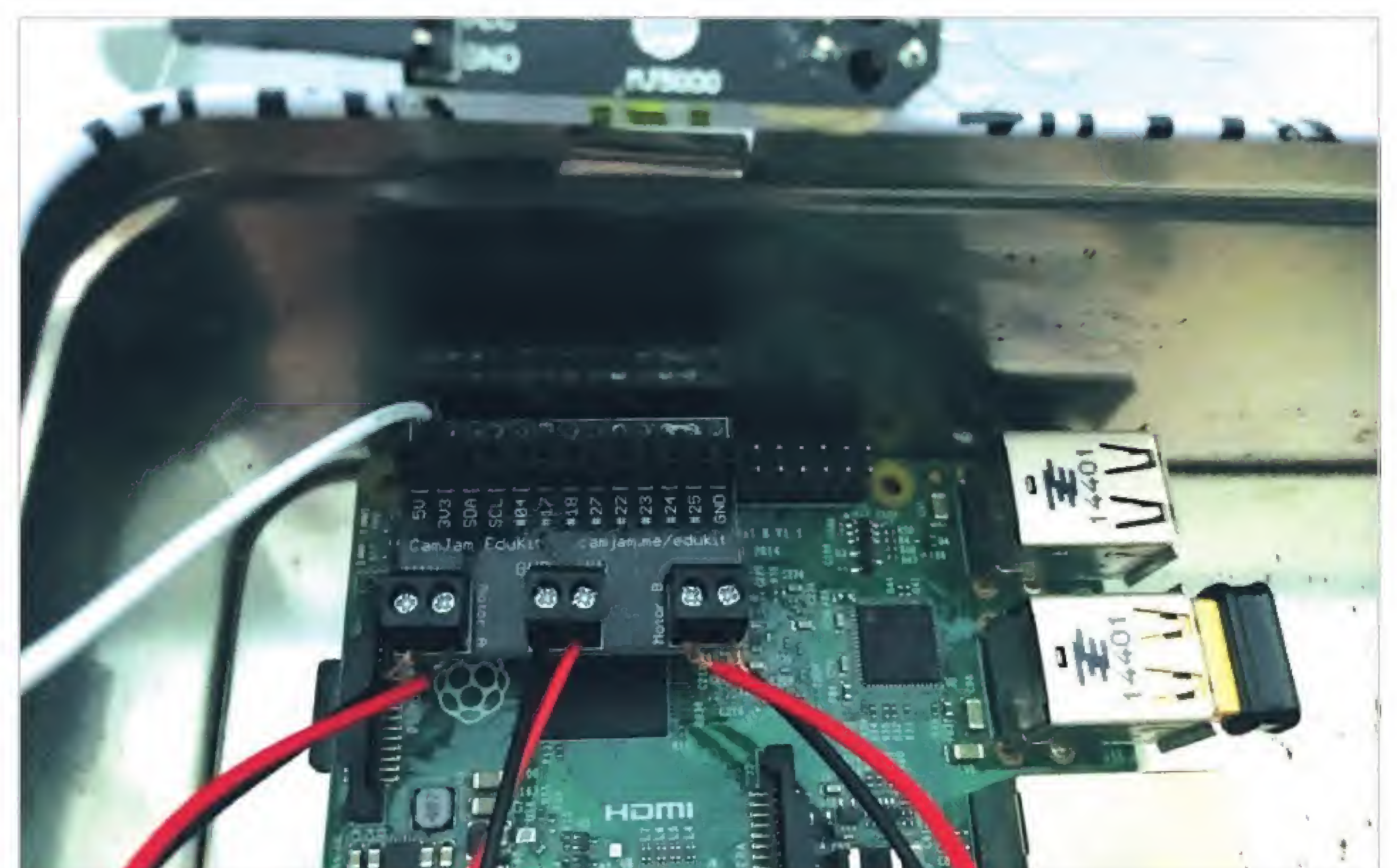
ULTRASONIC AND LINE SENSING

Your robot has two sensors, an Ultrasonic and a Line Detector. The Ultrasonic is the one that looks like eyes and fits into the breadboard. The Line Detector has a small blue camera on one side and fits underneath the robot.

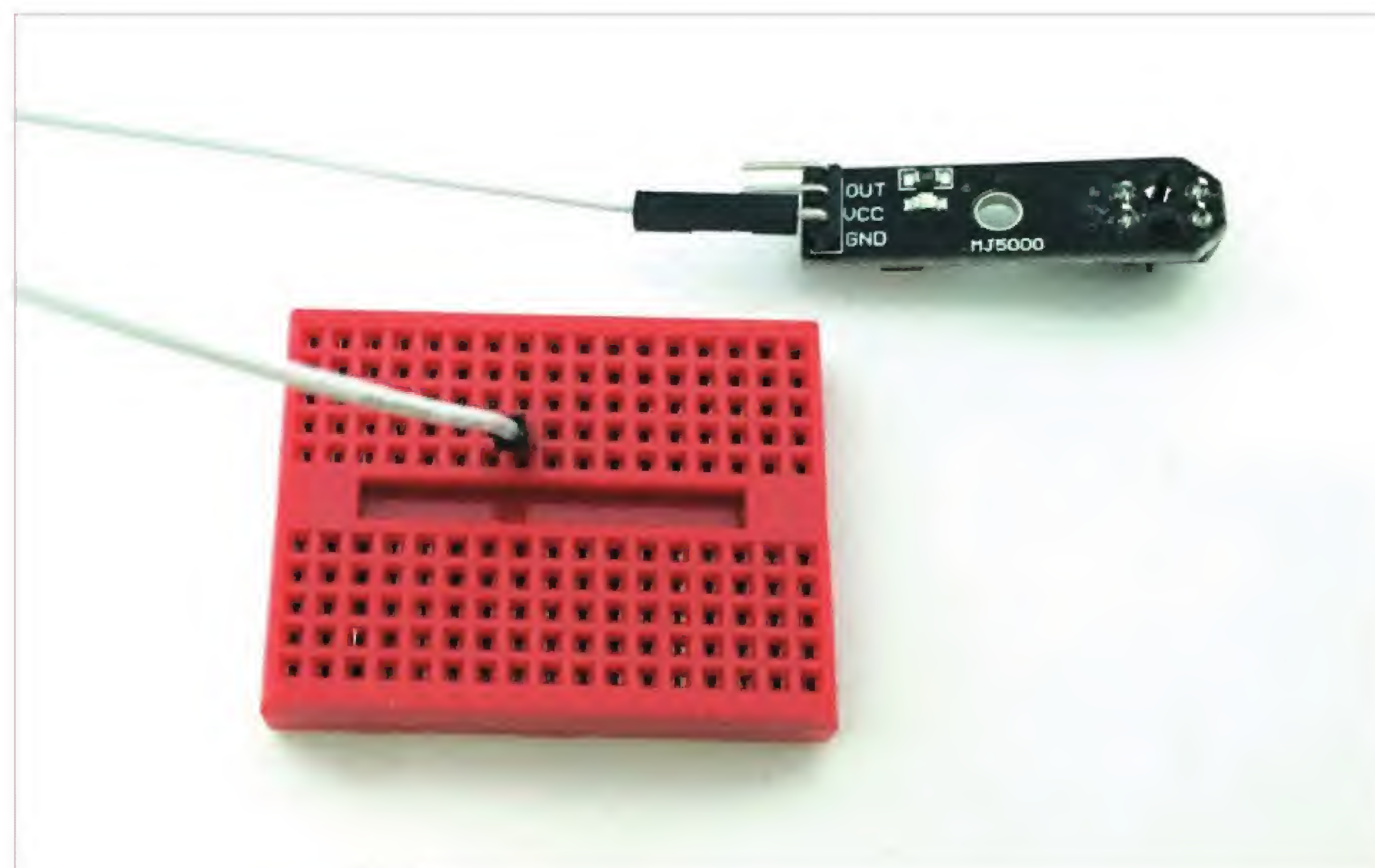
STEP 1 Open the CamJam website (camjam.me/?page_id=1035#worksheets) and download Worksheet 4 and Worksheet 5. Worksheet 4 is just for the Line Detector, while worksheet 5 is for both sensors. Make sure you take a good look at the Building the Circuit diagram in Worksheet 5 and keep it with you during this tutorial.



STEP 3 Use a regular male-male jumper cable and place it next to the jumper in the breadboard in the same column, fifth row. Connect the other end to the GND of the EduKit Controller Board. Now take another female-male jumper wire and connect it from the VCC pin on the Line Detector to the 3V3 (3.3 volts) pin on the EduKit Controller Board.



STEP 2 Make sure that the robot isn't currently powered. If it is use VNC and shutdown the Raspberry Pi and disconnect the power to the Raspberry Pi. Locate one of the female-male jumper wires and connect the female end to the GND pin on the Line Detector. Connect the other end to the breadboard in the eighth column, fourth row (as shown here).



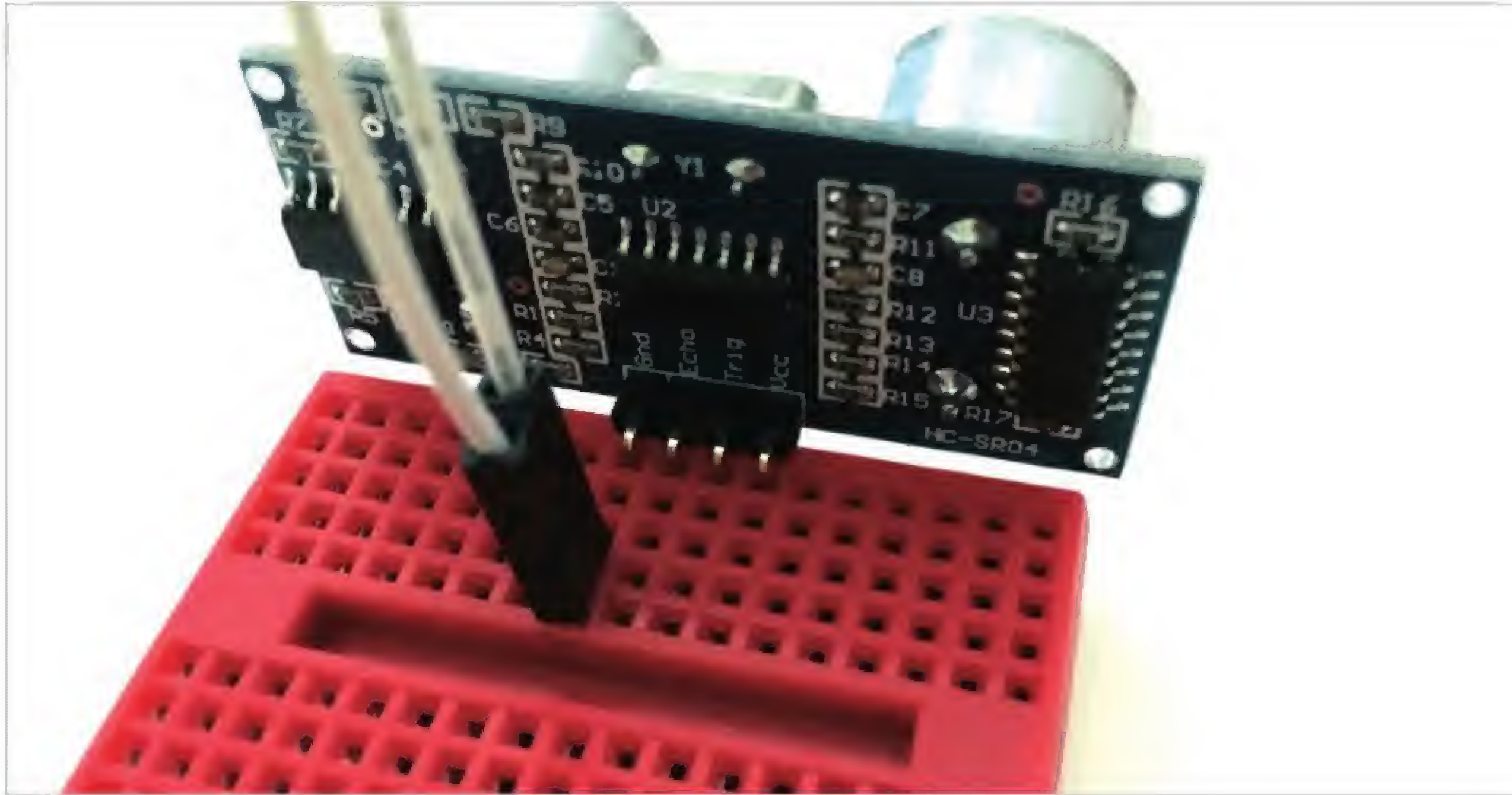
STEP 4 Next take a third female-male jumper cable and connect it to the OUT pin of the Line Detector.

Connect the other end to pin 25 on the EduKit Controller Board. This pin is used as the input pin to get a reading from the Line Detector. Note that the colours of your wires may not match the ones in the Worksheet diagram and it doesn't matter which colour you use.

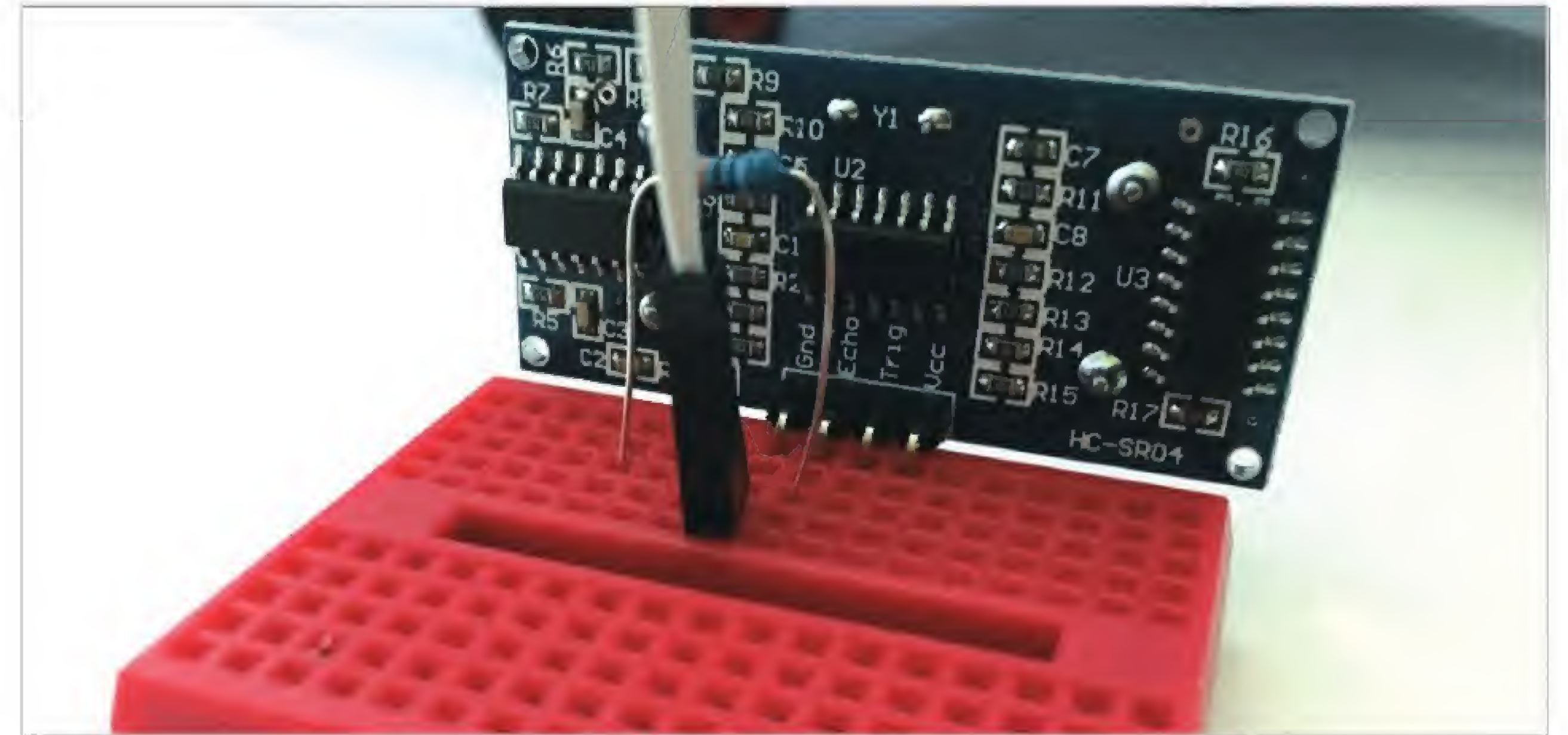


**STEP 5**

Now it's time for the Ultrasonic Sensor. Take it out of its packaging and slot it gently into the breadboard. Make sure the GND pin is in a hole in the same column as the GND pins from Step 2 (as shown in this photo). The Echo, Trig and VCC pins should be in the breadboard holes to the right.

**STEP 6**

Take a good look at the resistors in the tutorial. You need a 330Ω resistor. This should be orange-orange-brown-gold or Orange, Orange, Black, Black, Brown. Bend both pins to form a U-shape and insert one end in same column as the Echo pin on the sensor. The other end goes into an unused column on the left.

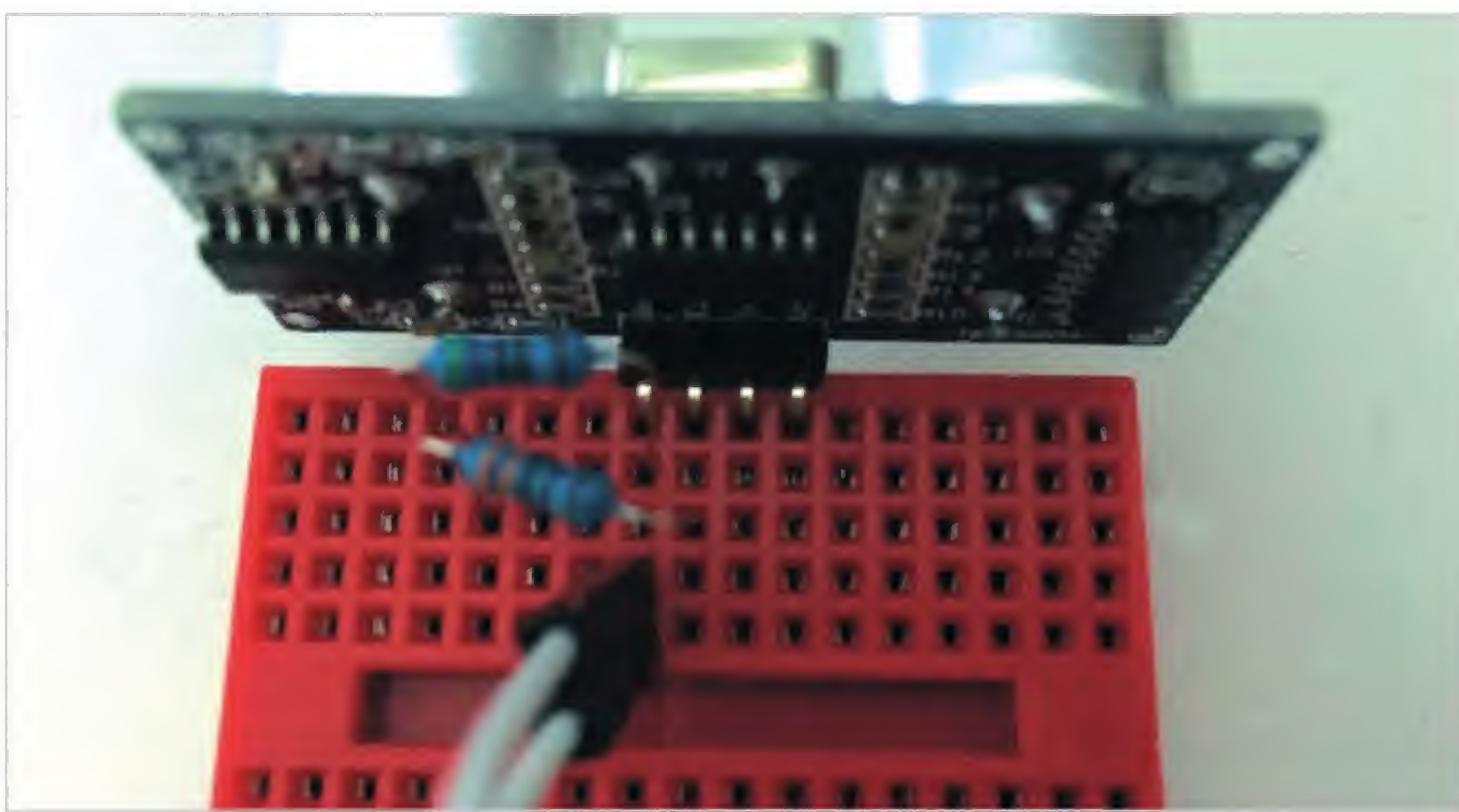


BUILDING THE CIRCUIT

You've started putting together the circuit but now need to use the resistors and remaining cables. The resistor is used with Echo because the sensor needs a +5v but the Raspberry Pi input only likes 3.3v. Be sure to check the resistors carefully.

STEP 1

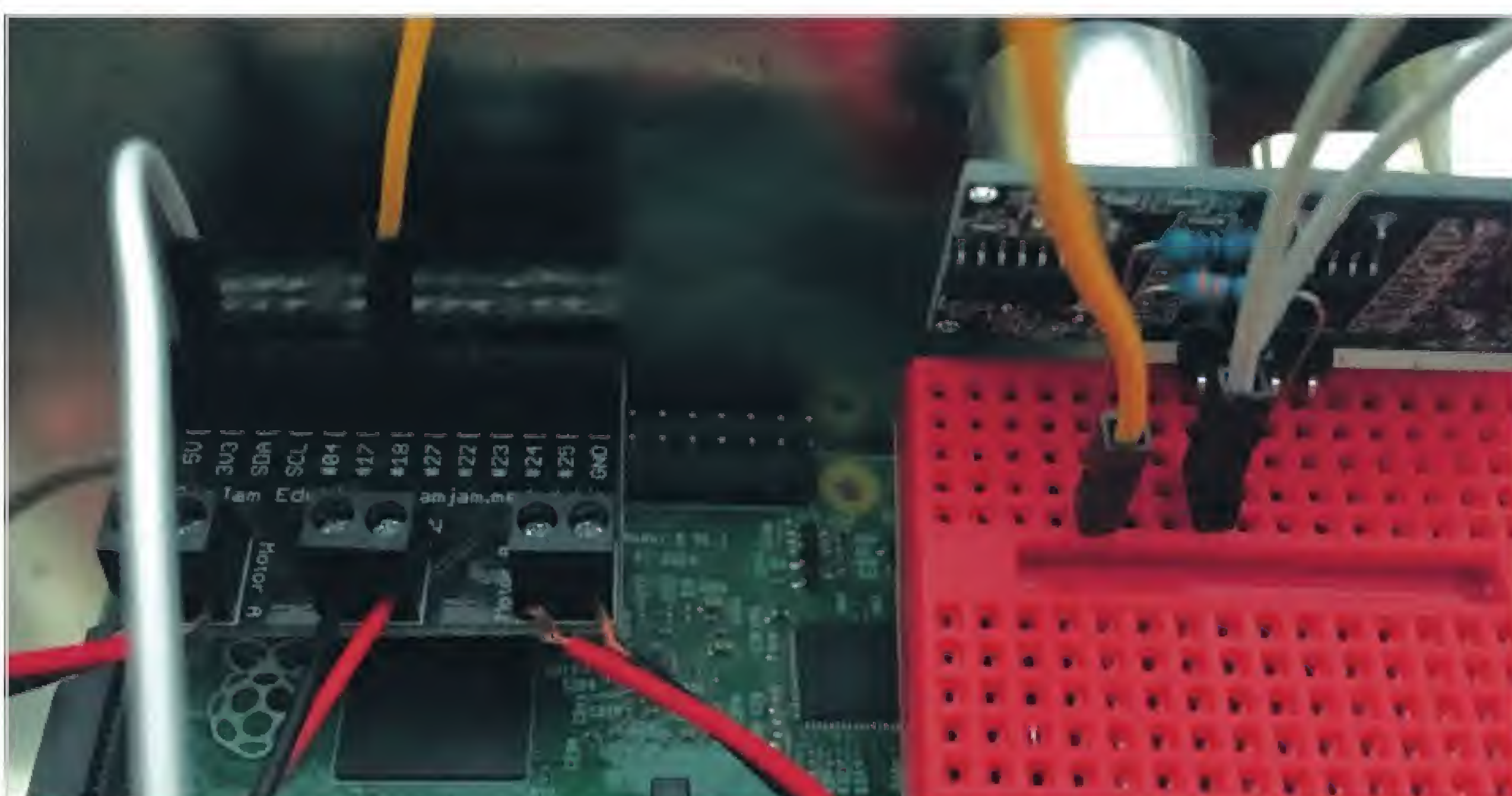
Now you're going to use a 470Ω resistor, which should be yellow-purple-brown or Yellow, Violet, Black, Black, Brown. One end goes in the same column as the GND pin on the sensor, the other into the same column next to 330Ω resistor from Step 6.

**STEP 3**

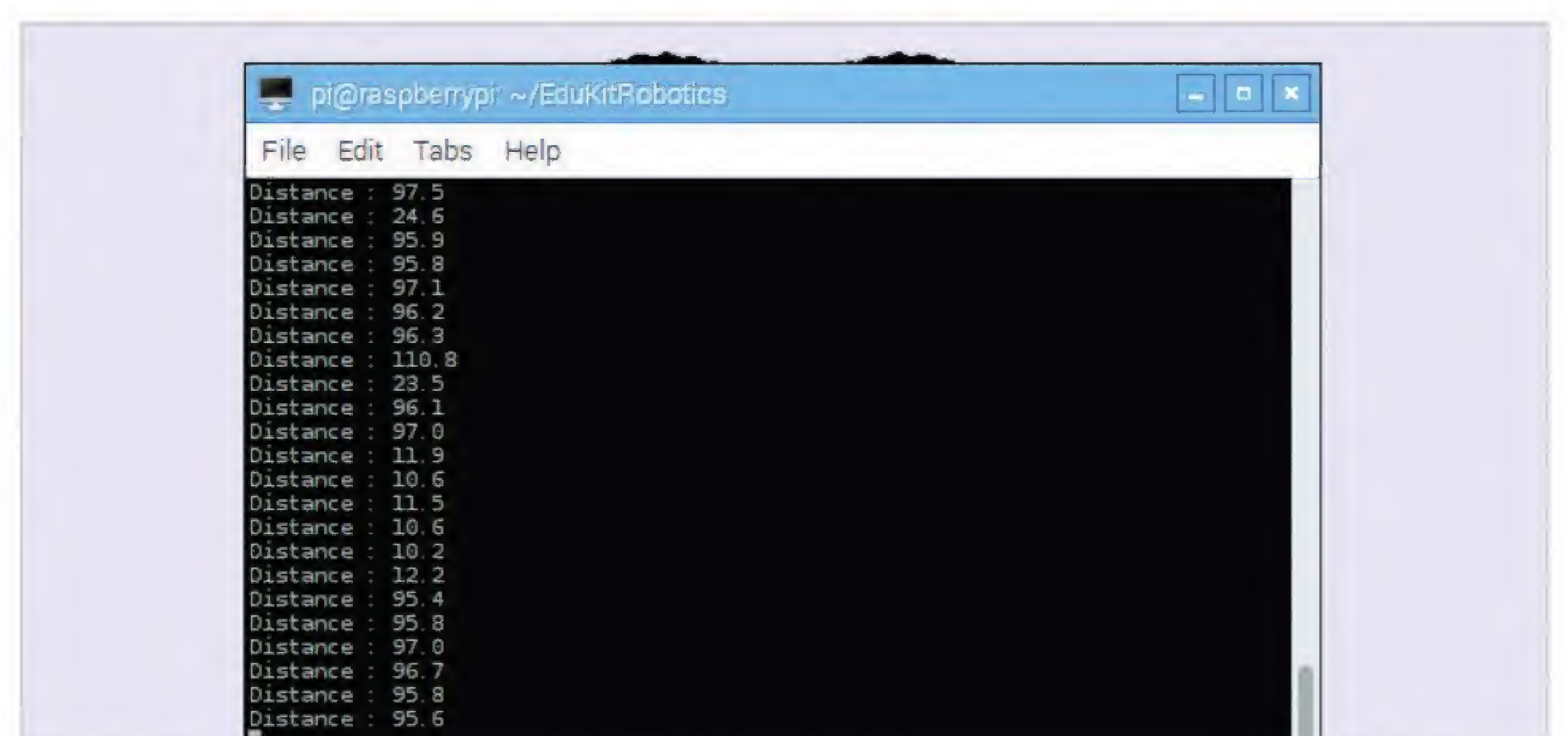
With everything wired up, take the double-sided tape off the bottom of the breadboard and attach it to the top of your robot, with the sensor facing outwards. Use some of the double-sided tape that's spare and connect the Line Detector to the bottom of your robot making sure the lens faces down.

**STEP 2**

Next take a jumper cable and place one end in the same column as the two resistors. Place the other end in Pin 18 of the EduKit Controller Board. Use a second jumper to connect the VCC connection to the EduKit Controller Board's 5v socket. A third jumper connects the Trig column to Pin 17.

**STEP 4**

Now create the 5-distance.py code and place it in your EduKitRobotics directory. Use python3 5-distance.py to run the code and you will see distances appear on the screen. Place your hand in front of the sensor and watch how it adjusts accordingly. Now use the movement code with the sensor code to make your robot smart. Happy robotics.





Amazing Robotics Projects to Try

Building a robotics project is one of the most rewarding things you can do with Python and few things are cooler than a proper working robot. Here are some of the best robotics projects you can find.

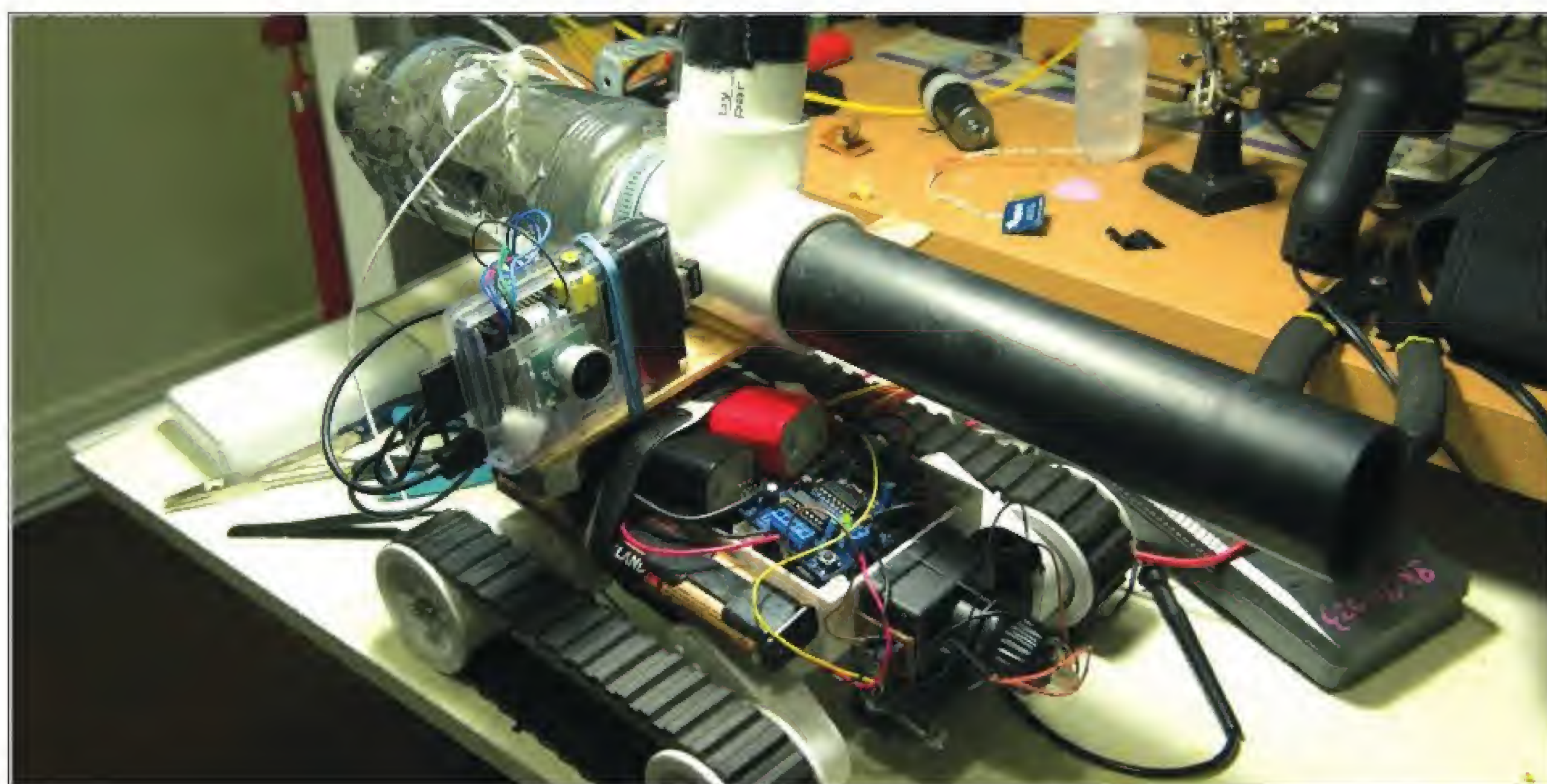
SERVOS AND CONTROLLERS

Robots use servo motors to move wheels etc. These require regular pulse signals to move to the right position, which the Raspberry Pi isn't that great at sending. Most projects use a Pi alongside separate microcontrollers.

PI TANK

The PiTank is a web controlled tank that fires ping-pong balls. The firing mechanism is based on a spud gun and it's controlled using a web browser that displays real-time video streaming. It's powered by a Raspberry Pi and Arduino and uses the Raspberry Pi Camera and Adafruit Servo Board.

More info: bit.ly/1PMqdIY



SPY TANK

While the PiTank fires guns, the Spy Tank is designed to roll around and provide video feedback. It uses a fully 3D printed case and the Raspberry Pi communicates over WiFi. A GoPiGo board is used to control the two motors that move the Spy Tank around. The Raspberry Pi Camera Module is used to bounce video over the network to where you are monitoring it.

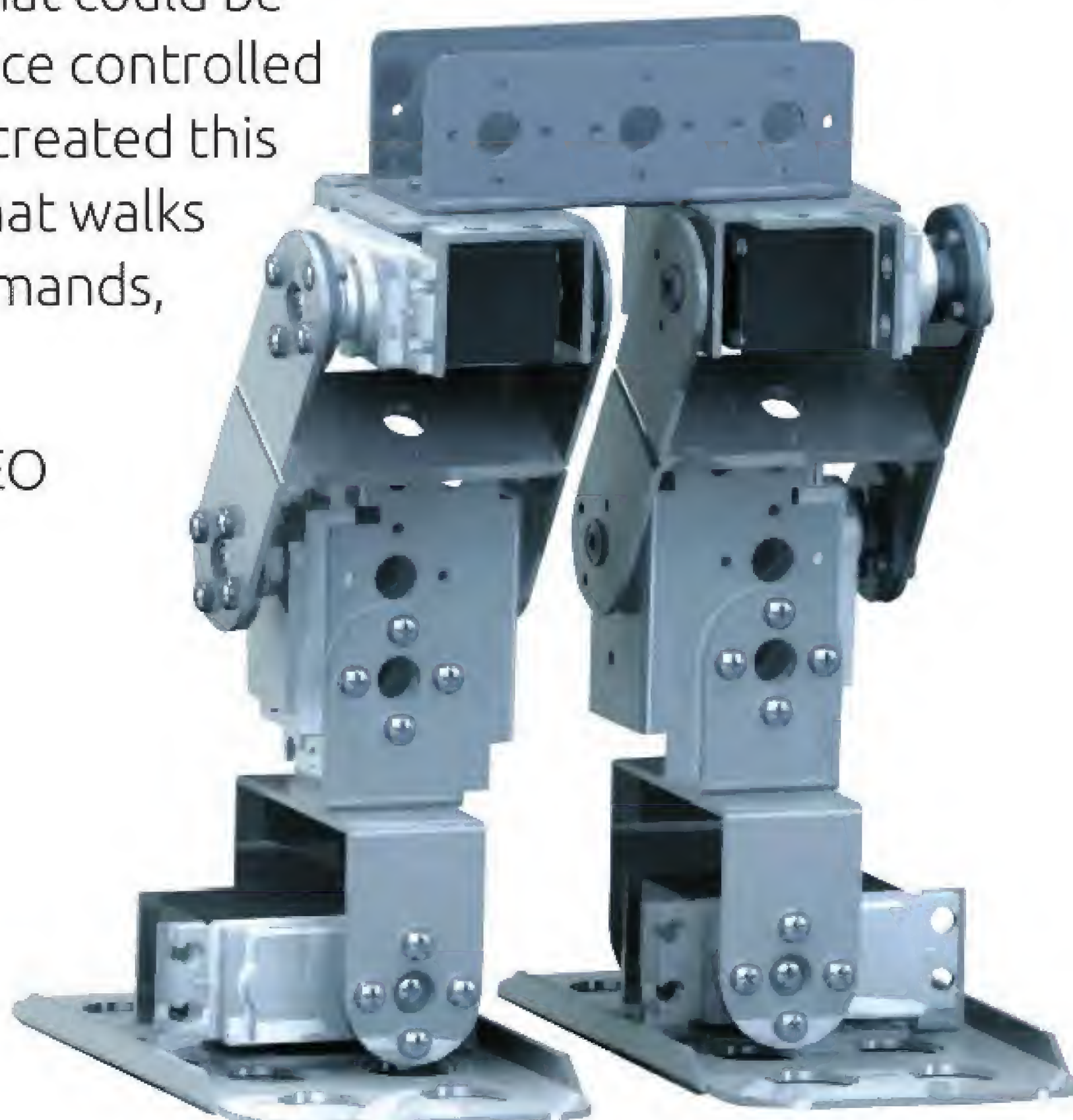
More info: bit.ly/1PMqqMt



ROBOT - RECOGNITION FROM VOICE

Thanks to Siri and OK Google, voice control is fairly commonplace in consumer gadgets. So what could be cooler than creating a voice controlled robot. Alexis Ospitia has created this fabulous looking robot that walks in response to voice commands, and it speaks back.

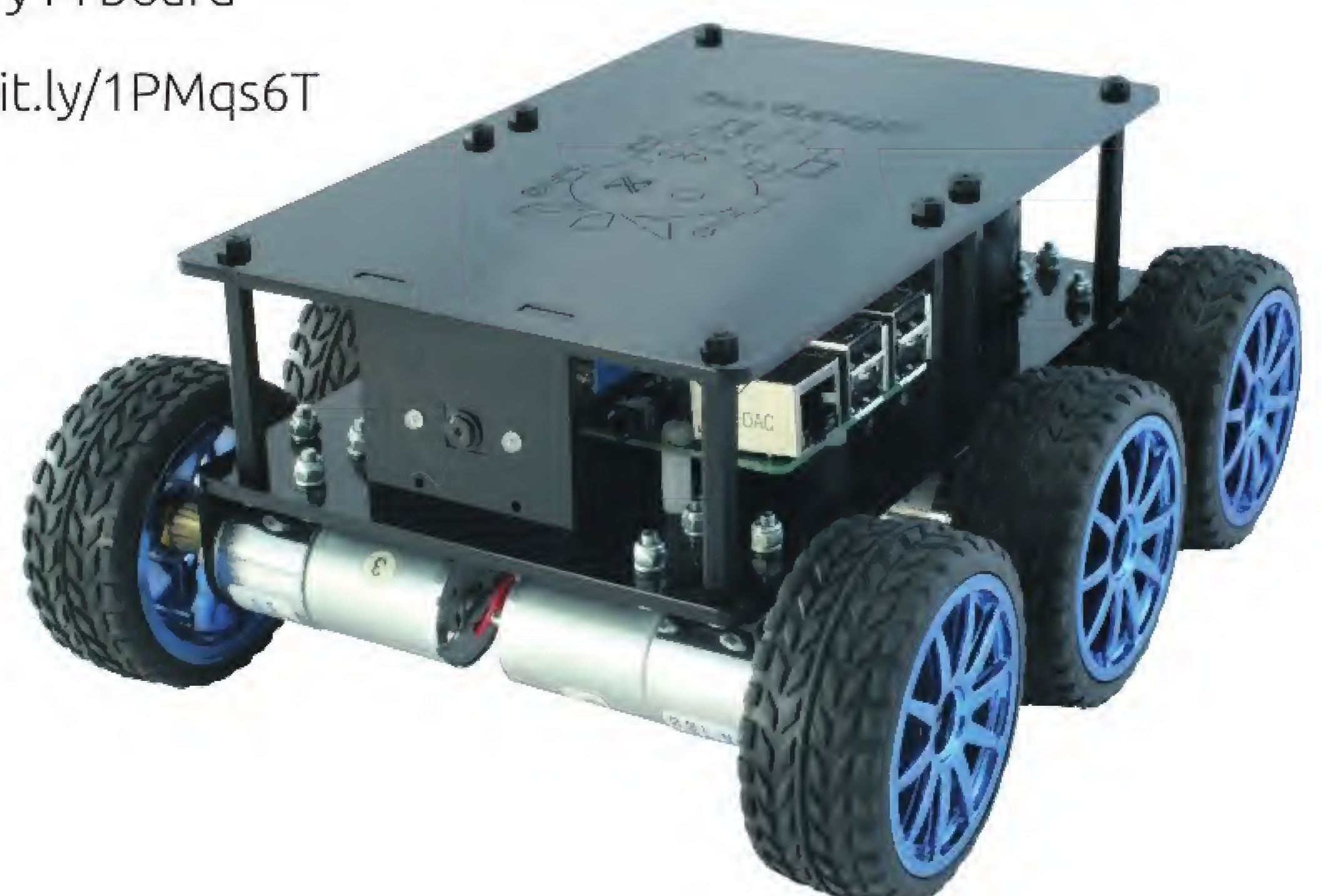
More info: bit.ly/1PMqgEO



DIDDYBORG

If you're looking for a robot kit that is relatively easy to assemble and supremely powerful, then the DiddyBorg is the one to go for. The DiddyBorg kit comes with a laser cut chassis, six motors, a PicoBorg Revers motor controller and full build instructions. All you need to add is the Raspberry Pi board

More info: bit.ly/1PMqs6T





RFID MUSIC ROBOT

Radio frequency identification (RFID) uses electromagnetic fields to transfer data and it's the technology used in contactless smart cards. This RFID Music Robot plays music when the right tag is held next to it. It's a great looking project and is also a nice way to make something using RFID technology.

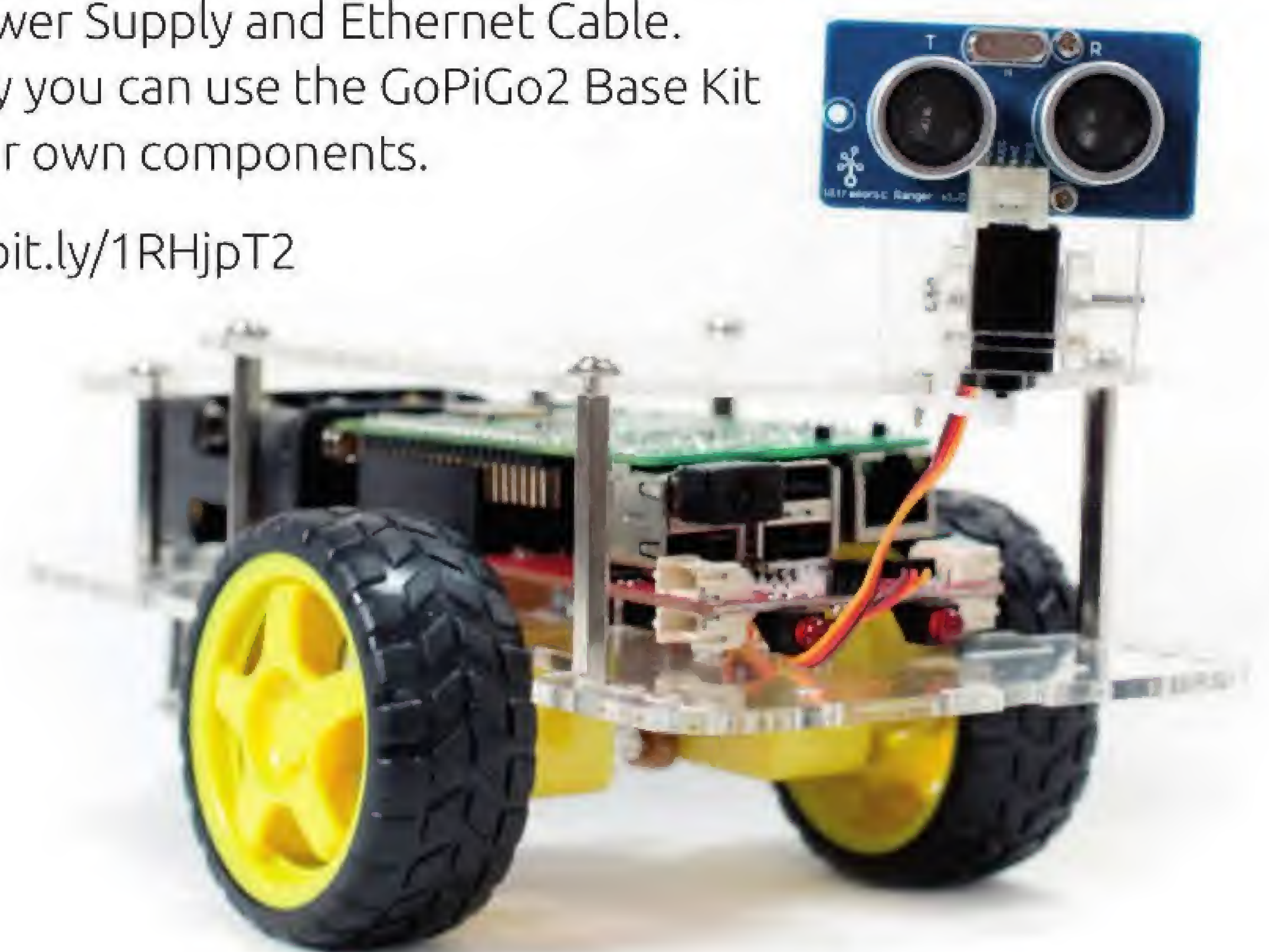
More info: bit.ly/1PMr4JM



GOPIGO

GoPiGo is a popular robot car kit for Raspberry Pi. The Starter Kit includes everything you need to get started from scratch: a GoPiGo2 Base Kit, Raspberry Pi B+, Wi-Fi Dongle, GoPiGo Servo Package, Ultrasonic Sensor, micro SD Card, Power Supply and Ethernet Cable. Alternatively you can use the GoPiGo2 Base Kit and add your own components.

More info: bit.ly/1RHjpT2



DRONE PROJECTS

Building a drone is not a task to be taken lightly. Drones, especially quadcopters, are the most compelling robotics project of our time but it's not easy to control a flying robot carefully and safely.

DRONE PI

Drone Pi is a project currently underway that combines a Multiwii (multiwii.com) with a Raspberry Pi. The Multiwii looks after the four motors and the Raspberry Pi collects information and communicates with a smartphone. The phone is used to monitor footage from the camera and control the drone.

More info: bit.ly/1RHjlgY



ZEPPALOON

Not all drones have to be quadcopters and there's a lot to be said for creating a different project such as this Zeppaloon. Kongsberg is an international technology corporation that was created to teach students all about the technology they use to operate offshore vessels. It uses a Navio2 flight controller.



CARDBOARD QUADCOPTER

The cardboard quadcopter is an autonomous drone with the frame built out of cardboard. It was built by four students at Olin College of engineering for a class called Principles of Engineering and the details have been put online. It uses a HobbyKing Multi-Rotor Control Board V2.1 to control the four motors.

More info: bit.ly/1RHjR3N



RPAS DRONE

A great drone project to try is the RPAS Drone. This uses a Navio2 flight controller and Raspberry Pi 2 combination with a remote control aircraft. The result is a remote control aircraft that sends video stream over a 4G network. This means it can be flown remotely, or set on autopilot, while the video stream is monitored from the ground.

More info: bit.ly/1RHkmuz





Arcade Machine Projects

The Raspberry Pi is a great device for emulating old arcade machines and consoles; its GPIO pins make it easy to embed inside arcade machine cabinets and cases. It's a fun project and one that's extremely entertaining.

BOX BUILDING

The big challenge with most arcade cabinets isn't the electronics but the cabinet. Big, heavy and mostly wooden they are a real project to get stuck into. You can buy cabinets though and just concentrate on building the circuits.

RASPi TWO-PLAYER ARCADE COFFEE TABLE

If you're looking to rebuild the classic arcade machine coffee tables from yesteryear, then this project is a great one to follow. It shows you how to place two arcade machine controllers and fourteen buttons inside a wooden case with a 20-inch monitor.

More info: [instructables.com/id/RasPi-Two-Player-Arcade-Coffee-Table/](https://www.instructables.com/id/RasPi-Two-Player-Arcade-Coffee-Table/)



GALACTIC STARCADE

If you want an upright display but don't have the space for

a full arcade machine cabinet then building a bartop is the way to go. Bartops are mini arcade machines that sit on top of a table. This project builds a bartop from MDF board and a 19-inch TFT monitor.

More info: [instructables.com/id/2-Player-Bartop-Arcade-Machine-Powered-by-Pi/](https://www.instructables.com/id/2-Player-Bartop-Arcade-Machine-Powered-by-Pi/)



MULTI-CADE

If you want to build a classic upright standing arcade cabinet, then this project is the one to follow. It shows you how to take apart an old arcade machine cabinet and replace the insides with a Raspberry Pi. You can also make your own cabinet from scratch and kits are available (arcadeworlduk.com).

More info: [instructables.com/id/Multi-Cade-Powered-by-Raspberry-Pi/](https://www.instructables.com/id/Multi-Cade-Powered-by-Raspberry-Pi/)



NaCADE

We love this naked arcade machine known as NaCade. It's much smaller and more portable than other arcade projects. The box is made from 3mm clear acrylic and the display is a normal 7-inch LCD. The controls are a regular arcade joystick and buttons. It's even solar powered. Who couldn't love a solar powered retro arcade machine with all the insides on show?

More info: [instructables.com/id/NaCade-The-Naked-Raspberry-Pi-Arcade-Machine/](https://www.instructables.com/id/NaCade-The-Naked-Raspberry-Pi-Arcade-Machine/)





PORTA-PI MINI ARCADE

The Porta-Pi is a mini arcade machine with full size controls and micro switched buttons. It's more retro than most micro machines, being made from 0.25-inch oak plywood; others are typically made from acrylic or plastic. It's tiny but oozes quality and we think it's a great project to build.

More info: instructables.com/id/Build-your-own-Mini-Arcade-Cabinet-with-Raspberry/



BARTOP MINI RETRO ARCADE

What makes this bartop special?

Well, it uses an old ION iCade cabinet (ionaudio.com) as its base; these can be picked up on eBay for around £30. An 8 inch display is fitted instead of an iPad and the controls are wired up to it via USB. It's a lot easier than other similar projects because you don't have to build the cabinet.

More info: instructables.com/id/Bartop-Mini-Retro-Arcade-Raspberry-Pi-and-Customis/



LAPTOP PROJECTS

Building a laptop is another great project, as it enables you to create and test Python code on the move on your own hardware. There are a few laptop kits and projects to choose from. Here are our favourites.

PI-TOP

The Pi-Top is one of the most famous Raspberry Pi laptop projects. It combines a 3D printed case with a 13.3-inch LCD screen and keyboard. You can 3D print the case yourself or buy the parts as you need them from Pi-Top. The kit also uses a Smart Battery Pack and Hub for power management.

More info: pi-top.com



NETBOOK

Most laptops are slender and light but this is a real sturdy option made from a recycled aluminium case. Fitted in the case is a 7-inch LCD panel with a logic board, fitted keyboard and Raspy Juice PCB board (code.google.com/p/raspy-juice/). It's battery powered and has a lot of additional features. It's a great package for Raspberry Pi on the move.

More info: instructables.com/id/LapPi-A-Raspberry-Pi-Netbook/



ALL-IN-ONE WITH TOUCHSCREEN

This is a smart looking project that recycles an Android display case with a tablet keyboard and official Raspberry Pi Touchscreen. (swag.raspberrypi.org/products/raspberry-pi-7-inch-touchscreen-display). Power is supplied using a 5200mAh power bank. If you can scavenge some of the parts you can make this for much less than the other options.

More info: instructables.com/id/Raspberry-Pi-All-In-One-With-Touchscreen/



ULTIMATE LAPTOP

With so many other great options on display, calling this the "ultimate" is taking a chance. Mind you, it's a really great looking laptop made from aluminium sheets. Inside the sheets there's a 9-inch LCD display, four port USB hub, WiFi, speakers, keyboard, trackpad and 10400mAh USB power bank. How stylish your laptop will be depends on your metalworking skills and there are slicker professional options. It's a great project for learning the art of laptop building.

More info: instructables.com/id/The-Ultimate-Raspberry-Pi-Laptop/





Security Projects

Creating devices enables you to track, monitor and get alerts with the best coding projects; including the stealthiest spy gadgets and serious home security; there's bound to be something here that you'll find useful.

MONITOR AND ALERT

The Raspberry Pi is a great device for spying and security. The Camera Module enables it to observe its surroundings and networking allows you to get alerts when it spots something. There are some really interesting projects here.

EASY SECURITY CAM

Creating a networked security camera is one of the best first projects you can create. As its name suggests this is an easy project that captures still images and uploads them to a WebAPI service. If the network is down then it caches the images and uploads them later.

More info:

instructables.com/id/Easy-Raspberry-Pi-Security-Cam-With-Automatic-Web/



PiNOCULARS

We love this project. You strap a Raspberry Pi 2 and Camera Module to a pair of binoculars and use an Adafruit TFT LCD to view and take pictures. It's a great guide too, leading you step-by-step through the project.

The end result is a high tech pair of binoculars that can be used for long range image capture. The project can be adapted for a telescope or microscope.

More info: instructables.com/id/PiNoculars-Raspberry-Pi-Binoculars/



TWITTER RASPBERRY Pi PHOTO LIVE FEED

This project uses a Waveshare Night Vision camera (waveshare.com/rpi-camera-f.htm) to capture images in the dark and then shares them directly to Twitter. Whilst it's a good security project, it's ideal for keeping an eye on pets or wildlife at night too. The script that makes use of the Twitter API is especially worth getting to know.

More info:

<http://www.instructables.com/id/Twitter-Photo-Live-Feed/>



SIMPLE TIME-LAPSE CAMERA

This cracking time-lapse camera project places a Raspberry Pi inside a coffee tin to build a time-lapse camera that can be left outdoors for an extended period of time. Illy coffee tins are fairly robust, reasonably watertight and can hold a microcomputer, Camera Module and battery pack. A simple script is used to capture images on a regular basis.

More info:

instructables.com/id/Simple-timelapse-camera-using-Raspberry-Pi-and-a-c/





MOTION DETECTION ALARM SYSTEM

The computer can detect motion in many ways but the simplest is to use any USB webcam to detect motion in a room. This project is light on hardware but walks you through using Reactive



Blocks (bitreactive.com) to build Java SE applications. You don't need any Java experience as everything is laid out for you.

More info:
instructables.com/
id/Motion-Detection-
Alarm-System/

SECRET INFRARED CAMERA

Want to keep an eye on your place when

you're not at home? Then the Secret Infrared Camera is a classic spy camera device that can record a room in complete darkness. It will then send you messages when it detects any activity. You'll need a Raspberry Pi NoIR Camera Board (raspberrypi.org/products/pi-noir-camera/) and a PIR sensor to detect movement.

More info:
instructables.com/
id/Make-a-secret-
IR-camera-security-
raspberry-pi-unit/



DIGITAL MEDIA

Media storage and playback is a classic use of homemade hardware and there is no shortage of unique projects to try out. Here we've found four of our favourite media related projects.

PIRATEBOX

Yaah, me hearties. The pirates still be floating after all these years. While file sharing online is a heartless task, this PirateBox creates a local Wi-Fi network completely independent from the Internet. This is then used with anonymous file sharing and chatting capabilities. So you can all share digital files locally, and it has a pretty nice case too.



More info:
instructables.com/
id/Raspberry-Pi-
PirateBox/

1981 PORTABLE VCR

Recycling old technology with modern innards is a great way to build a quirky, cool but still fully functional device. We think this 1981 Portable VCR Project is great; it takes an old video-recorder and places the excellent Raspbmc Media Centre software at its heart. It can then stream content like BBC iPlayer and YouTube or play back media files.

More info:
instructables.com/
id/1981-Portable-VCR-
Raspberry-PI-Media-
Centre/



VIDEO PLAYER FOR CHILDREN

Keeping children occupied is a challenge but this project will keep them entertained and stealthily introduce them to computer hardware. This video player is based around an ELI70-CR touchscreen and arcade buttons. The case is made from laser cut parts and files for the case and software are all included.

More info:
instructables.com/id/
Raspberry-Pi-video-
player-for-Children/

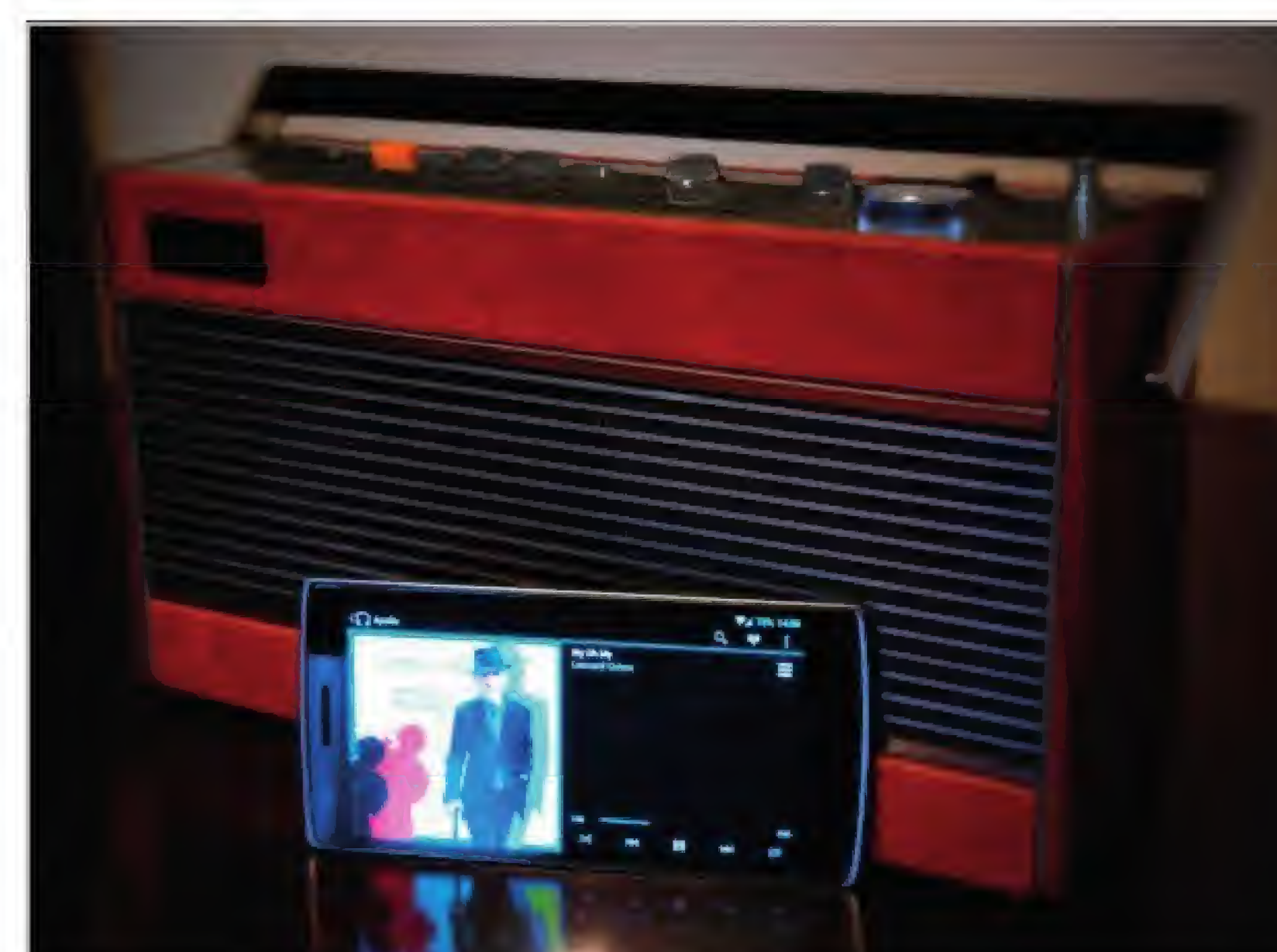


ROBERTS 747

Just as old VCRs make great media players, classic radios make amazing digital music boxes. This Roberts 747 is a classic radio from 1990 that has been transformed internally into a digital music player. It uses Pi MusicBox (pimusicbox.com) software that supports Spotify, AirPlay and Internet Radio. You select tracks using a web browser

from a smartphone and it looks identical to the original on the outside.

More info:
instructables.com/
id/Roberts-747-DIY-
Raspberry-Pi-internet-
radiostreamer/





Becoming a Coder

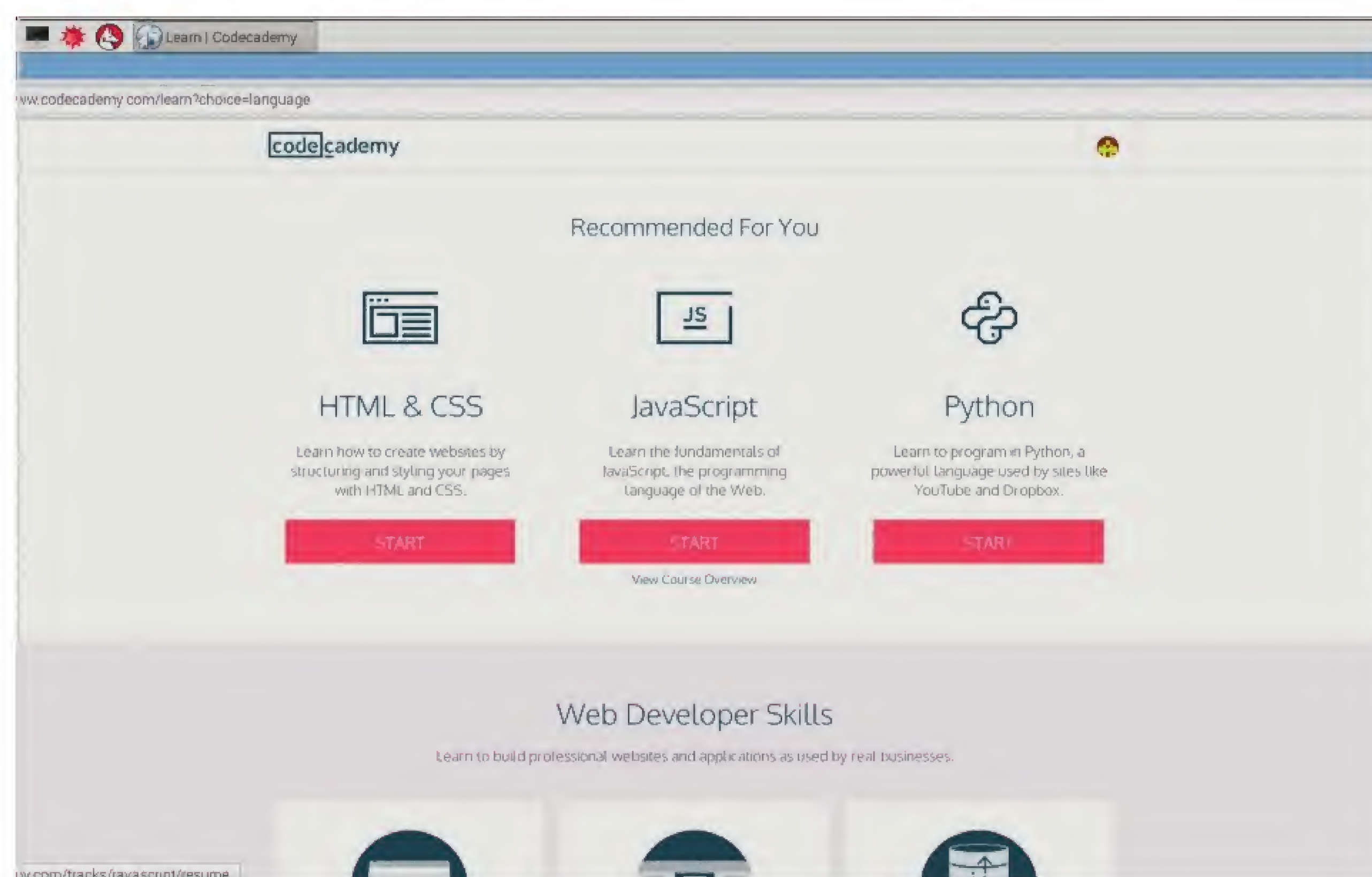
Well done for making it this far. With what you've learned you can confidently start to create engaging Python code. Don't stop now though, there's plenty more to learn to help you achieve great things.

LEARNING CODE

Learning to code any language, from absolute beginner to industry professional, is possible using nothing but free online resources. Some sites offer video tutorials, others offer interactive learning and there are hundreds of great books and websites to read.

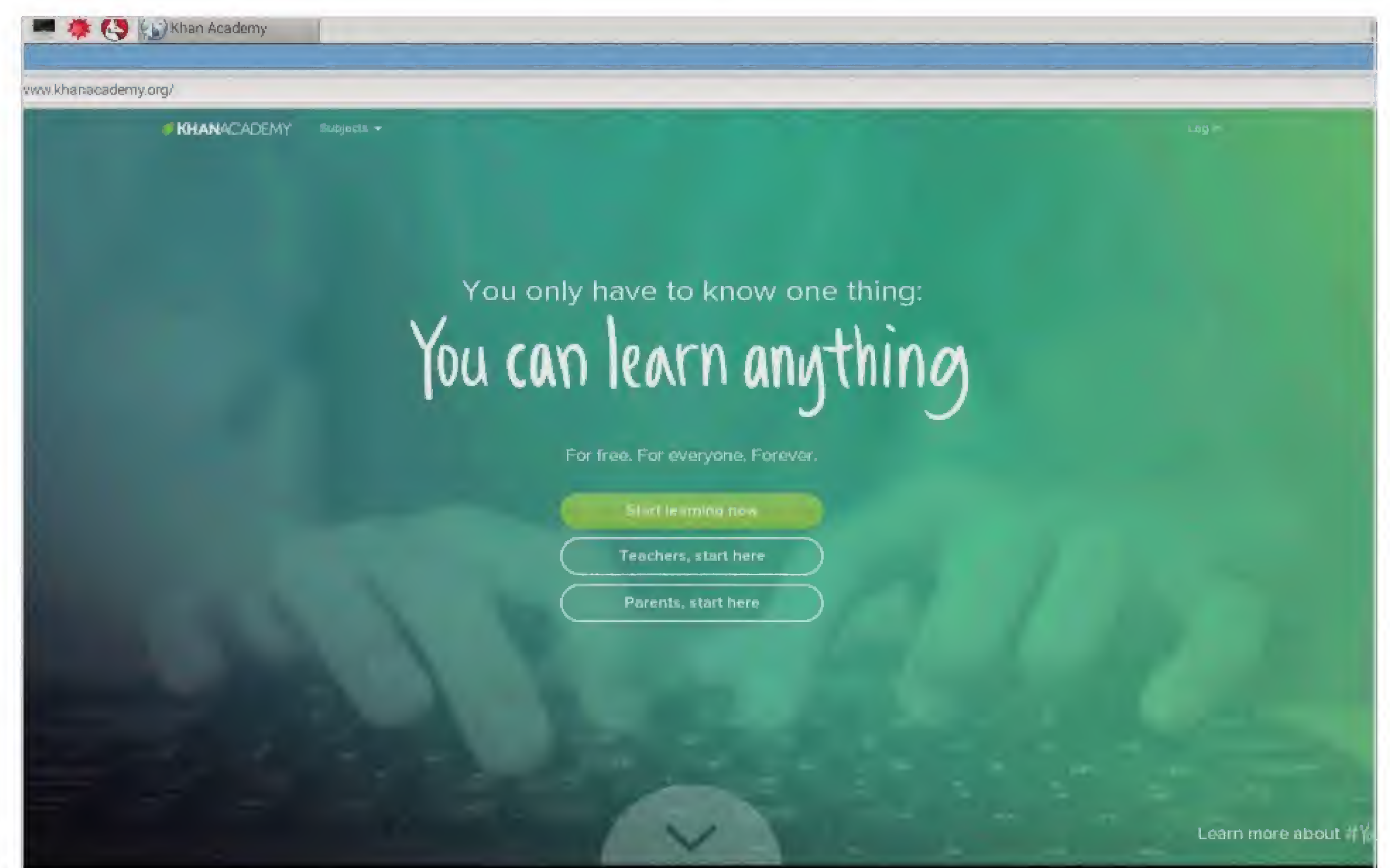
CODECADEMY

Codecademy (codecademy.com) is a good place to start. This website has interactive courses that walk you through the process of starting code. It turns coding into a game, with points and rewards for completion. Start with the HTML & CSS course, then move on to JavaScript or hone your Python skills.



KHAN ACADEMY

You don't need to be a mathematician to program. Programming is a mixture of abstraction and word structure; in many ways it's closer to poetry than maths. Having said that, sooner or later you might want to brush up on your maths skills. Khan Academy (khanacademy.org) is the place to go.



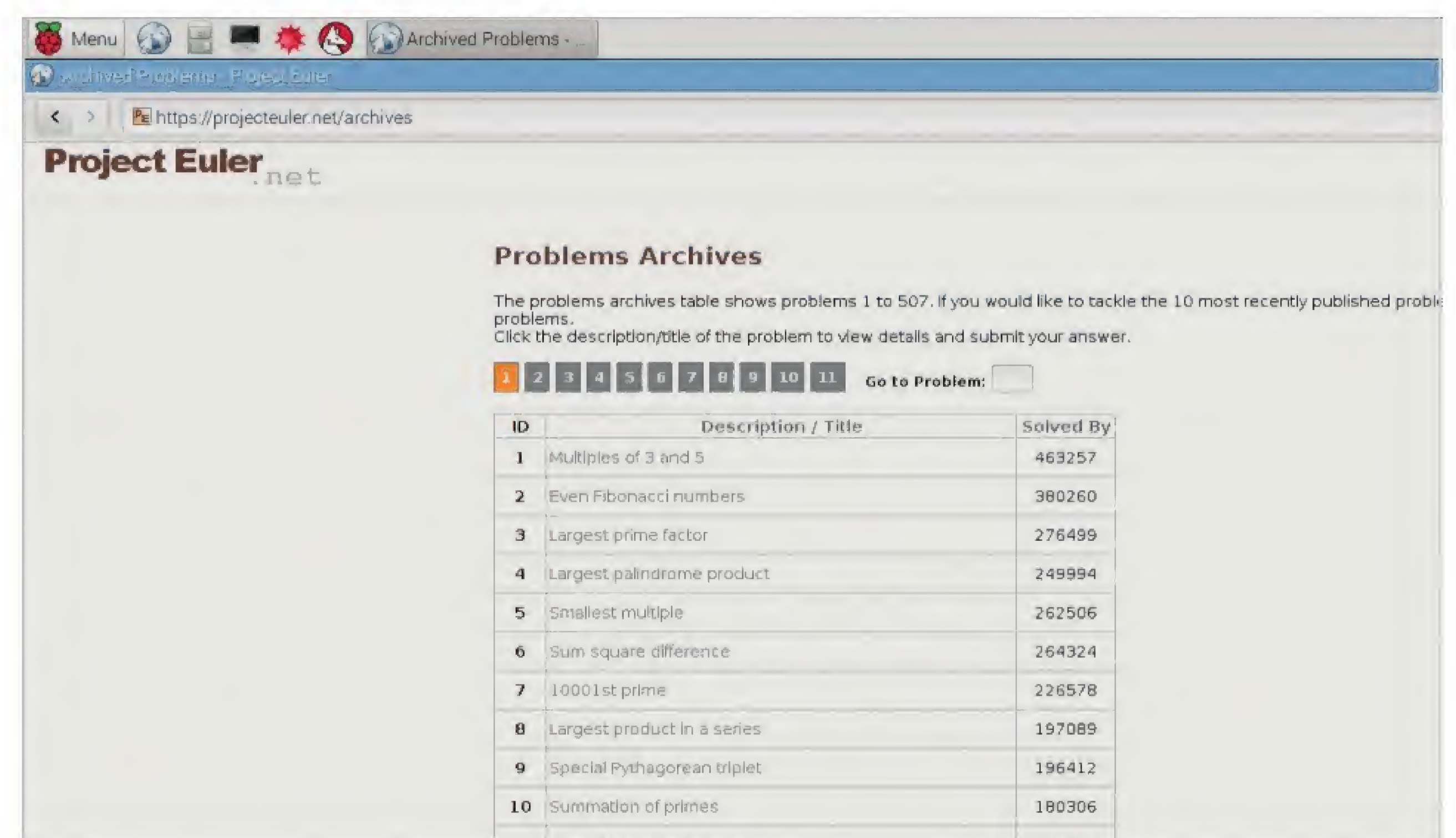
LEARN THE HARD WAY

Learn Python The Hard Way (learnpythonthehardway.org/book) is a well-established online course that's free to take; although you can pay to get additional materials like code downloads and videos. It's somewhat controversial and gets pretty tough towards the end but it really does take you through the nuts and bolts of computer programming.



PROJECT EULER

Once you've started to get the hang of the basics, you'll be in need of a few projects to try out. There's nothing worse than trying to come up with ideas for things to do with code. A good practice area is Project Euler (projecteuler.net/archives). This table lists an archive of programming problems. It's ideal for flexing your programming muscles.

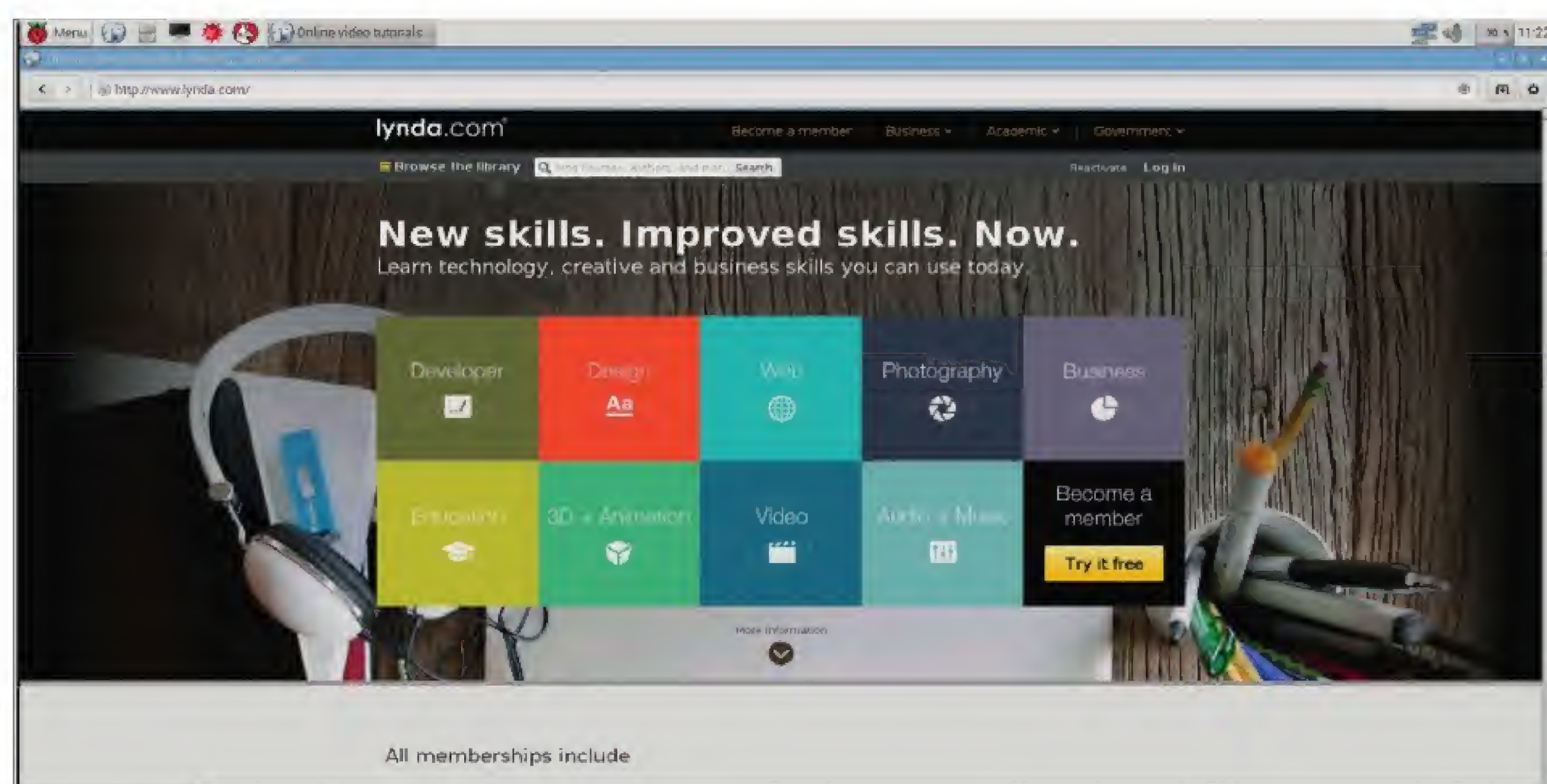




UDEMY.COM & LYND.COM

As you start to progress you may

want to move onto a more practical course. Both Udemy.com and Lynda.com have a range of good tutorials on a range of computing subjects. You have to pay for courses in Udemy, although they often have flash sales. Lynda.com has a wider range of subjects but requires a monthly fee. Both are great investments.



STACK OVERFLOW

Beyond the sites we've mentioned so far, there

are a huge list of resources available online. This web page on StackOverflow (stackoverflow.com/revisions/392926/175) collects a huge list of online computer books, programming tutorials and thought provoking articles. 97 Things Every Programmer Should Know is a good read (http://programmer.97things.oreilly.com/wiki/index.php/97_Things_Every_Programmer_Should_Know).

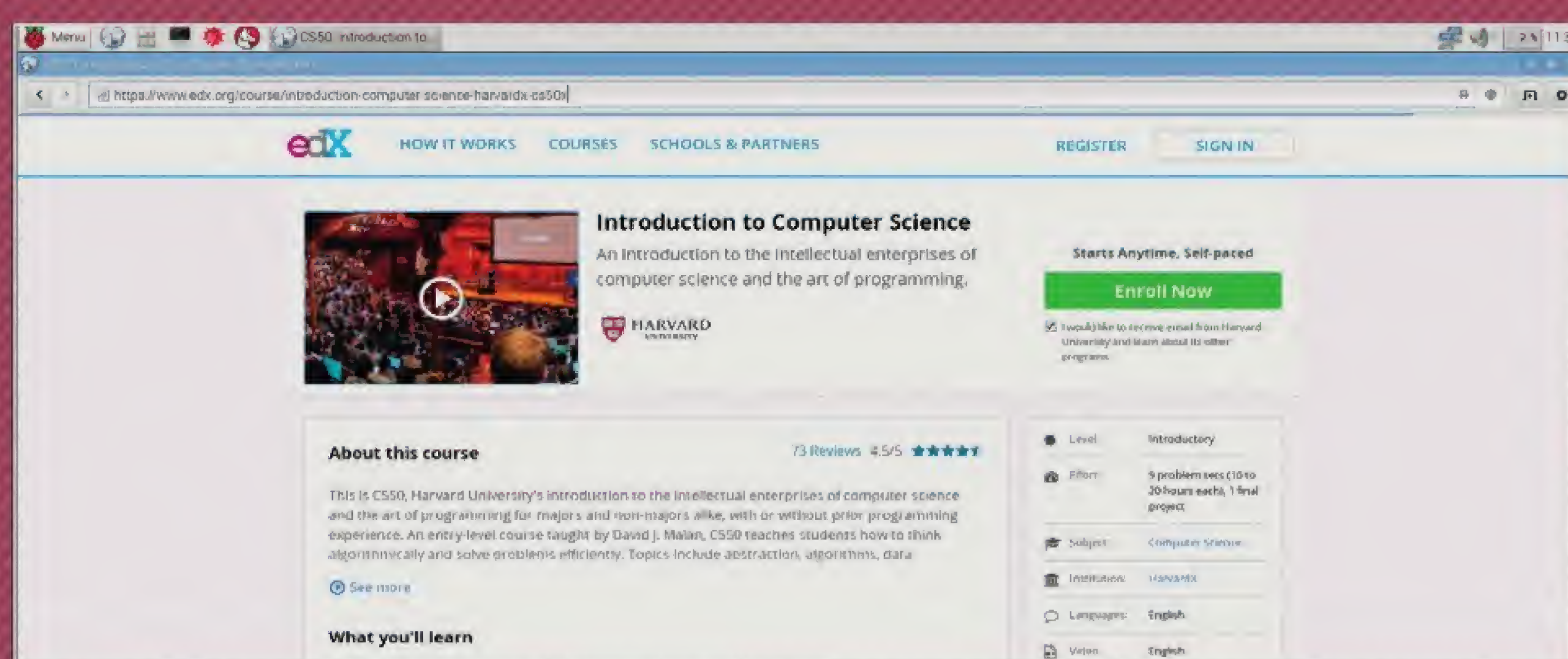


PROFESSIONAL LEARNING

MOOCS (Massive Open Online Courses) are a fantastic way to learn computer programming. These modern courses are often run by world class universities like Stanford, MIT and Harvard and offer you the chance to learn from the top experts in the world.

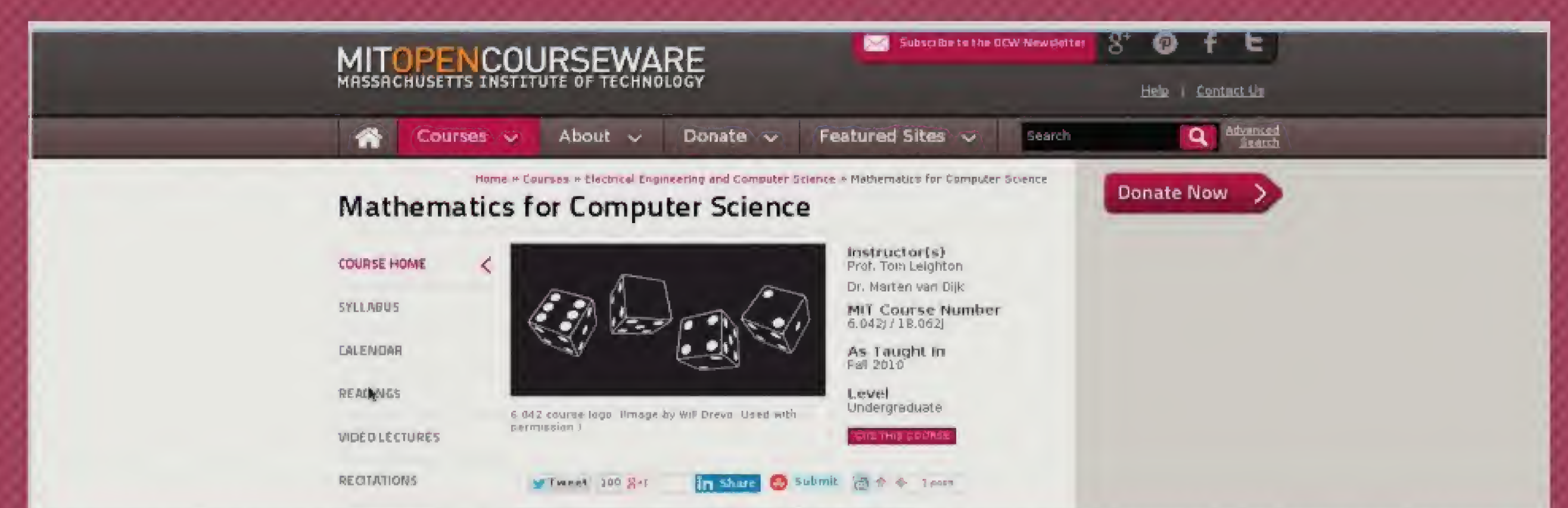
CS50

Harvard's CS50: Introduction to Computer Science (edx.org) is the best place to start. This online course can be covered at your own pace and offers a comprehensive introduction to the art of computer science and programming. It's designed for Harvard students with little or no knowledge of computing and you can get a verified certificate from it.



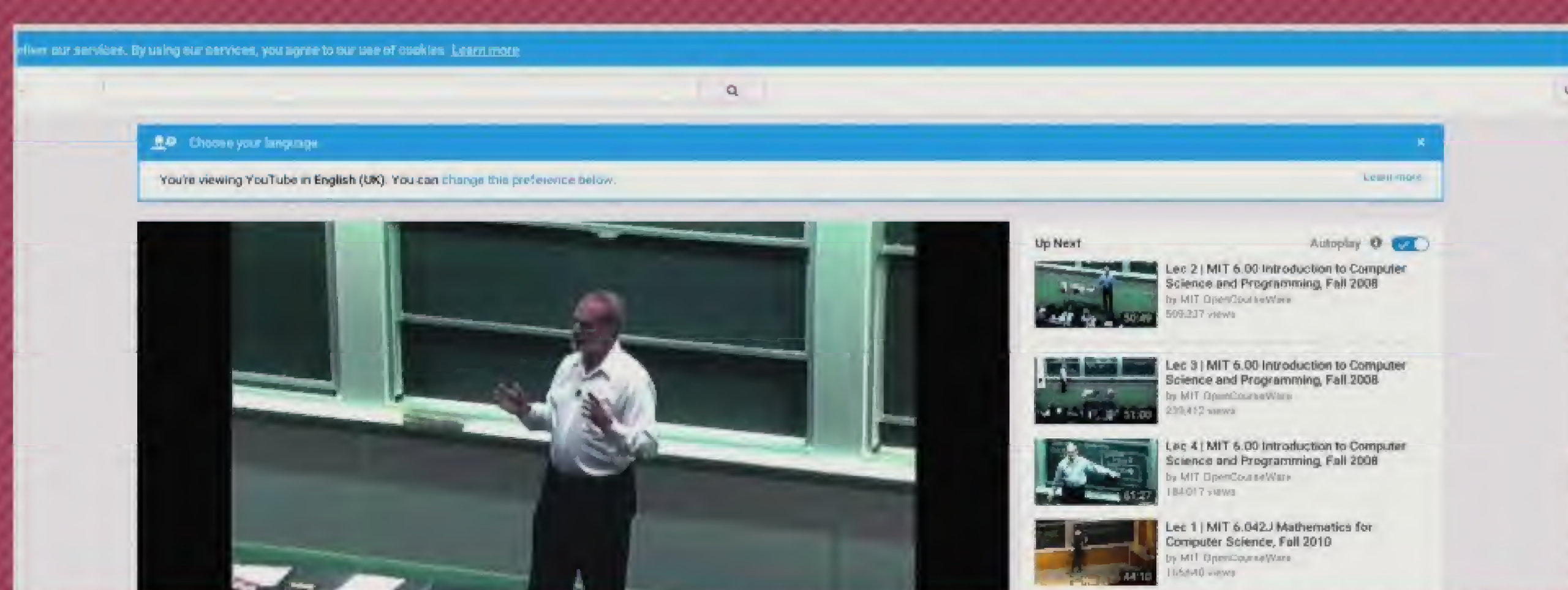
MATHEMATICS FOR COMPUTER SCIENCE

If you're going to get serious about computer science you need to get a good understanding of the mathematics involved. Use Khan Academy to catch up on any basics, then follow MIT's Mathematics for Computer Science (ocw.mit.edu/courses/electrical-engineering-and-computer-science/6-042j-mathematics-for-computer-science-fall-2010/).



MIT 6.00

Alongside Harvard's CS50 course lies a selection of videos from MIT. The lectures from MIT 6.00 Introduction to Computer Science and Programming can all be watched on YouTube (youtube.com/watch?v=k6U-i4gXkLM). Prof. Eric Grimson and Prof. John Guttag will walk you all the way from being a newcomer to having a deep understanding of programming concepts.



MIT, STANFORD & BERKLEY

If you are truly dedicated, you can

pick up the equivalent of a Bachelor's Level Computer Science Program using nothing but free online courses. There is a huge range available at MIT, Stanford and Berkley. Take a look at this web page for a suggestion of courses to follow: <http://blog.agupieware.com/2014/05/online-learning-bachelors-level.html>.





Glossary of Terms

Just like most technology, Python contains many confusing words and acronyms. Here then, for your own sanity, is a handy glossary to help you keep on top of what's being said when the conversation turns to Python programming.

Argument

The detailed extra information used by Python to perform more detailed commands. Can also be used in the command prompt to specify a certain runtime event.

Block

Used to describe a section or sections of code that are grouped together.

Break

A command that can be used to exit a for or while loop. For example, if a key is pressed to quit the program, Break will exit the loop.

Class

A class provides a means of bundling data and functionality together. They are used to encapsulate variables and functions into a single entity.

Comments

A comment is a section of real world wording inserted by the programmer to help document what's going on in the code. They can be single line or multi-line and are defined by a # or "".

Debian

A Linux-based distro or distribution that forms the Debian Project. This environment offers the user a friendly and stable GUI to interact with along with Terminal commands and other forms of system level administration.

Def

Used to define a function or method in Python.

Dictionaries

A dictionary in Python is a data structure that consists of key and value pairs.

Distro

Also Distribution, an operating system that uses the Linux Kernel as its core but offers something different in its presentation to the end user.

Editor

An individual program, or a part of the graphical version of Python, that enables the user to enter code ready for execution.

Exceptions

Used as a means of breaking from the normal flow of a code block in order to handle any potential errors or exceptional conditions within the program.

Expression

Essentially, Python code that produces a value of something.

Float

An immutable floating point number used in Python.

Function

Used in Python to define a sequence of statements that can be called or referenced at any time by the programmer.

GitHub

A web-based version control and collaboration portal designed for software developers to better manage source code.

Global Variable

A variable that is useable anywhere in the program.

Graphics

The use of visual interaction with a program, game or operating system. Designed to make it easier for the user to manage the program in question.

GUI

Graphical User Interface. The interface which most modern operating systems use to enable the user to interact with the core programming of the system. A friendly, easy to use graphical desktop environment.

High-Level Language

A programming language that's designed to be easy for people to read.

IDLE

Stands for Integrated Development Environment or Integrated Development and Learning Environment.

Immutable

Something that cannot be changed after it is created.

Import

Used in Python to include modules together with all the accompanying code, functions and variables they contain.

Indentation

Python uses indentation to delimit blocks of code. The indents are four spaces apart, and are often created automatically after a colon is used in the code.



Integer

A number data type that must be a whole number and not a decimal.

Interactive Shell

The Python Shell, which is displayed whenever you launch the graphical version of Python.

Kernel

The core of an operating system, which handles data processing, memory allocation, input and output, and processes information between the hardware and programs.

Linux

An open source operating system that's modelled on UNIX. Developed in 1991 by Finnish student Linus Torvalds.

Lists

A Python data type that contains collections of values, which can be of any type and can readily be modified.

Local Variable

A variable that's defined inside a function and is only useable inside that function.

Loop

A piece of code that repeats itself until a certain condition is met. Loops can encase the entire code or just sections of it.

Module

A Python file that contains various functions that can be used within another program to further extend the effectiveness of the code.

Operating System

Also OS. The program that's loaded into the computer after the initial boot sequence has completed. The OS manages all the other programs, graphical user interface (GUI), input and output and physical hardware interactions with the user.

Output

Data that is sent from the program to a screen, printer or other external peripheral.

PIP

Pip Installs Packages. A package management system used to install and manage modules and other software written in Python.

Print

A function used to display the output of something to the screen.

Prompt

The element of Python, or the Command Line, where the user enters their commands. In Python it's represented as `>>>` in the interactive shell.

Pygame

A Python module that's designed for writing games. It includes graphics and sound libraries and was first developed in October 2000.

Python

An awesome programming language that's easy to learn and use, whilst still being powerful enough to enjoy.

Random

A Python module that implements a pseudo-random character generator using the Mersenne Twister PRNG.

Range

A function that used to return a list of integers, defined by the arguments passed through it.

Root

The bottom level user account used by the system itself. Root is the overall system administrator and can go anywhere, and do anything, on the system.

Sets

Sets are a collection of unordered but unique data types.

Strings

Strings can store characters that can be modified. The contents of a string are alphanumerical and can be enclosed by either single or double quote marks.

Terminal

Also Console or Shell. The command line interface to the operating system, namely Linux, but also available in macOS. From there you can execute code and navigate the filesystem.

Tkinter

A Python module designed to interact with the graphical environment, specifically the tk-GUI (Tool Kit Graphical User Interface).

Try

A try block allows exceptions to be raised, so any errors can be caught and handled according to the programmer's instructions.

Tuples

An immutable Python data type that contains an ordered set of either letters or numbers.

UNIX

A multitasking, multiuser operating system designed in the '70s at the Bell Labs Research Centre. Written in C and assembly language.

Variables

A data item that has been assigned a storage location in the computer's memory.

X

Also X11 or X-windows. The graphical desktop used in Linux-based systems, combining visual enhancements and tools to manage the core operating system.

Zen of Python

When you enter: `import this` into the IDLE, the Zen of Python is displayed.



Black Dog Media

Master Your Tech

From Beginner to Expert

To continue learning more about your tech visit us at:

www.bdmpublications.com

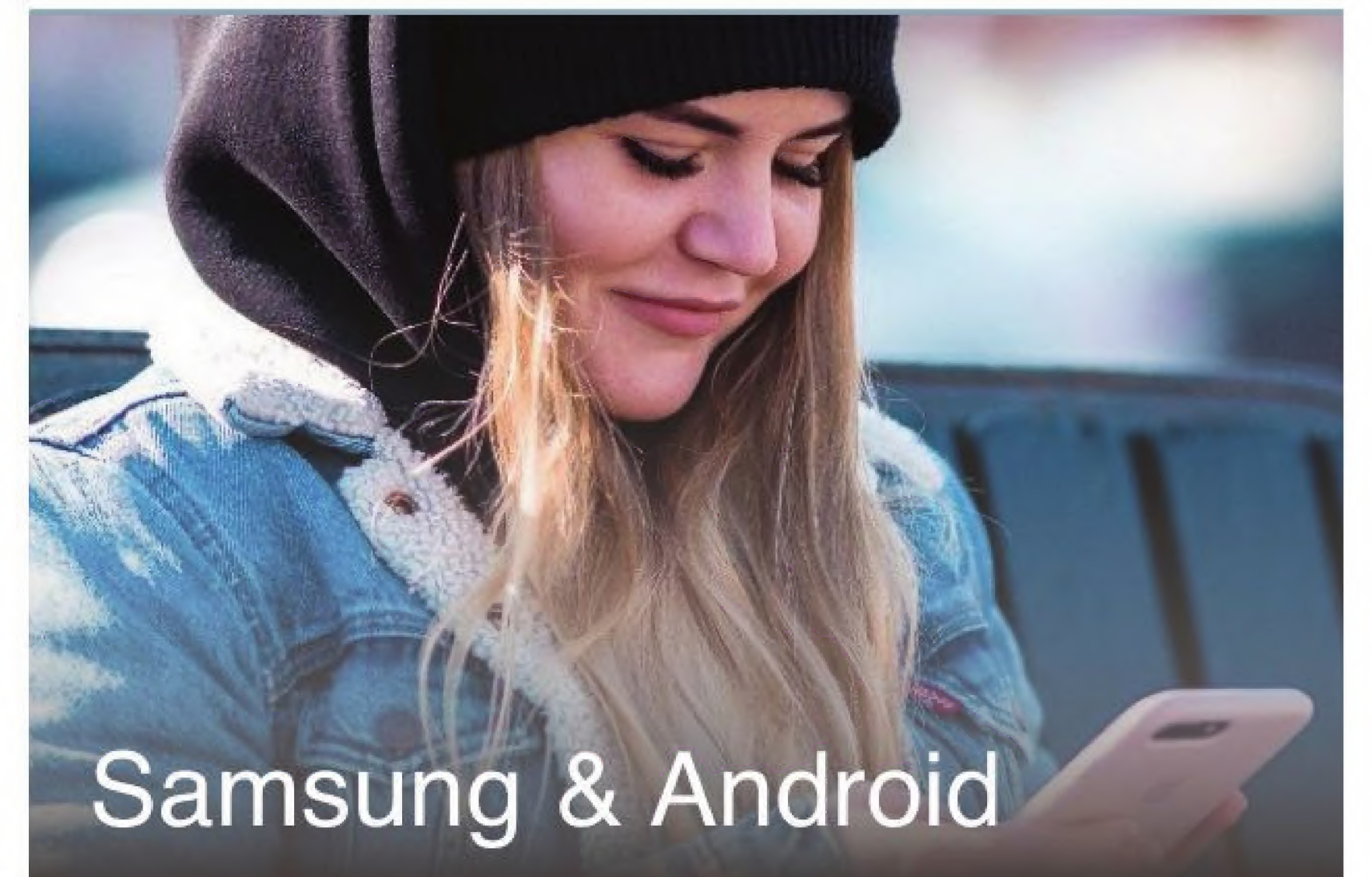
FREE Tech Guides



Apple iPhone, iPad,
Mac, MacBook & Watch



PC & Windows 10



Samsung & Android



Photography,
Photoshop & Lightroom



Coding Python,
Raspberry Pi & Linux

EXCLUSIVE Offers on our Tech Guidebooks

- Print & digital editions
- Featuring the very latest updates
- Step-by-step tutorials and guides
- Created by BDM experts

Check out our latest titles today!



PLUS

Special Deals and Bonus Content

Sign up to our monthly newsletter and get the latest updates, offers and news from BDM. We are here to help you Master Your Tech!

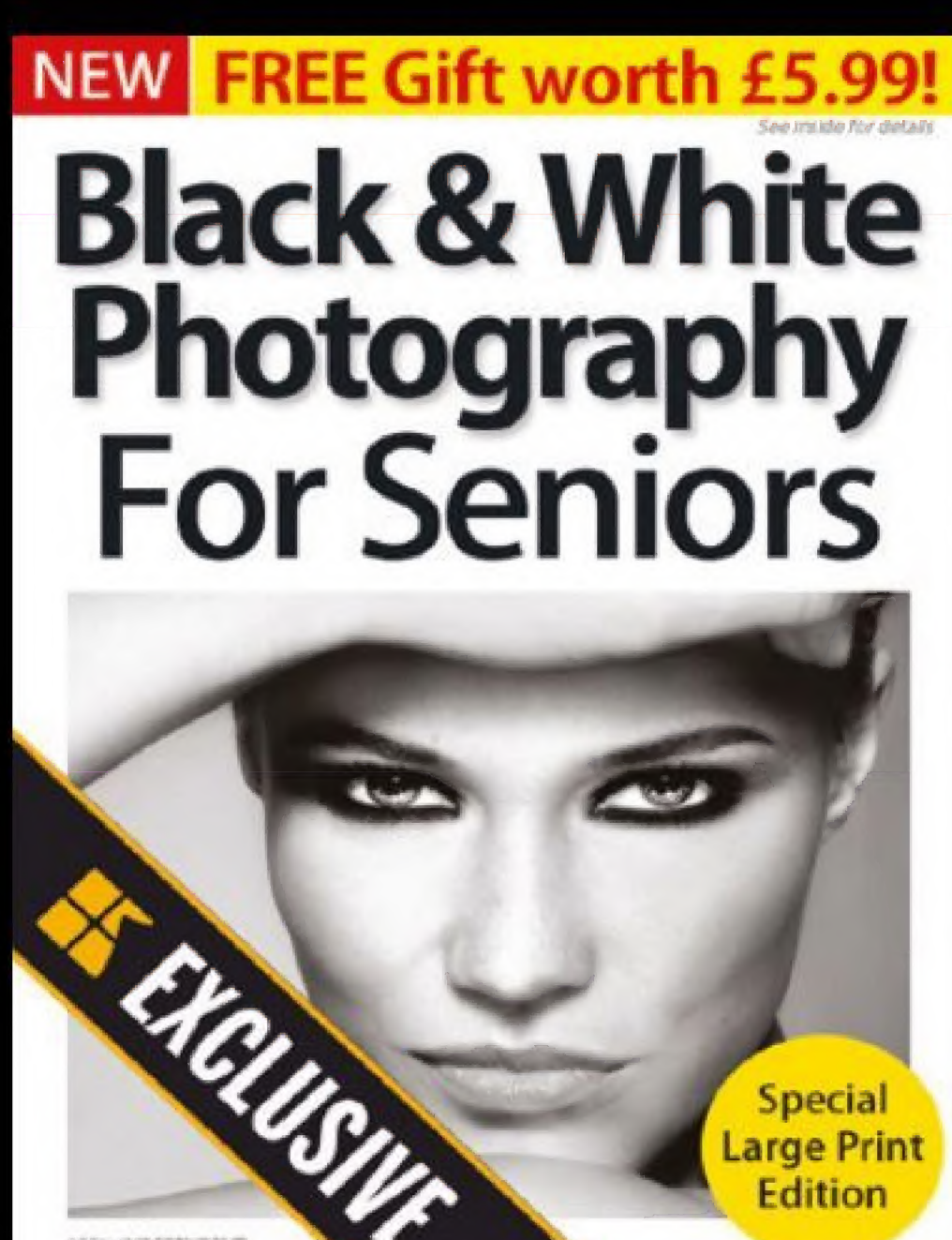
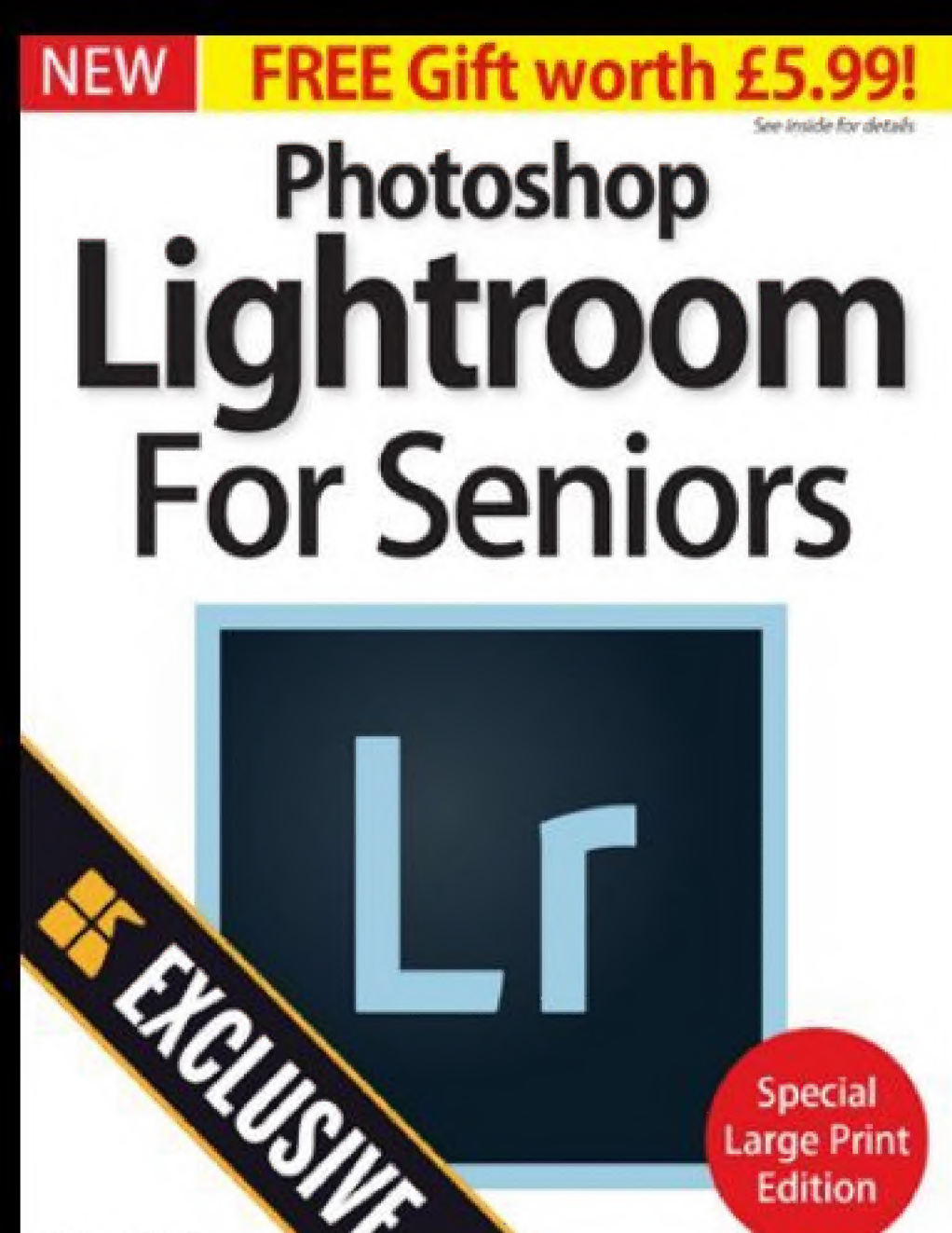
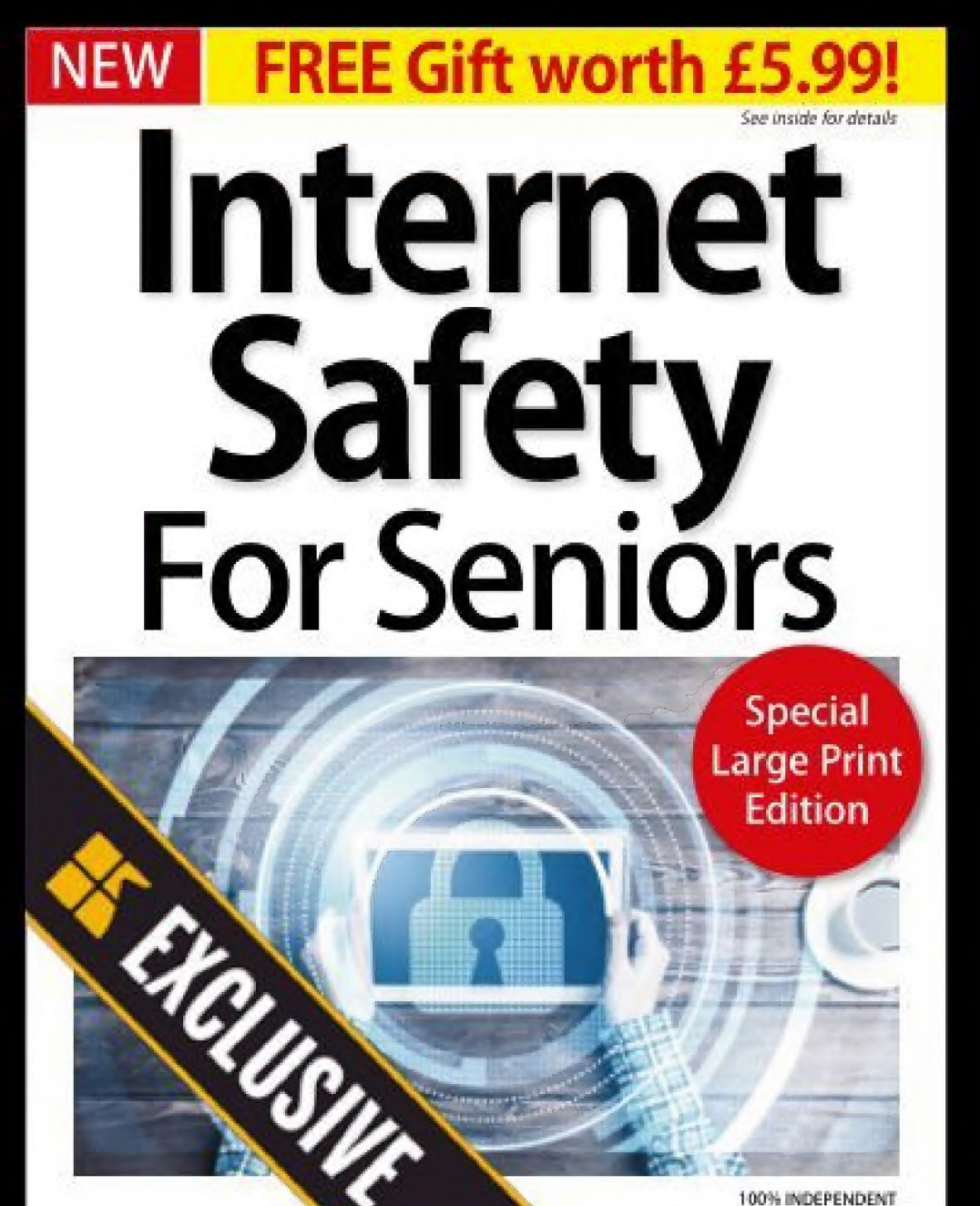
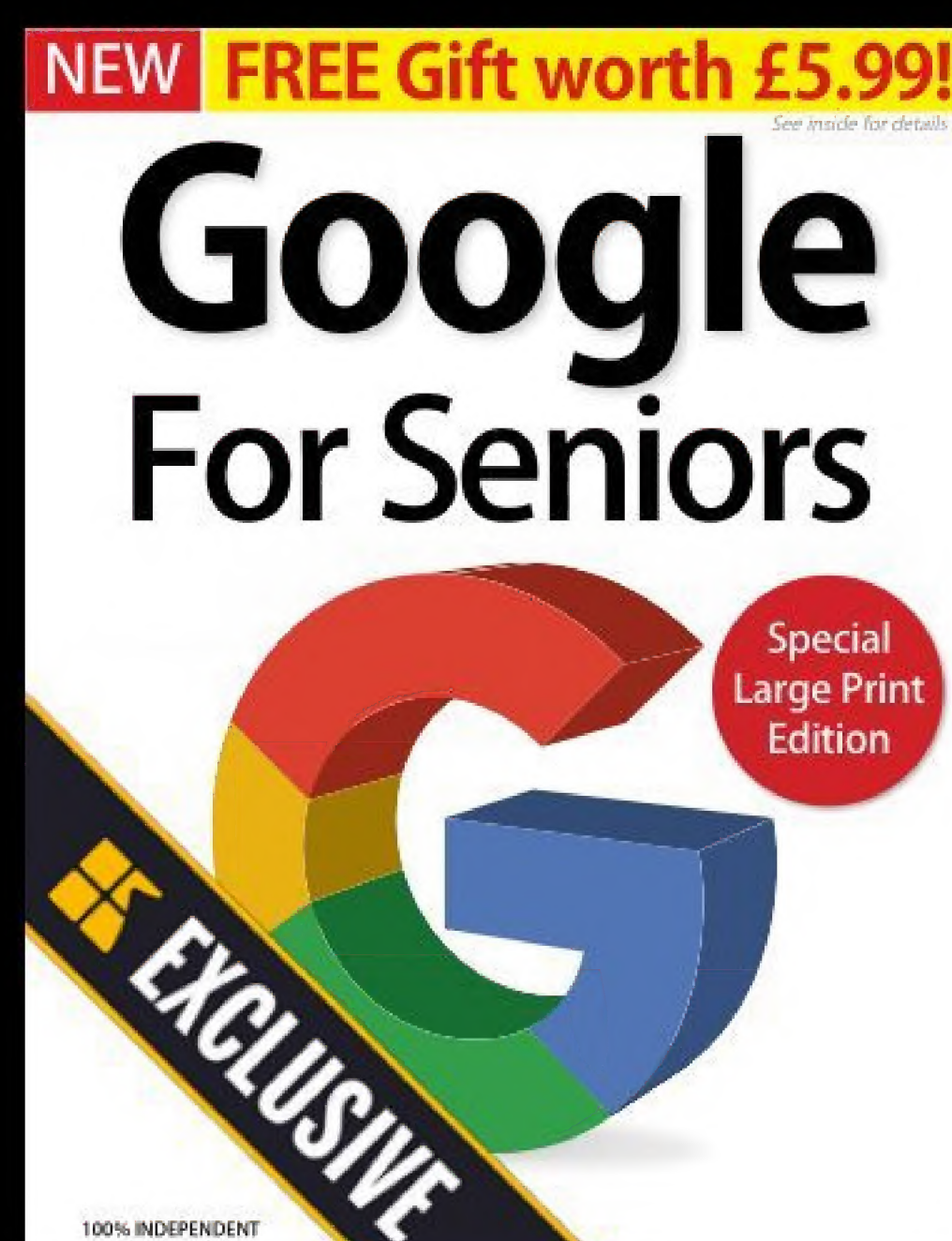
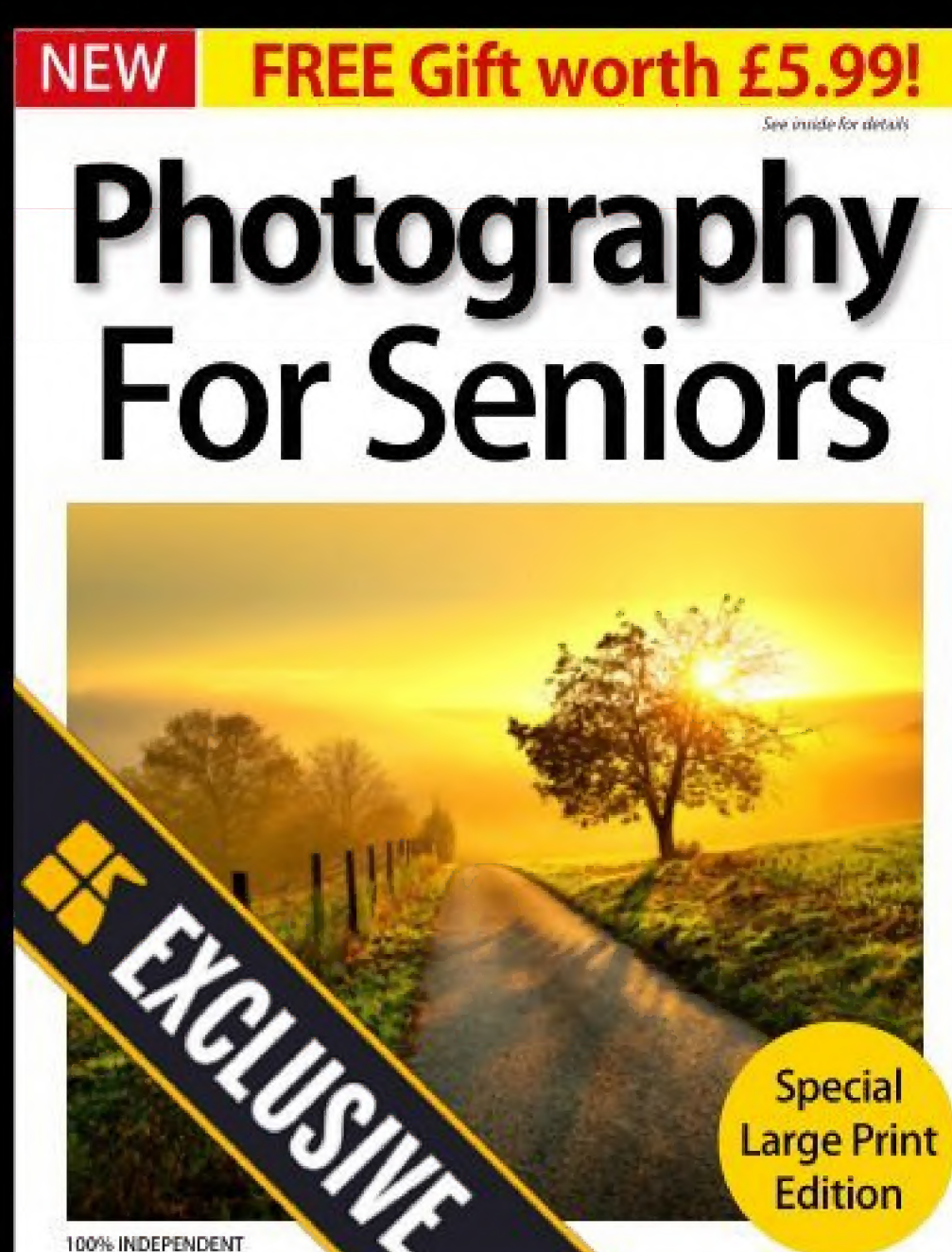
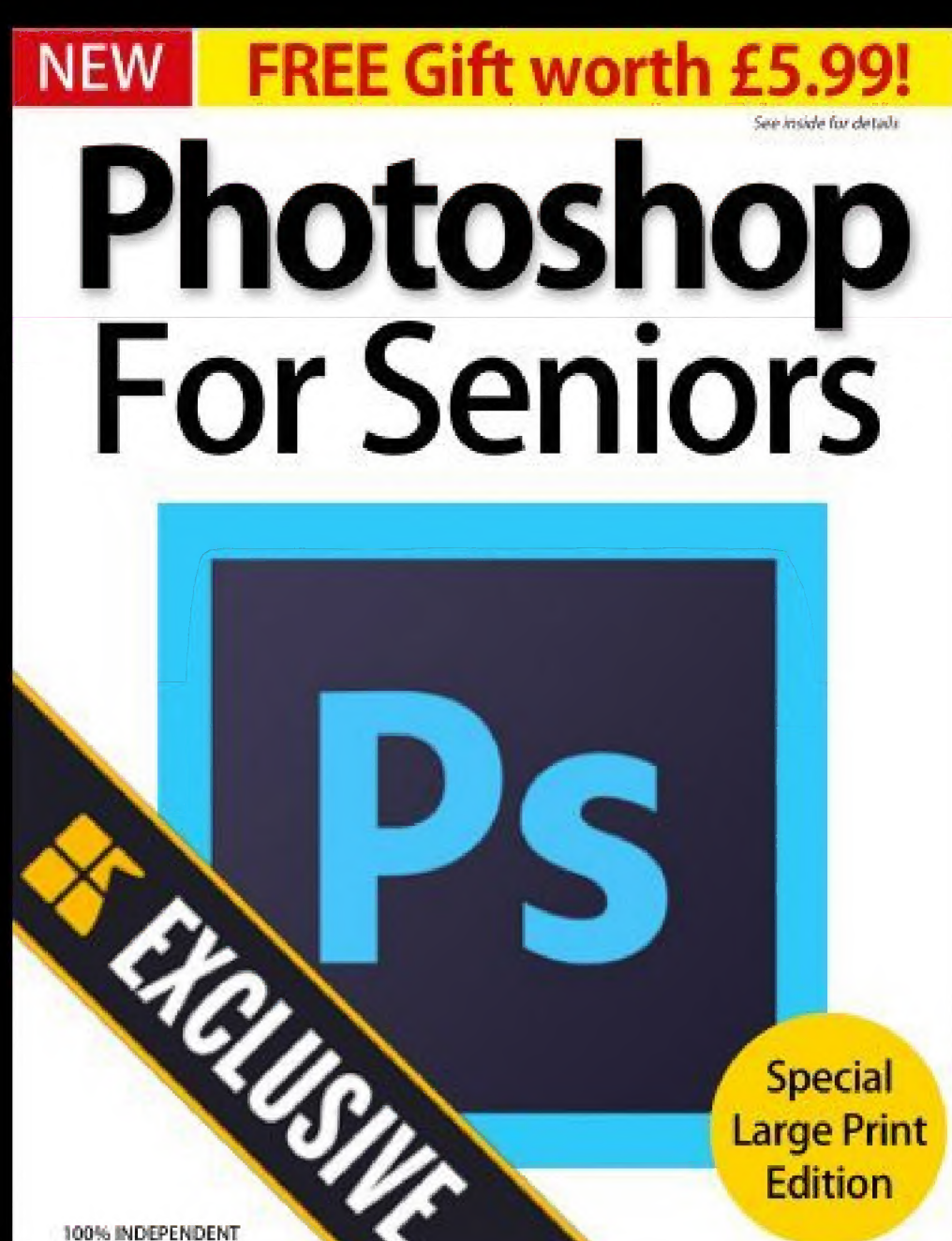
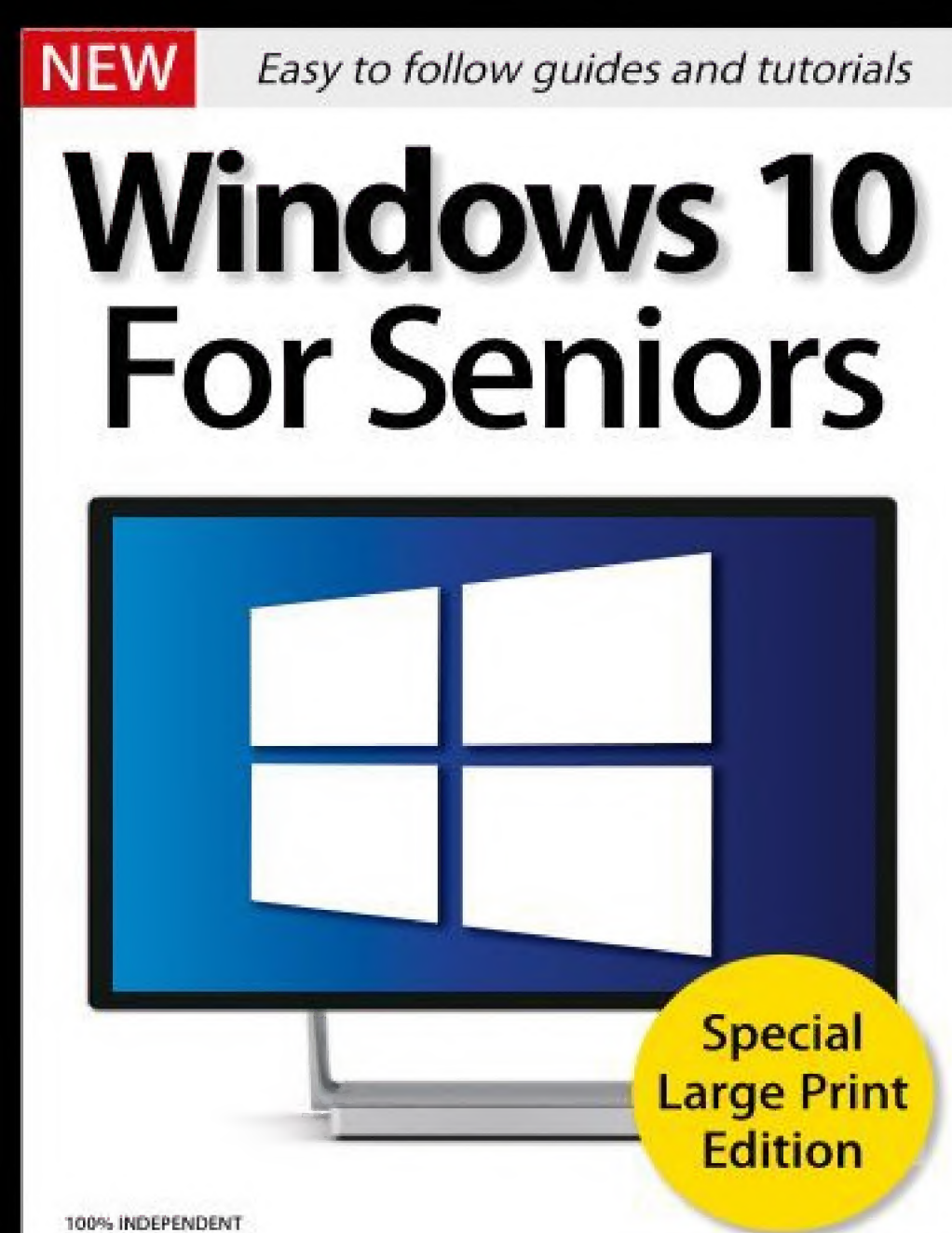
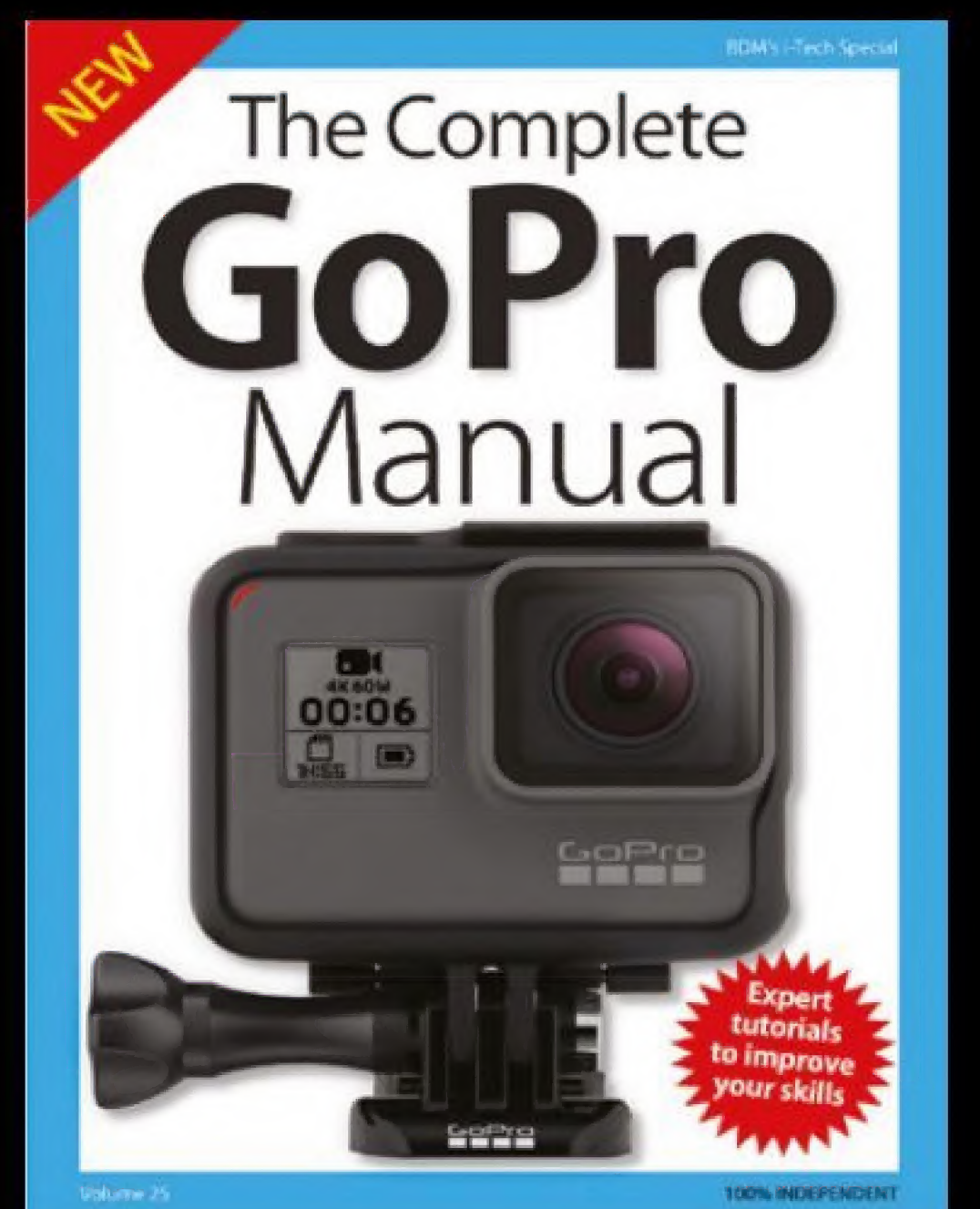
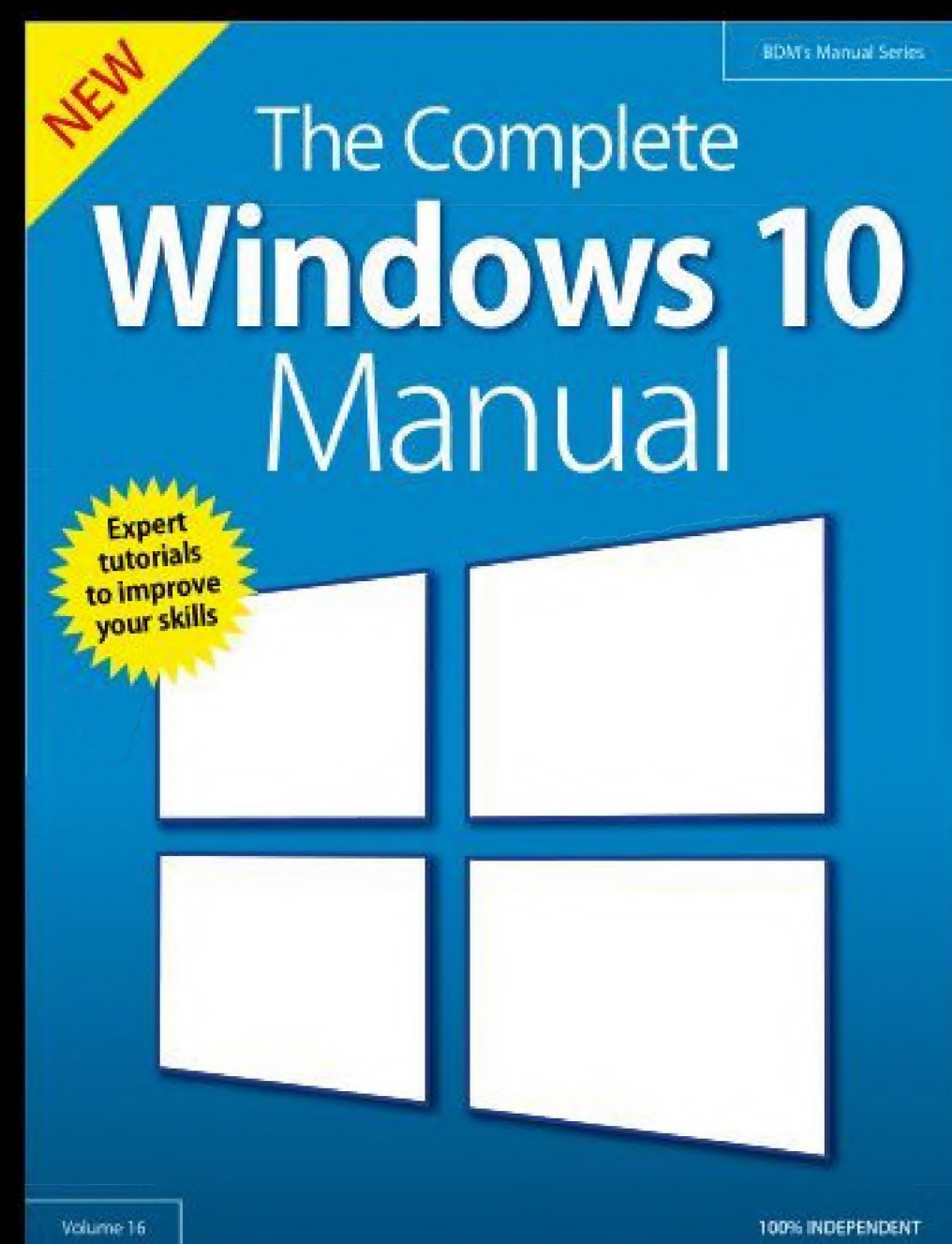
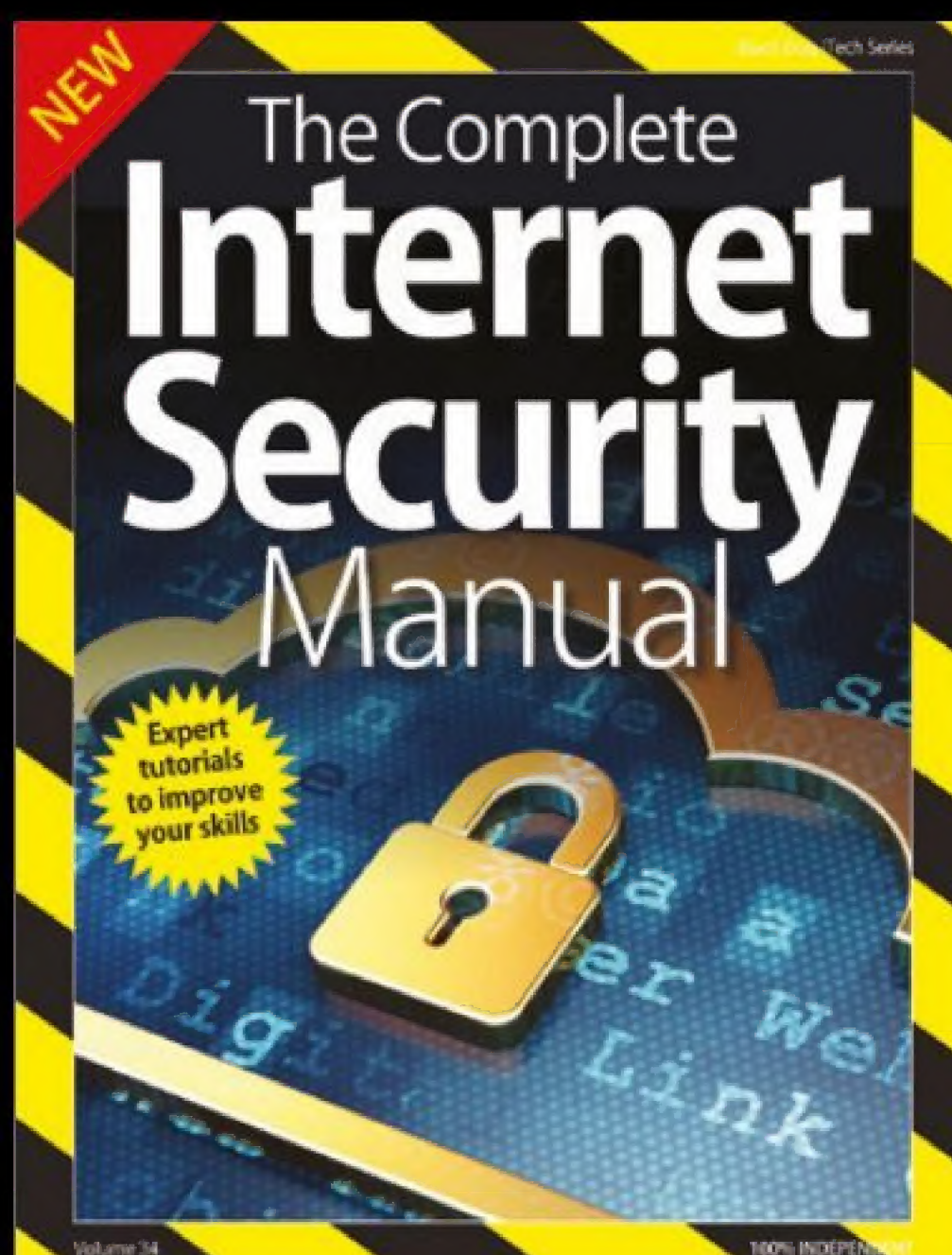
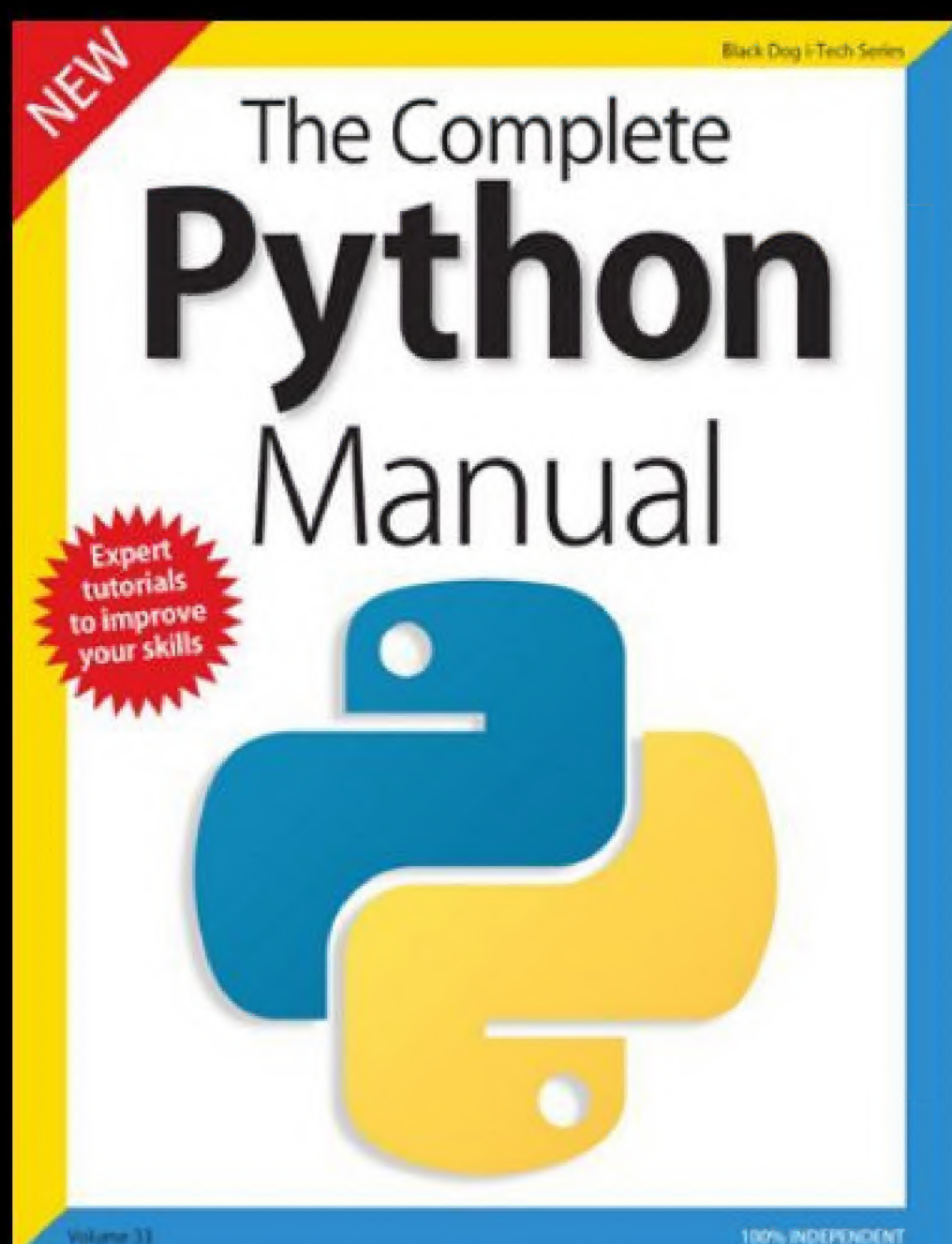
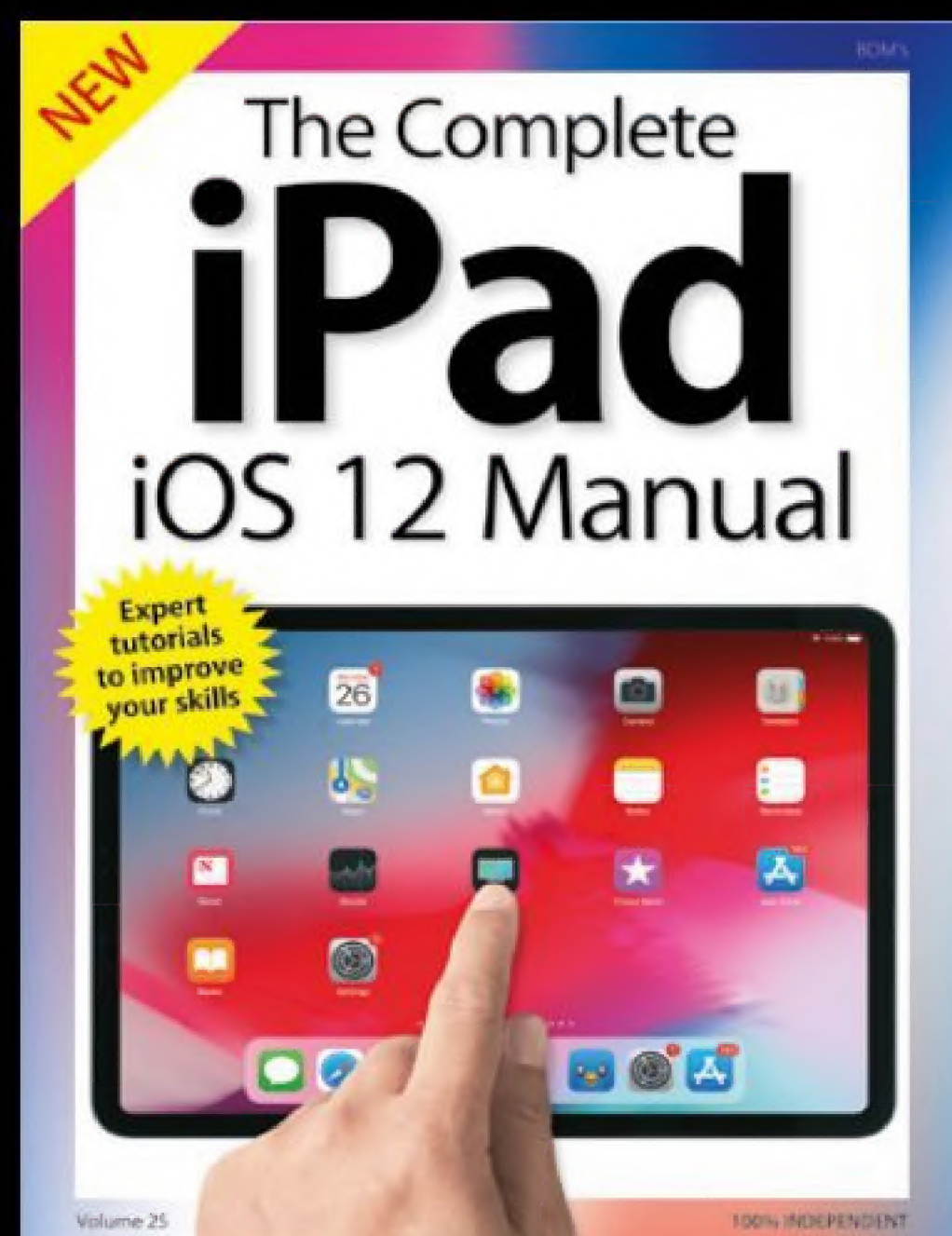
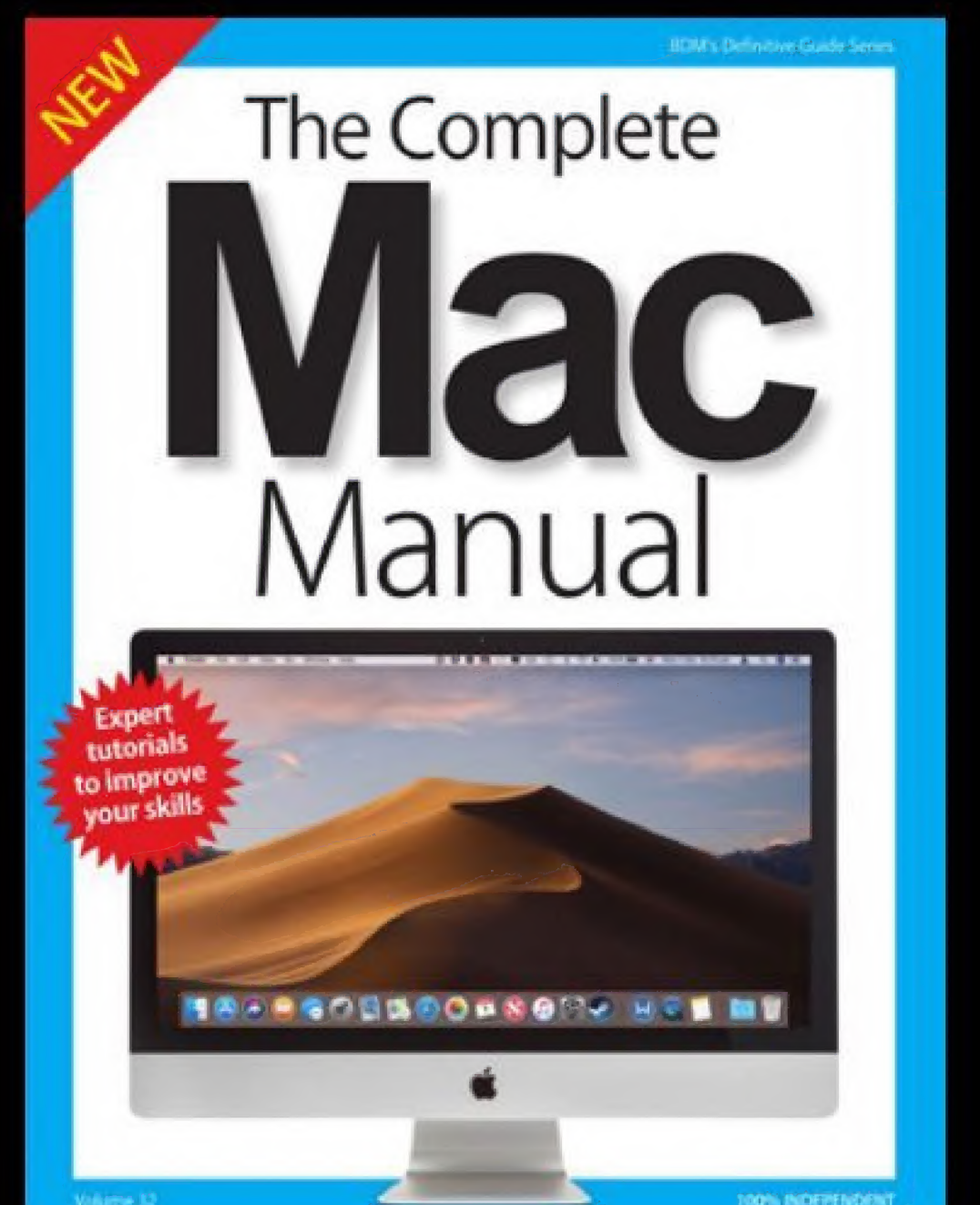
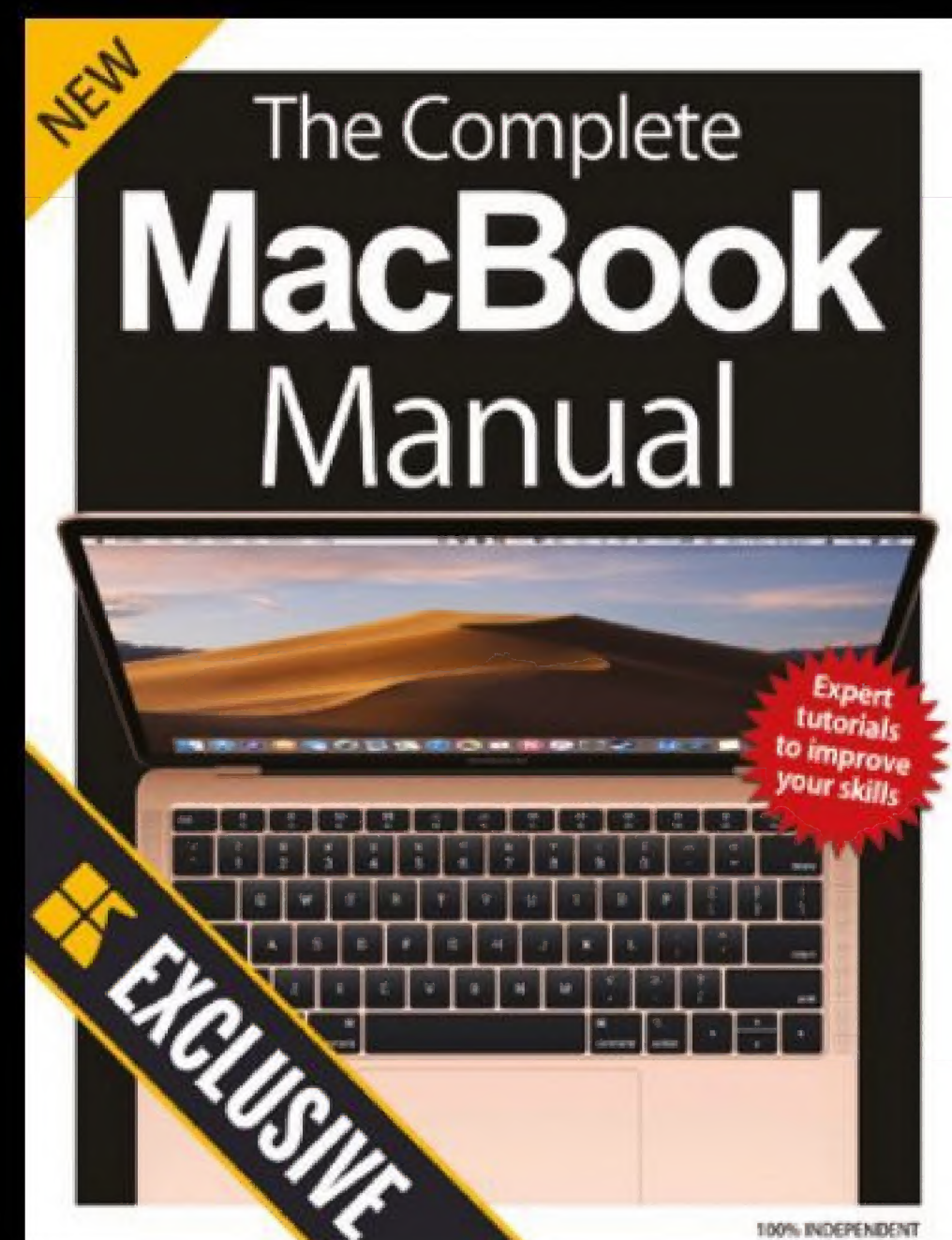
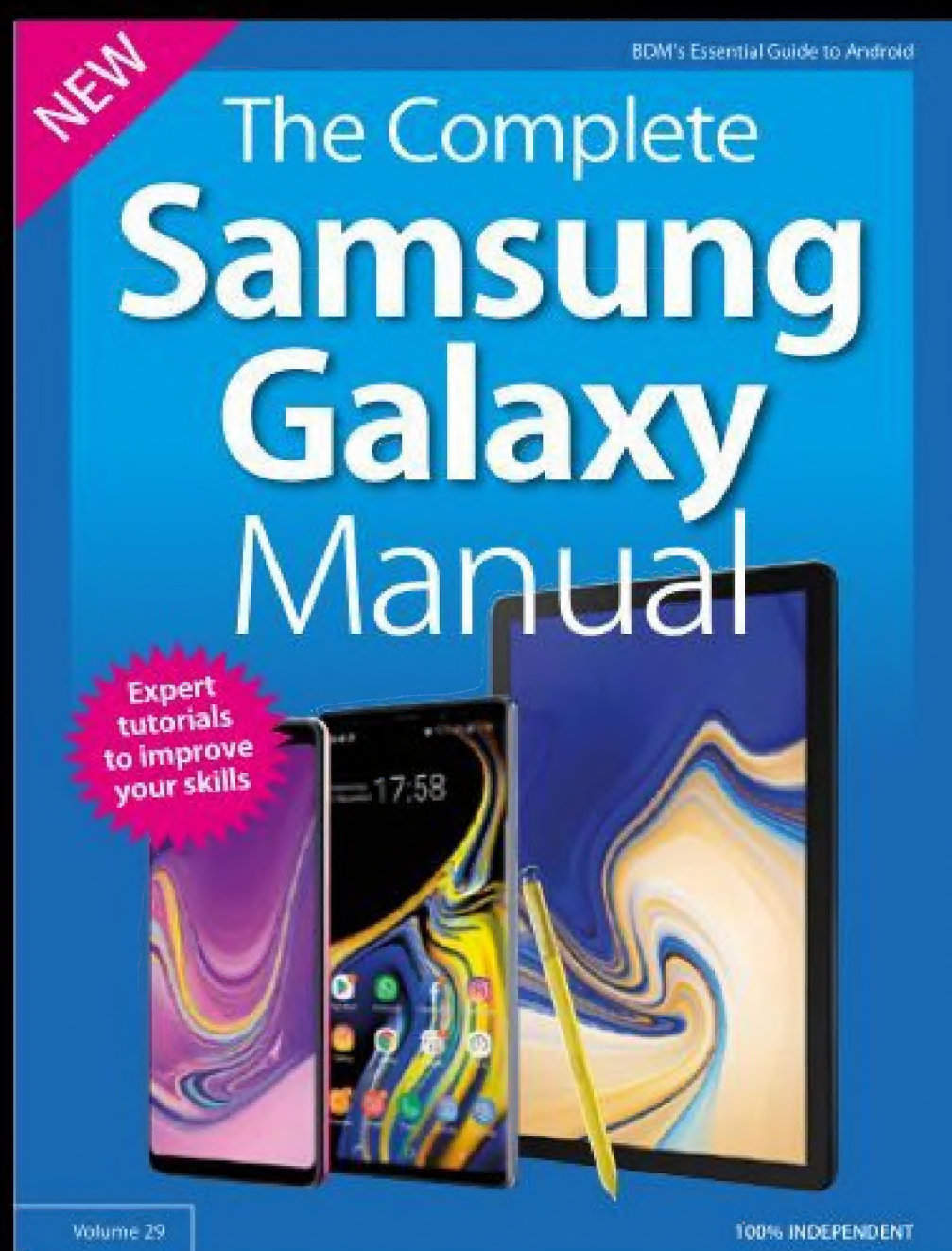
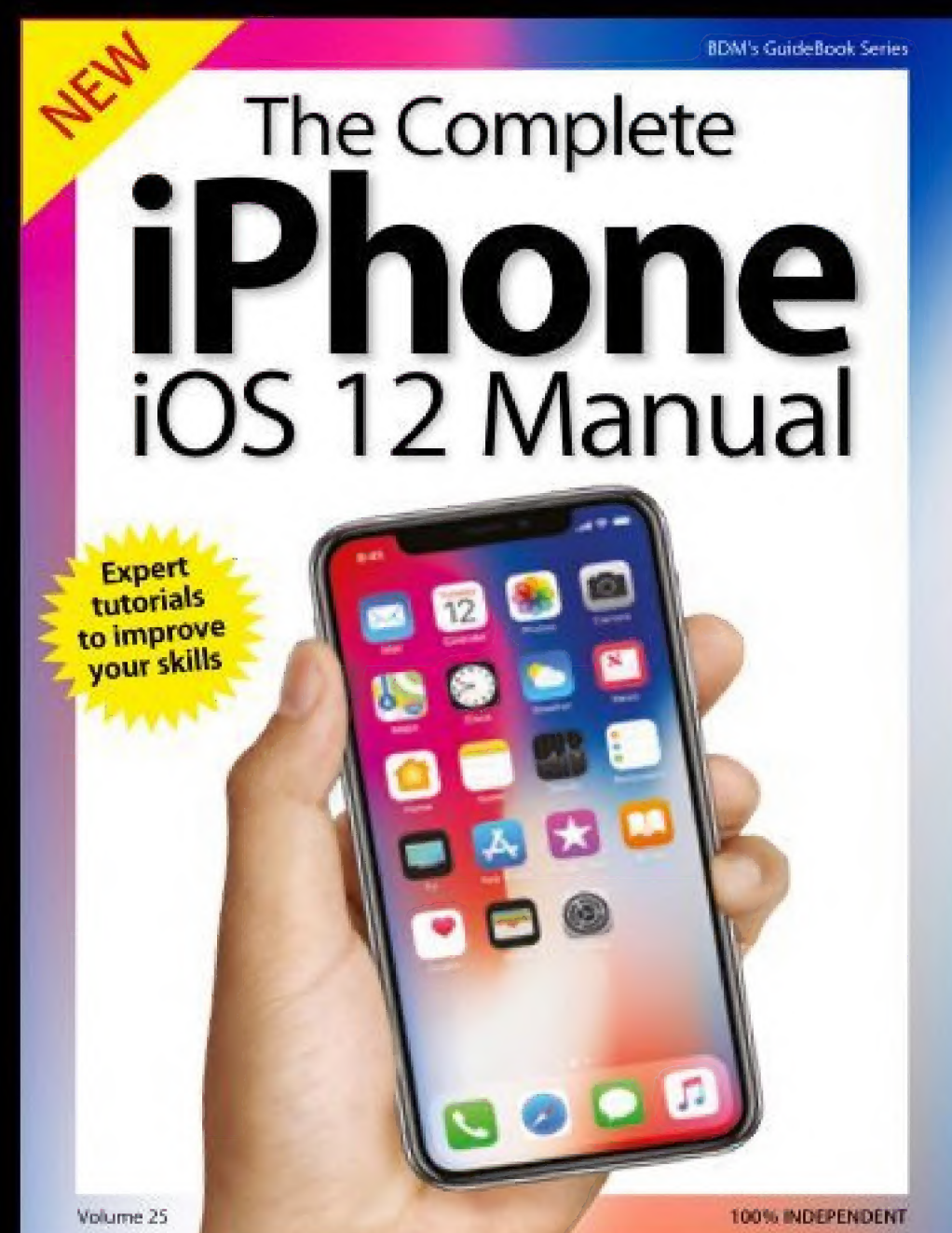
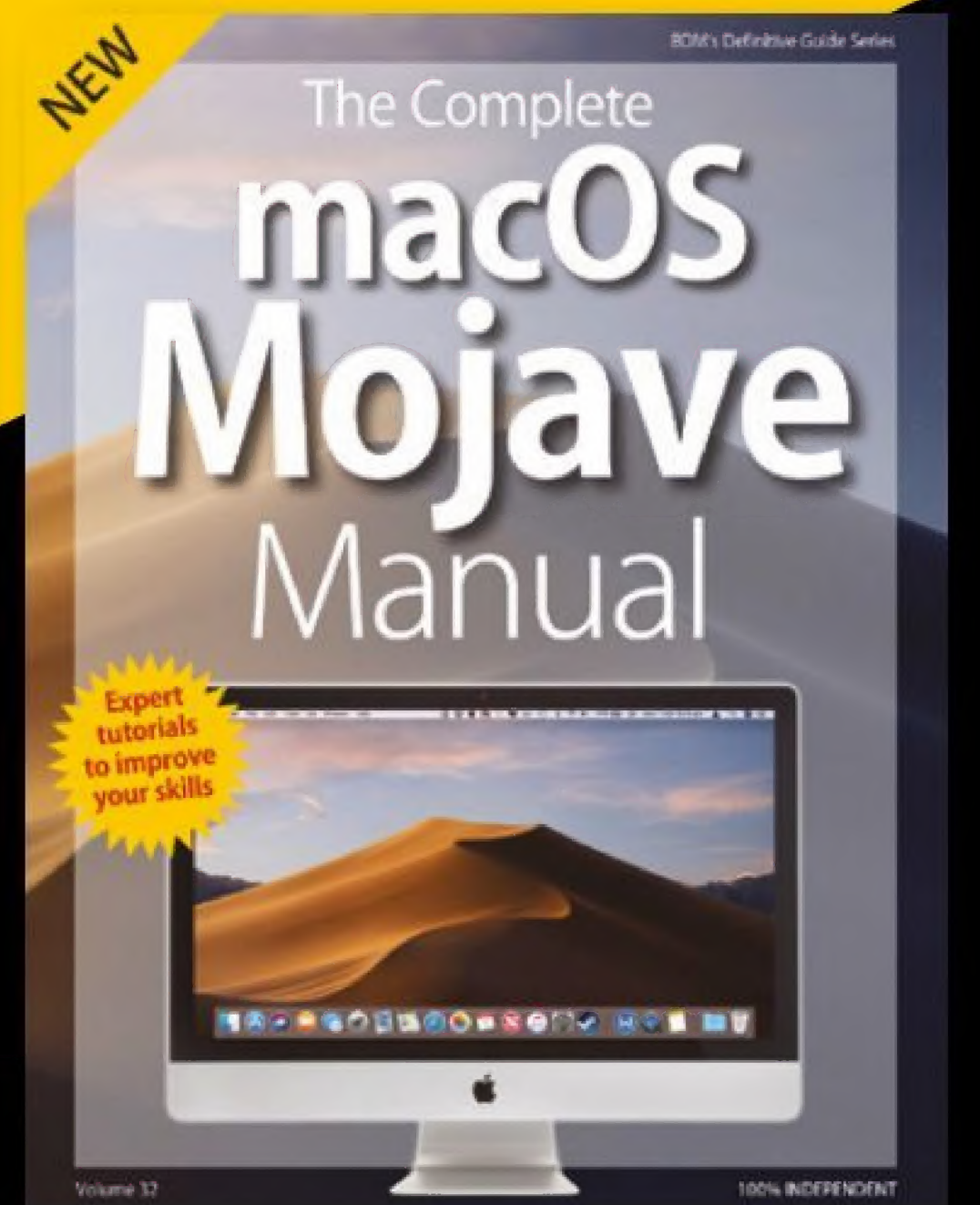
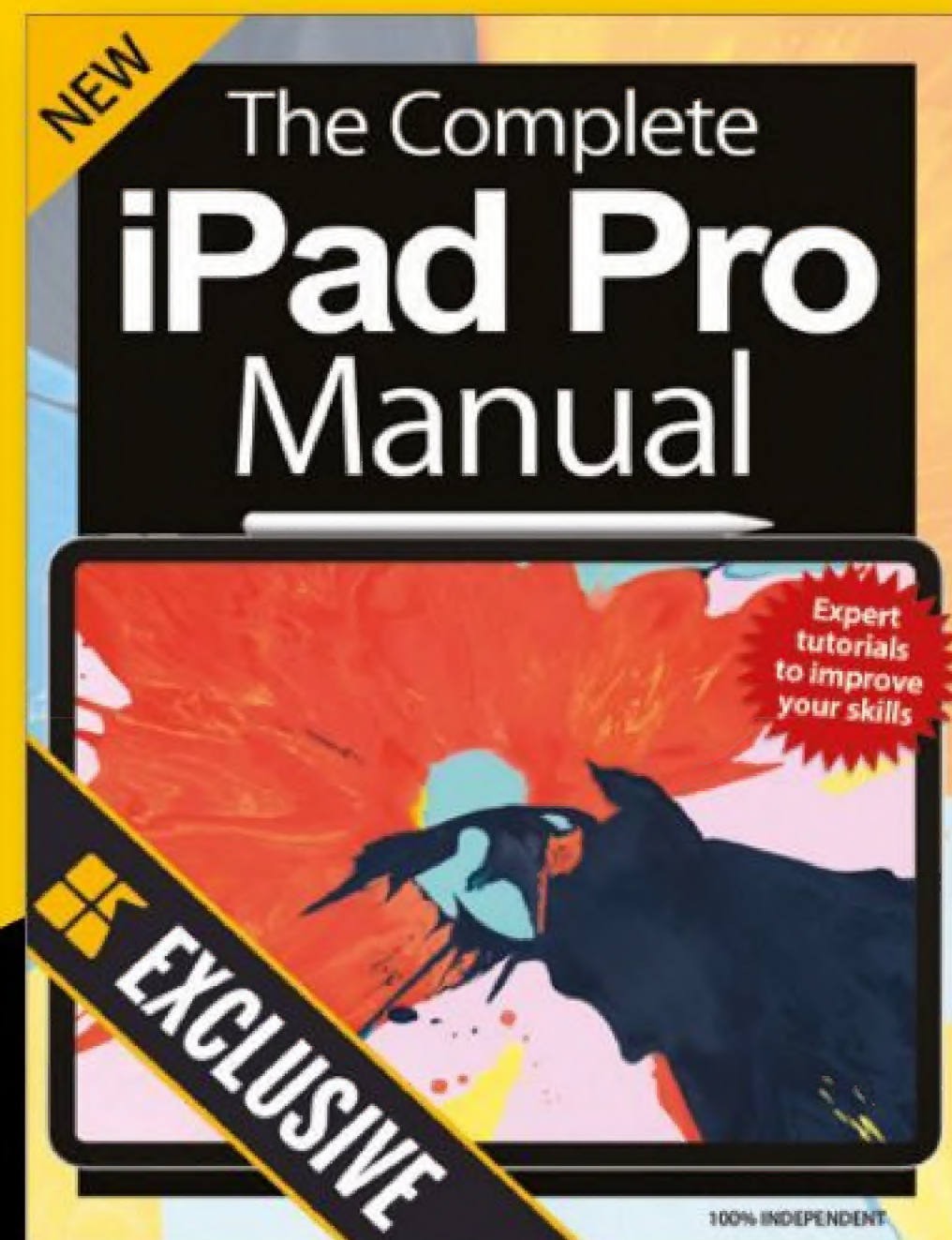


ultimatephotoshop.com

Buy our Photoshop guides and download
tutorial images for free!

Simply sign-up and get creative.

Discover more of our complete manuals on **Readly** today...





 Black Dog i-Tech Series

The pythonTM Manual

Python has proved itself to be a flexible, easy to learn and powerful programming language for the modern computer user and developer.

Python code can be found on the desktop, in server rooms, on the Internet and working in conjunction with many IoT devices.

This book will get you up and running with the latest version of Python in no time. Soon you'll be learning how to code and more importantly, how to apply that code to a real world situation such as creating a game, coding an essential backup script or creating a random password generator that you can use at home or at work.

Becoming a Programmer

Regardless of whether you're a student, computer enthusiast or just curious as to how programming works, our tutorials will help you discover how Python works and how you can use it to interact with other users. What's more, you can start to learn how to think like a computer programmer, and how to apply your knowledge to tackle computing problems.

Getting Started

The Python Manual has been written to help you get into Python from the ground up. Learn where to go to download the latest and up-to-date version of Python and install and launch it from Windows, macOS, Linux computers and even the Raspberry Pi.

Step-by-step Tutorials

The tutorials in this book have been written to help you build confidence in using Python. With simple code to begin with, you can soon easily create a Python program that can ask the user's name, store information in a database-like setting, manipulate lists of data as well as write to files in your system.

Python Code Repository

Once you've mastered the finer points of Python programming, and to help you in your quest for creating code, we've included a huge Python code repository. Here you can snip sections out or even use the entire code in your own programs. It's a valuable tool that will help you get the best from Python and your code.

Beyond The Code

We look at how you can use Linux to create your Python code, as well as object oriented programming with Scratch; there are some great projects involving robots, sensors and creating an arcade machine too.

Becoming a Python programmer is more than simply knowing the language, it's how to apply that knowledge and get the most from the code.